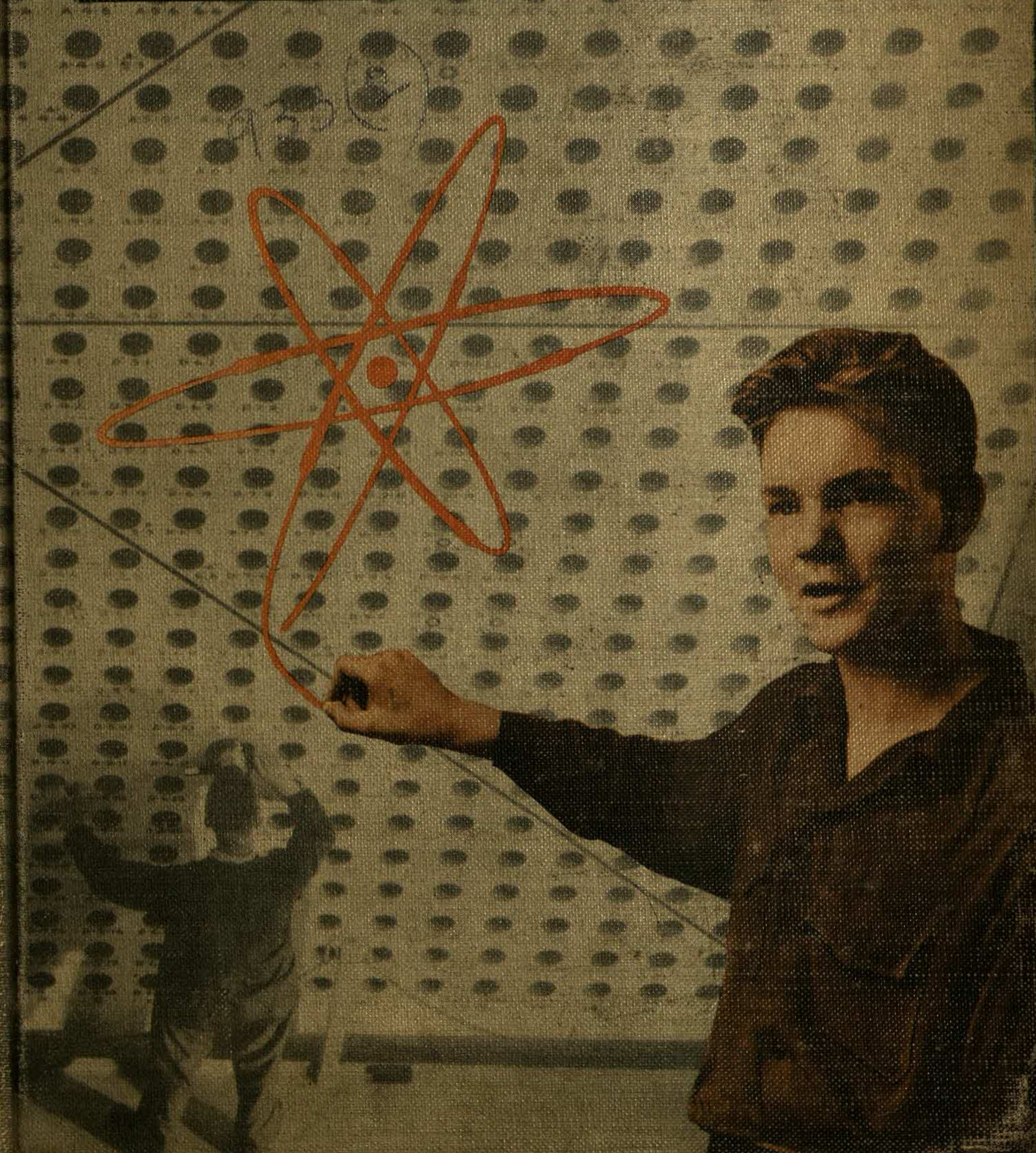
YOU and SCIENCE

SCIENCE FOR BETTER LIVING

933

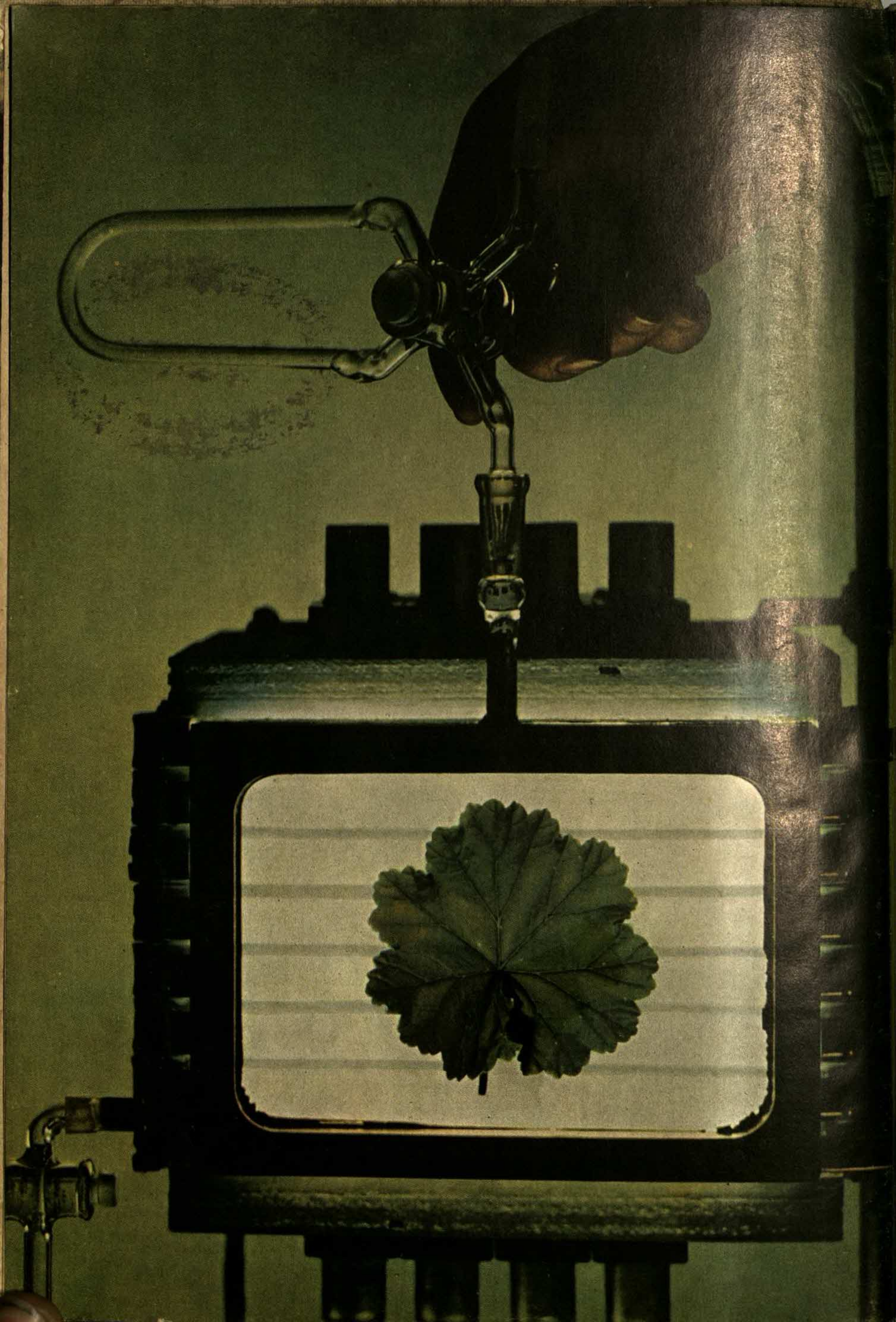


UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
FORM 516
UNZ & CO., N.Y.

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN
933(2)
Dept. of Extension
SERVICE.
CALCUTTA-27

You and Science

STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)



What goes on in the green leaf—a common food factory? In this experiment, a scientist is trying to discover more about how plants make the food materials of the world. Discovery will be an exciting part of your work in science.

TITUTE OF [illegible] FOR WOMEN
933(2)
Dept. of [illegible]

YOU and SCIENCE

SCIENCE FOR BETTER LIVING

BY
Paul F. Brandwein • Alfred D. Beck
Leland G. Hollingworth • Anna E. Burgess

DRAWINGS BY MILDRED K. WALTRIP

HARCOURT, BRACE AND COMPANY NEW YORK CHICAGO

← FROM "LIFE" PHOTOGRAPHER ALBERT FENN, ©TIME, INC.

THE AUTHORS

PAUL F. BRANDWEIN *Chairman, Science Department, Forest Hills High School, New York*
Instructor, Teachers College, Columbia University

LELAND G. HOLLINGWORTH *Director of Science*
Brookline Public Schools, Brookline, Massachusetts

ALFRED D. BECK *Science Supervisor*
Junior High School Division, Board of Education, New York City

ANNA E. BURGESS *Directing Principal, Formerly Supervisor of Elementary Science,*
Board of Education, Cleveland, Ohio

HARCOURT, BRACE SCIENCE PROGRAM
Under the general editorship of Paul F. Brandwein

TEXTBOOKS	Science for Better Living: You and Your World Science for Better Living: You and Your Inheritance Science for Better Living: You and Science Exploring Biology: Fourth Edition Exploring Physics Your Health and Safety: Third Edition
WORKBOOKS	FOR CLASSROOM AND LABORATORY Experiences in Science Experiences in Biology Experiences in Physics

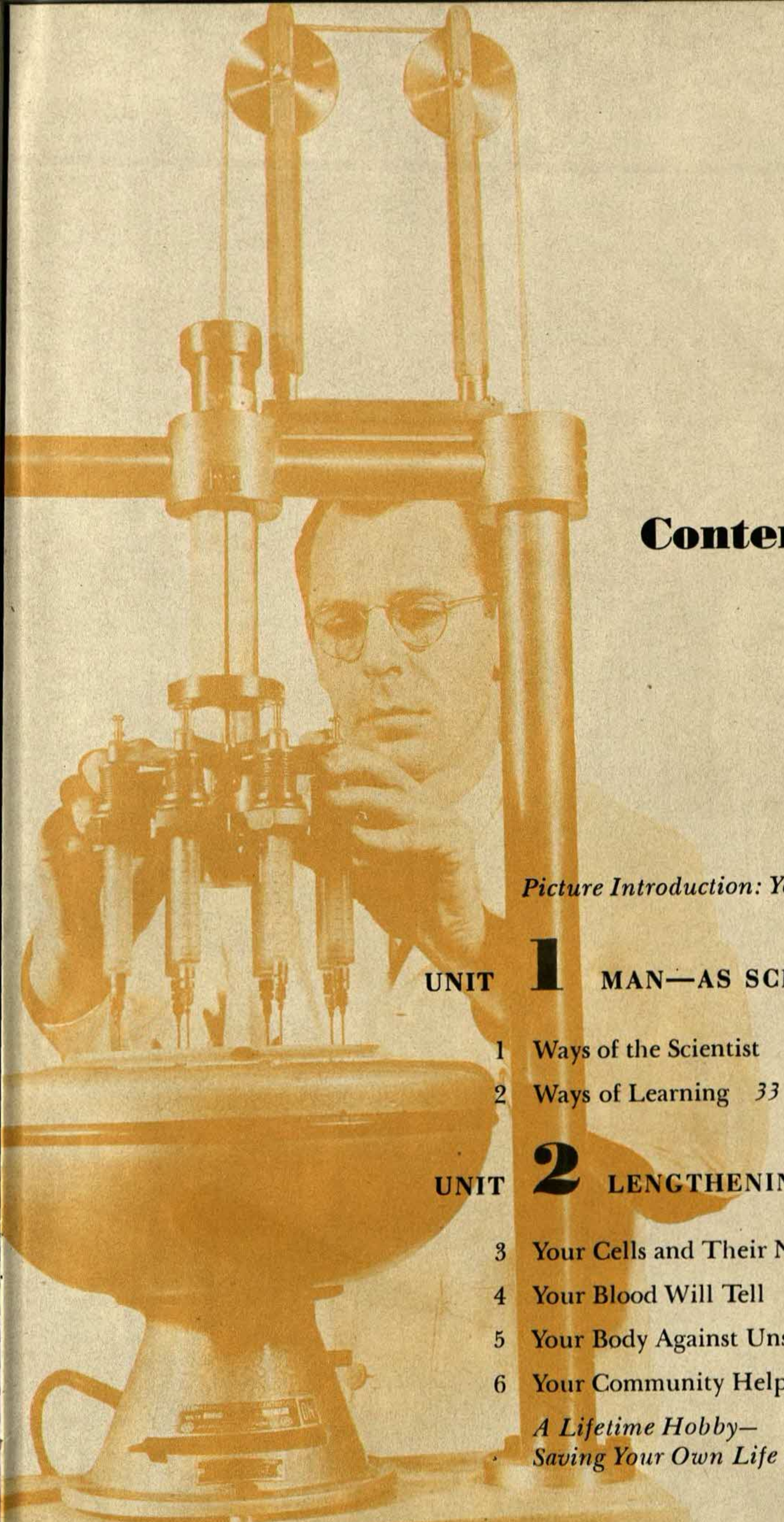
Sources for pictures not credited with the illustration
are acknowledged on p. 584

COPYRIGHT, 1950, 1952, 1955, BY HARCOURT, BRACE AND COMPANY, INC.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the publisher.

D·11·56

Printed in the United States of America



MERCK & CO.

Contents

Picture Introduction: You and Science

UNIT 1 MAN—AS SCIENTIST

1 Ways of the Scientist *17*

2 Ways of Learning *33*

UNIT 2 LENGTHENING MAN'S LIFE

3 Your Cells and Their Needs *54*

4 Your Blood Will Tell *79*

5 Your Body Against Unseen Killers *100*

6 Your Community Helps *118*

A Lifetime Hobby—
Saving Your Own Life and Limb 129

UNIT 3 EXPLORING THE EARTH AND SPACE

7 Our Sun and Its Planets *134*
8 Our Planet Home—And Its Moon *159*
9 Space, Our New Frontier *185*
Fun with Telescopes—A Hobby 202

UNIT 4 UNDERSTANDING THE EARTH'S WEATHER

10 Our Daily Weather *206*
11 Predicting Weather Changes *219*
12 Weather by the Season *243*
13 Protecting Yourself Against the Weather *256*

UNIT 5 INVESTIGATING THE EARTH'S STOREHOUSE

14 Atoms—Building Blocks of the Universe *276*
15 Splitting the Atom *290*
16 Common Chemicals Around You *315*
17 The Wealth in the Earth's Crust *328*
Chemistry as a Hobby 346

UNIT 6 IMPROVING THE WORLD'S FOOD SUPPLY

18 Food Factories of the World *352*
19 Better Food from Better Soil *371*
20 Production Through Reproduction *385*
21 Wise Use of Our Inheritance *407*
Living Things as a Hobby 425

one unit of a modern
calculating machine →

UNIT 7 DOING THE WORLD'S WORK

22 Aiding Your Muscles *434*

23 Harnessing the Electron *455*

24 Modern Pack Horses *482*

Model Airplanes as a Hobby 507

UNIT 8 IMPROVING THE EXCHANGE OF IDEAS

25 How We Hear *514*

26 How We See *527*

27 Wire and Wireless *541*

28 Moving and Talking Images *556*

Photography as a Hobby 575

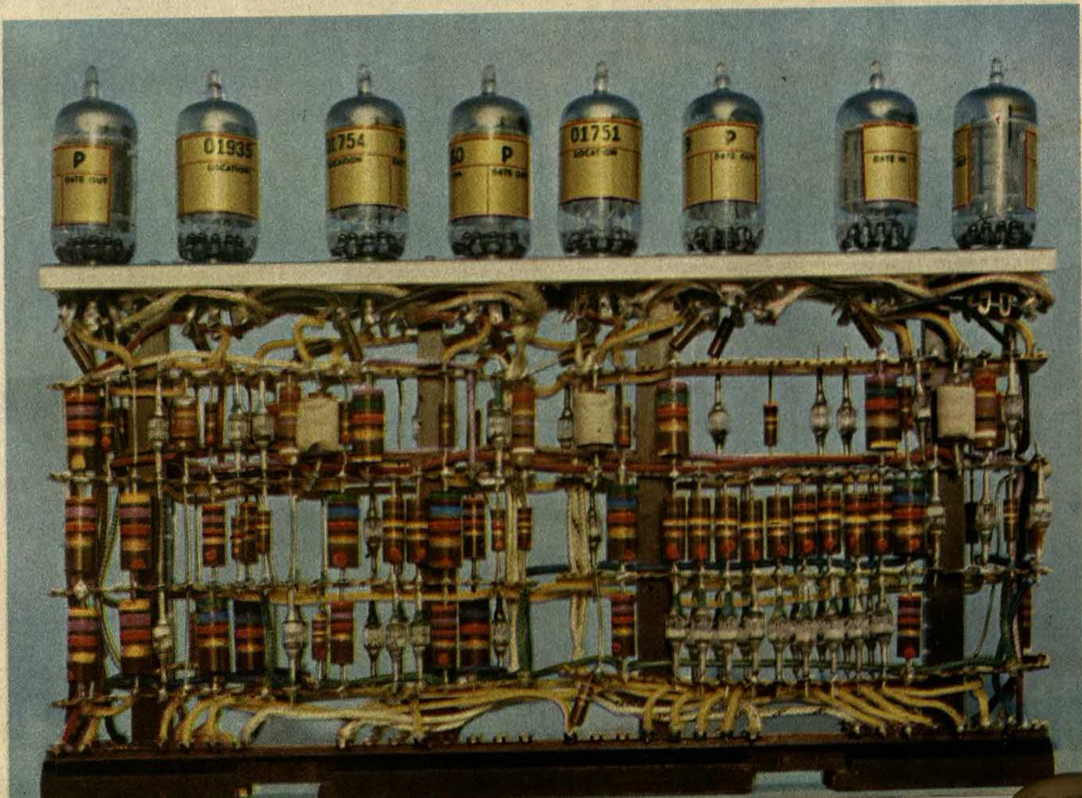
Unfinished Business 581

Acknowledgments 584

Glossary 585

Index 599

Index of Experiments and Activities 621

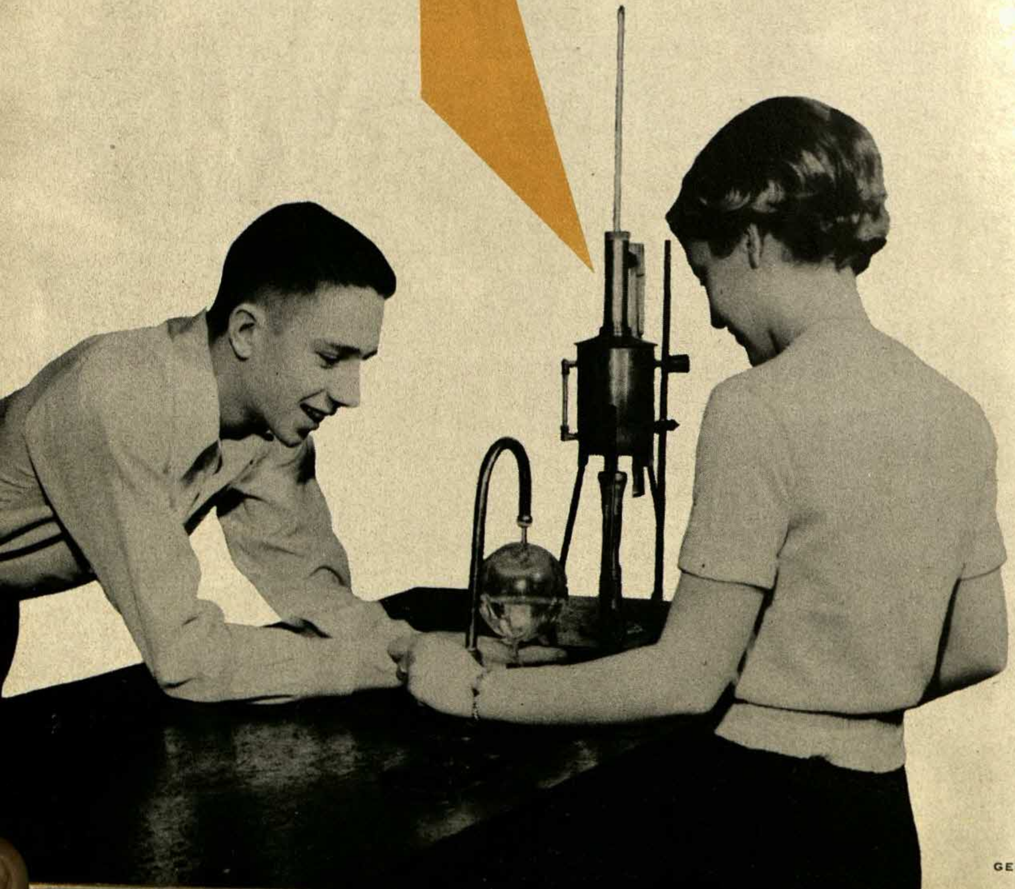


INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORP.

You and Science

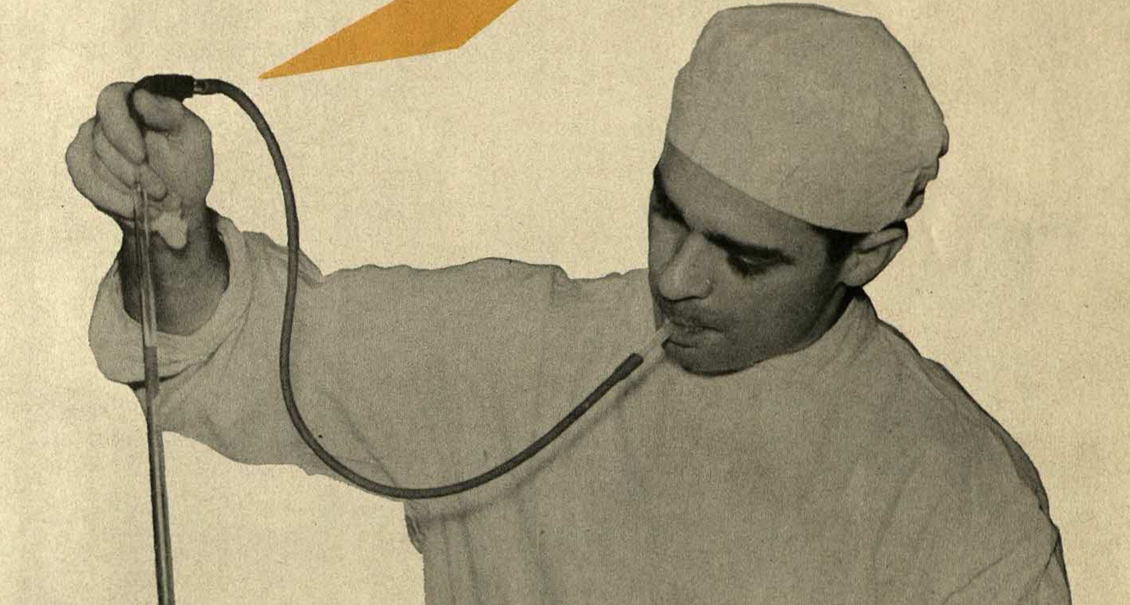
Look at the opposite page. There you see a scientist trying to find a cure for cancer. Below, a girl and boy are working on an experiment in the laboratory. All of them in their own way are trying to discover something new. Discovery — discovery of the way the world works — is the work of science.

The work of scientists — once boys and girls like you — touches you every hour of your life. Does this idea sound strange to you? Think of some common things you use every day — the telephone, your family's car, the radio. Think of the food you eat, the movies you see, the medicines you take when you are sick. Men, working as scientists, discovered or developed these new things for you.



GENERAL ELECTRIC CO

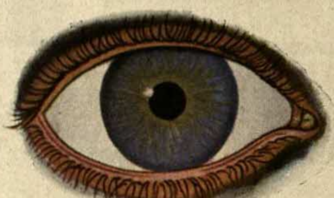
Look through the next fifteen pages of pictures. There you will see some of the discoveries scientists have made. And you will also see some of the ways in which people today—including boys and girls like you—use science for better living.

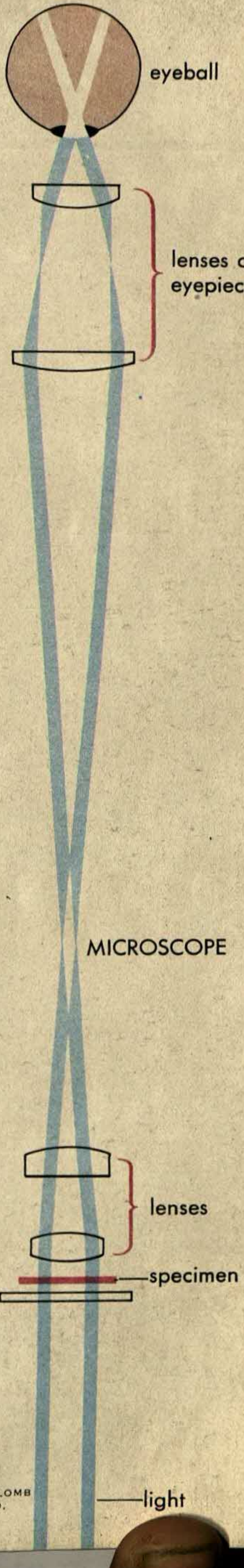


U.S. PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE

In these pages, too, you will see some of the problems that call for new discoveries. Perhaps you will make some of them.

← ROMAN VISHNIAC THE UPJOHN CO. ↓

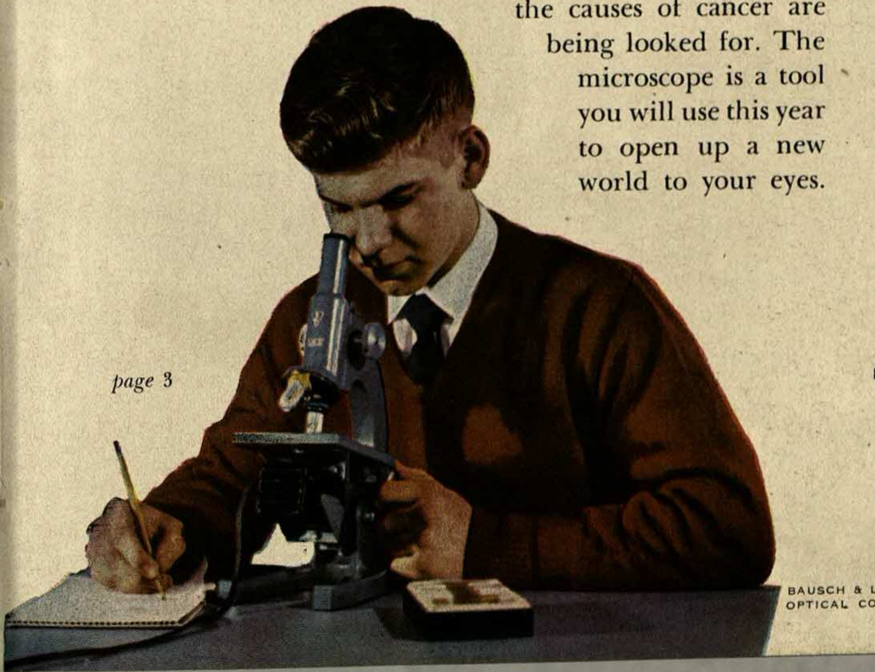




Smaller Than the Eye Can See

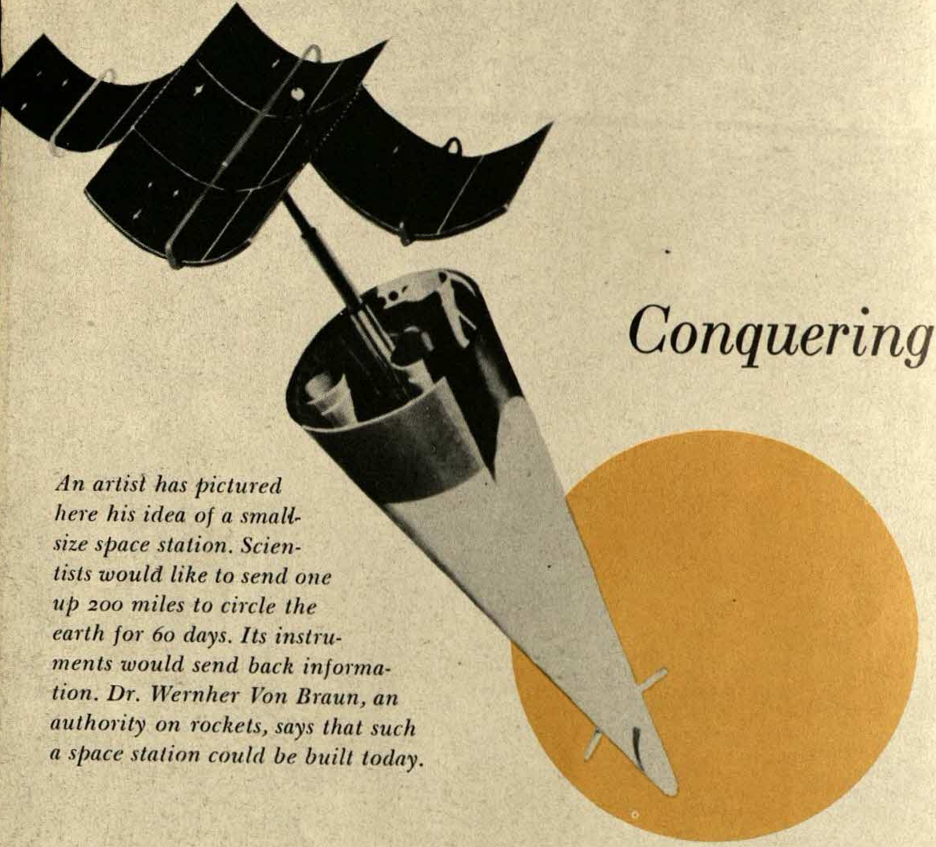
Picture yourself as the boy at work with the microscope. He is exploring the world of the smallest living things. One of these living microscopic things is Cyclops (SY-klops), shown on the opposite page. Cyclops, like many other microscopic animals, lays its eggs (shown in two oval bunches) in water, hatches in water, and lives out its life in water. In science you will see with the help of the microscope some of the plants and animals that live in drops of pond water.

Don't think of the microscope as a toy. Under its lenses the germs of such terrible killers as diphtheria, typhoid, pneumonia, and tuberculosis were discovered. Under it the causes of cancer are being looked for. The microscope is a tool you will use this year to open up a new world to your eyes.



BAUSCH & LOMB OPTICAL CO.

GENERAL ELECTRIC CO. →



Conquering Space

An artist has pictured here his idea of a small-size space station. Scientists would like to send one up 200 miles to circle the earth for 60 days. Its instruments would send back information. Dr. Wernher Von Braun, an authority on rockets, says that such a space station could be built today.

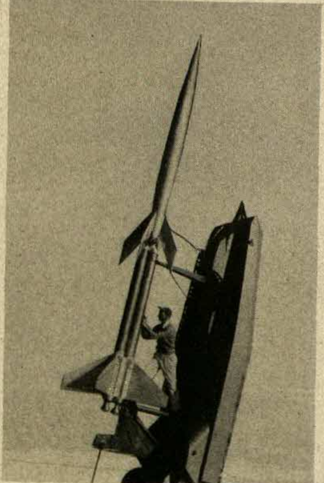
Will men reach Mars in your lifetime? Some scientists say, "Yes"; others say, "It is possible"; still others doubt it. But all of them agree that sooner or later someone will try. Sooner or later a rocket, more fully equipped than the one shown on the page opposite, will leave Earth to explore space.

Space is your new frontier. For you there will be new worlds to conquer. This year in science you will learn much about space and its conquest.

U.S. NAVY

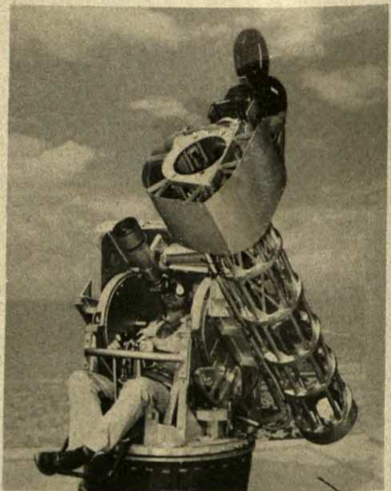
Scientists are developing special suits for space travel

STEELWAYS

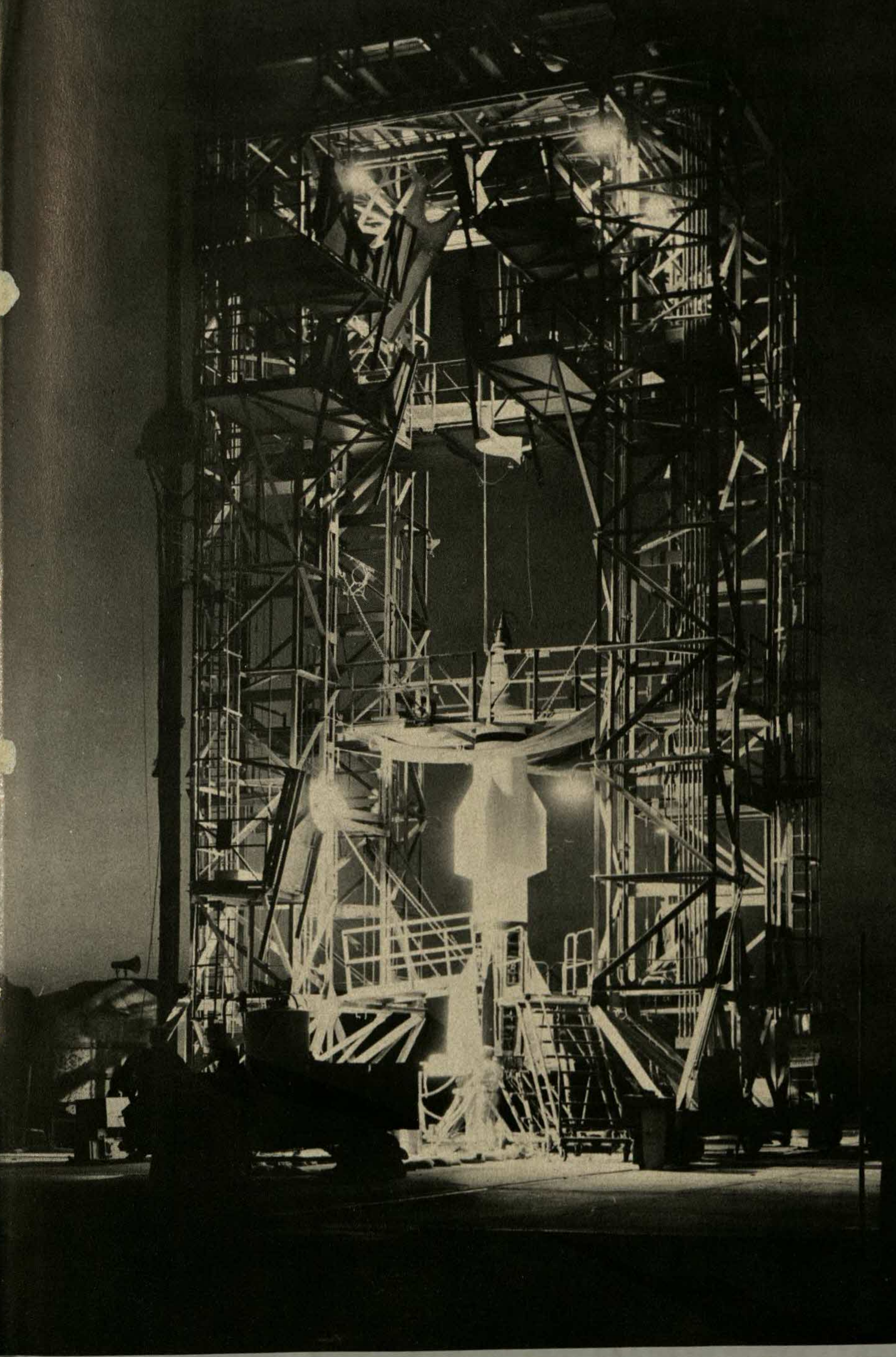


. . . sending test rockets to explore the upper air

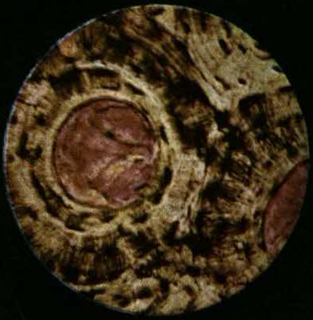
STEELWAYS



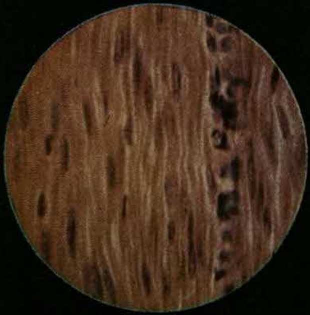
. . . and taking motion pictures of their flight.



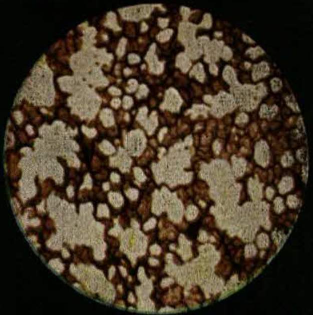
UNDER THE MICROSCOPE



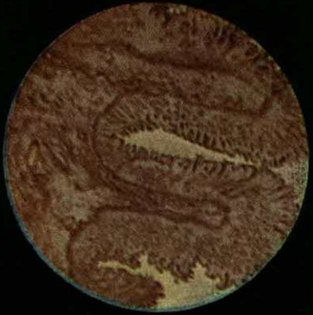
bone



muscle



lung

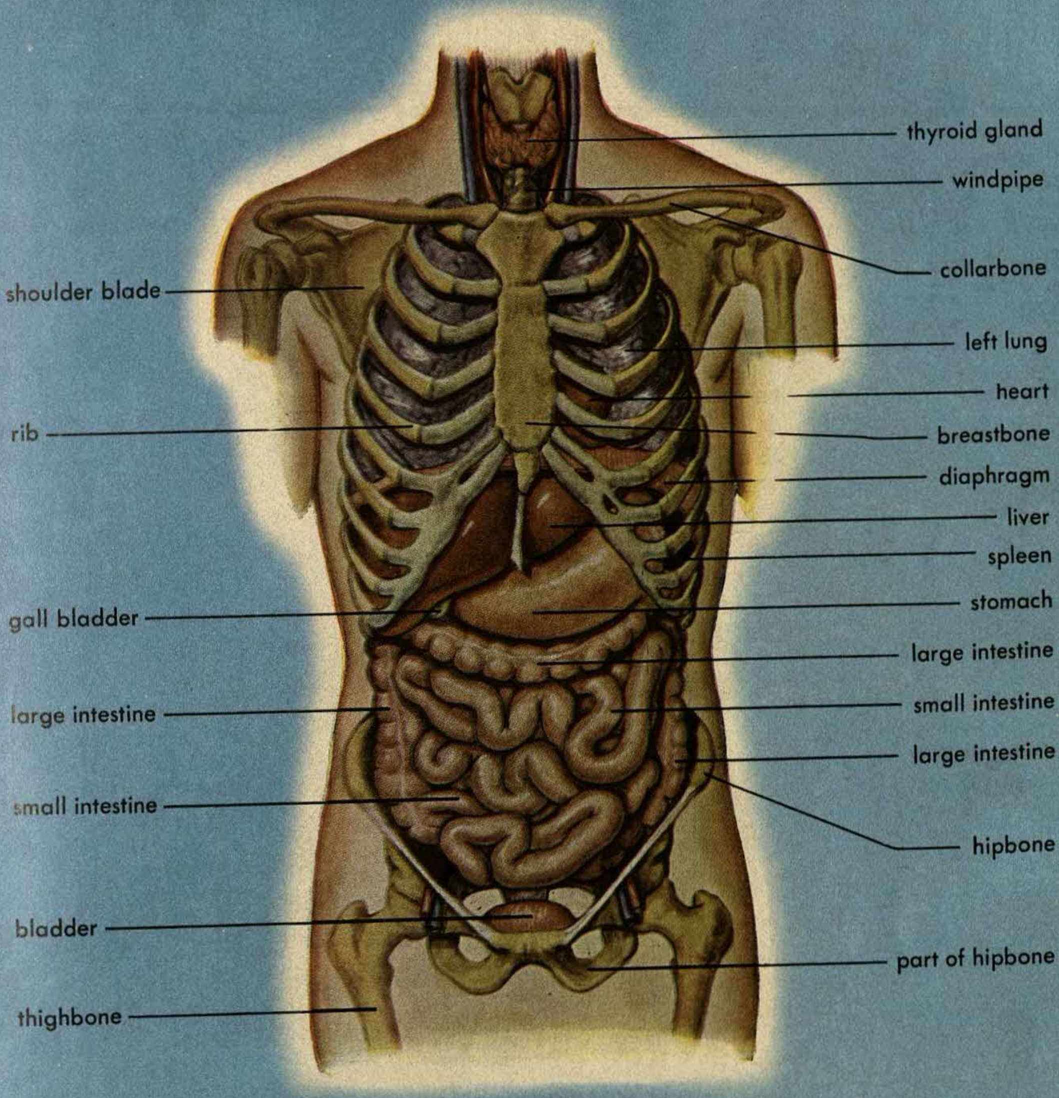


stomach

PERMISSION OF NEW YORK SCIENTIFIC SUPPLY CO.

A Look Inside You

You have now looked at living things smaller than your eye can see. And you have had a view of the outer world, the world of space. Now let's get back to you. Inside you there is also a world of life. Right now billions upon billions of cells like those at the left are at work doing the things which keep you alive. You are what your cells make you. In this year's work in science you will examine your cells and find out how they work.

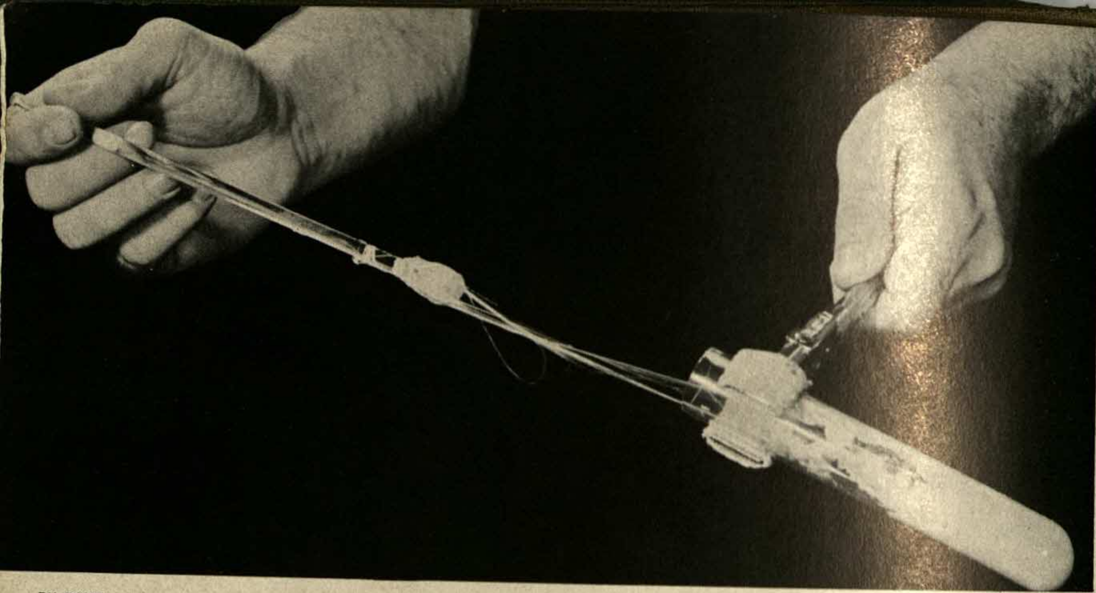


FROM BLAKISTON'S "NEW GOULD MEDICAL DICTIONARY," COURTESY THE BLAKISTON CO.

Your body is made up of cells, but they do not run about freely. Your cells are built into organs, some of which you see above.

You are not much different inside from the drawing above. There are your lungs for breathing, your stomach and intestines for changing the food you eat so that your cells can use it; there is your heart for pumping your blood.

The scientist's knowledge of your body has given you longer life. Your knowledge of your body will help you keep that long life in safety and in health.



DU PONT

DU PONT MAGAZINE →

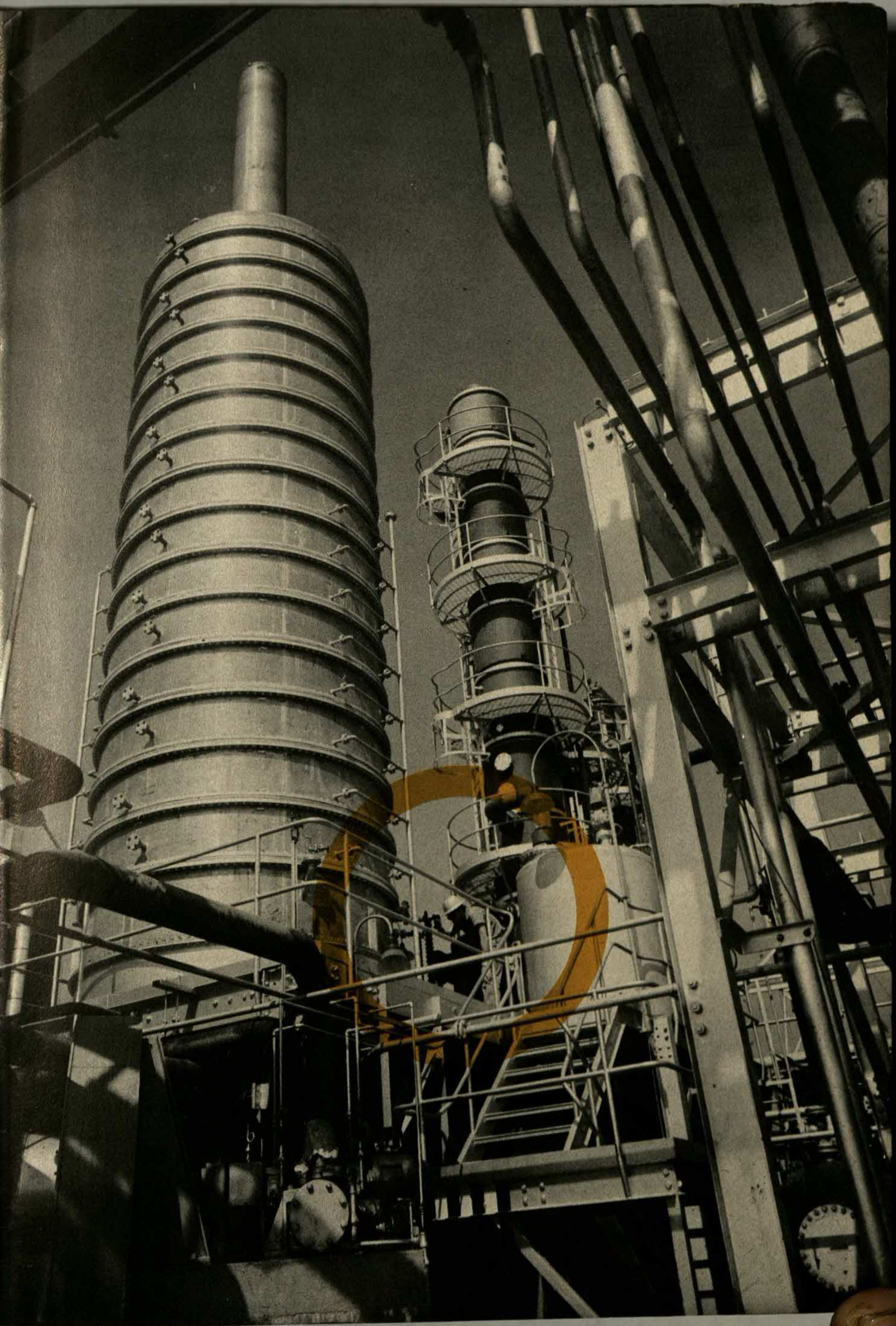
Science Threads the Needle

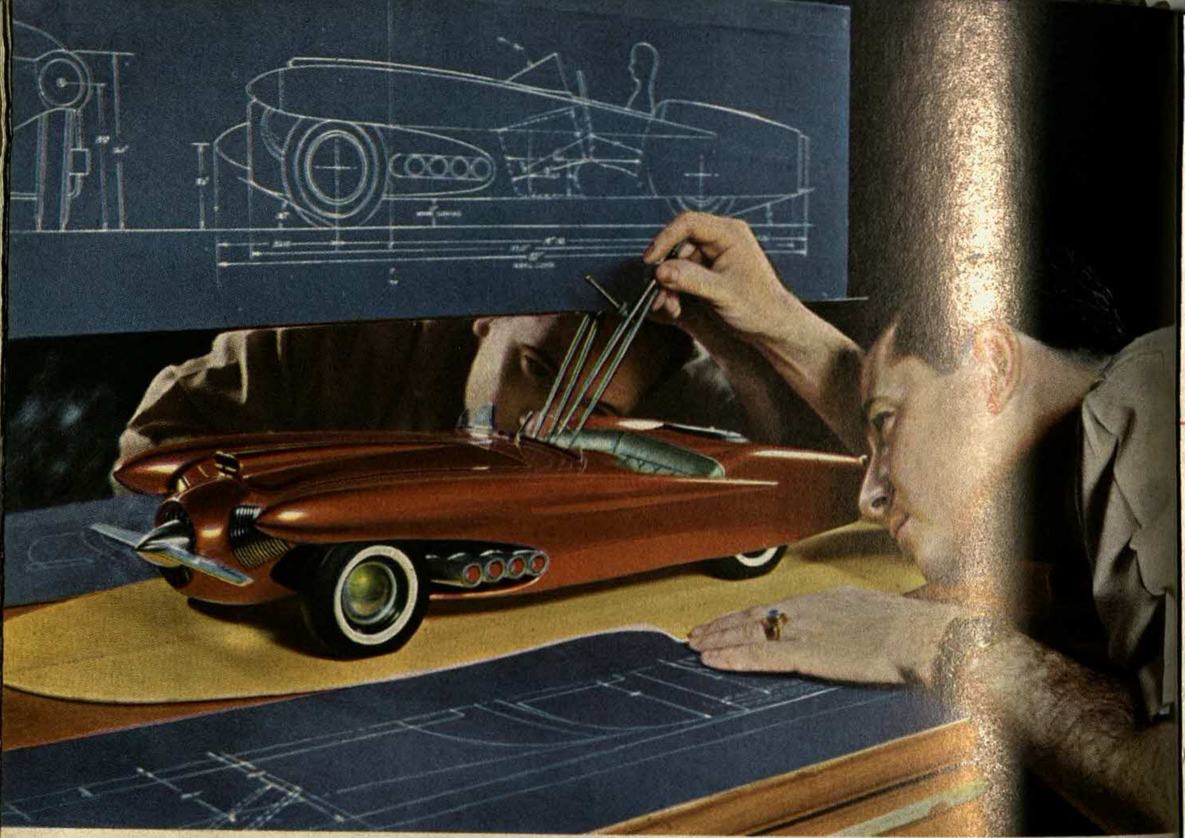
The girl below has a new dress; the boy, a new suit. Yet no sheep grew the wool, no silkworm made the silk, no cotton plant grew fibers for cotton thread. All the clothes this boy and girl are wearing were made in the laboratory. The fibers were "grown" in a test tube like the one above. Making clothing is now a chemist's art.

Large spools in huge factories are now winding thread for your nylon stockings, your orlon sweater, or your dacron suit. Chemists and engineers have given you these fibers and factories. Indeed, science threads the needle.

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

HOWE HIGH SCHOOL, INDIANAPOLIS, IND.



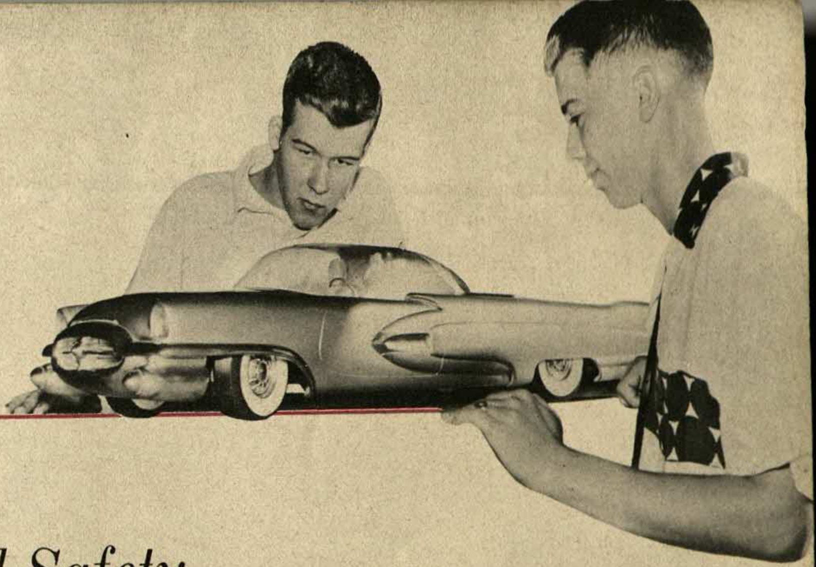


PHILIPPE HALSMAN

FORD MOTOR CO. ↓

← GENERAL MOTORS

Making cars that would go quickly with safety, as they do today, was quite a job. It still is. The streamlined cars that light our highways at night with speeding patterns of light begin with the blueprints of the car designer. In huge factories trained workmen control complicated machines that turn out car bodies, engines and equipment. And in laboratories color engineers mix and test paints to give each car beauty and lasting colors. Science—the work of discovery—is behind the strength and safety of the car you will some day drive.



Speed and Safety

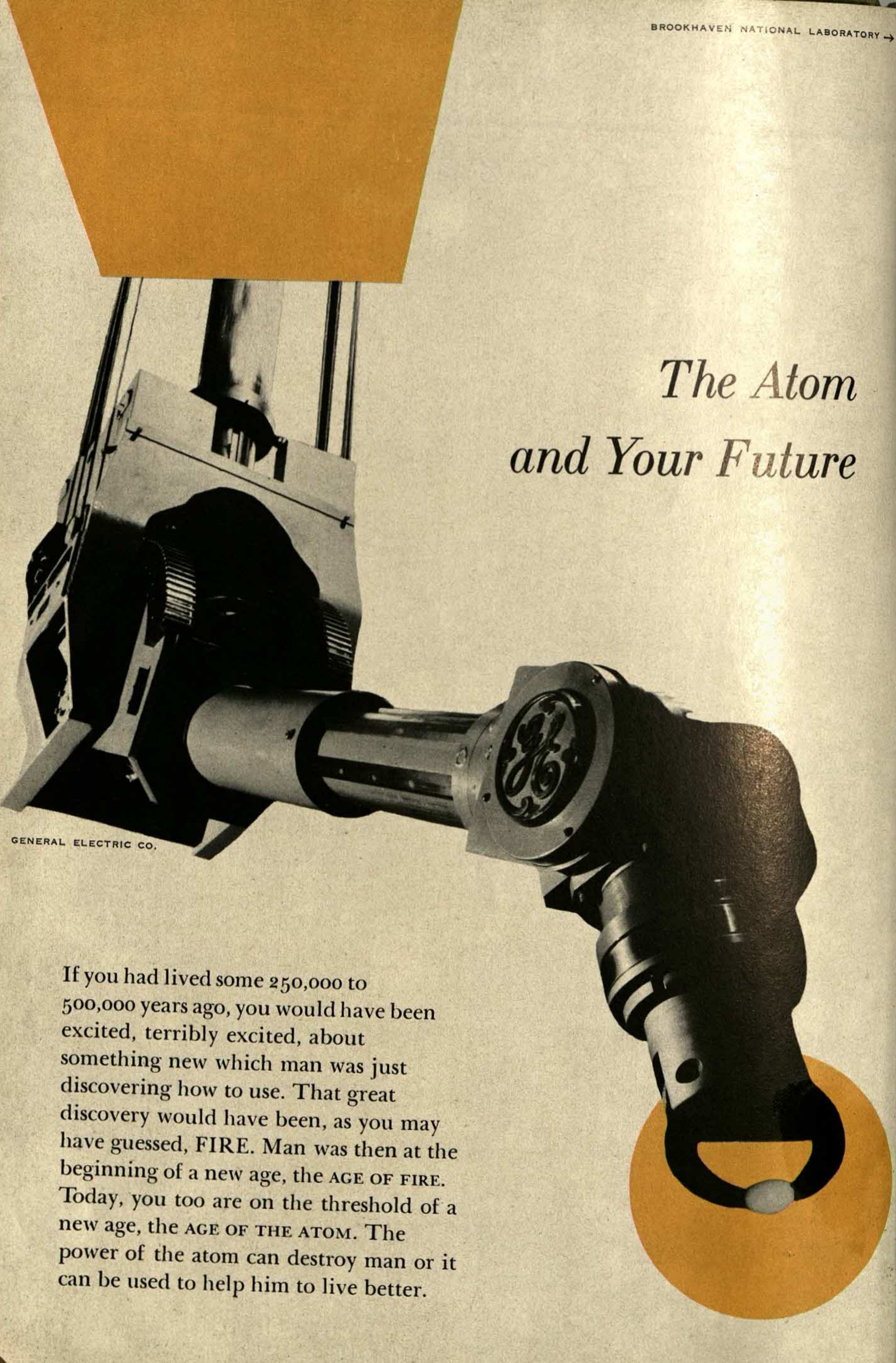
GENERAL MOTORS

Many boys, perhaps the automobile engineers of tomorrow, enjoy building model cars. They are discovering how the automobile works. In your work this year you too will learn some of the facts of science behind the way cars run.

GENERAL MOTORS

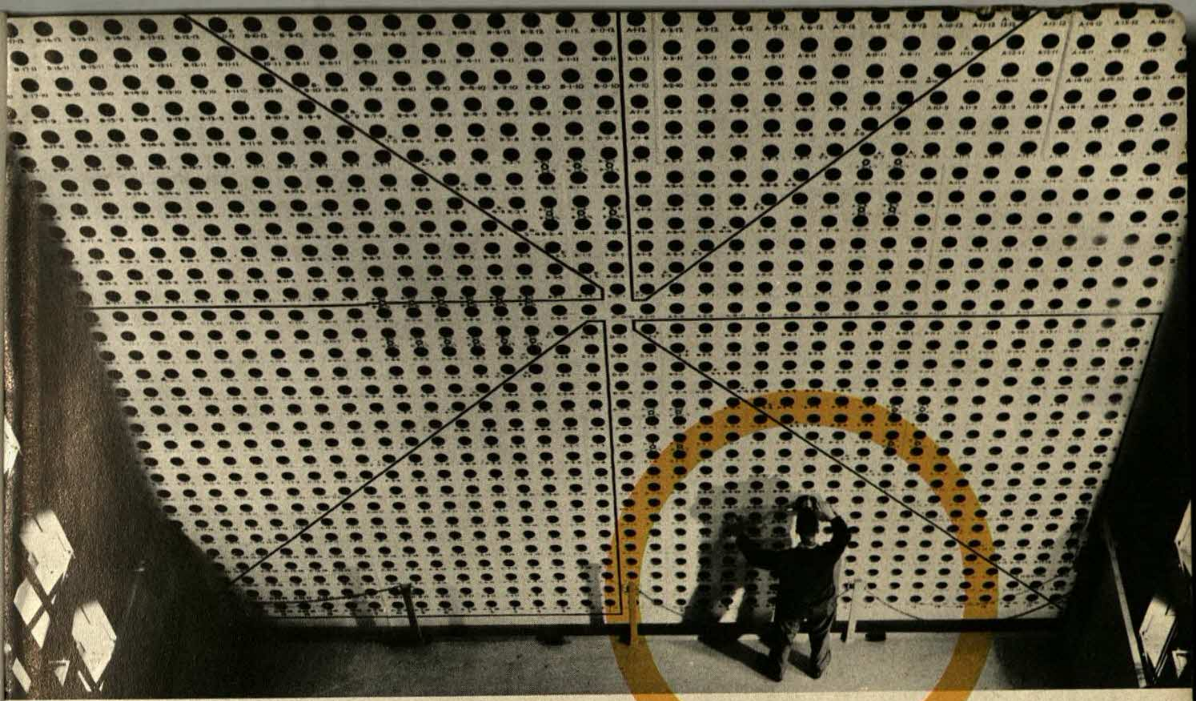
BROOKHAVEN NATIONAL LABORATORY →

The Atom and Your Future



GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

If you had lived some 250,000 to 500,000 years ago, you would have been excited, terribly excited, about something new which man was just discovering how to use. That great discovery would have been, as you may have guessed, FIRE. Man was then at the beginning of a new age, the AGE OF FIRE. Today, you too are on the threshold of a new age, the AGE OF THE ATOM. The power of the atom can destroy man or it can be used to help him to live better.



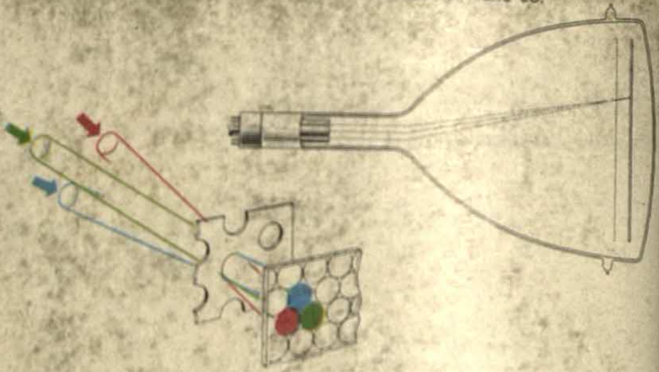
Awe and amazement light the face of the boy gazing at *O-Man,* a giant "hand" that can pick up an egg without breaking it. A strange machine, isn't it? It handles dangerous materials that come from splitting atoms in an *atomic pile* (the plant shown above). In the dark holes are bars of a metal, possibly uranium, whose atoms are being split. Workers who handle products of these splitting atoms need to wear special suits for protection.

BY "LIFE" PHOTOGRAPHER N. R. FARBMAN, ©TIME, INC.

Scientists have put the energy of splitting atoms to work heating factories and driving a submarine. Will they tame the atom in other ways for better living? The atom will play a great part in your future.

HOWE HIGH SCHOOL, INDIANAPOLIS, IND.

ALL PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY RADIO CORPORATION OF AMERICA EXCEPT SPECTRUM—COURTESY BAUSCH & LOMB OPTICAL CO.



Color Through the Air

Right in your home you can see an eclipse of the sun flashed from Minneapolis, a fashion show in New York, a movie made in Los Angeles, or a baseball game. Music, art, literature are yours too with the turn of a knob.

But this was not always so. Many discoveries by hundreds of scientists have made possible the TV camera, our great broadcasting stations, and the tiny tubes and wires in your TV set. Television is one of the finest examples of the uses of science for better, more informed living.

The television camera can capture all the colors of the rainbow. Soon these colors may be brought, blended in lifelike pictures, to every TV screen.

In the TV tube opposite, moving beams of light flash red, green, and blue dots across the screen so rapidly that they blend together and you see the same picture the "eye" of the color camera sees. This year you will read of many scientific discoveries that are packed into a TV set.

UNIT 1

Man—as Scientist

ARNOLD NEWMAN, COURTESY THE UPJOHN CO.

CHAPTER 1

Ways of the Scientist

Science means doing your best with your brains, no holds barred. Science isn't magic. It is men at work — in the laboratory and library. It is men asking questions and finding answers in many ways.

MAN, as you now know, is a great inventor. One of his greatest inventions is a way of work, sometimes called "scientific methods of work." Notice the phrase "scientific *methods* of work"; there are a number of methods, not just one. People say that these methods help scientists solve their problems with great accuracy. Let us look into the ways scientists work. Is their way different from the way other people work? Perhaps a study of the scientists' way of work will help you in your own.

THE NEED FOR ACCURACY

Look up into the sky on a clear night. You may see what one boy saw on p. 19. Compare that view of the sky with the tiny portion you would see if you were to look through a powerful telescope. Which tells you more about the tiny portion of the sky you have just studied — your naked eye or your eye aided by the telescope?

The Right Tools

Take up a glass of water. How warm is it? You may guess. Now put a thermometer into it and read the temperature. You know now how warm it is.

Test your own senses. Measure the lines in Fig. 1 with your eyes alone. Which one is shorter, *a* or *b*? Now try a ruler. What do you conclude?

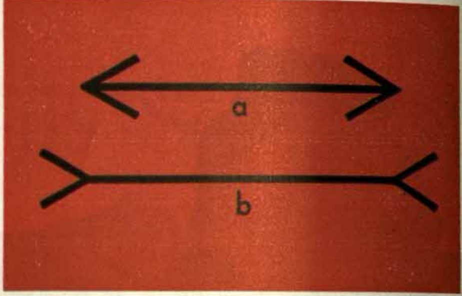
These examples are given merely to show you that it is best not to depend on your senses alone. It is best to use instruments which are more accurate.

Of course you would agree that the more times a measurement is taken under the same conditions, the more accurate will be the final result. Thus one scientist who was working on the temperature of a certain snake recorded these temperatures in his notebook: 18° C. (centigrade), 18.1° C., 18.0° C., 18.1° C. These were taken at the same time, at two o'clock in the afternoon every day for four weeks. Other temperatures were taken at other hours of the day.

This is typical of the way scientists work; they take many measurements in the same manner and under as nearly the same conditions as possible. This means that they always make many accurate observations before describing what they have observed. Accurate measurement is needed for accurate observations.

Honest Reporting by Scientists

It must be clear to you that a scientist cannot take time to observe everything with which he comes in contact. If each scientist who was working on a cure for a disease had to start his observations anew, had to make fresh measurements, progress would be very, very slow. That is why it is necessary that a scientist read what others have observed before him. But how can he be certain that what he is reading is accurate?



1 Which line is longer, *a* or *b*? Now measure each with a ruler. Should you always trust your eyes?

Even if he wished to, a scientist could not repeat all the experiments about which he reads. He accepts them, unless he has a reason to question them, just as you accept many facts you get in this book without personally checking them. Probably it would take more than your lifetime to check each one of the facts in this book even if you had all the instruments and all the knowledge necessary.

A scientist, first of all, depends on the honesty of other scientists. Dishonest people cannot and do not last long in science. They are soon discovered because each scientist builds on facts reported by others. Incorrect observations or dishonest reports are soon discovered. As they are discovered, they are corrected.

Sometimes a mistake is honestly made. For instance, the Roman physician Galen (GAY-len)[1] taught that man's thighbones were curved. He drew this conclusion from looking into the body of a chimpanzee. Since he thought man was like the chimpanzee, he concluded that man had the same kind of bones. In 1543, the Italian scientist Vesalius (vess-AY-lee-us) showed that man's thighbones are straight. This fact he got from examining human bodies. Galen's statements about man's thighbones were proved to be a mistake.

---

[1] **Pronunciation-at-sight, the system used in *Words: The New Dictionary*, Grosset & Dunlap, 1951, is the one used in this textbook.**

The main reason that scientists can depend on each other's observations is that they follow the same rules. First, they make certain that their instruments are accurate and useful for their purposes.

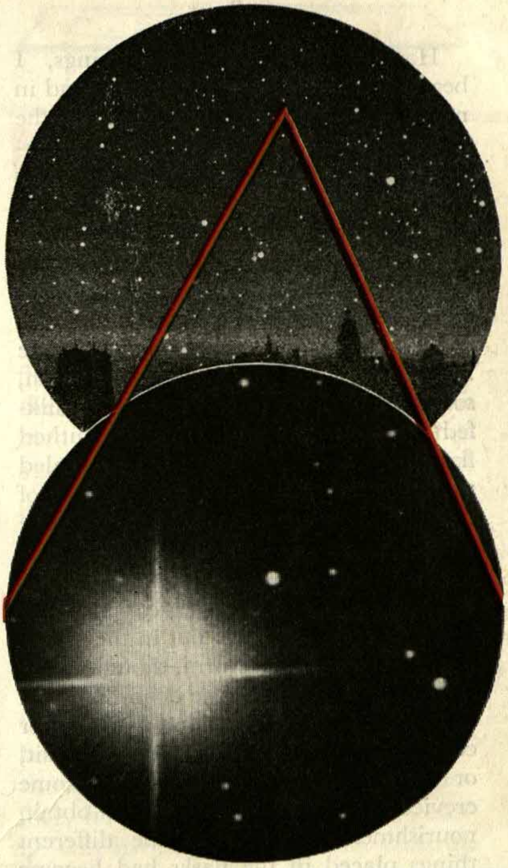
Second, in describing their experiments, scientists always make certain to describe the exact conditions under which each experiment is carried on. Thus other scientists will know how to repeat the experiment accurately if they doubt the results.

RECOGNIZING THE SCIENTIST

Having seen that accuracy is one of the first goals of the scientist, let us look at his other methods. One of the best ways of doing this is to study several early scientists at work.

Recognizing a Scientist — Francesco Redi

Francesco Redi (RAY-dee), an Italian scientist, lived in 1670. In his time most people believed that the maggots of flies (so-called worms which hatch from flies' eggs) came from decaying meat. But Redi doubted that living things (the maggots) could come from a dead thing (the decaying meat). What did he do about it?



AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY AND LOWELL OBSERVATORY

2 The two lines point to one star out of hundreds you can see on a starlit night. A telescope will make this star and other nearby bodies seem closer. Which gives the more accurate observation, your eye or the telescope?

First of all, what he did *not* do is very important. He did not come to a conclusion just from talking it over with others. Instead, he began to look for the *evidence*, for the facts that would give him an answer to the problem, "Do maggots come from meat?" Read for yourself his own words, translated from the Italian.

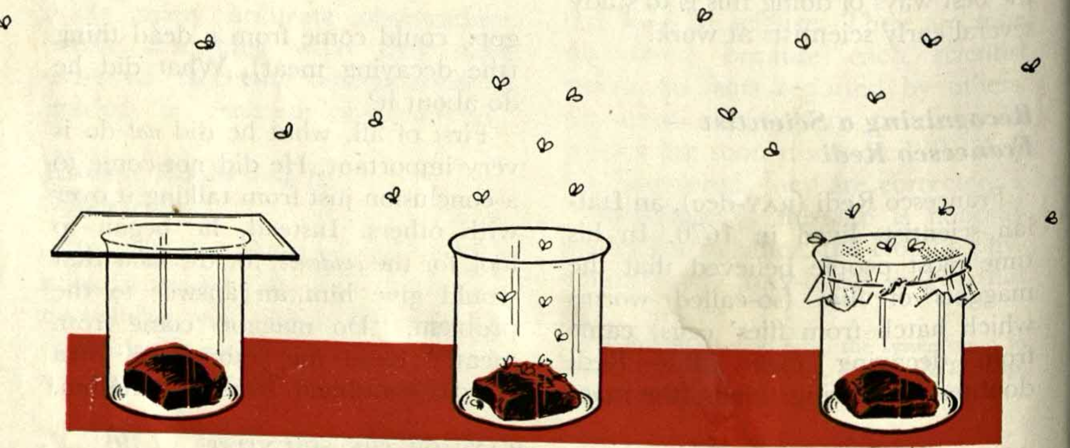
Having considered these things, I began to believe that all worms found in meat were derived directly from the droppings of flies and not from the putrefaction [spoiling] of the meat, and I was still more confirmed in the belief by having observed that before the meat grew wormy, flies had hovered over it, of the same kind as those that later bred in it. Belief would be vain without the confirmation of experiment; hence in the middle of July, I put a snake, some fish, some eels of the Arno, and a slice of milk-fed veal in four large wide-mouthed flasks; having well closed and sealed them. I then filled the same number of flasks in the same way, and left these open. It was not long before the meat and the fish, in these second vessels, became wormy and flies were seen entering and leaving at will; but in the closed flasks I did not see a worm, though many days had passed since the dead flesh had been put in them. Outside on the paper cover there was now and then a deposit, or a maggot that eagerly sought some crevice by which to enter and obtain nourishment. Meanwhile the different things placed in the flasks had become putrid and stinking; the fish, their bones excepted, had all been dissolved into a thick, turbid fluid, which on settling became clear; with a drop or two of liquid grease floating on the surface. . . .

Leaving this long digression and returning to my argument, it is necessary to tell you that I thought I had proved that the flesh of dead animals could not engender [produce] worms unless the semina [eggs] of live ones were deposited therein. Still, to remove all doubt, as the trial had been made with closed vessels into which the air could not penetrate or circulate, I wished to attempt a new experiment by putting meat and fish in a large vase closed only with a fine Naples veil, that allowed the air to enter. For further protection against flies, I placed the vessel in a frame covered with the same net. I never saw any worms in the meat, though many were to be seen moving about on the net-covered frame. These, attracted by the odor of the meat, succeeded at last in penetrating the fine meshes and would have entered the vase had I not speedily removed them.

Redi's Plan of Work

Redi first studied the problem carefully. He made a plan for finding how the maggots got into the meat. In his own words, "I began to believe that all worms found in meat were derived directly from the droppings

3 The scientist Redi wanted to know if maggots came from meat or from flies. Which jars
re controls in this experiment?



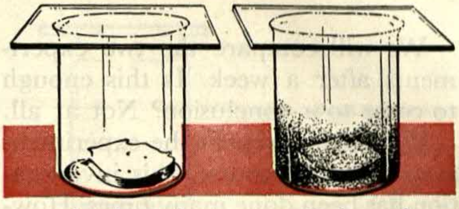
of flies and not from the putrefaction of the meat." Scientists call a good guess such as Redi's, which is based on a few facts or observations, a *working hypothesis* (hy-POTH-uh-siss). A hypothesis is but the beginning of the work a scientist does. It gives the scientist an idea of how and where to begin his work.

Then Redi began to gather and record more facts to find out if his hypothesis was a good one. He did this by *designing and carrying out many experiments* which would help him to get the facts he needed. He kept careful records, for he knew that the memory is often faulty.

Redi's Experiments

In one of Redi's experiments he prepared three jars with a piece of meat in each (Fig. 3). He left one open; he covered one with a kind of cheesecloth; and he made another airtight. He saw many times, not just once, that flies flew to the meat in the open jar and laid their eggs on it. These eggs hatched into maggots. Flies rarely flew to the airtight jar because, as Redi thought, the odor of decaying meat could not reach them. Flies flew to the jar covered with cheesecloth because the odor passed through the cloth. The flies, though, could not get into this jar to lay eggs on the meat. From many observations, Redi concluded that maggots came from flies' eggs, not from meat. He needed all three jars to discover whether maggots came from the meat or from the flies' eggs. Can you understand why?

Recall that Redi had one jar in which flies were permitted to get to the meat to lay their eggs. The second jar was like the first except that the flies could not get to the meat to lay their eggs. Maggots appeared in the meat in the first jar, but they did not appear in the second jar. The second jar was an important part of the entire experiment. It was really an experiment in itself. It was the *control experiment*, sometimes just called the *control*. The control is a check. The control experiment keeps out, or eliminates, the cause or condition the scientist is investigating. Redi believed that *flies* were the cause of the maggots in decaying meat. Therefore, he kept out the flies (the cause he was investigating) in his control.



4 Is moisture necessary to grow mold on bread? Why is the jar on the left a control?

Do you think you can set up a control experiment? Try this one. You have seen moldy bread. Is moisture necessary in order for mold to grow on bread? Let us set up the experiment (Fig. 4). We keep a piece of bread out in the air until it is absolutely dry. Then we moisten it with water and place it in a dry jar. We cover the jar closely.

Now what is the control experiment? We do exactly the same thing — use the same kind of jar, the same kind of dried bread, keep both jars in the same place — with one exception. We do not moisten the second piece of dried bread. The effect of moisture is the condition we are investigating. Hence, we will leave moisture out of the control.

We will compare the two experiments after a week. Is this enough to come to a conclusion? Not at all.

We need to repeat the experiment *many times.* Of course, this investigation has been done many times. However, it is only after several repetitions of the experiments by many observers who confirm our results that we can come to a truly scientific conclusion.

Dr. Alexander Fleming first noticed that the blue mold *Penicillium* (pen-ih-SIL-ee-um) seemed to stop the growth of germs. He asked himself, "Does the mold really destroy germs?" He therefore added Penicillium to the dishes in which he grew his germs. He found that the germs died. What do you think his control experiment was? In his control experiment, he left out the condition he was investigating. He did not add Penicillium to his controls. In his control experiments, the germs grew.

Redi was not satisfied with doing just one experiment. Indeed, he repeated his experiment many times. He did not come to his conclusion from one fact found by one experiment. He could always go back to his careful records for the data of his previous experiments.

Finally, Redi did not keep his discovery secret. He published a report of his conclusions so that other scientists could repeat his experiments and thus check his work.

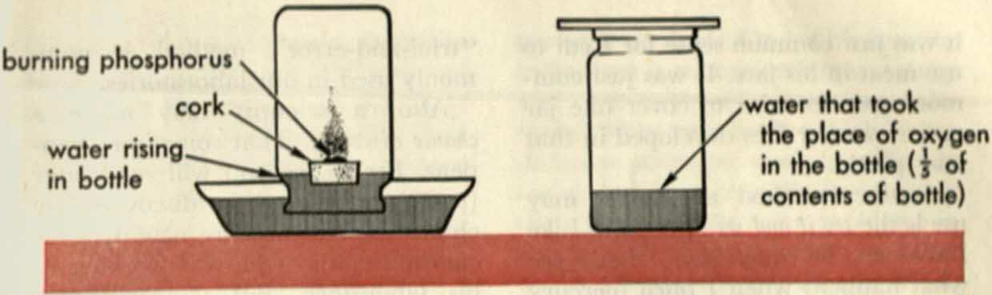
In short, Francesco Redi used several procedures for getting at the truth. First, he carefully thought out his problem. He carefully thought out a working hypothesis and made a careful plan of experiment to test his hypothesis. Second, he made many observations to help him to get at the facts necessary to test his hypothesis. Third, he came to a conclusion only after many observations, only after he had gotten many facts by repeating his experiments many times. He tested his conclusions time and again. Fourth, he published his results so that others scientists could repeat his experiment and check his results.

Are these methods to be found in the work of other scientists? Let us look at another scientist, to check our observations of the methods of the scientist.

Recognizing a Scientist — Antoine Lavoisier

Some 175 years ago, it was believed that when a substance burned it lost weight. It was thought that a fiery substance called phlogiston (floh-JIS-tun) went up in the air. And this seemed perfectly reasonable. For instance, when a huge log of wood burned down, all that was left seemed to be the ashes, which could be carried out in a pail. A grown man had all he could do to carry the log into the room, while a child could carry the ashes out. However, on the basis of certain observations, Antoine Lavoisier (la-VWAZ-YAY) believed that when a substance burned it gained weight, not lost it. This was his working hypothesis. How did he go about testing this hypothesis?

Lavoisier planned several experiments to answer the question, "What happens when substances burn?" He burned sulfur, phosphorus, mercury, and tin (Fig. 5). When he burned these substances in a closed vessel, he found that they combined with about one-fifth of the air in the vessel. (You know from your previous study of science that this is the amount of oxygen in the air.)


burning phosphorus
cork
water rising in bottle
water that took the place of oxygen in the bottle ($\frac{1}{3}$ of contents of bottle)

5 An experiment to find out how much oxygen there is in air. Burning phosphorus combines with oxygen. The water rises to take the place of the space left when the oxygen is used up.

He also found that, in burning, these substances gained weight. He discovered this by weighing the substance carefully before and after burning. He did these experiments many times, observing carefully and keeping accurate records. Thus he came to the conclusion that when substances burn they gain weight by combining with a portion of the air. And he published his conclusions.

When we look closely at Antoine Lavoisier's work, we find the same pattern which we saw in Francesco Redi's work. We find:

1. Careful planning to solve a problem. This includes a working hypothesis or several hypotheses.
2. Careful observations and recordings of facts found through experiments repeated many times. The hypothesis is proved or thrown out on the basis of the facts.
3. Conclusions drawn only from accurate observations.
4. Publication of the work so that other scientists might prove the results for themselves if they wish.

These methods used by Redi and Lavoisier seem entirely reasonable, do they not? They also appear simple to follow. If you examine carefully the methods they used, you see that there appear to be key steps *after the problem has been set*. These are:

a. Getting a good working hypothesis.

b. Planning an experiment to get the facts (observation) needed to prove or give up or change the hypothesis. Often the experiment has a *control experiment* as part of it (p. 21). Only by accurate observation can a hypothesis be proved, or found to be wrong or in need of change.

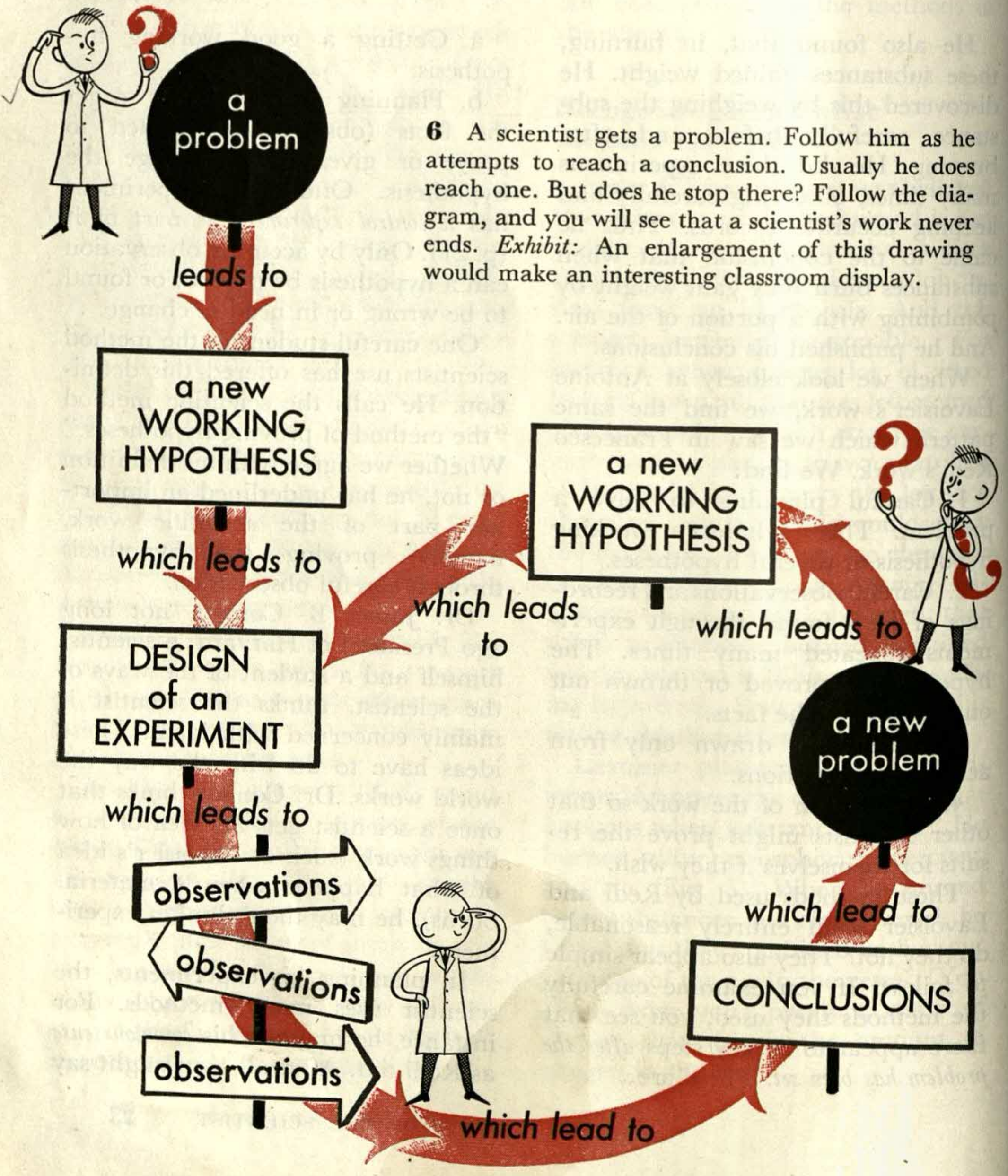
One careful student of the method scientists use has offered this definition. He calls the scientific method "the method of proving hypotheses." Whether we agree with his definition or not, he has underlined an important part of the scientific work, namely, proving the hypothesis through careful observation.

Dr. James B. Conant, not long ago President of Harvard, a scientist himself and a student of the ways of the scientist, thinks the scientist is mainly concerned with ideas. These ideas have to do with the way the world works. Dr. Conant thinks that once a scientist gets an idea of how things work (such as Lavoisier's idea of what happens when a material burns), he may then plan an experiment.

In planning his experiments, the scientist uses many methods. For instance, he may use his *common sense* as Redi did. After all, you might say it was just common sense for Redi to use meat in his jars. It was just common sense for him to cover one jar to see whether flies developed in that one (p. 21).

Another method a scientist may use is the *try it and see* approach. Like Lavoisier, he may say, "Let's see what happens when I burn mercury in air." The "try it and see" or "trial-and-error" method is commonly used in our laboratories.

Also, a scientist may make a *chance discovery*. That sometimes happens. Perkin, as you will read later (p. 28), is said to have discovered by chance how to prepare new dyes for coloring cloth as he was working in his laboratory. But you will also learn, as you read on in this book,



6 A scientist gets a problem. Follow him as he attempts to reach a conclusion. Usually he does reach one. But does he stop there? Follow the diagram, and you will see that a scientist's work never ends. *Exhibit:* An enlargement of this drawing would make an interesting classroom display.

that only trained people can take advantage of "chance." Untrained people let the chance — the great opportunity — slip by. Perkin had trained himself to recognize "chance discovery."

No matter what methods a scientist uses, Dr. Conant would say, there is still one thing which seems to be a part of his way of work. A scientist doesn't stop with his conclusions. A scientist's conclusions, Dr. Conant thinks, lead him only to new problems.

Put very simply we can diagram Dr. Conant's idea somewhat as in Fig. 6. In other words, *the main thing that is characteristic of the way of the scientist is that his work never ends. His conclusions lead only to further problems.* These lead again to new working hypotheses, to new experiments, to other conclusions. These then lead to other problems. There is no end. If the scientist dies or does stop his work for one reason or another, others keep on investigating the ideas.

What most other workers do is, on the contrary, usually an end in itself. They build a house, for example. That is an end in itself. Once the house is built, the job is at an end (except for small repairs). Once a picture is painted, the job is at an end. Once a machine is built, the job is at an end (except always for small repairs). There are, even with houses and machines, problems that call for the work of scientists — as you shall see later in this book. Look again at the diagram in Fig. 6. Can you see the scientist's work is never at an end because one idea leads to another?

Professor P. W. Bridgman, who has studied the methods of scientists, thinks that one cannot really define scientific methods. One of his favorite definitions is that science means *doing one's best with one's brain, no holds barred.* What he is really saying is that different scientists work in different ways, that there is really no one way in which scientists solve problems in which they are interested. In other words, there are many ways in which scientists work. There are many, many different ways in which scientists try to find out how the world works. On this most scientists agree.

How Scientists Work: A Summary

Now that we have seen how some of the great scientists work, let us summarize their ways of working.

First, a scientist starts his work by setting forth his problem clearly. He may get the problem by reading about it, by observing, by listening to others, or by thinking of it himself. Lavoisier, it is thought, got his problem "What happens when substances burn?" from reading the work of other scientists.

Second, a scientist reads the works of other scientists or talks with them. Lavoisier read the works of others; thus, he knew of the work on phlogiston.

Third, a scientist carefully plans to use all possible methods which will help him solve the problem he has set for himself. In this planning, a scientist tries to "guess" at a possible solution of the problem. Such a guess is called a hypothesis (a working hypothesis). Then the scientist plans his experiments around this guess. For instance, Redi guessed that the maggots in the meat came from flies which laid eggs on it, not from the meat itself. If the facts that a scientist gathers do not support his hypothesis, he will throw his hypothesis out or change it, or form another. In other words, a hypothesis helps give direction to the scientist's experiments.

Fourth, a scientist repeats his experiments and records his observations many times before he is satisfied with a conclusion. Lavoisier burned mercury, tin, wood, and other substances before he came to a conclusion about burning.

Fifth, a scientist generally makes his methods and conclusions known so that other scientists may check his results.

Does the successful completion of an experiment end the work of the scientist? On the contrary, as you have read, it leads to more ideas and more problems.

It is clear, then, that it is the methods they use which tell whether men are scientists — not where they work or what problem they choose to investigate.

Putting the Facts Together

After having read of the importance of getting the facts, you may be surprised to learn that scientists want more than facts. Let us see what this means.

When Lavoisier became interested in the problem "What happens when things burn?" he found that oxygen combined with the substance being burned. That was his conclusion. It was an important fact to know. But no sooner had he discovered this than he asked himself, "What does this fact mean? Does it fit in with other facts?"

Thus he tried to find out how other substances burned. He studied the combining of oxygen with different metals. Then he related this idea of the burning of wood to the combining of oxygen with food (burning within the body). He tried to relate the facts he discovered to each other, to find out whether there was any order into which the facts might fall.

When a large number of facts falls into some order, scientists try to form a *theory*. A theory tries to explain the facts discovered. Put another way, a theory is a large idea of how the world works.

For instance, on the basis of all the facts Lavoisier discovered about burning, he formed a theory of burning. His theory states that when a substance burns in air it combines with oxygen. Lavoisier's theory of burning is a large idea of one way the world works.

Lavoisier's experiments supported his theory. Furthermore, on the basis of this theory of burning one could predict the results of new experiments on burning. For instance, if we burn the metal magnesium (mag-NEE-shee um), we may predict that it will combine with oxygen. And it does. If it did not, we should have to change the theory of burning. A theory must fit the facts.

Here's another theory, or large idea, of the way the world works. On the basis of many experiments and observations, scientists have stated the theory that all living things come from other living things like them. We may, therefore, predict that any given thing, let us say a germ, must have come from another germ like it. One worm comes from other worms like it. If this were not so, then we should need to change the theory. A theory, you see, puts together many related facts in some sort of order. It has been said that scientists are always

✓ ***Scientists at Work***

1. A scientist starts his work by setting forth his problems clearly.

2. A scientist tries to discover all that is already known about the problem.

3. A scientist carefully plans to use all possible methods to solve his problems.

4. A scientist repeats his experiments and records his observations many times.

5. A scientist generally publishes his experiments and conclusions for other scientists to check.

on the search for order in the universe. Put another way, they ask, "How does the world work?" It is the business of scientists to find out. And they need the facts.

However, before facts can be put in any order, they must be discovered. That, too, is the business of scientists.

These scientific ways of work you have been reading about help scientists to look for the facts, check the facts, conclude only from the facts. These methods enable them to put the facts into theories — the large ideas which explain the way the physical world works. By these methods, these ways of work, scientists try to solve problems of life and living. The methods are troublesome, perhaps. But they are certain and trustworthy. The methods you have been reading about are the foundations of science.

WHO BECOMES A SCIENTIST?

Next time you go to school, look about in your classroom and ask yourself, "Who in the class is likely to become a scientist?" Will it be John, so seriously at work in a corner of the laboratory? Will it be Sue, who is reading in another seat? Will it be Ted, who has that dreamy look in his eye? Will it be you? This is a hard question to answer because so far no one has found good methods for selecting scientists. But we can begin to search for an answer by asking, "Who can use these scientific methods?"

Citizens Use Scientific Methods

People who are not scientists may use scientific methods. For example, let us go along with Mr. X, who goes for a Sunday drive. Along the way, the engine stops running and his car stops. Notice the way he behaves. He checks every trouble spot — the gasoline supply, the fan belt, the battery, the spark plugs, the oil, the water, until he finds what is wrong. Then he knows what to do about it.

He has gone over the many facts from which he can get at the cause of the trouble. Of course, Mr. X was concerned with a simple problem, but he used careful observation, a scientific method of finding a solution for his problem. Mr. X is not a scientist, but he is using one of the methods of the scientist — observing accurately, then "trying it to see."

Mr. Y is ill. He has a bad cough. He doesn't hang a walnut around his neck as his superstitious neighbor advises him to do. He doesn't try Foolum's Cough Medicine. He doesn't ask his druggist. He goes to a trained expert, his doctor. The doctor uses instruments to get at the true cause of his illness. If the doctor doesn't know, he calls in another expert. Mr. Y is not a scientist, but he is using one scientific method — the common-sense approach. He goes to an expert.

Mr. L is a farmer. His agricultural magazine has an advertisement which states that Magno-Fertilizer is better than any fertilizer known. Mr. L could throw out the fertilizer he has been using. But he does not. He buys a few sacks of Magno-Fertilizer and tries it on several acres of wheat, but treats the other acres as before. (He thus uses a control.) He also asks the county agricultural expert. He also writes to the state agricultural station. Farmer L is not a scientist, but like Mr. Y he is using one of the scientific methods Mr. Y used, the common-sense approach, as well as "try it and see."

If you try to come to a solution of any problem from one fact or only a few facts, you may find yourself in the position of the six blind men who, the story tells us, were trying to discover the nature of an elephant. They had never seen one. Each one came to a different conclusion (Fig. 7).

Whenever you do away with guesswork, superstition, or prejudice and use all the facts you can get, plus the help of experts, to solve your problems, you are using scientific methods. You may not be a scientist, but you are acting intelligently in using science and its methods to solve your own personal problems. Can you see why the methods of science have also been called the Methods of Intelligence? Dr. Bridgman of Harvard uses this term to describe them.

Science Experts

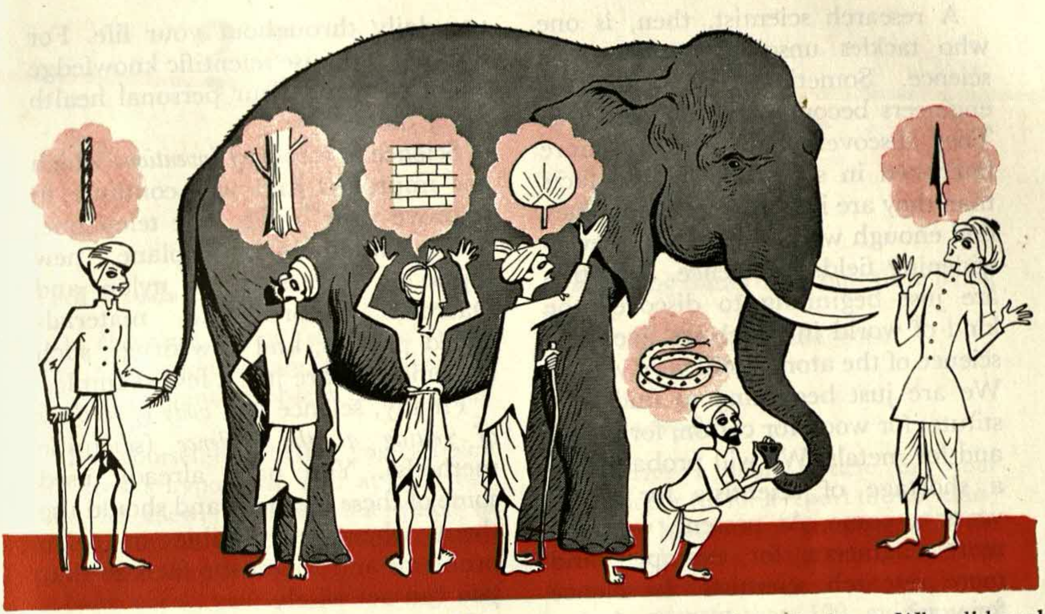
You have noticed that Mr. Y and farmer L went to experts. This is because no one can hope to have the knowledge necessary to solve every one of his problems. These experts may not be research scientists who make original discoveries of facts. They do have the facts and know the recent discoveries in their field. They know how to apply them to solving problems. Some of these experts are doctors, dentists, horticulturists, laboratory technicians, science teachers, engineers, and inventors. Can you mention others? These people have spent years of their lives training themselves to become skillful in using the facts of science, in solving problems you cannot solve yourself. A doctor, for example, spends four years in college, four more years learning medicine, and several additional years as an assistant to other doctors, that is, as an intern in a hospital learning to apply his knowledge.

It may be, however, that you will become a research scientist. Why not?

Research Scientists

One hundred years or so ago, a person became a scientist as soon as he began to make discoveries. William Henry Perkin (1838–1907) was such a person.

Perkin, an English schoolboy, was seventeen years old when he made one of the important discoveries of the nineteenth century. His teacher, knowing of young Perkin's interest in chemistry, suggested to him that he try to make *quinine* (KWY-nyne). As you may know, quinine is an important drug used in destroying the germs of malaria. With his teacher's help, Perkin began to work after school hours. Experiment after experiment failed. But one day, as Perkin began to wash out one of his test tubes, he



7 Six blind men each get a different idea by touching a part of an elephant. Why did each man state a different conclusion about what an elephant is like? Is one observation enough for an accurate conclusion? *Project:* Collect clippings from newspapers and magazines to show a conclusion that has been reached from only one observation. Post the clippings on a bulletin board if possible.

noticed a beautiful color as the water dissolved the sticky mass of coal tar at the bottom of the tube. He repeated his experiment again and again. Each time he got a beautiful purple color called *mauve* (MOHV).

Perkin and his teacher were excited. They knew that most dyes then in use were gotten with great difficulty from certain animals and plants. Perkin worked harder, and he came to his teacher for help in solving many of the chemical problems facing him. So it was that Perkin, trying to make quinine, in 1856 made the first dye, mauve, from coal. Ten years later he succeeded in making another dye. William Henry Perkin had laid the foundation of the dye industry. Over ninety years later, in 1947, Dr. Robert Woodward of Harvard, following some of Perkin's methods plus some of his own, made quinine.

Dr. Woodward, although just as intelligent as Perkin, could not start in the same way. At present the field of science is so complex that a great deal of training is needed before anyone can become a trained research scientist. Dr. Woodward went to college for four years. That was only the beginning. Then he worked to get a doctor's degree in chemistry.

In order to get a doctorate in science, a student must show his ability to do original research. Not only must he make some original discovery, but he must also advance in his studies. This usually takes four to six years after college. So you see that nowadays a trained research scientist is tried and tested before he enters upon his work of discovery.

A research scientist, then, is one who tackles unsolved problems in science. Sometimes physicians or engineers become research scientists. They discover that they are more interested in searching for the facts than they are in applying them. They find enough work, for there are ever-widening fields in science. Scientists are just beginning to discover the kind of world in which we live. The science of the atom is still very young. We are just beginning to find substitutes for wool, for cotton, for wood, and for metals. We will probably see a shortage of scientists for many years to come. At present, we need more engineers, for example, and more research scientists. Is science for you?

Science and You

You may become a research scientist, or you may enter a profession which applies the findings of the research scientist. You may enter a nonscientific profession or business. Whatever you do, you will find that science affects you. For science may be thought of in these ways. It is a *body of great ideas concerning the way this world works.* This book deals with a number of these great ideas. These ideas (such as the one that all living things come from other living things) have been developed through the work of many scientists over many years.

Science is a body of *tried and tested information* which you will need to use daily throughout your life. For instance, you use scientific knowledge about diet and your personal health every day.

Science is a *body of inventions* which has improved and will continue to improve your living. The telephone, radio, automobile, airplane, new types of cloth such as nylon and Dacron, nonbreakable materials called plastics, and new drugs, such as penicillin, are just a few examples.

Finally, science is a *body of methods of getting at the evidence* (scientific methods). You have already used some of these methods and should use them whenever possible to solve problems and to get the facts so that you can act wisely.

You are living in a world where science plays an increasing part in your life. And as you read this book you will see how science affects you in your daily living. Now you know something of the way the discoveries of science have been made. This is only a beginning. Throughout the book you will learn how truly exciting the work and methods of scientists can be.

Look around again in your classroom. Which of you will become scientists? Several of you may. Every one of you, in some way, will be affected by science and scientists. And every one of you will need to know how to use scientific methods to get at the evidence. For if you live by the evidence, your actions will be more intelligent. You will be using science for better living.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

1. *Hypothesis, theory, fact, control experiment* and *conclusion* are five important although common words in the language of science.

Test yourself on whether you can pick out Redi's hypothesis, and at least two facts he knew, from his description of his experiments on p. 20. List one control experiment he used.

Now check your choice against the text on p. 21.

2. On the basis of Redi's observations, which of the following might have been the theory he proposed?

a. Living things come from nonliving things.

b. Living things come only from living things.

c. Flies come from maggots.

Test Yourself

1. Write a short article for your school paper (or for a report to your class) on "The Methods of Intelligence," the term which one scientist thinks describes the way scientists work.

2. A scientist has 100 guinea pigs for an experiment. He wants to find out whether the *X* germ causes a certain disease. He can inject the germ if he wishes. How would you use the guinea pigs in an experiment?

GOING FURTHER

Adding to Your Library

Is your future in science? These books will help you decide. Naturally, you will get the advice of your parents, your teacher, and someone now working in the kind of job you seek.

GENERAL

1. *The Job That Fits You and How to Get It* by John and Enid Wells, Prentice-Hall, 1946.

2. *After High School What?* by Charles Smith (Director, Educational and Vocational Guidance, Board of Education, New York, N.Y.), Burstein and Chappe, New York.

3. *Four-Square Planning for Your Career* by S. A. Hamrin, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1946.

4. *Careers in Science* by Philip Pollack, E. P. Dutton, 1946.

5. *Outlook for Women in Occupations Related to Science*, Women's Bureau Bulletin 223–8, U.S. Department of Labor, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1949.

6. *Outlook for Women in Science*, Women's Bureau Bulletin 223–1, U.S. Department of Labor, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1949.

7. *Choosing Your Career* by J. Anthony Humphreys, Life Adjustment Booklet, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1949.

8. *Handbook of Job Facts* by Alice Frankel, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1948.

9. *Discovering Your Real Interests* by Frederic Kuder and Blanche Paulson, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1949.

SPECIAL

10. *Outlook for Women in Biological Sciences*, Women's Bureau Bulletin 223–3, U.S. Department of Labor, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1948.

11. *Opportunities in Farming* by Paul Chapman, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1947.

12. *Careers in Public Health* by Adrian Gould, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1947.

13. *Physicians and Surgeons*, Occupational Brief 36, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1943.

14. *Women Physicians*, Women's Bureau Bulletin 203–7, U.S. Department of Labor, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1949.

15. *Veterinary Medicine as a Career*, American Veterinary Medical Association, Chicago, 1947.

16. *Medical Laboratory Technicians*, American Registry of X-Ray Technicians, Minneapolis, 1947.

17. *Dietetics as a Profession*, American Dietetics Association, Chicago, 1944.

18. *Chemistry as a Profession*, Vocational Booklet 2, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1946.

19. *Careers in Chemistry and Chemical Engineering*, American Chemical Society, New York, 1951.

20. *A Career in Engineering*, American Job Series 30, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1942.

21. *Television as a Career* by J. McLean, General Electric Co., Schenectady, N.Y., 1945.

22. *Opportunities in Radio* by Jo Ranson and Richard Pack, Vocational Guidance Manuals, Inc., 228 Varick St., New York (14), N.Y., 1946.

23. *Meteorologist*, Occupational Index, New York University, New York City, 1948.

Careers for You

One of the most important things you can do in junior or senior high school is to find out what you want to do as your lifework. Perhaps you may want to go into some field of science.

Form a committee on Vocations in Science. Ask your teacher to reserve for you a place on the bulletin board. Paint a sign *Careers for You*. Under this title list different jobs in science, such as:

Engineering: chemical, civil, mining, electrical, automotive, and aeronautical.

Teaching and research: science teacher, physicist, geologist, biologist, and chemist.

Medical: doctor, dentist, nurse, X-ray technician, and laboratory technician.

Agriculture: farmer, horticulturist, plant and animal breeder, forester, and county farm agent.

Special fields: entomologist (insects), ichthyologist (fishes), herpetologist (reptiles), ornithologist (birds), astronomer (the universe), and meteorologist (the weather).

For information about many positions in government service, write to the Department of Interior, Washington, D.C. The department will send you the requirements for the positions of Junior Biologist, Junior Chemist, Junior Geologist, and Junior Physicist, and many of the other positions listed above.

Your library will have many good books on vocations in science. You might also try to get some of the books and pamphlets listed here.

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN
Dept. of Extension
SERVICE.
CALCUTTA-27

CHAPTER 2

Ways of Learning

Do this. 2 × 2 × 2 × 2. Is your answer 16? You are the only kind of living thing that can do this. Why? You have a brain which helps you learn, imagine, and invent. Yes, in this chapter you shall invent.

Here you sit. It seems as if you aren't doing very much. Yet you are about to do something no creature other than man can do as well. Do you know what that is? Find out for yourself by following these directions.

Do not look at the next page now — not until you have finished the next paragraph.

On the next page are two pictures of what man has been able to do even though his body was not built for doing them. Can you get an idea of any of the things in the pictures without looking at them? Start by making a list of the way man's intelligence has helped him to do things which his body could not do by itself. Now check your list against the pictures on the next page. Have you listed any of the things pictured?

Do you know what you were doing by *thinking* of your list, by imagining what was on the other side of this page? You were using your brain in a way no other living thing can. In much the same way, man, by *thinking*

U. S. NAVY

and imagining, used his brain to help him do the things pictured on this page. The way he can use his brain makes modern man able to do things no other creature can do. But his brain alone is not enough. He has certain other special physical traits — really special parts of his body — which help him to use his brain well.

MODERN MAN AND HIS SPECIAL TRAITS

You are a good example of modern man. Scientists say all of us who are on earth today belong to one kind of man, modern man. You have certain special physical traits which make you a modern man. These special traits set you apart from any other living thing.

8 Man is not able to stay long under water nor fly high and fast without the help of things he has invented. *Exhibit:* On your bulletin board post pictures (like the ones here) to show how man has conquered his surroundings.

BY LIFE PHOTOGRAPHER
PETER STACKPOLE, © TIME, INC.

Your Flexible Thumb

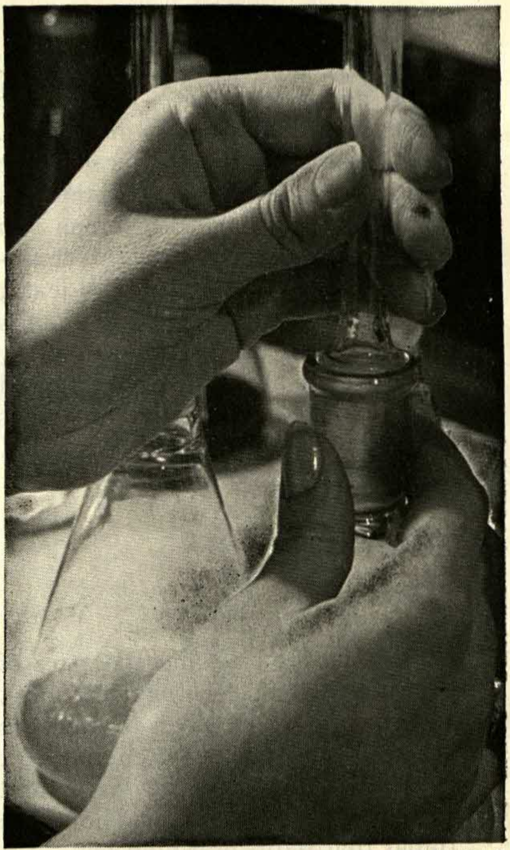
Have you ever looked at your thumb carefully? Touch your right little finger with your right thumb. Easy? Yes, but you are the only living creature that can touch thumb and fingers easily. Suppose you couldn't? You could not use a pencil well. Try writing without using your thumb; just hold it out straight as if it could not touch your other fingers. Try threading a needle without using it; it is very hard to do these tasks without using your thumb. You can see that the thumb can be moved to touch your other fingers. This physical trait, the way you can move your thumb, helps you, modern man, to use tools as no other living thing can (Fig. 9).

Passing Along What You Know

Can you imagine yourself without speech, without being able to make your wants known to others, to speak to your parents and friends? Your voice box is a very important part of your physical traits, those special traits of modern man.

Through his voice box, through his speech, modern man tells to others his wants, his hopes, the ideas he has thought of. He can teach others.

Man's ability to speak helps him to pass on what he learns to the next generation. When, long ago, man invented writing, he was able to record his speech and pass his knowledge on in a better way to his children and his children's children. Any new ways of doing things could be written down accurately; new inventions could be passed on; so could stories; so could man's history. As you *read* this book, you are taking part in one of man's most important ways of passing on what he knows to you, to the new generation.



STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

9 Could this scientist use this apparatus without her thumbs? Try threading a needle or writing your name without using your thumbs.

You know that man has advanced to his present level because of his brain. However, he didn't advance just because he *had* a brain. He *used* it. *He used it to learn.* He used it just as scientists use their brains to solve their problems.

Sir John Lubbock had a dog that learned to run to his food or water when he saw a sign EAT or DRINK. As you will learn later from some of Dr. Pavlov's interesting experiments, dogs can learn. In experiments with laboratory animals we learn something about learning — one of the most important things man does. The important word in the sentence you just read — *learning* — is the key. In common with all other men you owe much of what you are to learning. True, animals are able to learn, but only in a small way. But man is different from other animals mainly because he is able to learn easily and quickly, and to use what he learns in reasoning and making decisions.

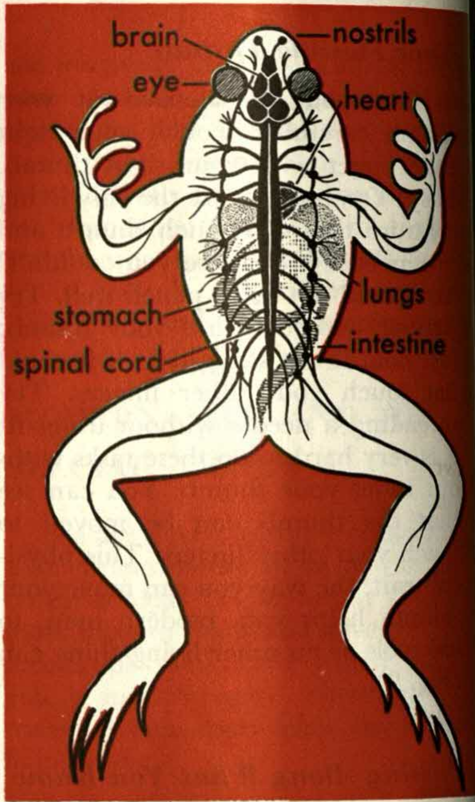
BEHIND YOUR LEARNING

First, let us examine the part of your body where learning takes place. That part of your body is the nervous system. Your nervous system has a lot to do with the way you learn, and with the way you know about the things that happen around you.

Your Sense Organs

You know of your surroundings through your senses. You are always getting *stimuli*[1] (STIM-yoo-lye) from your surroundings (called your environment). Anything in the environment to which plants or animals react is a stimulus. Light and sound are two kinds of stimuli. Any reaction to a stimulus is called a *response*. Jumping up to the slam of a door (stimulus) is a response.

No doubt you have realized that you are never free from stimuli. Light is reaching your eye, and sound is reaching your ear, now. You can see why the eye and the ear are called *sense organs*. An organ is a part of the body. And a sense organ is a part of the body which senses, or receives stimuli coming from your surroundings. Your sense organs, for instance, receive the stimuli of light and sound, as well as of other stimuli.



10 When you dissect a preserved frog, you will find nerves leading to all parts of it body. What do nerves do?

Touch your knee. Touch your head, your elbow, your cheek, your hand, your toe — any part of your body. You feel the touch. You are stimulating the sense organs in your skin. These sense organs receive the stimuli due to pressure. There are also sense organs of pressure and pain in other parts of your body. Thus you may feel a stomach-ache. The sense organs inside your body warn you that your organs inside are not working properly. Whether you are awake or asleep, your sense organs inside your body are receiving stimuli.

---

[1] Singular, *stimulus*.

Next time you eat, ask yourself, "How do I taste my food?" You will realize that there must be sense organs in your mouth. Actually sense organs for taste are found in your tongue. As you smell food, you realize that your nose has sense organs as well.

These, then, are your chief senses: sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch (feeling objects, feeling changes in temperature). With these sense organs, you know of the things around you. With them you recognize your friends, your home, danger, or safety. With them you observe carefully.

How do stimuli lead to responses?

Your Nervous System

Let us look at a frog for our study of the nervous system. Suppose we look inside a preserved frog. Once we get past the skin and push aside the intestines, we see long shiny threadlike structures along the backbone. These are the *nerves.* As we look, we find these nerves everywhere — leading to front and hind legs, to all parts of the frog's body (Fig. 10), much as they do in yours. Where do they come from? Where do they lead?

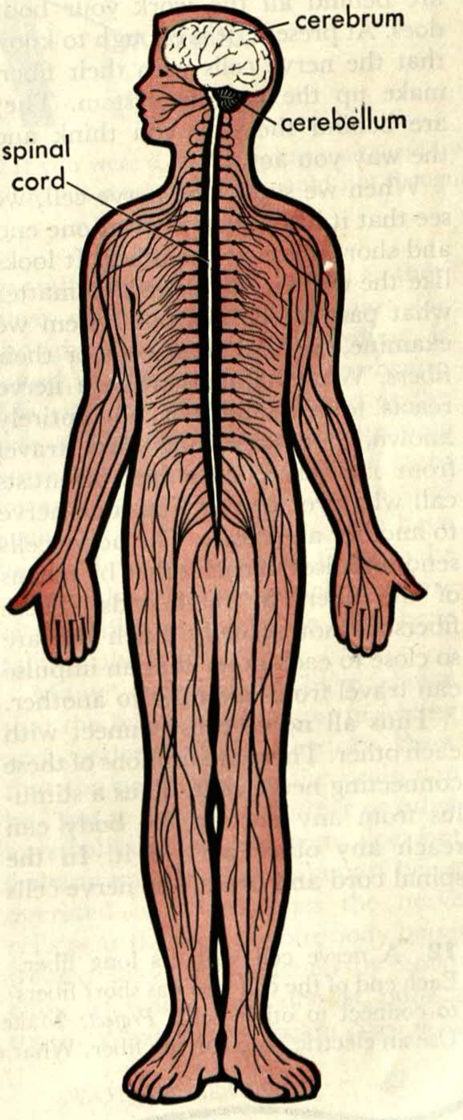
By tracing these nerves we see that all of them come from or lead to the long spine and the bony brain box. It is somewhat the same in man.

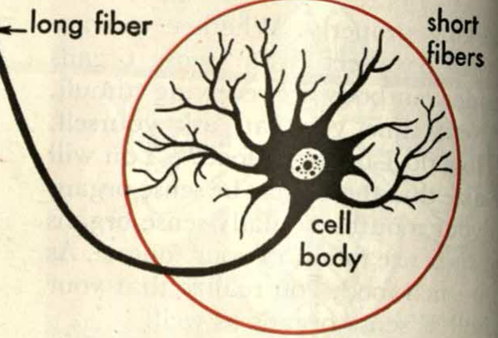
When you look at Fig. 11 you will see the plan of man's nervous system. Nerves lead from the spinal cord or from the brain to each part of the body. Then they lead from each part of the body back to the brain or spinal cord. The brain and spinal cord seem to be the centers of this system of nerves.

Brain and Nerves

Let us look at a bit of brain or spinal cord of an animal and examine it carefully under the microscope. The bit of brain is prepared for examination by specially trained people. They cut it into very thin slices

11 Can you see why a touch on your hand is felt by you in your brain? All parts of your body are connected by nerves.





and then stain it so it can be seen under the microscope. When we look through the microscope at the tissue, we see a number of *nerve cells*. We also see there the fibers which lead from them. If we were to examine any part of a plant or animal body, we would find cells of different shapes. Each one is microscopic in size; that is, it can be seen only with the microscope. But it is these tiny cells which are behind all the work your body does. At present, it is enough to know that the nerve cells with their fibers make up the nervous system. They are behind the way you think and the way you act.

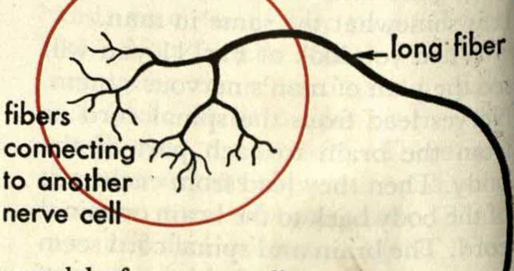
When we study one nerve cell, we see that it has a long fiber at one end and short fibers at the other. It looks like the one on this page. No matter what part of the nervous system we examine, we find these cells or their fibers. What happens when a nerve reacts to a stimulus is not entirely known, but something does travel from one nerve to another. Scientists call whatever travels from one nerve to another an *impulse*. The nerve cells send impulses to each other by means of the fibers at their ends. These fibers do not actually touch but are so close to each other that an impulse can travel from one fiber to another.

Thus all nerve cells connect with each other. There are millions of these connecting nerve cells. Thus a stimulus from any part of the body can reach any other part of it. In the spinal cord and brain, the nerve cells connect with each other by their connecting fibers. Outside the spinal cord and brain, certain long fibers are grouped together to form nerves. Each nerve is made up of thousands of nerve fibers together in a bundle, much as a cable is made up of separate wires.

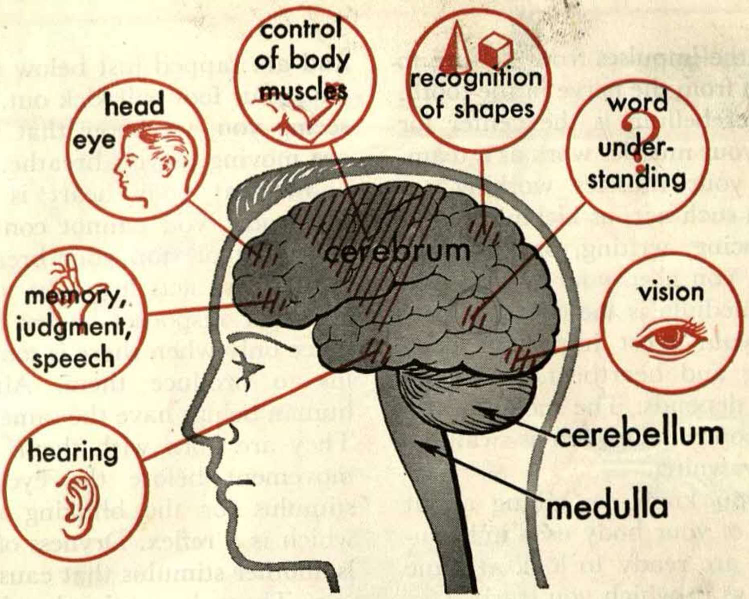
Look at the system of nerves in the human body (Fig. 11). There are nerves going to every part of it.

Your Brain — Center of the Nervous System

Here is a friend writing the chemical formula for water (H_2O). Here is a student solving a problem in algebra; he finds that since $x^2 = 16$, $x = 4$. Another student is memorizing Lincoln's Gettysburg Address. And here you are reading the printed word and learning. A dog or a chimpanzee cannot do any of these things, but man can do all of them.



12 A nerve cell with its long fiber. Each end of the cell also has short fibers to connect to other cells. *Project:* Make a model of a nerve cell. Use an electric cord for the fiber. What could you use for the cell?



13 The brain, showing the job of the cerebrum. If you were a doctor, what part would you suspect might have been injured if a patient had lost his memory? if he could not recognize shapes?

No scientist knows exactly how the nervous system does its work. We do know, however, that the nerves carry impulses to the brain. We know, too, that somehow the brain sends these impulses along so that they go to the right place. Also, you shall see that the brain *interprets* these impulses; that is, it gives them meaning. So the stimulus *football* is interpreted by the brain as something to be kicked, not eaten.

As Fig. 13 shows, we can see that the brain is made up of three parts. The *cerebrum* (SEH-ruh-brum) sits like a cap on the *cerebellum* (ser-uh-BEL-um). And the *medulla* (meh-DUHL-uh) is that long portion which connects the brain with the spinal cord.

We know that the cerebrum has certain parts that do certain work. Scientists have found out about these areas from various experiments with animals, and from studying human beings whose brains have been accidentally injured. For instance, they have discovered that the part for thought, memory, and feeling is found in the front of the cerebrum. The part for hearing is found at the side of the cerebrum, and the part for sight in the back of the cerebrum. Because scientists know the work of each part of the cerebrum, they have been able to make a map to show the parts of the cerebrum which take care of the different things we have been talking about (Fig. 13).

Many experiments have shown that the brain is the center of feeling and understanding. Doctors know that the nerve cells in the brain can be "put to sleep" with ether or other anesthetics. Then the brain does not feel any impulses from the part being operated on. Sometimes the nerve cells near the part of your body being treated may be deadened by novocain, as when your dentist pulls a tooth. What the novocain does is to prevent the impulses from getting to the brain from the nerve in the tooth.

The cerebellum is the center for making your muscles work as a team. To get your muscles working together in such acts as kicking a football, dancing, writing, or threading a needle, you need your cerebellum.

Your medulla is the center of certain of your most important acts: breathing and heartbeat, on which life itself depends. The medulla also helps to control acts such as swallowing and yawning.

Now you know something about the parts of your body used in learning. You are ready to look at some of the ways in which you learn.

YOUR INBORN WAYS

At the moment you were born, you could do certain things. You could do these things almost perfectly and without practice. Some simple experiments will show you some of the acts you could perform without practice.

Unlearned Acts

Get a piece of glass or cellophane which you can hold before your face. Now ask a friend to throw balls of paper at the glass. Do you blink your eyelids? Try it again. Then try it on your friend, and on others.

Here is another experiment. Stand before a mirror, flashlight in hand. Look into the mirror. Then flash the light at one eye. We predict that the pupil of your eye will become smaller. Try it on other students. Do the pupils of their eyes become smaller?

Without knowing you personally, we know that if you cross your legs and are tapped just below the kneecap, your foot will kick out. Without seeing you, we know that your ribs are moving as you breathe. We also know that your heart is beating. We know you cannot control your heartbeat or stop your breathing.

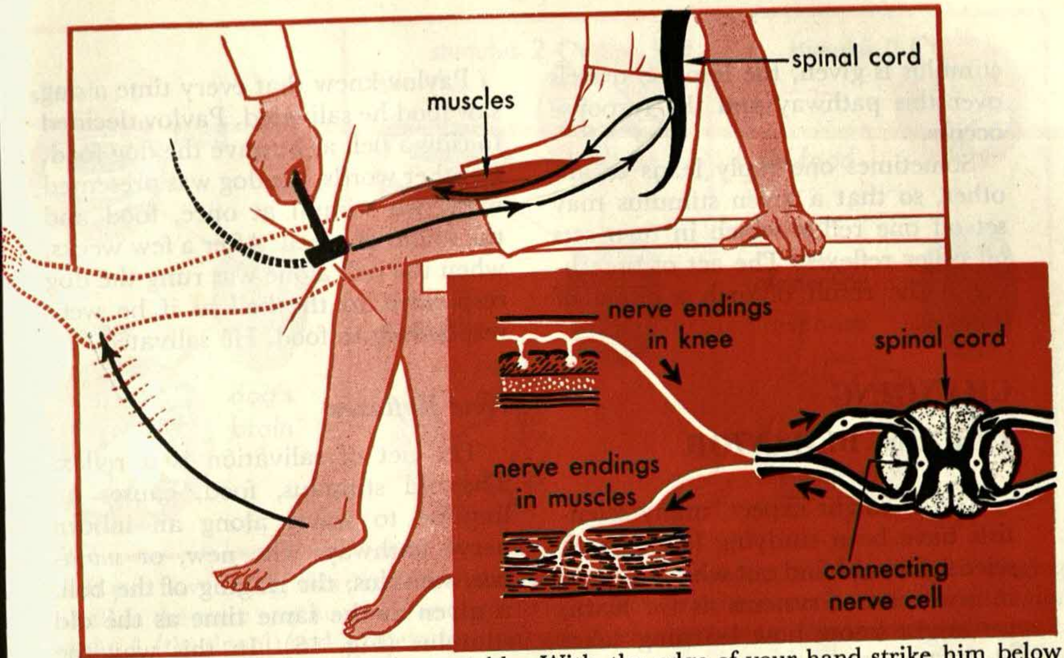
All these acts are *reflex* acts. Like all other responses, reflex acts take place only when there is some stimulus to produce them. Almost all human beings have the same reflexes. They are born with them. A quick movement before the eyes is one stimulus for the blinking response, which is a reflex. Dryness of the eye is another stimulus that causes blinking. There is a stimulus for every reflex act, even for your breathing and for your heartbeat.

Usefulness of Reflex Acts

Try this. What is $8 \times 16 \div 2 \times 4$? You have to think about it. Suppose you had to think about getting your heart to beat, your lungs to breathe, your eyelids to blink, your pupils to become smaller in bright light. Not only that, but suppose you had to think about keeping your heart, lungs, stomach and other organs inside your body working regularly as they do now. Impossible! Of course. Because these acts are reflexes, they are *automatic;* that is, they work without your thinking about them. Reflexes are *inborn automatic* acts. Your heart beats. You breathe.

Explaining the Reflex Act

Let us study one of your reflexes — one so common that ordinarily you don't give it a second thought.



14 Ask a friend to sit at ease on a table. With the edge of your hand strike him below the kneecap. The picture shows what happens. Trace the nerves from below the kneecap to the spinal cord and back to the muscle of the leg, and you will see why his leg kicks out.

Let us examine a common act like your knee reflex (Fig. 14). The stimulus, a tap below the kneecap, sends an impulse along a nerve. This nerve takes the impulse to the spinal cord. From here it is returned to the leg muscle. A diagram of the reflex nerve pathway looks like the one in Fig. 14. You are born with this nerve pathway, just as you are born with other reflex nerve pathways like those for blinking and sneezing.

A reflex act may take place even if the person is under ether and the cerebrum is therefore not acting. Reflex acts do not need thinking, a fact which helps explain a rather peculiar thing. Picture this. You touch a hot iron with your finger. Quickly your arm muscles draw your finger away. *After* you have taken your finger away, you say, "Ouch!" Taking the finger away from a hot object is a reflex act. The impulse goes first to the spinal cord, then right back to the arm muscle. Taking your finger away from the hot object happens, therefore, without thinking. But saying "ouch" needs thought. It is a response you have learned. Since you said "ouch" *after* you pulled your finger away, it shows that your brain did not take part in the act of removing the finger. The "ouch" was a response to the *pain* stimulus which reached the brain after you had pulled your finger away.

However, much remains to be explained. Even though we do not know just what an impulse is, or how thinking is carried on, we know that these acts cannot go on without nerve cells. We know that reflexes are inborn automatic acts. We know that the nerve pathways of these reflexes are present at birth. Once the stimulus is given, the impulse travels over this pathway and the response occurs.

Sometimes one reply leads to another, so that a given stimulus may set off one reflex which in turn sets off other reflexes. The act of breathing is the result of such a chain of reflexes.

CHANGING INBORN BEHAVIOR

As you might expect, many scientists have been studying learning. If scientists could find out what happens in our nervous systems as we learn, we might know how learning takes place. We would then be a long way on the road toward solving many of the important problems which trouble us. Ivan Pavlov was one of the first to do some important experiments on learning. And this is what you might have seen had you visited him early in this century.

Pavlov's Dogs

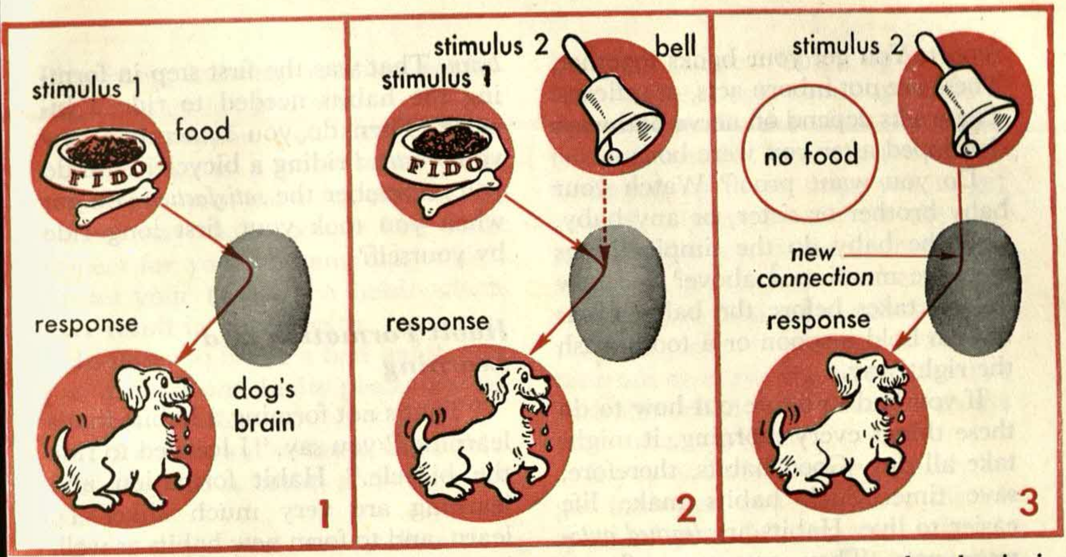
In Ivan Pavlov's laboratory in Russia over 50 years ago, you would have seen a dog acting very strangely. The moment a bell was rung, the dog began to salivate (SAL-iv-ate). (Saliva flowed in his mouth, much as it does in yours when you see or smell a very inviting meal.) He acted just as if he were going to be fed. Usually, a dog's mouth doesn't water when he hears a bell. This response must have been acquired, or learned. In fact, some of Pavlov's dogs would salivate at the sound of a bell, others at the lowering of a white square or a flash of light. How did they get this new behavior?

Pavlov knew that every time a dog saw food he salivated. Pavlov decided to ring a bell as he gave the dog food. In other words, the dog was presented with two stimuli at once, food and the sound of a bell. After a few weeks, when the bell alone was rung the dog responded to the bell as if he were responding to food. He salivated.

New Reflexes

The act of salivation is a reflex. The old stimulus, food, causes an impulse to travel along an inborn nerve pathway. The new, or *substitute*, stimulus, the ringing of the bell, is given at the same time as the old stimulus (Fig. 15). In this way the *new* stimulus is connected with the inborn nerve pathway. For a period of time, the new stimulus is given with the old. So it happens that the two, the old (inborn) and the new (substitute) stimulus, are connected and cause the same response. Finally, the new stimulus alone causes the desired response (Fig. 15). The dog's inherited behavior had been changed. It was as if the animal had acquired a new reflex. Pavlov called this new reflex a *conditioned* reflex.

Notice the part that reward played in forming a conditioned reflex. Each time Pavlov's dog heard the bell, he also got food, which he liked (reward). Pavlov found that after his dogs had learned to salivate on hearing a bell, he could break the conditioned reflex. He did it this way. When the bell was rung, the dog salivated. But he was not given food (his reward). This routine was repeated each time the dog reacted to the bell. After a while, the dog no longer salivated on hearing the bell. His conditioned reflex had been broken.



15 If you have a dog, this diagram shows how you can teach him to respond to the ringing of a bell in the same way he would respond to food. How is the connection made in his brain? Stimulus 1 (the signal) and 2 (the substitute) are given together until he reacts to stimulus 2. *Project:* Train a goldfish or a guppy to come to one corner of its tank when you flash a light.

In much the same way, a dog learns to give a new response to an old stimulus. For instance, hunting dogs on farms sometimes hunt and kill chickens. How would you train the dog to leave chickens alone?

Some farmers, if a dog has killed a chicken, tie it around his neck with wire. Soon the chicken begins to decay and give off a very bad smell. In the dog's nervous system the stimulus "chicken" may be related to the stimulus "bad smell." Or the stimulus "chicken" may have become related to the stimulus "harsh words" given by the dog's master. Thus, the dog learns to leave chickens alone.

Later you will see how a reward or punishment given at the proper time may be of use to you in learning.

Training Your Dog

You can use Pavlov's experiments with conditioned reflexes to teach your dog different kinds of behavior. Suppose you want your dog to learn to sit up. Each time you give him his food or something he likes, say, "Sit up," and make the dog sit up. The stimulus, food, and the sound of the words "sit up" (and the position of his body) will be associated in the nervous system. Soon the dog will sit up when you say, "Sit up." Be sure to reward him when he does this. You should pet him, or give him something he likes. You need not do it each time, but do it often enough so that the learned behavior is fixed.

FORMING HABITS

You get up in the morning. You wash, dress, and tie your shoelaces. You brush your teeth. You use a spoon and fork to eat. You switch on the radio to hear the morning weather report. You get your books together. These are not inborn acts, or reflexes. These acts depend on nerve pathways developed after you were born.

Do you want proof? Watch your baby brother or sister, or any baby. Can the baby do the simple things we have mentioned above? See how long it takes before the baby learns how to hold a spoon or a toothbrush the right way.

If you had to figure out how to do these things every morning, it might take all day. Good habits, therefore, save time. Such habits make life easier to live. Habits are *learned automatic* acts. They are not reflexes, which are *inborn automatic* acts. By getting new habits, you can change your behavior. Bad habits waste your time and may even make you fail in your work. Good habits improve your behavior and make for success.

New Habits

At first, everyone needs help in forming habits. As we grow up, we are more and more responsible for our own actions. In order to form a habit at your age, you should *first want to form that habit*. Although conditioning (habit formation) may go on whether we know it or not, it is generally agreed that habits are formed most rapidly when there is a desire to form the habit. *Second, you must plan for regular practice of the habit. Third, the satisfaction you get out of it helps fix the habit*, that is, makes the act one you can do without thinking. *Desire*, first; then *practice;* then *satisfaction*.

Let us take an example from your past experience. You saw your friend riding a bicycle. "I wish I could ride one," you said. Good. *You wanted to learn*. That was the first step in forming the habits needed to ride a bicycle. Then do you remember how you *practiced* riding a bicycle? And do you remember the *satisfaction* you got when you took your first long ride by yourself?

Habit Formation and Learning

"That's not forming a habit; that's learning," you say. "I learned to ride the bicycle." Habit formation and learning are very much alike. To learn, and to form new habits as well, is really to get new ways of responding to stimuli. It is worth reviewing the steps in habit formation, for they help you form the habits which will help you to learn better.

1. You should want to learn.
2. You must practice regularly the act you want to learn. This usually means that you should plan your work carefully.
3. Whatever you learn to do well brings satisfaction. This satisfaction in turn makes you want to practice more and more until the habit is fixed.

Do you want to learn how to play basketball, how to dance, how to read well, or ice skate? Then reread the "rules of learning" and put them to work to help you learn.

Getting Rid of Poor Habits

If new ways of acting, or habits, can be learned, they can also be unlearned. You know how quickly you forget something you have learned if you don't use it — or practice it. Of course, you can get back much of your skill if you practice again or review your work. That is true of baseball, Ping-pong, knitting, reading, speaking, or other learned acts.

Let us suppose you have a poor habit. What is a poor habit? It is something you have learned to do which may make people lose their respect for you, or something which wastes your time, or a habit which may result in poor health.

In order to break a bad habit, you put a good one in its place. To do this, you should:

1. Really want to break the habit.
2. Practice a better activity in its place.

Here again you can see how you are different from other living things. You can change what you do by getting new habits or by breaking old ones. Let us see how the "tantrum" habit can be broken.

Directing Your Emotions

Some boys and girls have the habit of letting their emotions take over when things do not please them. For instance, if some boys or girls do not get something they want, they sulk or shout or cry or refuse to eat or go into a tantrum.

How can the tantrum habit be broken? Here is a girl who goes into a rage whenever she does not get something she wants. She may have a strong desire to break this habit (Step 1, above). She knows that she will not be able to get along with other people or her friends. The habit is probably "left over" from her baby days. What habit can she put in its place? One way she can break this habit is to put in its place the habit of counting to 50 whenever she begins to fly into a rage (Step 2, above).

Do you fight at the drop of a hat? Do you become angry easily? Do you lose your temper? Count up to 50. If that is not enough, count up to 200 if you need to. By that time, the anger felt will usually have passed away. Counting up to 50 helps you to get control of yourself only for the moment. After you have counted and are calm, try to find the reason for your anger. You will probably find that whatever the reason was, the tantrum or anger was not a useful or desirable reaction. We cannot always have what we want.

If you do not get angry quickly, or get tantrums, you will have the respect of your fellows, and, what is more important, you will have your own self-respect. For as you learn to control your behavior, your ability to improve it will increase rapidly.

LEARNING

Sultan was a fine chimpanzee. He was trying to get a banana that was outside his cage beyond his reach. In his cage were two sticks, each one too short to reach the banana. If you had been there, you would have seen that one stick could be fitted into the other. Fitted together, the two sticks would reach the banana.

After some tries to reach the banana with his arms only and then with each stick by itself, Sultan gave up in disgust. He sat down in his cage; he wandered about. Then suddenly he ran to the two sticks, put them together, and reached the banana. He had solved his problem.

Learning About Learning

Why bring Sultan into the picture? Sultan's acts are examples of the way an animal learns to solve a new problem. A child of five or six might have figured it out very quickly, however.

Sultan, however, is not a human being. The size of his brain in relation to the size of his body is much smaller than yours. You have much more brain material. The chimpanzee's smaller brain limits his ability to solve even simple problems. However, you should not make the mistake of thinking that it is the size of the brain alone which is responsible for man's ability to learn and think. The largest human brain ever measured was that of an idiot.

We do not know just how the brain helps men to learn. We do know that there are certain ways of acting and working that help people when they are faced with a new problem.

One Approach to Solving a New Problem

1. Think of past experiences which are likely to help with the present problem.
2. If necessary, get the advice (experience) of several people you trust. Get all the facts you can which will help you solve your problem.
3. With the advice of others, plan a method of attack on the problem and carry it out.

Study the box on this page. Compare the suggestions for solving a personal problem with the approach of the scientist on p. 27.

Learning to Study

You have an important job. Your job is learning to learn well. The knowledge you have gained about your nervous system can help you improve your learning methods. Let us look here on learning at home; that is, learning by yourself. This is something you will need to do all your life. The successful doctor, businessman, or scientist is studying all the time. He is always meeting problems and forming new pathways in his nervous system. If he did not, others would soon be ahead of him.

We know that a student of your age is a busy person. You have many things you want to do. But the main job is to learn well. Let us look at the steps that will help you save time and get more things done.

Step 1. Defining Your Task. The first thing is to make a clear statement to yourself of the problem to be solved, or the things which need to be done. That is what is meant by "defining the task."

Step 2. Making Your Plan. Once the task is defined you are ready to recall those experiences which you have found useful in the past in solving similar problems. You will probably recall them automatically. Then you will make your plan. "This is the way I will do it," you will say. If it is an English assignment, you will arrange your notes in order, or perhaps make an outline. If it is a science project, you will make an outline and a sketch. If it is an algebra problem, your past experience will suggest a method to use in solving the problem or will send you to a reference in your mathematics text. Whatever your task, you will work out a plan. The best learning grows out of the best planning.

Step 3. Getting the Materials. Once you have a plan, you need to set aside the time and get the materials

16 For you to understand the day's work is important. All other things equal, the boy at the right will do his work better and more quickly than the boy at the left. Which is a picture of you? *Project:* Arrange a place where you can do your best work.

to carry it out. Experience has shown that students who set aside a regular time for study — let us say from 4 to 6 or from 7 to 9 each day — finish their tasks. Some students may need more time, others less. But whatever time you choose, be sure to have the materials you need on hand before you start.

Your place of work should be near your reference books. You should have writing materials, ink, sharpened pencils, blotter, ruler at hand. Why? You may be able to rewrite a sloppy paper, but you will never be able to make up the time lost because you have to search for paper or pen. You will take more time to do your job if you have to get up each time you need your study materials.

Is your place of study like the one shown on the right in Fig. 16?

Step 4. Looking to Your Surroundings. Do Experiment 4 in the activities on p. 50. Boys and girls almost always feel certain that television or radio does not bother them when they are studying. But is it really so? Try the experiment and see for yourself. We think you will find that to learn most quickly and thoroughly you need a quiet place in which to study. The best studying goes on when you are responding to one stimulus, not several.

As you read this, are you listening to your radio? looking at your television set? talking to your friends?

✓ *Reading Well*

If you can learn to get the main ideas from a paragraph or chapter, your studying will mean much more to you. Many students do their assignments but find that they cannot remember much of what they read. Here is a method that will prove useful to you if you have this difficulty.

When you finish a paragraph, put its main idea in one short sentence. Then write this sentence in your notebook, which should always be at your side. Try this. Prove it to yourself. Read the first paragraph on p. 17 and write its main idea in one complete sentence. You were able to do it, weren't you? Didn't it make the meaning of the paragraph clearer to you?

You have heard people say of a person, "He reads well and gets everything from what he reads." Such a person can put his reading into clear sentences. Thus his reports in class are clear and to the point. He can get the thought of each paragraph. He does not try to memorize each sentence; rather he puts the main idea into his own words. His cerebrum is at work.

LEARNING WELL

Once you have the habit of good study, you will be able to learn as well as you want to. You will get a habit important to your success.

William James, the great psychologist, concluded his famous essay on the way habits were formed with the following paragraph:

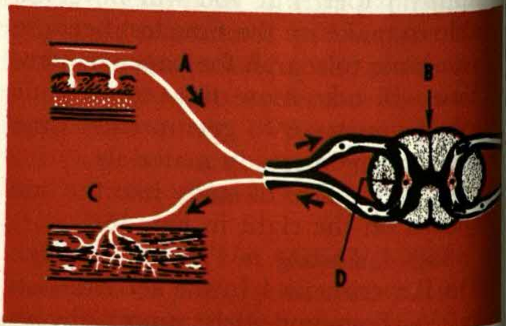
> Let no youth have any anxiety about the upshot of his education, whatever the line of it may be. If he keeps faithfully busy each hour of the working day, he may safely leave the final result to itself. He can with perfect certainty count on waking up some fine morning to find himself one of the competent ones of his generation, in whatever pursuit he may have singled out.

The *competent person* is the one who has been able to change his behavior along lines which bring success. Man's ability to change his own behavior through learning is his most important trait. Upon it depend man's future and your future.

You, Your Learning, and Science

What has all this to do with science? You now know that modern man has special physical traits that set him apart from other living things. One of these is his brain. With its help he thinks, imagines, invents tools. Without this ability to use his brain to control his environment, man would be at the mercy of animals stronger, faster, or better protected than he is. You have an idea of how man learns.

One hundred years ago there was no radio, no television, no automobile, no airplane. There were few big factories, no fine hospitals. But we have all these today. You and others like you have inherited a world in which there is still work to be done. Your brain, your organs of speech, and your hands are the tools with which you and some two billion human beings like you can build a successful and happy life on this earth.



LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

To be sure you understand the key words below, write the statements in your notebook and replace each blank with the correct word from the word list. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

nerve fibers
nerve cell
nerves
cerebrum
cerebellum

reflexes
medulla
impulse
habit
conditioning

stimulus
response
brain
spinal cord

1. Man can invent because of his . . . . At birth, man has a set of inborn acts, called . . . . Later, as he learns, he develops . . . . Inborn acts can be changed by . . . .

2. Each act starts with a . . . to which there is a response. The impulse is carried along . . . .

3. If we look into the brain of a frog we find it is made up of three parts found also in man, the . . . , . . . , and . . . . Without his . . . , man could not think.

Test Yourself

1. In each of the following groups of terms is one term which is not related to the others. Copy that term in your notebook and state why it is not related, and why the others are related. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

a. cerebrum, cerebellum, medulla, spinal cord
b. habit, learning, reflex, conditioning
c. dancing, writing, heart beat, speaking
d. stimulus, memory, nerve pathway, response

2. The diagram on the opposite page is of a reflex act. Copy the diagram in your notebook. Label the diagram and give the use of the parts marked by each letter.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. *Experimenting with animal behavior.* If you have a bottle of fruit flies in your school laboratory, you may discover their responses to certain stimuli. Shake the bottle of flies into a large glass bottle. Quickly plug it with cotton or cork. In which direction do the flies travel? Turn the bottle upside down. In which direction do the flies travel now?

Turn the bottle with one end toward the window. In which direction do the flies travel? What can you say about the responses of fruit flies to the different stimuli?

2. *Experimenting with conditioning.* Can you get a goldfish to rise to the corner of an aquarium just by putting your hand over the corner? (Hint: A goldfish will rise to snap at fish food — the original stimulus.)

3. *Experimenting with habit formation.* Dictate a few sentences of a paragraph on p. 48 to your classmates. Ask them to write it as you dictate. Time them. Now ask them to write it from dictation again, but this time omit crossing their *t*'s or dotting their *i*'s. Give them the same amount of time used before. How many can complete their writing in the time allowed? Why?

4. *Experimenting with learning*

a. Memorize the first stanza of the poem below with the radio or television set on, or stay in the room where the rest of your family are talking. Time yourself. Memorize the second stanza in a quiet room. Time yourself. Which took longer? Why?

Flee from the crowd and dwell with truthfulness;
Suffice thee with thy goods, though they be small;
To hoard brings hate, to climb brings giddiness;
The crowd has envy, and success blinds all;
Desire no more than to thy lot may fall;
Work well thyself to counsel others clear,
And Truth shall make thee free, there is no fear!

Torment thee not all crooked to redress,
Nor put thy trust in fortune's turning ball;
Great peace is found in little busy-ness;
And war but kicks against a sharpened awl;
Strive not, thou earthen pot, to break the wall;
Subdue thyself, and others thee shall hear;
And Truth shall make thee free, there is no fear!

— Geoffrey Chaucer, "Ballade of Good Counsel"[1]

b. Memorize the three lists of words below. Time yourself. Which list took longest? A half-hour later try to repeat each list in order. Which list do you remember longest? Why?

certain	gewiss	naitrec
born	geboren	nobr
science	Wissenschaft	niecsec
Joseph	Seppel	Sephoj
always	immer	swayla
never	niemals	revne
heaven	Himmel	nevhea

5. *Experimenting with plant behavior.* Have you ever made a pocket garden? Take some radish seeds and soak them in water for 24 hours. Now take two small square pieces of glass about the size of a lantern slide and place two pieces of blotter (about the same size as the glass) between them. Space the radish seeds about a half-inch apart on the blotter. Now you have a blotter with radish seeds sandwiched between two pieces of glass. Keep the glass plates together by means of a rubber band. Keep the blotter moistened with water. After a few days the seeds will grow stems and roots. Keep the glass plates standing on one edge. In which direction do the roots grow? Turn the glass plates on another edge. Now what happens to the roots and stems?

6. Take a geranium or a similar plant and place it near a window. What happens to the leaves within 48 hours? Why?

---

[1] Modern version from *The Poems of Henry van Dyke*, published by Charles Scribner's Sons.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. "He was born dishonest," said Mr. Doe. Now that you have learned something of the way living things behave, what would you tell Mr. Doe to convince him that dishonesty is not inborn?

2. "You can't teach an old dog new tricks" is a common saying. Is it true? How would you go about teaching an old dog a new trick? (See p. 43.)

3. Can a plant learn? Explain your answer.

Adding to Your Library

These booklets published by Science Research Associates, 57 West Grand Ave., Chicago (10), Illinois, may be useful to you:

1. *Study Your Way Through School* is a booklet which tells you more about good ways of studying.

2. *Getting Along with Others* helps you understand what is needed to co-operate with other people.

Other titles that deal with your behavior are

3. *Getting Along with Brothers and Sisters*

4. *Growing Up Socially*

5. *Making and Keeping Friends*

These last three booklets have interesting discussions on directing your emotions.

6. If you want to learn more about the way the nervous system works, read *Exploring Biology*, 4th edition, by E. T. Smith, Harcourt, Brace, 1954; pp. 241–254.

A Bit of Research

1. Do rats learn? Plan an experiment to see whether a rat learns. What you will need is a textbook on psychology. Almost any college textbook published after 1945 will do. There you will learn about experiments in learning, especially on rats.

2. Very little is known about the way people imagine. But you can do a bit of "research" on yourself. Try to imagine "white grass" and "blue apples," much as the boy below is imagining a white elephant. What seems to happen in your brain as you imagine?

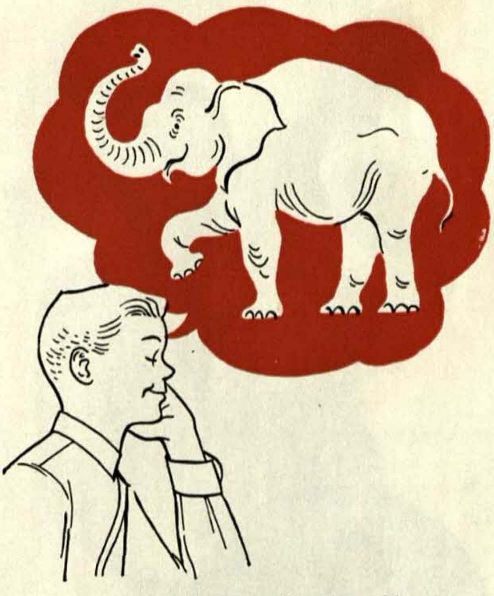
Careers for You

Is psychology for you? *Psychologists* are scientists who study the behavior of animals as well as of human beings. Your librarian and teacher will help you decide. So will reading

I Find My Vocation by H. D. Kitson, McGraw-Hill, 1947, or

Careers in Science by Philip Pollack, E. P. Dutton, 1946.

Is teaching for you? *Teachers* are practical psychologists who try to help young people grow up and solve their problems. Ask your teacher about opportunities in teaching.



17 The wonder of imagination. Close your eyes and imagine a white elephant. Then imagine a white tree. Your imagination helps you invent.

UNIT 2

Lengthening Man's Life

Do you know anyone who was about eight years old in 1954? Then possibly he or she was part of a great medical experiment. If the parents agreed, the child may have had a material called a vaccine injected into his arm. This was part of a test to find a sure protection against infantile paralysis, or polio.

Before anything is tried out on human beings, it is tested by giving it to animals much as the laboratory worker is doing below. The polio injections were tried out in the same way. They were tried on monkeys. They were tested on many people who volunteered to take the injection. Scientists had very good evidence that these injections would protect children against polio. But they wanted to be sure. Finally, about a million children took part in this battle against the disease.

IVAN MASSAR

We now know that man is on the way toward winning another battle against another crippling and killing disease — one of many battles against germs which enter the body and cause illness. Up until the end of the last century, it was dangerous to have operations. They were not safe at all. After the operation many patients died of infection, that is, from germs which had entered their bodies.

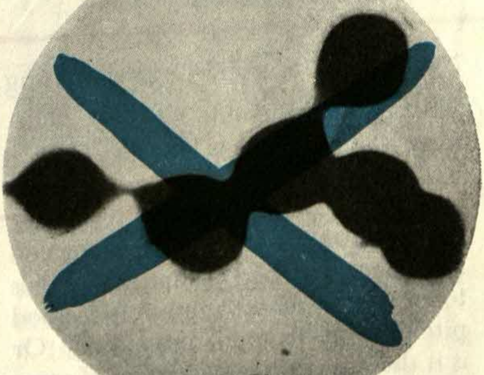
Dr. Joseph Lister, an English surgeon, had read of experiments by Louis Pasteur in France and by Robert Koch in Germany. These experiments had shown that some dis-

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

eases were caused by germs. Dr. Lister ordered the doctors in his hospital to sterilize their hands, their instruments, and anything that might carry germs to the patient. Not long afterward, the death rate dropped. Look at the circles in the photograph. How does the photograph show that the discoveries of Pasteur, Koch, and Lister are being applied?

For a boy or girl born only a hundred years ago, the average life span was only 45 years. Scientists tell us that people born in the United States between 1940 and 1954 will live to the average age of 68 to 68.5 years. *This gift of some 23 years is yours.* These years are yours to use wisely.

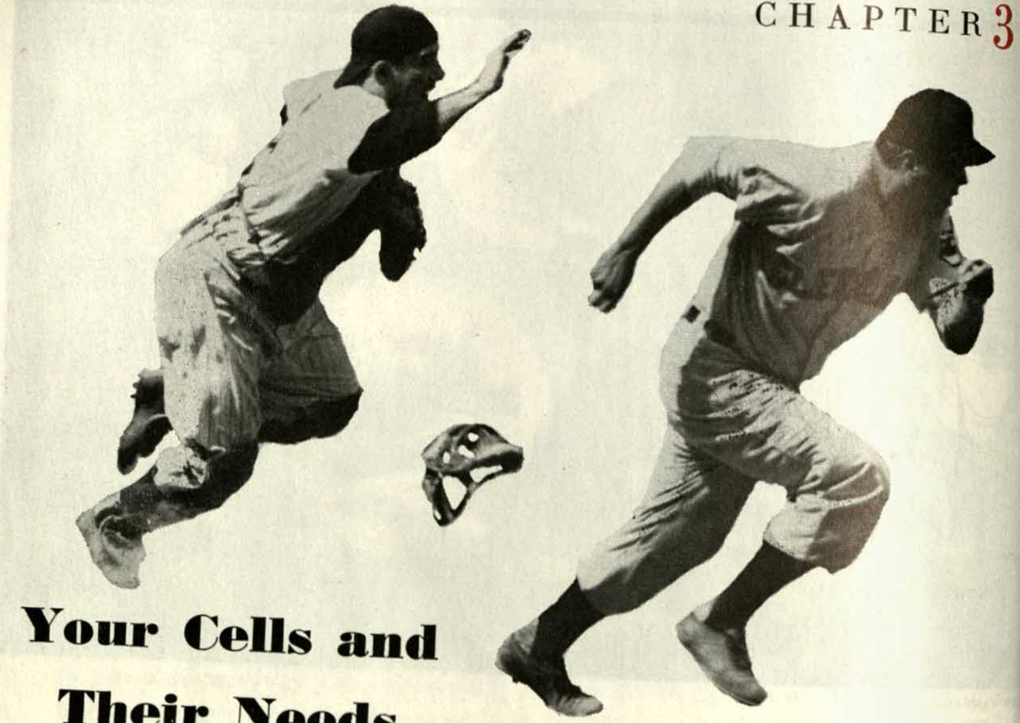
This unit is the story of how those 23 years were added to your life span. It will show that the care you take of your body now may decide what your health will be as you grow older.



SOCIETY OF AMERICAN BACTERIOLOGISTS

*Sausages? No! A highly magnified colony of germs, or bacteria, each a globe joined to others. This type is called a staphylococcus (staf-loh-*KOK*-us), a germ found in pus and common in most infections. By working in a sterile room, the doctors and nurses above keep down danger of infection, and lives are saved.*

CHAPTER 3



Your Cells and Their Needs

Speed and action. Legs churning, body straining — two fine athletes. This could not be without cells working together, as they are right now in your body. Healthy cells mean a healthy body and long life.

THINK of the best baseball team you have ever watched. What makes this team win so many games? Is it good pitching? Is it good outfielding? Or is it the high batting averages of some of the players? If you stop to think, you will realize that neither good pitching, good fielding, nor good batting alone could win baseball games. Of course, a good team needs good players. But after all, isn't it the smooth teamwork of all these players working together that brings in the runs? Next time you go to a ball game, watch the smooth teamwork. Baseball takes good organization. That is, each player has his own position to play, and all the players work as a team and follow the rules.

Your body is something like a well-trained ball team. The cells in your body are the players, each cell doing its own part but also working with other kinds of cells to keep your body running smoothly. Your health depends upon how well all your cells can do their work. When injury or disease strikes, you find that you cannot work or play as well as you should. Then your cells need repairs or replacement, and you may need to call the doctor.

Scientists know that cells are important. They spend much time studying them because they know that every living thing is made of cells. A cell is the smallest unit of living matter. For the moment, you may think of it as a building block of living things, as a brick is a building block of a brick building.

CELLS EVERYWHERE

Let us look at some of your cells.[1]

With a toothpick gently scrape the inside of your cheek. Put the scrapings in a drop of water and add a drop of iodine. When the slide is placed under the microscope, you will see cells like the skin cells in Fig. 18.

Each of these cells has its *nucleus*, a small beadlike part of the cell, near the center (Fig. 18). The nucleus is surrounded by *cytoplasm* (SY-toh-plazm), the part of the cell outside the nucleus. The entire cell is surrounded by a *cell membrane*. Study Fig. 18 and see if you can find the different parts of the cell.

The entire cell — all its parts, nucleus, cytoplasm, and cell membrane — is made up of a substance called *protoplasm*. Protoplasm is the living material of which all cells are made.

Scrape the inside of your cheek again and make another slide. No matter where you scrape your cheek you get the same kind of cells. They cover the inside of your cheek like a flat sheet. Their work is to cover and protect the muscle and nerve cells underneath.

Any group of cells (like your cheek cells) which work together doing one kind of work form a *tissue*. In your body there are groups of bone cells forming bone tissue, muscle cells forming muscle tissue, and nerve cells forming nerve tissue (Fig. 18). These cells of your body are harder to examine than are the cells protecting the inside of your cheek. But you can examine cells of other animals.

In the frog's intestine you will find muscle cells which look like those in Fig. 18. They are long and slender muscle fibers. Each muscle cell can shorten and lengthen as needed, whenever the muscle is doing its work. Your muscle cells act in the same way as those of other living things.

The cells of nerve tissue are long cells, in fact, the longest cells in the body (Fig. 18). Nerve tissue keeps the different parts of your body in touch with your brain. The brain itself is made up largely of nerve tissue.

Cells of still different shapes form the tissues that make up the bones, the cartilage (gristle), and the tendons[1] in your body (Fig. 18). Your teacher may have some slides showing different kinds of cells.

In your body, then, you will find cells grouped in the following tissues:

1. *Cells which cover and protect*. These cells cover the inner and outer surface of your body, such as the cells of your cheek and skin. The cells which line your intestines, your lungs, and your blood vessels are grouped with the protective cells of the body.

---

[1] You will need a microscope, some glass slides, water, a medicine dropper, and some stains such as 1% iodine in alcohol.

[1] Tendons are the tough fiber-like tissues which join muscles to bones.

2. *Cells which help you move.* Muscle cells do their work by getting longer and then getting shorter.

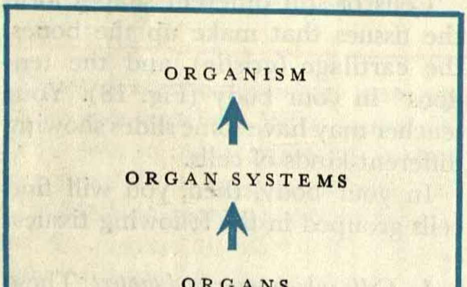
3. *Cells which keep your body tissues working together.* Nerve cells have connections with all parts of the body.

4. *Cells which support the parts of the body.* Supporting cells make up cartilage, bones, and tendons.

5. *Cells in your blood.* Every cell in your body needs oxygen. Your red blood cells take up oxygen and carry it to all parts of the body. Your white blood cells, as you will see later, fight disease by killing germs which enter your body.

Tissues Make Up Organs

Just as cells in your body are grouped together to form covering, muscle, nerve, and supporting tissues, so tissues are grouped together to form *organs.* Each organ in your body has a special use. For instance, your eyes and ears are sense organs for seeing and hearing. Your lungs are organs for breathing. Your stomach is an organ for digestion. Each organ has in it the different kinds of tissue cells.



Organs Make Up Organ Systems

Each part of your body works with other parts to carry on the necessary work. The cell, as you have just read, is the smallest living unit in the body. These cells make up tissues. Tissues make up organs, and organs may work together in a system. The digestive system is a group of organs that work together (mouth, gullet, stomach, and intestines). The circulatory system is another group of organs. What organs would make up the circulatory system?

Organ systems make up the entire body, which we call an *organism.* A living thing made up of its parts is an organism. Every living thing is an organism. You are an organism.

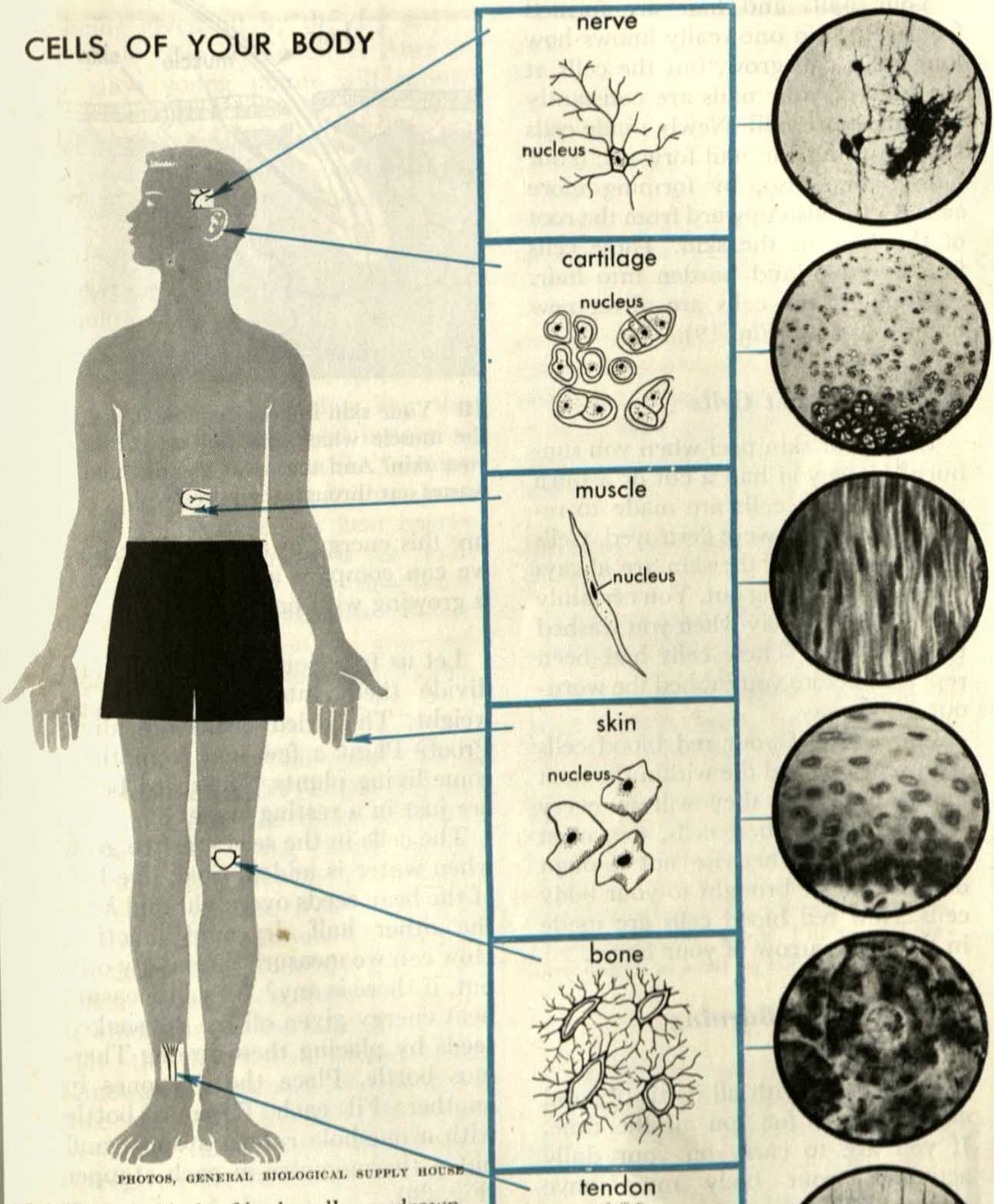
CELLS AS BUILDERS

It is the cell, then, which is the building block of your body. You are growing rapidly now. Your cells make things that are useful to you.

Products of Cells

Certain cells in your body make materials which form bone and teeth. Bone is hard and is made for support. Flip the top of your ear with your finger. You can bend the ear, yet it keeps its shape because of the cartilage in it. Cartilage can bend, yet it is stiff enough to keep its shape. The next time you have meat for dinner ask your mother to save you a piece of the gristle to examine. Gristle is fairly hard cartilage.

CELLS OF YOUR BODY



PHOTOS, GENERAL BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY HOUSE

18 Here six kinds of body cells are drawn, photographed, and located. Do you see the *fibers* in the nerve cells, the *long* cells in the muscles of the intestine, the *flat* cells in skin, the *tough fibers* in tendon cells? Do you see the material between the cells of cartilage and bone in the photographs? What does it do? You are made up of cells and their products.

Your nails and hair are formed from cells. No one really knows how long nails can grow, but the cells at the base of your nails are constantly forming more nail. Newly made cells keep pushing the nail forward. Your hair grows, also, by forming more cells. Cells push upward from the root of the hair in the skin. These cells join together and harden into hair. As long as the cells are alive, new hair will grow (Fig. 19).

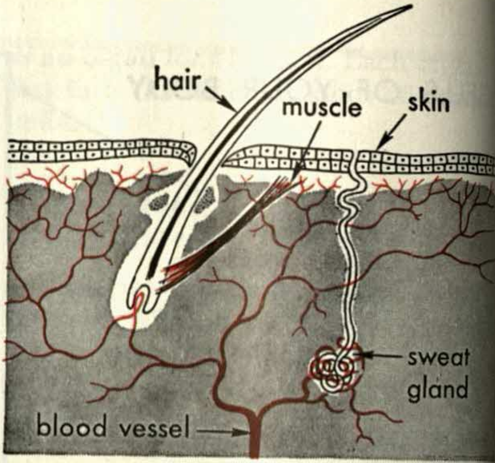
Replacing Lost Cells

Does your skin peel when you sunburn? Have you had a cut or a burn recently? New cells are made to replace those that were destroyed. Cells on the surface of the skin are always dying and wearing out. You certainly rubbed some away when you washed this morning. These cells had been replaced before you rubbed the worn-out ones away.

One-third of your red blood cells will wear out and die within the next four months, as they will in every human being. These cells, too, must be replaced; otherwise not enough oxygen will be brought to your body cells. New red blood cells are made in the red marrow of your bones.

Cells, and the Burning Within Them

Your body, with all its tissues and organs, works for you all the time. If you are to carry on your daily activities, your body must have energy.[1] For instance, you must have energy for moving your arms and legs. You must have heat energy to keep your body warm. Can we measure this energy in any way? Perhaps we can compare a living thing that is growing with one that is not.



19 Your skin in cross section. Do you see the muscle which can pull at the hairs of your skin? And the sweat gland which sends wastes out through the pores?

Let us take some dried beans and divide them into equal parts by weight. The dried beans are alive. Proof? Plant a few and from them come living plants. The dried beans are just in a resting stage.

The cells in the seed start to grow when water is added. Soak one-half of the bean seeds overnight and keep the other half dry and inactive. How can we measure the energy output, if there is any? We can measure heat energy given off by the soaked seeds by placing them in one Thermos bottle. Place the dry ones in another. Fit each Thermos bottle with a one-hole rubber stopper and put a thermometer in each stopper (Fig. 20).

The bottle with the soaked seeds in it shows a higher temperature. Why? Heat energy is being given off by the soaked seeds because they are starting to grow. But no heat energy is being given off by the dry seeds. All their cells are inactive. After a few days young plants will sprout from the soaked seeds. The dry seeds do not sprout. When cells are active, energy is one result. One form of energy of active cells is heat energy.

---

[1] Scientists define energy as the ability to do work.

Cells and Their Energy

One way to get energy is to burn coal. The carbon in the coal unites with the oxygen in the air. Then the coal burns with a flame. In the cells of your body, something like this happens, except that food instead of coal is burned. Because the burning of food in the cells is slow, there is no flame. Energy, such as heat energy and energy for growth, is the result of this slow burning. This slow burning is called *slow oxidation* (oks-ih-DAY-shun). Oxidation, as you may remember, is the combining of a substance with oxygen.

Let us burn a substance like a small amount of fat (butter will do) in a jar. You can make a butter candle by putting some butter around a string. We find that oxygen is needed, because if we cover the jar the flame goes out. The heat of the flame is the energy given off. When we add limewater to the air in which the fat has burned, we find that the limewater turns milky. Limewater turns milky in the presence of carbon dioxide. Therefore, we know that carbon dioxide has been given off. On the square of glass that covered the jar in which we burned the fat, we find droplets of water. Therefore, in addition to carbon dioxide, water is also given off. Thus water, carbon dioxide, and energy are all given off when a substance is burned.

The same thing happens when sugar is burned (oxidized) in your body. Carbon dioxide and water are given off. And energy is also a result of this oxidation, as it is in the burning of fat.

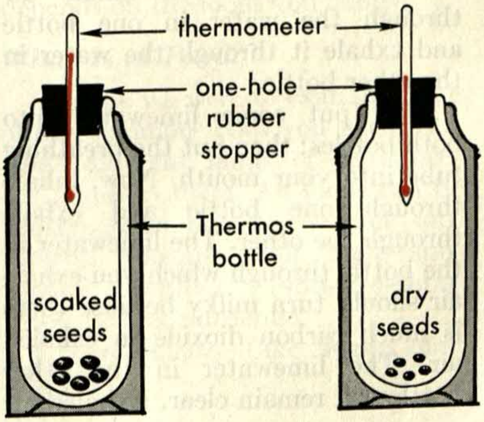
Every person burns, or oxidizes, his food at a different speed. This speed can be measured by a *metabolism test*. A metabolism test is a test of how fast oxidation is going on in a person while he is at rest. The test is taken when the person is lying quietly, several hours after he has eaten. A metabolism test measures the heat energy given off by the cells of the body.

Burning in Your Body Cells — A Test

You can show that your cells are oxidizing, or burning food, now.

First, put a thermometer into your mouth. After leaving it there for two minutes you will find it

20 Compare the red lines showing the temperature in the two thermometers. Why is it higher for the Thermos bottle at the left than for the one at the right? Do this experiment with beans, squash, radish, and other seeds. Fill your Thermos bottles at least $\frac{1}{4}$ full of seeds.



probably reads 98.6° F. Your body must be giving off heat. When your temperature is higher or lower than 98.6° F., your cells are not working as they should.

Second, blow your breath through a straw into limewater. Since the limewater turns milky, your body is giving off carbon dioxide (CO_2). Carbon dioxide is the waste product given off during oxidation (Fig. 21).

Third, go over to a mirror and breathe on it. You can see that you are giving off water.

Perhaps these tests do not really prove to you that you are oxidizing food. How do you know that you are not breathing in as much carbon dioxide or water as you are breathing out?

Testing the Air, In Your Body and Out

If we could test the air that comes into the body and the air that leaves it, we would have proof that air is changed as it passes through the body. When you breathe in, we say you *inhale* air. When air leaves the lungs, we say you *exhale* air.

With the simple apparatus shown in Fig. 21, you can inhale air through the water in one bottle and exhale it through the water in the other bottle.

Now put some limewater into both bottles; then put the breathing tube into your mouth. Now, inhale through one bottle and exhale through the other. The limewater in the bottle through which you exhale air should turn milky because there is much carbon dioxide in exhaled air. The limewater in the other bottle will remain clear. Exhaled air contains almost 4% carbon dioxide. This carbon dioxide comes from the burning of food in your cells.

Use the same apparatus as in Fig. 21. Dry both bottles. Place them in ice. Now breathe in and out for a few minutes. You will find that the bottle through which you exhale will get misty on the inside. Where did the mist (made up of water) come from? The water in the bottle came from the water vapor in your breath. It has been found that we breathe out about one-third of a quart of water a day from our lungs.

We can show what happens when food is oxidized in the cells by writing it this way:

$$\text{oxygen} + \text{food} \rightarrow \begin{matrix}\text{carbon}\\ \text{dioxide}\end{matrix} + \text{water} + \text{energy}$$

Scientists have found that a simple sugar, called glucose, is oxidized in the body. When sugar is being oxidized, the chemist writes:

$$\text{oxygen} + \text{sugar} \rightarrow \begin{matrix}\text{carbon}\\ \text{dioxide}\end{matrix} + \text{water} + \text{energy}$$

Sugar, especially glucose, is a basic substance used in the body.

One scientist has said that "sugar is to the body, as coal is to the steam engine, or oil is to the furnace, or gasoline is to the motor." You eat every day to get enough glucose for energy for your work, play, and growth. But you can't live on just sugar. Believe it or not, you would soon starve on a diet of sugar alone. Your body cells need more than sugar in order to be healthy. Let us see what else you need to keep your cells in action. What other foods do you need to keep oxidation going on in your cells? Let us look at what you ate yesterday. List the things you ate yesterday before you read the next section.

THE FOOD YOU EAT

Of the five lunches listed below, which do you think is the best for good growth and good health?

John's lunch: Bread, spaghetti with tomato sauce, potatoes, cake

Helen's lunch: Jelly sandwich, bottle of pop

Joe's lunch: Soup and a glass of milk

Tom's lunch: A roast beef sandwich, green salad, milk, an apple, bread and butter

Betty's lunch: An ice cream soda and a bar of chocolate

Only Tom's lunch is truly a good lunch. His lunch builds good bone, muscle, and nerves. It gives him the energy he needs to do his work. It is also tasty and satisfies his hunger. Did your lunch today do these things for you? Perhaps you need to know more about foods and how to choose those that are best for you, if you wish to be strong and healthy.

If you were asked, "Why do you eat?" you might answer, "I eat because I am hungry," or "I eat to keep strong and healthy." These answers are partly true, but do you know all that foods can do for you?

The right foods give your body materials for:

1. Growth, that is, increase in height and weight
2. Energy for work and play
3. Repair of muscle and other cells in the body
4. Smooth working of all the organs of the body

DAVID B. EISENDRATH, JR.

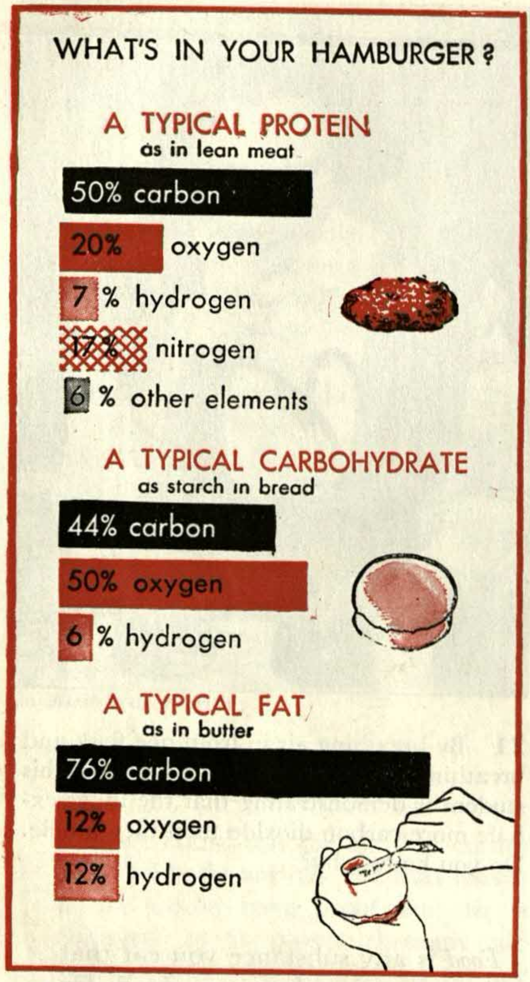
21 By breathing air in from one flask and breathing it out through the other, this student is demonstrating that the lungs exhale more carbon dioxide than they inhale. Do you know why?

Food is any substance you eat that will give you what you need for *growth*, for *energy*, for *repair of tissues*, and for *smooth working of the body*. Which foods should you eat to provide for these four needs? Your health depends on the foods you choose.

What Is in Food?

Suppose we were to examine some of the common foods you eat to see what different kinds of substances are found in them. All foods can be broken down into a few basic substances. Chemists call these substances *nutrients* (NOO-tree-entz). There are six nutrients:

1. *Carbohydrates* (like sugars and starches)



22 What's in your hamburger? Carefully study the table above and see. How does a typical protein differ from a typical carbohydrate?

2. *Proteins* (like those in egg white and meats)
3. *Fats* (like those in butter, oil, and fat meat)
4. *Minerals* (like salt and iron)
5. *Vitamins*
6. *Water*

Every food is made up of some of these nutrients. For instance, milk has all six of them. That is why it is such a good food.

On pp. 76 and 77 you will find tables listing foods and the amounts of the different nutrients in them. Turn to the list to find out how many kinds of nutrients Tom got in his lunch.

What was missing in Joe's lunch? What nutrients were in your own lunch? To get the different nutrients in your lunch, you need to plan your diet. As a first step, study the tables on pp. 76 and 77. Can you see how people who plan diets carefully would use this table?

What Is in the Nutrients?

You know that you are surrounded by air. You know that air has in it such substances as oxygen and nitrogen. Substances such as oxygen and nitrogen are known as elements. For the moment, all you need to know is that there are 92 elements which are found in nature. (Scientists have made eight others.) Some are known to you — copper, gold, oxygen, nitrogen, carbon (in coal), silver, sulfur, and others. Right now it is enough to know that all materials are made up of elements.

Nutrients, then, are made up of elements. These elements are put together in such different ways that they form different nutrients. Here are a few examples.

Sugars and starches, the *carbohydrates*, are made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. *Fats* also have these same elements, but they have less oxygen than the carbohydrates do. *Proteins* have nitrogen in addition to carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. The proteins may also have phosphorus and sulfur. *Water* is made up of hydrogen and oxygen.

You can see that the foods you eat are made up of different chemical elements. The storehouses for all these elements are the soil, water, and the air (Unit 6, Chapter 19). Plants and animals take these elements and turn them into food.

The amount of each nutrient is different in different foods. A food chemist can tell you what nutrients a food has in it and how much there is in any kind of food.

There are simple tests for nutrients. You can learn how to test foods for starch, sugar, fat, and protein. See "Going Further" at the end of this chapter.

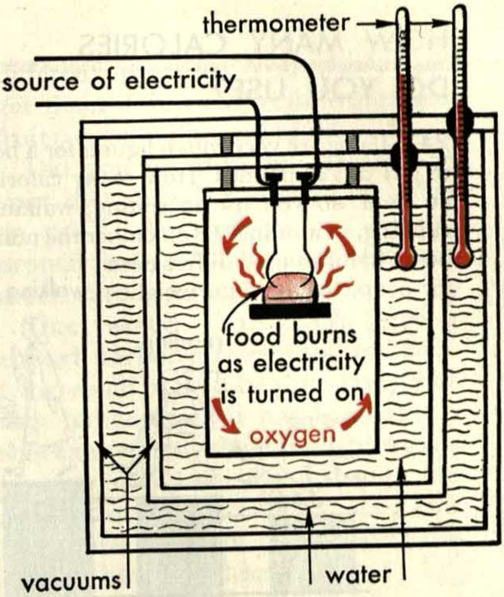
Eating for Energy

Do you know that it takes energy even to wink your eye or to lift your hand? How much more energy, then, must it take to ride a bicycle or to play ball! One of the reasons why you eat is to get enough energy for your work and play.

Scientists have found that we need different amounts of energy foods, depending on our age and what we do. In order to find out how much energy food each person needs, scientists had to find a way to measure the amount of energy stored in foods. They measured the chemical energy stored in foods by changing it into heat energy.

Heat energy is measured in units called *calories*, just as length is measured in feet and inches (Fig. 23). The unit of heat energy used in food measurement is the *large calorie*.[1]

Scientists have found that a large pat of butter has about 75 calories, an ordinary bar of chocolate 250, a cup of milk about 125, an apple about 100, and a slice of white bread about 60 calories.



23 A calorimeter is used to find the number of calories in a food. The burning of a fixed amount of food heats the water to the temperature shown on the thermometer on the left. The one on the right does not change because of the vacuums. By measuring the difference in temperature between the two thermometers, scientists can figure the number of calories in a food.

On p. 76 is a table which will give you an idea of the calories in the different foods you eat. Use this table to discover about how many calories you have had in your food today.

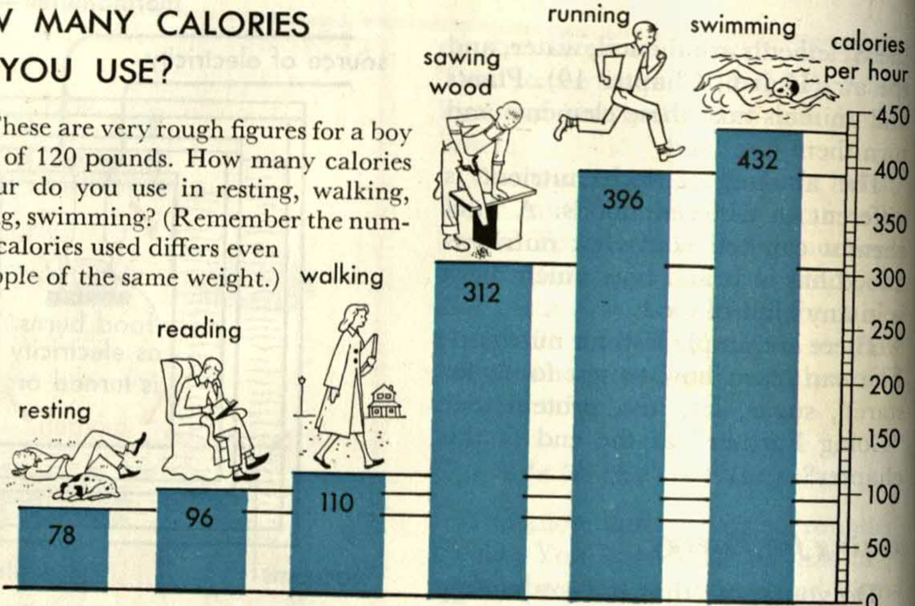
How Many Calories Do You Need?

Even if you knew the number of calories in the kinds of food, the information would be useless in planning your meals. You would still have to know how many calories you need. A person who is very active uses more energy and, therefore,

---

[1] A large calorie is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1,000 cubic centimeters of water (about a quart) 1° C. In this book we use the term *calorie* to mean large calorie, to follow most popular books on nutrition.

HOW MANY CALORIES DO YOU USE?



24 These are very rough figures for a boy or girl of 120 pounds. How many calories an hour do you use in resting, walking, running, swimming? (Remember the number of calories used differs even for people of the same weight.)

needs more calories than a person who is not active. You use more calories dancing or playing tennis than you do while reading. A farmer needs more calories than a clerk who works at a desk.

Let us suppose you weigh 120 pounds. You will need 78 calories an hour for sleeping or just lying still. Each hour you will need about:

90–100 calories for just sitting
or reading
95–105 for writing
100–120 for typewriting
100–150 for walking
450–900 for heavy exercise

Knowing these facts, you can figure out how many calories you will need on any particular day. But first, you should make a list of the day's activities and of the time you plan to spend doing each one.

Here is another way to figure roughly how many calories you will need. Young people need about 25 calories per day for each pound of body weight. If you weigh 100 pounds, you will need about 100 × 25 or 2,500 calories per day.

The National Council on Food and Nutrition has found that boys in the first year of high school take in, on an average, 3,500 to 3,800 calories per day. Girls, on the other hand, take less, 2,400 to 2,800 calories per day. Most girls are less active than boys.

However, many boys and girls take in many more calories than they need. A bar of chocolate alone gives you 250 calories, an ice cream soda as much as 300.

How much energy is there in 2,500 calories? Enough to give a boy or girl weighing 100 pounds enough energy to climb 75,000 stairs, each a foot high! Another idea is pictured for you in Fig. 24. How many calories do you need for running? for swimming? for walking? for resting?

Counting Calories

Which are the best foods for energy? Carbohydrates, such as sugar and starch, are the cheapest energy foods and the easiest for the body to use. Athletes, mountain climbers, and other very active people know that a chocolate bar, or just plain sugar, is a source of quick energy.

Fats furnish energy, too; and fats can be stored in the body. But the body cannot use fats as well as it can use sugars or starches.

Proteins, too, can supply energy, but the main use of proteins is in growth and repair of the body. Proteins help build muscle, blood, and other tissues. They are the only nutrients which have in them large amounts of nitrogen, which the body must have for building new cells.

A normal daily diet for an active boy should have in it about one pound of carbohydrates, one-quarter pound of protein and one-quarter pound of fats. This, does not mean that every day's diet must have these amounts. But a week's diet should take care of these average needs.

Study the table on p. 76. Notice that you can get carbohydrates from fruits and vegetables as well as from cake and ice cream. You will see, too, that such vegetables as peas and beans supply protein, so that you do not need to depend entirely upon meat for your protein. Make a list of five of the best sources of protein in foods.

Scientists have found that there are several kinds of proteins and that the body is in best health when it has a supply of all of them. In an experiment with mice, Dr. G. Howland Hopkins found that, when the mice's diet had corn protein as their only protein, they died in 17 days. But when he added other kinds of protein, the mice lived. Your body also needs different proteins. Your body will get them if you eat fresh vegetables, fruits, eggs, milk, and meat.

Did you get different proteins in your diet today? Examine the table on p. 76. Are you getting enough protein and fat? Are you getting too much carbohydrate?

One would think that getting enough carbohydrates, fats, and proteins would make a healthy body, but that is not true. It has been found that rats fed only these three nutrients become ill and die. Even though the amount of food is enough, they can still starve to death. Let us see how such a thing could happen.

STARVING ON THREE MEALS A DAY

Many persons are starving without any reason, with plenty of food to eat. They may have enough carbohydrates, fats, and proteins, but they may starve for lack of certain substances called *vitamins* (VY-tuh-minz). Without vitamins the body cannot work properly. Even though the vitamins are needed in very small amounts, they are so important that people can become ill and die for the lack of them. These people develop what doctors call a *deficiency* (deh-FISH-un-see) disease — a lack of something needed for good health.

Dr. Lind Cures Scurvy

In 1747 Dr. Lind, a sea surgeon in the British navy, did a remarkable experiment with twelve men who had scurvy. Scurvy was a disease that sailors developed on the long sea voyages of that time. Their gums bled and started to decay; their knee joints swelled and grew weak. Because cuts and wounds would not heal, many were in danger of dying from loss of blood. Dr. Lind felt that there might be something missing from the diet of the sailors, so he planned his experiment to look for the cause of scurvy.

He gave three of the twelve men some vinegar, three some cider, three a mixture of mustard seed, garlic, and other herbs. These mixtures had been used for scurvy in the past but had never seemed to help. These were his controls. To the last three men he gave lemon juice. As Dr. Lind reported, the men who were given lemons (or limes, as the British called them) recovered so quickly that they were "appointed to nurse the rest of the sick." The British government soon ordered that all men at sea be given lemon juice regularly. Thus a trained scientist, a doctor, found both a cure and a way to prevent scurvy.

Now, as a result of a great deal more scientific work, we know that the juice of lemons, limes, oranges, grapefruit, tomatoes, and green vegetables has vitamin C, or ascorbic (as-KOR-bik) acid. Vitamin C prevents scurvy. Getting enough vitamin C keeps the skin and teeth healthy. It is also important for growth, and for keeping blood vessels and bones in good condition.

Mothers give orange and tomato juice to babies because milk does not give them enough ascorbic acid — vitamin C — for the health of the small blood vessels.

Dr. Eijkman and His Birds

Many scientists living in the late 1890's had begun to believe that wherever there was a disease, a germ could be found that had caused it. However, a disease called *beriberi* (BEHR-ee-BEHR-ee) for years had been causing death in China and the East Indies, but no one had found a germ that caused it. It was a disease of the nervous system which caused paralysis and death. Dr. Eijkman (EYK-man), who was working in a hospital in the East Indies, had been trying to find a germ that might be the cause of beriberi, but he had had no success. Then he began to study the diets of those who had the disease. He found that prisoners in the nearby jail, who were fed mainly brown rice (rice with the outer husks on the grains), never had beriberi.

Dr. Eijkman wondered if there were something in the husks of the rice that kept the prisoners from getting beriberi. So he decided to try an experiment using the chickens kept in the hospital yard. He fed white rice to some of the chickens and brown rice to others. Soon the chickens given the white rice began to get sick, while those given the brown rice stayed healthy. He was pretty sure, then, that he had found the cause of beriberi — a lack of something in the diet. That "something" was in the husks of the rice. He then began to feed brown rice to his patients, and those with beriberi began to get well. Did you notice that Dr. Eijkman used a control? What was it?

Today we know what it is in the brown rice husks that prevents beriberi. It is vitamin B_1, or *thiamine* (THY-uh-min). Other scientists building on Dr. Eijkman's work have found that not only brown rice but other whole-grain cereals, green vegetables, eggs, and yeast have thiamine.

In the last few years, scientists in the Philippines have wiped out beriberi. How have they done it? By adding vitamins to ordinary rice, so that even those who eat white rice will get the vitamins they would get in brown rice. Again, science is helping to save lives.

Vitamin B_1 not only prevents beriberi, but it also helps the nervous system and the intestines to work better. You need to eat foods with vitamin B_1 in them, so that you can keep healthy.

The nervous system and the digestive system also need vitamin B_2, or *riboflavin* (ry-boh-FLAY-vin). B_2 is found in meats, dairy products, and green vegetables.

Dr. Goldberger and Pellagra

In 1925, Dr. Joseph Goldberger of the United States Health Service was working in a certain southern town. Before him sat a tired-looking boy. The hands he held out for the doctor to see were covered with sores. The boy did not know why he was so tired, for he got enough sleep and plenty of food. He did not have enough energy to work or play. Dr. Goldberger did not have to ask the boy what was wrong. He knew. He was looking at a case of *pellagra* (peh-LAY-gruh), a disease caused by poor diet.

When the Health Service first sent Dr. Goldberger south to study pellagra, the doctor thought it might be a disease caused by a germ. One day he visited an orphanage. There he found that only the children between the ages of six and twelve had pellagra. He wondered why. He discovered that only children under six had milk to drink, and only those over twelve had meat. This made him suspect that pellagra was another disease caused by a lack of something in the diet. Given milk and meat, the children in the six-to-twelve age group got well.

Then Dr. Goldberger asked the governor of Mississippi if he could try an experiment on convicts in the state prison to find a sure proof that pellagra was caused by a poor diet. The convicts were to go free if they helped with the experiment. Twelve men volunteered. They were kept in clean rooms and were fed well except that they got no fresh vegetables, fresh meat, or milk. Within six months these men showed the red patches, the sores, and the lack of energy that go with pellagra. When fresh meat, vegetables, and milk were given to them again, they got well.

Dr. Goldberger knew, because of his earlier experiments, that the diet of the sick boy before him lacked fresh green vegetables, fruits, milk, or fresh meat. These foods have the vitamin called *niacin* (NY-uh-sin), another one of the B vitamins. Because of Dr. Goldberger's careful scientific work, we now know how to prevent pellagra.

Night Blindness, the Common Cold, and Vitamin A

In Labrador, during the winter, many natives suffer from a disease known as night blindness. They cannot see well in dim light. Night blindness is common there in the winter because the people do not get certain foods having vitamin A in them. The green plants which have the A vitamin materials cannot be had in Labrador during the winter season.

Even where you live, persons may

be suffering from night blindness. If so, they cannot see well enough to drive safely at night. Such night blindness is caused by a lack of vitamin A.

Vitamin A will help keep you from getting colds. When vitamin A is lacking in the diet, the linings of the throat and nose will get very dry. Doctors tell us that the common cold starts more easily when the linings of the nose and throat are dry.

If you get plenty of milk, butter, eggs, green vegetables, and especially yellow vegetables such as carrots and squash, you will get all the vitamin A you need. There is vitamin A also in cod liver, halibut liver, and shark liver. If you have many colds, the doctor may ask you to take some of these fish liver oils to add to your supply of vitamins A and D.

The "Sunshine" Vitamin

Vitamin D, found in cod and halibut liver oils, is often called "the sunshine vitamin." Without vitamin D your bones will not grow properly. This is so because the body cannot use calcium and phosphorus, two elements needed by the bones, without the help of vitamin D. If there is enough sunshine striking the skin, your body will make its own vitamin D. In winter or if you are indoors much of the time, you may need to take cod liver oil or one of the fish oils having vitamin D in it. Vitamin D also helps the body build up resistance to colds.

Searching for More Vitamins

Scientists are still looking for other vitamins. Vitamin K was discovered quite recently. This vitamin helps the blood to clot more easily. It is often given to a patient before an operation, to keep him from bleeding too much.

Vitamins are found in foods. If you eat a balanced diet of vegetables, fruit, meat, cereals, eggs, and dairy products, you should not have to take pills to get your vitamins. If you think you need vitamins, let your doctor prescribe them. Do not buy them, hit or miss, from a drugstore.

Before you leave the subject of vitamins, study Table 1, which shows the results of some experiments on animals. Do you see how there can be starvation on a full stomach? Perhaps you would like to try some of these experiments in your laboratory.

Minerals for Health and Growth

Have you ever heard someone say, "He is not worth his salt"? What did he mean? Where did this saying come from?

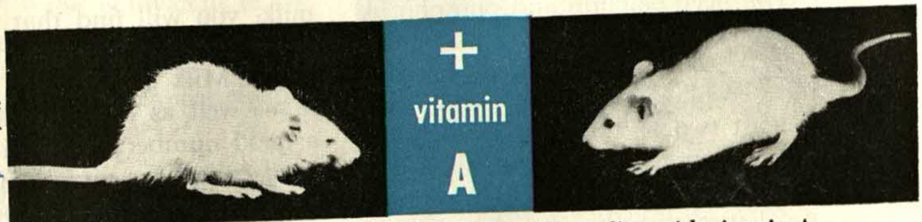
In some parts of the world salt used to be so scarce that it cost a great deal. This was true in Rome, 2,000 years ago. Roman soldiers were sometimes paid in salt, and they were glad to get it. It was a good man in those days who was worth his salt.

Salt was valuable because everybody needed it. To get it they were willing to pay a high price. Today, as in the days of Rome, common table salt is one of the minerals needed in the blood and other body cells for good health. Salt is a mineral made up in a combined form of the two elements, sodium and chlorine. Someone in your class may wish to prepare a special report on the subject of salt.

What other minerals do you need for growth and health? Why do you

TABLE 1 Vitamin Starvation — Its Cause and Cure

RAT
with adequate
diet except for
no vitamin A



Diet

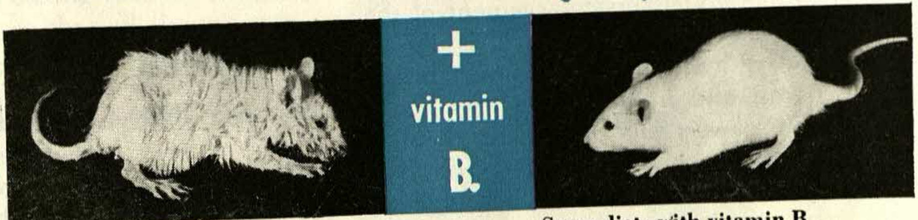
Wheat	120 grams
Dried beef	32 grams
Starch	150 grams
Salt	3 grams
Calcium carbonate	10 grams

Same diet—with vitamin A

Butter	30 grams

To get vitamin A in your diet
Eat butter, milk, eggs, carrots, green vegetables, cheese, fish oils.

RAT
with adequate
diet except for
no vitamin B



Diet

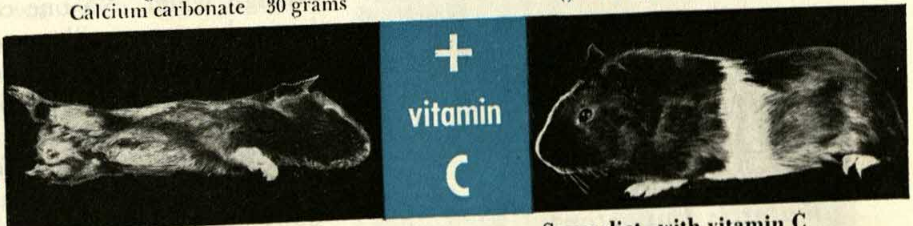
White flour	150 grams
Butter	30 grams
Dried beef	15 grams
Starch	100 grams
Salt	3 grams
Calcium carbonate	30 grams

Same diet—with vitamin B

Yeast	5 grams

To get vitamin B in your diet
Eat whole grain and cereals, peas, green vegetables, lean meat, fruits.

GUINEA PIG
with adequate
diet except for
no vitamin C



Diet

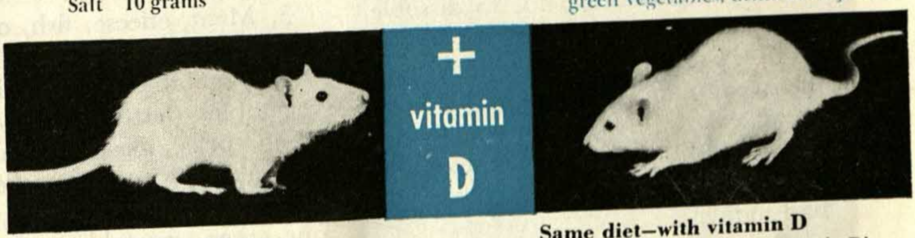
Oats	300 grams
Bran	270 grams
Dry beans (ground)	300 grams
Butter	30 grams
Salt	10 grams

Same diet—with vitamin C

Orange or tomato juice	100 cc.

To get vitamin C in your diet
Eat citrus fruits, tomatoes, green vegetables, drink fruit juices.

RAT
with adequate
diet except for
no vitamin D



Diet

Yellow corn	150 grams
Gluten flour	40 grams
Salt	3 grams
Calcium carbonate	30 grams
No sunlight	

Same diet—with vitamin D
Viosterol (containing vitamin D)
20 drops per 1,000 grams of diet

To get vitamin D in your diet
Eat milk products, eggs, fish oils.

U. S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE AND E. R. SQUIBB AND SONS

need them and where do they come from?

You need calcium and phosphorus for good growth of teeth and bones. One of the best sources of calcium and phosphorus is milk. Do you drink at least two or three glasses of milk daily? Young children should have a quart — four glasses. Other sources of calcium and phosphorus are dairy products, like cheese and eggs.

Some diseases can be traced to a lack of certain minerals. For instance, simple goiter, an enlargement of the thyroid gland in the neck, is due to lack of iodine. Iodine is found in the ocean and in some soils. Sea foods and seaweeds have iodine in them.

Certain kinds of *anemia* (uh-NEE-me-uh) are caused by lack of iron. In anemia there are not enough red blood cells in the blood, or not enough hemoglobin (HEE-moh-gloh-bin). Hemoglobin is the red compound that carries oxygen to all our cells. Iron is needed to form hemoglobin. Beef liver and heart, carrots, spinach, and other green vegetables are rich in iron.

Water Is Important

Do you know that about two-thirds of your body is water? Water in the bloodstream helps to dissolve and carry foods. Water helps us get rid of wastes through the kidneys and the sweat glands in the skin. To keep up the supply of water in your body, you should drink from six to eight glasses daily. How many have you had today?

Milk Makes Up for Mistakes

You must wonder just how it is possible for anyone to plan a balanced diet with so many things to take care of. But if you fill out your diet with milk, you will find that it will take care of some mistakes that may be made. Milk has proteins and fats in it, as well as carbohydrates. It has a good number of the vitamins you need except for vitamin C, which is present only in small amounts. It has many minerals in it, the most important of which is calcium. You ought to drink at least a pint of milk a day.

BALANCED DIET FOR BALANCED GROWTH

You are the person who has the care of your own growth. For best growth, you will need to eat the right amounts of carbohydrates, proteins, fats, vitamins, and minerals, and get enough water. No one can tell you just what you will need, but the United States government health services have a list of the food groups, which will help you make good plans for what to eat. These food groups are called "The Basic Seven." In your daily diet you should have:

1. Milk — one pint or more a day.
2. Eggs — one or more a day; at least four each week.
3. Meat, cheese, fish, or fowl — a serving a day.
4. Vegetables and fruits — green vegetables (lettuce, celery, cabbage, green peas, broccoli) and yellow vegetables (sweet potatoes, carrots, squash). A serving of one yellow and one green vegetable and a potato a day is desirable.
5. Citrus fruits — orange, grapefruit (whole or in juice).
6. Cereals and bread — especially bread made from whole grain (and

spread with butter or with margarine which has vitamins added).

7. Liquid — the equivalent of six to eight glasses of water.

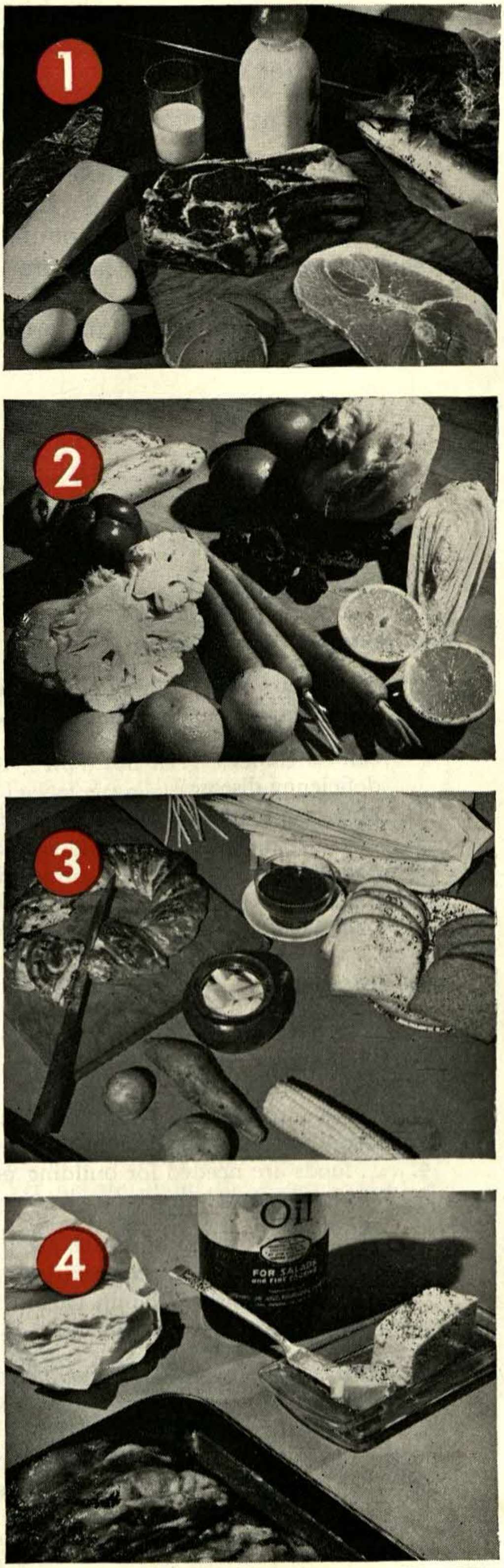
If you have "The Basic Seven" you will be getting a balanced diet.

Preparing Food for the Good Diet

Would you throw good food away? Some people do. They pour the valuable vitamins down the sink. Nowadays, cooking food well means preparing it so that all the nutrients are saved. Cooking vegetables too long or in too much water destroys the vitamins. Do you cook vegetables in water and then throw the water away? If you do, you are wasting your money and taking chances with your health. Minerals, vitamin B_1, vitamin C, and vitamin K dissolve in water. Instead of pouring the cooking water down the drain, use it in soups, stews, and gravies.

Pressure cooking also saves many of the nutrients. The pressure cooker uses little water; instead, the food is cooked quickly under steam pressure. This quick cooking keeps the nutrients, including the precious minerals and vitamins, in the food itself.

It is good sense and good science to save nutrients. There is little point in buying food for its nutrients and then losing them down the drain.



25 Different kinds of food: *1*, foods high in protein; *3*, foods high in carbohydrates; *4*, foods high in fats. These are basic types of food. Vegetables (*2*) have in them all three types. How many of the foods pictured, or ones like them, have you eaten this week? *Project:* Make a study of the kinds of food eaten in different countries.

EZRA STOLL

The Good Diet

Now it's up to you.

Starting today, keep a record of what you eat for three days. List the kinds of food and the amounts of each kind. Then figure the number of calories you get and the amounts of carbohydrates, fats, proteins, minerals, and vitamins (pp. 76 and 77). Remember that you should try to plan a well-balanced diet.

Are you really getting the diet that will keep you strong and healthy? Are you getting the diet which will keep your cells working properly? If not, start to do something about it today. It is important to you!

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Write out your own meaning of each word and then check it with the glossary. Do you have to change your meaning to make it right?

calorie (large)
deficiency disease
nutrients (carbohydrates,
  proteins, fats, minerals,
  vitamins, water)
oxidation
vitamins (thiamine,
  niacin, riboflavin)
cell
nucleus
cell membrane
cytoplasm
protoplasm
organ
tissue
organism

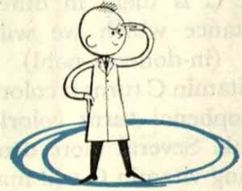
Test Yourself

Copy the sentences in your notebook and fill the blanks. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. A calorie is the amount of heat needed to raise 1,000 cubic centimeters of water . . . degree centigrade.
2. The six nutrients found in foods are . . . , . . . , . . . , . . . , . . . , ...
3. Energy for bodily heat and activity is supplied by . . . .
4. . . . foods are needed for building new cells.
5. Two foods containing

Vitamin A are . . . , ...
Vitamin B_1 (thiamine) are . . . , ...
Vitamin C are . . . , ...
Vitamin D are . . . , ...

6. A cell is made up of . . . . Near the center of the cell is its . . . , surrounded by . . . . The outer covering of the cell is called the . . . .
7. The smallest unit of living matter in the body is . . . . When they work together in groups to do a specialized work, they form . . . .
8. When oxygen combines with food nutrients in the cells, . . . takes place.



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. *Testing foods for nutrients*

a. For starch. Iodine turns starch a blue-black color. Mix a teaspoonful of cornstarch with water. Add a few drops of 1% iodine solution and you will see this blue-black color. Then test other foods. If you boil a little of the food in a test tube before you add the iodine, the reaction will show up more quickly.

b. For fat. Rub the piece of food to be tested on a piece of brown paper. If it contains fat, it will leave a greasy spot on the paper. Hold it up to the light and the spot will be bright.

c. For sugar. Mix a teaspoonful of sugar with water in a test tube. Add a little Benedict's solution to the mixture and boil it. Foods with glucose or other simple sugars will turn brick-red.

d. For protein. This test is done with nitric acid, which must be handled carefully. *Acid burns the skin!* Put some egg white into a test tube with enough nitric acid to cover it. Heat it over a Bunsen burner until it boils. Carefully pour off the acid, rinse the egg white, and then add some ammonia water. If there is protein, the egg white will turn an orange-red.

2. *Finding how diet affects the growth of rats.* Take two pairs of young rats just weaned. They should be of the same strain or, better yet, from the same litter. Feed them both the same diet of white bread, water, and green vegetables. To the diet of one pair add half a cupful of milk a day. Weigh them regularly every two days. What are your results? Be sure to keep careful records, and have somebody check your work.

3. *Experimenting with vitamin B_1.* Take four young pigeons. Feed two of the pigeons brown rice, and the other two white rice. Be sure to give them enough water. Watch them carefully. In about three to four weeks, you will begin to see results. Look for signs of staggering, weakness, and inability to stand.

After you have seen the effect of the lack of vitamin B_1, feed one of the affected pigeons some green peas. Give the other some vitamin B_1 by means of a medicine dropper. Which one recovers faster? Where was the vitamin B_1 in the food of the pigeons which stayed healthy?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Bill thought he was overweight. After all, he weighed 10 pounds more than his brother who was a year older. Yet he ate about the same food as his brother. What should Bill do?

2. In certain parts of the country, corn bread, molasses, and salt pork furnish the major part of the diet. What is lacking in this diet? What disease may result if this diet continues?

3. Green vegetables contain a vitamin that helps growth. How would you plan an experiment to prove this? (Suppose you had 200 white rats on which you could experiment.)

Adding to Your Library

BOOKS

The books in the following list will give you material for class reports. Each book is an adventure in reading.

1. *Men Against Death* by Paul De Kruif, Harcourt, Brace, 1932. A fascinating book about the work of Semmelweiss, Banting (who discovered insulin), and others.

2. *Hunger Fighters* by the same author, Harcourt, Brace, 1928. A book about scientists who have fought hunger in the world. These stories are exciting.

3. *American Women of Science* by Edna Yost, J. B. Lippincott, 1943. Read about three women who made important medical discoveries: Florence Sabin, Alice Hamilton, and Florence Seibert. Also read the chapter about Hazel Stiebeling, a teacher of home economics who became an international authority on food problems.

4. *Medicine on the March* by Marguerite Clark, published for *Newsweek* by Funk and Wagnalls, 1949. This book covers many advances in medicine during and since World War II.

5. *Modern Americans in Science and Invention* by Edna Yost, Frederick A. Stokes, 1941. In Chapter 15 read about Robert R. Williams and his work with vitamins.

PAMPHLETS

1. *Overweight and Underweight.*

2. *Hidden Calories That Tip the Scales,* published by Metropolitan Life Insurance Co., Health and Welfare Division, 1 Madison Ave., New York City.

3. *National Food Guide,* U.S. Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Human Nutrition and Home Economics, Washington (25), D.C.

4. *How to Live Longer* by R. Will Burnett, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1954.

A Bit of Research

Analyzing vitamin content. How much vitamin C is there in different juices? A substance which we will call *indophenol*[1] (in-doh-FEE-nohl) is colored blue. Vitamin C turns it colorless. (Before the indophenol turns colorless, it may turn pink. Several more drops of juices containing vitamin C will make the pink disappear.) A test performed by one student showed that 27 drops of frozen orange juice turned 5 cubic centimeters of indophenol (about an inch of fluid in a test tube) to white. Your teacher will give you a solution of the indophenol when you are ready for your experiment. You might compare orange juice, grapefruit juice, milk, and other liquids or juices for vitamin C content.

Plan your experiment carefully.

What apparatus will you need?

How will you measure the amount of juice you will add?

How will you be sure that you have the same amount of indophenol in each tube?

How will you record your results?

Careers for You

Of course, we always need *doctors* and *trained nurses*, but do you know that hundreds of *chemists* and *biologists* are needed to help as *research workers* in public health departments and in large commercial laboratories? Here may be the place for you.

Men and women trained in the science of foods are always in demand. They are called *dietitians*. Hospitals, schools, factories, and restaurants need dietitians. Would you like to be a dietitian?

---

[1] This may be obtained under the name dichlorobenzenoneindophenol from a chemical supply house.

HAROLD M. LAMBERT
FROM FREDERICK LEWIS

Daily Vitamin Needs

	Vitamin A, International Units	*Thiamine, Milligrams**	*Riboflavin, Milligrams*	*Niacin, Milligrams*	*Ascorbic Acid, Milligrams*	*Vitamin D, International Units*
GIRLS						
13 to 15 years	5,000	1.4	2.0	14	80	?
16 to 20 years	5,000	1.2	1.8	12	80	?
BOYS						
13 to 15 years	5,000	1.6	2.4	16	90	?
16 to 20 years	6,000	2.0	3.0	20	100	?

* 1,000 milligrams = 1 gram; 28.5 grams = 1 ounce.

FOOD AND YOU

Daily Diet for a Moderately Active Man

Kind of Nutrient	*In Units*
Energy (carbohydrates and fats)	3,000 calories
Protein (varied)	70 grams
Calcium	1 gram
Iron	12 milligrams
Vitamin A	5,000 International Units
Thiamine (Vitamin B)	1.5 milligrams
Riboflavin (Vitamin G)	1.8 milligrams
Niacin	15 milligrams
Ascorbic acid (Vitamin C)	75 milligrams

Calorie Needs for Different Activities *

Activity	*Calories per Pound of Your Weight, per Hour*
Bicycling (moderate speed)	1.1
Bicycling (racing)	3.4
Carpentering, heavy	1.0
Dancing	1.7
Dishwashing	0.5
Dressing and undressing	0.3
Eating	0.2
Playing Ping-pong	2.0
Running	3.3
Sawing wood	2.6
Sitting quietly	0.2
Standing relaxed	0.2
Swimming	3.6
Typewriting rapidly	0.5
Violin playing	0.3
Walking (3 miles per hour)	0.9
Writing	0.2

Using this table: Suppose you weigh 120 pounds. For a good walk you will need 120 × 0.9 (see above) = 108 calories per hour. Add to this 65 calories per hour for body activities such as breathing, digesting food, and so on. Total = 173 calories. This is very approximate and may not work for all people, especially for very heavy and very thin individuals.

* Adapted from *Foundations of Nutrition* by Mary Swartz Rose, The Macmillan Company, 1938, pp. 606–607. Reprinted by permission.

Sources of Your Calories, Carbohydrates, Fats, and Proteins *

Food	*Calories*	*Carbohydrates, Percentage*	*Fat, Percentage*	*Proteins, Percentage*
APPLE, *raw, 1 large 3 in. diameter*	97	15	0.4	0.3.
BACON, *5 in. strip, crisp*	31	2	27	14
BANANA, *1 medium*	99	23	0.2	1.0
BEANS, *navy, pea, kidney, ½ cup*	105	62	2	22
BEANS, *snap, ½ cup*	42	8	0.2	2
BEEF, *1 slice 3 × 2 × ½ in.*	233		16	23
BREAD, *enriched white, 1 slice*	65	52	2	8
BREAD, *whole wheat 60%, 1 slice*	72	46	3	9
BUTTER, *1 pat*	73	0.4	81	0.6
CABBAGE, *fresh, ½–¾ cup, shredded*	15	5	0.2	1
CARROTS, *raw, 1 large, ¾ cup (cubes)*	45	9	0.3	1
CHEESE, *American Cheddar, 1 oz.*	112	2	32	24
CHICKEN, *roasted, 3 slices, 3½ × 2½ × ¼ in.*	193		9	28
CODFISH, *1 cake, 2½ in. diameter*	122	16	11	11
EGG, *whole, 1 medium*	79	0.8	12	13
FRANKFURTER, *boiled, 1 average*	121	3	14	15
GRAPEFRUIT, *½ small*	44	10	0.2	0.5
ICE CREAM, *plain, ⅙ quart*	210	21	12	4
LAMB CHOP, *shoulder, 1 average chop*	245		22	17
LIVER, *beef, fried, 1 average slice*	82	8	8	25
MILK, *whole, 6 oz.*	123	4	3	3
ORANGE, *whole, 1 medium*	76	11	0.2	0.9
POTATO, *white, cooked, 1 medium, in skin*	129	19	0.1	2
SPINACH, *fresh, ⅔ cup*	25	3	0.3	2
TOMATOES, *canned, ½ cup*	21	4	0.2	1

* Adapted from *Food Values of Portions Commonly Used*, by A. de P. Bowes and C. F. Church.

[p. 77]

Sources of Your Vitamins and Minerals

Food	Calcium, Milligrams*	Iron Milligrams	Phosphorus, Milligrams	Vitamin A, International Units*	B_1, Thiamine, Micrograms	B_2, Riboflavin, Micrograms	B_6, Niacin, Milligrams	C, Ascorbic Acid, Milligrams	Vitamin D, International Units
APPLE, *raw, 1 large, 3 in. diameter*	9	0.5	15	135	60	30	0.3	8	
BACON, *5 in. strip, crisp*	2	0.1	16		60	10	0.3		
BANANA, *1 medium*	8	0.6	28	430	90	60	0.6	10	
BEANS, *navy, pea, kidney, ½ cup*	44	3.1	139		180	72	0.6		
BEANS, *snap, ½ cup*	65	1.1	44	630	80	100	0.6	19	
BEEF, *1 slice 3 × 2 × ½ in.*	13	3.5	250		122	153	5.3		
BREAD, *enriched white, 1 slice*	14	0.5	25		60	37	0.6		
BREAD, *whole wheat 60%, 1 slice*	14	0.6	42		84	49	0.9		
BUTTER, *1 pat*	2		2	330		1			4
CABBAGE, *fresh, ½–¾ cup, shredded*	23	0.3	16	40	35	30	0.1	26	
CARROTS, *raw, 1 large, ¾ cup (cubes)*	39	0.8	37	12,000	70	60	0.5	6	
CHEESE, *American Cheddar, 1 oz.*	247	0.2	173	493	11	142			
CHICKEN, *roasted, 3 slices, 3½ × 2½ × ¼ in.*	22	2.7	305		92	214	10.2		
CODFISH, *1 cake, 2½ in. diameter*	11	0.8	71	130	44	49	0.7	?	5
EGG, *whole, 1 medium*	27	1.4	105	570	60	170			45
FRANKFURTER, *boiled, 1 average*	5	1.4	98		111	135	1.2		
GRAPEFRUIT, *½ small*	17	0.3	18		40	20	0.2	40	
ICE CREAM, *plain, ⅙ quart*	132	0.1	104	540	40	190	0.1		
LAMB CHOP, *shoulder, 1 average chop*	9	2.3	168		153	196	4.4		
LIVER, *beef, fried, 1 average slice*	6	6.1	187	9,600	115	1,190	6.8	?	23
MILK, *whole, 6 oz.*	212	0.1	167	288	72	306	0.2	2	4
ORANGE, *whole, 1 medium*	50	0.6	35	285	120	45	0.3	74	
POTATO, *white, cooked, 1 medium, in skin*	17	1.1	84	30	168	55	1.6	17	
SPINACH, *fresh, ⅔ cup*		3.0	55	9,420	120	240	0.7	59	
TOMATOES, *canned, ½ cup*	11	0.6	27	1,050	50	30	0.7	16	

* The International Unit is the standard measurement used for vitamins. A milligram equals 1/1,000th of a gram; a microgram equals 1/10,000th of a gram. On the basis of these units boys and girls need: Vitamin A, 5,000; thiamine (B_1), 1,500; riboflavin (B_2), 2,000; niacin (B_6), 15; ascorbic acid (C), 85. Of the minerals, you will need: calcium, 1,350 milligrams, and iron, 15 milligrams; the exact quantity of phosphorus needed is unknown.

PHILIP GENDREAU

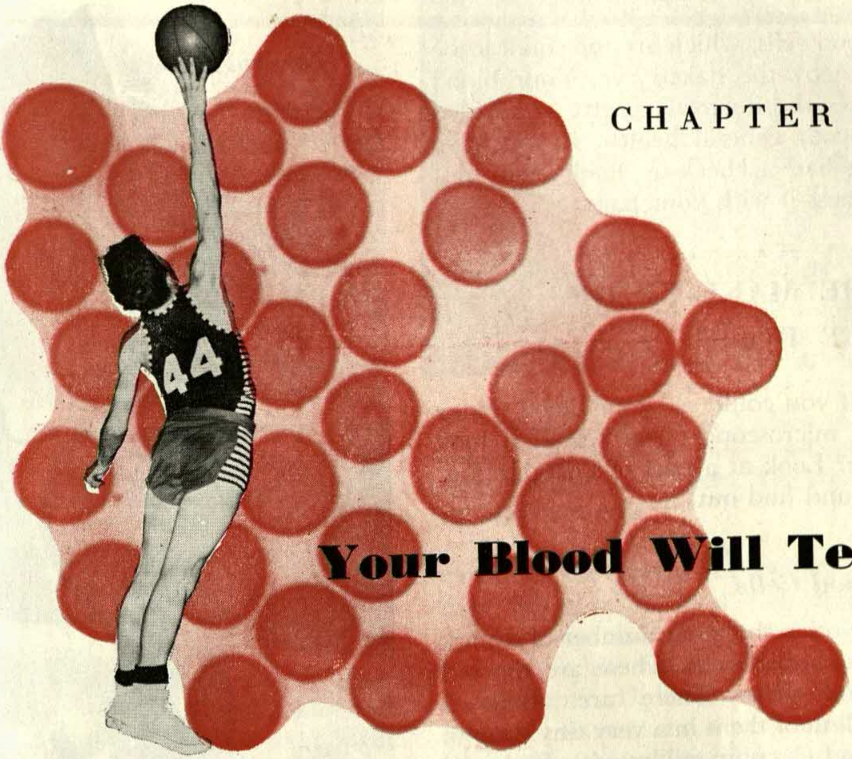
Daily Calorie Needs for Different Kinds of Work

Kind of Work	*For Men of Average Weight (154 pounds) Ages 20–60*	*For Women of Average Weight (130 pounds) Ages 20–60*
VERY ACTIVE WORK Truck loading, combat duty or soldiers, any work that needs heavy lifting or pulling	4,500	3,000
FAIRLY ACTIVE WORK Hiking (with full knapsack), marching, selling (door to door), any walking with moderate loads	3,000	2,500
LIGHT WORK Selling behind counter, typing, active office work, any work in which the person is seated but moves arms and legs or walks about freely; no heavy lifting	2,700	2,300
INACTIVE WORK Office work, information booth, any work in which the person is seated but needs to move arms and legs very little	2,400	2,100

FREDERICK LEWIS

CHAPTER 4

Your Blood Will Tell



As the boy hits the floor he will be breathing harder. His lungs will be taking in more air. Useless, unless the red blood cells pictured carry the oxygen in the air to his cells. You are as healthy as your blood.

Have you had your health checked this year? When was the last time you had a physical examination?

One of the best ways to know the condition of your health is to have a check-up every six months or at least once a year. The doctor will examine your body carefully. He may find something that needs watching, or he may catch a disease in time to prevent a long illness. Most times, however, he will probably find that you are in good health.

The doctor gets his clues to your health by noting how you look and by using some of his instruments. One of these instruments is the *stethoscope* (STETH-uh-skohp) (Fig. 26). With it he listens carefully to your heartbeat. What the doctor hears may tell him whether your heart is keeping your blood circulating properly. When your blood reaches every part of your body, your cells are getting food and oxygen. It is only through your blood that food can get to the different parts of your body.

The doctor may also examine a sample of your blood under his microscope. In this way he can see the blood cells, which are too small to be seen by the naked eye. Your blood gives the doctor a pretty good idea of your general health. If you have not had a check-up lately, why not discuss it with your parents?

THE MAKE-UP OF THE BLOOD

If you could see your blood under the microscope, what would it look like? Look at a part of a drop in Fig. 27 and find out.

Blood Cells

Notice the great number of round, disk-shaped cells. These are the red blood cells. There are about 5 million of them in a very tiny drop of blood (1 cubic millimeter). Red cells have in them a substance called hemoglobin. This hemoglobin gets bright red when it combines with oxygen. Your red blood cells, sometimes called red *corpuscles* (KOR-pus-'lz), have no nucleus. They are made in the marrow of the bones. Some of the cells are stored in the spleen, a small organ near the stomach. Red blood cells are carried in the blood and do not move around by themselves.

The other cells in the blood (Fig. 27) are the white blood cells. They have a nucleus but no hemoglobin. In a normal drop of blood there are 5,000 to 7,000 of these white blood cells. Like the red blood cells, white cells are carried in the blood. Unlike the red cells, white blood cells can move about by themselves. If you were watching such a cell move, you would see it push out a short bulge, then another, and another. These bulges serve two purposes: to enable the cell to move about and to pick up particles, like bacteria, that may get into the blood.

PINNEY FROM MONKEY

26 The doctor uses his stethoscope to find out how well the newborn baby's heart is pumping to all parts of its body.

Both red and white cells are carried about in a straw-colored fluid. This fluid is called the *plasma* (PLAZ-muh). Plasma is mainly water and makes up the liquid part of the blood.

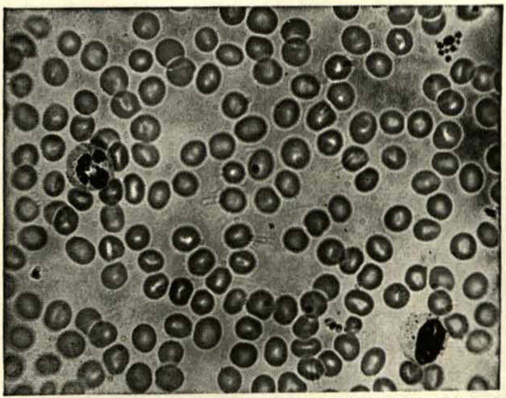
Your Blood Cells in Action

Have you the right number of blood cells? If you have ever had your blood cells counted, you know that the doctor takes a drop of blood from your finger or the tip of your ear. Then he puts the blood on a glass slide in a special way and makes a count under the microscope.

Healthy blood should have about 5 million red cells in each drop. Why is this number important? As you have learned, they have the red substance, hemoglobin, which carries oxygen to every other body cell. In the cells of the body the oxygen unites with the food. As you may remember, the food burns (without a flame, of course) and in this way supplies energy for your daily work and play. Therefore, when the number of red blood cells is low, the body cannot get the oxygen it needs for good health.

Have you ever had a white blister — white because of the pus in it? Did you know that this showed that the white blood cells were in action? It happens this way: white blood cells attack any bacteria that enter the body. The number of white cells in your blood gets larger as the cells swarm to the attack. Thus, the normal number of 5,000 to 7,000 white cells in each drop of blood goes up when your body is invaded by bacteria. Suppose your blood count shows 12,000 white cells in each drop of blood. This high count will probably mean that bacteria have entered the body and that the white cells are fighting them. It may mean that you have an infected appendix. At any rate, the doctor will begin to look for the source of infection when he finds a high white-cell count.

When you cut your finger, bacteria can enter the wound. The white cells may be able to heal the wound quickly, especially if you help them by washing the wound and applying an antiseptic. If, however, the finger swells, turns red, and throbs, you will know that the white cells may need help from the doctor. The pus that forms around an infected wound contains thousands of white cells that have died in the battle against the bacteria.



GENERAL BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY HOUSE

27 Imagine the face of a clock. At 5:00 and 9:00 are two large white blood cells; the dark spots are their nuclei. The other cells are red blood cells.

The Plasma

Your blood plasma plays just as big a part in keeping you healthy as do the red and white blood cells which are to be found in it. Dissolved in the plasma are all the food nutrients your body uses for energy and growth. Carbohydrates, proteins, minerals, and vitamins are dissolved and carried in the plasma to all the body cells.

The plasma also has substances which destroy different kinds of disease germs. Such substances are called *antibodies*. One kind kills typhoid germs. Another kind, about which you will read later, makes harmless the poisons made by diphtheria germs. Antibodies are put into your blood plasma when you are vaccinated or given diphtheria shots.

In a small laboratory at Harvard Medical School in the 1920's, Dr. Edwin J. Cohn began a study of human blood.

World War I had shown the need of blood for wounded soldiers. In World War II, the need for blood and blood plasma for transfusions became greater. Did you ever have a blood transfusion? When you have lost blood in an injury or an operation, doctors usually have one or more pints of blood of the same type as yours put into your veins.

At the beginning of World War II, the Red Cross had a supply of blood on hand, but it was being used up rapidly. They feared their supply would run out. So Dr. Cohn was asked to search for a blood substitute that might be used in transfusions.

Dr. Cohn could find no good substitute for human blood, but he did make an important discovery. He found that he could separate human blood into different parts. He found five different parts or fractions of blood plasma (the liquid part of the blood). Some of them were already known.

Doctors thought that one of these materials in plasma, *gamma globulin*, might prevent infantile paralysis (polio). But they found that the prevention did not last long. Later, as you have read in the introduction to this unit, doctors experimented with a vaccine prepared by Dr. Jonas E. Salk of the University of Pittsburgh.

In a report to the American Chemical Society in 1949, Dr. Cohn told of several more fractions of blood plasma that he had recently found. Work is going on to discover a use for them, especially in getting blood to clot faster. But Dr. Cohn, who died in 1953, was fond of saying, "It is my work to find these fractions in plasma. It is the work of physicians to put them to use in curing the sick."

So the work with blood plasma goes on. *Serum albumin* (SEER-'m al-BYOO-min), which makes up the largest part of the plasma, is used to treat shock and severe burns. Gamma globulin, as you have already read, has been used in the fight against polio. It is also used to prevent measles and jaundice, a disease of the liver.

Fibrinogen (fy-BRIN-oh-jen), another part of the plasma, helps to clot your blood. When you have a cut, the fibrinogen is turned into a substance called *fibrin*. Fibrin is made up of small fibers which weave together to form a covering or clot over the wound. It stops the flow of blood and keeps out bacteria. Without fibrinogen in the blood, you could bleed to death.

There is another group of special substances carried by your blood. They are called *hormones* (HOR-mohnz). Hormones have a great deal to do with your height, the growth of your bones, your weight, and even your behavior. These hormones are made in glands in different parts of your body and sent into the blood stream. For example, a growth hormone is partly responsible for the growth of your body. This hormone is made in a gland found on the lower surface of your brain, just above the center of the roof of your mouth. Too much growth hormone may produce a giant. Too little may produce a midget.

You can see that the red and white blood cells and the blood plasma are all very important to good health. But a healthy blood stream depends upon what you eat, drink, and breathe. How do food substances get into the blood plasma? Let us go into the laboratory and find out.

TRANSFORMING THE FOOD YOU EAT

The food which you chewed and swallowed at your last meal is now finding its way through a long food tube about 25 feet in length. Somehow the food must get out of this tube into your blood plasma. How is it done? What happens to your food after you swallow it?

Food in the Mouth

Let us begin with the first part of the food tube, the mouth. Take a plain soda cracker. Divide it into four parts. First test one part for starch with iodine. The cracker turns blue, showing that the cracker contains starch. Test a second part for simple sugars by boiling it in a test tube with Benedict's solution. Since it does not turn green or red, you know that there are no simple sugars in the piece of cracker.

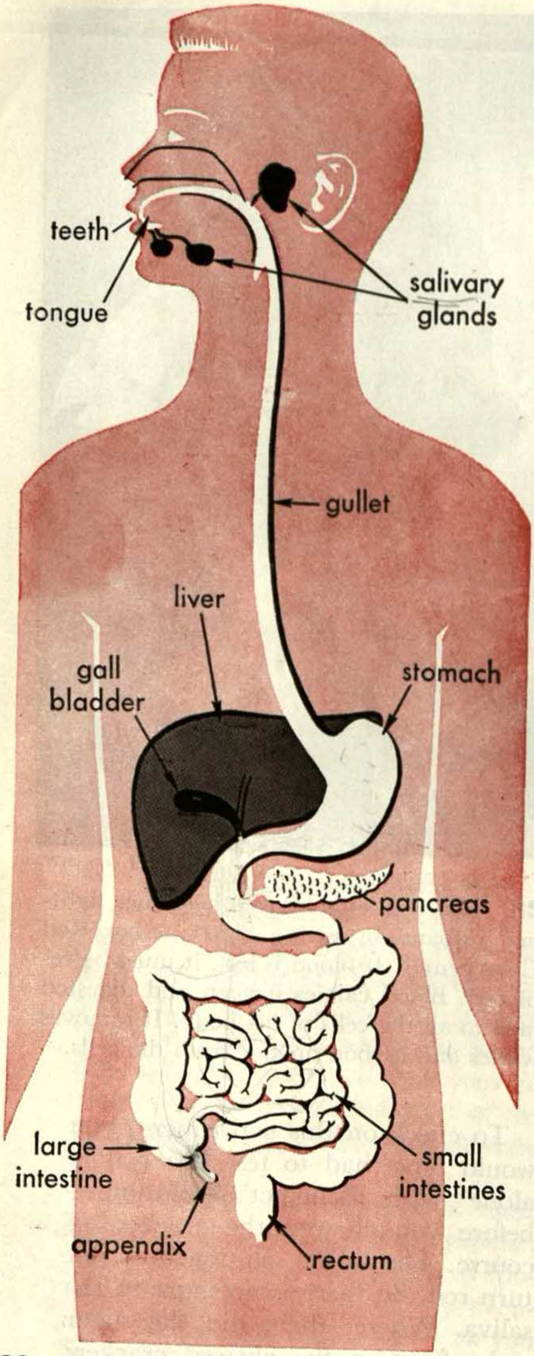
Now take one-quarter of the cracker and chew it slowly. Don't swallow it. Do you sense any change in the taste of the cracker? Is it sweeter, perhaps? After a few seconds, put this chewed mixture into a test tube. Now test this chewed cracker, which has been mixed with the saliva in your mouth, by boiling it with Benedict's solution. It turns a brick red, showing that simple sugars are now present.

AMERICAN RED CROSS

28 The wife of a Marine helps her fighting husband by giving blood at her Red Cross center. If blood is lost, it must be replaced. Blood carries oxygen and digested food to all the cells of the body. It removes wastes and carbon dioxide from the cells.

To check on this experiment, you would have had to test your saliva alone with Benedict's solution — before you chewed the cracker, of course. The saliva solution does not turn red. So there is no sugar in the saliva. Where, then, did the sugar come from in the chewed cracker? One more experiment may help to answer the question.

Crumble the last quarter of the cracker into a test tube and add to it an inch of saliva (collected earlier



29 In this diagram, trace what happens to a sandwich as it is digested in the food tube. What happens in the mouth? the stomach? the intestines? What does the pancreas do? Which of these structures have glands in them? Why not draw a larger chart for your classroom wall?

in a test tube). Shake up the mixture and keep the tube warm in the palm of your hand. After five minutes, test for sugar. The brick-red color shows up. Sugar is now present. What happens when you chew foods that contain starch?

Biologists have discovered that saliva has in it a substance called an *enzyme* (EN-zyme). The enzyme in saliva breaks down nutrients into simpler chemicals. The enzyme itself is not changed, even though it changes the food it is mixed with.

Enzymes in the Food Tube

That is not the whole story. Enzymes are produced not only in the mouth but also in the stomach and small intestine. The parts of the body which make enzymes are called glands (Fig. 29). Scientists have been able to get these enzymes from the glands of cattle. Now many enzymes can be bought at the drugstore on a doctor's prescription.

All of these enzymes break down the complex foods that we eat into simpler substances. The powerful enzymes made by the glands of the stomach and intestines change proteins, fats, and starches into simpler substances. *Digestion* is the process of breaking down complex food nutrients into simple substances. The job of your food tube is to digest your food.

Enzymes in the Stomach

In the lining of the stomach are thousands of tiny glands that pour *gastric* (GASS-trik) *juice* into the stomach. In this digestive juice is the enzyme *pepsin* and also some hydrochloric acid. Pepsin, with the help of hydrochloric acid, breaks down proteins into simpler proteins. The pepsin cannot do its work properly without the aid of the hydrochloric acid.

Fats are not very much changed in the stomach.

Enzymes in the Small Intestine

After the enzymes in the stomach have had enough time to digest the food proteins, the valve at the lower end of the stomach opens and allows the now liquid food to pass on. The muscles in the lining of the stomach and intestines keep pushing the food along.

The enzymes found in the small intestine are made by a digestive gland called the *pancreas* (PAN-kree-us). The pancreas is found near the beginning of the small intestine and is joined to it by a small tube.

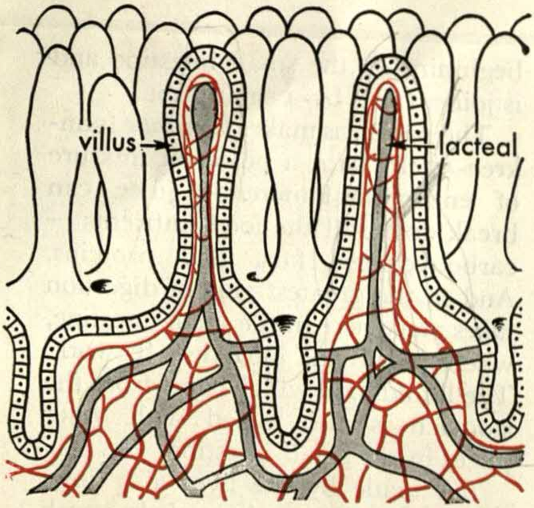
The pancreas makes *pancreatic* (pan-kree-AT-ik) *juice*, a powerful mixture of enzymes. Pancreatic juice can break down all the food nutrients — carbohydrates, fats, and proteins. And so the greatest part of digestion takes place here in the small intestine, where pancreatic juice does its work. The liquid food which came from the stomach is also mixed with other juices in the small intestine.

Bile made by the liver also flows into the small intestine to help break down the fats. It is the pancreatic juice, however, that digests the fats. The bile helps only by making it easier for the pancreatic juice to do its work.

During digestion, carbohydrates, proteins, and fats are broken down

TABLE 2 The Enzymes Which Digest Your Food

Enzyme	*Place Produced*	*What It Does*
Ptyalin (TY-ah-lin)	Mouth	Breaks down starch to sugar in the mouth
Pepsin (PEP-sin)	Stomach	Breaks down proteins to simpler substances
Trypsin (TRIP-sin)	Pancreas (a gland near the small intestine). The pancreatic juice is sent into the small intestine	Breaks down protein to soluble amino acids
Steapsin (stee-AP-sin)	Pancreas	Breaks down fats into fatty acids and glycerin
Amylopsin (am-uh-LOP-sin)	Pancreas	Breaks down any undigested starches into glucose
Enzymes in intestinal juice	Intestine	Breaks down any undigested food
	RESULTS OF DIGESTION	
All enzymes	In the alimentary canal	Produce soluble materials: Glucose from carbohydrates Amino acids from proteins Fatty acids } from fats Glycerol (GLISS-er-ol) } from fats



30 Villi in the intestine. The colored lines show microscopic capillaries. Can you see why digested food goes easily into each villus through the membrane made up of a single layer of cells? Fats go into the lacteals.

into simple substances. In other words, the food is digested. These simple substances are now ready to be taken into the blood.

How does the digested food get out of the food tube into the blood?

INTO THE BLOOD

Right now, inside you, food substances are being carried by the blood stream to every part of your body. Food is being carried to your eyes and eye muscles, to the muscles that are helping you hold this book, to your brain, to your lungs, even to your heart, which is pumping your blood. How did the digested food get into your blood?

Passing Through Membranes

If you could examine the membrane that forms the wall of the small intestine, you would find that it is not smooth. It is covered on the inside with tiny tubelike structures called *villi* (VIL-eye) (Fig. 30). In each villus there is a network of the tiniest blood vessels in the body, called *capillaries* (KAP-'l-air-eez). These tiny tubes are filled with blood. They have thin walls through which digested food passes easily. Shortly after the digested food passes through the walls of the villi, it reaches the capillaries.

Simple proteins and sugar pass into the capillaries and thus into the blood. Digested fats, however, go into special structures in the villi, called *lacteals* (LAK-tee-ulz) (Fig. 30). Finally, the fats, too, reach the blood stream.

This passing through of digested food into the villi is called *absorption.*

Examine the diagram of the villus in Fig. 30. Notice the space inside each villus between the wall of the villus and its capillaries. In your body, this space is not empty; it is filled with a colorless fluid like blood plasma, called *lymph* (LIMF). The lacteal is also filled with lymph. Absorption of digested food, therefore, takes place first through the wall of the villus into the lymph. Then the digested food goes into the capillaries inside the villus.

From the Blood to Every Cell

Food would be of little use to you if it were to stay in the capillaries of the villi. Of course, it doesn't stay there. It is carried to every cell in your body. How is this done?

Feel your pulse by placing the tips of your two middle fingers on the inner side of your wrist. Count the beats per minute. You will find that your pulse beats from 65 to

85 times per minute. The average is about 72. This pulse beat felt at the wrist starts at your heart, almost three feet away.

Your heart is made of thick muscle. As this muscle works, it pumps blood to every part of your body, in round numbers, about 70 times a minute! Seventy times a minute is 4,200 times an hour — over 100,000 times a day! This steady pumping never stops as long as you live. It takes the blood from the capillaries of the villi and sends it to larger blood vessels. Just as small side roads or streets run into main streets and finally to the town, so capillaries from the villi lead to larger vessels which lead finally to the heart.

Where does the heart send the blood that pours into it? To every cell in the body. If you examine the circulation of blood in your arm, you can get an idea how blood reaches the cells of any part of the body.

Circulation in the Arm

Examine the circulation of blood in one of your arms. Hold your arm down for a minute. The bluish blood vessels you see are *veins*, which carry blood to the heart. Your other set of blood vessels, the *arteries*, are buried deeper in your tissues. It is the arteries that carry blood away from the heart to all parts of your body (Fig. 32).

Your heart pumps the blood into the largest artery in your body, the *aorta* (ay-OR-tuh). The blood then goes into the main artery of the arm. Like all the arteries, this artery carries blood away from the heart. From this main artery of the arm, smaller arteries branch out. These branch again and again into smaller and smaller arteries. The smaller arteries finally become tiny capillaries. These tiny, thin-walled capillaries form a network reaching all the cells in your arm. You cannot prick your finger without piercing a capillary.

The artery capillaries join with the vein capillaries, and the blood starts its journey back to your heart (Fig. 32). The vein capillaries become small veins; these become larger veins; these then join the large vein which enters the heart.

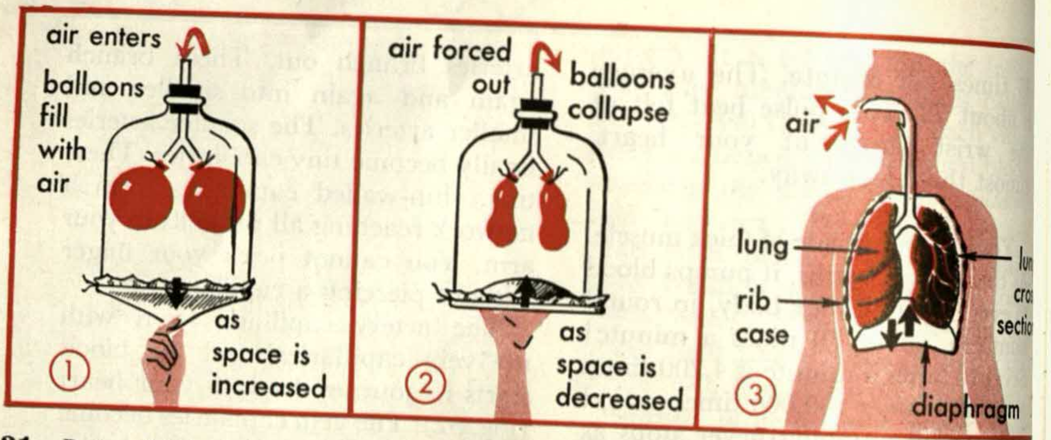
Look at Fig. 32 again. Do you see that the blood flows in a closed circuit? It flows from the heart to the arteries, to the veins, then back to the heart.

BRIGHT RED BLOOD TO EVERY CELL

Even if dissolved food did reach every cell in your body it could not be used unless there were another important substance there. From your earlier reading you probably have guessed what this substance is. Yes, it is oxygen. It is oxygen which makes your blood bright red. And bright red blood is absolutely necessary for good health and good growth. Without bright red blood, your cells could not burn, or oxidize, your food.

How does oxygen get into your blood? You perhaps can answer this question yourself by this time. Try it now. Then read on in this section to check yourself.

First, air enters through your nose and is warmed and moistened as it goes through the nose passages. At the back of the mouth it enters the



31 *Project:* Make this model and demonstrate it in class. Why does air enter in *1*? Why doe air leave in *2*? Notice that the balloons represent the lungs; the rubber sheet, the diaphragm; and the glass jar, the rib case and body wall.

windpipe. The windpipe divides into two branches, the *bronchial* (BRONK-ee-ul) *tubes.* These tubes divide again and again, each tube ending in a group of thin-walled air sacs (Fig. 33).

How Air Gets into the Lungs

About a pint of air enters your lungs at one breath. Most people think that air is pulled into the body by the lungs. Not at all. Pull in your diaphragm as far as you can. Your diaphragm is a flat sheet of muscle just below the chest cavity (Fig. 31). Now try to breathe. It is almost impossible because you are not letting your diaphragm relax and expand.

Take a bell jar and tie a sheet of rubber over the wide opening at its base. The sheet of rubber is like your diaphragm. The bell jar would be your chest cavity. Complete your model of the chest cavity by attaching two balloons to a Y tube, as shown in Fig. 31.

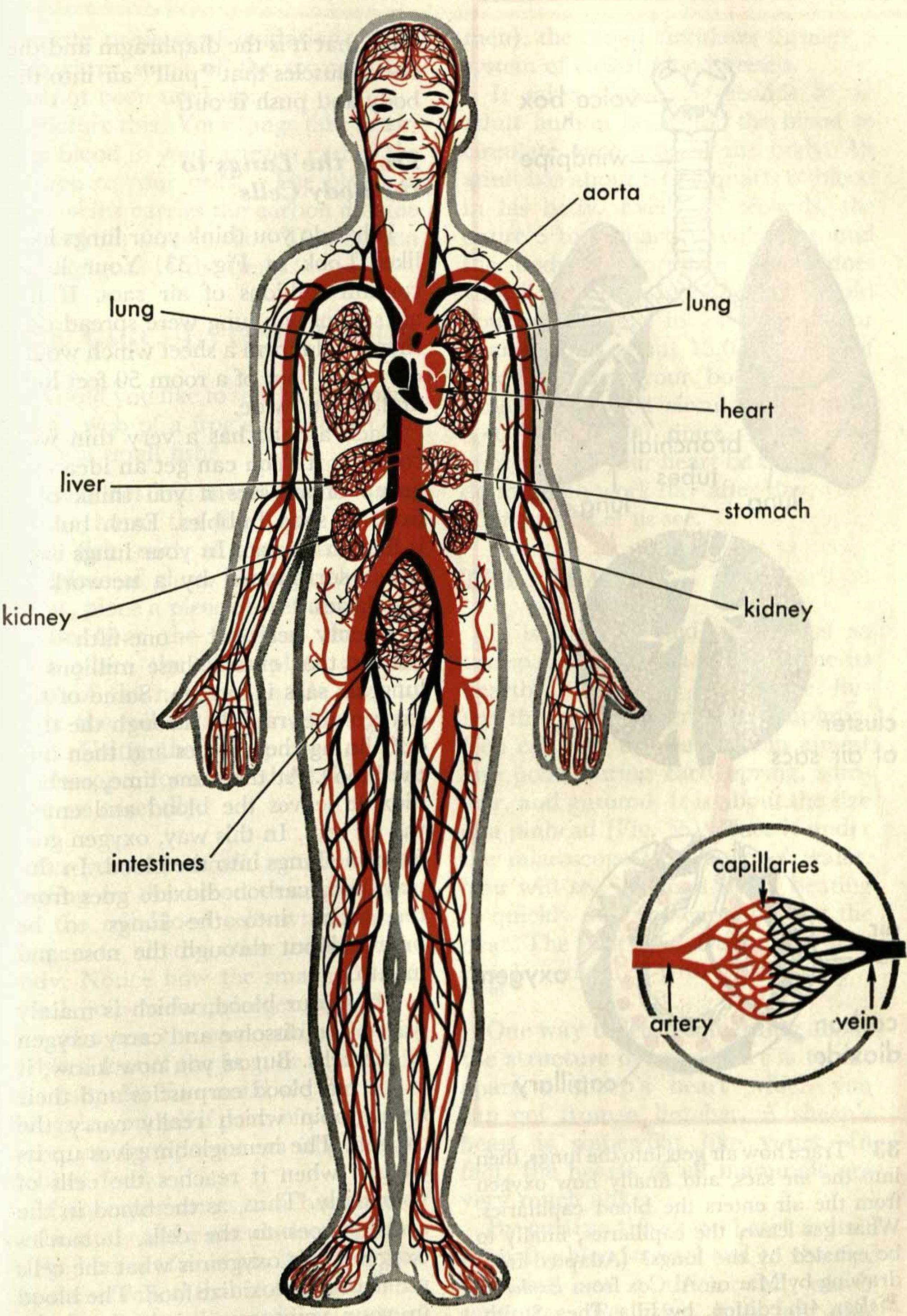
Now pull down the rubber sheet. This gives more room in the bell jar. The air inside the jar will then have more space. That means it will be at a lower pressure than the air outside. The greater air pressure outside will push air through the Y tubes into the balloons, and they will expand.

Push the rubber diaphragm up. What happens? Because the air pressure inside the bell jar is made greater than that outside, air is now pushed out of the Y tubes. The balloons collapse.

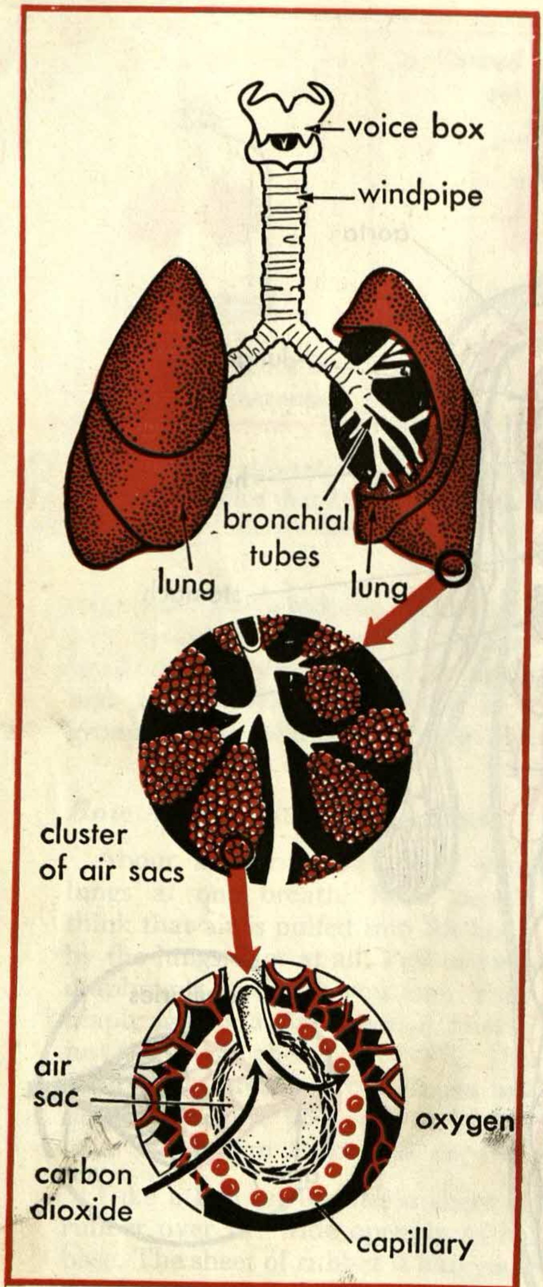
This model of what happens when you breathe is not perfect because the bell jar itself cannot expand. When air comes into your lungs the entire lung cavity expands, as well as the lungs themselves. When we inhale, our ribs, as well as the diaphragm, are pushed out. Hold your hands on your sides over your ribs and breathe deeply. Do you feel the ribs push outward?

As your lungs and chest cavity expand, the air pressure inside is lowered, and the greater outside pressure pushes air into the lungs. When you exhale, the chest cavity becomes smaller and the air pressure on the lungs makes them collapse slightly and push out some of the air.

Can you see by what you have just



32 How your blood circulates. Why does blood change color as it goes from an artery to a vein? (See insert.) Now trace a drop of blood from a vein in the left leg to an artery in the right leg; from the right hand to the left leg. Make a larger chart for your classroom.



33 Trace how air gets into the lungs, then into the air sacs, and finally how oxygen from the air enters the blood capillaries. What gas leaves the capillaries, finally to be exhaled by the lungs? (Adapted from drawing by Marion A. Cox from *Exploring Biology*, 4th edition, by Ella Thea Smith, courtesy Harcourt, Brace.)

done that it is the diaphragm and the chest muscles that "pull" air into the body and push it out?

From the Lungs to the Body Cells

What do you think your lungs look like? Look at Fig. 33. Your lungs contain millions of air sacs. If the air sacs of one lung were spread out, they would form a sheet which would cover the floor of a room 50 feet long and 22 feet wide.

Each air sac has a very thin wall covering it. You can get an idea of a group of air sacs if you think of a froth of soap bubbles. Each bubble is like an air sac. In your lungs each sac is surrounded by a network of capillaries.

Twenty per cent — one-fifth — of the air that enters these millions of lung air sacs is oxygen. Some of the oxygen goes rapidly through the thin cells lining the air sacs and then into the blood. At the same time, carbon dioxide leaves the blood and enters the air sacs. In this way, oxygen goes from the lungs into the blood. In this way, too, carbon dioxide goes from the blood into the lungs to be breathed out through the nose and mouth.

Thus your blood, which is mainly water, can dissolve and carry oxygen to the cells. But as you now know, it is the red blood corpuscles and their hemoglobin which really carry the oxygen. The hemoglobin gives up its oxygen when it reaches the cells of your body. Thus, as the blood in the arteries goes to the cells, it carries oxygen. This oxygen is what the cells use to burn or oxidize food. The blood in your veins, coming back to the lungs, carries carbon dioxide. This is a waste product of oxidation. Veins also carry some of the oxygen that has not been used up.

Picture this: Your lungs take in air. The blood in your arteries carries the oxygen to your cells. The blood in your veins carries the carbon dioxide away from your cells. This carbon dioxide goes to the lungs.

THE CIRCULATING BLOOD

Would you like to see the capillaries in the web of a frog's foot, or in the tail of a small fish?

Use a net and moist hands (so as not to harm the fish) and place a small fish, such as a goldfish, on a flat piece of glass. To keep the gills moist, place a piece of wet absorbent cotton over the head of the fish. Now place the glass plate on the stage of the microscope. Be sure to cover the tail of the fish with a glass slide. Using the low power of the microscope, focus on the tail. Now observe carefully.

Do you see small round bodies moving in the blood vessels? These are the red blood cells which carry oxygen to all the other cells in the body. Notice how the smaller blood vessels join to form larger ones. You can also see the same thing in the webbed foot of the frog, or in the tail of a tadpole. You could see the same things in yourself if parts of your body were as transparent as the frog's webbed foot.

Many experiments have been made in the study of the circulation of blood in the bodies of animals. All these experiments tell us that in fish, amphibians (frogs, toads), reptiles (snakes, turtles), birds, and mammals (dogs, men), the blood circulates through a system of closed blood vessels.

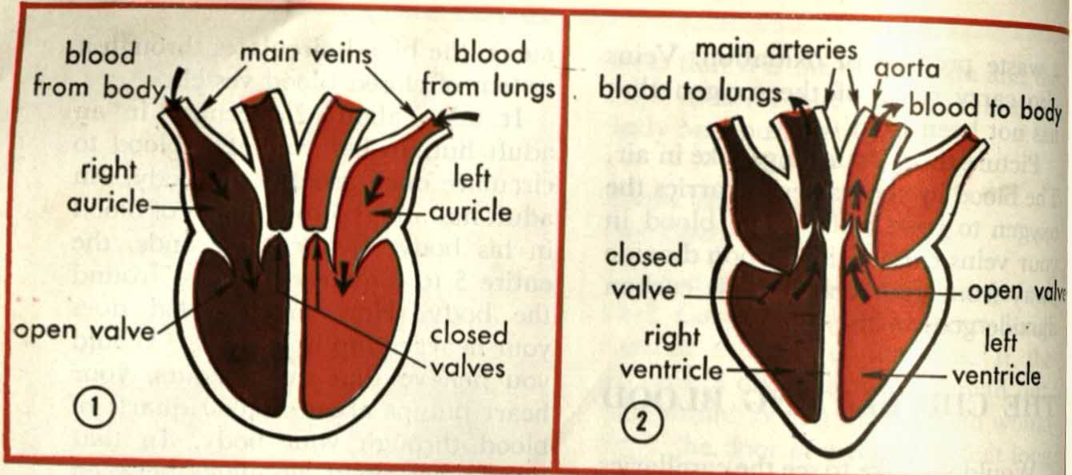
It takes about 25 seconds in an adult human being for the blood to circulate once around the body. An adult has about 5 to 6 quarts of blood in his body. Every 25 seconds, the entire 5 to 6 quarts circulate around the body. How much blood does your heart pump in 24 hours? Would you believe that in 24 hours, your heart pumps about 18,000 quarts of blood through your body? In that time, your blood circulates between 3,400 and 3,500 times. What kind of organ can your heart be that it can do so much work day after day, year after year? Let us see.

THE HEART

It is hard to find an animal so transparent that you can examine its heartbeat under the microscope. But try the small water flea, Daphnia. You can find the Daphnia in almost any pond during early spring, summer, and autumn. It is about the size of a pinhead (Fig. 35). Place it under the microscope in a drop of water. You will see its small heart beating so quickly that you cannot count the beat. The heart of a Daphnia is very simple compared with yours.

One way to learn something about the structure of your heart is to cut apart a sheep's heart which you can get from a butcher. A sheep's heart is somewhat like yours. In fact, the hearts of all mammals are very much alike.

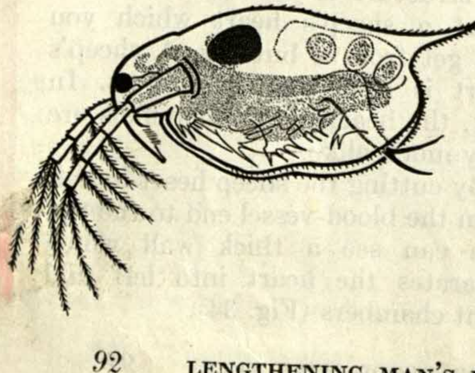
By cutting the sheep heart in half from the blood-vessel end to the tip, you can see a thick wall which separates the heart into left and right chambers (Fig. 34).



34 The heart's valves in action. *Left,* the heart gets blood from the body and lungs. *Right,* the heart sends blood to all parts of the body. Notice which valves are open and closed in the two drawings. If you can get a sheep's heart from your butcher, this drawing will help you find the valves.

The heart is somewhat like a house with two rooms upstairs and two rooms down. A trap door connects each upstairs room with the room below it. The heavy wall of muscle allows nothing to pass from the rooms on the right to the rooms on the left. And yet all your blood on its trip around your body passes through all four rooms in your heart. Let us see how this happens. Trace the path of the blood on Fig. 34 as you read on, and you will find out. As you do so, remember that these four "rooms" of the heart are made up of living tissue. The two lower rooms are made up of thick muscles.

35 A Daphnia, a small water flea. The large dark spot is the heart. *Experiment:* If you can collect some water fleas from a pond, study one under the microscope. Count the heart beat when the slide is cooled with an ice cube; when it is warmed by your hand.



The right side of the heart receives the blood from the body through a large vein which enters the *right auricle.* The right auricle is a thin-walled chamber at the top of the heart. It collects blood from the entire body. This blood is a dark maroon color because it has given up oxygen to the tissues in the body, and picked up wastes on the way back. One of these wastes is carbon dioxide, a gas you learned about earlier (p. 60).

From the auricle the blood passes through a valve into a thick-walled lower chamber called the *right ventricle.* If you examine Fig. 34, you will see that the valve closes to keep the blood from flowing backward into the right auricle. Then, as the heart muscle contracts, it pushes or squeezes the blood out through a large artery going to the lungs.

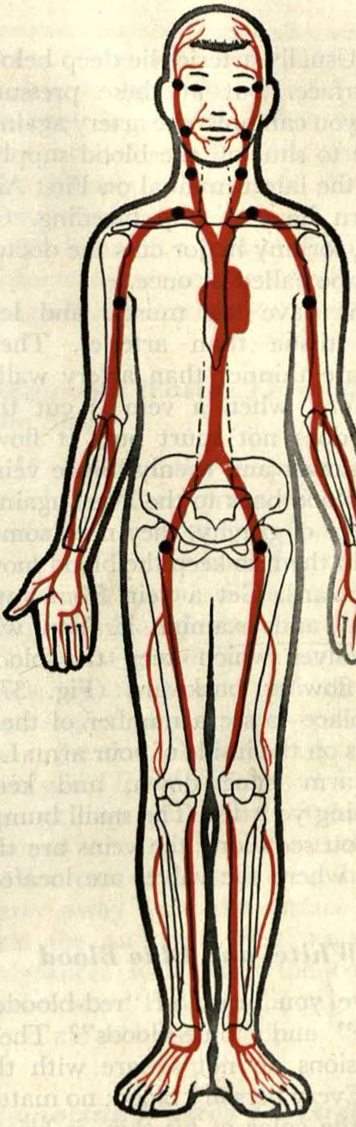
In the lungs the blood will lose carbon dioxide and gain oxygen. Now follow this bright red blood, loaded with oxygen, as it comes back through another vein to the heart. This time the blood enters the left side of the heart. It goes into the *left auricle*, then through the valve into the *left ventricle*. The valve between the auricle and the ventricle closes, and the heart squeezes the blood out through the open valve into the largest artery in the body, the aorta. From here the blood goes to all parts of the body, away from the heart through the arteries, back to the heart through the veins.

Arteries and Veins

Arteries and veins are not alike. If the arteries were tubes as stiff and solid as glass, you could not feel the pulsing of the blood. Get a piece of artery from your butcher. You will find that the walls of arteries are thick because they have an elastic tissue and muscles which expand and contract. This motion helps push the blood on through the blood vessels.

Feel the pulses in the arteries in your temple, neck, heel, arm, and wrist. Can you feel the blood vessels relax and contract?

It is because arteries expand and contract that a cut artery spurts blood. If you have had a course in First Aid, you have learned how to apply pressure at certain points to stop the flow of blood from an artery long enough for a clot to form. Suppose it was a slight cut near the surface. Show how pressure would be made with the fingers on a piece of sterile gauze placed over the cut. For other cuts, you might have to exert pressure at a "pressure point" (Fig. 36) between the heart and the wound. A pressure point is a place where the artery is found near the surface of the



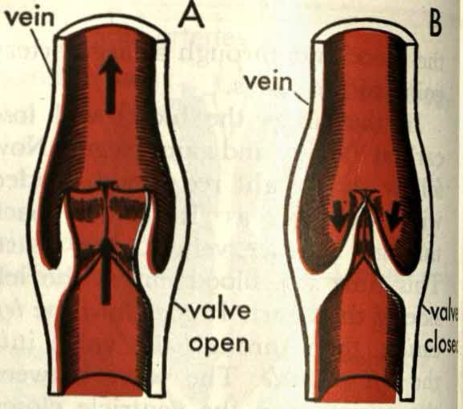
36 How many black dots are there? These are pressure points where an artery is near a bone. Pressing on the artery at these points stops bleeding from an injury beyond them away from the heart.

body. Usually arteries lie deep below the surface. But at these pressure points you can press the artery against a bone to shut off the blood supply. Study the latest manual on First Aid to learn how to stop bleeding. Of course, for any major cuts the doctor should be called at once.

Veins have less muscle and less elastic tissue than arteries. Their walls are thinner than artery walls. Therefore, when a vein is cut the blood does not spurt out. It flows more slowly and evenly. Since veins carry blood back to the heart against the force of gravity, they need something in them to keep the blood moving onward. Get a vein from your butcher and examine it. You will find valves which keep the blood from flowing backward (Fig. 37). One place to see a number of these veins is on the inside of your arm. Let your arm hang down, and keep clenching your fist. The small bumps that you see along the veins are the places where the valves are located.

Red, White, and Blue Blood

Have you heard of "red-blooded people" and "blue-bloods"? These expressions do not square with the facts. Every person's blood, no matter what the color of his skin, is bright red in the arteries and dark red or maroon in the veins. Blood is bright red in the arteries because these blood vessels carry red blood cells loaded with oxygen. Blood returning from the body through the veins has given up about 4 to 6 per cent of its oxygen and is a dark red color. Blood in the veins is also carrying carbon dioxide. It is only because we see our veins through the skin that they look blue.



37 How do your veins keep the blood from flowing backward? In *B*, do you see how the valves close as the blood flows back?

Some people also use the term "white blood." Have you ever had a skin blister on your hand from the rubbing of a tennis racket or baseball bat? The blister is filled with lymph, which is a colorless or whitish fluid. This fluid comes from the plasma of the blood. It filters through the walls of the capillaries as it is needed. As it filters through the walls, the blood cells and certain other parts of the blood are left behind in the capillaries.

Some part of every living cell of your body is in touch with lymph. Food substances and oxygen diffuse, or pass, through the walls of the capillaries into the lymph. From the lymph they diffuse into your cells. As the cells use the food and oxygen, waste products such as carbon dioxide are formed. These wastes diffuse out of the cells into the lymph and into the capillaries. Thus, lymph is a sort of "middleman" between your cells and capillaries.

There are only two veins in the body that carry bright red blood filled with oxygen. Do you know where they are? (See Fig. 32). Where does the blood pick up its oxygen? In the lungs. As you breathe in, fresh air fills the thousands of tiny, thin-walled sacs at the ends of your lung tubes. Oxygen passes through their thin walls and then into the blood in the capillaries of the lungs. The two largest veins in the body then carry blood from the lungs to the left ventricle of the heart. These two veins which carry blood from the lungs to the heart have in them the reddest blood in the body.

THE BLOOD AND WASTES OF CELLS

Oxygen and food are not the only important things blood carries. By now you know that keeping healthy means keeping all your cells healthy. In order to do this (1) the cells must always have food and oxygen brought to them by the blood; (2) just as important, the chemical wastes which the cells give off must be taken away rapidly. Unless wastes are removed from your body, they quickly start to poison the cells, to upset their smooth working, and thus weaken the health of the entire body.

Removing Wastes

Not all the food you eat is digested. Whatever is not digested leaves the body through the large intestine and rectum (Fig. 29). This part of the food has never reached the cells.

As cells burn food and as they make protoplasm, they also produce wastes. One of these wastes from the cells, as you have just read, is carbon dioxide. But cells produce other wastes, especially when proteins are oxidized. Since protein has nitrogen in it, these wastes have nitrogen in them. They are often called *nitrogenous* (ny-TROJ-eh-nus) wastes. One of the most important of them is a substance called *urea* (yoo-REE-uh). Urea can poison the body cells if it is not removed.

We know that carbon dioxide and some water are removed through the lungs. How are other wastes removed?

Removing Wastes Through the Skin

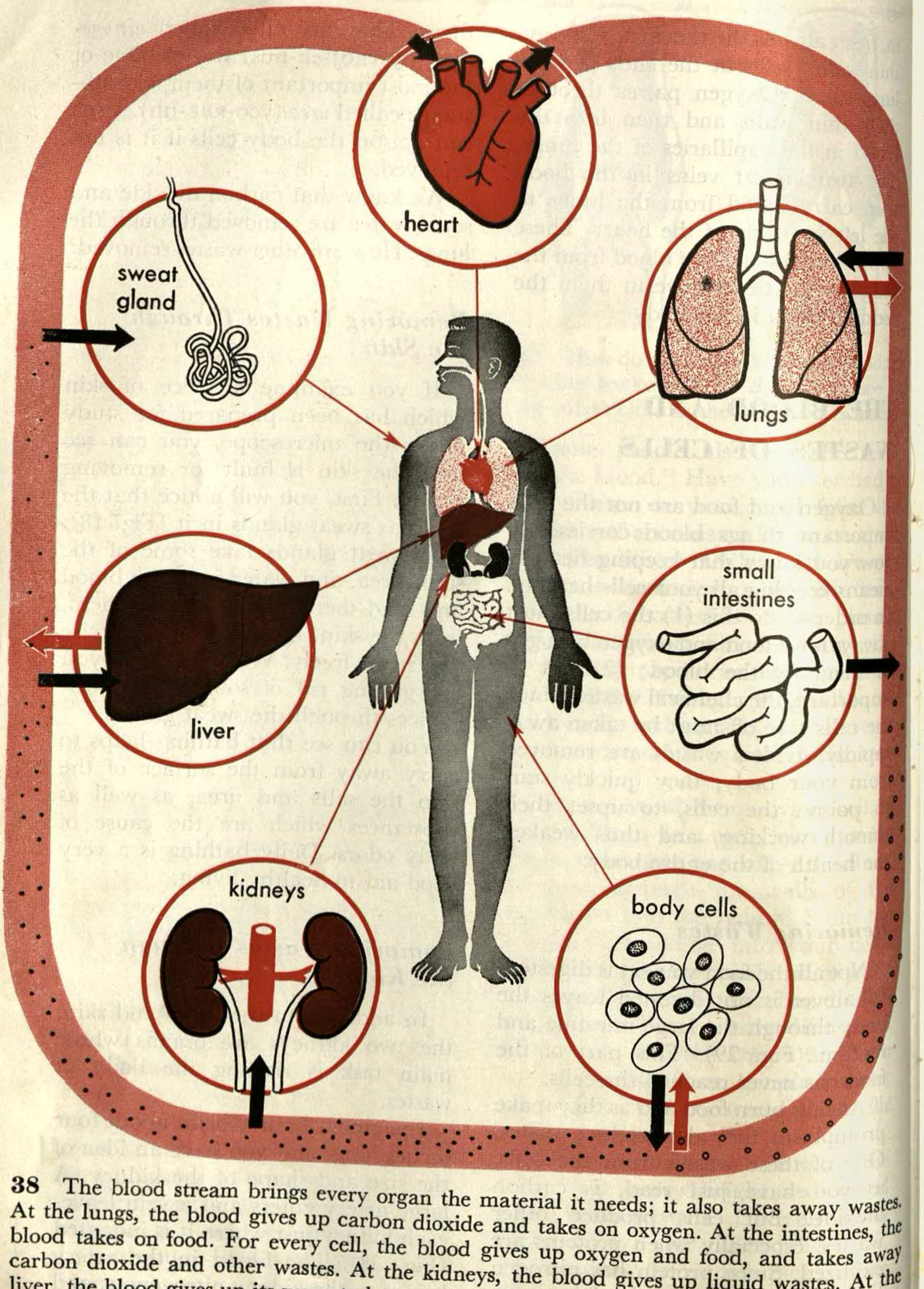
If you examine a piece of skin which has been prepared for study under the microscope, you can see how the skin is built for removing wastes. First, you will notice that the skin has sweat glands in it (Fig. 18). The sweat glands take some of the salts, urea, and water from the blood and send them out, or excrete them, from the skin. During heavy exercise you sweat freely. With the sweat you are getting rid of some waste substances through the sweat glands.

You can see that bathing helps to carry away from the surface of the skin the salts and urea, as well as substances which are the cause of body odors. Daily bathing is a very good aid to healthy living.

Removing Wastes Through the Kidneys

In addition to the lungs and skin, the two kidneys are organs whose main task is ridding the body of wastes.

Imagine a kidney bean about four inches long, and you have an idea of the size and shape of the kidney. A large artery enters and a vein leaves each kidney just where it is indented (Fig. 38). The blood in the artery brings to the kidney nitrogenous and



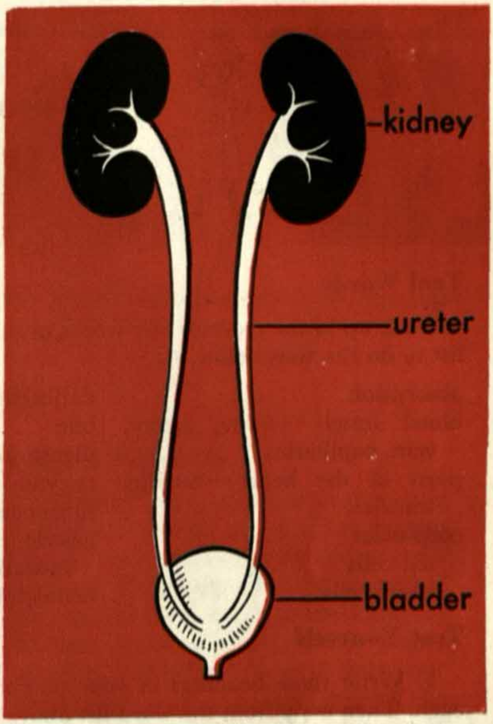
38 The blood stream brings every organ the material it needs; it also takes away wastes. At the lungs, the blood gives up carbon dioxide and takes on oxygen. At the intestines, the blood takes on food. For every cell, the blood gives up oxygen and food, and takes away carbon dioxide and other wastes. At the kidneys, the blood gives up liquid wastes. At the liver, the blood gives up its sugar to be stored. And the blood gets sugar from the liver as the body uses its sugar. The blood also gives up wastes at the sweat glands. Then it goes back to the heart.

other wastes. The blood in the vein leaving the kidney is free of these wastes. They have been left in the kidney. In the kidney, the wastes are filtered out through the walls of thousands of tiny tubes. Wastes are dissolved in water in the kidney and then sent, drop by drop, to the bladder. Finally, the wastes leave the body through a tube that leads to the outside. If you drink plenty of water each day — from 6 to 8 glasses — the kidneys and bladder can do their work easily. It is the blood, however, which carries the wastes to the kidneys, skin, and lungs.

Your Heart — Worth Caring For

Place your hand over your heart. Feel the beat of this remarkable organ, and recall how hard it must work for you. It is the center of a system of circulation which is a lifeline to every cell. It pumps blood with its food and oxygen to every cell. Its work enables the blood to carry away the wastes made by every cell to the lungs, skin, and kidneys.

Yet medical science has found that heart disease and other diseases of the circulatory system are the greatest killers of our time. Many people who have died of heart disease would be alive if they had had a physical examination once a year. In 1953, heart disease killed almost twice as many people over 40 years of age as did cancer. Doctors believe that many of these deaths were unnecessary.



39 The kidneys collect liquid wastes from the blood. Drop by drop these pass through the ureters (yoo-REE-terz) into the bladder. From there they leave the body.

Many think that the poor health practices which later injure the heart begin while people are young. Getting the right food, enough exercise, rest, and sleep will go a long way toward reducing some kinds of heart disease. Scientists need to learn still more about the causes and cures for diseases in the circulation of blood. In your lifetime, scientific discoveries may lengthen lives in this way. Perhaps you will be one to help with this research.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Look up in the glossary any words in this list which you do not know. Then use the list to do the tests below.

absorption
blood vessels — aorta, artery, vein, capillaries
parts of the heart — auricle, ventricle
corpuscles
  red cells
  white cells

antibodies
bile
digestion
enzyme
fibrinogen, fibrin
gastric juice, pancreatic juice, intestinal juice
hemoglobin

hormones
lymph
nitrogenous wastes
pepsin
plasma
villus (pl., villi)
lungs
kidneys

Test Yourself

a. Write these headings in your notebook, leaving space for several words below each. Then copy from the word list above the words that belong under each heading. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Parts of the circulatory system
2. What is found in the blood
3. Digestive juices
4. Used in getting rid of wastes

b. In your notebook, complete each of the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Digestion is . . . .
2. Absorption is . . . .
3. Digested food passes through the walls of the . . . .
4. The blood carries . . . and . . . to the cells of the body.
5. The smallest blood vessels are called . . .

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. (To be done only if school rules permit and you have your parents' consent.) To examine a drop of blood under the microscope, wipe the end of your finger with some absorbent cotton dipped in alcohol. Then prick your finger with a needle heated in a flame to kill the germs on it. After the drop of blood has dropped

onto the slide, wipe your finger with alcohol again. Put a cover slip over the drop of blood and examine the slide under the low- and high-power lenses. What can you see?

2. Place a frog in a jar which contains a piece of cotton soaked in ether. When the frog is relaxed, place it on a piece of cardboard. Cut a round hole the size of a quarter in one end of the cardboard. Over this hole stretch the web of the frog's foot and examine it under the microscope. Notice the small blood vessels. Can you see the blood cells circulating in the smallest vessels (Fig. 40)? You may also study plant cells and other animal cells under the microscope.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Your heart pumps about 36,000 pounds of blood per day into your arteries. How many pounds is this per hour? per week?

2. Fish, reptiles, and amphibians are said to be cold-blooded animals; that is, the temperature of their blood is the same as that of their surroundings. Do you know of any animal groups that are warm-blooded?

Adding to Your Library

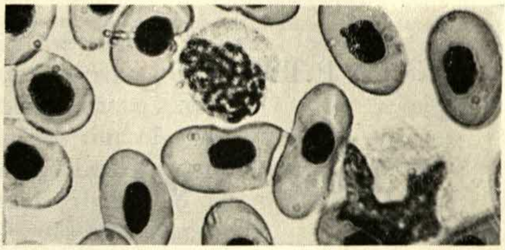
1. *Your Health and Safety*, 3rd edition, by Jessie W. Clemensen and William R. La Porte, Harcourt, Brace, 1952. In Unit Three are several chapters that will be helpful reading.

2. *Blood's Magic for All*, by Alton L. Blakeslee, Pamphlet 145, Public Affairs Press, 22 East 38th St., New York (16), N.Y.

3. *The Story of Blood*, American National Red Cross, Washington, D.C.

4. *Protecting Your Heart*, Metropolitan Life Insurance Co., Health and Welfare Division, 1 Madison Ave., New York.

5. *First Aid*, the official first-aid book of the Red Cross. It should be in your library.



GENERAL BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY HOUSE

40 Frog's red blood cells under the microscope. Each cell has a dark nucleus, surrounded by clear cytoplasm and a cell membrane.

A Bit of Research

1. Your body temperature is the temperature of your blood. Learn how to take your temperature with a fever thermometer. Then keep a five-day record of your temperature taken twice a day, at the same times of day (possibly before breakfast and before dinner). Does your temperature vary? If so, how much? The normal body temperature for most people is 98.6° F. Was yours normal?

2. One of the more interesting pieces of research you can do is to find out about sleep. Do all animals sleep? How much sleep do adults need to keep the best health? How much sleep do young children need? Boys and girls your age? Old people?

Careers For You

Nurses are always in demand. There are not nearly enough nurses to serve in hospitals and private homes.

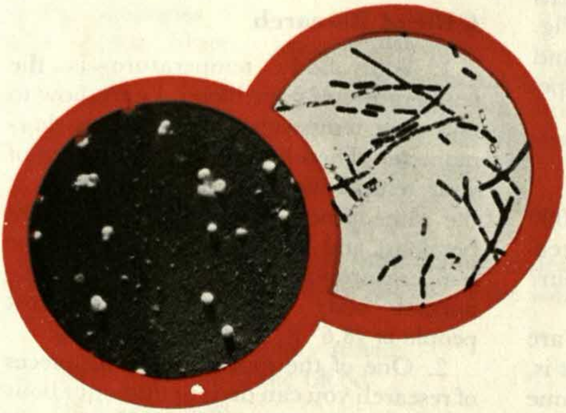
Pharmacists are trained to make up doctors' prescriptions at drugstores and in hospitals. Their work is important.

And, of course, *doctors* are needed in every city and town. Some are general practitioners, while others specialize in some line, such as surgery, diseases of the eye, heart disease, or children's diseases.

Laboratory technicians are needed to do blood counts, to make chemical tests of blood, and to do many like services.

CHAPTER 5

Your Body Against Unseen Killers



Around you are unseen killers — germs. Are you lost? Not at all. Man, working as a scientist, has learned to kill germs. Your body protects itself and is protected by people working with you and for you.

LET US GO back about one hundred years. In one town dozens of men, women, and children have been struck down by a deadly disease called smallpox. Many of its victims die within a few days. Those who get well are scarred for life. Strong and weak alike are victims. No medicine known stops the deadly smallpox.

In another town there is an epidemic of typhoid fever. Where did this killer come from? Person after person dies from the disease, but no one can stop its deadly work.

Diphtheria and pneumonia are also killers that are claiming other victims in one village after another. Why can't these killers be stopped?

Here and there, as years went by, doctors began to gather facts that seemed to point to the killers. And what did they find out? They found that the real killers were so tiny that they could not be seen with the naked eye. They were unseen killers. But some of them could be seen through a microscope. One scientist after another discovered that these killers were disease *germs*. Germs had been causing many of the diseases from which thousands of people had died.

These silent killers have killed more children and adults than any other killers in history. In the year 1600 — over 350 years ago — the different plagues caused by germs then unknown killed many children. Thousands upon thousands of babies and children died in the 1600's because living conditions allowed disease germs to multiply rapidly. Many children did not reach the age at which boys and girls now are graduated from high school. Compare this short life with a life expectancy of some 68 years, our average life span in the United States today. What has caused this increase in the length of life? Part of the story begins with a Frenchman.

Louis Pasteur, a French scientist who lived about 100 years ago, began the battle against disease by trying to find out what was killing the silkworms in France. He found that they were being killed by tiny living things called germs. After experiments Pasteur wrote that he thought most diseases were caused by germs. After Pasteur had made his idea widely known, one scientist after another began to experiment. Robert Koch, a German, discovered how to grow the germs of tuberculosis on food jelly. He and other scientists learned how to stain them with dyes so the germs could be seen under the microscope.

Since the time of Pasteur and Koch, many discoveries have been made. We are now able to save the lives of thousands of persons who would have been killed by germ diseases. For instance, in 1953, there were only sixteen cases of smallpox in the United States. Make no mistake: germs are just as deadly as ever, but we have learned (1) how to keep germs out of the body; (2) how to keep them from multiplying so fast; and (3) how to destroy them if they should enter the body.

Knowing how to ward off germ-caused illnesses makes us fear them less. It is your job, as it is of every wise person, to get this knowledge which scientists have discovered.

STUDYING THE UNSEEN

Let us begin by experimenting to see where germs can be found.

Take six Petri dishes filled with nutrient gelatin, on which bacteria can grow. Sterilize the dishes in a steam pressure chamber so that nothing can possibly remain alive in them.[1] After the dishes have been sterilized and cooled, use three of them as follows. For the first dish, take a wire loop which has been heated red-hot in a Bunsen flame. This heating will kill anything alive on the loop. As soon as it cools, put the loop in a drop of water from the faucet and brush the surface of the gelatin, making a figure 8 on the gelatin. Put back the cover at once. In the second dish press your fingers gently on the gelatin. Place a hair from your head on the third. Put back the covers.

Leave three sterilized Petri dishes untouched and unopened. They will be the controls which you must have with each experiment.

---

[1] Your teacher should be there to show you how to use the sterilizer. If a sterilizer is not available, place the dishes in a pressure cooker for one hour.

MILES LABORATORIES

41 Those white and gray splotches you see on the round Petri dish are colonies of bacteria. Each colony is made up of millions upon millions of bacteria growing on the foodstuff in the dish.

Put all six Petri dishes in a warm, dark place and leave them there for two days.

When you examine the first three Petri dishes at the end of two days, you will see whitish spots on the gelatin which certainly were not there two days before. This will show that there were germs in the water, on your fingers, and on your hair. The control dishes are clear; there are no growths on them. Why?

Kinds of Bacteria

To examine the growths in the Petri dishes you will need the wire loop, a microscope, some slides, and a stain, such as methylene blue. Using the wire loop, take a bit of the material from the white spots on the gelatin. Smear it on a slide. Pass the slide slowly through a low flame four or five times and then stain the material with the dye.

Under the highest power of the microscope, you may find different kinds of organisms. If you do find them, most of them will probably be *bacteria* (sing., *bacterium*). There are three types of bacteria. Some are rod-shaped, called *bacilli* (buh-SIL-eye) (Fig. 42, top). Some are spherical, like tiny marbles, and are called *cocci* (KOK-eye) (Fig. 42, center). Some are spiral-shaped, like coiled springs, and are called *spirilla* (spy-RIL-luh) (Fig. 42, bottom).

The large spots you see in the Petri dishes are made up of many colonies of bacilli, cocci, or spirilla. These three types of organisms are bacteria, as you have just read. But — and this may surprise you — bacteria are plants. They must get their food from other plants and animals or from dead material. Since bacteria live and feed on other organisms, they can cause disease.

Even with your best microscope, you will not be able to see certain very small organisms called *viruses* (VY-rus-ehz). These can be seen only with the electron microscope (p. 100). Viruses cause such diseases as smallpox, yellow fever, measles, infantile paralysis, and influenza. Viruses, it is now thought, also cause the common cold.

Scientists do not agree completely on what viruses really are, but most scientists think that they are large molecules of protein.

Naming Microbes

Microscopic organisms are called by many names. They are called *micro-organisms* or *microbes* because they are small (micro) organisms. They are also called germs. We shall use the word *germs* to mean microbes that cause disease. Viruses, which cannot be seen under the ordinary microscope, are also micro-organisms.

Besides the bacteria, which are plants, there are also the *protozoa* (proh-toh-ZOH-uh), which are single-celled animals.

Some protozoa cause disease. Protozoa, like the common fresh-water ameba and the paramecium, live in ponds or streams and cause no diseases. But certain other protozoa cause malaria, sleeping sickness, and other diseases.

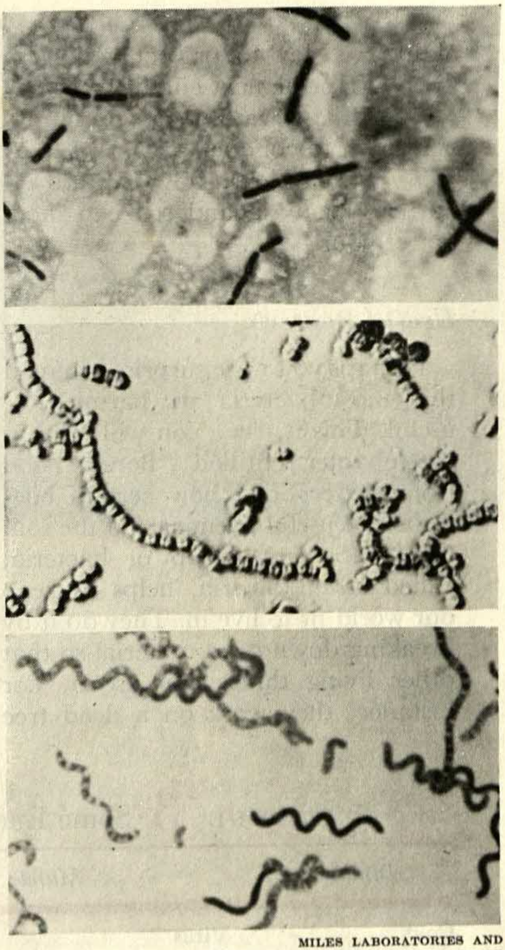
Bacteria Can Protect Themselves

Bacteria can live in a resting stage. In this stage they are called *spores.* When a bacterium forms a spore, it grows a thick wall which protects it. Under favorable conditions — that is, where there is warmth, darkness, moisture, and plenty of food — the bacterium breaks through the spore wall and begins to multiply in number.

Scientists have found spores of bacteria in the air, even fifteen miles up and more, and in hot springs, on ice, on dry dust, and in many places where most living things would die. Their thick wall allows the spores to stay alive under very unfavorable conditions.

Your Defenses Against Bacteria

Bacteria do multiply rapidly. A bacterium, given warmth, food, moisture, and darkness, may divide into two bacteria every 15 minutes. At the end of 15 minutes there will be 2; at 30 minutes, there will be 4; at 45 minutes, 8; and at the end of 8 hours, more than 4 billion!



MILES LABORATORIES AND GENERAL BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY HOUSE

42 Through the microscope, the three types of bacteria. *Top*, rod-shaped bacteria, bacilli. *Center*, spherical bacteria, cocci, in chains. *Bottom*, spiral-shaped bacteria, spirilla.

Although bacteria increase their numbers amazingly, you are well protected because:

1. Most bacteria are either harmless or useful.

2. Your body protects itself from harmful bacteria.

3. Your body can be helped to overcome bacteria which cause disease.

4. Your community stands watch

night and day to protect you from disease. (In the next chapter you will read of many ways your community helps you to conquer bacteria.)

5. You can learn how to ward off harmful bacteria and so keep them out of your body.

Useful Bacteria

Perhaps you were surprised to read that most bacteria are harmless or useful. This is true. You will read in the chapter entitled "Better Food from Better Soil" how certain bacteria add useful chemicals to the soil. One important group of bacteria, called *decay* bacteria, helps to keep our world fit to live in. They do it by breaking down dead material so that other living things can use it. For instance, they work on a dead tree until it becomes part of the soil. The tree decays only because decay bacteria and other living things use part of it for food. Just think what this world would be like if dead plants and animals never decayed!

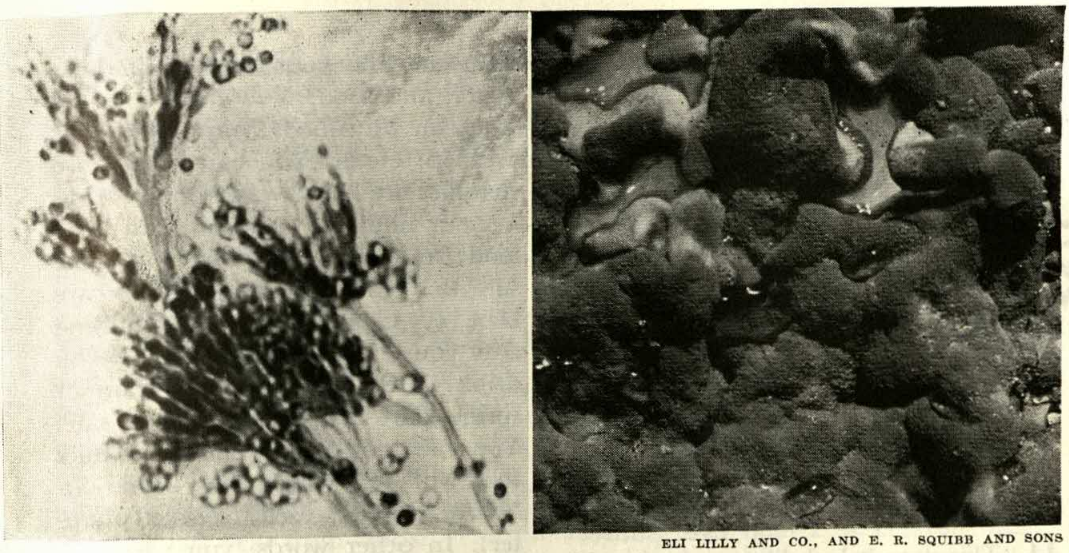
Certain kinds of decay bacteria are useful in curing cheese, tobacco, and leather, and in preparing flax, from which linen is made. In the making of flax, bacteria cause the decay of the body of the flax plant, leaving the fibers.

Microbe Against Microbe

Have you ever put under the microscope some of the blue-green mold that you have found growing on an orange, on cheese, or on bread? Prepare a slide of this mold and look at it under the highest-power lens. This

TABLE **3** Some Enemies Among the Microbes

Disease	*Microbe*	*Destroying the Germ or Its Products*
Cold	Virus	As yet unsuccessful
Smallpox	Virus	Antibodies produced by vaccination
Infantile paralysis	Virus	As yet unknown
Yellow fever	Virus	Antibodies through injection
Tuberculosis	Tuberculosis bacillus	Streptomycin (not always successful)
Pneumonia	Pneumococcus	Sulfa drugs Penicillin Antibodies in plasma
Typhoid fever	Typhoid bacillus	Antibodies produced by inoculation
Diphtheria	Diphtheria bacillus	Antibodies (antitoxin) produced by inoculation
Tetanus	Tetanus bacillus	Antibodies (antitoxin) produced by inoculation
Malaria	Plasmodium (a protozoon)	Atebrin Quinine
Sleeping sickness	Trypanosoma (trip-an-oh-SOH-mah) (a protozoon found in Africa)	Arsenicals (ar-SEN-ih-k'lz)



ELI LILLY AND CO., AND E. R. SQUIBB AND SONS

43 *Left*, the Penicillium fungus (blue mold) under the microscope. It has a branching thread-like body. *Right*, millions upon millions of penicillium fungus plants growing in a large vat. The clear droplets have in them the penicillin the mold makes.

mold is a tiny plant called *Penicillium* (Fig. 43).

Dr. Alexander Fleming noticed this bluish growth when he was looking at a culture of bacteria. He noticed that the bacteria which he had expected to find in the culture were missing in the area around the penicillium. Had the penicillium (Fig. 43) made a substance which had killed bacteria? Yes, it seemed to be so. Then other scientists in England set up a series of experiments to test this theory. They found that Dr. Fleming's discovery was true. They discovered that the mold produced a powerful germ killer, which we now call *penicillin* (pen-ih-SIL-in).

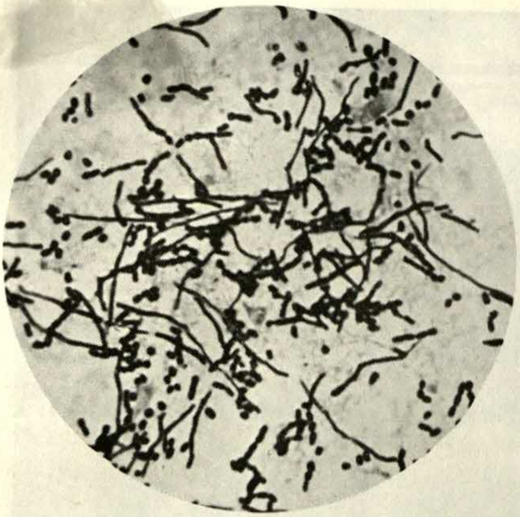
In *Medicine on the March* (see "Going Further") you can read the story of how penicillin was produced in amounts great enough to help in curing millions of sick persons every year. Penicillin is used to check many kinds of infection caused by bacteria. Any germ-killer made by a living organism (penicillium mold is a plant) is called an *antibiotic* (an-tee-by-OT-ik).

Penicillin is not the only germ-killer made by microscopic plants. We now have *streptomycin* (strep-toh-MY-sin) (Fig. 44), discovered by Dr. Selman Waksman of Rutgers University in 1945. Streptomycin is used very successfully in certain types of tuberculosis. *Aureomycin* (or-ih-oh-MY-sin) and other antibiotics have also been produced by soil bacteria.

These are by no means all our allies among the micro-organisms. No doubt many more are still to be discovered. Watch your science magazines for the latest discoveries. Perhaps, in your later years, you will discover one of these allies.

KEEPING GERMS OUT OF THE BODY

Germs that are kept outside your body can do you very little harm, but



E. R. SQUIBB AND SONS

44 This doesn't look like much, does it? Yet this is the fungus which makes streptomycin, a drug used against tuberculosis.

the question is, how do germs get into your body? There is one answer to this question: germs enter through openings in the body. Let us see what this means.

Entry with Water, Milk, or Food

Typhoid germs usually enter the body in water or milk. They may be carried for years by a person who is not himself sick with typhoid. Such a person, called a typhoid carrier, may spread the germs through the water or milk you drink. Tuberculosis germs may also enter with milk.

Bacteria can enter our bodies with the food we eat. The housefly is a carrier of germs. Flies feed on garbage and filth and breed there. Then, with their feet covered with germs, they may fly to the food in your kitchen — that is, if they can get in. Also, food that is not kept cold in hot weather allows harmful bacteria to grow.

What can you do to keep germs from entering your body with milk, water, and food? You can do much. You can buy foods from stores that are kept clean. You can make sure that flies are kept away from all foods in your home. You can try to keep food from spoiling. You can make sure that your hands and dishes are kept very clean. When on a camping trip you can make sure that you drink water only from a stream or spring that has been declared safe. You can look for the label on milk that will tell you it has been *pasteurized* (PASS-ter-yzed) (see next chapter). In other words, you can help make sure that you eat or drink nothing that may have harmful bacteria in it.

You can do part of this work yourself, but your community has to do the rest. In the next chapter you will read what communities can do when they work together to keep germs out of milk, water, and food.

Entry with Air

Some of the bacteria which cause diseases of lungs and throats are believed to enter our bodies with the air we breathe. Diphtheria is caused by a bacillus which lives in the throat where it makes a poison or *toxin*. The tuberculosis bacillus at times may enter with the air and lodge in the lungs. The pneumonia coccus affects the lungs and bronchial tubes. These three bacteria can be spread, therefore, by sneezing and spitting. They may be carried to another person in the droplets from sneezes and coughs.

Other diseases which are spread through the air are influenza and the common cold. These diseases are caused by viruses, not by bacteria.

It is easy enough to see what you can do to prevent the spread of diseases by air. Whether or not you have a cold, be sure to cover your nose and mouth with a handkerchief when you sneeze or cough. If you can avoid it, don't get close enough to another person to let your breath carry the cold virus to him. In an influenza epidemic, stay out of crowds.

Scientists have not found a cure for the common cold. Colds make people lose more school days and working hours than does any other ailment. How much school time did you lose last year from colds?

The best advice to you when you do catch a cold is to rest, eat lightly, drink liquids, and keep warm. Scientists have found, however, that keeping the body in good general health helps you withstand colds. Plenty of vitamin D, the vitamin found in cod liver oil and produced in your skin when you are out in the sunshine, helps to build resistance to colds.

Entry Through the Skin

Of course, a cut or break in the skin will allow bacteria to enter your body. The tetanus or lockjaw bacillus enters this way. The tetanus germ lives in the ground. It cannot grow in air, but it can and does grow in a wound caused by stepping on a nail. Exploding firecrackers or sharp knives cause deep wounds, in which tetanus germs can find a place to grow. If you get such a wound, it should be cleaned with an antiseptic at once. You should see a doctor at once if the wound is deep. If he thinks there is danger of tetanus infection, he will give you the proper treatment.

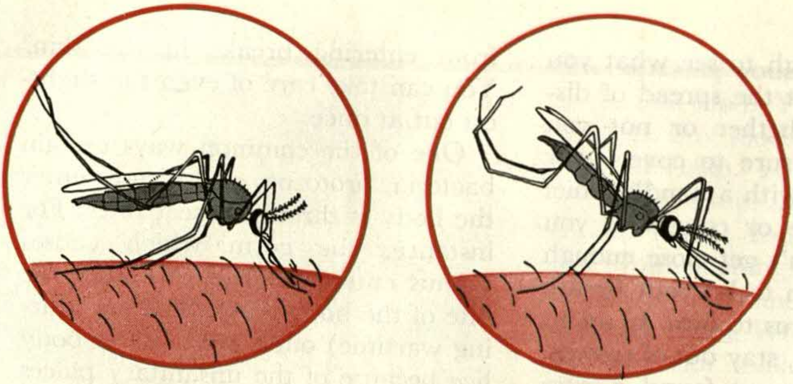
What can you do to keep bacteria from entering breaks in the skin? You can take care of even the slightest cut at once.

One of the common ways certain bacteria, protozoa, and viruses enter the body is through insect bites. For instance, the germ which causes typhus enters the body through the bite of the body louse. Soldiers (during wartime) often are hosts to body lice because of the unsanitary places they may have to be in. During World War II (when soldiers could not bathe often enough to get rid of insects), DDT was sprayed on their clothing and bodies to kill the lice.

Malaria, which causes more illness and death than any other germ disease, is carried by the malaria mosquito. This is not the common mosquito of the cooler climates, but the *anopheles* (an-OFF-uh-leez) mosquito (Fig. 45). Anopheles mosquitoes are sometimes found in the United States in fairly large numbers even as far north as Ohio. Study Fig. 45 to learn how you can tell the common, harmless mosquito from the anopheles.

To protect yourself from mosquitoes and flies, put up your screens early. You can paint screens with a DDT solution which will kill many of these harmful insects. Then make a survey of your yard to drain any pools of water where mosquitoes might breed. Oil spread on the surface of standing pools of water will kill the larvae of mosquitoes. The larvae breathe at the water's surface. Can you tell why oil would kill them?

Some germs do not need to get through the skin to cause trouble. Athlete's foot is caused by a fungus plant that grows on the surface of the skin. The fungus of athlete's foot is



45 The common mosquito on the left; the anopheles which carries malaria, on the right. What is one difference between the two insects?

found on floors of places like locker rooms and swimming pools. This fungus generally feeds on the skin on the bottom of the feet and between the toes where it causes great itching and sores. Therefore, when you go to public swimming pools, wear rubber bathing slippers. It would be wise to give your own bathroom floor a wash with chlorine water every week or so.

Infantile Paralysis (Polio)

You can see that it would be difficult to prevent a germ disease if you did not know how the germs got into your body. Infantile paralysis (polio) is such a disease. Scientists think that the viruses of polio enter the body through the mouth, nose, or throat, but they are not absolutely sure. They do not know whether polio viruses are waterborne or airborne, or whether they enter with food. Although cases appear many months during the year, the warm summer months seem to be the time when the virus is most active. In Chapter 4 you read that gamma globulin from blood plasma gives a few weeks' protection. You read also about the vaccine prepared by Dr. Jonas E. Salk and given experimentally in the hope of preventing polio. Scientific research is going on in many laboratories throughout the country in an attempt to find something that will be a sure protection against the virus of polio.

Symptoms of Illness

A trained expert can usually tell what an illness is by the symptoms. A symptom is a clue, or a sign, but the puzzling thing is that many illnesses show the same symptoms in the beginning. A fever, a sore throat, and a cough may be the first signs of any one of three or four diseases. Therefore, you should always tell your parents when you feel ill, and remember that a doctor is trained to read your symptoms and treat the illness. Do not try to treat it yourself.

BODY DEFENSES AGAINST DISEASE

You know now how germs enter your body. In your experiments with bacteria, you have found that they are everywhere. Does that mean that you are at their mercy? Not at all, not even if they do get into your body. Your body has several lines of defense to do battle with them.

First Line of Defense

Earlier in this unit you learned that flat cells like those on the inside of your cheek cover the entire surface of your body. Your skin consists of several layers of flat cells. These cells are your first line of defense against bacteria. Bacteria cannot get through a whole skin.

Bacteria get into your mouth, but they cannot easily get into the body tissues. First, there are protecting cells which cover the inside of your gullet, stomach, and intestines. Second, these inner cells lining the food tube and organs of digestion, as well as your nose and throat, make a sticky fluid called mucus. In fact, we call these linings *mucous membranes*. The sticky surface of these mucous membranes catches many bacteria and helps to kill some of them. Third, if the bacteria reach your stomach, the acid in the gastric juice will also kill some of them. But sometimes more bacteria enter than the mucous membranes or the gastric juice can take care of. Then we must depend upon other defenses.

It is important to keep the layer of covering cells unbroken. But how can an active boy or girl of your age do that? Many times you bruise or cut yourself in games or on hikes. If you get a bruise, or a cut in which the skin is broken, you will have to make some kind of covering for it. First, wash the cut with soap and water. If the cut is small, you may use a Band-aid; if it is large, a loose bandage may be put on until a clot forms. The clot closes the break in the skin. (*Caution:* A tight bandage may stop repair of cells by keeping air from the wound and by cutting down blood circulation.)

Second Line of Defense

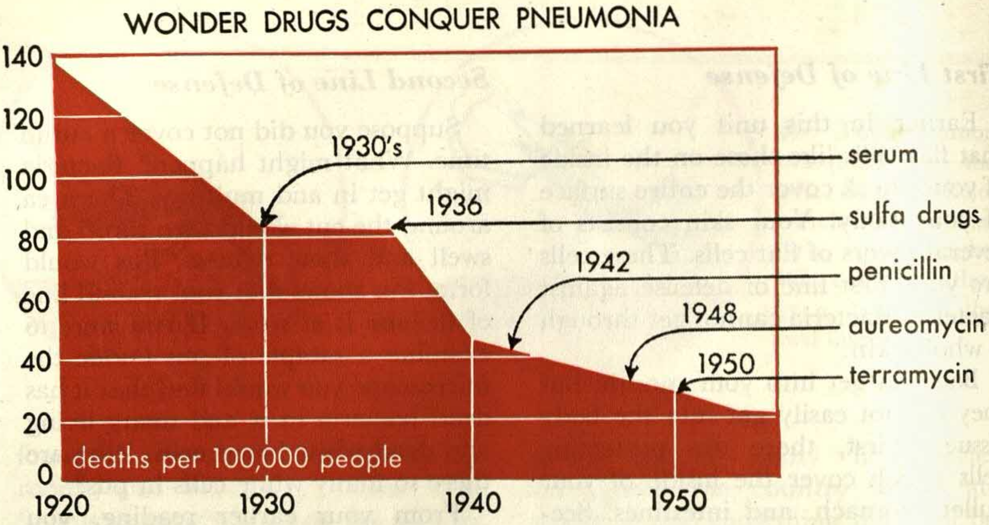
Suppose you did not cover a cut in time. What might happen? Bacteria might get in and multiply. The area around the cut would then throb and swell and show redness. Pus would form. Pus shows that your second line of defense is at work. If you were to examine a sample of pus under the microscope you would find that it has dead bacteria in it and many living and dead white blood cells. Why are there so many white cells in pus?

From your earlier reading, you know that the white cells increase in number whenever there is infection in the body. Great numbers of white cells rush to the spot and attack the bacteria. White cells surround bacteria and kill them. When they have destroyed many bacteria, these white cells die and new ones take their place.

Sometimes, however, germs enter the body in such large numbers or multiply so fast that even the white cells cannot conquer them. This might happen if a person caught smallpox or typhoid. But we have other defenses besides the white blood cells. Let us see what they are.

Other Defenses in the Body

Do you have a vaccination scar on your arm or leg? The scar shows that you have been protected against smallpox. It shows that the vaccination "took." You will not get smallpox within four to eight years after you have been vaccinated successfully, no matter how many times the smallpox virus enters your body. In *vaccination* against smallpox, a small amount of the virus of cowpox is placed in a small scratch on your



46 The line dropped each time a new drug was found for the treatment of pneumonia. How many people per 100,000 died of pneumonia in 1920? in 1950?

arm.[1] Your body then brings up its defenses against this virus, by making antibodies. Antibodies are chemicals made by the body; antibodies destroy germs and viruses. These antibodies stay in the blood plasma six to eight years and destroy any smallpox virus that may enter the body. Scientists say you are then *immune* to the disease. But this *immunity* does not last all your life. If someone in your city or town should get smallpox, most people would have to be vaccinated again.

You cannot be made immune to typhoid fever, diphtheria, yellow fever, or cholera by vaccination. Instead, dead or weakened bacteria or viruses (gotten from animals like the cow) are injected into the body. This injection is known as an *inoculation* (in-ok-yoo-LAY-shun). The body then makes antibodies against these organisms. You have probably been inoculated for diphtheria. If so, you have the antibodies for diphtheria in your blood. Antibodies for some diseases do not remain in the body for more than a year; others may last a very long time. During World War II, soldiers were inoculated against many diseases. Travelers to foreign countries must be vaccinated against smallpox. Usually they are also inoculated against typhoid and yellow fever.

Natural and Acquired Immunity

When you are vaccinated or inoculated against a disease, you really get a slight attack of the disease. This attack causes your system to make antibodies and thus protects you against a real attack of the disease. When a person has certain diseases, such as chicken pox and whooping cough, his body builds antibodies. For instance, an attack of typhoid fever usually makes a person immune for life. This is true also of some children's diseases, such as chicken pox. During the disease, the body makes antibodies which prevent future attacks.

---

[1] Cowpox is a disease of cows; it is caused by a virus very similar to that which causes smallpox.

There are two ways, then, of getting immunity to some diseases:

1. By building antibodies in the blood stream by vaccination or inoculation.
2. By having certain diseases and recovering from them.

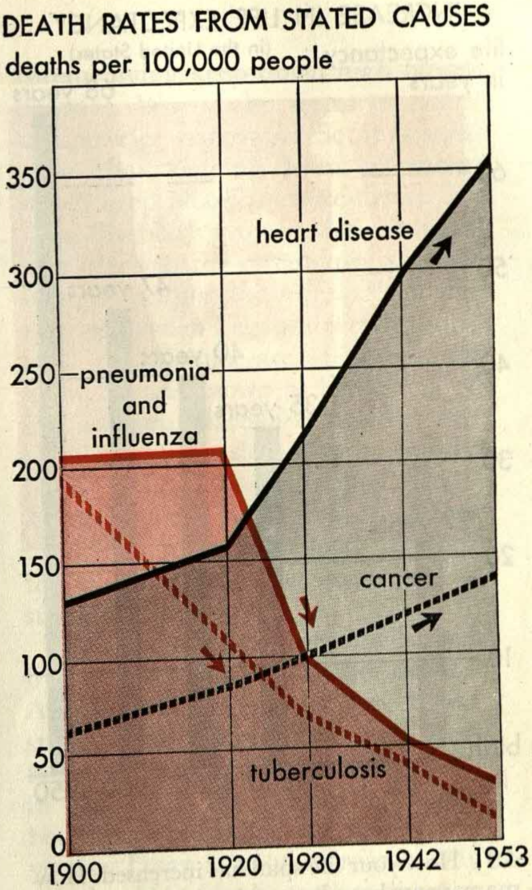
On the other hand, some people are born with immunity to certain diseases. We say that they have a *natural immunity*. They probably had antibodies for these diseases when they were born.

Help from Animals

There is still another way of fighting certain diseases. Scientists have discovered that antibodies produced in other animals can be injected into our bodies.

As you have read, the bacteria which cause some diseases stay in one place in our bodies and produce poisons or *toxins*. Diphtheria germs stay in the throat; tetanus germs, in a wound. If the bacteria of diphtheria or tetanus are injected into a horse, for example, the horse will produce in his blood the chemicals to act against the toxin. These chemicals are called antitoxins. An *antitoxin* acts against a toxin and makes it harmless. These antitoxins are to be found in the plasma of the horse. The plasma is taken from the horse and stored in vials.

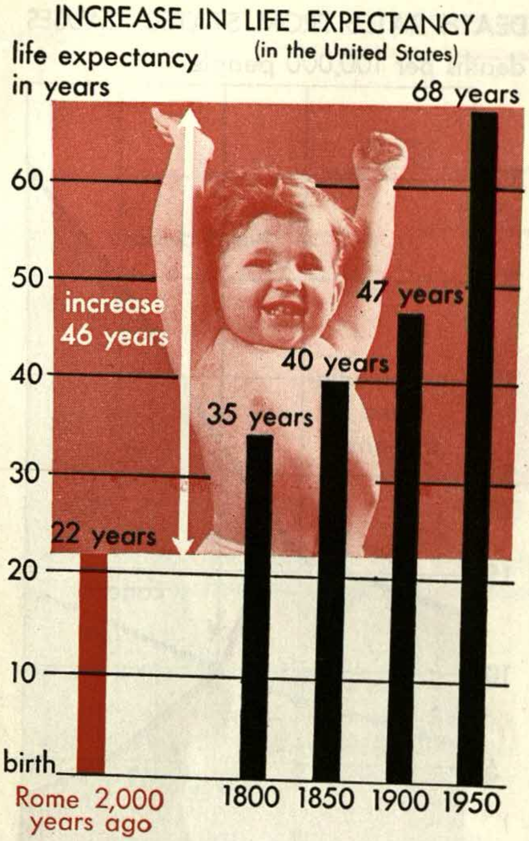
When a person is ill with tetanus or diphtheria, the antitoxin can be injected to act against the toxin of the disease. Thus the animal which makes the antitoxin has helped to cure a person. Many lives have been saved by the antibodies and antitoxins produced in horses, sheep, rabbits, and guinea pigs. These animals are in the service of mankind.



47 What three diseases are on the downswing? Which two are on the upswing? According to the graph, which disease killed more people in 1920 — pneumonia or heart disease? In 1942, which was the greater killer? Why?

Chemicals Against Microbes

For some diseases we must have other chemical help. Here, again, scientists have come to our aid. You have used iodine to destroy bacteria. Perhaps you know that chlorine is used to kill germs in drinking water. Chlorine will also kill the fungus of athlete's foot. Quinine and *atebrin*



48 How your life span has increased. How many years have been gained for man in the past years?

(AT-uh-brin) are used against malaria. The sulfa drugs are used in the battle against germs that cause certain types of pneumonia.

The list of chemical cures is a long one. New ones are constantly being discovered. Discoveries of this kind show how science helps to increase man's life span. Perhaps you will help make such a discovery.

Cancer — Cause Unknown

Finding the cause of any disease is a big job for scientists. Today scientists are still searching for the causes of such diseases as cancer, arthritis, and high blood pressure. These diseases may not be caused by germs.

Although Louis Pasteur showed that germs cause many diseases, it is now a widely accepted theory that cancer is not caused by a germ. In cancer, certain cells which ordinarily do not divide begin to divide rapidly in a wild manner. Then they form a shapeless lump, or cancer, somewhere inside or on the surface of the body. During their growth, these wild cells may interfere with the normal working of the organs of the body. Finally, parts of certain types of cancers may get into the blood stream and form cancers elsewhere in the body.

Experiments on animals have shown that constant irritation on parts of the body may be the cause of one kind of cancer. Very little is known about what causes cancer of the inner organs.

Careful study of cancer in animals and humans has shown that there are many signs of its development. Here are a few of these signs:

1. A growth (pimple or mole or hard lump) which does not disappear and often gets larger.
2. Signs of constant constipation; that is, poor bowel movement in a person who has had regular bowel movement.
3. Any *unusual* discomfort or discharge (colorless or tinged with blood) in any part of the body.

These signs may not mean cancer at all, but it is wise to let the doctor check them.

Cancer in its early stages can often be treated successfully. X-ray treatments or surgery can often cure a cancer at its beginning. Recently scientists have been working to find very simple ways of discovering certain kinds of cancer. Even now there are ways a doctor may discover certain types of cancer through examination. Early discovery of a cancer means that it probably can be treated successfully.

However, there is much work to be done in finding the cause and treatment of cancer.

Diseases Not Caused by Germs

There are other diseases which are not caused by germs. Diabetes is caused by a lack of the substance *insulin* (IN-suh-lin). This chemical — a hormone (p. 82) — is made by the pancreas. Insulin, like other hormones, is sent directly into the blood. Diabetes results when the pancreas does not make enough insulin.

Insulin helps the body to oxidize sugars and fats. Without insulin, therefore, the body cannot oxidize all the sugar it gets in food. As a result, sugar is found in the urine of diabetic people. Since the discoveries made by Dr. Frederick Banting of Toronto, and others, diabetes can be treated by careful diet and by daily injections of insulin. Before the discovery of insulin, a diabetic person could not use enough of the sugar in his body to give him the energy he needed for his daily work.

Other diseases which are probably not caused by germs are high blood pressure and certain kinds of heart disease. One cause of high blood pressure is the narrowing of the small arteries. The heart, therefore, has to pump harder. That is, it has to work harder, get up a higher pressure, to send the blood through narrower arteries. No sure cause or cure for high blood pressure has been found. But doctors advise us that rest and careful living keep down high blood pressure. Worry also seems to make the arteries narrower. So it would seem that keeping from worrying would keep blood pressure down.

As the body grows older, changes take place in the circulatory system. In some people, the soft walls of the arteries harden because certain minerals of calcium are deposited in them. This is known as hardening of the arteries. Hardened arteries are less elastic. They do not stretch easily when blood flows through them. Therefore, the heart has to pump harder to force the blood through the body. This extra work puts a strain on the heart.

Many of these diseases not caused by germs are diseases of older people. Are you wondering why you should study about them? Sometimes, perhaps, they would not have shown up in old age if the person had taken better care of his health when he was young. There is another reason why you should know about these diseases, such as high blood pressure, heart disease, and arthritis, that come with the wearing out of the body. It will be the scientists of your generation — perhaps you will be one of them — who will probably find out how to treat these diseases.

Tuberculosis — Arrested, But Not Cured

Another disease for which we need a cure is tuberculosis. It is caused by a germ that may strike young or old, weak or strong. It is more likely to develop in young people, however, and in persons who are run-down physically. People in many cities and towns are now getting free X-ray examinations. In this way the early

49 X-ray units in vans such as this one may have visited your community. They provide free chest X rays and help keep down tuberculosis.

FEDERAL SECURITY AGENCY

stages of tuberculosis are discovered (Fig. 50). Perhaps one of the X-ray vans shown in Fig. 49 has already visited your school.

Rest in bed, good food, and fresh air arrest the growth of the tuberculosis germ while the body builds up ways to fight it. But the real cure has never been found. Recently, however, streptomycin has been used with some success in certain forms of tuberculosis. So have certain drugs called the isoniazids (eye-so-NY-ah-zidz). With streptomycin, isoniazids, and complete rest, the fight against tuberculosis is gaining ground. You can help by having your chest X-rayed every year and by keeping your body in good condition!

What Progress Has Been Made?

In this chapter you have seen how you have benefited from the work of thousands of scientists. Study the charts shown in Figs. 46, 47, and 48 to see how these discoveries are helping to make your life span longer. In the years since 1930, deaths from pneumonia in young children have gone down about 90%. But Fig. 47 shows that there are more deaths from cancer and heart disease, even though deaths from all causes are

50 This girl is having her chest X-rayed simply, quickly, and safely. Chest X-ray examinations help in the fight against tuberculosis. Your city or county board of health will tell you how you may get an X ray of your chest.

JORDAN, N. Y., STATE HEALTH SERVICE

lower. The work is not done; there is plenty for each of you to do in the days to come. What has been done? What do you know to begin with?

Many unseen killers lurk in the air, water, and earth, ready to attack the person who does not keep himself in good health. These killers may be micro-organisms, such as bacteria, viruses, or protozoa, or they may be insects that carry germs. Germs may get into your body through a break in the skin, with the air you breathe, or with your food.

But your body has several lines of defense against disease:

1. Your skin, mucous membranes, and digestive juices.
2. The white blood cells.
3. Antibodies in the blood stream (which may be made by the body or by vaccination and inoculation).
4. Chemical aids like various drugs or antibiotics.

As a result of the experiments and past work of scientists, your life span has been lengthened to an average approaching 70 years (Fig. 48). How long would your average have been if you had been born in 1800? 1850? 1900? Study Fig. 48 carefully. Do you see that because of man's intelligence in controlling disease, you have received a gift of almost a quarter of a century of life ?

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Write out your own meaning of each word and then check it with the glossary. Do you have to change your meaning to make it right?

antibiotic drugs (aureomycin, penicillin, streptomycin)
antibodies
antitoxin
micro-organisms (bacillus [pl., bacilli], bacterium [pl., bacteria], coccus [pl., cocci], mold, spirillum [pl., spirilla], virus)
immunity
inoculation
mucous membrane
toxin
vaccination

Test Yourself

1. When you are sure that you can use the words in the word list correctly, plan a talk on one of these topics:
   - *a.* Micro-organisms
   - *b.* Chemical cures for disease
   - *c.* Scientific studies that need to be made
   - *d.* Recent cures reported in newspaper articles
2. Make up a test for your classmates in which you write the meanings of words from the word list, leaving a blank to be filled in with the word you are defining, for example:

Rod-shaped bacteria are called . . .

3. Meanwhile, in order to be sure that you know these words yourself, do this matching test. Copy the words in List A. Before the word write the number of the phrase from List B that best explains its meaning. DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK.

List A

micro-organism
inoculation
antibody
toxin
antitoxin
virus
bacteria
coccus
bacillus
spirillum

List B

1. rod-shaped bacterium
2. a substance made in the body that will kill certain disease germs
3. spiral-shaped bacterium
4. poison
5. germ
6. a substance put into the blood stream to fight certain disease poisons
7. single-celled plants found in three shapes: rods, spirals, spheres
8. injecting into the body weakened disease germs which will make you immune to the disease
9. bacterium shaped like a marble
10. a large protein molecule, much smaller than a bacterium, that may cause disease

4. Write a paragraph on the subject "How the Life Span Has Been Increased by Science"; write a second paragraph on the subject "How I Can Help to Increase My Own Life Span." The best papers in the class might be submitted to the school newspaper.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. If your teacher has some prepared stained slides of bacteria, examine them under the high-power lens of a microscope. Then make accurate drawings of each kind for your notebook.

2. Place about 20 cooked peas or beans in a glass of water and allow them to stand for about a week. There will be a foul odor. But there will also be a mass of decay bacteria in the scum which forms.

Heat one end of a needle red-hot. This is to kill any bacteria on it. Then with the needle pick up some of the scum and spread it on a spot near the center of the slide. Again heat the needle to kill any bacteria on it. Allow the slide to dry. Then pass the slide slowly through a low flame four or five times. Stain it with a few drops of methylene blue. (You can get this stain at a biological supply house.) After 1 minute rinse the slide with water several times and let it dry. You have prepared a slide of bacteria. Examine it under the microscope.

3. *Growing Penicillium.* Place an orange or lemon in a moist jar, and set it in a warm room. In a week or so, you will be able to examine the mold that has formed and to see its structure. Can you find its spores?

4. Are there bacteria in soil? Plan an experiment using the microscope to help you answer this question.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. How can you tell an anopheles mosquito from a common mosquito?
2. What advice for preserving their health would you give a group of Boy Scouts planning a two-week camping trip?
3. In 1920, in a small town in Ohio, 1,000 people became ill with typhoid fever. Thirty died. If you had been the Health Inspector, where would you have looked for the cause of the disease? What would you have done after you discovered its cause?

Adding to Your Library

1. In *Medicine on the March* by Marguerite Clark, Funk and Wagnalls, 1949, you can read of many experiments and discoveries in the field of scientific medicine.
2. You will find three books by Paul De Kruif, published by Harcourt, Brace, very interesting. They contain exciting accounts of the work of pioneer scientists in their battle against disease. These books are *Hunger Fighters*, *Microbe Hunters*, and *Men Against Death.*
3. *The Romance of Medical Science* by Patrick Pringle, Roy Publishers, New York, 1953. This is a history of medicine which stresses the work and patience of the men who have advanced medical science.
4. *The Challenge of Cancer*, a pamphlet available from the Federal Security Agency, Public Health Service, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Md.
5. *The Endless Frontier*, a free pamphlet from the Health Information Foundation, 420 Lexington Ave., New York (17), N.Y. Five stories reporting medical progress, especially relating to *cortisone* (KOR-tih-sohn), heart disease, cancer, nutrition, and surgical care on the Korean battlefront.

A Bit of Research

1. Go to your local Board of Health and ask for figures on pneumonia death rates in your community. Make a graph like the one in Fig. 47 from the information you get there.
2. Place in covered jars slices of different kinds of fruits (apple, orange, banana, lemon, pear). See what kinds of molds grow on the different fruits.

Careers for You

You can see how great is the need for *doctors*, *chemists*, and *bacteriologists* to aid in the many research projects set up to study causes and cures of disease.

Trained nurses are also needed in great numbers. Go to the nearest hospital in your city or town and talk with the supervisor of nurses. Be sure to write for an appointment before you go to the hospital.

CHAPTER 6

Your Community Helps

You are not alone, and never were. Ever since you were a child your community has protected you against disease. Your food was inspected. You had injections against some diseases. Your community stands guard.

You have often looked at pictures of George Washington, but did you know that his face was marred by scars from smallpox?

In the time of Washington an epidemic of smallpox was an accepted evil, for no one was vaccinated in those days. Although Edward Jenner announced his successful use of vaccination in 1798, it was a long time before people would allow themselves to be vaccinated. In Washington's time, being quarantined for smallpox was unheard of. And there was no Health Department to enforce such a law if one had been passed. Health departments are only recent developments.

Let us look at what happened in one of our midwestern cities a few years ago. A case of smallpox had not been known in the city for years, because every school child had been vaccinated or his parents had agreed to keep him at home in case of an epidemic. But one summer a smallpox case was reported. Where the man had been exposed to the disease no one knew, as he had just come to the city. The Health Inspector immediately ordered everyone in the area to be revaccinated. He set up a police guard around several city blocks, allowing no one to go in or out without special permission. He continued this until he was sure that anyone who might have come into contact with the man had been vaccinated.

By this action the Health Department was able to keep smallpox from spreading to others.

Now, in the twentieth century, every community does its best to protect the health of its citizens. We buy Christmas seals, so that the fight against tuberculosis can go on. We buy Easter seals to pay for treatment, equipment, and education for the crippled. We give money to the March of Dimes to help in the fight against polio. We give money to the Heart Fund, and to the Red Cross. The money comes back to help your community. At the same time, your community government makes sure that its citizens have pure water, clean milk, and pure foods. It sees to it that its health laws are obeyed.

As a member of your community, you have a part in guarding your own health and that of your neighbors. You must co-operate with the work of the Health Department and obey its laws.

SAFEGUARDING FOODS

How does your community stand watch over the water, milk, and food that people must have to live? What can you do to help?

Safe Milk

In state and city laboratories every day, experts from the Health Department sample milk from bottles and make a count of the bacteria in it. Generally, they find that the bacterial count (the number of bacteria) is low enough so that the milk is safe to drink. If the count is too high, they investigate. They inspect the bottling plant; then they check the dairy, the cows, and the farmer's milking equipment. They find out if the milk has

51 Your milk comes to you pasteurized, clean and free from disease germs. Once machines like this one go into action, the milk is never touched.

BORDEN'S MILK CO.

been cooled right after milking. Somewhere along the line the milk inspectors will find the reason why the count of bacteria was more than it should be. If the situation is not corrected, they will stop the sale of this dairy's milk.

Most states now have laws which require that all milk sold be pasteurized. This process, called pasteurization, is named for Louis Pasteur, the French scientist who made many important discoveries about bacteria. One way of pasteurizing milk is to heat it to a temperature of about 145° F., keep it there for 20 minutes, and then cool it rapidly. This process kills dangerous germs. The milk is sealed in sterilized containers after it has been pasteurized (Fig. 51).

Tuberculosis, typhoid, diphtheria, and scarlet fever germs, and other kinds of bacteria do not get into milk because laws in many states require:

1. Regular inspection of dairy cows by health officers and the killing of unhealthy cows.

2. Regular inspection of workers who handle milk.

3. Sanitary methods of milking and careful cleaning of milk pails, cans, and milking machines.

4. Cooling of the milk with ice until it is delivered to the bottling plant or creamery.

5. Regular inspection of the bottling plant.

Other Methods of Protecting Food

Buy only inspected meat. Modern meat packers buy and sell only inspected meat. You can see the stamp on the roasts and steaks, showing that the meat has been inspected.

Always cook meat, especially pork, thoroughly. Long cooking kills the trichina, a worm that may be in the meat. This worm causes the disease known as trichinosis (trik-ih-NOH-siss).

Meats may also be preserved by different types of curing. Some meats, such as pork, are placed in smoke from a wood fire. Other meats and fish may be pickled in brine, a salt solution. Bacteria cannot live in salt; the water from their protoplasm diffuses into the strong salt solution. This loss of water kills the bacteria.

Some food today is preserved by *dehydration* (dee-hy-DRAY-shun), that is, by removing the water from the foods. Since bacteria need warmth and moisture to develop, removing either of them helps preserve the food. Refrigeration removes the warmth; dehydration removes the water.

In canning, some foods are preserved by heating to a temperature which kills bacteria. Then the inside of the can or glass jar is kept free of bacteria by sealing it while the food is hot. Once a can or jar of food is opened, what is not eaten should be kept in the refrigerator.

Food, especially meat, kept in a warm place begins to decay. That is, certain bacteria begin to grow in it and may make poisons known as *ptomaines* (toh-MAYNZ). Ptomaine poisoning often causes serious illness and even death. It is not sensible to eat any food that has the slightest odor or taste that might show that the food has been spoiled.

SAFEGUARDING WATER

When you are thirsty, you usually take a drink of water. You get it from a faucet or a pump or a drinking fountain. You know that there are bacteria everywhere. You know that many of these bacteria live in soil from which your drinking water comes. Yet you have faith that your drinking water is safe. Is it because your community or your family makes sure that there is safe drinking water for all people who live there?

Let us follow a drink of water from its source in the clouds to its destination, your drinking glass. You will see why water comes to you fairly free from germs.

Getting Water from a Spring

Perhaps part of your drink of water fell as rain on a hillside near a farmer's house. It sank into the ground and became a part of the water in the soil. This water sank farther and farther down until at a certain depth all the soil was *saturated* with water. This means that the soil was holding all the water it could take in. Some distance below this point, the water was stopped by a solid layer of rock, or a very hard layer of soil, which sloped toward the farmer's house. The water then flowed down this underground slope to a deep, stone-lined basin which the farmer had built. Here the water was trapped. It filled the bottom of the deep basin and either flowed out or was pumped out.

The soil itself acts like a filter. As the water seeps through, the soil removes particles from it.

Even though water from an open spring looks clear, you must always be careful. It is wise not to drink spring water unless it has been inspected and declared safe for drinking.

A Well on a New York Farm

As you now know, when water sinks into soil it reaches a point where the soil particles hold as much water between them as is possible. The top of this saturated soil layer is called the *water table*. To have enough water on a farm, it is very important that the water table be high.

Let us take a look at the water table on this New York farm. The water table here is usually about 10 feet below the surface after a heavy rain, and about 16 feet from the surface in dry weather. The owner of the farm has dug a well about 22 feet deep, with walls of stone to keep the soil from falling in. Rain water seeps through the ground and enters the well at its bottom. Of course, the water in the well usually stands at about the height of the water table (Fig. 54).

In severe droughts the water table goes down, and the farmer's well goes dry. Even if his well were dug far below the level of the water table, he would be in trouble in a dry spell. He still would have to depend upon new rain water seeping through the soil. Unless there was much rainfall, he would need a deeper well. Some farmers have a well driller drive a large pipe deep into the ground 100 feet or more into water-holding rock. Water from such wells is usually pure and safe to drink.

In many parts of our country much more water is being used than is being given back to the land by rain and snow. In such places the water table is dangerously low. In times of drought, cattle die for lack of pasture and water for drinking. Crops fail. Factories shut down. Water should be carefully used. In Unit 6 the problem of saving water will be studied carefully.

Artesian Wells

A well in which the water may rise above the water table is called an *artesian* (ar-TEE-zhun) *well*. The water may flow out or even spurt out at the ground level.

To drill an artesian well, our New York farmer rented a well-drilling machine. With it he drilled down through a layer of solid rock into a layer of soft sandstone 200 feet below the surface of his farm (Fig. 53). The water which entered this artesian well may have come from many miles away, traveling along this layer of soft rock far below the surface of the ground. The water could not escape, for it was held in this soft, porous rock by the pressure of solid rock layers above and below it. When the well-drilling machine pierced the layer of solid rock, the water was forced upward and gushed from the drill hole. The farmer now had an artesian well.

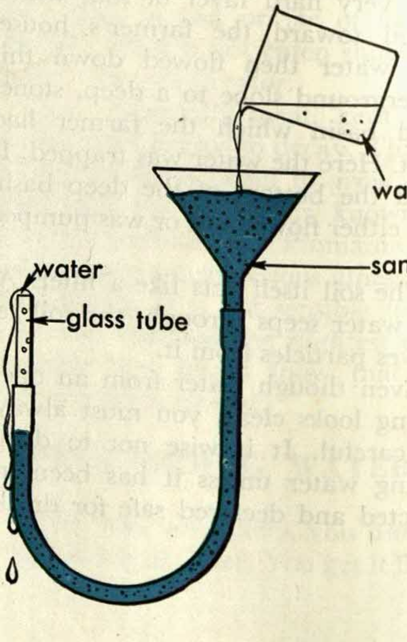
Water Seeks Its Own Level

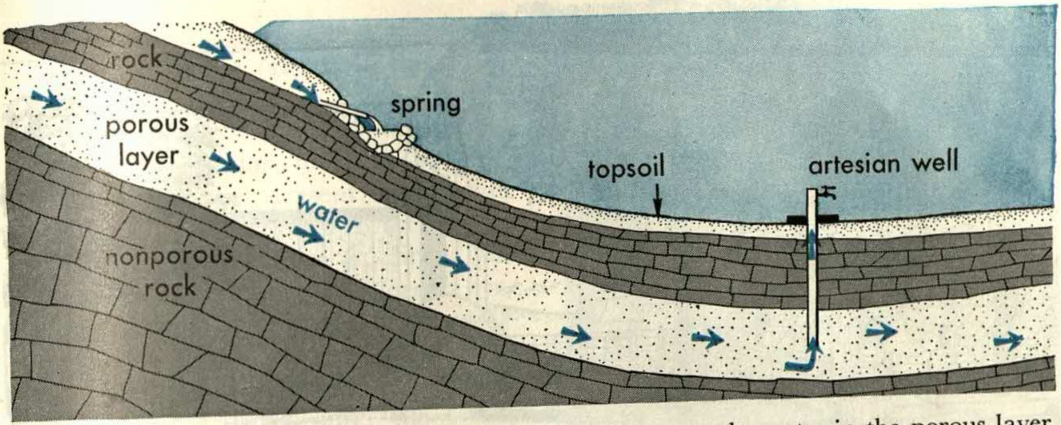
Why does artesian well water come to the surface? Make a rough model of an artesian well to see the way it works. Take a large-sized funnel like the one in Fig. 52 and fill it with sand. Attach it to 2 or 3 feet of rubber hose, which has also been filled with sand. Fit a glass tube into the other end of the hose. The funnel with sand stands for the porous rock layer surrounded by the nonporous rock. The glass tube stands for the pipe drilled into the rock.

Hold the glass tube higher than the funnel, and fill the funnel with water. Now lower the glass tube slowly till you see water in it. Compare the water level in the funnel with that in the tube. They are the same, aren't they? If you hold the tube over the sink and lower it below the water level in the funnel, the water will flow from the tube as it sinks in the funnel. Water, you see, seeks its own level.

In our New York farmer's artesian well, the porous rock (Fig. 53) collected the water at a level higher than the opening which the farmer had drilled. The height of the source of the water is part of the reason why the water rises so high in an artesian well. The other reason is the hard layers of rock which hold the water much as a pipe does. The hard rock allows the water to escape only at the place where the artesian well is

52 How an artesian well works. The sand in the funnel stands for porous rock, the rubber hose for the hard rock layers above and below the porous rock, the glass tube for the pipe which the well driller sinks. (See Fig. 53.)





53 How water gets to an artesian well. The rock layers trap the water in the porous layer. There it remains under pressure until tapped by the drilled well.

drilled. Why is artesian well water pure and safe to drink?

Pure Water on the Farm

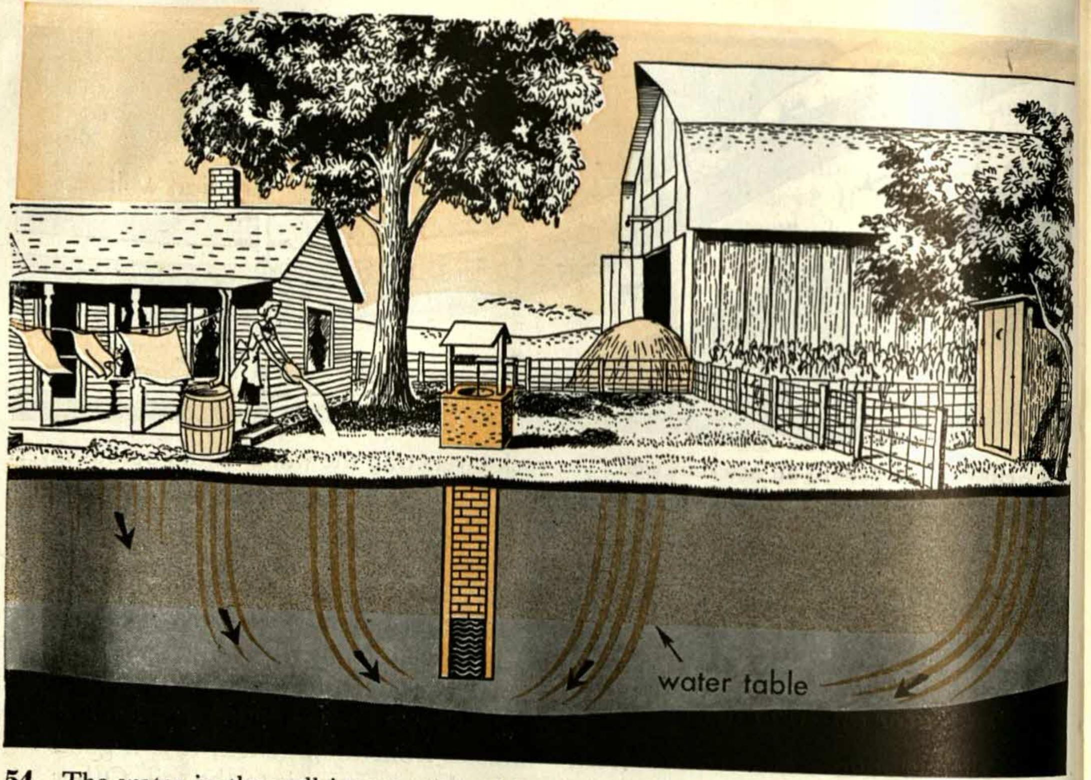
Whether our water comes from springs, wells, or faucets, our main concern is, is it safe for drinking? If wells are carefully built, so that no surface water or drainage from germ-laden water can get in, well water is safe to drink. Remember that the water as it seeps through soil and rock is freed from most bacteria.

There can be danger. Suppose an outhouse, barn, or manure pile is placed at a higher level than the spring or well (not an artesian or driven well). During rains, some of the sewage will seep into the water and may get into the well.

Getting Rid of Sewage

Since typhoid germs can breed in water into which sewage is dumped, getting rid of sewage is one of the most important problems handled by your community. In the city, sewage is usually put through a chemical process that makes it harmless. Some cities, like Detroit, for example, have been experimenting with making garbage into fertilizer for farm lands near the city. Because much garbage is made up of plant wastes from the kitchen, it is a good practice to return it to the soil. Other cities have large garbage-disposal plants where garbage is burned. In some of the newer homes, a garbage-disposal unit is connected with the kitchen sink. None of the garbage has a chance to get into the drinking water.

On the farm, getting rid of sewage and garbage is a different problem. Since the farmer must guard the health of his family, he must make careful plans for the disposal of sewage and garbage. Part of the kitchen garbage can be fed to some of his animals; the rest can be buried in the ground. Sewage needs to be kept far away from wells and the milkhouse. It is good health practice to place outhouses and manure piles to one side of and below the source of drinking water, and at least 100 feet away from it. Is the well in Fig. 54 in a safe place? Where there are indoor toilets on the farm, the septic tank, sunk in



54 The water in the well is not safe to drink. Why? The clue is in the black arrows that show how moisture gets to the water table. Where should a well be placed for safety?

the ground, should be placed at least 100 feet away from the source of water.

Safe Water for the Millions

Getting water into the faucets of cities like New York or Cleveland or San Francisco is a great engineering accomplishment. Your glass of city water usually comes a long way to your faucets.

New York City water, for instance, begins its travels in the Catskill Mountains 80 miles away. It flows into one of the large artificial lakes built by damming several rivers, which get their water from many creeks. These creeks collect the rain water from a large area, called the *watershed*. The water finally runs into the Ashokan (a-SHOW-kan) Reservoir. The water in this reservoir alone could cover all of Manhattan to a depth of 25 to 30 feet. Other reservoirs have also been built to supply enough water for the great city of New York.

From the Ashokan Reservoir, the water flows through large pipes for 120 miles, up hill and down, and under the Hudson River. This system of pipes is called an *aqueduct* (AK-wuh-dukt). It is 40 feet wide in certain places. At one point, the aqueduct is 1,200 feet below the surface of the ground.

The source of the water for New York City is so high that water will flow as high as the twentieth story of most buildings. However, taller buildings need to have their water pumped to the faucets in the upper stories.

San Francisco has water supply problems similar to those of New York. At the present time, San Francisco depends on a fast-flowing river high in the mountains. This river was dammed up to form a system of three reservoirs which supply San Francisco with water (Fig. 55).

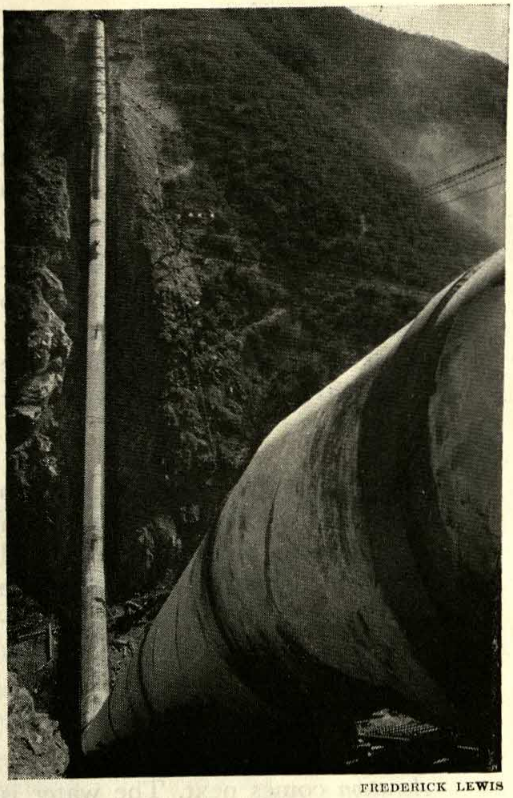
Cities, such as Cleveland, on the level plains and around the Great Lakes have a different problem. Because the source of their supply is either a slow-moving river or lakes on about the same level as the city, they have to use great pumps to bring their supply of water to the city reservoirs. They also have the problem of purifying the water before it goes to the customer.

How do cities treat their water supply to purify it and thus give you a safe drink of water?

Water Fit to Drink

Suppose we were to dump some soil into a glass of water. You know that soil contains bacteria. How would you make that water fit to drink? You could filter it through a filter paper to get rid of soil particles. Then you would have to boil it thoroughly to kill the germs. But then it would have a flat taste because boiling drives the air out of water. To restore the taste you could pour the water back and forth, from one glass to another. By this method you would *aerate* (AY-er-ayt) the water. Air will enter the water as you pour it back and forth.

Purifying one glass of water takes time, but suppose you had to purify millions of gallons of water daily. That job is one your community does for you.



FREDERICK LEWIS

55 In large pipes such as this, called aqueducts, water reaches the city of San Francisco. How does water reach your city, town, or village?

Getting Rid of Particles in Water

As water stands in reservoirs, most of the heavier particles settle to the bottom. To hasten the removal of impurities, many cities send their water through settling basins or *filtration* beds. In a filtration plant there are a large number of concrete filtration beds, each of which has layers of sand and gravel. Soil and other particles, as well as germs, are caught in these beds. At the bottom of each bed there is a large pipe which leads to other large water pipes or mains. At last the water reaches your home.

To make a model of a filtering bed, use a funnel with sand and gravel, like the one in Fig. 52. Pour muddy water through it and see how clean the water is after it has come through the sand.

In some large settling basins, the particles in water may be made to settle faster by the use of chemicals. Alum is added to the water to make bacteria as well as particles settle quickly.

Make a model settling basin, to see how one works. Take some alum and add it to limewater. You will notice that a thick, white substance called aluminum hydroxide is produced. This substance settles quickly to the bottom.

Killing the Bacteria

Aeration comes next. The water is sent up in sprays into the sunlight and air, which help in killing bacteria. Aeration, by adding air to water, restores the taste and helps remove odors. However, aeration is not enough to kill all the bacteria.

While the water is still in the mains and before it reaches the faucet, chlorine gas is added. Chlorine gas is poisonous, but it is added in such small quantities that it kills the bacteria without harming people. And now the water is fit to drink.

CONTROLLING MODERN PLAGUES

In 1665, a dread disease carried by rats, the Black Death, wiped out almost one-third of the population of London. Such a thing could not happen in a modern city. Why not?

Keeping Plagues from Starting

In your community, the Health Department keeps up a continual war on rats. Why kill rats? Rats carry the flea which in turn carries the bacterium of bubonic plague. This disease was the Black Death that killed so many Londoners in 1665.

You have read how smallpox has been conquered by health officers. The Health Department tries to stop disease before it can spread. School children are vaccinated for smallpox. In school they are also given the Schick test and treatment to prevent diphtheria. Health officers work with the Red Cross in giving X-rays to catch the first signs of tuberculosis. Teachers are also trained to notice the first signs of disease.

Imprisoned at Home

In your town or city, you will find your health officers carrying on a campaign to prevent the spread of diseases like measles and scarlet fever. In large cities and towns where people live close together, it is very easy for germs to travel from one person to another. It is easy for people themselves to spread disease. Hundreds of persons used to die of smallpox, diphtheria, and other *communicable* (kuh-MYOO-nih-kuh-b'l), or catching, diseases. Even today, measles, mumps, chicken pox, and scarlet fever are spread because one person passes the germs of the disease to another person. Nowadays, when someone shows symptoms of a communicable disease, he is kept away from other persons. On the house door the health officer tacks a *quarantine* (KWAHR-en-teen) sign. To quarantine means to keep persons from coming in or going out. With some diseases, adults in the family are allowed to go in and out as usual. With certain other diseases, where there is danger of germs being carried in clothing, no one is allowed to leave the house until all danger is past.

You can help prevent the spread of disease by obeying the quarantine sign. You can stay away from other persons if you think you may be "coming down with something." And you should see a doctor.

Quarantine is useful to you. The next time you see a quarantine sign on a door, you will know that your community is safeguarding your health.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

What does each of the following words have to do with community health? Before you answer this question, do the matching test below.

aeration
artesian well
chlorine gas
communicable
filtration
pasteurization
ptomaines
quarantine
trichinosis
water table

Test Yourself

a. Select the correct word from the word list above to match each meaning below. Place it before the meaning and write the complete sentence in your notebook. DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK.

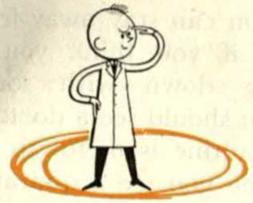
1. poisonous gas used to purify water
2. a disease caused by eating underdone pork having a certain kind of worm in it
3. spraying water into the air to help purify it and restore its taste
4. poisons in decaying food
5. the height at which water is standing below the surface of the ground
6. a gushing or flowing well
7. keeping a person with a communicable disease away from other persons
8. a disease that can be passed from person to person
9. killing bacteria in milk by heating it to 145° F.
10. getting impurities out of water by passing it through layers of sand and gravel

b. Complete the following sentences by filling the blanks. DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK.

1. You can purify a glass of water and make it tasty for drinking by (*a*) . . ., (*b*) . . ., and (*c*) . . . .

2. Water flows from an artesian well without the aid of a pump because (*a*) . . ., and (*b*) . . . .

3. To keep milk safe for use, most states have laws requiring (*a*) . . ., (*b*) . . ., (*c*) . . ., (*d*) . . ., (*e*) . . ., and (*f*) . . . .



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory or Field

1. Visit one or more of the following places with your teacher and class:

a. A filtration plant where water is purified.

b. A milk-bottling station or a creamery.

c. A dairy farm to see how the milk is kept free from bacteria.

2. Find out how water is brought to your faucets. Where does the water come from? Where and how is it purified?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

As you grow older, you will be faced with the questions: Shall I smoke? Shall I drink?

The decisions that you make on these two questions will have some effect on your health. What are the scientific facts about the effects of smoking and of drinking alcoholic beverages?

1. *Effects of smoking.* Does smoking affect a person's health? Dr. Raymond Pearl of Johns Hopkins University gathered this information which you should know.

Approximately 66,000 nonsmokers out of every 100,000 aged 30 may expect to reach 60 years of age.

Approximately 62,000 moderate smokers (two or three cigarettes a day) out of every 100,000 aged 30 may expect to reach 60 years of age.

Approximately 46,000 heavy smokers out of every 100,000 aged 30 may expect to reach 60 years of age.

You may want to read more about tobacco and its serious effect on the body. Frequently newspapers and magazines have articles on lung cancer and its relationship to smoking. Also, send for the first pamphlet listed under "Adding to Your Library."

2. *Effects of alcohol.* As you get older you may also want to know the answer to this question: What effect does alcohol have upon a healthy body?

You should know the facts. Here are facts gathered by a committee of scientists and published in the book on alcoholism listed under "Adding to Your Library."

About one-fifth of all deaths in traffic accidents are caused by drunken drivers or pedestrians.

With 0.003% alcohol in the blood (only 3 drops to 100,000 drops of blood), unconsciousness results. Six drops per 100,000 drops of blood may cause death.

Constant and regular drinking of alcoholic beverages may result in a disease called alcoholism. This disease is dangerous to life and to mental health.

Adding to Your Library

1. *Tobacco and Health*, a pamphlet by A. H. Steinhaus and F. M. Gunderman, Association Press, 347 Madison Ave., New York City, 1945.

2. *Alcohol Explored* by Dr. H. W. Haggard and Dr. E. M. Jellinek, Doubleday, Doran, 1942.

3. *Your Health and Safety*, 3rd edition, by Jessie W. Clemensen and William R. LaPorte, Harcourt, Brace, 1952. Chapter 24, "Prevention of Communicable Diseases," and Chapter 26, "Public Health Protection," will add to your information on the topics covered in this unit.

4. *All Their Powers*, a pamphlet from the Health Information Foundation,

420 Lexington Ave., New York (17), N.Y. Stories telling how five communities took action to solve important health problems.

A Bit of Research

1. Under the microscope examine some milk just taken from the refrigerator. What do you see? Let some of this milk stand at room temperature. Then examine some of the milk under the microscope. What do you find?

2. Gather all the articles you can on the effect of smoking on cancer. What are your conclusions?

Careers for You

Engineers are needed to construct community filtration plants and other municipal projects.

Milk inspectors, *veterinarians*, and *dairymen* will always be needed in work connected with our milk supply.

City health nurses, *school nurses*, and *health inspectors* can help in the community battle to keep its citizens healthy.

a LIFETIME hobby—

SAVING YOUR OWN LIFE AND LIMB

Do you know this fact? Before you have finished reading this page, a man, woman, or child will die in the United States. Not from disease or warfare, but from CARELESSNESS on somebody's part. In the few seconds in which you were reading these three sentences, some man, woman, or child was injured by an accident. Again, CARELESSNESS.

In April, 1945, the United States Army, Navy, and Marine forces invaded Okinawa in the Pacific. The Japanese fought stubbornly; 82 days of fierce fighting were needed to make them give up. The price we paid for that victory was 43,376 casualties, of which about 5,000 were deaths.

In the same 82 days back home in a United States untouched by bomb or bullet, 22,000 people died. From disease? No, these people died in accidents. During this period (82 days), 2,300,000 people suffered accidental injuries. Yet many of these accidents could have been prevented.

Suppose you saw this headline in a newspaper:

105,000 KILLED

You might suppose that a new atomic bomb had exploded. You would be wrong. This is the number of Americans killed in 1952 by accidents. Each year in the period from 1935 to 1954, about 100,000 men, women, and children were killed in accidents in the street, at work, or at home. During the same period about 10 million were injured each year. In the last few years, the accident rate has been lowered somewhat. In

1953, for instance, 96,000 died in accidents, while 9,600,000 were injured.

Records kept by the National Safety Council, an organization for promoting safety in the United States, show that most accidents happen at home. This is the place where everyone can begin to prevent accidents.

Your Part in Preventing Accidents at Home

You can make it a regular job, an important job, to check your home for six main danger spots. In this way you will help save yourself and members of your family from serious hurt.

Check the danger points listed below *today*. For each "yes," give yourself plus 10; for each "no," minus 10. Keep a careful record of your score. Correct the "no's" as soon as you can.

1. *The hallways*. Falls are the cause of most injuries in the home. Are there rubber mats under loose carpets to prevent slipping? Are toys, especially marbles or toys with wheels, put away where no one will slip and fall on them? Are hallways and stairways well lighted?

2. *The bedrooms*. Is there a light near each bed which may be put on if light is needed?

3. *The bathroom*. Wet, slippery bathtubs cause many home accidents. Has the bathtub a small handrail? If not, has it a small rubber mat on which one may step?

Examine the medicine cabinet. Does every bottle have the right label? Are the bottles out of the reach of young children? Is there a place to get rid of used razor blades so that no one can be cut?

4. *The electric wiring*. Are electric wires safely covered? Many babies and small children are killed each year by frayed lamp cords and poor wiring. *Do not touch frayed wires unless the plug is out of the socket*.

5. *Storage space*. Is everything stored so that heavy objects will not fall on your head? Are stored things easy to get at? Are the heavier things on the floor? Are the lighter ones on the upper shelves?

6. *The house at night*. Before you go to bed, do you check these danger spots?

Is the gas stove turned off?

Are outside doors closed and locked?

Are open windows arranged so that you are protected from rain or snow?

If you were to get out of bed in the dark, would you trip over something near the bed? If so, remove it.

A score less than perfect means that your home is dangerous to the health and safety of you and your family. Remember, every year about 20,000 people under 20 years of age die from accidents. You will not be one of them.

Your Part in Preventing Accidents in the Street and Playground

Give yourself 10 points for every "yes," and minus 10 for every "no." You are living dangerously and thoughtlessly if you get a score lower than 90.

1. Do you cross the street at safe points and only with the traffic light?

2. Do you play in a playground rather than in a street?

3. Do you wear sneakers rather than leather-soled shoes when you play on cement, grass, or polished wood?

4. Do you wear boots or rubbers when you walk on ice or snow?

5. If you need to wear glasses, do you wear them instead of leaving them at home or in your pocket? (If you do not wear them, you may not see danger in time to react quickly.)

6. If you wear glasses, are they protected by a guard when you play on the school playground?

7. Do you keep from climbing over barbed wire or iron picket fences?

8. Do you keep on the right side of the road when cycling? When walking, do you keep to the left side of the road facing traffic?

9. Do you report injuries to your parents or teachers?

Your Part in Preventing Accidents at School

In which of these columns are you — the wrong or the right?

Wrong	***Right***
Do you	Do you
1. Run in the halls and leap up and down stairs?	1. Consider others while walking in halls or up and down stairs?
2. Fail to report a broken chair?	2. Report any broken furniture, to prevent injury to yourself and others?
3. Make yourself a nuisance during fire drills?	3. Co-operate to save lives, by getting out of the building as rapidly as possible without talking or jostling?
4. Play games on wood or cement floors without sneakers?	4. Co-operate by wearing proper shoes and clothing in the gymnasium?
5. Wear glasses without a guard while playing basketball or football?	5. Wear a guard over glasses in ball games?

Were you always on the right column? For your safety's sake, you must be!

This is only the first of a number of interesting hobbies you will find throughout this book. For instance, there will be hobbies in astronomy, chemistry, photography, and building model airplanes. But your first hobby should be PREVENTING ACCIDENTS, or, as we have put it, "Saving Your Own Life and Limb."

You have heard the saying, "The life you save may be your own." As you save your own life — as you prevent accidents to yourself — you save the lives of others.

UNIT 3

Exploring the Earth and Space

Why do men climb mountains? Said one of Everest's climbers, "Men climb mountains because they are there." Men probably dive into the depths of the ocean for the same reason. For some, exploration is a wonderful hobby. For others it is a serious business, a life's work.

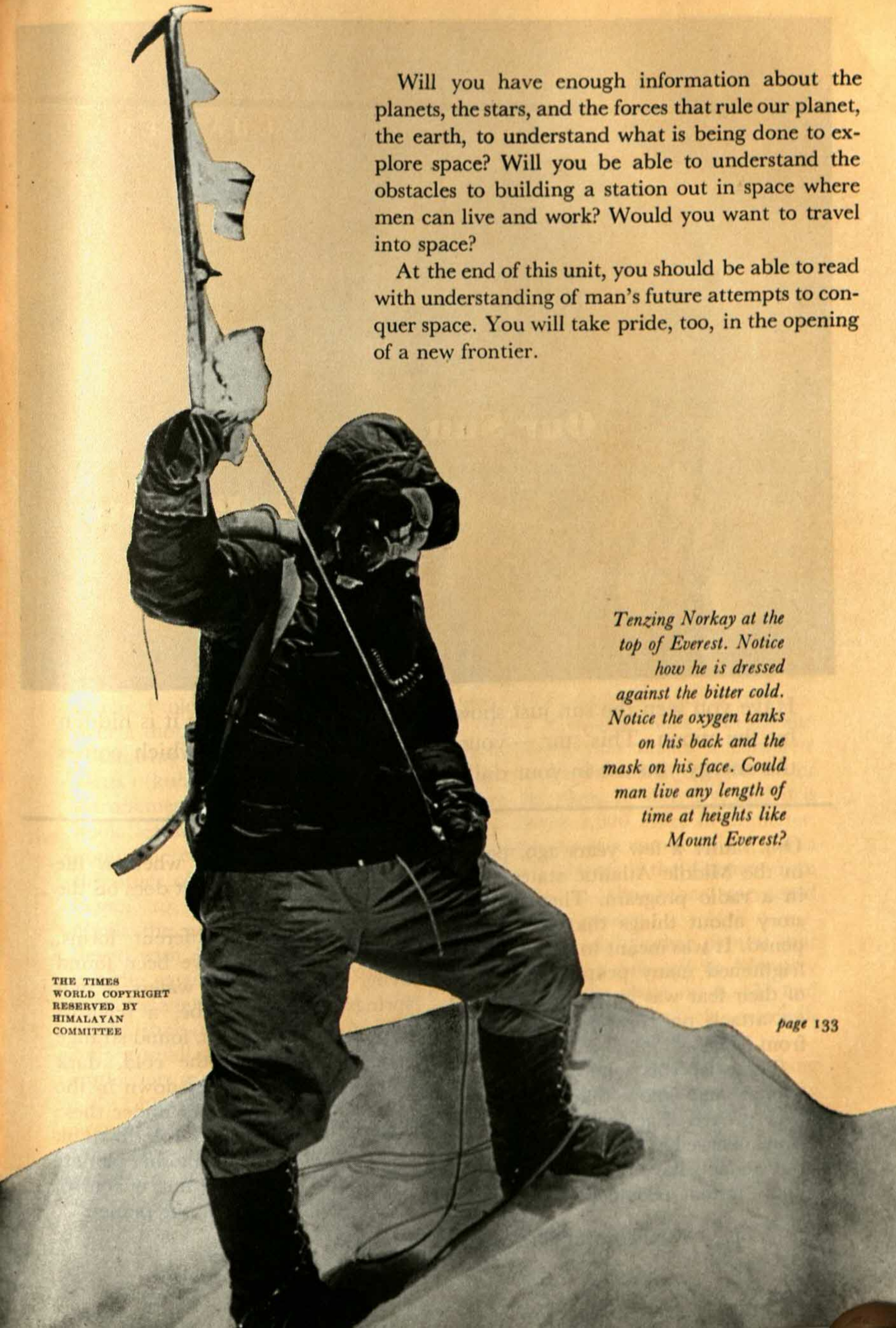
On the page opposite is Tenzing Norkay, conqueror of Mount Everest, who with Sir Edmund Hillary in 1953 climbed to the south summit of the highest mountain in the world — 29,002 feet above the surface of the sea. Twenty-one years earlier Professor Auguste Piccard had risen in a balloon to a then record height of 53,000 feet above the earth. On September 30, 1953, Professor Piccard went down below the surface of the sea farther than man had ever gone. He reached a depth of 10,330 feet in a tiny craft of his own design. But — in 1954 — the French Navy's bathyscaphe which you see below went down 13,288 feet. It was manned by Commander Houot.

These great deeds are only the forerunners of greater conquests yet to come. In the coming months and years you will read of attempt after attempt to dive even deeper below the surface of the sea and to travel higher and higher. Since there are no higher mountains to climb, men will now try to explore the space between the earth and the moon and the planets.

WIDE WORLD PHOTO

Will you have enough information about the planets, the stars, and the forces that rule our planet, the earth, to understand what is being done to explore space? Will you be able to understand the obstacles to building a station out in space where men can live and work? Would you want to travel into space?

At the end of this unit, you should be able to read with understanding of man's future attempts to conquer space. You will take pride, too, in the opening of a new frontier.

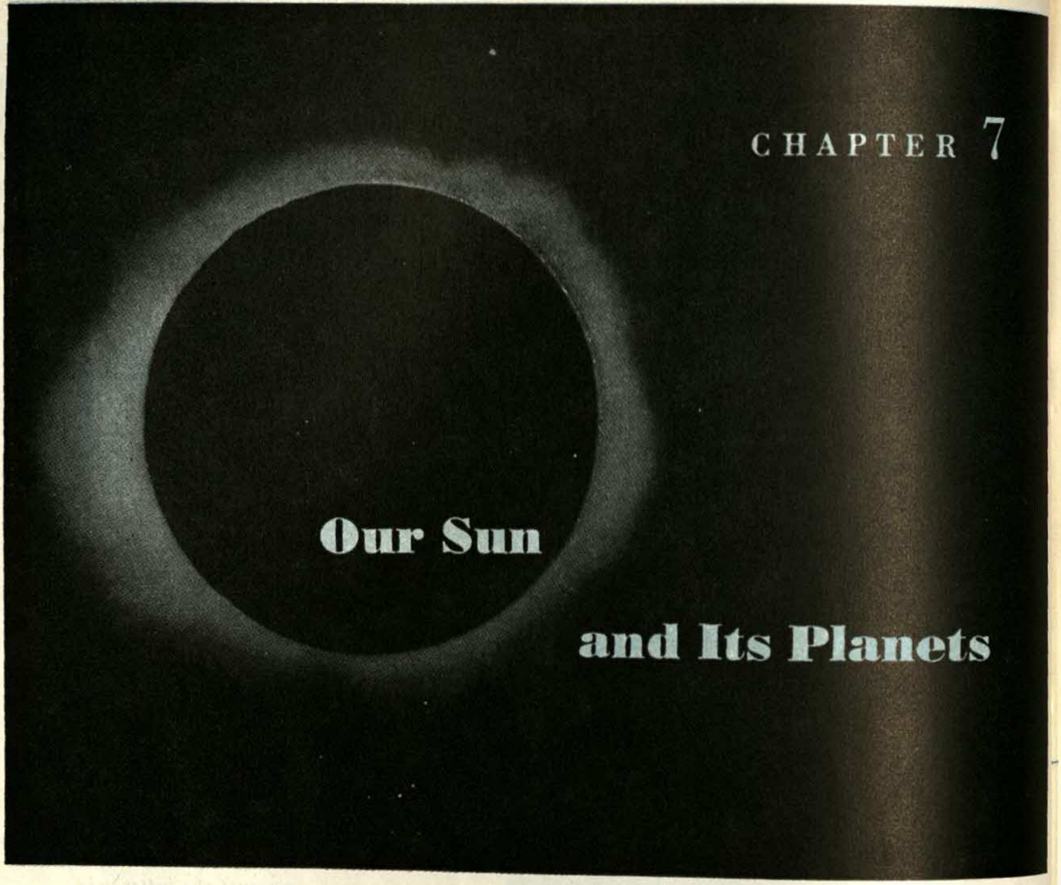


Tenzing Norkay at the top of Everest. Notice how he is dressed against the bitter cold. Notice the oxygen tanks on his back and the mask on his face. Could man live any length of time at heights like Mount Everest?

THE TIMES
WORLD COPYRIGHT
RESERVED BY
HIMALAYAN
COMMITTEE

CHAPTER 7

Our Sun and Its Planets



Have you seen the sun just showing through clouds? Here it is hidden by the moon. This star — your star — is the one from which comes the energy you use in your daily living.

ONE NIGHT a few years ago, people in the Middle Atlantic states tuned in a radio program. They heard a story about things that never happened. It was meant to be fun, but it frightened many people. The cause of their fear was an exciting story of an attack on New Jersey by men from Mars.

Those of you who have studied science may know that no one has ever proved that there are men on Mars. There has been much guessing, but no facts have been found. All we know is that people throughout the ages have wondered whether life exists anywhere else as it does on the earth.

Life has many different forms. Very small things have been found living in the boiling waters of hot springs. William Beebe, a scientist who studied the ocean, found strange creatures living in the cold, dark waters hundreds of feet down in the sea. If life can be found under these conditions, is it not possible to think of life in some form on another planet? This form of life need not, of course, be the same as life on our planet.

You can answer this question for yourself later on. First you will need to know what conditions are needed for the life of the plants and animals we know. Then you will need to know something about our other planets and what conditions are to be found on them.

Once Upon a Time

People long ago spent a good deal of time wondering about what they saw in the heavens. A teacher named Aristarchus (air-iss-TAR-kus) of Samos (SAY-mus), an island belonging to Greece, said that the earth moves around the sun. This teacher lived between 310 and 250 B.C.

Another teacher named Ptolemy (TOL-eh-mee), 100–171 A.D., did not agree with Aristarchus. He said the earth is the center of the universe, around which the moon, sun, and stars move. Because people like to think of their home as the center of things, Ptolemy's idea was taught for over a thousand years.

On May 24, 1543, Nicholas Copernicus (kuh-PER-nih-kus), a Polish astronomer and teacher, wrote a book setting forth some new ideas about the earth and the motions of the other objects in space. His book began to change men's thinking about the universe. Copernicus believed with Aristarchus that the sun, not the earth, is the center of a system of planets. Now we know without doubt that our home, the earth, is only a small speck in space — but an important speck to all of us.

In this chapter we want to take you on a trip through space to show you something about the earth's place in the sun's family, which we call the *solar* (SOH-ler) *system.*

THE SUN AND ITS FAMILY

Let us suppose we are space travelers looking at the solar system from somewhere out in space. Also let us suppose we have with us a powerful telescope. What will we see?

Planets Around a Star

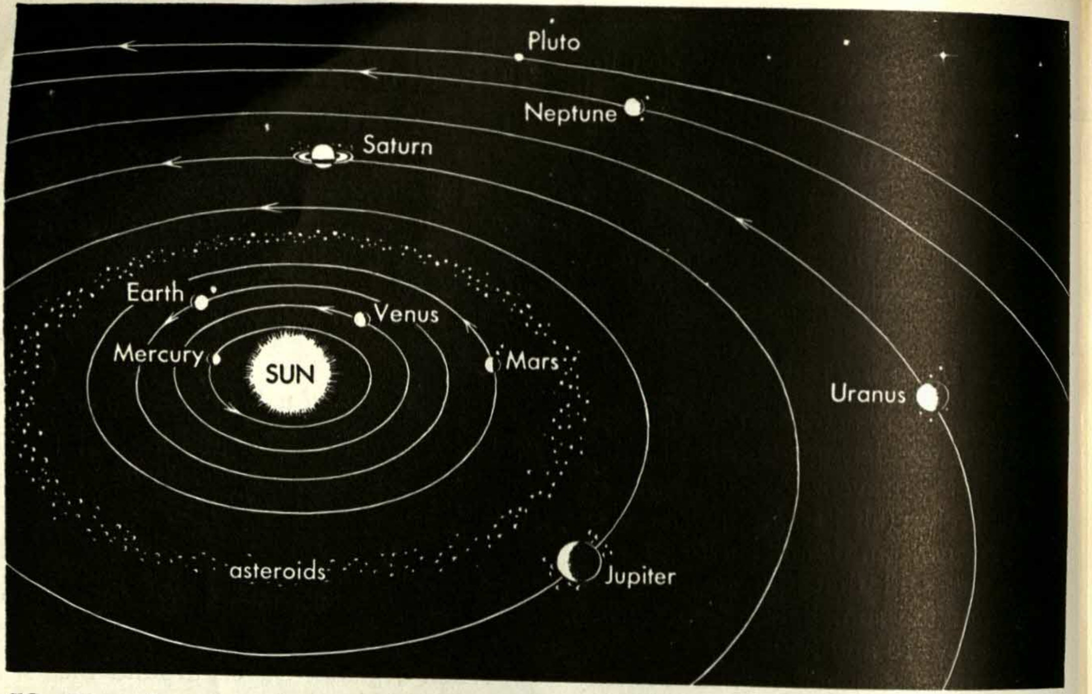
First we will look for and find nine planets of different sizes. Four are smaller, and four are larger, than the earth. The planets all travel around the sun in paths called *orbits.* The orbits which the planets follow are nearly round (Fig. 56).

When a planet travels around the sun, it is said to be revolving around it. When a planet has made a complete trip in its orbit around the sun, it is said to have made one *revolution* (Fig. 56). The time it takes the earth to make one revolution around the sun (365¼ days) is called a year.

Only 36 million miles from the sun is a planet that makes a complete trip around the sun in only 88 of our days. Its name is Mercury, and it is only about 3,000 miles in diameter. The *diameter* of a round object, like a ball or a planet, is the distance from one side to the other measured through the center.

There are eight other planets that go around the sun just as Mercury does. Study the chart on p. 137 and compare the planets which are neighbors of your planet, Earth.

Between Mars, the reddish-looking planet, and Jupiter is a swarm of tiny planets, called *asteroids* (AS-ter-oydz) or *planetoids* (PLAN-et-oydz). None of these is known to be larger than the one called Ceres (SEER-eez), 488



56 The solar system is the sun's family of nine planets, 31 moons, and hundreds of tiny planets called asteroids. Jupiter is larger than all the other planets put together. Not shown are the hundreds of comets which also belong in the sun's family. *Exhibit:* Use the front of your room, above the blackboard, as a bulletin board. On it, plan a display to show the relationship between the sun and its planets.

miles in diameter. Each of these planetoids has its own orbit around the sun. More than 1,500 have been discovered, but their number probably is more than 50,000.

Beyond Jupiter is Saturn, the outermost planet visible to the unaided eye. It has three rings of small moons called moonlets, but these cannot be seen without the aid of a telescope (Fig. 58).

As you will see in Fig. 57, six of the nine planets have moons. In all there are thirty-one moons. Earth has one moon; Neptune and Mars have two each; Jupiter has twelve; Saturn, nine; and Uranus, five. No moons are known for Mercury, Venus, or Pluto.

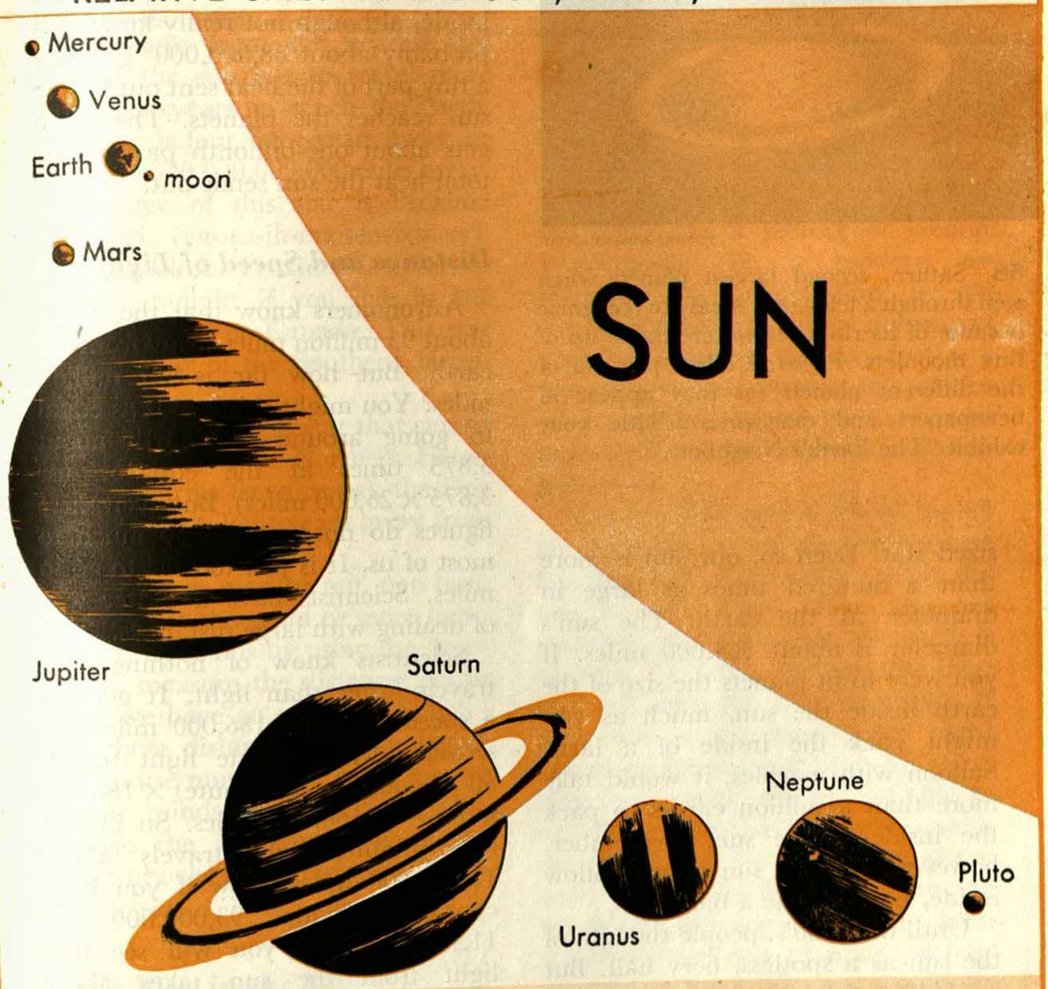
These nine planets with their moons and the planetoids are the chief members of the sun's system, the solar system. Of course there are some other sky objects in our solar system you may know of. You will learn more about them in this chapter.

Our Daytime Star

You may have guessed by now that just as the earth is not the only planet in the sky, so our sun is not the only sun in space. Actually, each star is a sun, and our sun is a medium-

57 Planets are not the only members of the sun's family. Not shown here are the moons, comets, and planetoids which are also part of the solar system. Tiny Mercury is the planet nearest the sun; Pluto, the farthest away.

RELATIVE SIZES OF THE SUN, MOON, AND PLANETS



DISTANCES from Earth in Miles*

The moon	240,000
Venus	26,000,000
Mars	48,000,000
Mercury	57,000,000
The sun	93,000,000
Jupiter	390,000,000
Saturn	793,000,000
Uranus	1,690,000,000
Neptune	2,700,000,000
Pluto	3,573,000,000

*If you wanted to travel to these places the distances would be much greater because a space rocket cannot travel in a straight line.

SIX PLANETS HAVE MOONS†

The earth has	1
Mars	2
Neptune	2
Uranus	5
Saturn	9
Jupiter	12
Total	31

†Our moon is 2,160 miles in diameter. The smallest, Mars's moon Demos (DEE-moss), is 5 miles in diameter. The largest, Jupiter's moon Ganymede (GAN-ee-meed) is 3,200 miles in diameter.

YERKES OBSERVATORY

58 Saturn, second largest planet, when seen through a telescope, is easy to recognize because of its rings. These are made up of tiny moonlets. *Project:* Collect pictures of the different planets (as they appear in newspapers and magazines). Title your exhibit "The Earth's Neighbors."

sized star. Even so, our sun is more than a hundred times as large in diameter as the earth. The sun's diameter is about 864,000 miles. If you were to fit planets the size of the earth inside the sun, much as you might pack the inside of a large balloon with marbles, it would take more than a million earths to pack the inside of the sun. Remember, however, that the sun is not hollow inside, nor is it like a balloon.

Until the 1600's, people thought of the sun as a spotless, fiery ball. But in 1610, with a telescope he had made, Galileo (gal-ih-LAY-oh), the famous Italian scientist, saw spots on the sun's surface. By watching the motion of such spots, astronomers learned that the sun rotates or spins. They also found that the sun is not solid like the earth, but gaseous, which means "made of gas."

Although the sun is a globe of glowing gas, it weighs 1.4 times as much as an equal volume of water. No human being could come within 50 million miles of it without burning up. The temperature on the outside is about 10,000° F. Its temperature inside, although not really known, is probably about 68,000,000° F. Only a tiny part of the heat sent out by the sun reaches the planets. The earth gets about one-billionth part of the total heat the sun sends out.

Distance and Speed of Light

Astronomers know that the sun is about 93 million miles away from the earth. But how far is 93 million miles? You might think of it as equal to going around the earth about 3,875 times at the equator (or 3,875 × 25,000 miles). But even these figures do not mean very much to most of us. It is just too far to go in miles. Scientists have a better way of dealing with large distances.

Scientists know of nothing that travels faster than light. It goes at a speed of about 186,000 miles per second.[1] In a minute light travels 60 (seconds in a minute) × 186,000 miles = 11,160,000 miles. So in just one minute, light travels about 11,160,000 miles. Now if you have courage, divide 93,000,000 by 11,160,000, and you will see that light from the sun takes about 8 minutes to reach the earth.

Let us see if we can find out how far light travels in a year. A day has 24 hours, each containing 60 minutes. Thus a day has 1,440 minutes. A year has 365.25 days, or 365.25 times as many minutes, or 525,600 minutes. If you want to find out how far light can travel in a year, just multiply 11,160,000 miles, the distance light travels in a minute, by 525,600. You will find that the answer is about 5,880,000,000,000 miles. Nearly 6 trillion miles is the distance light travels in one year. This distance is called a *light-year.*

---

[1] Nearer 186,284 miles per second.

The light from the nearest star beyond the sun has to travel more than four years to reach the earth. This star is four light-years away, or about 23,520,000,000,000 miles away. The name of this star is Proxima Centauri (PROKS-ih-ma·sen-TOH-ry). Do not look for Proxima Centauri in the sky tonight if you live in the United States or Canada. This star is a dim star of the Southern Hemisphere.

The nearest bright star that can be seen at night in the Northern Hemisphere is Sirius (SEER-ee-us), the Dog Star. It is 8.6 light-years away from us.

Other stars may be ten, one hundred, or one thousand or more light-years away. Thus by using the light-year to measure the distances across space, we have an easy way to compare these distances. We no longer have to use numbers of miles too big for our minds to understand. You will see the light-year used many times in books about the stars, space, and the sky.

Who's Who in the Sky

As you look around the night sky, can you see a horse with wings, a couple of bears with long tails, a lady in a chair, and another lady in chains? Can you see a couple of fishes, each with a ribbon tied to its tail? Can you see a crow standing on the back of a serpent? Can you see the long hair of a queen? Can you find a lion, a crab, a dog, a swan, and a ram? Is all this a joke? Not at all. These are what ancient people thought they saw in some star groups, or *constellations*, as they are called. And so these constellations have been named for ancient heroes or for animals. We still keep these names today (Fig. 59).

We must admit that it is very hard to see these figures in the sky. It is as though a stranger to our country were to try to see a map of Washington, D.C., in a picture of George Washington. To a modern astronomer, a constellation is not merely a pattern made by a group of stars but a part of the sky. Just as a map maker first divides the surface of the earth into continents, so the astronomer divides the sky into constellations.

You can find only a few of the 88 constellations at *any one time* because less than half of the earth's entire sky can be seen from where you are standing. But remember, the earth is turning, so that a few months later you will see other stars overhead. If you look at the stars every night (weather permitting) at the same time for a year, you will be able to see all the stars that can be seen with the naked eye. To see the rest of the stars, you would have to go to the Southern Hemisphere and keep watching the stars at night for another year. Even then you would see only a very small number of the stars, for many are too dim and far away to be seen even with the earth's most powerful telescopes.

Whether you watch the stars at night or not, you can learn a great deal about them if you live in or near one of twenty cities: Baltimore; Boston; Buffalo; Chapel Hill, N.C.; Charlestown, W.Va.; Cherokee, Iowa; Chicago; Kansas City; Los Angeles; Nashville, Tenn.; Newark, N.J.; New York City; Philadelphia; Pittsburgh; Portland, Ore.; Providence, R.I.; San Francisco; Springfield, Mass.; Stamford, Conn.; St. Petersburg, Fla. In each of these twenty American cities there is a planetarium.

In a planetarium, the stars are shown as tiny points of light thrown by a projector onto a ceiling. As the position of the projector is changed, you may view the skies of the whole world for an entire year in a few minutes. A visit to a planetarium is an experience you will never forget.

Signposts in the Sky

The navigator (that is, the man who plans the route) on a ship or in an airplane has no one to point out the stars to him. He must know where to find them. There are 55 special stars known as navigation stars. Let us try to find a few that everyone should know.

Of course, you have heard of the North Star, called Polaris (poh-LAY-riss) because it is almost over the earth's North Pole. To find Polaris, first face north, and then look for the pointers. These are two stars in the outer part of the Big Dipper's bowl. Anyone can spot the Big Dipper because it really looks like a dipper. Look along the pointers of the Dipper across the sky (about five times the distance between the pointers). You will see a fairly bright star (Fig. 59). That star is Polaris. It is the last star in the handle of the Little Dipper.

Once you have found the Dippers and Polaris, you can use them as guides to find some of the other constellations and navigation stars. Let your eye continue on across Polaris, following the line of the pointer stars. Soon you will see a great square of four brilliant stars. This is part of the constellation of Pegasus (PEG-ah-sus), the Winged Horse (Fig. 59). It is one of the plain signposts of the sky, but if you have trouble seeing a horse flying upside down in this constellation, look for a baseball diamond instead. Between Polaris and Pegasus is a W-shaped constellation. This is called Cassiopeia (kas-ee-oh-PEE-ya), the Lady in the Chair (Fig. 59). Soon you will discover that it is easy to find constellations if you know a few of them to use as guides. Try to find some more of the constellations shown in the star charts in Fig. 59.

The Movements of Stars

You may rightly wonder how stars, which appear to be in one place, move. In space nothing is fixed in place, but the stars do seem to be in the same place year after year. The stars you see tonight are in almost the same place they were seen in by the astronomers of Egypt several thousand years ago. The Egyptians thought of the stars as lamps hung in the sky on long ropes. Actually, all the stars are moving very fast. They are traveling across the sky in many directions. Our own star, the sun, is racing toward the constellation Hercules. At present, most astronomers are not fully satisfied with the explanations of why the stars move.

Like the sun, the stars seem to travel across the sky, rising in the east and setting in the west. This is really not so. It is a trick played upon our eyes; the trick is caused by the daily movement of the earth on its axis. It is more like the "motion" of the telegraph poles we see from the window of a moving car. We know that it is the car that moves; yet we seem to see the poles moving.

Another thing we think we see is the twinkling of the stars. Stars don't twinkle; the twinkling is caused by the movement of the air on the earth. It is like seeing the wall "move" behind a hot stove, a trick played on our eyes by the light as it comes through the hot, moving air.

Stars are so far away that we cannot see them move, no matter how long we look at them. You may be sure, however, that if you ever see something that looks like a star shoot across the sky, it is not a star. What are these things which people call "shooting stars"?

"*Shooting Stars*"

On any clear night, you can see "shooting stars." These flashes of light are not stars at all but bits of stone or metal. They just happen to fly from outer space into the earth's air at high speed, and this causes them to get red or white hot. Astronomers call these things *meteors* (MEE-tee-erz). Meteors burn up quickly, and while they burn they show up as a streak of light. On the other hand, if the meteors don't burn up, they hit the earth. Then they are called *meteorites* (MEE-tee-er-eytz).

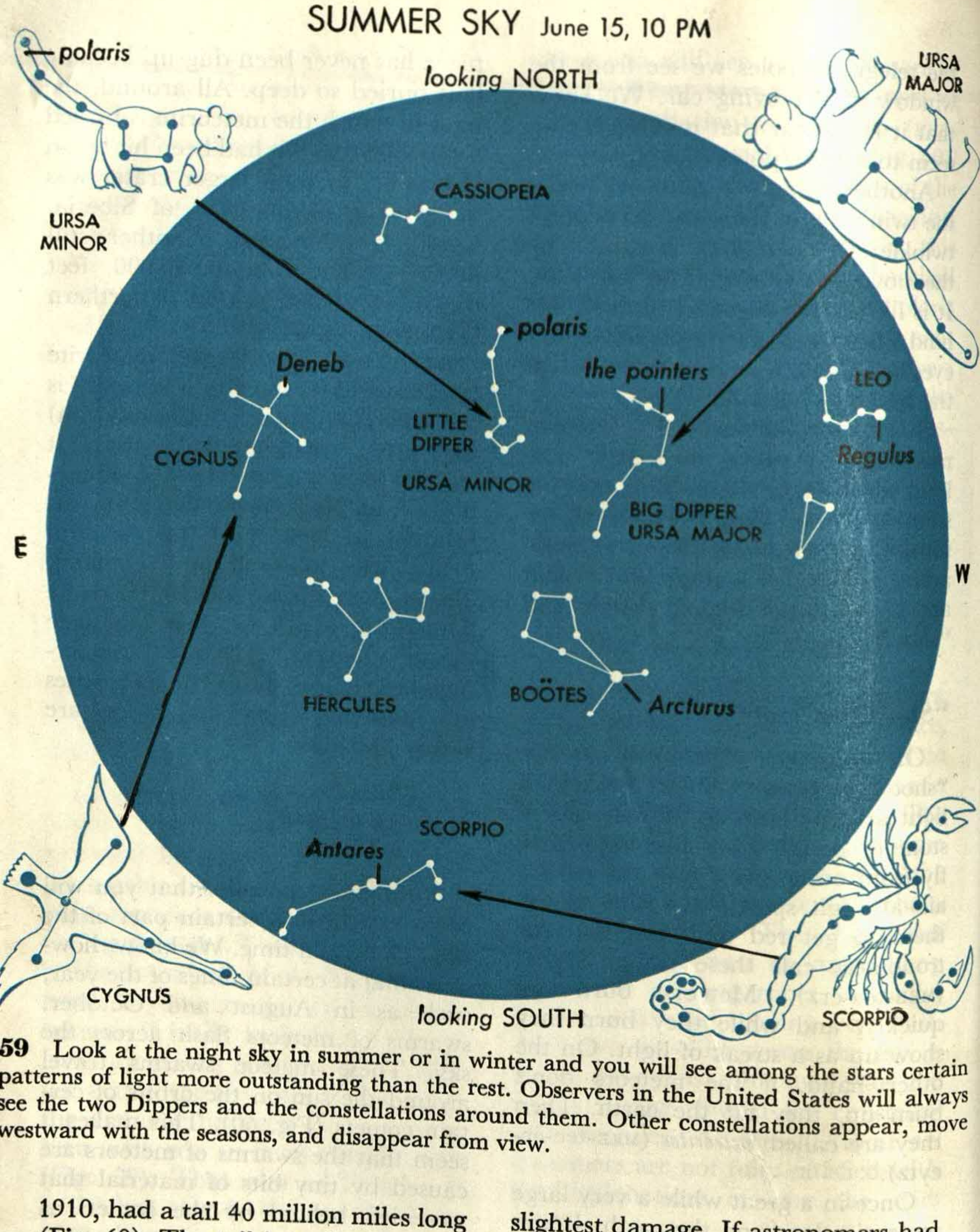
Once in a great while a very large meteorite lands on the earth. If you go to Meteor Crater in Arizona, you will see what happened when a giant meteorite struck the earth long ago. You will see a hole in the ground three-quarters of a mile across and 600 feet deep. Nearby are many pieces of the meteorite. The main piece has never been dug up because it is buried so deep. All around, the rock in which the meteorite is buried is powdered as if it had been hit by an H-bomb. An even larger crater was made in a distant part of Siberia, which is in Russia. Another still larger crater (about 10,000 feet across) was found in 1950 in northern Quebec in Canada.

At present, the largest meteorite in the world on view in a museum is the great Ahnighito (ah-nig-HEE-toh) Meteorite, weighing 36½ tons. It can be seen in the Hayden Planetarium in New York City. It was brought to New York by Admiral Peary, who found it in Greenland. The natives there gave it the name Ahnighito, which in their language means "the tent." This great meteorite is largely iron, but some meteorites are more like stone and a few are rather like glass.

Making a Date with a Comet

No one can promise that you will see a meteor in a certain part of the sky at a certain time. We know, however, that at certain times of the year, such as in August and October, swarms of meteors flash across the sky. These meteor swarms travel around the sun on the orbits of certain comets (Fig. 60). This makes it seem that the swarms of meteors are caused by tiny bits of material that were left behind by the comets as they passed.

Comets have been known since the earliest times. They have tails which stretch millions of miles across the sky. The great comet of 1843 was said to have had a tail 200 million miles long. Halley's Comet, last seen in

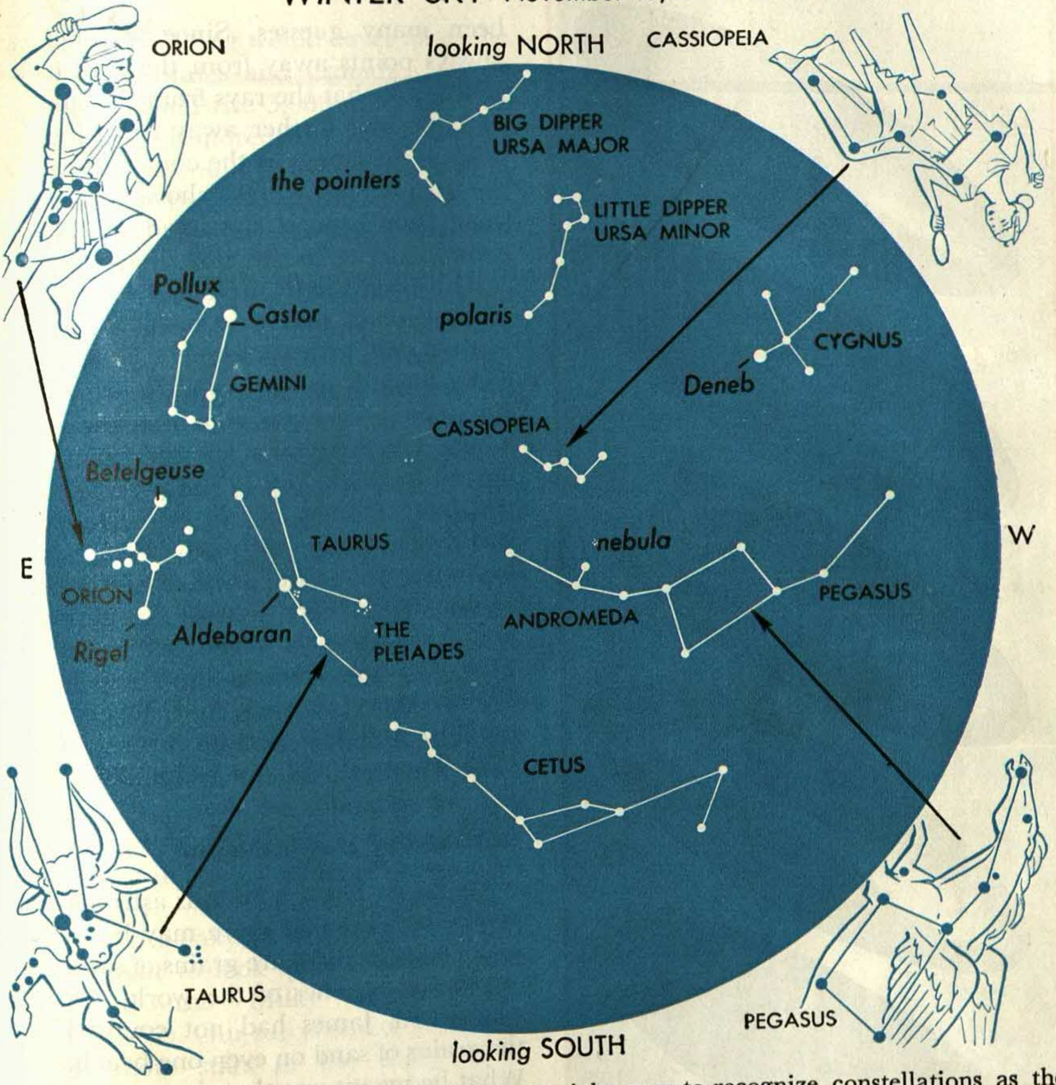


59 Look at the night sky in summer or in winter and you will see among the stars certain patterns of light more outstanding than the rest. Observers in the United States will always see the two Dippers and the constellations around them. Other constellations appear, move westward with the seasons, and disappear from view.

1910, had a tail 40 million miles long (Fig. 60). The tail is a glowing mass of gas. It is believed that if all the solid material in the tail of a comet could be pressed together, it would fit into an ordinary suitcase. The earth has passed through the tails of comets many times without the slightest damage. If astronomers had not been able to figure the path of these tails, people on the earth would not even have known that they were passing through them.

If the earth were hit by the head of a comet it would be another story. Some people believe that craters like

WINTER SKY November 15, 10 PM

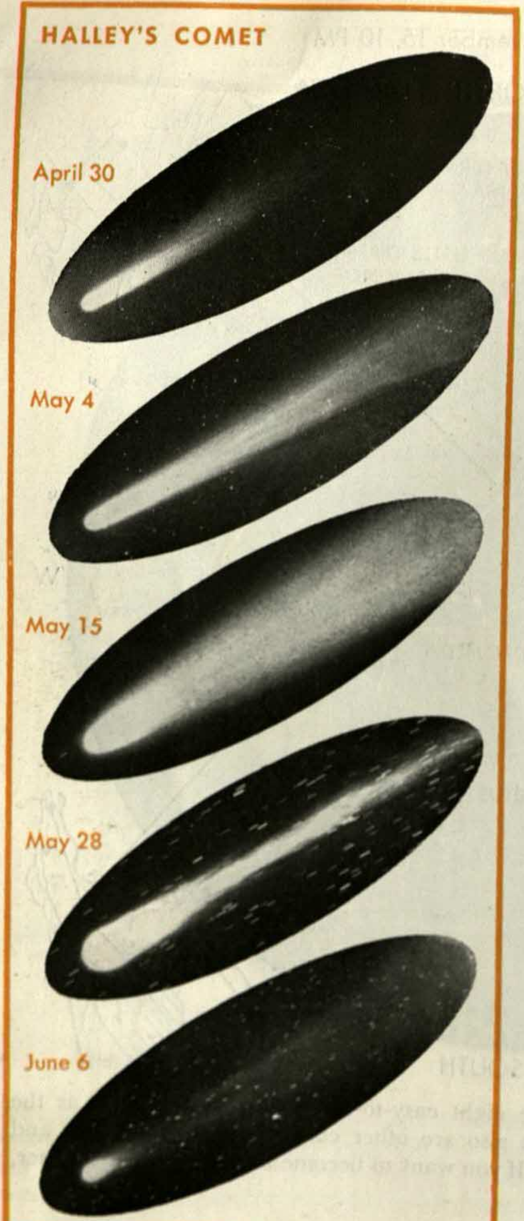


Shown in the charts on these two pages are eight easy-to-recognize constellations as the ancients imagined them to appear. Shown also are other constellations of summer and winter. How many can you identify? *Project:* If you want to become an amateur astronomer, see the hobby section on pp. 202–203.

the one in Arizona may have been made by one or more meteorites from the head of a comet. This has never been proven. It is believed that the head of a comet is made up of material like that in a meteor. It is probably not a solid mass, but it may be made up of many small pieces.

A comet's tail fades away as the comet travels farther and farther away from the sun. Its head does not. The head of a comet like Halley's Comet travels on a long, oval orbit. As it nears the sun, the tail grows longer and longer. Why this happens is not known, although there have been many guesses. Since the tail always points away from the sun, it is believed that the rays from the sun push the tail farther away from the head of the comet as the comet nears the sun. A halo of light shows at the same time around the head of the comet, adding to the glow it makes.

This bright light around the head of the comet makes it possible for astronomers to track comets as they come toward and go away from the sun. The astronomer who first tracks a new comet usually has the comet named for him. Halley's is probably the most famous of all comets. It was first seen as early as 240 B.C., but not named until 1682, when the astronomer Halley figured its path and stated that it would return in 1758. It came again in 1834 and in 1910 — every 76 years. Add 76 years to 1910 and look for its return in 1986. How old will you be in 1986?



MT. WILSON AND PALOMAR OBSERVATORIES

60 Halley's Comet in 1910. Look for it to reappear in 1986. Approaching the sun, the comet grows a tail which disappears as the comet retreats from the sun. *Project:* Organize a "Halley's Comet Club." Learn all you can about the comet and plan to see it together in 1986.

A Model of the Universe

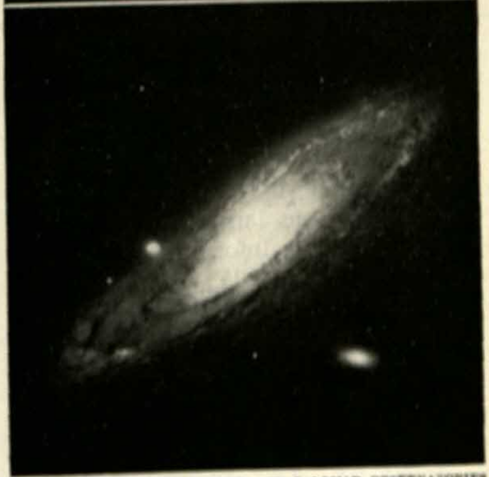
Sir James Jeans, a famous astronomer, once said that there may be as many stars as there are grains of sand on all the beaches of the world. Of course, Sir James had not counted the grains of sand on even one beach. What he meant was that there are so many stars that no one could ever hope to count them. You may wonder what kind of universe can hold so many stars at such great distances from one another and from us.

It may help you to think of the model of the universe Dr. Donald Menzel, an astronomer at Harvard, pictures for us in his interesting little book, *Stars and Planets*. He asks us to think of the universe as a great building with square sides each 3,000 miles long and 3,000 miles wide. The floor of this building would cover all of the United States and Canada, and its walls would rise 3,000 miles into the sky. One hundredth of an inch in this building would be equal to 3 billion miles in the real universe. Remember, no one has yet fully measured this universe.

Dr. Menzel tells us that anyone who might look around inside this building would at first think it was entirely empty. But let us suppose we are standing right in the center of the floor. With a powerful telescope we can see what look like swarms of tiny flies here and there. The largest of these swarms takes up no more space than the state of Rhode Island. Yet each swarm is made up of trillions of stars, many as large as our sun or larger. Each swarm of stars is called a *galaxy* (GAL-uks-ee). There are thousands of these galaxies, perhaps millions of them in our universe. One of them, in which the stars are arranged like a giant cookie with a raisin in the middle, is shown in Fig. 61.

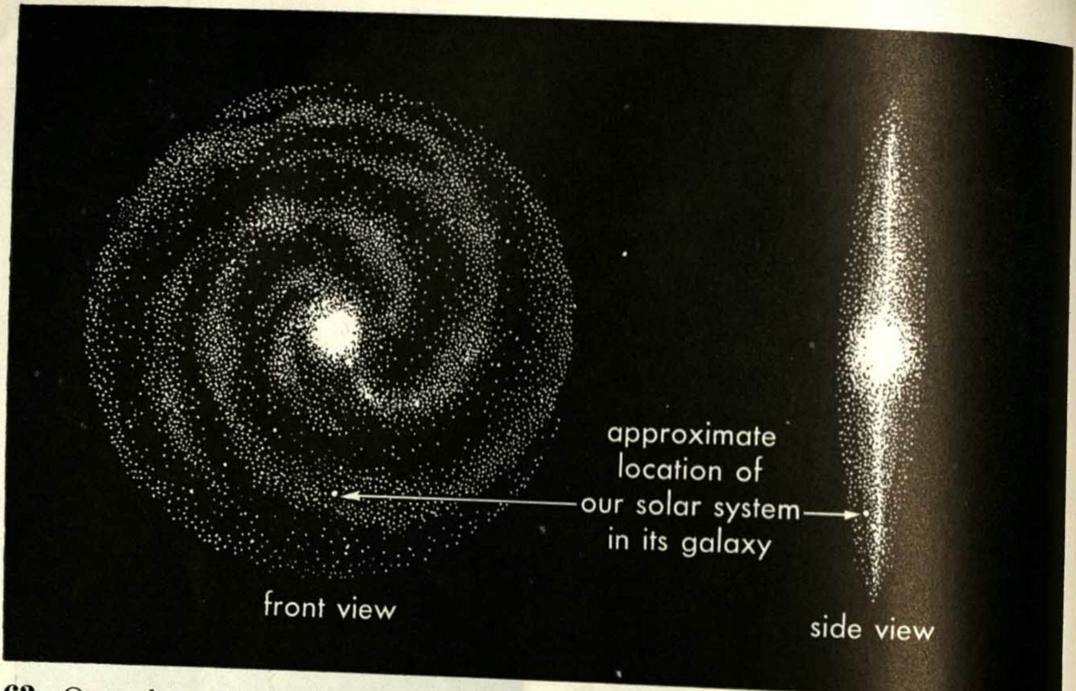
The galaxy to which we belong is thought to look quite like this. It is called the Milky Way galaxy (Fig. 62). Our sun is one of 30 billion or more stars in the Milky Way galaxy. In fact, the name Milky Way came from the milky white path of stars forming the rim of our galaxy which we see in the sky. The billions of stars that form this path are not closer together than other stars. They just seem to be closer because we see them one behind another.

To get a true idea of the size of the universe, you see, is an impossible task. Even an astronomer like Dr. Menzel finds it impossible. His 3,000-mile building is not perfect for two reasons. First, a building has



MT. WILSON AND PALOMAR OBSERVATORIES

61 This great spiral nebula was photographed by the Hale (200-inch) Telescope. It is inside the observatory on Mount Palomar, California. Our solar system is thought to be part of a galaxy (a great spiral of stars) which looks somewhat like this nebula.



62 Our galaxy, the Milky Way, as it might look to someone a million light-years away. At that distance he could not tell the sun and the planets from the other stars. The universe has millions, perhaps billions, of galaxies.

a top, bottom, and sides. But no one knows whether this is true of the universe or not.

Second, since Dr. Menzel wrote this, new information has led scientists to believe that the universe is eight times as large as Dr. Menzel thought. This information was discovered only in 1953.

How truly small is the speck of a planet on which you live! Our universe, mainly space, has in it a great, great number of these swarms or islands of stars. Each of these galaxies is made up of billions of stars more or less like our sun. Our sun, our daytime star, is in one of these galaxies, the Milky Way galaxy. Our earth is one of nine planets circling about this sun. It is but a speck in a universe so vast that no human being can truly understand its vastness.

Yet our earth, speck though it is, has on it the conditions which make life, as we know it, possible.

CONDITIONS FOR LIFE

We know there are five main conditions for life on this earth. If any one of these conditions should change or leave, all life we see on earth would be at an end or at least change greatly. All living things need:

1. Enough oxygen
2. Enough water
3. Proper food
4. Proper temperature
5. Proper pressure

Oxygen and Life

Oxygen belongs to a group of things called gases. Oxygen makes up about one-fifth of all air; the rest of the air is a mixture of nitrogen and other gases. However, the air you breathe at the earth's surface has more oxygen than the air 5 miles above it. At 18,000 feet, or about 3½ miles above sea level, an airplane pilot (if he were not in a special kind of cabin) would have to take two breaths to get as much oxygen into his lungs as in one breath at sea level. Higher up, fliers find it more and more difficult to get enough oxygen to supply the needs of their bodies.

Without oxygen in the air, all life on earth as we know it would be at an end.

Water and Life

If the earth were too hot all the water would dry up, and if the earth were too cold all water would freeze. The fact that the earth is not too hot nor too cold is important to us for many reasons, one of which is that our bodies are about two-thirds water. The water in your body is useful in many ways. It helps to carry food to your cells. Water is one of the daily needs of your life.

If you were without water even for a day, you would understand how much it is needed. If the water on the earth were to disappear, all animals and plants would soon die. Even the camel, which can store up a week's supply, would die. And so would plants like the cactus.

Food and Life

As you remember from your reading in Unit 2, even if you had plenty of water, you would not be able to live for long without food.

Because living things always need food, all kinds of life in all parts of the world must find the right kind of food. Some animals, like cows, sheep, and horses, eat grass or other plants. They live only where there is enough grass or similar food. Other animals, like the lions, tigers, and wolves, are meat eaters. They must, therefore, live near the animals they feed on. Lastly, other animals eat both plants and meat. Because man has used his brain, he has learned ways to keep food — both plants and meat — from spoiling, even though he has to carry it long distances. Thus man has been able to travel far and wide over the face of the earth. Think what would happen to him if there suddenly were no more plants and animals!

Temperature and Life

A healthy human body stays at a temperature of about 98.6° F. Man could not live long in cold or very hot climates without protection against great heat or cold. It is the same with plants and animals. For example, alligators and roses do not thrive in the icelands of the far north, nor do polar bears thrive near the equator. Most plants and animals cannot live where the temperature is too low or too high.

On the earth, there are wide differences in temperature. Higher places on the earth, such as the top of Mount Everest and other high mountains, have bad storms and low temperatures. In Siberia, near the Arctic Circle, a temperature of more than 100° F. below zero has been recorded. In Death Valley in California, a temperature of 149° F. above zero has been recorded. People who are prepared for such temperatures can live in these places for a short time. However, there are certain temperatures beyond which human life cannot exist, as tests have shown.

The lowest possible temperature is 459° F. below zero. Before this temperature is reached, the air becomes a solid frozen mass. On the other hand, at high temperatures solid things turn into liquids or gases. The temperature of a gas flame, such as that in a gas stove, is 1,100° F.; iron melts at 1,700° F.

Life for us would not last long at 158.6° F., a temperature 60 degrees above 98.6° F., our normal body temperature. Why? Because the bodies of all animals have in them materials like the white of an egg. These materials are called proteins. The proteins in your body would change much as the white of an egg does in boiling water if you were to remain at a temperature above 158° F. even for a short time.

A human body without protection would become like ice and solid at 23° F. (or just 9 degrees below the freezing point of water). Only by using heating and cooling systems can man stay alive at very high or very low temperatures.

Pressure and Life

You may hear people say that it is hard to live under the pressures of today. They mean the strain of all the things they have to do or worry about. This is not the kind of pressure a scientist has in mind. He means the kind of pressure that happens when something pushes against something else. For example, by pushing on a brake pedal a driver of a heavy truck can bring the truck to a stop. The barber or dentist with a push of his hand or foot raises you in a chair by the same method. The pressure of air in the tires of an airplane allows it to land gently.

You yourself are under the pressure of air all the time. The weight of all the air in the atmosphere pushes upon your body in all directions with a pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch. As long as the pressure on the inside and outside of your body is the same or nearly so, you can forget about pressure. Deep-sea divers and pilots of airplanes at high altitudes have to think about keeping the air pressure around their bodies just right (Fig. 63).

Animals that live in water are under a greater pressure than are animals that live in the air. At a depth of only 34 feet the pressure of water on the body is twice the pressure of air at sea level. A fish living one mile down in the ocean is under a pressure of over one ton per square inch. Yet this great pressure outside is balanced by an equal pressure inside the fish's body. When a deep-sea fish is hauled up quickly from the ocean, its body swells. This is because the greater pressure inside its body is no longer matched by the lesser pressure of the water near the surface.

To be able to stand the pressure of water, divers usually wear special suits into which air is pumped. As they breathe this air, the pressure inside their bodies becomes greater. Like the fish, they will have trouble if they are brought up to the surface too quickly. Bubbles of nitrogen form in the blood and gather in the joints if a diver is brought to the surface too fast. This causes him to have great pain and bleeding, which may result in his death. Read Commander Ellsberg's book, *On the Bottom*, if you want to get a better idea of how high water pressures act upon divers.

U.S. NAVY

63 Spacesuits, like this one made for the U.S. Navy, can withstand lowered air pressure, permit normal breathing, and yet allow a good deal of freedom of action so that a person can work.

Even without doing any diving under water, you can find out how changing pressure feels. Did you ever ride up in an express elevator in a tall building? If so, you may have had a queer feeling inside your ears. When you swallowed hard it went away. That feeling was caused by the change in the air pressure. Makers of high-flying passenger planes now build the cabins so they can be sealed before the planes leave the ground so that the air pressure will remain the same during the flight. Such cabins are called "pressurized" because the air pressure is kept at the right amount for the passengers' comfort.

Conditions on Our Planet

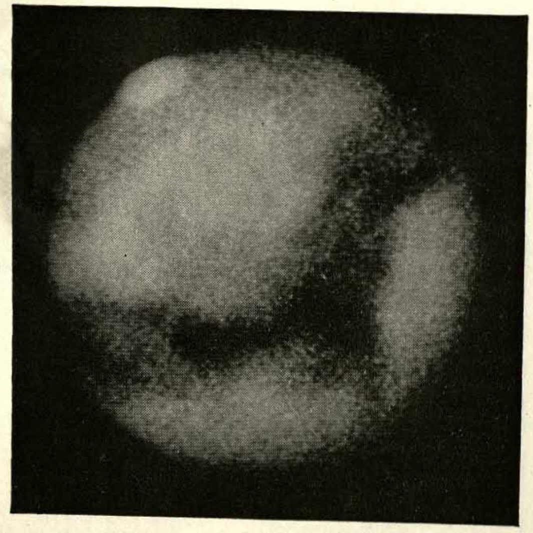
These then are the five conditions needed for life as we know it. Every animal and plant on earth needs the right amounts of oxygen, water, and food. They also need the proper temperature and the proper amount of air pressure. Whether the living things we find on earth can live on other planets depends on whether these conditions for life are present. This is important to know before starting out on a space trip.

Conditions on Other Planets

What are the conditions scientists have been able to discover on other planets? Let us start with the planet nearest to the sun.

Mercury has no blanket of air. As it goes around the sun, it always presents the same side to the sun. The temperature of the sunlit side is always about 700° F., which is above the melting point of lead and about 500° F. above the boiling point of water. Its dark side is too cold to measure, but it is probably close to −459° F. Can you think of any form of life able to remain alive under such conditions?

Venus is a planet whose surface cannot be seen from the earth. This is because it is covered with clouds that are so thick we cannot look through them. We do not know what these clouds are made of, but we do know that there are great amounts of the gas carbon dioxide in them. If there is carbon dioxide near the surface of Venus, life as we know it at present could not exist there. The temperature of the upper atmosphere of Venus is about −50° F., which is close to the temperature of our



YERKES OBSERVATORY

64 Mars has markings which show seasonal changes of color, and polar ice caps that change in size. Do people live there? We don't know. *Project:* Write an article for your school paper or magazine titled, "Are There Men on Mars?"

earth's upper air. Whether there is life on Venus is an open question without an answer as yet.

Mars may be the first planet man will try to explore. It has an atmosphere, but it is thin. For this reason we can see and study the surface of Mars (Fig. 64). It is known as the red planet, but the color of its surface seems to change to green at times. This seems to point to some kind of plant life that changes with changes of season. In its polar regions there are white areas that change in size. This seems to show that there is water and ice or frost on Mars.

Through a telescope a network of dark lines can be seen. These are called "canals," but few scientists believe they are the kind of canals people might have built. Mars has no oceans, and the amount of oxygen in its atmosphere is very small. The temperature of Mars seldom rises above 50 or 60° F. at its equator, but may reach 80° F.

Can there be life under such circumstances? The astronomer Lowell said that the markings and changes of color show there is life on Mars. Few astronomers are ready to agree with him, but they will admit that they cannot prove him to be wrong.

Jupiter, *Saturn*, *Uranus*, and *Neptune* are giant planets much larger than the earth. There is little hope of anyone's ever visiting these planets because no way is now known to avoid a crash landing that would destroy man and his rocket. The force which holds things to the surface of these planets is much greater than the force which holds things to the surface of the earth. And even if a safe landing were made, this same pull would make an escape for a return trip to the earth impossible.

Living conditions on these giant planets would probably be very bad for living things such as those we know on earth. Temperatures are very cold on all of them because they are so far away from the sun. Jupiter, the warmest, has a temperature of about −202° F. The air of the giant planets has no oxygen, as far as we know.

Now that you have the main facts, would you say that life as we know it can be found on other planets? Most scientists say that, if there is life on these planets, it has the best chance of being found on Mars or Venus. Can you see why from the facts you have just read? It is also believed that, if there is life on these planets, it may not be at all like life on the earth. We shall have to wait for more direct proof, such as the reports of space explorers who reach these planets and come back with real samples and photographs. Till then we can only guess and make theories.

OUR SUN AND THE PLANET EARTH

We do not need to make theories about the conditions which make life possible on the earth. Besides having the five things named before, we have just about the right amount of heat and light, which we get from the sun.

Of course you know that the amount of heat and light the sun sends to any one spot on the earth is always changing. It changes from hour to hour, from day to day, and from season to season. These changes take place because the earth is in motion and because the earth's axis is slanted. To give you an idea of the relation of the earth to the sun, do this experiment yourself.

The Earth's Share of Sunlight

Let a large ball (or globe) be the earth, and a small electric light bulb be the sun. Go into a darkened room, which will represent space. Now light the bulb, and hold the ball (or globe) in its rays.

Notice that no matter how you hold it, one half of the ball is always in darkness and the other half always in the light.

Remember that the sun, like your light bulb, gives out heat and light in all directions at the same time. The entire earth catches only a billionth part (0.000,000,001) of all the heat sent out by the sun. How fortunate this is! Can you guess what would happen to us if the earth were to receive two, three, or ten times as much heat? Or suppose we were to get only one-half, one-third, or one-tenth as much. What would become of us? If we were to get much more, we would be burned to a crisp. If we were to get much less, we would freeze.

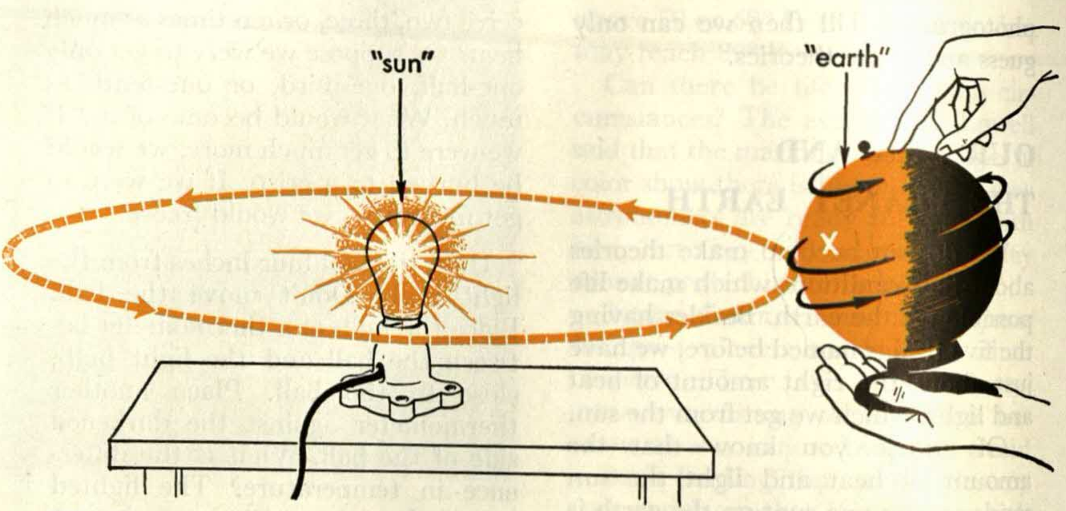
Hold the ball four inches from the light bulb. Don't move the ball. Place the bulb of a thermometer between the ball and the light bulb, close to the ball. Place another thermometer against the darkened side of the ball. What is the difference in temperature? The lighted side is always warmer.

The situation is similar to what would happen if the same side of the earth were always turned toward the sun. The lighted side would be too hot for most forms of life. The dark side would be too cold. Actually, the difference in temperature between the two sides of the earth would be far greater than in this simple experiment. The difference might be like that found on the planet Mercury (p. 149). But fortunately for living things, the earth turns. Its motions give us the hours of daylight and hours of darkness, and also the changes of season, as you will find in Chapter 12 of Unit 4.

Sunlight and Shadows

It is easy to see how the two motions of the earth give us days and nights of changing length.

Place the bulb (sun) in a lamp on a table. Carry the ball (the earth) all the way around the lamp. The earth takes about 365¼ days to make this kind of journey around the sun, and, as you learned (p. 135),



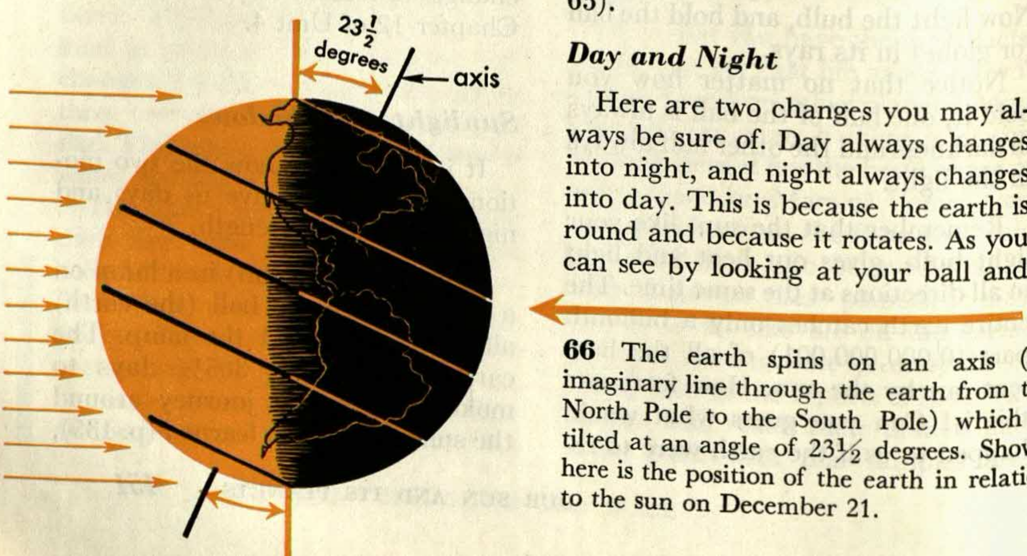
65 Day and night mean sunlight and shadow. If *X* marks the spot where you live on the earth, the time shown is afternoon. The turning (rotating) earth will soon carry spot *X* into the shadow, away from the light, and then it will be night for a while. *Project:* Make a model of the earth and sun. With it show how sunlight and shadow mean day and night.

we call this length of time a year. This yearly revolution of the earth around the sun is just one of the earth's motions.

To see another of the earth's motions, put a chalk mark on the side of the ball nearest to you. This chalk mark shows about where you live. Go on walking (revolving) around the lamp, but now twist (rotate) the ball with your fingers at the same time. It takes the earth 24 hours to rotate once and, of course, we call this length of time a day. Notice that the chalk mark you made is carried by the rotation of the earth from the lighted side to the dark side and back again into the lighted side. When the chalk mark is in the light, it is in "daytime"; when it is in the dark, it is in "nighttime" (Fig. 65).

Day and Night

Here are two changes you may always be sure of. Day always changes into night, and night always changes into day. This is because the earth is round and because it rotates. As you can see by looking at your ball and



66 The earth spins on an axis (an imaginary line through the earth from the North Pole to the South Pole) which is tilted at an angle of 23½ degrees. Shown here is the position of the earth in relation to the sun on December 21.

lamp, the sun's light can strike only one-half of the earth at any moment. As the earth turns (rotates) from west to east, new points on the earth's surface come into the light of the sun. If you were in Chicago and looked east at early dawn, you would see the sun seem to rise as the city of Chicago turned eastward. At evening, if you were to look toward the west, the sun would seem to go down and disappear. This would happen because Chicago had turned farther eastward. Day and night and sunrise and sunset are due to the earth's rotation. You can see best how the earth rotates by turning a globe on its axis. Of course there is no real axis, such as you find in the center of a classroom globe, running through the center of the earth. However, it is well to think of the earth as actually spinning on an axis through its center from the North Pole to the South Pole. You may think of the earth spinning like a top.

Different Lengths of Days and Nights

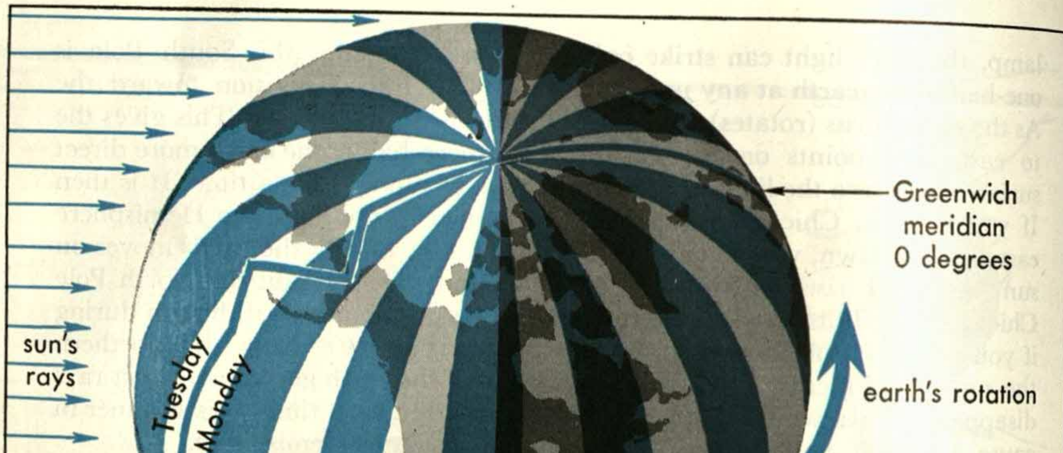
Have you ever wondered why the globe at school or in your home is tipped away from an upright position? Scientists have found that the earth is tipped on its axis like a leaning top. Globe maps of the earth are tipped in the same way to show that this is the position of the earth as it rotates on its axis and at the same time revolves about the sun. The tilt of the earth's axis is 23½ degrees (Fig. 66).

The tilt of the earth's axis is one of the causes of the change in the length of the hours of daylight and darkness as one season follows another. Notice that, as the earth revolves in its orbit around the sun, the South Pole is brought into a position toward the sun during December. This gives the southern half of the earth more direct rays of sunlight for a time. It is then summer in the Southern Hemisphere (Fig. 66). Slowly the earth moves on around the sun until the North Pole is in a position toward the sun during June (Fig. 66). Now the northern half of the earth gets more direct rays of sunlight for a time. It is summer in the Northern Hemisphere.

There are more hours of daylight on the half of the earth that tilts toward the sun. This explains why the days grow shorter for half a year and longer for half a year. The length of the day and other seasonal changes you will study later are the main cause of seasonal weather. You will find the full explanation of daily and seasonal changes in Unit 4, "Understanding the Earth's Weather." Right now just keep in mind that the earth's rotation causes day and night, and that the earth's revolution about the sun together with the tilted axis changes the length of days and nights.

Hours of the Day

Timekeeping is important to the whole world. Therefore, to learn about the kind of time we keep you must first know a bit about the time zones into which man has divided the globe of the earth. Since time changes as the earth spins from the west to the east, it is the way the earth is divided in these directions that interests us. Let us pretend the earth is an orange with the skin off. You know how each section of the orange seems to be divided from the next one by lines from the top to the



67 The earth is shown here at a time of an equinox (equal hours of daylight and of darkness). Each of the twenty-four bands is a time zone 15 degrees wide. Four of these cover the United States. In which time zone are you located? Why was the international date line placed in the Pacific?

bottom. On the earth such lines, though imaginary, are drawn from the North Pole to the South Pole. They are the lines of *longitude* (LON-jih-tood). They are also called *meridians*. There are 360 meridians, each separated by one degree.

In 1884, at the Washington Meridian Conference, the nations of the world agreed to divide the earth into time zones based on lines of longitude 15 degrees apart (Fig. 67). Since 360 divided by 15 equals 24, you can see that each time zone marks one hour of a day's time. As the earth rotates, approximately one hour passes for every 15 degrees of the earth's surface that goes by a given point. In 24 hours the earth makes one rotation.

It was also decided that the meridian of the city of Greenwich (GREN-ij), England, would be the meridian of 0 degrees longitude. All meridians east of Greenwich up to longitude 180 degrees are called *east longitude;* all meridians west of Greenwich up to 180 degrees are called *west longitude* (Fig. 67).

Philadelphia is at 75 degrees west longitude, that is, five time-meridians west of Greenwich. Thus there is a difference of five hours between the clocks of Philadelphia and those of Greenwich. Since Philadelphia is always moving eastward to the point in space that Greenwich has been in, Philadelphia time is always five hours behind the time of Greenwich. In other words, when it is two o'clock in the morning in Greenwich, England, it is five hours earlier, or nine o'clock of the night before, in Philadelphia (Fig. 67).

Time Zones in the United States

Time kept according to this world agreement is known as *standard time.* Every fifteenth meridian is roughly the center line of a zone of standard time. Four of these time lines, beginning with the 75th, fall within the borders of the United States and Canada. The others are the 90th, 105th, and 120th (Fig. 67). Therefore, there are four standard time zones covering the United States. On the map you will see that these time zones do not follow even lines. These irregular borders of the time zones were needed to avoid dividing large cities into two zones. As you can see, this would have annoyed many people.

As you study the map in Fig. 67, you will see that Central Standard Time (CST) is one hour earlier than Eastern Standard Time (EST). The next zone is Mountain Standard Time (MST), which is one hour earlier than CST. The last is Pacific Standard Time (PST), one hour earlier than MST. These time zones must be allowed for when you tune in a distant radio program or when you travel east or west beyond your own time zone. In New York when it is 3 P.M. EST, it is just noon PST in California. That is why people in California may be having lunch while listening to an afternoon broadcast from New York. People who travel westward set their watches back one hour whenever they cross the border of a time zone. Going eastward, people set their watches ahead each time they enter a new standard time zone.

The International Date Line

You know now how standard time is kept from Greenwich, England, westward to the Pacific coast of North America. Now suppose you wanted to keep on going toward the west across the Pacific Ocean. You would continue to set your watch back one hour every time you entered a new time zone. If you started at 7 A.M. EST on Tuesday and flew fast enough, you might expect to get back to Monday's evening hours. Then as you flew on and on you would keep going back into past time. This, you see, would be impossible for day-to-day living. There has to be a place where the time can be changed to take care of this. By agreement it is in a part of the world where it will cause the least trouble. Few people live near the 180th meridian, and so it is roughly the *international date line.* Where people do live along this meridian, the date line zigzags a bit like some of the time zone border lines (Fig. 67).

The nations have agreed that a day is to be added to the calendar by those who cross this line traveling westward. If it is 11 A.M. Tuesday when you cross the date line going west, it will be 11 A.M. Wednesday the next moment. But if you are traveling from China to the United States (eastward) and the time is 11 A.M. Tuesday when you reach the line, it will be 11 A.M. Monday when you cross it. By making these changes, traders on both sides of the Pacific can keep their business calendars accurate.

Daylight Saving Time

In most parts of the United States, we set the clocks ahead one hour at a certain time in the spring of the year. This "fast time," as some call it, is better known as Daylight Saving Time. For about five months when the days are longest, Daylight Saving Time gives many workers an extra hour of daylight after their working hours. It gives them time while it is light to tend their gardens or enjoy some outdoor fun. It also saves electricity that would be used to give light. The idea has spread to Europe, where some of the countries now use Daylight Saving Time. What do you think of Daylight Saving Time?

And Now

On this planet Earth more than a million kinds of living things are to be found. One of them is man. There are now more than two billion people on the earth. Some of them have an idea they would like to explore other planets and the moon. We do not know whether they will be able to travel through space and return safely. But we do know that first they will have to learn about the make-up of the earth, our planet home. This is what you will do when you read Chapter 8.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

orbit
solar system
revolution
planetoid or asteroid

light-year
galaxy
constellation

meteor
meteorite
comet

1. a kind of heavenly body which grows a long, cloudlike tail as it nears the sun
2. any one of the 88 groups of stars and the area of the sky in its vicinity
3. the sun and its family of planets, their moons, meteors, and comets
4. the distance which light, traveling at 186,000 miles per second, travels in a year
5. a heavenly body which glows for a moment as it passes through the upper part of the earth's atmosphere
6. a meteor that has landed somewhere on the earth's surface
7. one of a group of small planets whose orbit is between Mars and Jupiter

8. a single trip of a heavenly body around another heavenly body
9. a star system or cluster of stars
10. the path of one heavenly body as it revolves about another heavenly body

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Ptolemy taught that the earth is at the center of the . . . .
2. The orbits of the planetoids lie between the orbits of the planets Mars and . . . .
3. . . . of the planets have moons.
4. In all, there are . . . moons.
5. Our sun is an average of . . . miles away from us.
6. The stars are so far away we have to measure their distances by . . . .
7. Our solar system belongs in a swarm of stars known as the . . . .
8. Our present ideas about the solar system are based on the work of . . . , who died in 1543.
9. No one has ever seen the surface of the planet Venus because . . . .
10. The comet that will appear again in 1986 is called . . . .

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Using your watch as a compass.* When you do this experiment, be sure that the sun is shining. Place the watch on a horizontal surface. Turn the watch until the hour hand is pointing toward the sun. Now place a small stick or toothpick in such a way that it will divide into two equal parts the number of minutes on the dial between the hour hand and the number 12. The small stick will lie approximately north and south. For example, if the hour hand is at 10 A.M., your stick will be laid across the numbers 11 and 5. The number 5 will point to north. Remember, the hour hand must point toward the sun.

2. *Finding your way by the stars.* The next time you go on an overnight hike, plan a treasure hunt with some of the directions based upon the location of certain bright stars or well-known constellations. For example, instead of saying "go north" say "go in the direction of Polaris."

3. *Finding where the sun sets.* Select a good spot near your home where you can see the sun go down behind buildings or trees of different kinds. For one year, at the 1st and 15th of every month, make a note of the position of the setting sun as seen against these landmarks. Does the sun always set in the exact west? When is it north of west? When south of west? By this we mean the exact west. The facts you gather will give you the answer.

4. *Model of a planetarium.* If you have no real planetarium in your city, you may want to make a small model of your own. One way to do it is to get a large tin can into which you punch tiny holes. If you place a light bulb inside the can

and darken your room, you will be able to see spots of light that look like the familiar constellations. There is a fine set of directions for building this kind of tin can planetarium in the November, 1950, issue of *The Science Teacher*, pp. 180–183. Your science teacher may have a copy of this magazine. The article was written by Prof. Fletcher G. Watson of Harvard University.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. If it were suddenly announced that life had been discovered on Venus or Mars, what facts would you need before you would believe the report to be true?
2. Life on the earth might be greatly changed if only a few conditions were changed slightly. Explain this statement.

Adding to Your Library

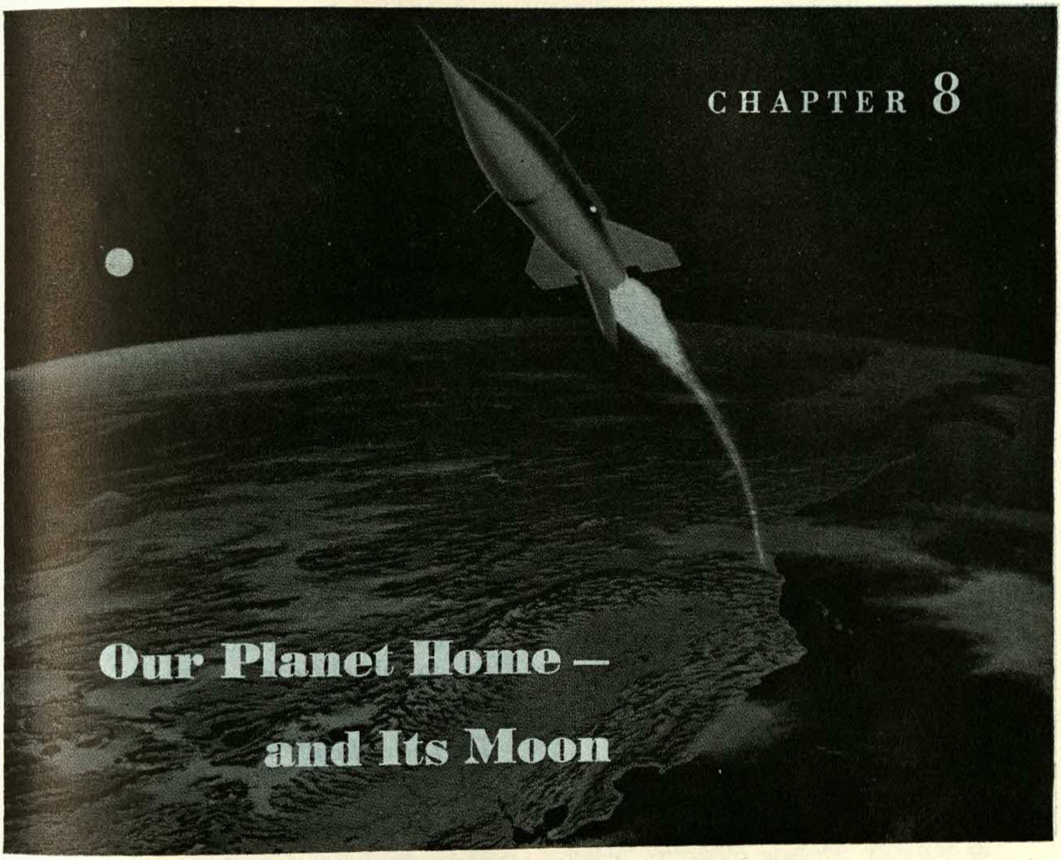
1. *A Field Book of the Stars* by William T. Olcott, Putnam, 1920. This book gives a description of 45 constellations grouped by the seasons during which they may be seen to greatest advantage. It also contains an excellent list of star names and their meanings.
2. *A Beginner's Guide to the Stars* by Kelvin McKready, Putnam, 1924. This book shows you how to observe the stars. It has 12 charts with keys to observing the sky at various seasons.
3. *Astronomy*, Merit Badge Handbook, Boy Scouts of America, 2 Park Ave., New York (11), N.Y. (25 cents). A well-illustrated booklet for the student scout who is serious enough about astronomy to want to earn a merit rating.
4. *Life on Other Worlds* by H. Spencer Jones, Mentor Books, 1940. The Astronomer Royal of England tells what science knows about the conditions and possibility of life on the other planets.
5. *The World of Copernicus* by Angus Armitage, Mentor Books, 1951. Here is told the life and work of the first of the great modern astronomers.
6. *The Birth and Death of the Sun* by George Gamow, Pelican Books, 1945. An exciting description of the possible beginning of the sun.
7. *You and Space Neighbors* by John Lewellen, Childrens Press, Chicago, 1953. You will enjoy reading this book so much that you will be surprised at the number of solid facts you will get from it.
8. *The Stars in Our Heaven* by Peter Lum, Pantheon Books, New York, 1948. Here is a collection of delightful myths and fables about the stars and some accurate star maps to help you find them.
9. *Time and Its Reckoning* by R. Barnard Way and Noel D. Green, Chemical Publishing Co., 1940. Tells about the inside workings of clocks and watches.

A Bit of Research

For only 25 cents you can get from the Maryland Academy of Sciences a "Graphic Time Table of the Heavens" which will help you to find out when many of the interesting things will happen in the sky. This time table is published every year in the January issue of *Sky and Telescope*. You can, for example, find out when planets will be morning or evening stars. Times of sunrise, sunset, and the phases of the moon can also be found on this time table, along with many other interesting facts about the events of the year in astronomy. The address of the academy is Enoch Pratt Library Building, 400 Cathedral Street, Baltimore (1), Md.

Careers for You

Do you think astronomy is only for scientists? If so, read "Fun with Telescopes," pp. 202–203. Besides being a fine hobby, astronomy is an important tool for those who guide ships and airplanes on their way. There are good jobs waiting for good *navigators*, but you cannot become a good navigator without knowing some astronomy.



CHAPTER 8

Our Planet Home — and Its Moon

Look at the moon any clear night. It will be some 238,000 miles away. In ocean tides and eclipses the moon plays a part in your life. And the moon may be the first outpost man will reach in space.

EXCITING as it may be to think about exploring the moon, we must first explore the earth, our planet home. Of course, men have been exploring the earth since earliest times, and you may think there is very little left here to explore. We really do know a great deal about the earth, but there is much more to be discovered. The earth, you see, is not just the land on which we stand. Part of it is the air envelope, the *atmosphere*, that surrounds our planet. Part is the oceans, seas, and rivers. Part of our earth is the mass of very hot rock below its surface. In spite of the wonderful discoveries that have been made, there are still many unsolved problems for which we have not found the answer. What science has found out and what science wants to find out about our planet is the story of this chapter.

Let us begin our journey by looking at Fig. 68, which shows the earth like a ball that is slightly flattened at the poles. The earth's average diameter is about 7,920 miles. This means that it is about 3,960 miles from where you are now standing to the center of the earth.

You really are standing at the bottom of an ocean of air, the exact depth of which no one knows. Scientists believe that a tiny amount of the gases that make up the air may be found 600 miles or more above the earth's surface.

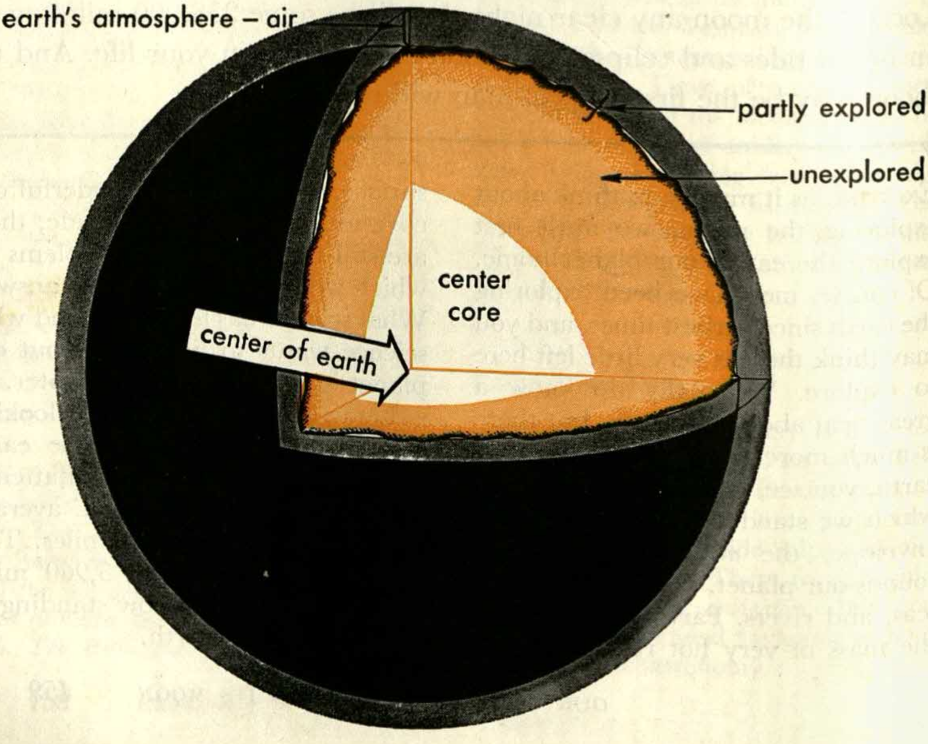
Roughly 70% of the earth's surface is covered by bodies of water, the largest of which are the oceans. Their average depth is about 2 miles, but the deepest part of the ocean is a mile deeper than Mt. Everest is high. This is the Emden Deep, sometimes called the Mindanao (min-duh-NAH-oh) Deep. It is off the east coast of Mindanao, one of the Philippine Islands. Mount Everest, the world's highest mountain (29,002 feet), was climbed successfully for the first time on May 29, 1953, by Sir Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norkay. But the lowest depth to which a man has gone down into the sea was the descent of 13,288 feet made by the two French naval officers Houot and Wilm in 1954. These men and others were pitting themselves against the forces which rule our unstable earth.

OUR UNSTABLE EARTH

You may wonder how anything as solid and hard as a rock can be changed. You may think that since the earth is so very old it should be firmly set and done with changes. This is not so. The earth moves, shakes, and changes. You have heard of some of the things that happen, such as earthquakes, volcanoes, and dust storms. Now you are going to learn more about them and the forces which rule our earth.

Earthquakes

Look at the map in Fig. 71. It shows you what is often called "the



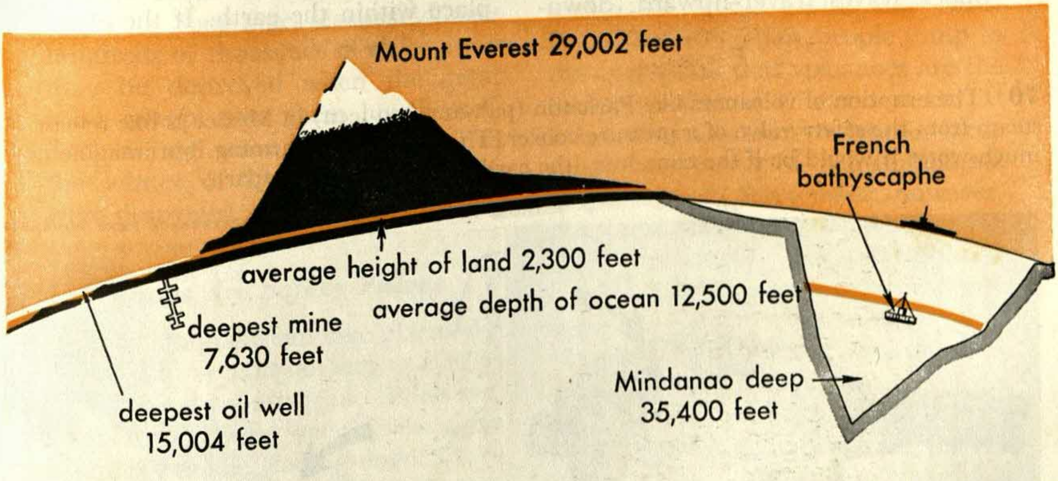
Earthquake Belt." It might also be called "the Volcano Belt." Most of the active volcanoes and most of the great earthquakes happen within the colored areas on this map. You can check this for yourself if you have an almanac like the *World Almanac*. Look up "Earthquakes" and find out where the most important ones took place. You will see that nearly all were within the colored belt shown on the map in Fig. 71. If the newspapers report an earthquake, check its location on this map to see if it is in the "Earthquake Belt."

Between the years 1899 and 1923, 1,783 great earthquakes happened within the colored area on this map. One dangerous belt almost circles the earth near the middle, and the other danger zone almost surrounds the Pacific Ocean. Remember that these 1,783 earthquakes were major quakes. An instrument that records earthquakes is called a *seismograph* (SYZE-muh-graf). A major earthquake is one strong enough to be felt on seismographs in widely separated places. In New England, for instance, over 500 earthquakes take place each year, but only a few of them even cause rattling of dishes on the kitchen shelves. Another 100,000 quakes (barely felt) probably happened during the same twenty-four year period from 1899 to 1923.

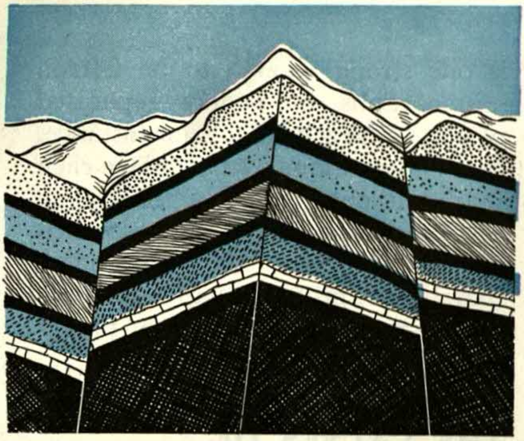
THE CAUSES OF EARTHQUAKES

Have you ever tried to lift a rock or boulder the size of a basketball? Rather heavy, wasn't it? Now try to imagine the tremendous weight of a pile of rocks a mile high — five miles high — fifty miles high! Down inside the earth at depths from five to fifty miles the total weight of the rocks is the cause of tremendously heavy pressure.

This pressure causes cracks or


Mount Everest 29,002 feet
French bathyscaphe
average height of land 2,300 feet
average depth of ocean 12,500 feet
deepest mine 7,630 feet
Mindanao deep 35,400 feet
deepest oil well 15,004 feet

68 *Left*, men have explored most of the land and water of the earth's surface, but they have gone only a few miles into the interior of the earth or beneath the sea. The upper atmosphere is still unexplored. *Above*, a cross section showing the greatest heights and depths of the earth's surface.



69 Faults in rock formations are deep cracks that go down through many rock layers. When sections of rock slip along such cracks, the earth shakes and quakes.

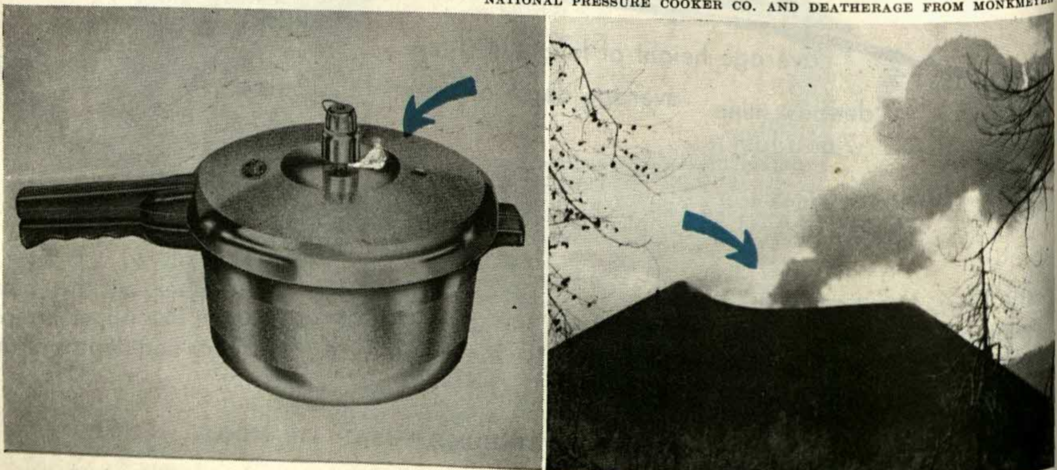
faults which may go for several miles into the depths of the earth (Fig. 69). Suddenly a whole section of the rocks gives way under this pressure and slips a short distance downward or sideward along one of the faults. This movement sets up vibrations called *shock waves*. These waves travel outward in all directions like the ripples on a pond when you toss in a stone. Shock waves travel upward, downward, and sideward. Thus they may be measured with instruments thousands of miles from the point on the surface where the earthquake is causing its worst damage.

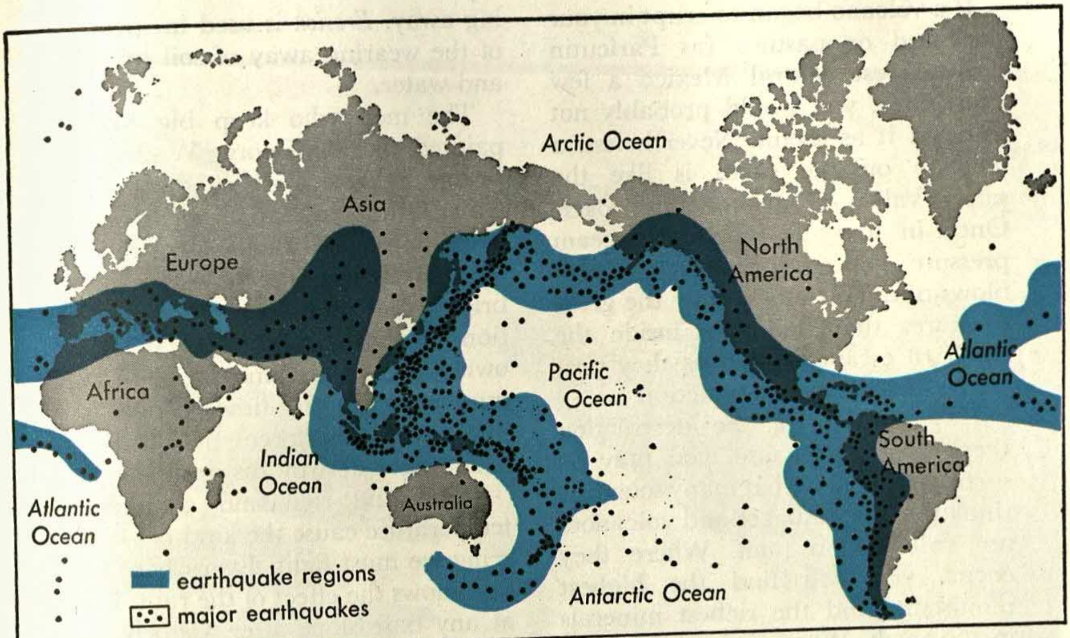
To give you an idea of the great damage an earthquake can cause, consider the one that struck the Shensi (shen-SEE) Province of China in January, 1556. Entire villages, disappearing like toy houses in a box of sand, were buried by the loose, moving soil. The Chinese said that the mountains seemed to walk. This disaster took the lives of several hundred thousand people. In the summer of 1949, an earthquake in Ecuador destroyed several villages and took the lives of some 4,000 people. In 1953 and 1954, several major quakes shook the islands and mainland of Greece. Buildings crumbled. More than 1,000 people were killed and about 130,000 were made homeless.

Usually the greatest destruction is caused in the region right above the spot where the rockslide has taken place within the earth. If the earth-

70 The eruption of volcanoes like Parícutin (pah-REE-koo-teen) in Mexico is like release of steam from the safety valve of a pressure cooker. The eruption is alarming, but imagine how much worse it would be if the container (the earth or the pot) blew apart!

NATIONAL PRESSURE COOKER CO. AND DEATHERAGE FROM MONKMEYER





71 The "Earthquake Belt" encircles the earth near the equator, but it also nearly encircles the Pacific Ocean. Earthquakes take place most often where the mountains are still rising. *Project:* Make a map like this one and place it on the bulletin board. Keep a record of earthquakes as they are reported by placing a pin on the map where they took place.

quake happens beneath the ocean, it sets the ocean in motion. The result is a huge ocean wave, often called a *tidal wave*. Sometimes seacoast villages hundreds or thousands of miles away may be destroyed when the great wave sweeps over them hours later. Such a tidal wave struck Hawaii in the winter of 1948. Many villages were destroyed.

Volcanoes Are Safety Valves

An earthquake can take place anywhere, but you do not expect ever to be bothered by a volcano unless you happen to be near one. A volcano is a crater or hole leading down like a chimney into the earth at a spot where the rock crust is weak. In a volcano, melted rock and cinders are near the earth's surface, where they may be blown out over the nearby land.

Most of the active volcanoes lie within the great earthquake belts. Because of this, some people jump to the conclusion that volcanoes are the common cause of all earthquakes. It is true that volcanoes sometimes cause small earthquakes in their immediate neighborhood. Remember, however, that rockslides deep down in the earth cause most of the great quakes.

Although volcanoes cause only small earthquakes, do not for that reason think that they are safe companions. A volcano erupting is very, very dangerous to all living things. Flying boulders, syrupy streams of flaming lava, fiery cinders which fall like rain, and deadly clouds of hot, poisonous gas are all part of the eruption.

If a volcano began to erupt in your backyard or pasture (as Parícutin did in west central Mexico a few years ago), you would probably not think of it as useful. Nevertheless, a volcano on the earth is like the safety valve on a pressure cooker. Once in a while when the steam pressure gets too high, the valve blows out. Volcanoes allow the great pressures that build up inside the earth to escape, and thus they prevent much greater destruction.

Having read of the destruction these upheavals cause, you may be surprised to know that many scientists think that earthquakes and volcanoes are valuable to man. Where they occur, you will find the highest mountains and the richest minerals in the earth. When rocks shift, when volcanoes erupt, new materials are brought to the surface. These materials can be used by man.

In addition to earthquakes, there are other forces which build up land and still others which tear it down, as you will see.

Weathering and Erosion

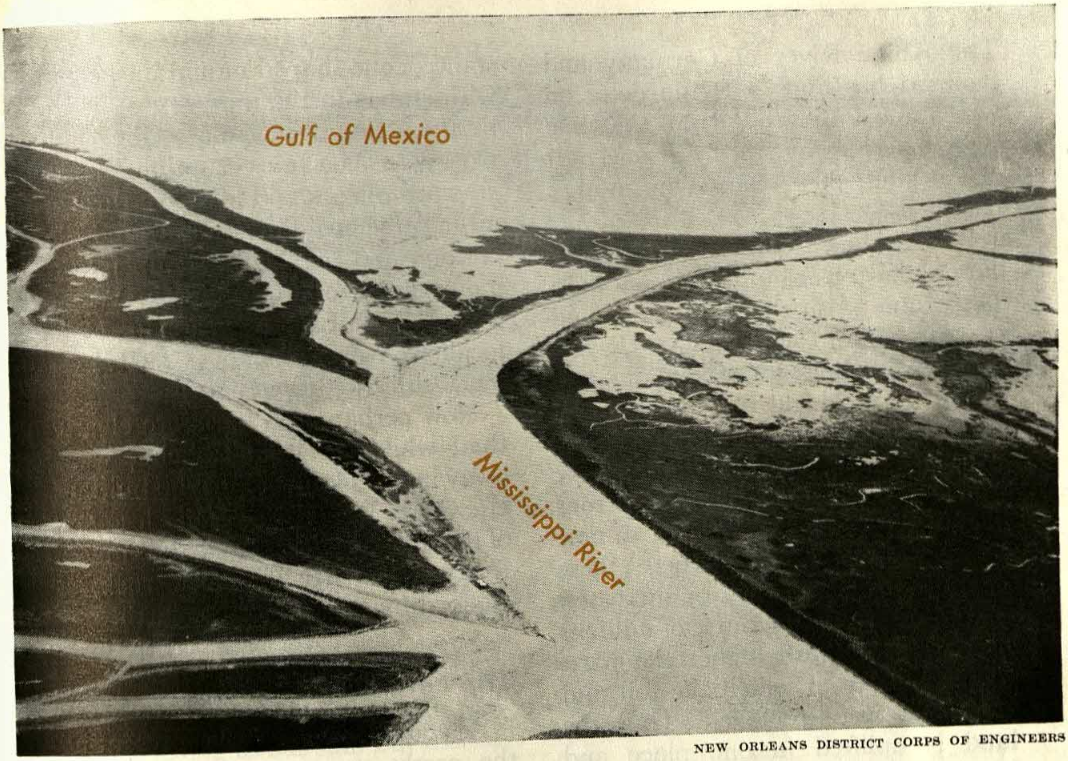
People who live in houses close to the ocean, or along the banks of a big river, or on the side of a mountain, or on a farm in the Dust Bowl know that the forces of weathering and erosion are real and dangerous. They cause landslides, dust storms, and floods. Such things can be as fearful and damaging as earthquakes and volcanoes in eruption. We are likely to forget that weathering and erosion are at work twenty-four hours a day.

Weathering is the action of the sun, wind, water, ice, and rain upon the earth, wearing it away. *Erosion* is another word used to describe wearing away. *Erosion* is used in speaking of the wearing away of soil by wind and water.

The men who keep big bridges painted, like the George Washington Bridge in New York or the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco, are never finished. If they do not repaint these bridges every few years, the bridges will be destroyed by the action of the weather. Every homeowner faces the same problem. He must work all the time to hold the line against the forces that little by little might destroy his property.

Wind and rain and changes of temperature cause the kind of weathering we must fight. Every bare hillside shows the effect of the rain. Look at any bare slope after a storm and notice how water may have worn away some of the soil. Even in city streets the leaves and twigs that stop up the sewer drain show that weather and erosion are at work.

To make this problem real to you, look about your home or school for damage which is being done by weathering and erosion. You might start with the windows. In almost any house you will find some windows that are dangerously loose because the putty has come away from the glass. Notice the wood on the inside and outside sash of such windows. Has it begun to crack or rot? Is this due to rain or snow? Make a list of the places where repairs are needed so that weathering and erosion will cause no more damage. Do not forget the walks and the roof. Look at the condition of exposed hinges, too. Discuss with your parents or handyman the importance of doing whatever is necessary to prevent further damage.



NEW ORLEANS DISTRICT CORPS OF ENGINEERS

72 The Mississippi delta is land built up by the river from soil the river took from land upstream. Water is a builder as well as a destroyer of land. What other rivers that you know have deltas?

Wearing Down the Earth

The wind carries sand, which rubs and scratches the surfaces of the earth like a file or a piece of sandpaper. Water seeps into the scratches and cracks in rocks. In winter this water becomes ice. As you know, when water becomes ice it takes up more space. We say it expands. As it expands, the ice makes the cracks in the rock a little deeper. Some day a boulder will break away from the side of the rock. This cracking and splitting also happens to the bricks and stones forming the walls of buildings and their foundations. Check the walls or foundations of your home for signs of this cracking.

Elsewhere water does its work in other ways. Ocean waves beat upon the shore and break away rocks and soil. Cliffs facing the ocean may in time break off and fall into the sea. Rivers carry away the soil. The Mississippi River, for example, steals 730 million tons of soil yearly from the fertile Midwest and deposits most of it in the Gulf of Mexico.

Building Up the Land

When soil is carried away by a river, it is deposited near the river's mouth. This fine soil spreads out in a fan-shaped area called a *delta*. The delta of the Mississippi in the Gulf of Mexico is made of fine, fertile soil. The delta of the Nile River in Egypt extends out into the sea 200 miles.

The Rhine River of Germany and Holland has built a fertile delta on which fine crops grow. In short, while rivers carry away soil from one part of the land, they place it in another part.

We see that, as land is worn down in one place, it is built up in another. Thus rains wash the soil of hills and mountains into the valleys. Rivers wear away the sides of canyons and bring the rock and soil to the lower reaches of the river or to deltas.

Weathering and erosion do their work slowly. They cause many tons of soil and rock to be moved to new places. In the places where these deposits are left, pressure increases. This pressure in the course of millions of years may push higher the parts of the land from which the soil and the rocks were removed. Thus the land is uplifted in one place and lowered in another.

You will get an idea of how this happens if you squeeze some bread dough or clay with your fingers. You may think of the pressure of your finger as the pressure of billions upon billions of tons of soil. Notice that, as you press down on one part of the dough, another part pushes up. Of course the earth is not soft like dough, but this is a good way to see how downward pressure in one place can cause uplifting in another. Also you must remember that what you can do in a second with dough takes millions upon millions of years in the earth.

The building up of the land is also done by earthquakes and volcanoes. Although these forces may destroy man and the things he builds, they also may build mountains. For instance, cone-shaped mountains, often with craters in the tops, are built up by the action of volcanoes (Fig. 73). During a volcanic eruption, large amounts of rock and lava are thrown up into the air. They fall around the volcano and may build it up into a mountain. Mount Rainier in Washington and Lassen Peak in California were once volcanoes. (Mt. Lassen is still listed as active.)

Now perhaps you see more clearly that, while the land is being worn away in one place, it must be built up elsewhere. We cannot really lose any of the stuff of which the earth is made. Every soil particle, every rock, is chained by gravity to this earth.

The Force of Gravity

As you look at a globe representing the earth, you may wonder what keeps the rocks, the air, and the oceans in place. Why don't the loose rocks fall off the earth and out into space? Why don't you yourself fall off the earth? If you were standing at the North Pole and another person were at the South Pole, would not one of you fall off the earth? Only one of you would be standing "on top." Part of the answer is that there is no top or bottom to this earth. Every one of us, everything — rocks, buildings, oceans — all are held to this earth by the force of *gravity.*

The Great Pull of Gravity

About three hundred years ago, Sir Isaac Newton found an answer to the questions about why things do not fall off the earth. This British scientist was the first to give a scientific reason for why things have weight. He said that *every object in the whole universe*

CHARLES PHELPS CUSHING

73 Crater Lake, Oregon, formed thousands of years ago in the broken cone of Mount Mazama, which was once an active volcano. Wizard Island is the cone of another inactive volcano which grew inside the old mountain. Volcanoes are mountain builders.

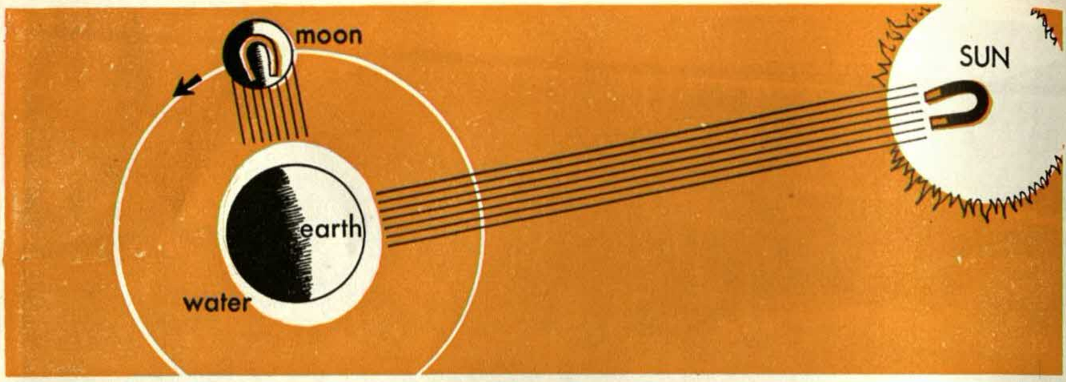
pulls on every other object. He called this the Law of Universal Gravitation.

Of course, things that are very far away from each other have very little pull on each other, even though they may be as big as our sun. But the sun has a strong enough pull to hold the earth in its orbit. And the earth has a strong enough pull to hold the moon in its orbit. We call this strong pull an attraction of one object for another. And if the earth can hold the moon in place, it is easy to see that it can also hold on to little things like rocks and people. The ocean and the atmosphere are also held in place by the force of gravity.

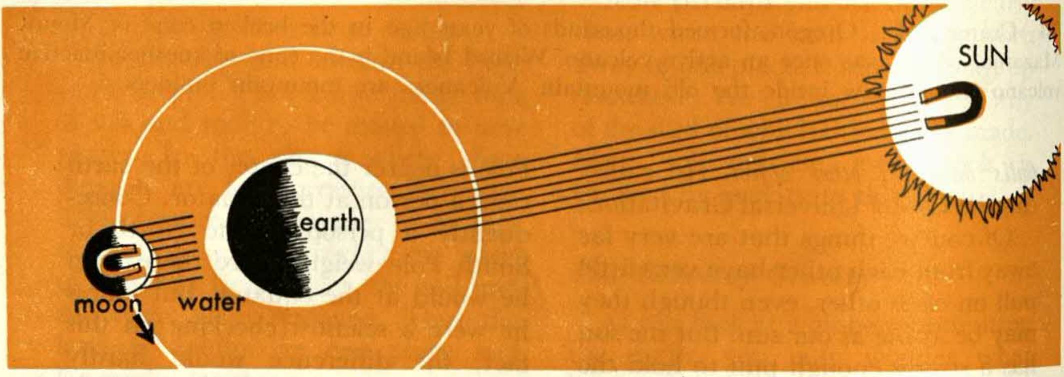
When you weigh yourself, you are measuring the amount of this attraction between yourself and the earth. Your total weight is the total force with which the earth pulls on you. Where is this force located? Scientists say the earth attracts objects as if the force of gravity were to be found at the center of the earth. The farther you are away from the center of the earth, the less is your weight. The earth is somewhat flatter at the poles than at the equator. Therefore, a person at either the North or South Pole is nearer the center of the earth than a person at the equator. Consequently a person at the North or South Pole weighs more there than he would at the equator. But unless he were a scientist checking on this fact, the difference would hardly matter, for an explorer at either pole would have far more important matters to concern him.

Explorers of the moon would have a real interest in their weight. On the moon a person would weigh just about one-sixth of his weight on the earth. The moon, being a much smaller object than the earth, attracts things to it with less force of gravity. On the other hand, an explorer on Jupiter would weigh much more than on the earth. Jupiter is a planet many times larger than the earth. It is, in fact, the largest of the planets. A person weighing 100 pounds on the earth would weigh 264 pounds on Jupiter. How much would you weigh if you were an explorer on Jupiter?

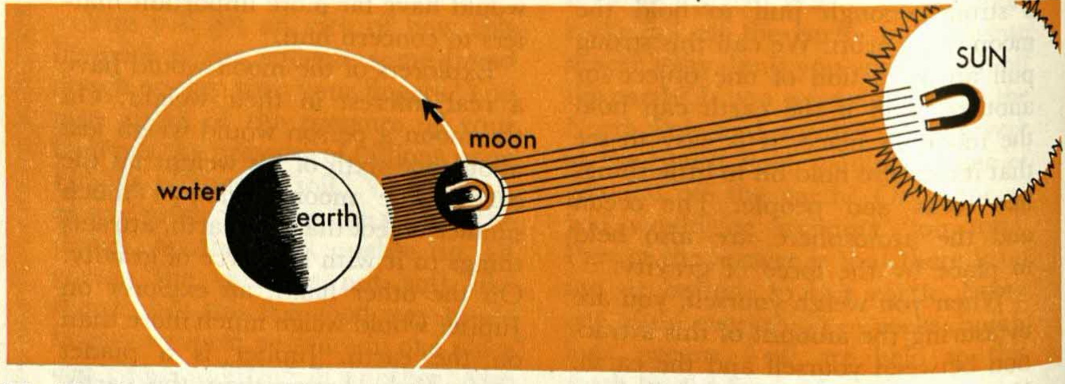
You do not need to leave the earth to notice the effects of the attraction of other heavenly bodies upon the earth. All you have to do is watch the rise and fall of the tides.



moderately high and low tides



highest high and lowest low tides ↑↓



74 The highest high tides and the lowest low tides take place when the sun and moon combine their pull upon the earth and its waters. At other times the tides are not so high or so low because the effects of the two pulls more or less balance each other.

The Tides

You know now that both the sun and the moon exert a pull upon the earth. But you may be surprised to learn that the moon has a greater effect on the tides than the sun has. This is so because the moon (although so much smaller than the sun) is much nearer to the earth. The sun, being 370 times as far away as the moon, has a smaller attraction for the earth in spite of its greater size. The pull of gravity depends not only upon the amount of material (mass) of the bodies but also upon the distance between them.

The pull of the sun and the moon on the earth has hardly any effect that you can notice on dry land. However, the water of the oceans can move much more freely, and the pull of the sun and the moon causes a regular change in water level that is easy to see. These changes in level of the oceans and of the water in harbors are called the tides. If you have ever visited a place on or near the seashore, you know that the water rises for about six hours and then falls away for about six hours twice each day. When the tide is out (low) along our Atlantic seacoast, it is also out along some other coast halfway around the world. One-quarter of the way around the world in either direction you would find high tides at the same moment. The diagram in Fig. 74 helps make this clear.

Tides are important to anyone who goes to sea in a ship, whether it is an ocean liner or a rowboat. Every once in a while you hear of some unlucky person who has been swept away by tidal currents. Usually it is because this person did not know about them or did not know how strong the currents were. Never risk your life in tidewater unless you are sure you are strong enough to swim or row or paddle back to shore against the current. For safety's sake always swim where there are lifeguards and stay within the area they are watching.

Large ocean liners can enter and leave certain harbors only at high tide. Shell fishermen work along the shore harvesting clams and oysters when the tide is low. Tides also help to keep our harbors clean, but they often litter our bathing beaches with debris from ships and broken piers, and with garbage thrown overboard far out at sea.

The greatest difference in water level between high and low tide occurs at *spring tide;* the least at *neap tide.* These special tides are caused by the changing positions of the moon and the sun in relation to the earth. These changes take place about once a month, and so the name spring tide is a poor one. We have spring tides monthly, not just in the springtime. It may help you to understand these special tides better if you look at figures such as those in the table, showing the tide levels at a place where great changes take place between high tide and low tide.

TABLE 4 Tide Levels

Tide	*High-Water Mark (in feet)*	*Low-Water Mark (in feet)*	*Difference (in feet)*
Normal	34	8	26
Neap	27	12	15
Spring	42	5	37

When the moon is new or full, it is most nearly on a straight line with the earth and sun. Both moon and sun exert a pull. Study Fig. 74 carefully. You will be able to see why the highest and lowest tides happen when the sun, earth, and moon are in line. You will begin to see how the forces of gravity of the sun and the moon are working together to make our spring tides.

Picture the moon at the first or third quarter position. Now the moon's pull is responsible for a medium high tide in spite of the pull of the sun in another direction. This medium tide is a neap tide. Can you see from Fig. 74 why these neap tides are not as high or as low as those which take place when the sun and moon are pulling together?

It would be interesting to study the tide table for some seacoast city and see if you can find a relationship between the kind of tide and the phases of the moon. Both facts are given in some almanacs. All you have to do is to find and compare them.

Would You Leave Home?

You see that this earth — our home — is a planet in space under the control of great forces like gravity.

Is man forever to be chained to the earth by gravity? Will he ever be able to visit other planets? In short, can he go out into space? Can he visit the moon, only a short 240,000 miles away? Let us look at the moon and see.

OUR MOON

About ninety years ago the Frenchman, Jules Verne, wrote his famous story, *From the Earth to the Moon.* Ever since, the idea of visiting the moon has had great appeal. Many people have put their names on a waiting list (see p. 185) to be passengers aboard the first rocket ships to make the trip. Even though rockets are now being shot higher and higher into the sky, it seems that these would-be space travelers are going to have quite a long wait. Still it is interesting to think about the moon. What sort of heavenly body is this nearest neighbor in the sky? What might we find on a trip to the moon?

Looking at the Moon

Your target for tonight is the moon. It is an excellent object to watch whenever it is in the sky. Because it is so near, it seems as big as the sun, but it is only 2,160 miles in diameter. That is about one-quarter of the earth's diameter. The moon is close to the earth — only about 240,000 miles away on the average, or about ten times as far as the distance around the earth at the equator. Nevertheless, it will take good shooting to send a rocket to the moon.

The scientist who aims a rocket at the moon will have to figure the path of the rocket and also the path of the moon. Both will be moving rapidly through space during the time the rocket is in flight. The path of the moon is known. Astronomers have known for many years how to figure its exact position in the sky.

You will probably be surprised to find out how much the position of the moon changes from night to night. To find out, watch the moon every night for a month. Of course, you will not be able to see the moon every night, but watch several nights in a row. Be sure you observe it at the same time on each of these nights, say 9 P.M. Where does the moon rise? Where does it set?

During a single night you will see the moon rise in the east and set in the west. Notice that it rises and sets about 51 minutes later each night than the night before.

The Journey of the Moon

To "see" how the moon is really traveling around the earth, you will need to do a simple stunt. For this

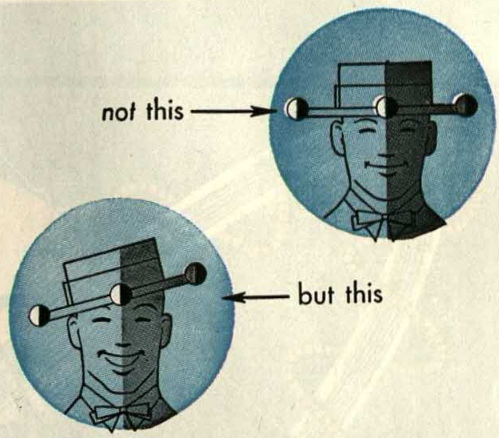
you will need a hat with a brim that can be tilted so that it will encircle the crown at an angle of about 5 degrees (Fig. 75). If you think of the crown as the earth, the circle made by the brim is the moon's orbit. As you remember, an orbit is the path an object in the sky takes around another object. The moon's orbit is its path around the earth.

Hold a ball at the edge of the hat brim and at your eye level, as in Fig. 75. If you move the ball all the way around the brim and back to its starting point, you have a good example of the way the moon travels on its orbit.

The time for the moon's entire trip is 29½ days, or about a month. In ancient times, this period of time was named for the moon and called a "monath." From this we got our word *month.* This kind of month is easy to keep track of even without a calendar because the appearance of the moon changes completely every 29½ days. These changes in appearance are known as the *phases* of the moon.

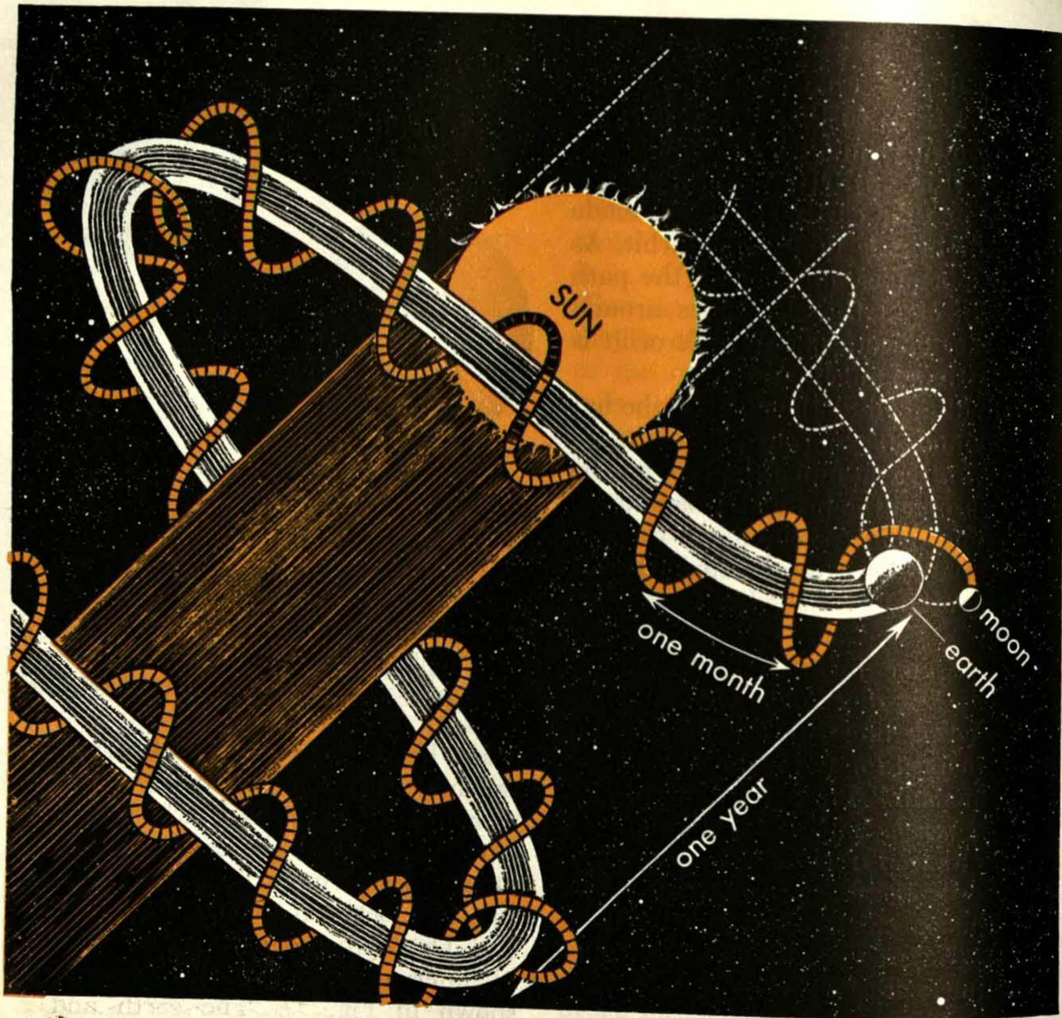
The Changing Phases of the Moon

The size and shape of the moon's face seem to us to change from night to night. To understand this we will have to look at the sun, the earth, and the moon from the point of view of an observer in space. Look at Fig. 76. It shows how each of these bodies is moving. The sun takes the earth and moon along with it and sheds its light on both. Half the earth and half the moon are lighted by the sun. The other sides of each are in the dark. If you follow the path of the moon, you will see that twice during a month the moon is nearly in line with the sun and the earth. At two other times the moon is at right angles to a line between the earth and the sun. The position of these three bodies at intervals of about 3½ days is shown in Fig. 77. The earth and moon always are half-lighted, half-dark, but to a person on earth the size of the lighted area on the moon seems to change. These are the moon's phases.



75 The orbit of the moon around the earth is tilted at an angle of about 5 degrees. This is enough to reduce the number of total eclipses and to cause important differences in the way the moon appears to us. Try it. Cut out a hat like the one shown, and explain how the tilt of the moon's orbit reduces the number of total eclipses.

To see how the moon's phases change, do this simple stunt. Turn on a bright light in an otherwise dark room. It is best to have no shade on the lamp. Now hold a tennis ball at arm's length. Turn slowly on your heel. If the lamp is bright enough, the ball may become almost invisible when you hold it between your eyes and the lamp. This is like phase 1 in Fig. 77, the *new moon* phase. The



76 This diagram (not drawn to scale) shows the motions of the sun, the earth, and the moon. Yes, the sun moves through space. As it does so, it pulls with it the earth, which revolves around it. The moon also moves, revolving around the earth.

side of the moon and of the ball turned toward us is dark at this phase. For this reason the new moon is often called "the dark of the moon." For a day or two we may be unable to see it, since the lighted side is turned away from us.

The next phase is shown as phase 2 in Fig. 77. The moon is shaped like a thin crescent. The cusps or "horns" of the crescent moon are turned away from the sun. This phase is never seen near midnight, but it may be seen before sunset. Often after dark at this phase the whole outline of the moon may be seen dimly lighted (by earthshine). Earthshine is sunlight reflected by the lighted half of the earth. This earthshine lights up the moon just as moonlight does the earth. You may hear people refer to this effect as the "old moon in the new moon's arms."

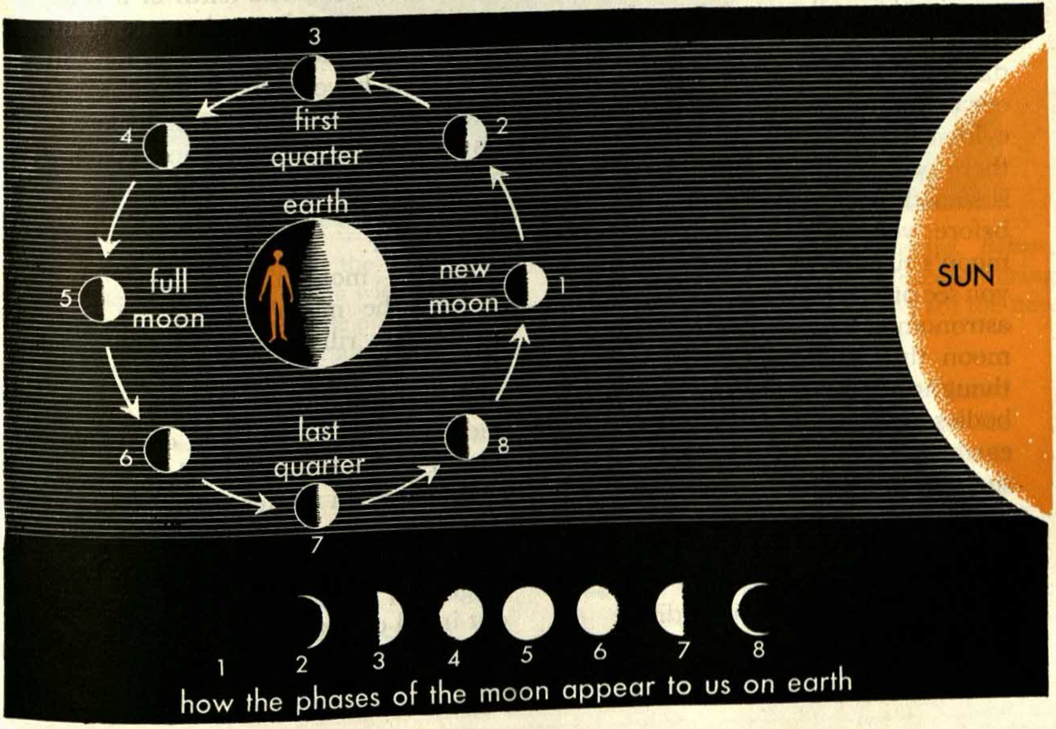
As the days go by, the entire face or disk of the moon becomes strongly lighted. When the moon is on the far side away from the sun, the sun's rays light up the side of the moon facing us. This is the beautiful *full moon* phase.

After the full moon, the line separating the dark half of the moon from the sunlit half slowly moves across the moon's surface. The size of the lighted area seems to wane (grow smaller). The shape once more becomes a crescent. As the moon revolves around the earth, therefore, it reflects in our direction different amounts of light from the sun. If you were to study photographs of the moon taken during one month, you would notice that they all showed one side. True, we see different amounts of the moon's surface during a month, but it is always the same surface. No one has ever seen the opposite side of the moon. How can this be?

The explanation is that as the moon revolves about the earth it is also rotating on its axis in the same period of time. Thus it always presents the same side toward us. Actually, because of the tilt of the moon's orbit and its slight wobbling, we can see at one time or another about 59% of the moon's surface. No one really knows what is on the other 41%.

It is not difficult to show how we happen to see just one side of the moon. Place a chair in the center of the room. Imagine it to be the earth. You will be the moon. Face

77 The reason the moon goes through phases may be understood by studying this diagram. At new moon the lighted half of the moon is on the side away from an observer on the earth. At full moon, we see the entire lighted half. How much do we see at first quarter? Why is it that the other side of the moon is not seen?



the chair. Continue to face it all the time while you walk completely around the chair. Notice that you have actually faced all four walls of the room during your trip. Facing all four walls is the same as rotating once. You, therefore, rotated once while you revolved once around the chair. The moon takes 29½ days to make one revolution around the earth.

One of the aims of the first explorers who visit the moon will be to bring back pictures of the unknown 41% of the moon's surface that no one has ever seen. What do you think it will be like?

ON THE MOON

If a rocket is ever built that is able to take a crew of explorers to the moon, it will have to be built to withstand a rough landing.

It will be useless to come down by parachute, for there is very little or no air above the moon's surface to support it. At least there will be no danger of the rocket's falling into an ocean on the moon. There is good evidence that there are no oceans there because there is no water. This is something you must have in mind before you look at a map of the moon's surface. Otherwise the names you see on the map may fool you. The astronomers who first looked at the moon through low-power telescopes thought the large, dark areas were bodies of water like the oceans on the earth. They gave these areas names such as the Sea of Showers and the Ocean of Tempests. On the moon you will probably not find any seas nor showers nor oceans nor tempests. What, then, would you find?

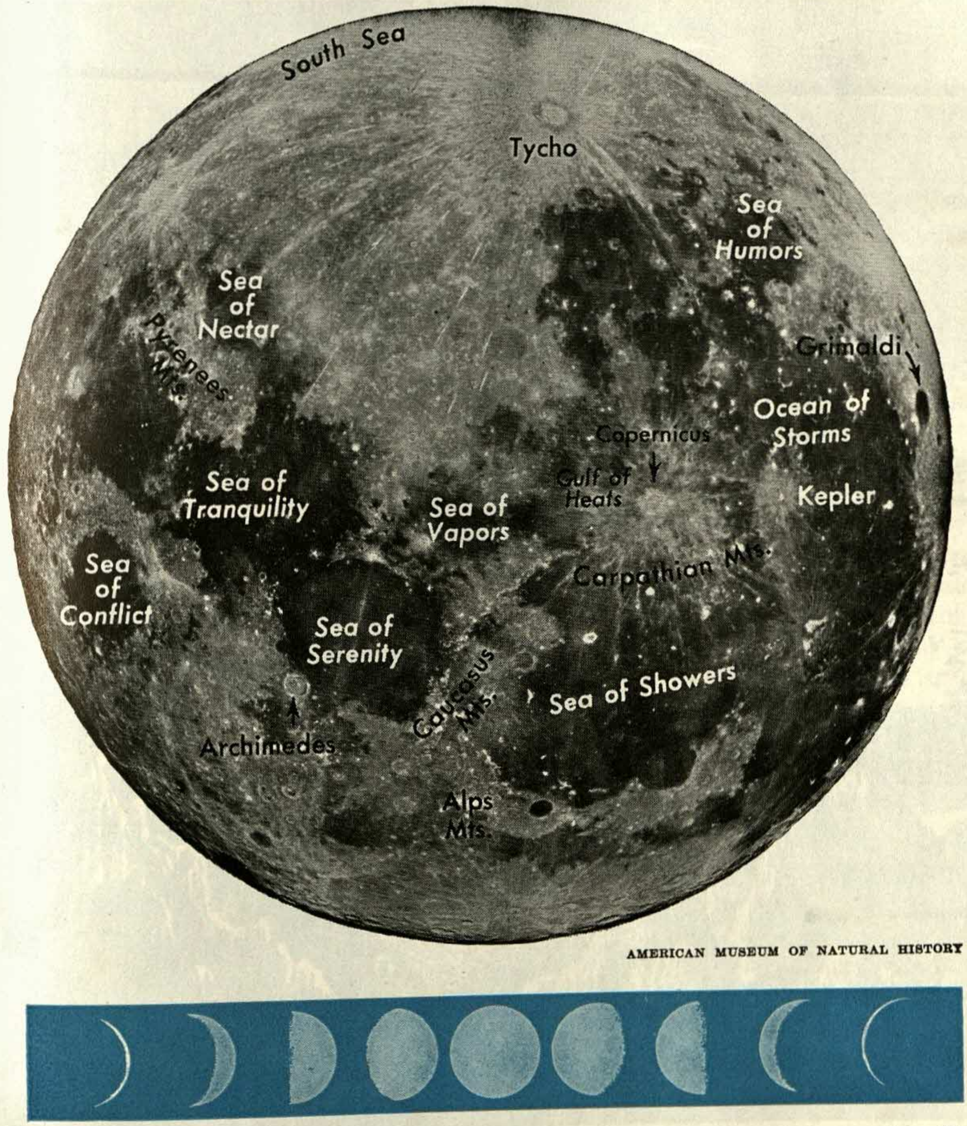
The Moon's Landscape

The mountains on the moon are unlike any on the earth. The mountains of the earth all show the effects of weathering, that is, changes caused by wind and rain, heat and cold. There is no weather on the moon. Therefore the mountains are rough and the stones sharp. There is no soil like ours on the moon, but there may be a thick layer of ashes from dead volcanoes.

There is no sign of volcanoes now active on the moon, but there are many craters. Some people think these may have been active volcanoes at one time. From the earth these great, round holes on the moon certainly look like the kind of craters made by volcanoes (Fig. 79).

The only other way to explain these craters is to say that they were made by great pieces of rock that fell onto the moon from somewhere in space. These craters range in size from small ones, one-tenth of a mile in diameter, to giants that are hundreds of miles across. Some craters on the moon have high mountains inside them. Others have smaller craters within their walls. These craters have been named for famous astronomers, for example, Copernicus and Kepler.

Besides mountains, plains, and craters, the moon's surface is also marked by rills and rays. The rills are narrow, deep trenches which are 10 to 300 miles long and about 2 miles wide. No one knows how deep they are. The markings called rays are even more of a mystery. They cast no shadows. Therefore, they are neither high nor low; that is, they are neither ridges nor rills. They seem to spread out in all directions from some of the



AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

78 *Top*, the landscape of the moon is a map of craters, plains, and mountains. *Bottom*, the phases of the moon begin with new moon. We cannot see the new moon (except during an eclipse of the sun) because only its dark side is toward us. A few days later we see the new crescent moon, and then in about two weeks we see the full moon.

craters. Explorers to the moon will certainly want to find out what the rays are and what made them.

Men on the Moon

Of late a great deal has been written by men of science about the way the moon will be visited and explored. If the moon is not explored within your lifetime, it won't be for lack of trying. The main trouble is that people are not sure that men can live through a trip to the moon even if rockets can be built to take them there. The dangers are real enough. On this point all agree.

79 A view of the sky from the moon shows the sun and the earth as a crescent shape. Note the rugged landscape of the moon's surface. Since the moon has no atmosphere, the sky would appear black even in the daytime, and the stars would be clearly seen.

Because the moon has very little or no air, men will not be able to stay alive unless they carry their own air supply in tanks on their backs. Our explorer will need an airtight suit to keep the air pressure on his body about the same as it is on the earth. This suit will have another use. It will protect him from the burning rays of the sun. Temperatures on the moon range from 214° F. by day to −243° F. at night.

On the moon there will be other strange things. A man on the moon will weigh about one-sixth as much as on the earth. He will hear no sounds except those he can make inside his space suit. He will have to talk to his crewmates by radio. He will have no water to drink unless he brings it with him, and then he must find a way to get it into his mouth. His food will have to be pre-cooked or raw because he will have no fire.

In answer to these problems, airtight living quarters will have to be built as fast as possible. Once inside a hut that has indoor conditions like those on the earth, an explorer could take off his space suit, eat, rest, and work. The plan is not impossible, but that it can be done by men in space suits remains to be seen. The United States Army, Navy, and Air Force are now at work testing men and materials to see whether it is possible to stay alive under space conditions. Until the day that man can safely explore the moon, we can go on learning more about it by watching it as it travels around us.

ECLIPSES BY AND OF THE MOON

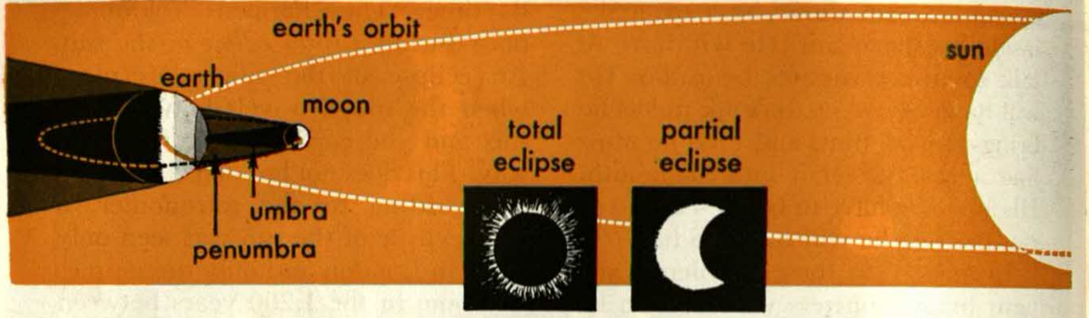
One of the strange things a man on the moon would see would be a black sky in which the stars would be visible even in the daytime (Fig. 79). This would be possible because there is no air on the moon. If there is no air, there is no airborne dust which on the earth scatters the sun's light. This scattered light gives us a blue daytime sky which acts like a screen, hiding the stars from our view.

Dimouts and Blackouts

Strangely enough, because of the moon, there are times when even on the earth you can see the stars in the daytime. This happens seldom — only during a total *eclipse* of the sun. An eclipse of the sun takes place when the moon travels between the sun and the earth in just the right way. This does not happen very often.

According to one astronomer, a total eclipse of the sun was seen only twice in London and only three times in Rome in the 1,200 years between 600 A.D. and 1800 A.D. In a total eclipse, the moon is directly between the earth and the sun so that the moon's shadow falls upon the earth (Fig. 80). The most recent total eclipse seen clearly in the United States was in 1932. One was also seen in northern cities about dawn on June 30, 1954. The next one in the United States will occur at sunrise in New England on October 2, 1959, but this will not be in a good position for study, as the sun will be very low in the sky. The next good total eclipse of the sun will be seen in the United States on July 20, 1963. It will last only one and a half minutes. The lucky people who will see this eclipse will have to be in New England. At that time newspapers will have maps to show just where the eclipse will be seen. Even so, do not count on seeing it, for clouds may hide the whole show. In that case, only those in airplanes above the clouds will be able to see it.

Suppose, however, that it is a bright and clear summer day. Then, if you are looking at the sun through a pair of heavily smoked glasses such as welders wear, you will note a dark object moving in along the western edge of the sun's disk. This is the moon moving rapidly. Within a half hour, the light will fade from the sky, as it does when a swift thunderstorm approaches. The sky



80 Partial and total eclipses of the sun occur when the moon is at a place in its orbit that allows its shadows to fall on a bit of the earth's surface. Viewers within the moon's penumbra see a partial eclipse. Those within the moon's umbra see a total eclipse of the sun.

will darken rapidly. Soon the sun will be completely hidden. The stars will come out. Tiny sparks of light will shine around the edge of the moon. These are known as Bailey's Beads. They are caused by the light of the sun shining through the valleys and rough places on the moon's surface. Then you will see a beautiful glow like a halo surround the dark disk of the moon. This halo is the sun's *corona* (Fig. 84). It is one of the most wonderful sights in nature.

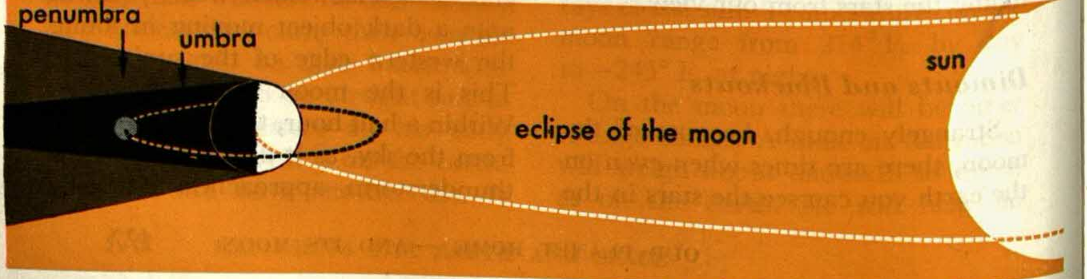
At the same time you may see tiny tongues of light which look like flames. These are called *prominences*, and they are not tiny. The largest measured have reached 1,056,000 miles beyond the sun's surface. Some may extend far beyond this.

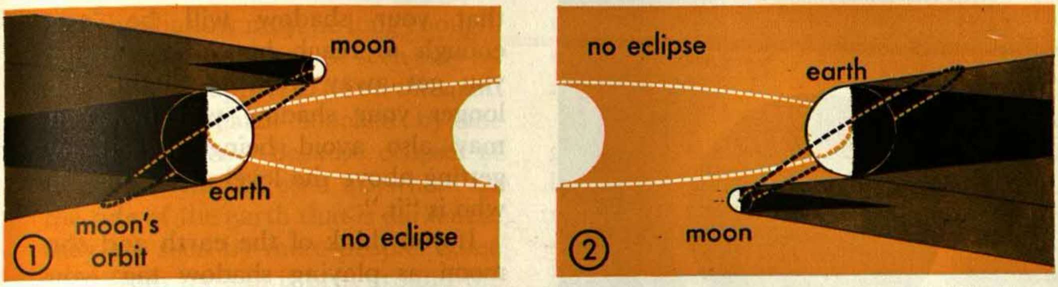
The moment of the total eclipse soon passes. It is never more than about 7½ minutes. In 1963 the time will be 1½ minutes. At the end of this time, the corona will disappear. Soon the blackout of the sun will become a dimout again. In a little while the eclipse will end. As you watch, the shadow of the moon will leave the earth and become lost in space (Fig. 84).

Another Eclipse

To see a total eclipse of the sun you have to be standing on the part of the earth touched by the *dark part* of the moon's shadow. This is called the *umbra* (UM-bruh). Notice in Fig. 80, however, that there is a light part of the shadow as well as a dark part. Should you be standing on a portion of the earth touched by the light part of the shadow, you would not see a

81 An eclipse of the moon takes place when the moon travels into the earth's shadow. In the earth's penumbra the moon is partially eclipsed, but in the earth's umbra the moon's eclipse is total.





82 Because of the tilt of the moon's orbit (see Fig. 75), the moon's shadow may fall (1) above the earth's surface or (2) below it. When this happens no eclipse will take place, even though the moon is between the sun and the earth.

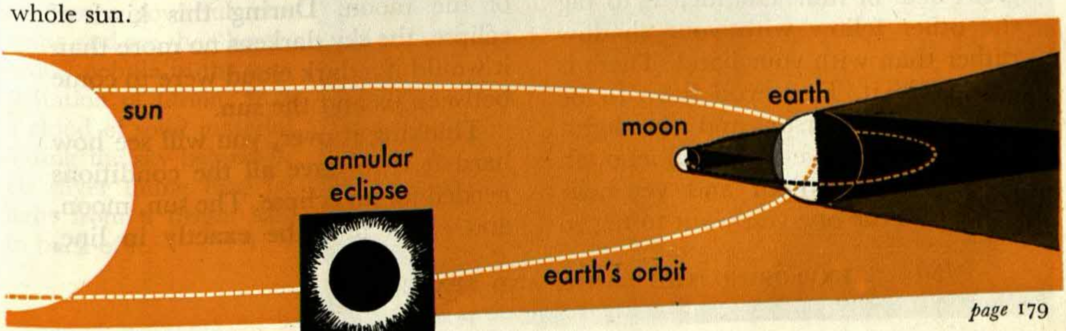
total eclipse. You would see only a partial eclipse. This partial eclipse may be seen in the portions of the earth on either side of the dark path of the moon's shadow, the umbra. The lighter part of the shadow is called the *penumbra* (peh-NUM-bruh).

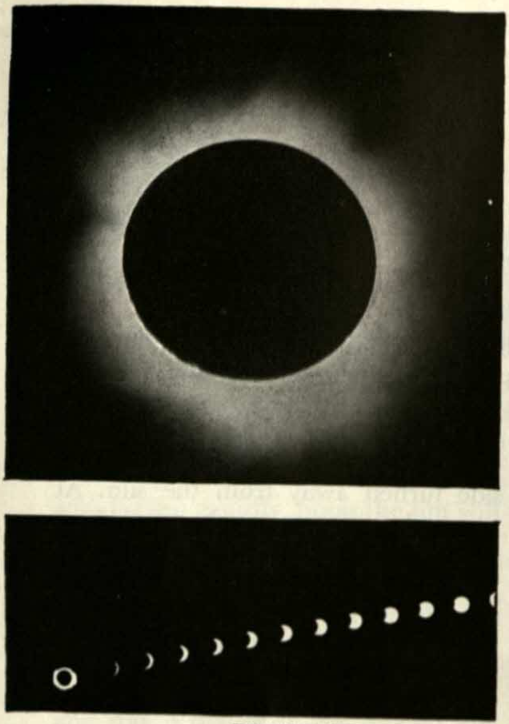
Perhaps you had not realized that there are light and dark shadows. It will not be necessary for you to wait for another solar eclipse to find out what they are. Just clench your fist. Hold it about four or five inches above a piece of white paper that is about two feet below a bright light bulb. See the two shadows on the paper. The darker one, the umbra, is inside. What is the outer, lighter shadow called?

The earth itself also casts an umbra and a penumbra into space from the side turned away from the sun. At times the moon travels into these shadows (Fig. 81). When the moon is in the penumbra of the earth's shadow, we see a partial eclipse of the moon. When the umbra of the earth's shadow covers the moon, we see a total eclipse of the moon. This is called a *lunar eclipse. Lunar* comes from the Latin word for moon.

You might reasonably suppose that there would be two eclipses a month. You might expect an eclipse of the sun at new moon, when the moon is between the earth and the sun. You might expect a lunar eclipse at full moon, when the earth is between the moon and the sun (Fig. 82). But this does not happen. There are several reasons why conditions for an eclipse of the moon or the sun are right only a few times each year. It is

83 An annular (ring) eclipse of the sun is seen when the moon is so near the sun that its umbra is not long enough to reach the earth. Then the moon appears too small to hide the whole sun.





HAYDEN PLANETARIUM, AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

84 *Top,* the sun's crown of light (its corona) is a glorious sight during the few moments of a total eclipse of the sun. *Bottom,* an eclipse of the sun begins (far right) and becomes total as the moon covers more and more of the sun's surface. Did you see the last eclipse on June 30, 1954?

as though the earth and the moon were playing shadow tag.

Shadow Tag

Have you ever played shadow tag under a street light? Those who play this game usually seem to be having a great deal of fun. The idea is to tag the other fellow with your shadow rather than with your hand. There is a trick to it. First, you have to be between the person and the light. Second, you have to be far enough away from the light and yet near enough to the one you want to tag so that your shadow will be long enough to reach him. The farther you get away from the light, the longer your shadow will be. You may also avoid being tagged by getting above the level of the person who is "it."

If you think of the earth and the moon as playing shadow tag, you will be able to understand why total eclipses happen so seldom. First, the earth, the moon, and the sun are nearly in a straight line only twice a month — at new moon and at full moon (Fig. 77).

In the second place, remember that the moon's orbit is tilted (Fig. 75), so the moon may be a bit above or below the earth at these two phases of the moon. If this happens the moon's shadow passes over or under rather than across the earth (Fig. 82). These bodies are in space and are seldom at the same level at the times when they are in line with each other and the sun.

In the third place, the earth and the moon travel in orbits that are not true circles (Fig. 86). Sometimes when the moon is too near the sun, its shadow is not long enough to tag the earth. Then the moon does not cause a total eclipse of the sun. Instead of a total eclipse of the sun we have an *annular* (AN-yoo-ler) eclipse (Fig. 83). In an annular eclipse the disk of the moon is too small to cover the sun. A ring (or *annulus* in Latin) of the sun shines out from around the black disk of the moon. During this kind of eclipse, the sky darkens no more than it would if a dark cloud were to come between us and the sun.

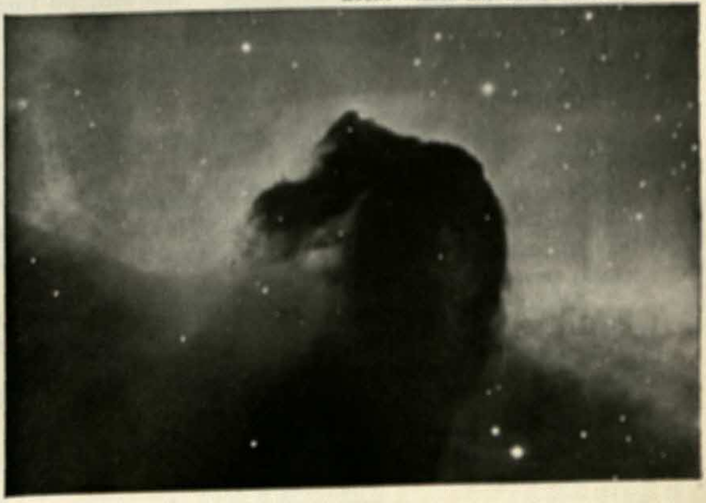
Thinking it over, you will see how hard it is to have all the conditions needed for an eclipse. The sun, moon, and earth must be exactly in line, and the shadow must be long enough. Eclipses of the sun can be seen only by people who happen to be on the small part of the earth touched by the moon's shadows. Because eclipses of the moon can be seen anywhere on the side of the earth that is darkened, they are seen by more people. Some light from the sun is bent around the earth by the earth's atmosphere. Therefore, during a lunar eclipse the moon never disappears. It just becomes a dark copper color. You can watch a lunar eclipse as safely as you can look at the moon itself with no protection for your eyes. Always remember, however, not to look at the sun even during an eclipse without protecting your eyes with welders' dark glasses or a darkly overexposed piece of film from which photographs are made. Ordinary sunglasses will not protect your eyes from direct sunlight.

The Moon — An Uninviting Satellite

Now you have some ideas about the moon, how it takes part in an eclipse, and what it would be like to pay it a visit. It is fascinating to see a motion picture of its surface or to watch its eclipses. We can hardly wait for someone to hit it with a well-aimed rocket.

Experiments now going on may give us a rocket with enough power to land on the moon. To do this the rocket must leave the earth at a speed of about seven miles per second. Rocket builders think they can make one within about twenty-five years which will have such great speed. Radar waves have already been sent to the moon and caught as they bounced back to the earth.

For the present you will have to be satisfied with looking at the moon through a telescope. If you have never done so, you have missed an exciting adventure. If someone owns a telescope in your neighborhood, he may let you look through it at the next full moon. An even better idea is to make your own telescope. There are directions for doing so in the book *Amateur Telescope Making* (p. 203). If you can't get a telescope, use a pair of strong field glasses (binoculars) to study the surface of the moon. You will see an uninviting land which men will some day explore, or die trying. What do you think are their chances of success?



MOUNT WILSON AND PALOMAR OBSERVATORIES

85 If you decide to go into astronomy as a career, you may some day use a powerful telescope and see the "horsehead" nebula in the constellation of Orion. It is a cloud of solid material hiding the sky behind it. Its silver lining may be light from a bright star in back of it.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

annular eclipse
corona
phases of the moon
total eclipse
prominences
umbra
penumbra
lunar eclipse
partial eclipse
seismograph
fault
weathering and erosion
gravity
spring tides
neap tides

1. the highest high tides and the lowest low tides
2. an extremely sensitive instrument used to detect earthquakes
3. the gradual destruction of things exposed to wind, rain, and changes of temperature
4. the force that holds everything to the earth
5. a bright white light which surrounds the moon for a few seconds when the sun is totally eclipsed by the moon
6. the lighter part of a shadow
7. an eclipse of the sun in which a ring of the sun appears around the black disk of the moon
8. flamelike tongues of light that appear to rise from the surface of the sun while it is being eclipsed by the moon
9. changes in the appearance of the moon which repeat every 29½ days
10. the darker part of a shadow
11. the complete hiding of one heavenly body by another
12. the phase of the moon when it is between the earth and the sun
13. the incomplete hiding or darkening of one heavenly body by another
14. tides during which there is very little change in the level of the water between high tide and low tide
15. a long crack in rock, on one side of which masses of rock have slipped downward

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with a correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. You are standing at the bottom of an ocean of . . . .
2. . . . show that the interior of the earth is still very hot. Earthquakes usually occur where there are . . . in the earth. To locate an earthquake from a distant point, scientists use an instrument called a . . . .
3. One of the major forces causing changes in the earth is gravity, the laws of which were first stated by . . . . This force accounts for the . . . on the earth which are caused by the pull of the sun and the . . . .
4. The moon is our nearest sky neighbor, being only . . . miles away from the earth.

5. The moon is only . . . miles in diameter.

6. The moon travels around the earth once every . . . days and goes through a complete change of phase in . . . days.

7. Only about . . . % of the moon's surface has been seen by man.

8. The moon appears to rise in the . . . and each night it rises about . . . minutes later than it did on the previous night.

9. We cannot see the moon when it is exactly at the . . . phase except when it is causing an eclipse of the sun.

10. We see the moon because it . . . light from the sun.

11. The chief cause of earthquakes is the . . . of rocks where there is a . . . .

12. Ocean harbors have . . . because of the pull of the sun and the moon.

GOING FURTHER

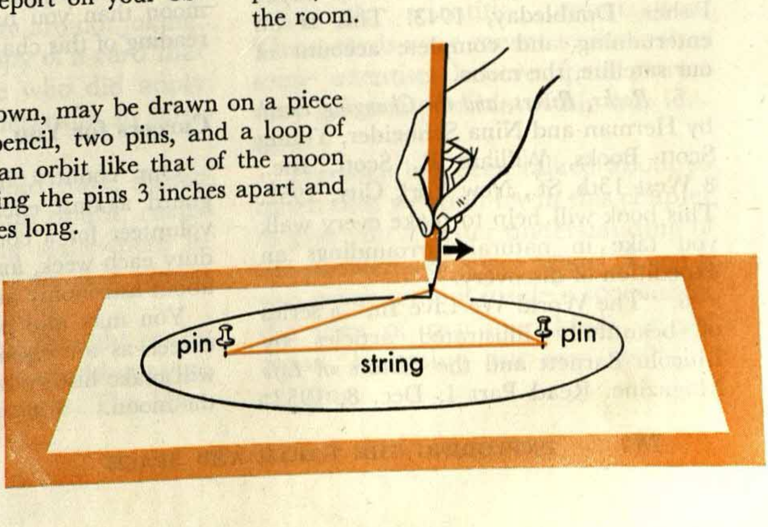
In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Testing gravity.* Find two things of the same size but of different weights. You can take two blocks of wood of the same size and in one of them drill a hole, and fill the hole with lead. Now carry both blocks to the top of a stepladder and roll them both off a board at the same time. Observe whether one hits the ground before the other, or whether they both hit the ground at the same time. What do you conclude? Repeat this experiment with other objects and with the same objects dropped from different heights. Give a full report on your observations.

2. *The moon's orbit.* Make a model showing the relation of the moon and its orbit to the earth. Use it to explain why we do not have eclipses more often. You can draw the shape of the moon's orbit on paper by holding your pencil as in Fig. 86.

3. *Sizing up the moon.* Although the moon is only 2,160 miles in diameter and the sun is about 864,000 miles in diameter, the moon seems to be about the same size as the sun as we see them in the sky. To understand how a small object can hide a larger one, hold a penny close to your eye. See how it completely hides much bigger objects across the room.

86 An ellipse, as shown, may be drawn on a piece of paper by using a pencil, two pins, and a loop of string. The shape of an orbit like that of the moon can be drawn by setting the pins 3 inches apart and using a loop 5½ inches long.



Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Why are the forces of weathering and erosion able to cause greater total destruction than earthquakes and volcanoes?

2. Give your opinion of the statement, "Nothing is changeless except change."

3. The diameter of the moon is only one-quarter the diameter of the earth. How then is it possible for the moon to eclipse the sun, whose diameter is more than a hundred times that of the earth?

4. Why will it be difficult to send a crew of men to explore the moon?

5. Why is the expression "an elastic shadow" a good one to use to describe the moon's shadow?

Adding to Your Library

1. "Last Days of St. Pierre" by Fairfax Downey in *Disaster Fighters*, Putnam, 1938. This is a vivid account of the violent and sudden death that follows in the wake of a volcanic eruption.

2. *The Earth* by Chester A. Reeds, University Society, Professional Building, Ridgewood, N. J., 1931, is a very thorough account of the earth's evolution.

3. *Earthquakes* by Chester A. Reeds, American Museum of Natural History Guide Leaflet 85. This is reading that will hold your interest.

4. *The Story of the Moon* by Clyde Fisher, Doubleday, 1943. This is an entertaining and complete account of our satellite, the moon.

5. *Rocks, Rivers, and the Changing Earth* by Herman and Nina Schneider, Young Scott Books, William R. Scott, Inc., 8 West 13th St., New York City, 1952. This book will help to make every walk you take in natural surroundings an expedition of discovery.

6. "The World We Live In," a series of beautifully illustrated articles by Lincoln Barnett and the editors of *Life* Magazine. Read Part I, Dec. 8, 1952; Part II, Feb. 9, 1953; and Part III, April 13, 1953, *Life* Magazine.

7. *The Moon* by George Gamow, Henry Schuman, 20 East 70th St., New York, 1953. This gives some of the history of our knowledge of the moon and many facts about the moon, and it takes stock of various ideas about sending an expedition to the moon. You may need your dictionary.

8. *From the Earth to the Moon* by Jules Verne. *The First Men in the Moon* by H. G. Wells. *The Adventures of Hans Pfalls* by Edgar Allan Poe. Read these books for fun. You will have to look for these books in the library under "Fiction," for they are not science books but science fiction. Look for errors of fact as you read.

9. "Man on the Moon," Part I, Oct. 18, 1952; Part II, Oct. 25, 1952, issues of *Collier's* Magazine by Dr. Fred L. Whipple and Dr. Wernher von Braun. These are two of a series of articles that have been written by these authors, who are the leaders among a group of scientists now trying to get support for their ideas on space travel.

A Bit of Research

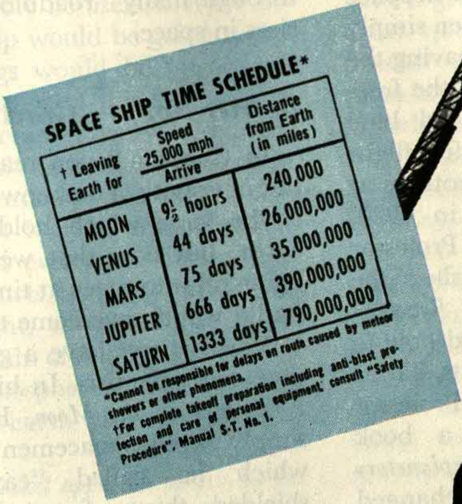
You can become an authority on the moon simply by watching it and making notes about its position, phases, and motion. Keep a notebook of facts and observations. You will be surprised how much more there is to learn about the moon than you have learned from the reading of this chapter.

Careers for You

Our country needs *sky watchers* to guard against enemy attack. You can volunteer for a couple of hours of such duty each week, and learn a great deal about astronomy at the same time.

You may also prepare yourself for a career as an *engineer* or *astronomer* who will make history by sending a rocket to the moon.

CHAPTER 9

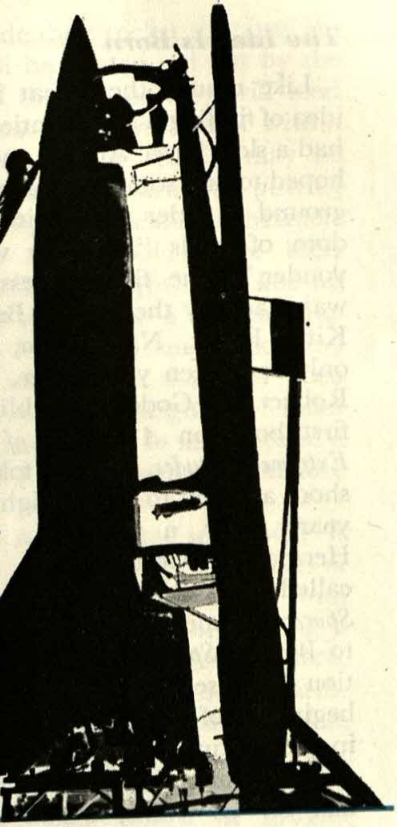


SPACE SHIP TIME SCHEDULE*

† Leaving Earth for	Speed 25,000 mph Arrive	Distance from Earth (in miles)
MOON	9½ hours	240,000
VENUS	44 days	26,000,000
MARS	75 days	35,000,000
JUPITER	666 days	390,000,000
SATURN	1333 days	790,000,000

*Cannot be responsible for delays en route caused by meteor showers or other phenomena.

†For complete takeoff preparation including anti-blast protection and care of personal equipment, consult "Safety Procedure", Manual S-T. No. 1.



Space, Our New Frontier

Nine and one-half hours to the moon, the space time schedule above tells you. Forty-four days to Venus. Imaginary? Will it happen? Within your own lifetime you may know. The evidence is not yet in.

WOULD YOU LIKE to apply for a trip to the moon? No, we are not joking. Above is an exact copy of a card that was given to people who did apply at the Hayden Planetarium in New York City.

Hundreds of people have signed these cards. Many, no doubt, really hope to go traveling somewhere in space and not merely sit in a planetarium armchair to do it.

If this were a stunt thought up by a fiction magazine, we would not give the trip a second thought. The Hayden Planetarium, however, is a highly respected, scientific organization. These cards were meant to show that some scientists believe space travel may become possible within our lifetime.

The idea has been talked about so much that we shall try in this chapter to give you a better understanding of the problems of space travel. Even if you never set foot inside a space ship, the idea of reaching Mars or the moon, by going out into space, is exciting.

The Idea Is Born

Like many other great ideas, the idea of finding a new frontier in space had a slow birth. At first, men simply hoped to find some way of leaving the ground in order to fly with the freedom of birds "into the wild blue yonder." The first successful flight was made by the Wright Brothers at Kitty Hawk, N.C. Then, in 1920, only seventeen years later, Professor Robert H. Goddard published the first book on *A Method of Reaching Extreme Altitudes*. In it he told how to shoot a rocket to great heights. Three years later a German, Professor Hermann Oberth, wrote a book called *The Rocket into Interplanetary Space*, a name that was later changed to *Ways to Space Travel*. The publication of these two books marked the beginning of serious scientific interest in the conquest of space.

Meanwhile the writers of fiction, like H. G. Wells, began to write books such as his *War of the Worlds*. Today there are many stories, motion pictures, TV programs, and comic strips based on the theme of adventure in space. Since you probably enjoy these anyway, why not use them as an exercise to test your ability to tell fact from fiction? The next time you come upon this kind of tale, make two lists, one of the "facts" which you are sure of and another of the "fancies" which you have reason to doubt. In one recent motion picture of this kind, we saw about a dozen things that could not be so. The facts you have learned in Chapters 7 and 8 were brushed aside. When man does succeed in getting out into space, he will do so by using, not by ignoring, the basic laws of science. This chapter will point out some of the problems that those who try to go out into space will have to meet. To get out into space, man will have to get through many "roadblocks" or barriers in space.

Barrier No. 1 — Gravity

In Chapter 8 you read about the law of gravity. You know that gravity is the force which holds us to the earth. But now that we *want* to go flying off into space at times, we must find a way to overcome this force.

Story writers have a great advantage over scientists. In his story, *The First Men in the Moon*, H. G. Wells simply gave his spacemen a substance which he called "cavorite." It shielded things from the pull of gravity by making a "gravitational shadow." Anyone behind a shield of "cavorite" could go up or down as he wished. That is fine for a story, but scientists know that there is no way to make a substance like "cavorite."

How then shall we escape from the force of gravity when we want to fly off into space? There is only one way to do it. Get a force to work in an opposite direction. No one has been able to do this fully as yet, but at least there is no scientific objection to the idea. You will learn in this chapter what has been done up to now.

After we solve the problem of escaping from the force of gravity that holds us to the earth, we will still have other gravity problems to solve. Remember, the places we might visit in space — the moon, Venus, Mars, or some other place — also have gravity. How are we to land our spacemen and spaceship safely? If we put wings on our rocket ship, they would be useless for gliding to a safe landing on the moon or Mars because these bodies have little or no atmosphere. Even on Venus, which has a very heavy atmosphere, wings would probably be useless. Why? Because our ship would be going so fast that its wings would be burned off by the resistance of this atmosphere. For similar reasons we would probably be unable to land our ship or its crew by parachute. No rocket that has been shot 50 miles or more above the earth has ever come back safely, with all its parts, by parachute. From such a height, no parachute could stand the strain of falling through the earth's atmosphere. The rockets would fall to earth with a tremendous thud.

A *reverse-rocket approach* seems to be the answer. This means using the rocket motors to produce a force that will allow the spaceship to come down slowly, *tail* first to a more or less gentle landing. This will be very hard to do.

Let us suppose that a landing on the moon or a planet has been made. We still have to think about gravity, if our spacemen are ever to return to the earth. First, they must get away from the moon or planet on which they have landed. Leaving the moon would be at least six times as easy as leaving the earth because the moon's gravity is only one-sixth of the earth's (p. 167). Even a take-off from Mars would be easier than from the earth because Mars has less gravity than the earth. Our spacemen had better stay away from Jupiter because its force of gravity exerts a pull 2.64 times as great as Earth's.

Second, on the return trip there is still the pull of the earth's gravity to be overcome gradually. If our spacemen allow gravity to pull them back too fast, either they will be roasted to death inside their rocket (because the rocket will be heated red hot by the friction of the air) or they will land with a great crash on land or with a great splash in the sea. It may be possible to land the crew by putting them into separate landing containers in which they would leave their spaceship. These might be picked up by rescue ships after a sea landing. In May, 1952, two small monkeys and two white mice that had been shot in a rocket to a height of 35 miles were returned safely to the earth in a section of a rocket with a parachute attached.

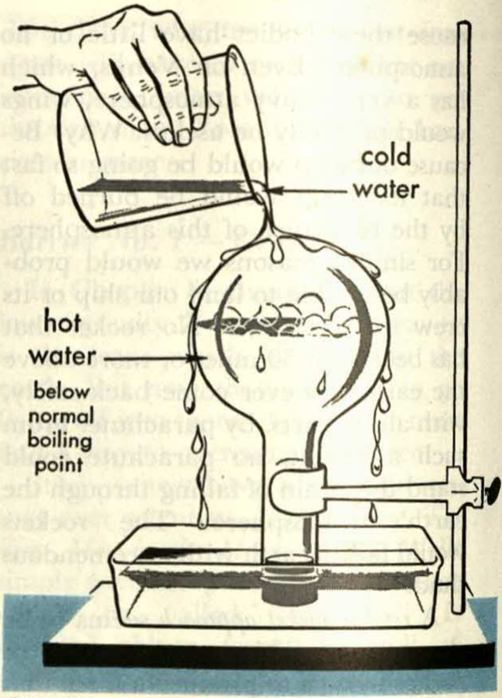
Let us suppose that some way is found to take care of the force of gravity at the point of take-off from the earth, at the point of making a safe landing on the object in space, and in returning safely to the earth. Can we now forget about the problem of gravity?

Unfortunately we cannot. For in overcoming the effects of gravity upon the spaceship, we have made its crew weightless. For some time doctors of the United States Air Force's Department of Space Medicine and other scientists have been experimenting with men and animals to find out what *weightlessness* will do to the crew of a spaceship. Since the doctors have no spaceships, they use jet airplanes flying special diving paths. In such planes, pilots have put themselves into a state of weightlessness for about a minute at a time. This is not long enough to find out exactly what it would be like to be weightless for hours or days in a rocket spaceship, but it shows that the Air Force knows weightlessness is an important problem to solve before any real space travel can begin. It is only one of many problems that we must think about when we speak of the human being as a space traveler.

Barrier No. 2 — The Human Factor

What is this feeling of weightlessness? Most of us have at some time had an experience with it, and most of us did not enjoy it. It is the feeling you have when you fall freely without any support. Have you ever tried to sit down on a chair that wasn't there? Have you ever gone down in a speedy elevator? Have you ever fallen backward off a 20-foot diving board? If you have had these experiences, you have known what it is to be weightless for an instant. How would you like to have that feeling for minutes or hours at a time when your life and the lives of your companions depended upon your being able to do a difficult job perfectly? At present, the opinion of doctors is that after a tough training 5 men out of every 1,000 who apply may be able to become space travelers. Why will so few be able to make the grade?

First, a spaceman must not be too tall or too short. About 5 feet, 10 or 11 inches is right. He must be under 36 years of age. He should be strong, in perfect health, and weigh a bit less than average. Of course he must have a fine education with special training in medicine, engineering, astronomy, and navigation. Moreover, he must be a cool, calm, and well-mannered person, one who can live easily and well with other men, all of whom will be in danger every second. For a better idea of the kind of man who will fly spaceships and the perils he will face, we suggest that you read *Man in Space* by Dr. Heinz Haber (see "Adding to Your Library," p. 200).



87 Water boils below 212° F. when the pressure on its surface is lowered. Cooling changes the steam inside the flask to water. The water takes up less space than the steam. The pressure becomes less, and the water boils under the lower pressure.

What are some of the bodily perils spacemen will face? One peril is the danger of being in an airless region. You know, of course, that even airplane pilots who fly very high breathe oxygen from tanks to stay alive (p. 147). We must give our spacemen oxygen mixed with helium to breathe. Oxygen alone will make spacemen dizzy. On earth or near its surface we find the natural mixture of about 20% oxygen and 80% nitrogen just right. But nitrogen can dissolve in our blood. If we enter a region of lower-than-normal air pressure, the nitrogen leaves the blood in a hurry, and the blood is filled with tiny bubbles. We cannot stand having our blood fizz in our bodies like soda pop.

So instead of nitrogen we use helium to mix with the oxygen. Helium does not dissolve in our blood. Thus we will be able to keep a spaceman's blood from fizzing.

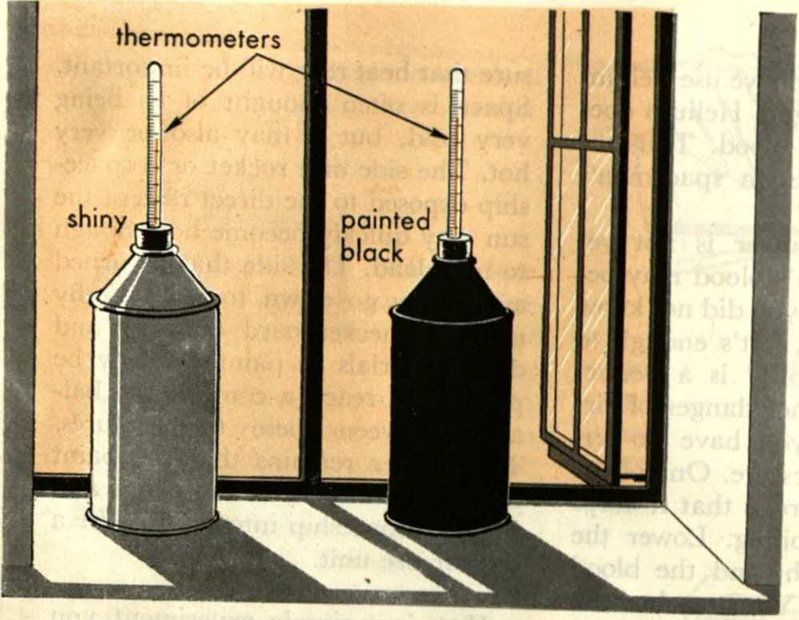
However, the danger is not yet past. The spaceman's blood may begin to boil. Perhaps you did not know that the expression, "It's enough to make the blood boil!" is a perfect description of another danger of airless space. When you have no air, you have no air pressure. One of the values of air pressure is that it keeps our blood from boiling. Lower the air pressure enough, and the blood may begin to boil. Your teacher can show you the effect of lowered pressure on the boiling point of water. We say "your teacher" because he will know how to show you this without danger from broken glass. He will be sure to use a round-bottom flask as shown in Fig. 87, and he will be sure the flask has no weak spot. As he pours cold water over the upturned bottom of the flask, he cools it. This lowers the pressure inside the flask. Does the water which was not boiling begin to boil?

Most of the spacemen and women you see in the comic books wear little more than a helmet and an attractive circus costume. A real spaceman will have to wear a rugged, protective spacesuit. This suit, which was invented for the United States Navy, will protect a spaceman from airlessness, that is, lack of oxygen and lack of air pressure.

A spaceman's suit will have other uses. It will protect the wearer from the sun's rays. We do not know just how dangerous these rays may be in space, because on the earth the blanket of air that is our atmosphere shields us from most of them. We are sure that heat rays will be important. Space is often thought of as being very cold, but it may also be very hot. The side of a rocket or a spaceship exposed to the direct rays of the sun may quickly become hot enough to melt lead. The side that is turned away may go down to −60° F. By using a checkerboard of shiny and dark materials or paints, it may be possible to reach a comfortable balance between these temperatures. The danger remains that the paint may peel off in the wrong places and turn the spaceship into an oven or a deep-freeze unit.

Here is a simple experiment you can try. Get two tin cans of the same size. Call one A, the other B. The outside of can B is painted black. Mount thermometers in each, as shown in Fig. 88. Now begin a series of tests. First, put the cans in a sunny window. The temperature on both thermometers should be the same at the start of the test. Make a note of this starting temperature. Do the thermometers remain at the same temperature after 20 minutes in the sun's rays? Which thermometer now has the higher reading? Why? One conclusion you may get from your experiment is that the color of the cans is important.

Among the problems dealing with the human being as a space traveler, there is the problem of space vision. On the earth most of the things we see are lighted fairly evenly. Have you ever come out of a darkened room into the bright sunlight? If so, you know how suddenly blinded you were. Now what has this to do with space vision? In space there is no soft lighting. The shadows are inky black,



88 The temperature inside these cans depends upon the color of the paint. Which absorbs more heat — a dark or a shiny can? Try this yourself.

and the sky is black, but the sunlight is direct and blinding.

Suppose a spaceman, having safely landed on another planet, is working outside his ship. If he happens to glance from a dark spot where he is trying to do some exact work to a polished spot from which the sunlight is being reflected as from a bright mirror, the chances are he will be painfully blinded for a time. How many such shocks can human eyes withstand? We do not know the answer. Don't use your own eyes to find out. Never do anything to your eyes that may injure them.

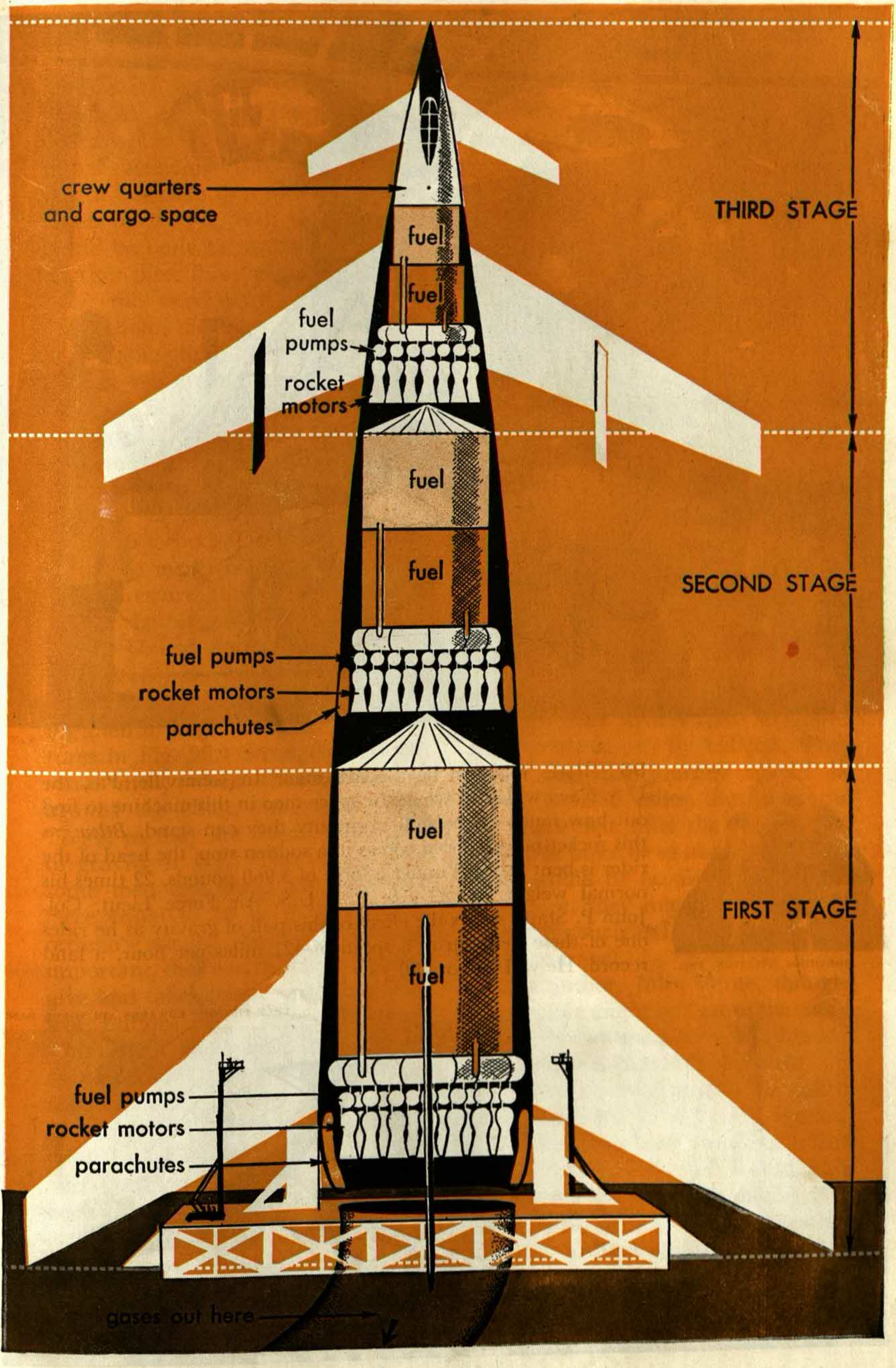
How many more things must we include in thinking of the human being in space? There are no doubt many others, but we will mention just one more, and it is really important. Spacemen must be able to withstand the great, sudden *changes* in speed during the climb at take-off and again just before landing.

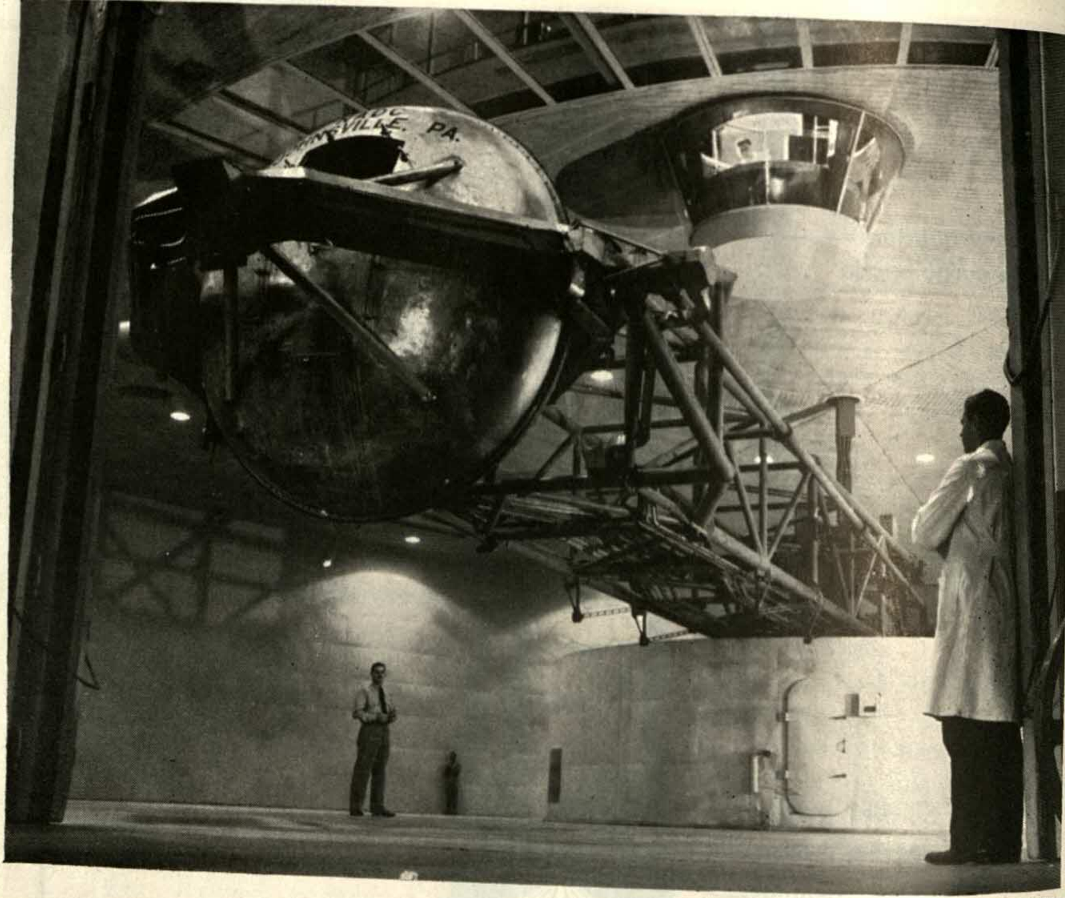
To explain this we will have to use a word that may be new to you. It is *acceleration* (ak-sel-uh-RAY-shun). Acceleration means the change in speed when anything is made to go faster. Your father steps on the *accelerator* to increase his car's speed.

A spaceship, at the moment of its take-off from a standing start, has a speed of 0 miles per hour. If it has to be traveling at 25,000 miles per hour within 300 seconds (5 minutes), its acceleration — its change in speed — is going to be so great that no man may be able to "take it" and remain alive. This speed of 25,000 miles per hour is the rate at which a spaceship must travel to escape from the pull of the earth's gravity.

It may not be necessary for some spaceships leaving the earth ever to go as fast as this because they will not be going directly to the moon or to a

89 Three-stage rockets like this one are still found only on the drawing boards of would-be space explorers. If successful, a rocket of this kind could carry a crew to a space station. A few scientists believe a space station will be built before the end of this century. (Adapted from a drawing by Rolf Klep from *Across the Space Frontier*, edited by Cornelius Ryan, published by the Viking Press.)


crew quarters and cargo space
fuel
fuel
fuel pumps
rocket motors
THIRD STAGE
fuel
fuel
fuel pumps
rocket motors
parachutes
SECOND STAGE
fuel
fuel
FIRST STAGE
fuel pumps
rocket motors
parachutes
gases out here

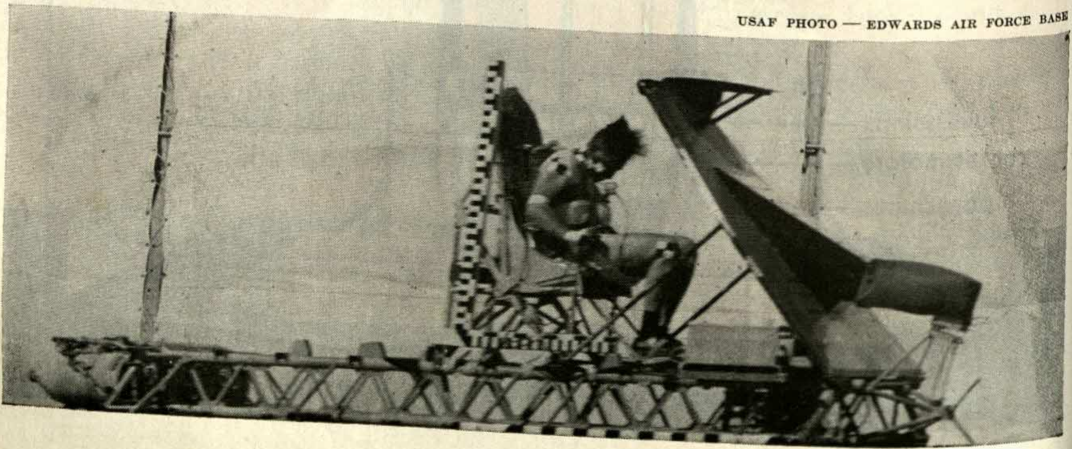


U.S. NAVY

NORTHROP AVIATION, INC.

90 *Above*, Want to be a space man? In Johnsville, Pa., the U.S. Navy whirls its would-be space men in this machine to find out how much of the pull of gravity they can stand. *Below*, as this rocket-powered sled comes to a sudden stop, the head of the rider is bent forward under a force of 3,960 pounds, 22 times his normal weight (or 22 *g*'s). *Left*, U.S. Air Force Lieut. Col. John P. Stapp shows the effect of this pull of gravity as he rides one of these sleds up to a speed of 421 miles per hour, a land record. He will try for 100 *g*'s.

USAF PHOTO — EDWARDS AIR FORCE BASE



planet. They may go first to a space station. Therefore, a speed of 15,000 to 16,000 miles per hour leaving the earth would be enough to reach the space station. Also, the take-off might be made in a rocket ship with three parts (Fig. 89), so that speed could be built up in three stages.

After these three stages of acceleration, the third part of the rocket, which holds the crew, will continue to rise to a height of 1,075 miles without getting more speed. In fact, it will have to be slowed a bit to 15,840 miles per hour in order to stay at this height above the earth. This slowing up, which is called *deceleration* (the opposite of acceleration), will take about 15 seconds. During this change of speed, men's bodies will have to stand pressures of 9 to 10 times their weight. Is this possible?

The United States Navy and the Air Force have been trying to find the answer to this question by whirling men in huge machines. (See pictures in Fig. 90.) Strangely enough, some men, when the pressure is against the chest, can stand 10 to 17 *g*'s, as they are called. (The pull of gravity is 1 *g*). This means that some men can stand the pull of a force equal to 10 to 17 times their ordinary weight. And what is more important, they can still think clearly, give and take orders, and move control buttons with their fingertips. This is an important finding, for, as you know, pilots of fast-moving airplanes often black out under only 2½ to 5 *g*'s. A blackout is like a faint; in a blackout you lose control over your body. It is as if you had been knocked out by a blow, without feeling the blow. You can understand why a blackout is dangerous to a pilot, his passengers, and his ship.

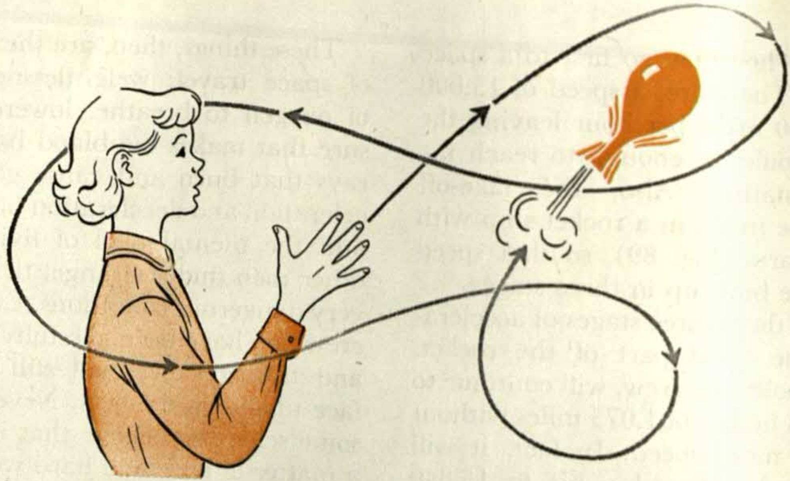
These things, then, are the dangers of space travel: weightlessness, lack of oxygen to breathe, lowered pressure that makes the blood boil, sun's rays that burn and cause glare, acceleration and deceleration blackouts, and the mental trial of living with other men under strange, tiring, and very dangerous conditions. Even after crewmen have been carefully selected and trained, they will still have to face unknown dangers. Nevertheless, some scientists believe that it is only a matter of time and hard work until ways will be found to cross these barriers into space. What other barriers are there?

Barrier No. 3 — Spaceships

We may compare these men who want to travel in space to Columbus. They are just as brave, but they lack one important thing Columbus had — ships which can make the trip.

Some story writers have suggested trips to the moon by balloon. They knew that the journey would be about 240,000 miles. But they did not know that, after the balloon had risen 100 miles or so above the earth, there would be no air to support it. Therefore, they may be excused for suggesting such an impossible method of space travel.

One author, Jules Verne, thought that people might be shot to the moon in a hollow cannon shell. His cannon was to be a hollow tube 900 feet long placed in a well dug into the soil of Florida. It was to be 9 feet in diameter. He forgot one important fact, air resistance. His shell would have been flattened like a pancake if it had been shot fast enough to escape the pull of the earth's gravity. Scientists have figured that Jules Verne's



91 The balloon goes forward (reaction) with a force equal and opposite to the force (action) of the escaping air. This illustrates the way in which rockets and jet planes are made to fly. Try this at home.

method is an impossible way to send explorers into space. This leaves us with a rocket as the only known type of craft which can be used as a spaceship.

Rockets work on the principle of *action and reaction*. Again it was the great scientist Isaac Newton who first explained what action and reaction mean, although the Chinese and others had been shooting rockets centuries earlier. Newton stated that for every action there is an equal and opposite reaction. You can see for yourself how a rocket works by action and reaction if you simply blow up a toy balloon and let go of it. It will whiz away, rounded side first, as the air escapes from the opening (Fig. 91). The action of the gas leaving the opening gives the balloon a push (a reaction) in the opposite direction. There are many examples of action and reaction. You cannot jump off a sled into the snow (action) without giving the sled a push (reaction) in the opposite direction. When a bullet leaves a gun (action), the force of the explosion causes the gun to kick back (reaction) against your shoulder. Certain lawn sprinklers work on the reaction principle, and so do the skyrockets you see in fireworks displays.

All the rockets that were ever fired until 1926 got the power for their action and reaction from slow-burning gunpowder. They were "powder" rockets. The gases escaping from the rockets kept them flying until they were meant to explode. This accounts for the "rockets' red glare" which you sing about in our national anthem. But by the late 1920's, scientists knew that no powder-filled rocket would ever be made which could be shot into space. Such rockets do not have enough power to lift the powder, its container, and a crew or instruments at speeds needed to get past the pull of the earth's gravity before the fuel is burned up.

In 1926, Professor Robert H. Goddard of Clark University in Worcester, Mass., built and shot the first rocket powered with liquid fuel.

Alcohol is a good liquid fuel, but it cannot be used by itself in a rocket. Fuels need a great deal of oxygen if they are to burn rapidly, and so liquid oxygen is used in rockets to make the alcohol burn.[1]

In 1936, Professor Goddard shot off a liquid-fuel rocket that weighed 85 pounds and reached a record height of 7,500 feet. Meanwhile, a German "Society for Space Travel" had been formed, and its members also began to experiment with liquid-fuel rockets. If you would like to know more about the history of rockets, read Willy Ley's book, *Rockets, Missiles, and Space Travel.* (See "Adding to Your Library," p. 200.)

Rockets have been used by many nations. The United States has used some German V-2–type rockets for experiments at White Sands, N. M. We have sent this type of rocket to a height of 114 miles. We have also made even better rockets, which have been shot to heights of 135 miles. This is a record for a *single-stage rocket*. A single-stage rocket is one that does not come apart during its flight.

In 1949, a *two-stage rocket* which was fired from White Sands set an all-time altitude record of 250 miles. This particular two-stage rocket was a V-2 rocket carrying in its nose an American-made rocket named the WAC Corporal. At the moment when the V-2 reached its greatest speed, the WAC Corporal shot out. It was the WAC Corporal which reached the height of 250 miles.

Perhaps if we could make a *three-stage rocket*, one of the parts, the third stage, might be able to stay out in space like a tiny moon that would circle the earth. This third-stage rocket we would then call an *orbital rocket* because it would have its own orbit around the earth just as the moon does. It would be filled with instruments which would send back to the earth the facts to help us cross the next barrier to space travel. This next barrier might be called "What We Still Don't Know."

Barrier No. 4 — What We Still Don't Know

From all you have read and from all you have heard about the idea of space travel, you may think our scientists know a great deal more than they do. Of all the barriers to space travel, what we don't know about space is perhaps the greatest. It is, of course, true that scientists know a great deal more today about the upper atmosphere and the making of rockets than they did twenty-five or thirty years ago. They probably know enough right now to shoot a rocket without men in it, an unmanned rocket, to the 1,075-mile lunar orbit or even all the way to the moon. That is a long, long way from being able to send men on safe round trips through space. Billions of dollars worth of research are needed just to get the answers to the questions about space travel that still remain a mystery to scientists.

Some hints of the things we need to know have already been given to you. For example, look again at the first footnote on that card the Hayden

---

[1] Liquid hydrogen, octane, and hydrazine are other fuels that have been used in rockets. Hydrogen peroxide and nitric acid are often used to supply the oxygen. But these are all very dangerous to handle, and sometimes they explode before it is time for them to start burning. *They are much too dangerous to be used by you in doing any classroom experiments.*

Planetarium gave out (p. 185). How great is the danger from meteors? We would like to know. Space is not empty. Billions of tiny *meteoroids* (MEE-tee-er-oydz) are flying through space. These meteoroids do not become *meteors* unless they reach our upper atmosphere, where they begin to glow. If a meteor does not burn up completely, what is left may land on the earth as a *meteorite*. Most of the meteoroids in space are smaller than a pea, but they travel at speeds upward of 1,000 miles per hour. We would like to know what would happen to a spaceship or spaceman hit by a meteoroid traveling at a speed of 1,000 miles per hour. We would also like to know how often a hit may be scored.

On p. 187 we mentioned the reverse-rocket approach which will be used to slow down a spaceship preparing to land. This is something we would really like to know more about. Just how do you go about easing to a safe landing a rocket coming in at a speed of 20 to 30 times the speed of sound (which is 760 miles per hour). Doing this under any conditions would be quite a trick. Doing it dressed in a spacesuit, while fighting fear and bracing oneself against the pressures that cause blackouts seems to be beyond man's ability. But is it? We do not know.

Suppose we put a number of satellite rockets at various heights above the earth, say from about 500 to 1,000 miles up. Could they send back useful information? They may do so just as we get useful facts from the instruments that have been sent up in balloons. However, the signals that come from these outposts may be hard to pick up, or they may be "jammed" by an unfriendly nation. Even tracking a tiny rocket at a height of 500 miles, which some think is a good height for this kind of rocket, will be a problem. The rocket will be moving along at about 17,200 miles an hour, more than 20 times the speed of sound (760 miles an hour). Maybe it will send us the information we need, but you can see the difficulties of getting radio signals from a tiny object so high up, moving with such speed.

Another condition of which we know too little has to do with *cosmic rays* (Unit 5). These rays are one of the mysteries of science. Professor Bruno Rossi of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology has been studying cosmic rays since 1930. In the September, 1953, issue of *Scientific American*, his article about cosmic rays has the title, "Where Do Cosmic Rays Come From?" He does not know, nor does any scientist really know. We would certainly like to know what effect cosmic rays would have upon a ship and a crew in space.

There is only one way to get the facts we need, and that is through research. Some of that research will have to be done by men in space at the risk of their lives. They will do this in a *space station*, 1,000 miles or more above the earth. What is a space station?

The truth is that there is no such thing as a space station as yet, but many ideas for building one have been suggested. A doughnut shape is thought to be best for a space station because it will provide the greatest amount of comfortable working space. The comfort will be obtained by making the station spin on its axis just fast enough to take away the feeling of weightlessness (p. 187). Inside the spinning doughnut, the crew

KEYSTONE

92 Two-stage rocket guided missiles like this one are being made in Britain. After the missile is at top speed, the rockets of stage 1 drop off. An American two-stage rocket in 1949 set an altitude record of 250 miles at White Sands, N.M.

will get a feeling of weight like that which gravity would give them on earth.

The idea is to send up the parts for the space station a few tons at a time. Then workmen in spacesuits would put the parts together. It sounds simple because the parts will all be put together first on earth to make sure they fit. No one, however, has ever tried to put together a space station in space, and so we do not know whether it can be done. However, of this we are certain: the cost will be high. It will take 170 tons of fuel to lift every ton of parts to the space station, and the kind of fuel needed costs about $5,000 a ton. We cannot even guess at how much the three-stage rockets will cost or how many will be needed. But it all adds up to a big barrier.

Barrier No. 5 — The Cost

The cost of overcoming all the barriers to space is frightening. The figure most often heard is 4 billion dollars. For this some scientists say they can give us a space station about 1,000 miles or more above the earth within 15 to 25 years. This station will be built so that men can live in it and do scientific work there. The trips to explore the moon and planets would follow and would, naturally, cost additional billions of dollars. Just to keep the station going will be a great expense, for rockets will have to shuttle back and forth with men and supplies. If we want to raise the money for this kind of thing, we can. The real question is, "Should we want to — should we go into a program of research and rocket building in order to make real the dreams of the men who want to conquer space?"

Goals of the Spacemen

There has been so much confusion about what our spacemen expect to do that a list of their goals is needed. Here are some.

First, they want to improve upon the present rockets until they are able to keep one about 500 miles above the earth for about 60 days. From one or more of these "baby space stations" they hope to get information that will help them set up a larger space station at a greater distance from the earth.

Second, they want to be able to deliver the supplies needed to build a space station.

Third, they want to be able to send test animals higher and higher above the earth into space and to return them safely to the earth. By doing this, our spacemen-to-be will discover how living things react to conditions in space.

Fourth, they want to send men into space in rockets and return them to the earth safely.

Fifth, they want to set up and man a station in space at 1,075 miles or so above the earth.

Sixth, they want to build rockets at the space station which can take off from there to explore the moon, and later Mars or Venus, without making a landing.

Seventh, they want to land on the moon and explore it. They would like, then, to do the same with Mars or Venus, or both.

Eighth, they would like to return safely to the earth and tell others what they have discovered.

Our guess is that some day all these things will come to pass. We hope you will live long enough to see it because we do not think the conquest of space is just around the corner but around many, many corners. Maybe you will be brave and lucky and clever enough to help it happen. It will take much hard work.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings opposite by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

weightlessness
acceleration

orbital rocket
meteoroids

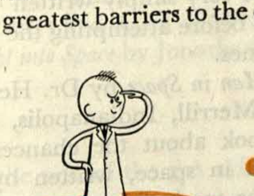
single-stage rocket
two-stage rocket
three-stage rocket
cosmic rays
space station
reverse-rocket approach

1. objects in space which become meteors when they glow while passing through the earth's atmosphere
2. a man-made "moon" from which information may be obtained and from which trips farther out into space can be launched
3. turning a rocket around so that its power may be used to reduce its speed as it comes in to make a landing
4. a rocket that does not come apart in flight
5. an increase in speed
6. a rocket carried by a rocket
7. the sensation of falling without support, a problem of space travel
8. a special type of rocket made up of a rocket, carried by another rocket, carried by still another rocket
9. particles of great energy which seem to come from outer space
10. a rocket that will stay in space, taking up an orbit around the earth like a tiny moon

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

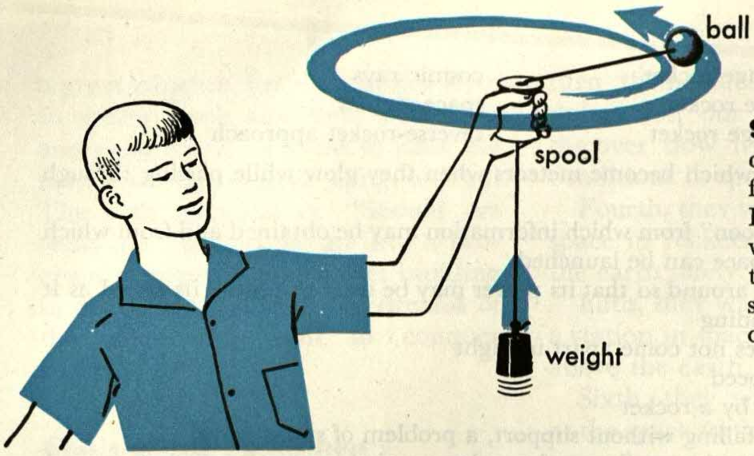
1. The nearest planet to the earth is . . . .
2. The gravity of the planet Jupiter is . . . than the earth's gravity.
3. The force of gravity can be overcome by . . . force in an opposite . . . .
4. Without the pressure of the atmosphere, the blood in our bodies would . . . .
5. It is not high speed but sudden and great . . . in speed that may cause a space traveler to black out.
6. We are sure people will never be able to travel to the moon in a . . . or in a . . . .
7. The power in present high-flying rockets comes from . . . fuel.
8. Up to now no rocket has been shot higher than about . . . miles.
9. The cost of putting a space station into an orbit 1,075 miles above the earth will be counted in . . . of dollars.
10. The greatest barriers to the conquest of space are: . . ., . . ., . . ., . . ., and . . . .



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. You can show how the pull of gravity can be overcome by using just four simple objects and your own arm. Get two weights, one ten times as heavy as the other. The lighter one may be an ordinary tennis ball. You will also need a piece of smooth string and a large spool of the kind tailor's thread comes on. Run the string through the hole in the spool and attach the ball to one end, and



93 The force of gravity can be balanced by the force of the whirling ball. By causing a person to whirl fast enough we can test his ability to withstand the effects of increased gravity (Fig. 90).

a weight to the other end, of the string. Hold the spool at arm's length and slightly above your head, with the heavier weight hanging down, as in Fig. 93. Now whirl the ball, which is the upper weight, as if it were a slingshot. Notice that it soon begins to raise the heavier weight. What happens when you whirl the ball with more speed? With less speed? What force is this whirling able to overcome?

2. The principle of making an object move forward as gas escapes from it in the opposite direction may be shown with a model jet plane mounted on a tight wire. Put screw eyes in the model at the back and front, and run the wire through them (Fig. 94). The tail of the model should be made to hold a small cylinder of compressed air or carbon dioxide gas. In the stores that sell the models and the cylinders of gas, you can get a "gun" which "shoots" a sharp needle into the seal of the cylinder. When the seal is broken, the gas escapes very fast. The model is "jet-propelled" along the wire at speeds up to 30 miles per hour. Because of this speed the model should be stopped by catching it with a small pillow at the far end of the wire, which should be about 25 feet long. Specially strong wire cable can be bought for this purpose. (*Caution:* Be careful to keep out of the way of the rocket — the rear of it as well as the front.)

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. What are some of the things that might go wrong aboard a spaceship and possibly cause the death of the crew?

2. Why is it possible to reach greater heights with two-stage rockets than with single-stage rockets?

3. What would you say if you were a Congressman who was asked to raise taxes in order to pay for an all-out project to conquer space *soon?*

4. Set up a panel of students to discuss or debate space travel.

Adding to Your Library

1. *The First Book of Space Travel* by Jeanne Bendick, Franklin Watts, Inc., 1953. A very simply written book, good to read before attempting the more technical ones.

2. *Man in Space* by Dr. Heinz Haber, Bobbs-Merrill, Indianapolis, 1953. This is a book about the chances of man's survival in space, written by a doctor who has worked long on the problem. The book was written for an older audience, but it is easy to read.

3. *Rockets, Jets, Guided Missiles, and Space Ships* by Jack Coggins and Fletcher Pratt, Random House, New York, 1951. This is a book that will help to bring the coming generation of rocket engineers up to date with the history of rockets. It is not technical.

4. *Rockets, Missiles, and Space Travel* by Willy Ley, Viking Press, New York, 1951. This is a big book and a technical one, but if you skip the higher mathematics, you should have no trouble.

5. *The Conquest of Space* by Willy Ley and Chesley Bonestell, Viking Press, New York, 1950. This book takes you as close as possible to objects in space with pictures drawn by an artist-scientist. It is a long look into the future of space travel.

6. *Two Hundred Miles Up* by Joseph Gordon Vaeth, Ronald Press, New York, 1951. If you want some detailed facts about the upper atmosphere and the inside story of how this information is obtained, you will enjoy reading this book. The author expects you to have some science background.

7. *Flying Saucers* by Donald H. Menzel, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1953. Here a scientist explains what people see when they think they are seeing flying saucers. This book is technical, but with a dictionary you should get the main ideas.

8. *Across the Space Frontier*, edited by Cornelius Ryan, Viking Press, New York, 1952. This is a book based on the first articles of a series appearing in *Collier's* Magazine. If you wish to read *Collier's* itself, the issues are dated March 22, 1952; Oct. 18 and 25, 1952; Feb. 28, 1953; March 7 and 14, 1953; June 27, 1953; and April 30, 1954.

9. *Flight into Space* by Jonathan Norton Leonard, Random House, New York, 1953. The author takes it for granted that you know some science words, but otherwise this is an easy book to read. Part of the book appeared in an article called "Space, It's Enough to Make Your Blood Boil" in *Life* Magazine on Aug. 31, 1953.

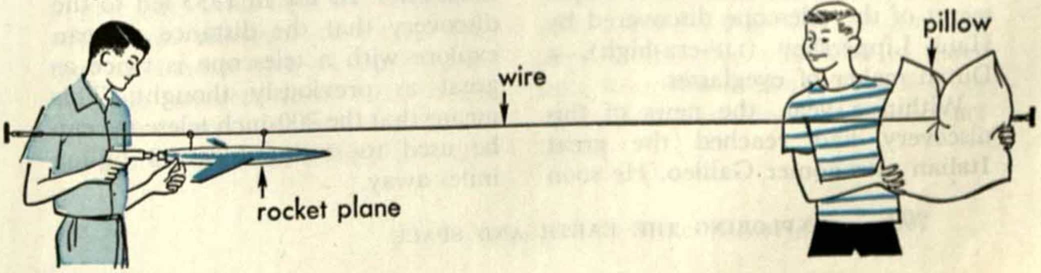
A Bit of Research

Using the books listed above, prepare a list of as many facts about man's attempts to reach high altitudes as you can find. Compare your list with those of other members of your class. Pool your knowledge and then prepare a large wall chart for your science room. On it show what is known about man's attempts to get up into space. Other committees may want to make lists of true and false ideas about space travel. Others may want to prepare for a debate on the topic: "The United States should get started now on an all-out attempt to set up a space station regardless of cost."

Careers for You

You may or may not become a space traveler, but you may become a scientist who does the research that is needed. Is a career in scientific research for you? Visit a research laboratory or invite a *research scientist* to visit your class. Find out what kind of training is needed and what a research scientist does each day.

94 When the seal of the gas cylinder in the tail of the rocket-plane model is broken, the force of the escaping gas (action) will drive the plane forward (reaction) at a speed of 30 to 40 miles an hour. This is the reaction described by Isaac Newton. Read the hobby section on making model airplanes beginning on p. 507.



FUN WITH TELESCOPES

A hobby

Astronomy is fun, if you take it seriously. That is not strange. The only way to learn enough about anything to enjoy it is to take it seriously. This is true of dancing, of stamp collecting, or of sailing a boat, and it is certainly true of astronomy. The serious study of astronomy may lead you on to a good job or a hobby you will enjoy.

Many people enjoy astronomy with only the help of a good pair of field glasses, but if you want to be a big-league astronomer, you will need to use a telescope. If you know something about telescopes and have an interest in astronomy, you will probably be able to find someone who will let you use his telescope.

Many sky objects cannot be seen without the aid of a telescope. Even the great astronomer, Copernicus (p. 135), never saw the moons of Jupiter or the planets Uranus, Neptune, or Pluto because he had no telescope. Nor did he know that the sun's surface has spots. There were many other things he did not know about the heavens simply because he had no telescope.

Not until 1608 was the simple secret of the telescope discovered by Hans Lippershey (LIP-erz-high), a Dutch maker of eyeglasses.

Within a year, the news of this discovery had reached the great Italian astronomer Galileo. He soon made his own telescope by mounting a pair of convex lenses in a simple tube. One part of the tube fitted closely inside the other so that the distance between the two lenses could be changed for focusing. You can do as much with two lenses your teacher may be able to give you.

Galileo saw at once the value of the telescope. He turned it on the sky and discovered the first four moons of the planet Jupiter. He also discovered sunspots and the fact that Venus goes through phases during which its size seems to change. Here was the first real evidence to show the correctness of the Copernican theory, which was outlined for you in Chapter 7 (p. 135).

Although astronomers do look through telescopes a great deal, these instruments have three even more important uses. Take, for instance, the great new telescope with the 200-inch mirror. As you may know, this is the Hale telescope, on Mount Palomar in California. Such a telescope serves, first of all, as a pointer. It makes possible accurate measurement of angles and distances between sky objects, especially the more remote ones. Its use in 1953 led to the discovery that the distance we can explore with a telescope is twice as great as previously thought. This means that the 200-inch telescope can be used to study objects 2 billion miles away.

J. JULIUS FANTA

95 With a small telescope the amateur astronomer's enjoyment of the sky is made much greater. The kind of telescope shown here folds up so that it can be carried in your pocket. The support is easily made from two short branches. *Project:* Make your own telescope. Use the books listed on this page.

Second, a telescope is a light gatherer. Its lenses and mirrors gather together the faint rays of light from distant stars and bring them to a focus upon instruments which can tell us many facts about the stars. Thus we can learn the temperature of these stars and something about the materials of which they are made.

Finally, our great telescopes are the best cameras in the world. With them astronomers can take pictures of objects in the sky that cannot be seen at all by a human eye even with the aid of a telescope. The camera film is more sensitive to the faint light because it can be exposed as long as it is necessary to make a picture appear. Discoveries of stars too cool to give out visible light are also made with these telescope cameras when they are loaded with film sensitive to invisible infrared (heat) rays. These rays are given out long after a star is too cool to give out visible light rays (p. 138).

There is no better way to get started in astronomy than to learn how to build a telescope of your own. We do not have the space to describe the method here, but there are a number of books on the subject. One of these is *Amateur Telescope Making*, edited by Albert G. Ingalls, Scientific American Publishing Co., New York, 1935.

If you live in one of the cities where there is a planetarium (p. 139), its director may be able to tell you where you can take a course in making a telescope. For those who live elsewhere, information may be obtained by writing to the editor of the magazine *Sky and Telescope*, Harvard College Observatory, Cambridge (38), Mass. He will be able to advise you, if you will tell him the type of telescope you wish to make and how much you can afford to spend for the materials. Why not start now?

UNIT 4

Understanding the Earth's Weather

Mark Twain was witty but wrong when he remarked that everybody talks about the weather but nobody does anything about it. On T3 Ice Island (near the North Pole) one of the United States Weather Bureau observers is doing something about it. He is helping to gather weather information that others will use to guide them in their daily plans.

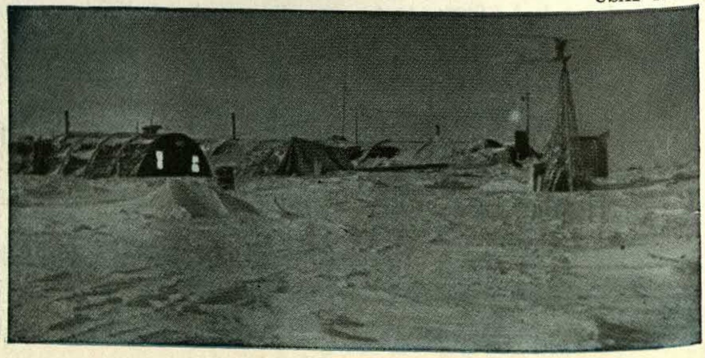
Do you plan to build, buy, or rent a house some day? A house worth living in is, in one sense, a package of perfect weather made to order for your comfort and health. Will you be able to judge how comfortable your next house will be before you move into it?

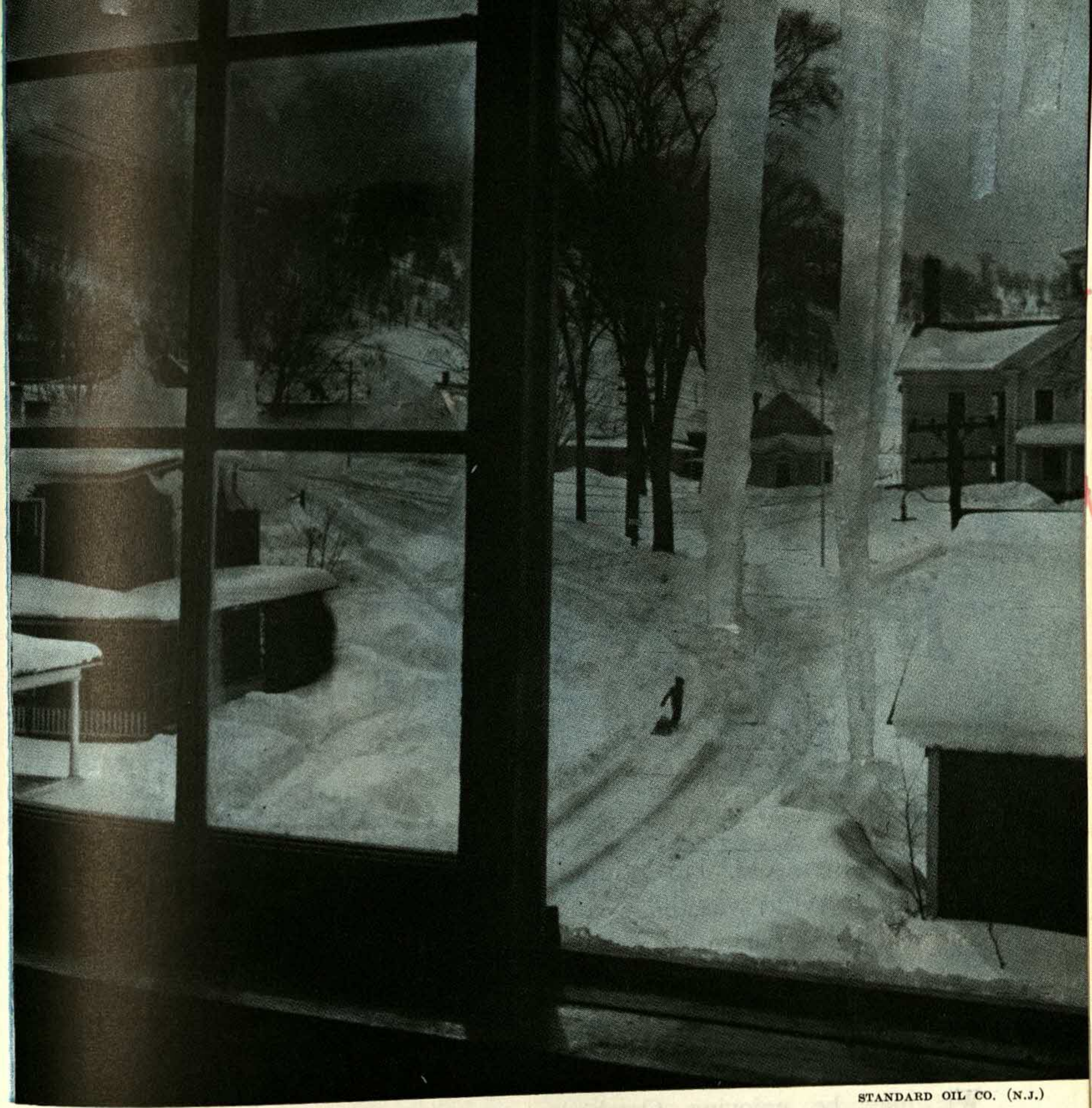
How much of your family's income is spent on clothing? If you live in a section of the country where the weather changes — from cold to warm, with rain or snow — you will want to know the right clothing to wear.

Do you plan to be a farmer? You will need to know enough about the weather to protect your farm animals and plants. Do you plan to fly an airplane or travel in one? You will certainly have to think ahead about the weather. Even storekeepers have to think about weather changes and make plans to take advantage of them.

Wherever you live, whatever you do, weather is important to you. This unit will help you understand the daily weather and its part in your life.

USAF PHOTO





STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

Weather (above). Houses must be made to keep the cold of winter on the outside. And people who go outdoors must dress properly for it.

Weather (below.) To weather observers clouds have special meanings. And they have meaning to rainmakers, as you will learn as you read this unit.

EWING GALLOWAY

CHAPTER 10

Our Daily Weather

Rain? Snow? Cold? Hot? Sunny? Hail? Hurricane? Gale? Thunder? Lightning? What was the weather today? Whatever it was, it played and will play a part in your life. What makes the weather?

We may be enjoying October's bright blue weather, or we may be soaked to the skin by a sudden rainstorm. At both times, we may wonder what makes the weather. There is no simple explanation. Sometimes the weather is a hurricane or tornado, so frightful that we find it almost beyond belief. At other times, the weather is mild and sunny, with gentle breezes which invite us to spend our time outdoors. All kinds of weather changes are caused by air in motion. What causes changes in the motion of the air? How does the motion of the air bring about changes in our weather?

OUR OCEAN OF AIR

We live at the bottom of an ocean of air called the atmosphere. It is always in motion. When you have discovered what makes the air ocean move, you will be well on your way to understanding what makes the weather change.

Air in Motion

To begin with, let us try to set just a roomful of air in motion. How would you do it? You might open a window and a door, making a draft, or you might turn on an electric fan. Even the heat from an electric light bulb can start air moving (Fig. 96). Have you ever noticed how the air seems to dance over a hot stove or radiator? Have you ever felt the draft caused by air rushing up a chimney from a roaring fire in a fireplace?

A simple experiment will show you what happens when air is heated.

Stretch the neck of a toy balloon until it fits over the top of a small flask. Now heat the flask gently on an electric hot plate. You will notice that the balloon begins to grow larger. Why? Of course, you know that no more air can enter the flask and the balloon. Therefore, if the balloon is larger after the flask is heated than before, the explanation must be that heating the flask makes the air take up more room, or expand. Why?

To find this answer, you must remember that air is a mixture of gases. Everything in the world, including these gases, is made up of small parts called molecules (Unit 5). In a gas the molecules are able to move around more freely than in a solid such as a piece of stone. In air the molecules are fairly far apart, but in stone they are closer together. Molecules are too small even to be seen under an ordinary microscope, and so it is impossible, of course, to see them in the air. Scientists, however, have proof that air molecules do move.

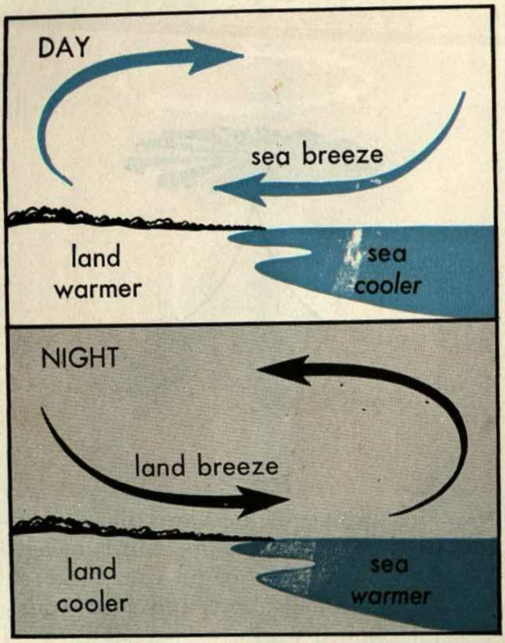
When a gas is heated, its molecules move faster and thus move farther apart. They take up more room. To put it another way, gases expand when heated. Furthermore, scientists know that a certain amount of heated air weighs less than an equal amount of cooler air. Therefore, heated air is forced to rise as cooler, heavier air moves in under it.

96 The turning of the vanes shows that the hot air above the lamp bulb is rising. *Exhibit:* From a piece of tin can, make a wheel like the one above and show your classmates how it works.

Now you know why the air above a hot stove seems to dance. It is rising. As the air is heated, it expands, becomes lighter, and is pushed upward by the cooler air moving in under it. Now let us see what happens when air over many parts of the earth is heated.

Temperature Differences Make the Wind Blow

Have you ever visited the seashore on a summer day? You may have noticed a cool breeze coming from the sea toward the land (Fig. 97). How can you explain where this cool sea breeze came from?



97 A sea breeze by day and a land breeze at night are common along seacoasts. The land and its air warm up faster than the ocean, and also cool off faster.

You can get some facts by feeling the dry sand on the beach and the water in the ocean. The dry sand feels hot, doesn't it? If you dip your feet into the water, you think it feels cold, even icy. Actually the water is far above freezing — probably around 60 to 70° F. By now you must know why the breeze is blowing from the sea toward the land. The sea is colder than the land. The air over the land becomes heated like the air around a hot light bulb or the air over a stove. The heated air rises when the cool air over the water moves in under it to push it up. This is the sea breeze.

Air is always being heated or cooled by the earth's surface. If two different parts of the earth's surface have different temperatures, the air above them also will have different temperatures. When there are these differences in the temperature of air, a wind is born. Watch little whirls of leaves, dust, or small pieces of paper, and you will see a tiny, small-scale wind. Not every breeze makes important weather changes, but certain winds are of great importance.

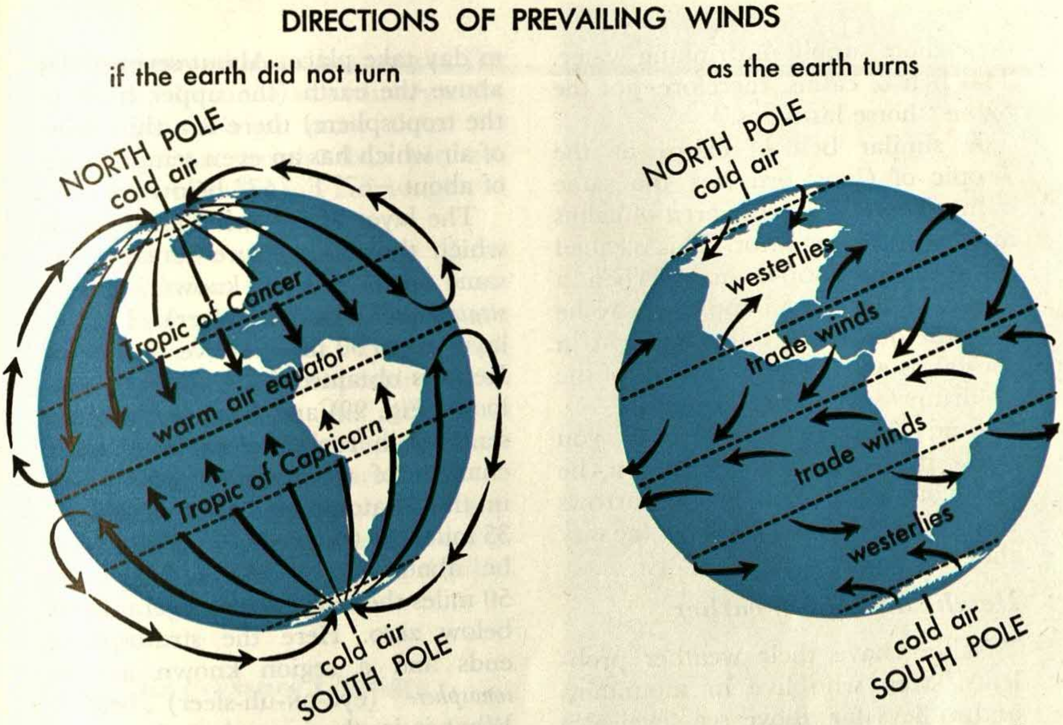
The Winds of the Earth

You may remember from your study of geography that winds which blow almost always from one direction are called *prevailing winds*. They blow over large parts of the earth. Some of these big winds are called trade winds. The traders of ancient times sailed the seas in the paths of these prevailing trade winds. Look at Fig. 98. It will remind you of the prevailing winds of the earth. We have prevailing westerly winds in the United States. What makes these winds blow?

There are several reasons. For one thing, the earth is round. Thus, some parts get more of the sun's heat than other parts. Wherever the rays of the sun strike the earth nearly at right angles, like this | | | | |, the earth becomes very well heated. This happens at the equator and in the regions on either side of it, called the Torrid Zone. Here this heated air rises.

In the Arctic and Antarctic regions, the sun's rays strike the earth like this / / / /, and there are long periods when the sun does not shine at all. Thus, these regions are very cold. The air above them is chilled and sinks toward the ground as it moves away from the North and South Poles.

Therefore, a movement of air begins. Hot, tropical air rises and moves toward the two poles while cold polar air is moving toward the equator



98 The prevailing winds are the result of heat and motion. If there were only heat from the sun, the winds would all be north winds or south winds. The rotation of the earth adds a twist to these big winds, making them travel around the earth as shown.

close to the earth's surface. This movement gives us only two prevailing winds, one from the North Pole, a north wind; and one from the South Pole, a south wind. But it is not quite so simple as this.

Unequal heating may start the wind blowing, but the spinning of the earth steers the winds. The earth, as you know, rotates from west to east. This spinning causes winds in the Northern Hemisphere to be twisted to the right. Winds in the Southern Hemisphere are twisted to the left. The result of this steering of the winds is shown in Fig. 98.

Horse Latitudes and Doldrums

Other things besides unequal heat and rotation of the earth change the speed and direction of the winds. One of these things is distance. There is a great distance between the poles and the equator. The hot air of the equator has cooled a great deal by the time it has reached the Tropic of Cancer or the Tropic of Capricorn (Fig. 98). As this air cools it begins to fall toward the earth at about these points. But there is little or no motion of air across the surface of the earth at these points. Thus at or near the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn there are areas of calms where for days there is no wind.

There is a story that sailing ships carrying horses to the New World were sometimes caught in the belt of calms near the Tropic of Cancer. When the wind did not blow for a week or more, the sailors had to drop the horses into the ocean to save their short supply of drinking water. This belt of calms, therefore, got the name "horse latitudes."

A similar belt of calms at the Tropic of Capricorn has the same name. There is another area of calms at or near the equator. This is called the *doldrums* (DOL-dr'mz). When a person is not very happy we say he is in the doldrums. Sailors caught in the calms and uncertain winds of the doldrums were unhappy men.

Study Fig. 98 carefully. As you study it and read p. 209 again, be sure you can explain why the arrows showing wind direction point the way they do.

Height and the Weather

Sailors have their weather problems. Men who live in mountains and valleys far above sea level also have weather problems.

You remember that hot air rises when cooler air pushes it up. Cold air moving into a valley makes the temperature there lower than on nearby hillsides. This lowering of the temperature may bring frost that will ruin the farm crops in the valleys. Cold air staying in valleys also makes snow last longer. On some very high mountains there is snow all year long. How can this be explained?

It is true that heated air rises. However, as it rises it becomes cooler. Then the temperature of the air drops. It drops, on the average, 1° F. for every 300 feet above sea level. This drop in air temperature does not go on forever, but it does go on up to a height of about seven miles.

The atmosphere has been divided into layers. Up to about seven miles it is called the *troposphere* (TROP-uh-sfeer). In the troposphere, the weather changes which affect us day to day take place. About seven miles above the earth (the upper limit of the troposphere) there is a thin layer of air which has an even temperature of about −67° F. (67° below zero).

The layer above this thin layer in which the temperature remains the same (−67° F.) is known as the *stratosphere* (STRAT-uh-sfeer). It is a layer 10 to 50 miles above the earth. Reports obtained from skyhook balloons (Fig. 99) and from instruments sent up in rockets show that some changes of temperature take place in the stratosphere. At a height of 35 miles the temperature is thought to be about 170° F. At a height of 50 miles the temperature again drops below zero. Here the stratosphere ends and a region known as the *ionosphere* (eye-ON-uh-sfeer) begins. What is in the ionosphere is one of the major mysteries of science. Only rockets and radio waves from the earth have been there. We know its temperature rises to 1,500° F. or more. We know that it has several layers that send back radio waves in different ways. In it we see the beautiful northern and southern lights and also the trails of glowing meteors. Here we are in a region that is of more interest to spacemen (Chapter 9) than to weathermen. So let us return to the lowest level of the atmosphere — the troposphere — the one in which the weather changes in which we are interested take place.

AIR PRESSURE

The weatherman is as much concerned with air pressure as with air temperature. That is because the pressure of the air affects our daily weather in many ways.

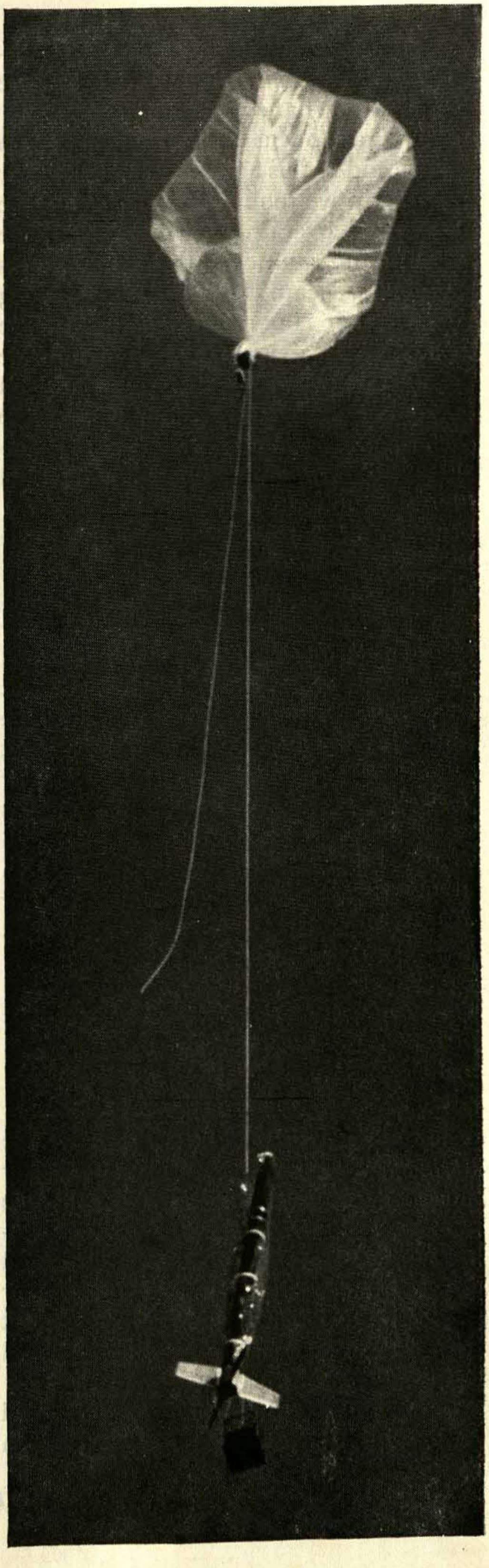
You know that air has weight. For instance, the air in an ordinary classroom may weigh more than 500 pounds, more weight than you can lift. And because air has weight, it has pressure.

There are always some small changes in air pressure at sea level. When we speak of an air pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch (p. 148), we really are speaking of the average air pressure. Air pressure in any one place may go slightly above 14.7 pounds per square inch or slightly below this amount. Furthermore, air pressure becomes lower as we go into the upper air. What causes these changes?

Why Air Pressure Changes

It will help you to understand changes in pressure if you think of the air as a kind of seesaw. Suppose four boys sit on a seesaw. Two boys of the same weight sit on one end of it, and two boys of the same weight on the opposite end. The boys are placed at equal distances from the middle. If they sit still, they and the seesaw will not move because both ends of the seesaw weigh the same. Now suppose one of the boys gets off the seesaw. What will happen?

Think of the atmosphere as a kind of seesaw in perfect balance, with an equal number of molecules (having the same weight) in the air on opposite ends of the seesaw. Since there is equal weight of air, there is equal pressure. This is what happens in a dead calm. Now suppose something



U.S. NAVY

99 This skyhook balloon was carried by a rocket that rose 60 miles. Instruments in the rocket's nose reported data about the upper atmosphere. What use is such information?

were to take away a number of molecules of the air from one end of the seesaw. What would happen?

What do you suppose could lighten one end of this air seesaw? Remember the trip we took to the seashore. The air rose over the warm areas of the land and sank over the cooler places on the ocean. This unequal heating of the air is one of the causes of the change in air pressure which tips the air seesaw. Cold air is heavier and moves in to take the place of the warm air that rises. Cold air, therefore, has more pressure than an equal volume of warm air.

Another thing that can move the seesaw in the air is water vapor. Think of a large glass box of dry air at one temperature. A box of this dry air will have a higher pressure (will weigh more) than will another box of air of the same size in which there is a good deal of water vapor. Don't think of water vapor as steam. Water vapor cannot be seen because it is a gas. Steam is the name given to the heated water vapor which passes off as water boils. Let us see how water vapor helps change the weather.

WATER VAPOR IN THE AIR

When most people think of the weather, they do not think about air pressure or the movement of the atmosphere. They think of temperature changes (is it warm or cold?) and of clouds, rain, snow, sleet, or fair skies. They wonder most about weather changes that will be caused by the water vapor in the air.

Water takes a long time to cool and also to warm up. For this reason oceans, lakes, and large rivers play an important part in the daily weather. Cold air blowing across large bodies of water is warmed somewhat by the past summer's heat that is still in the water. On the other hand, in the summer, hot air passing over cold water is cooled when it gives up some of its heat to the cooler water. As a result, winters along the seacoast are usually warmer and the summers cooler than they are inland, because the water is near. This is usually true if the prevailing winds cross a wide body of water before reaching the land.

However, comfort does not depend upon temperature alone. Have you heard this remark, "It isn't the heat; it's the humidity"? What does this mean?

Humidity

You have, of course, noticed the dampness of the air when it is foggy or when it rains or snows. There is some moisture in the air at all times and at all places in the form of water vapor which no one can see. In fact, from 0.1 to 2.5% of the air may be water vapor. Water vapor, you will remember, is a gas.

The higher the temperature of the air, the more water vapor it can hold. The lower the temperature of the air, the less water vapor it can hold. Thus, when the temperature of the air drops suddenly, some of the water vapor in it changes to drops of water in the form of clouds, rain, or dew.

The amount of water vapor in the air is called the *humidity* of the air. High humidity may make you very uncomfortable. Your body is always giving off water through the skin and lungs. The heat of the body turns this water into vapor; that is, the water evaporates. When liquid water turns into water vapor, we call the process *evaporation* (eh-vap-uh-RAY-shun). However, if the humidity is high, that is, if the air already has in it a good deal of water vapor, the water from your body cannot evaporate easily. As a result you may feel sticky and warm. Instead of evaporating, your body water stays on your skin and remains as drops of sweat.

Water to Water Vapor

Water, like air and all other substances, is made up of molecules which are always in motion. Molecules move faster the more they are heated. When any liquid is heated, some of these fast-moving molecules in the liquid move fast enough to escape into the air as vapor. When a heated molecule evaporates (escapes from a liquid) it takes a bit of heat with it. Thus, evaporation leaves the surface from which the liquid came cooler than it was before.

The evaporation of sweat helps to keep your body cool.

You can show this simply by wetting your hand and then waving it in the air. Notice how cool your hand feels. The evaporation of the water removes heat from your hand; to put it another way, the heat from your hand helps make the water evaporate.

The cooling effect of evaporation also explains why you feel cold when you stand around in a wet bathing suit on a windy day. Some of your body heat is lost as the water in your wet suit evaporates into water vapor.

Clouds

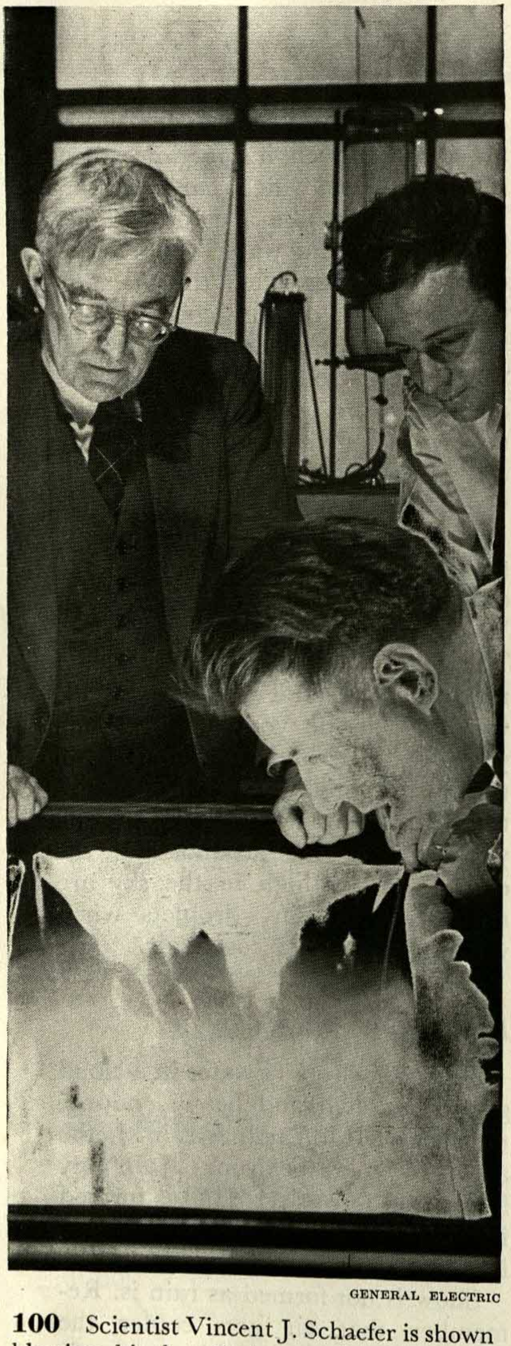
Although the water vapor in the air cannot be seen, it sometimes forms small droplets which can be seen. You then may see a cloud. Clouds are formed from water vapor. This usually happens when the air temperature falls, because cool air cannot hold as much water vapor as warmer air. Cooler air has less heat and therefore cannot keep water molecules moving fast enough to stay in the air as water vapor. So the water molecules form a cloud instead.

It is easy enough to see how a cloud may form. On a cold day have you ever made a cloud with your breath? Your breath has water vapor in it. The cold air outside your body cannot hold as much water vapor as the warm air inside your body. When your breath is cooled, the small cloud that forms is made up of millions of tiny droplets of water. Both the fog you see near the ground and the clouds you see high in the sky are made of these tiny droplets when warm moist air hits cooler air.

Rain, Snow, Sleet

When the drops of water in a cloud get big enough and heavy enough, they may fall to earth as rain. If the air is very cold, the drops of rain may freeze and form sleet. Hail is formed in a different way. This is explained in Chapter 11.

Snow is not formed as rain is. Remember that air gets colder the higher it rises (p. 210). As warm air full of water vapor rises from the earth, it is cooled, and the water vapor then forms clouds. (When water vapor again forms drops of water, we say the vapor *condenses.*) A



GENERAL ELECTRIC

100 Scientist Vincent J. Schaefer is shown blowing his breath into a home freezer. To make artificial snow fall, he will shave tiny particles of dry ice into the cloud you see. *Project:* If you have a home freezer, and your parents will let you, repeat this experiment.

cloud may be formed even at a temperature below 32° F., that is, below the point where water freezes. Such clouds are called *supercooled*. They are made up of supercooled drops of water (condensed water vapor) that do not form ice, even though they are below the freezing point of water. Often the high clouds in the upper air where the air is very cold are of this kind. Under certain conditions, they may change quickly into snowflakes. Dr. Vincent Schaefer of the General Electric Research Laboratories discovered a way to change a cloud of supercooled water droplets into snowflakes.

You can do this yourself simply by setting up a cold chamber, like the one shown in Fig. 100. Breathe into it, and a cloud will form. Then shave bits of dry ice into the cloud. You will soon see snow crystals appear. (*Warning:* Do not hold the dry ice in your bare hand.)

Scientific Weathermakers

The airplane makes it possible for man to treat clouds with dry ice and other things in order to make rain or snow. This is called *seeding*. Because it is so easy to seed clouds, some people expect that it can be used to prevent droughts (DROWTZ). A drought is a long period of time during which little or no rain falls and farm crops dry up.

The kind of weather we make depends upon the kind of clouds we seed and upon weather conditions nearby. If the conditions are nearly right for rain or snow, seeding may speed up the fall or make it fall on one area rather than another. A weathermaker needs to know all the conditions. A rain that is too heavy may wash away land and ruin crops. Strong winds and hail may come with the rain and cause a disaster worse than the drought. A bolt of lightning may start a raging forest fire.

Weathermakers, however, are trying to find out more about weather changes and the best time to seed clouds. Experiments have been going on in many parts of the world. England, Australia, South Africa, Algeria, and Hawaii are among the places sending in reports.

What may be some of the uses of cloud seeding? It may be possible to get more snowfall on the sides of mountains so that there is a steady water supply from mountain streams. Another possibility is to keep ice from forming on the wings of airplanes. Supercooled ground fog near an airport may also be cleared away by seeding.

Scientists, as you can see, have been studying the *water cycle* (Fig. 101). The water cycle starts with the evaporation of water into water vapor. The water vapor then condenses and forms tiny droplets of water that make clouds. Finally, the water returns to the earth as rain, snow, hail, or sleet. Sooner or later, it will again evaporate. This process repeats and repeats. It is therefore called a cycle.

THE SUN'S ENERGY AS A WEATHERMAKER

As we have seen, the water cycle, differences in air temperature, differences in air pressure, and the amount of water vapor in the air are the causes of most weather changes. But these causes need a source of energy to set them in motion. The heat energy sent out by the sun does this. The sun is the most important of all the weathermakers.

Rays from the Sun

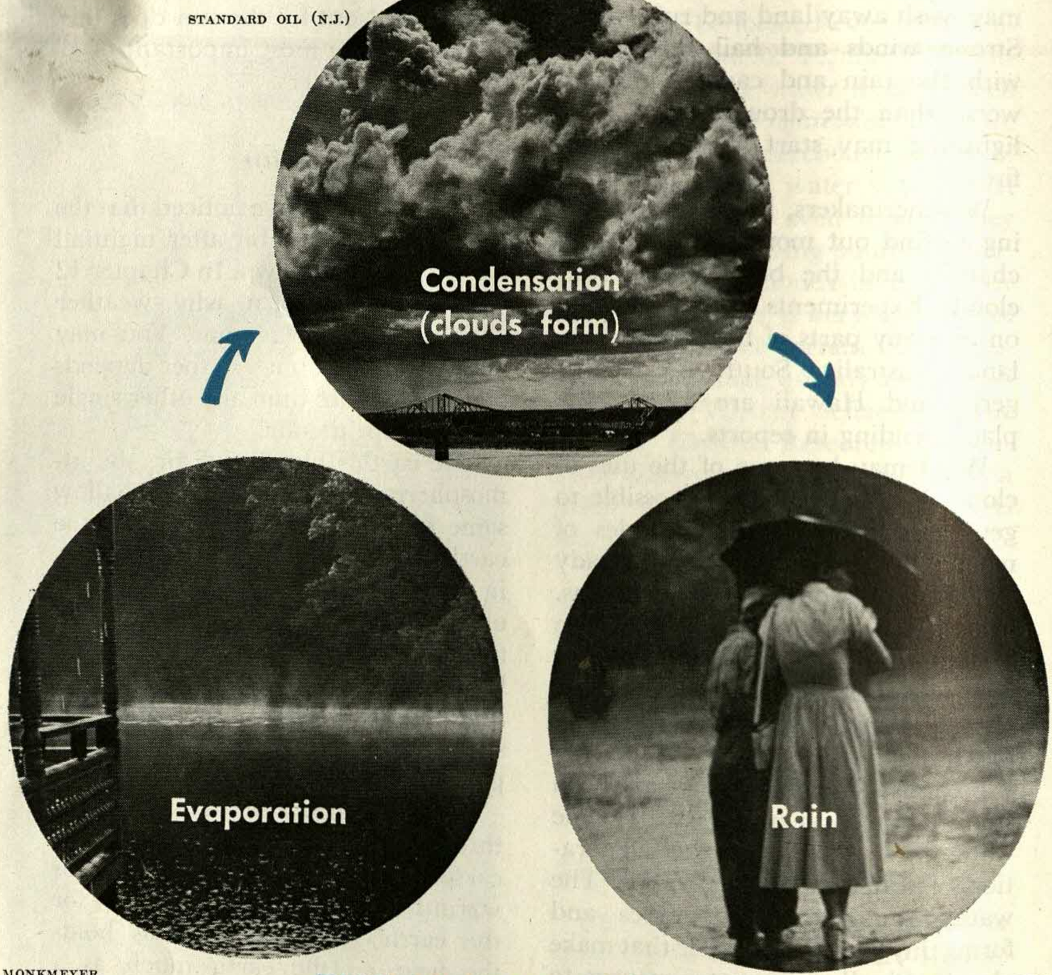
No doubt you have noticed that the weather changes a bit after nightfall and again about dawn. In Chapter 12 you will also learn why weather changes with the seasons. You may now realize that our weather depends on the sun more than any other single thing except the air.

The earth's blanket of air, the atmosphere, is clear enough to allow some rays from the sun to reach the earth. Dust, water vapor, and clouds in the atmosphere shield us from some of the rays, so that we are protected from the sun's full strength. If we lived on the moon, which has no atmosphere, we would have to wear special suits or live in caves to get this protection.

The rays from the sun that get through the atmosphere warm the earth. Soon after sundown this warmth would be lost were it not for the earth's atmosphere. This holds the heat on the earth much as a blanket holds your heat when you are in bed. The atmosphere helps the land and oceans to keep some of the heat they get from the sun during the daytime. This does not happen on the moon. There, as soon as night falls, the temperature of the land drops far below zero. On the dark side of the moon, which never gets the sun's rays, the temperature is thought to be almost −459° F., which is as cold as anything can get.

The amount of heat the earth loses during the night depends upon the amount of water vapor and the size of the clouds that may be in the

STANDARD OIL (N.J.)



MONKMEYER

AL NAIDOFF FROM F.P.G.

THE WATER CYCLE

101 Fog disappears as the droplets of water evaporate to form water vapor. When water vapor condenses, it forms a cloud (*top*). The cycle is completed when rain falls from the cloud.

atmosphere at the time. On clear, dry, cloudless nights more of the earth's heat is lost than on humid, cloudy nights. Thus on clear nights, soon after sundown, the earth's temperature and that of the air close to it fall rapidly. It is during nights like this that the heaviest dews form. The weather-wise have a saying like this:

Evening red and morning gray
Help the traveler on his way.

It is a true saying, for "evening red" means the air is clear and cloudless. The grayness of the early morning is caused by light clouds or haze that will evaporate soon after sunrise.

The opposite is also true. It goes:

Evening gray and morning red
Bring down rain upon his head.[1]

---

[1] A gray sky in the evening is caused by low clouds, which usually bring rain or snow. In the morning, a red sky is caused by many particles of moisture that may be a sign of rain coming soon.

To be able to tell what kind of weather is coming next, you need to know facts and figures. In the next chapter, you will find out how to get this information. You will start on the road to becoming a weather forecaster — that is, if you are interested in doing the work needed.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

doldrums
stratosphere
ionosphere
humidity
evaporation
atmosphere
troposphere

1. the process of changing water to water vapor
2. the part of the atmosphere 10 to 50 miles above the earth
3. the region of the atmosphere above the stratosphere
4. a belt of calms near the equator
5. the amount of water vapor in the air
6. the lowest part of the atmosphere, where the weather changes which affect us take place
7. air which blankets the earth

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. As we stand on the earth we are surrounded by . . . which is always in motion.
2. One major cause of winds is the unequal . . . of the atmosphere. The other major cause of winds is the . . . of the earth.
3. Air pressure is the . . . of the air on each square inch of the earth's surface. At sea level, the pressure is about . . . pounds per square inch.
4. In a cupful of warm air there are . . . molecules than there are in a cupful of cold air.
5. Cold (or cooler) air will cause warm air to be pushed . . . .
6. As you climb up a mountain, the . . . of the air becomes less than at sea level.
7. The main changes of weather take place in the . . . part of the atmosphere.
8. Humidity means the amount of . . . in the air. When the humidity of the air is . . . , evaporation goes on more slowly.
9. The atmosphere and the clouds shield us from too much . . . .
10. The amount of heat lost by the earth is greatest on nights that are . . . .

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. Silica gel is a new chemical that is being used to fight humidity. As you know, in moist air iron rusts easily. To show how silica gel takes water vapor out of air, set up the experiment shown in Fig. 102. If your silica gel is dry, it will keep the iron from rusting.

2. *Heat and air pressure.* Does the heating of the air cause pressure changes? Drop a small piece of burning paper into a milk bottle. Place the palm of your hand over the mouth of the bottle the instant the flame goes out. Wait a full minute. Now raise your hand. Explain the result.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Why are we just now beginning to learn more about the stratosphere?

2. Why is it that aviators who expect to live to a ripe old age make sure they are weather-wise?

3. Why may the atmosphere be called a blanket?

4. Why is our sun called the star that makes our weather?

Adding to Your Library

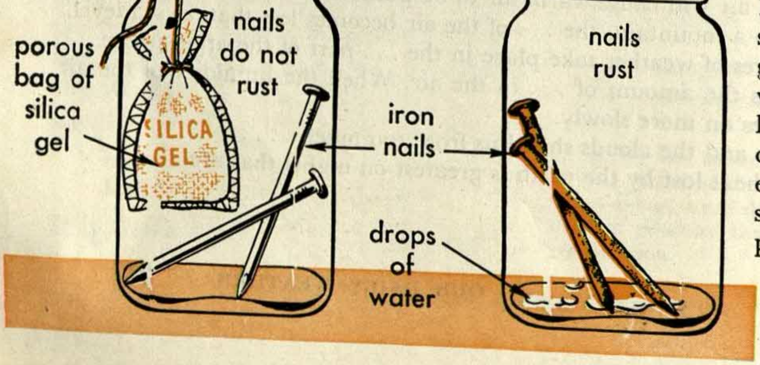
1. Weather Bureau Publication 1445, a *Weather Glossary*, may be read as a reference book or used as an encyclopedia. Write to the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., for information.

2. *Everyday Weather and How It Works* by Herman Schneider, Whittlesey House, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1951. This book is simple and clear. It tells about the causes of weather, how to read weather maps, and how to build a weather station out of simple materials.

3. *The Weather* by George Kimble and Raymond Bush, Pelican Pocketbook (P9), has a good description of seasonal weather.

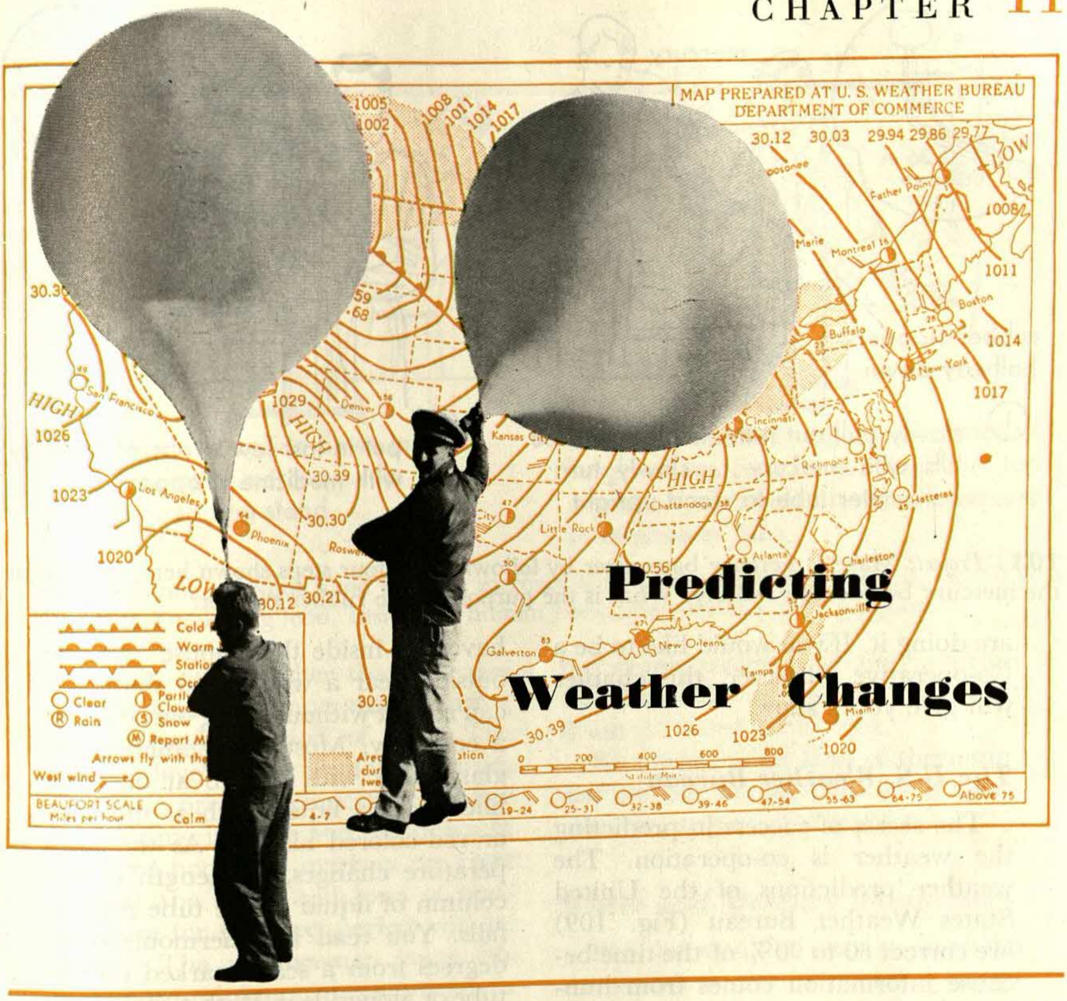
4. *All About the Weather* by Ivan Ray Tannehill, Random House, New York, 1953. While this book tells a great deal about the weather, it is not written in technical language. Its author is a top man in the U.S. Weather Bureau.

5. *Our Changing Weather* by Carroll Lane Fenton and Mildred Adams Fenton, Doubleday, New York, 1954. A well-illustrated, clearly written book.



102 Silica gel is a substance that can take up great amounts of water vapor. By doing so it lowers the humidity in a closed room or jar. In this experiment, we see that silica gel is valuable in preventing rust.

CHAPTER 11



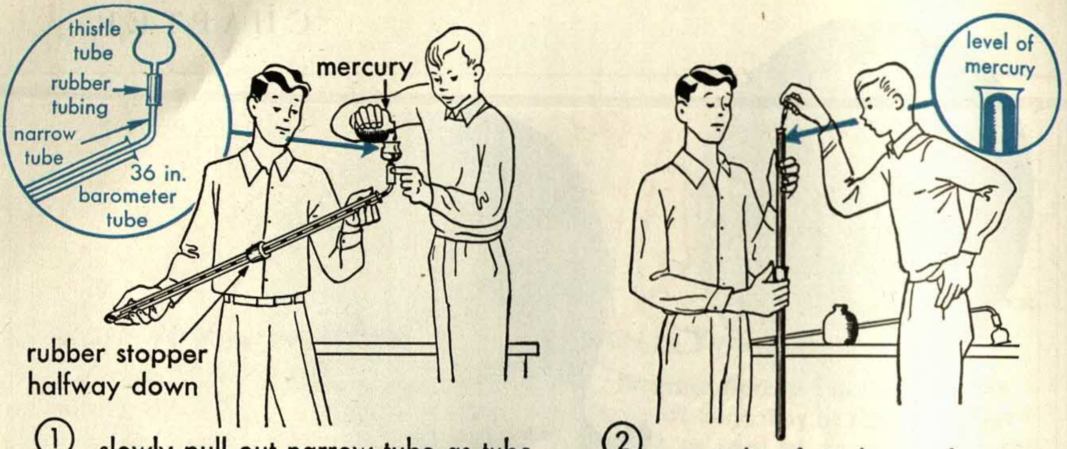
Predicting Weather Changes

The balloons will go up, and they will be watched very carefully. What will they tell us about the weather? Understanding the work of weathermen will help you to make better use of their reports.

HAVE YOU NOTICED that almost everybody seems to think he can tell what tomorrow's weather will be? Often it amounts to saying, "I think it will be a nice day tomorrow, if it doesn't rain." On the other hand, there are sound ways of finding out what tomorrow's weather may be. Let us see what some of these ways are and how you can learn to use them.

The Amateur Weathermen

Have you ever heard of the group of people called the Amateur Weathermen of America? In this group are people of all ages, even boys and girls, who make their own weather observations and report them to the United States Weather Bureau. They know what they are doing and why they



① slowly pull out narrow tube as tube fills with mercury . . . slowly turn barometer tube to stand upright

② put in last few drops of mercury with medicine dropper

103 *Project:* Make a mercury barometer by following the four steps shown here. Why must the mercury be poured carefully? What is the purpose of the rubber stopper?

are doing it. If you would like to be a Co-operative Observer, this chapter will give you a start.

The U.S. Weather Bureau

The secret of success in predicting the weather is co-operation. The weather predictions of the United States Weather Bureau (Fig. 109) are correct 80 to 90% of the time because information comes from hundreds of observers. They are scattered over the widest possible area, including Alaska and Greenland. One post is within 150 miles of the North Pole.

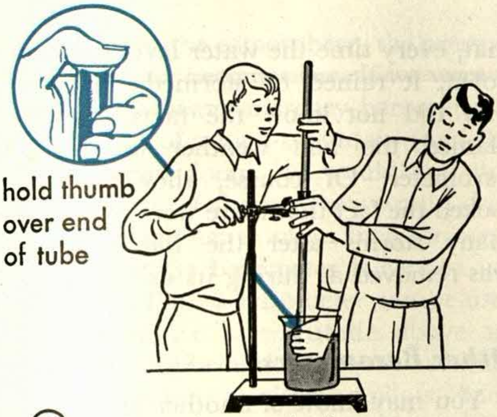
Before you try to read information from a weather map, you should know how weather observers get their information and how weather instruments work.

MEASURING AIR TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE

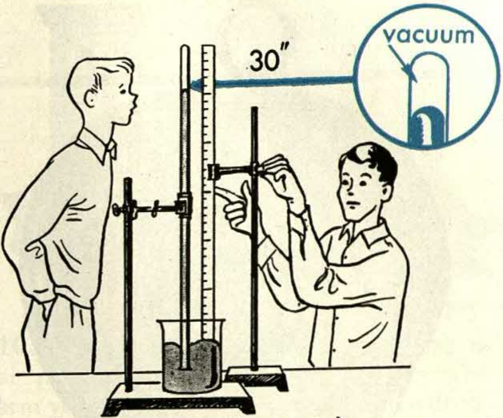
The most common weather instrument is a thermometer. Many people have one inside their house and one outside near a window so that they can read it without going outdoors on a cold day. Most thermometers are glass tubes with a bulb at one end filled with a liquid such as mercury or red-colored alcohol. As the temperature changes, the length of the column of liquid in the tube rises or falls. You read the thermometer in degrees from a scale marked on the tube or alongside it. With a thermometer of this kind, your reading is the temperature of the moment. You do not know whether the air has been hotter or colder an hour earlier, let us say. To find this out, other kinds of thermometers are used.

Kinds of Thermometers

Weathermen wish to know the temperature over a 24-hour period, or shorter periods of time. For this they use a *maximum-minimum thermometer*. A maximum-minimum thermometer has a tiny metal marker that the thermometer leaves at the lowest tem-


hold thumb over end of tube

③ turn tube upside down in beaker of mercury ... fix tube to ring stand



④ attach yardstick to ring stand ... measure height of mercury by reading from top of mercury in beaker to top of mercury in barometer tube

Caution: Do not put your hand into the mercury if you have a cut on your skin. Scrub your hands before touching food. Inside the human body, mercury is a deadly poison.

perature, and another that it leaves at the highest temperature, during the particular period of time. The present level of the liquid, of course, gives the present temperature. After the reading is made and put down in a record book, the markers are reset so that the highs and lows of temperature for the next period will be shown. The weatherman keeps his maximum-minimum thermometer in a little outdoor box to protect it from damage and also to shield it from the direct rays of the sun. If you want to understand why it must be shielded, set up two thermometers, one in the shade and one in the sun's rays, and notice how different the readings are.

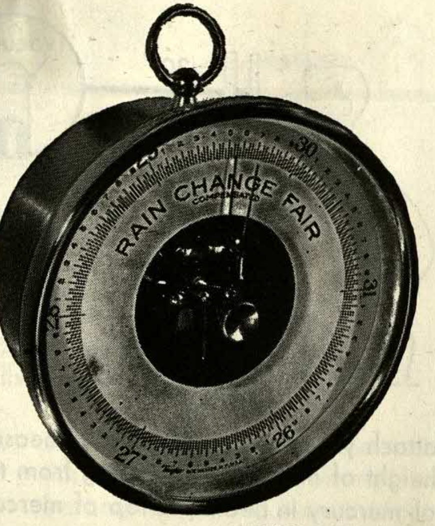
A *thermograph* (THER-moh-graf) gives even more information than a maximum-minimum thermometer, for it gives the weatherman a record of every temperature change for every minute of the period he is studying. As its name suggests, the record of temperature on a thermograph is a line drawn on a piece of paper. In one type of thermograph, the graph paper is around a drum that looks like a large tin can. This drum is turned by a clock.

No matter what kind of thermometer we use, air temperature is measured in degrees Fahrenheit.

Water and Mercury Barometers

Weathermen also want to know the air pressure. Air pressure is sometimes called *barometric* (bair-oh-MET-rik) pressure, because the amount of air pressure is measured with a *barometer* (buh-ROM-uh-ter) or a *barograph* (BAIR-uh-graf).

An Italian scientist named Torricelli (tor-uh-CHEL-ee) (1608–1647), a pupil of Galileo, made the first barometer, in 1643. His barometer used mercury. To this day some of the best barometers use mercury. You can make a simple type of mercury barometer, like the one shown in Fig. 103. Notice that it uses a tube about 3 feet long in which the mercury stands at a height of about 30 inches.



TAYLOR INSTRUMENT CO.

104 An aneroid barometer measures changes in air pressure. Aneroid barometers do not contain mercury. The pressure of air acts directly on the box, pushing it in or out a bit. The needle shows this pressure.

Torricelli discovered that the pressure of the air at sea level can hold up this column of mercury by pressure on the liquid in the dish (Fig. 103). When the air pressure becomes less, the pressure on the mercury becomes less, and the mercury drops a bit. When the air pressure becomes greater, the pressure on the mercury column is greater, and it rises a bit higher in the tube. A falling barometer, on the other hand, means lower air pressure.

Mercury weighs 13.6 times as much as water, so you see why water is not used in barometers. Aside from the fact that water would freeze in the winter, you would need a tube about 34 feet high for a water barometer. Otto von Guericke (GAY-ruh-keh) (1602–1686), the famous mayor of Magdeburg, Germany, actually made a water barometer. But the superstitious townspeople made him take it down. They noticed that, every time the water level went down, it rained or stormed. Since they did not know the facts, they blamed the bad weather on the barometer. Of course, they overlooked the fact that there were just as many storms after the barometer was removed as during its use.

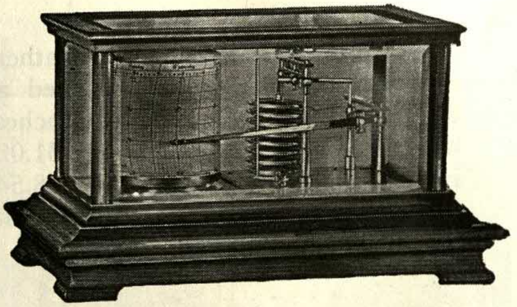
Other Barometers

You may know of another kind of barometer, called an *aneroid* (AN-er-oid) barometer. The main part of an aneroid barometer is a small, flexible metal box. Most of the air has been removed from the box. Changes in air pressure cause a pointer to move around a dial.

Since part of the air inside the box has been taken out, the pressure of the air left *inside* is less than the air pressure *outside* the box. The top and bottom of the box, therefore, are pressed together a certain amount. If the pressure of air on the outside of the box becomes less, the top of the box is pushed out a bit by the air left inside. If the outside air pressure becomes greater, the top of the box is pushed in slightly. Whenever the top of the box moves, the pointer moves over the dial, which is shown clearly in Fig. 104.

The invention of the aneroid barometer made it possible to do away with the three-foot tube of liquid mercury which is used in a Torricelli barometer. For this reason an aneroid barometer is much lighter in weight, less expensive, and easier to carry. There is also no danger of spilling mercury.

An aneroid barometer is often used for measuring altitude. When so used, it is called an altimeter (al-TIM-uh-ter). You remember that when we go up in the atmosphere, the pressure of the air becomes less. If we were to carry a heavy mercury barometer to the top of a high mountain (and this has been done), we would find that the level of the mercury would drop about one-tenth of an inch for every 90 feet the barometer is carried upward. Thus a barometer can be used to measure our altitude above sea level. Information about altitude is important to airplane pilots. Aneroid barometers are used as altimeters in airplanes.



TAYLOR INSTRUMENT CO.

105 A barograph records the changes in air pressure throughout an entire day. The arm you see writes on the paper as the drum turns.

Normal Air Pressure

Sometimes the same thing has many different names. So it is with air pressure. Normal air pressure (at sea level) may be described or measured in seven ways:

NORMAL AIR PRESSURE =
29.92 inches of mercury
76 cm. of mercury*
760 mm. of mercury†
33.9 feet of water
1 atmosphere
14.7 pounds per square inch
1013.25 millibars‡

As you see, all these figures mean the same thing, normal air pressure. The description of air pressure now favored by the U.S. Weather Bureau is the last one in the list. On a barometer scale, 0.1 of an inch of mercury measures the same air pressure as 3.4 millibars. You do not need to worry too much about the arithmetic of changing inches of mercury into millibars. Every weather map gives both figures because many people who use the weather maps like the older method better. For the air pressures you are most likely to use, see the bottom half of the table given here.

Range of Pressures

Mercury in Column *Inches*	*Millibars*
29.0	982.05
29.1	985.44
29.2	988.83
29.3	992.21
29.4	995.60
29.5	998.99
29.6	1002.37
29.7	1005.76
29.8	1009.14
29.9	1012.53
30.0	1015.92
30.1	1019.30
30.2	1022.69
30.3	1026.08
30.4	1029.46
30.5	1032.85

It may surprise you to learn that the barometer readings change very slightly in any one place. Over a period of 66 years, the U.S. Weather Bureau in Philadelphia recorded a total change of only 2.48 inches between its record high of 31.02 inches and its record low of 28.54 inches. Small changes can mean a lot and be very important.

---

* 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters (cm.)
† 1 cm. = 10 millimeters (mm.)
‡ Based on 1 inch at 32° F. = 33.86 millibars

The Falling Barometer

Have you ever heard the statement: "The barometer is falling; a storm is on the way"? When the level of the mercury in a barometer goes down, the barometer is said to be falling. This is a sign that the air pressure in the area is becoming less. A drop of even 1 inch in a period of 24 hours is unusual and marks the rapid approach of a violent storm. Such a storm is called a "low-pressure area," or simply a "low." Remember that one main cause of lowered air pressure is a rise in temperature (see p. 212).

If there is a high amount of water vapor in the air, air pressure is lowered. If you were to weigh a box of dry air, you would find that it has a certain weight. If you were to fill the same box with water vapor, under the same conditions, you would find that the box full of water vapor weighs less than the box full of dry air. Therefore, the box with a high amount of water vapor has a lower pressure than the one with dry air.

Water vapor is not made up of the tiny drops of water in the air which can be seen as clouds. Water vapor, you remember, is a gas that cannot be seen. A given amount of air plus water vapor weighs less than the same amount of air alone. This is so because molecules of water vapor weigh less than the molecules of the other gases that make up the air.

What will happen when a barometer is placed in warm air which holds much water vapor? The column of mercury in the mercury barometer will fall, or the needle in the aneroid barometer will show a lower pressure. Why? Warm air which holds much water vapor does not weigh as much as an equal volume of cold, dry air. Since it has less weight, it does not press as much on a column of mercury or on an aneroid barometer. Thus warm, moist air has a lower pressure than cool, dry air.

Since water vapor may condense and fall as rain, a falling barometer may mean that rain is coming. Rain does not always come because sometimes conditions are not right to cause rain to fall. For the opposite reason, a rising barometer is taken as a sign of dry, fair weather.

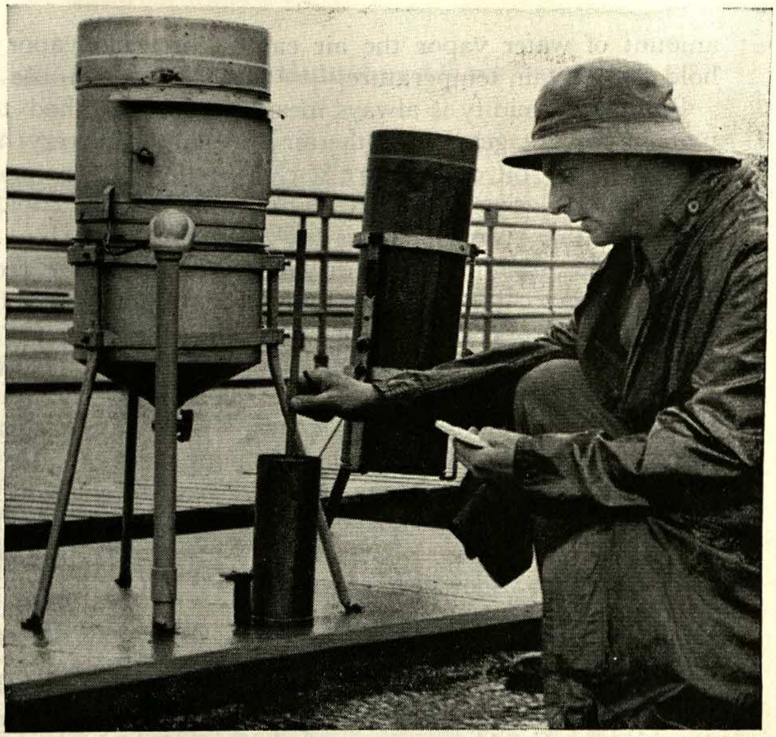
MEASURING RAINFALL

Co-operative weather observers must make a report of temperature changes and *precipitation* (preh-sip-ih-TAY-shun) to the U.S. Weather Bureau.[1] They may report on changes in air pressure if they wish. Precipitation means any form of moisture that falls from the air to the earth. Rain, snow, and hail are forms of precipitation. Dew is not precipitation because it does not form in the air and fall to the ground. Dew forms upon objects on or near the ground.

In the United States, rainfall and snowfall are measured in inches (Fig. 106). The average yearly pre-

---

[1] The U.S. Weather Bureau supplies co-operative observers with a thermometer for measuring the air temperature. It also supplies a rain gauge for measuring precipitation. Many amateur weathermen buy their own instruments and gauges.



ASSOCIATED PRESS

106 Rainfall is measured by the number of inches of water that collect in a cylinder of the kind shown in use here. Measurements are made before the water collected has a chance to evaporate. *Project:* Make a rain gauge and keep a record of the daily rainfall.

cipitation for Washington, D.C., is 42.16 inches. A day during which 0.01 inches or more rain falls is called a rainy day. Most people do not need a rain gauge to show them that a particular day is rainy. However, a record of the rainfall during a season may be very important. It shows the amount of water that is available for wells and reservoirs and for agriculture. A record of rainfall also tells when to take steps against drought. A drought, as you remember, is a long period during which little or no rain falls, such as the summer drought of 1953. What is the average yearly precipitation in the part of the country where you live?

If you want to measure precipitation with a rain gauge, place it where it will receive a normal amount of precipitation. If it is placed too close to a wall, it may not catch the full amount of rain that actually falls in the open places. To read the smaller rain gauges, a ruler is put down into the gauge. The water leaves a wet mark on the ruler, just as the oil in an automobile engine leaves its mark on the oil gauge. If you are using a rain gauge, read it as soon as the rain stops, or else some of the water collected in the gauge may evaporate and your reading will not be correct.[1]

MEASURING RELATIVE HUMIDITY

Even before rain falls, you can get an idea of the amount of water vapor in the air by measuring the *relative humidity.* The relative humidity is a measure of the amount of water vapor in the air compared to the amount of water vapor the air can hold at a certain temperature.

---

[1] Snow will melt in the gauge and can be measured in that way.

Relative humidity is always measured in percentages. When the air is holding every bit of moisture it can hold, the relative humidity is, of course, 100%. When the air is 100% humid, the slightest drop in temperature may cause precipitation. A relative humidity of 90% or more often means that we may soon have some form of precipitation.

A relative humidity of 50% means that the air is holding just half as much water vapor as it can hold if the temperature does not change.

Does water vapor ever come out of the air? You can show there is water in air by doing this. Put ice in a metal cup. As the ice lowers the temperature of the cup, the cup in turn lowers the temperature of the air around it. At this lower temperature, the air cannot hold as much water vapor as it did before. The air touching the cup quickly reaches a relative humidity of 100%. Further cooling of the air causes some of its water vapor to form (condense) on the sides of the cup as dew. Where are you likely to find dew forming inside your house?

Everyone has seen dew on grass, stones, and other objects on the ground. Dew is formed when warm air, containing enough water vapor, comes in contact with the cool earth. What happens is like the forming of drops of water on the sides of the ice-filled cup. Why doesn't dew usually form during the day? During the day the earth is usually as warm as the air or warmer. Therefore, the temperature of the air is not lowered by coming in contact with the earth, and the water vapor does not form dew.

You can use a simple but very rough method to find out whether the air is very humid. Water vapor changes the color of a chemical known as cobalt chloride. Cobalt chloride is blue when it is dry; it turns pink or red when it has taken up water vapor from the air.

Try to make a simple instrument to measure the water vapor in the air by using cobalt chloride solution. A piece of filter paper will take up cobalt chloride. Let it dry. What color will the filter paper be when the air is dry? When it is moist?

Making a Weather Instrument

The cobalt chloride method described above is not accurate enough. An accurate instrument used to measure humidity is called a *psychrometer* (sy-KROM-uh-ter) (Fig. 107). It is easy enough to make one of your own.

A psychrometer is made from two thermometers which are exactly alike. You will also need the chart shown in Table 5 and a small wad of cotton. Pull out the strands of the cotton until it is thin enough to slip under the bulb of one of the thermometers. Then wrap it all around the bulb. Now moisten the cotton thoroughly with water. Fan both bulbs. Notice that the temperature shown on the wet-bulb thermometer is lower than that on the dry-bulb thermometer. Continue to fan until there is no further drop in temperature. Read the temperatures on both thermometers and turn to Table 5. Look down the column in the table giving the dry-bulb temperature you have read. Put a ruler on it.

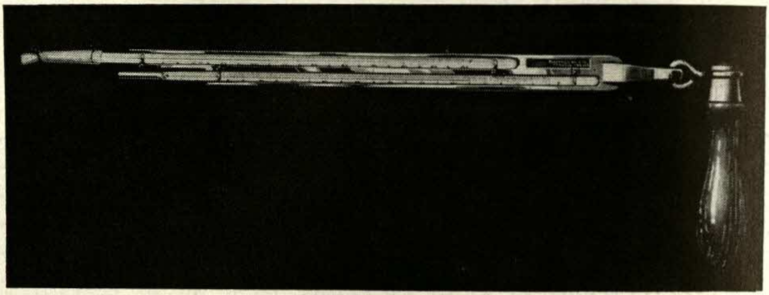
TABLE 5 Relative Humidity Chart

TEMPERATURE OF DRY BULB

TEMPERATURE OF WET BULB

	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	
41	7	4	2																		41
42	10	8	6	4	2																42
43	14	12	10	7	5	3	2														43
44	18	16	13	11	9	7	5	3	1												44
45	22	20	17	15	12	10	8	6	5	3	1										45
46	27	24	21	18	16	14	12	10	8	6	4	3	1								46
47	31	28	25	22	20	17	15	13	11	9	7	6	4	3	1						47
48	35	32	29	26	24	21	19	16	14	12	10	9	7	5	4	3	1				48
49	40	36	33	30	27	25	22	20	18	15	13	12	10	8	7	5	4	3	1		49
50	44	41	37	34	31	29	26	23	21	19	17	15	13	11	9	8	6	5	4	3	50
51	49	45	42	38	35	32	30	25	24	22	20	18	16	14	12	11	9	8	6	5	51
52	54	50	46	43	39	36	33	31	28	25	23	21	19	17	15	13	12	10	9	7	52
53	58	54	50	47	44	40	37	34	32	29	27	24	22	20	18	16	14	13	11	10	53
54	63	59	55	51	48	44	41	38	35	33	30	28	25	23	21	19	17	16	14	12	54
55	68	64	60	56	52	48	45	42	39	36	33	31	29	26	24	22	20	18	17	15	55
56	73	69	64	60	56	53	49	46	43	40	37	34	32	29	27	25	23	21	19	18	56
57	78	74	69	65	61	57	53	50	47	44	41	38	35	33	30	28	26	24	22	20	57
58	84	79	74	70	66	61	58	54	51	48	45	42	39	36	34	31	29	27	25	23	58
59	89	84	79	74	70	66	62	58	55	51	48	45	42	39	37	34	32	30	28	26	59
60	94	89	84	79	75	71	66	62	59	55	52	49	46	43	40	38	35	33	31	29	60
61	100	94	89	84	80	75	71	67	63	59	56	53	50	47	44	41	39	36	34	32	61
62		100	95	90	85	80	75	71	67	64	60	57	53	50	47	44	42	39	37	35	62
63			100	95	90	85	80	76	72	68	64	61	57	54	51	48	45	43	40	38	63
64				100	95	90	85	80	76	72	68	65	61	58	54	51	48	46	43	41	64
65					100	95	90	85	81	77	72	69	65	61	58	55	52	49	46	44	65
66						100	95	90	85	81	77	73	69	65	62	59	56	53	50	47	66
67							100	95	90	86	81	77	73	69	66	62	59	56	53	50	67
68								100	95	90	86	82	78	74	70	66	63	60	57	54	68
69									100	95	90	86	82	78	74	70	67	63	60	57	69
70										100	95	91	86	82	78	74	71	67	64	61	70
71											100	95	91	86	82	78	74	71	68	64	71
72												100	95	91	86	82	79	75	71	68	72
73													100	95	91	87	83	79	75	72	73
74														100	96	91	87	83	79	75	74
75															100	96	91	87	83	79	75
76																100	96	91	87	83	76
77																	100	96	91	87	77
78																		100	96	91	78
79																			100	96	79
80																				100	80
	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	

Suppose the "dry" thermometer (on your psychrometer) read 72° F., the "wet" thermometer 63° F. Then the relative humidity would be 61% (as above). The activity on the opposite page tells you how to use this chart. *Project:* Try keeping a relative humidity record for several weeks.



TAYLOR INSTRUMENT CO.

107 This is a sling psychrometer. Holding it by the handle, you sling it around your head to evaporate the moisture on the wet-bulb thermometer. This is easier than fanning the wet bulb.

Then look across the line giving the temperature of the wet-bulb thermometer. The number in the box where the column and the line meet is the percentage of relative humidity. An example is worked out for you under Table 5, and the result has a circle around it.

MEASURING WINDS

With the exception of the rain gauge and the cobalt chloride indicator, the instruments we have studied so far are delicate ones made for use indoors or under protecting boxes. The measurement of wind direction and wind speed needs well-built instruments, like the weather vane. It is not unusual for an amateur weatherman to discover that his weather vane has "gone with the wind" if it has not been well made and carefully fastened. Wires are shown holding down the weatherman's house, as well as his instruments, on p. 204.

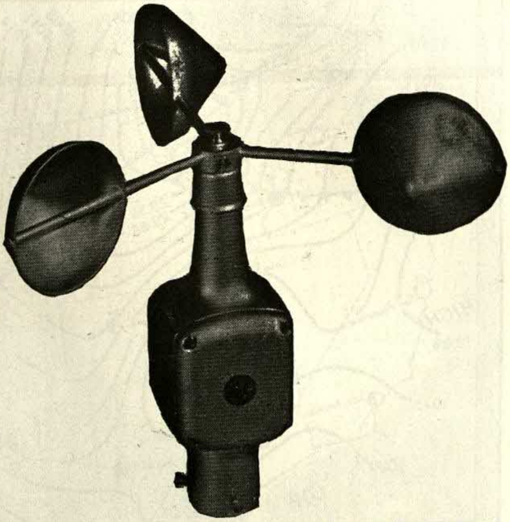
Measuring Wind Direction

A weather vane is so familiar an object that it does not need to be described here. You have probably seen dozens of weather vanes turning first one way and then another, as the wind direction changes. Sometimes there are the letters N, E, S, W attached to the pole of the weather vane so that you can tell at a glance which direction of the compass the vane is pointing toward. Even so, some people do not read the message of the weather vane correctly. Here is a hint: flags, smoke, and clouds are blown *with the wind*. The pointer heads into the wind and shows us the direction from which the wind is blowing. This is the way we name winds, too — according to the direction *from* which they blow. A north wind is one that blows *from* the north. Be careful, though, when you look at a weather map.

Admiral Beaufort's Wind Arrows

The arrows that show wind direction (called Beaufort arrows) on the weather map fly *with* the wind, with only the tail feathers showing (Fig. 109). Beaufort arrows are strange things which do not look very much like real arrows. On p. 229 you see a whole column of them. Each is a circle and a line to which other lines are fastened, some long, some short. These last are the feathers of the arrow, but they are not put there for decoration. Each line and its length shows a different wind speed. The arrows are the weatherman's code for a system of measuring wind speeds. This system was invented about 1805 by Sir Francis Beaufort.

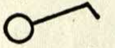
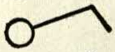
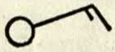
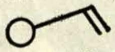
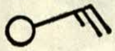
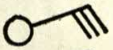
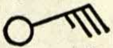
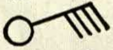
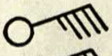
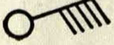
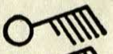
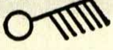
The speed of the wind is measured by an *anemometer* (an-uh-MOM-uh-ter) (Fig. 108). There are several forms, but the most common kind of anemometer has three or four cups attached to short metal bars connected to a shaft. The wind, striking the cups, makes the shaft turn. As the shaft turns, it sets a speedometer (spee-DOM-eh-ter) in motion. This speedometer is read in miles per hour just as you read the speedometer on an automobile.

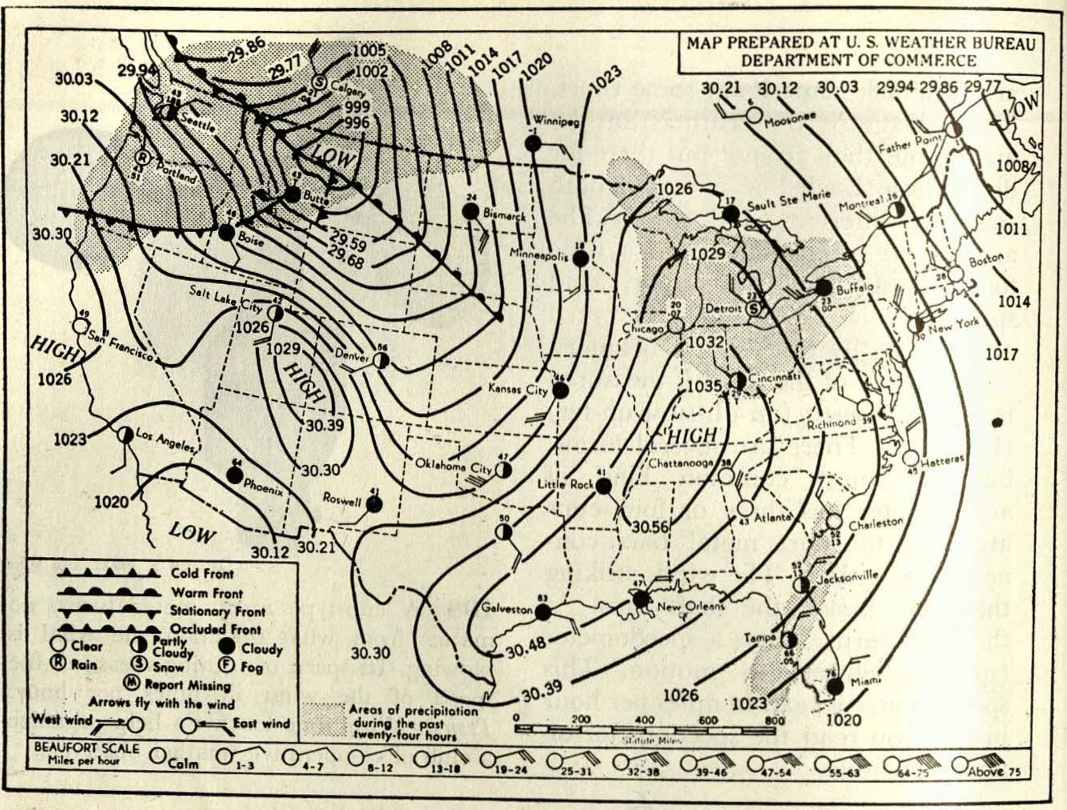


JULIEN P. FRIEZ AND SONS

108 A cup-type anemometer turns, no matter from what direction the wind is blowing. Its speed of turning measures the speed of the wind in miles per hour. *Project:* With your teacher's help organize a club of co-operative weather observers.

TABLE 6 The Beaufort Wind Scale

Scale Number	*Weather Description*	*Miles per Hour*	*Effects of the Wind*	*Beaufort Symbol*
0	Calm	0–1	Smoke rises straight up.	
1	Light air	2–3	Smoke shows wind direction.	
2	Slight breeze	4–7	Weather vanes turn, flags flap.	
3	Gentle breeze	8–12	Flags blow straight out.	
4	Moderate breeze	13–18	Dust clouds rise.	
5	Fresh breeze	19–24	Small trees bend, rivers and lakes don whitecaps.	
6	Strong breeze	25–31	Umbrellas turn inside out.	
7	High wind	32–38	You have to lean to walk.	
8	Gale	39–46	Branches break off trees.	
9	Strong gale	47–54	Shingles are torn off roofs.	
10	Whole gale	55–63	Trees topple, telephone wire and poles need repair.	
11	Storm	64–72	Damage is widespread.	
12	Hurricane	73–82	If you're alive, you are a survivor of a disaster.	



109 A weather map shows weather conditions shortly before the map was made. In our country, weather changes usually move toward the northeast. To predict weather coming your way, study the conditions west or southwest of where you live. *Project:* Using a daily weather map, make weather predictions and compare them with radio forecasts.

Upper-Air Weather Facts

Important as they are, the measurements of weather conditions in the lower part of the atmosphere do not give us all the information needed for good weather reports and predictions. Weather science has really gone "upstairs." Upper-air temperature, upper-air pressure, upper-air humidity, upper-air wind speed and

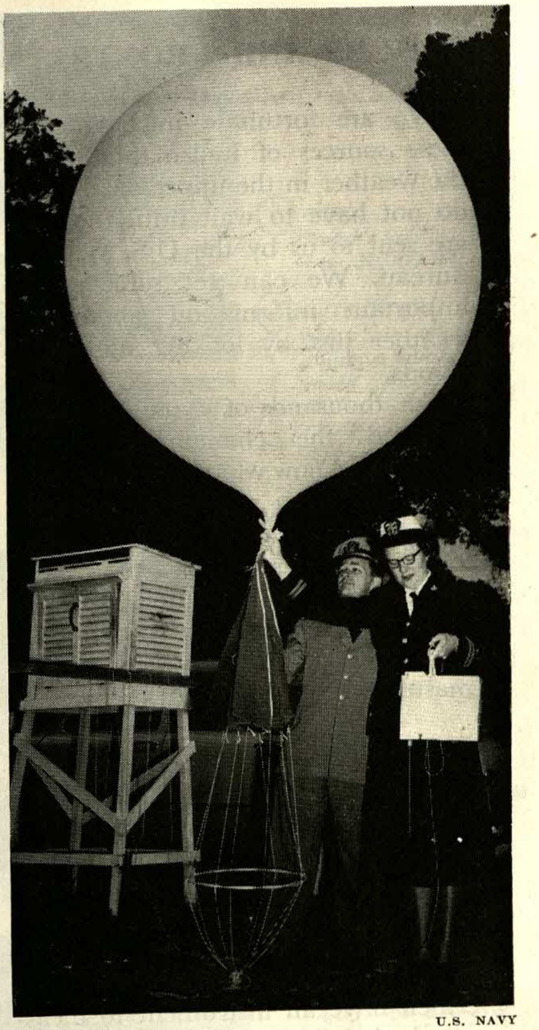
U.S. AIR FORCE

110 Winds aloft often blow at different speeds and in different directions than winds near the ground. By watching the flight of a pilot balloon with the device you see (called a theodolite), these men will learn much about the weather conditions of the upper air.

direction, and cloud study are needed for making the best weather predictions.

Special instruments are used to find out the temperature, pressure, and humidity of the upper air. These instruments are built into a lightweight radio broadcasting set known as a *radiosonde* (RAY-dee-oh-sond) (Fig. 111). The radiosonde is carried up into the air by a big balloon which, when filled with hydrogen gas, is about three feet in diameter (Fig. 111). Below the balloon is a small parachute. And below that is the radiosonde, which is about as big as a large carton of soap flakes. But it has in it a tiny short-wave radio set, a small aneroid barometer, an electric thermometer, a special psychrometer, a signal switchboard, and dry-cell batteries. The balloon rises until it gets into the thin upper air. As it rises, the outside air pressure becomes less. The hydrogen gas inside the balloon expands the balloon more and more until finally the balloon bursts. As the radiosonde starts to fall toward the earth, the parachute opens and lowers it to the earth gently. The finder returns the radiosonde to the U.S. Weather Bureau by mail (according to instructions printed on the outside of the box). If you ever find one of these boxes, be sure to mail it back promptly.

Sometimes a pilot balloon without a radiosonde is sent up. Until it becomes lost in the clouds, its path is followed by an observer who watches it through a *theodolite* (thee-OD-oh-lite) (Fig. 110). A theodolite is a telescopic range finder with which the speed and direction of the balloon may be tracked. Sometimes a balloon is tracked by radar. Sometimes the radar alone is used to get information about conditions in the upper air. Some of these balloons have been mistaken for flying saucers.



U.S. NAVY

111 Finding out what the weather is like "upstairs" in the upper air is an important part of the work of our armed forces. The balloon about to be released will carry a radiosonde aloft many thousand feet.

There are times also when weathermen go up into the air in high-flying planes to get information about weather conditions in the upper air.

CLOUDS AND FRONTS

We are fortunate in having all these sources of information about the weather in the upper air, but we do not have to wait until the facts are sent to us by the U.S. Weather Bureau. We can get some pretty important information about the weather just by looking up at the clouds.

For thousands of years, men have watched the changing sky and learned to know what kind of weather to expect. You will find it a great help to be able to know the different kinds of clouds — their shape, altitude, speed, and direction of travel. It is much easier than spotting airplanes, a skill so many of you have mastered.

Kinds of Clouds

When you study a cloud, follow two steps to find out what kind of cloud it is. First, note its size and shape, which is called its formation. Second, guess how high it is. Weathermen have an instrument to measure the height of clouds, but you can often make a fair guess because clouds of certain types are found at certain heights.

There are three main types of clouds (Fig. 112): *stratus* (STRAY-tus), *cumulus* (KYOOM-yoo-lus), and *cirrus* (SIH-rus). A stratus cloud covers the entire sky or a very large part of it with a flat sheet or layer so that you cannot see the blue of the sky if you are under this cloud. A cumulus cloud is shaped like a cauliflower or like great heaps of fluffy wool or cotton. A cirrus cloud is commonly known as "mare's tail" or "witch's broom"; it is high and white. The names of these clouds are easy to learn, especially if you can remember their original Latin meanings: *stratus* means "in layers"; *cumulus* means "a heap"; *cirrus* means "hairlike curls."[1]

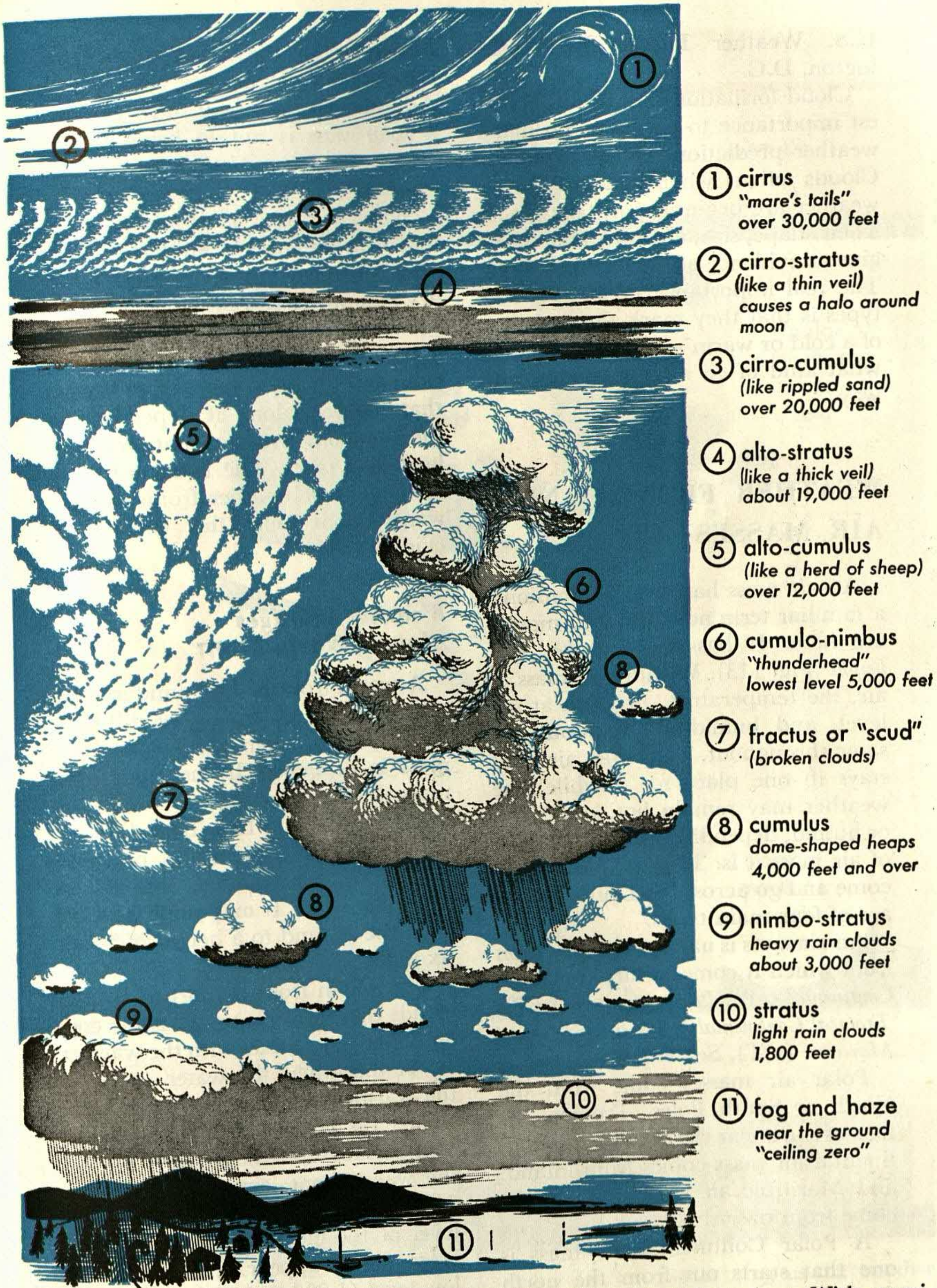
These cloud formations usually appear at certain elevations. Cirrus clouds are never found low in the sky. They form at levels from 20,000 to 40,000 feet. Stratus clouds, however, form from the ground level, where they are called *fog* (Fig. 112), to about 6,000 feet. Cirrus clouds in layers (cirro-stratus, since *stratus* means "layers") may be found at 27,000 to 30,000 feet. Cirro-stratus clouds are easy to recognize at night because they form a ring of light or halo around the moon.

Unlike stratus clouds of different kinds which form in thin layers at various levels, cumulus clouds may reach upward from perhaps 4,500 feet to a height of 10,000 feet or more. Among these are the familiar anvil-shaped thunderheads. They appear before a thunderstorm and warn us of its coming. No matter where you are — in a canoe, sailboat, airplane, or playing in a meadow — always heed the warning of the thunderhead cloud.

Of course, there are many other kinds of clouds, but unless you intend to become a real weatherman, they need not concern you. If you are interested, you can get an illustrated book or chart describing every cloud form, just by writing to the

---

[1] To these three names may be added several prefixes, three of which you might want to know. They are: *alto*, meaning "high"; *fracto*, meaning "broken"; and *nimbus*, meaning "rain." Thus an alto-stratus cloud is a high stratus cloud. A fracto-cumulus is a broken mass of cumulus clouds. A nimbo-stratus cloud is a dark rain cloud, and a cumulo-nimbus is a thunderhead.



If you watch the clouds very long, you will see all the types shown here. With experience you can learn to predict weather from cloud types. *Project:* Why not make a study of clouds? Keep a record for two weeks of the kinds you see each day and the weather for that day. Then, for two weeks, try to predict the weather. How nearly right were you?

U.S. Weather Bureau in Washington, D.C.

Cloud formations are of the greatest importance to persons who make weather predictions or fly airplanes. Clouds tell us when changes in the weather are beginning to take place. Their shape, size, altitude, and speed give us evidence of the weather aloft. The real importance of many cloud types is that they mark the presence of a cold or warm air *front* and tell us what kind of *air mass* is coming our way.

WEATHER FRONTS AND AIR MASSES

An air mass has three dimensions, a familiar term now that 3-D movies are here. It has *length*, *width*, and *height* (Fig. 113). Within any mass of air, the temperature, pressure at sea level, and humidity are about the same throughout. Thus if an air mass stays in one place for a while, the weather may remain hot, cold, dry, or humid, depending upon what kind of air mass it is. The air masses that come and go across the United States are of four main types.

An air mass is named for the region from which it comes. Ours are: *Polar Continental* (cP), *Polar Maritime* (mP), *Tropical Continental* (cT), and *Tropical Maritime* (mT). See Fig. 113.

Polar air masses come from the North or South Poles. Tropical air masses start near the equator. A Continental air mass comes from inland, and Maritime air masses, of course, come from over the sea.

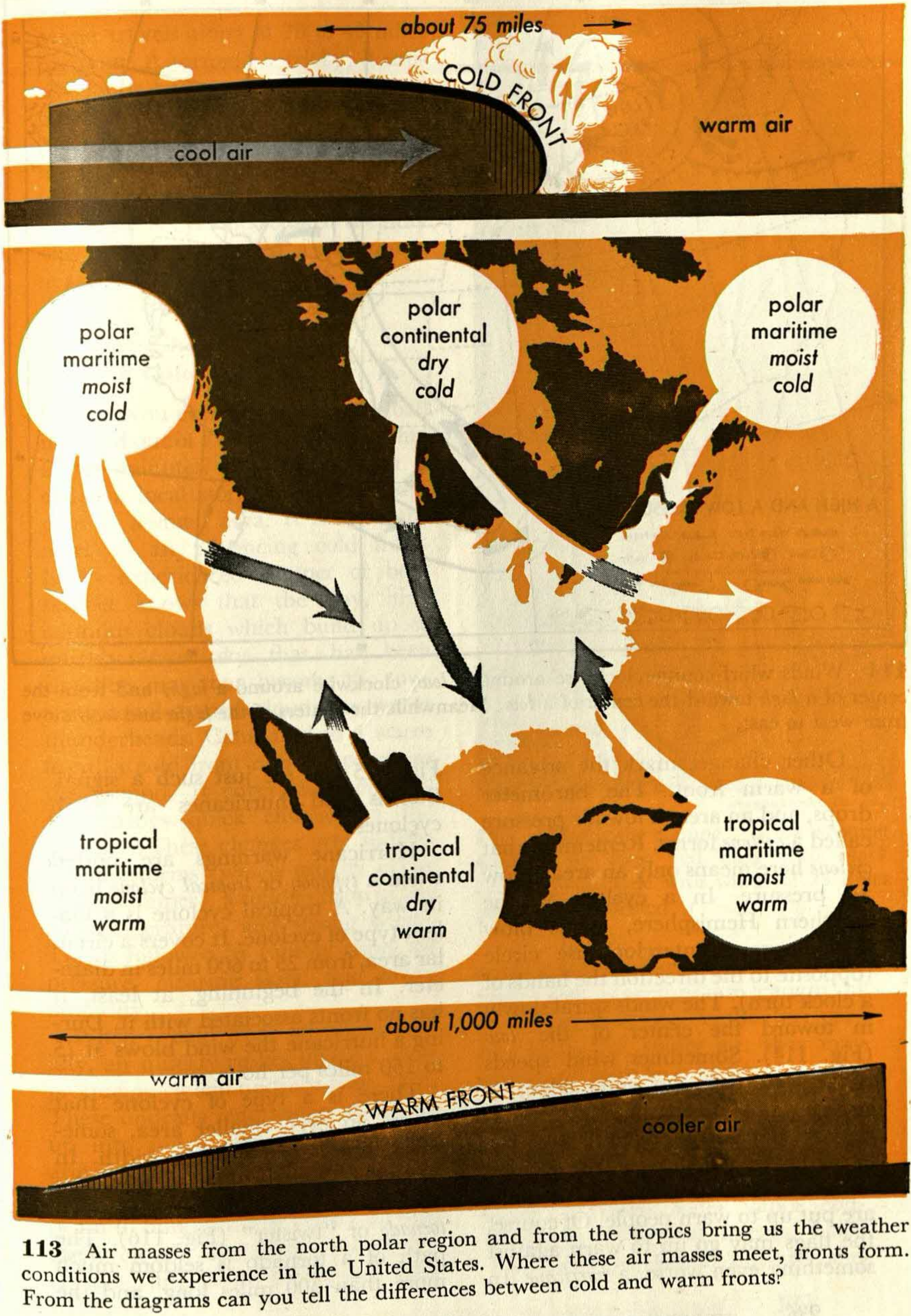
A Polar Continental air mass is one that starts out from the north central part of Canada. A Polar Maritime air mass may come from the North Pacific or the North Atlantic. As you may have guessed, a *polar mass* is apt to bring us *cool weather*, and a *tropical air mass*, *warm weather*.

Whenever one kind of air mass meets an air mass of another type, a *front* is formed. The front is the boundary line of the two air masses. Along the front, clouds form and rain falls, if conditions are right. The type of front and the type of weather changes that happen along it depend upon the kinds of air masses that meet and how they meet. The two most common types of weather fronts are the warm front and the cold front (Fig. 113).

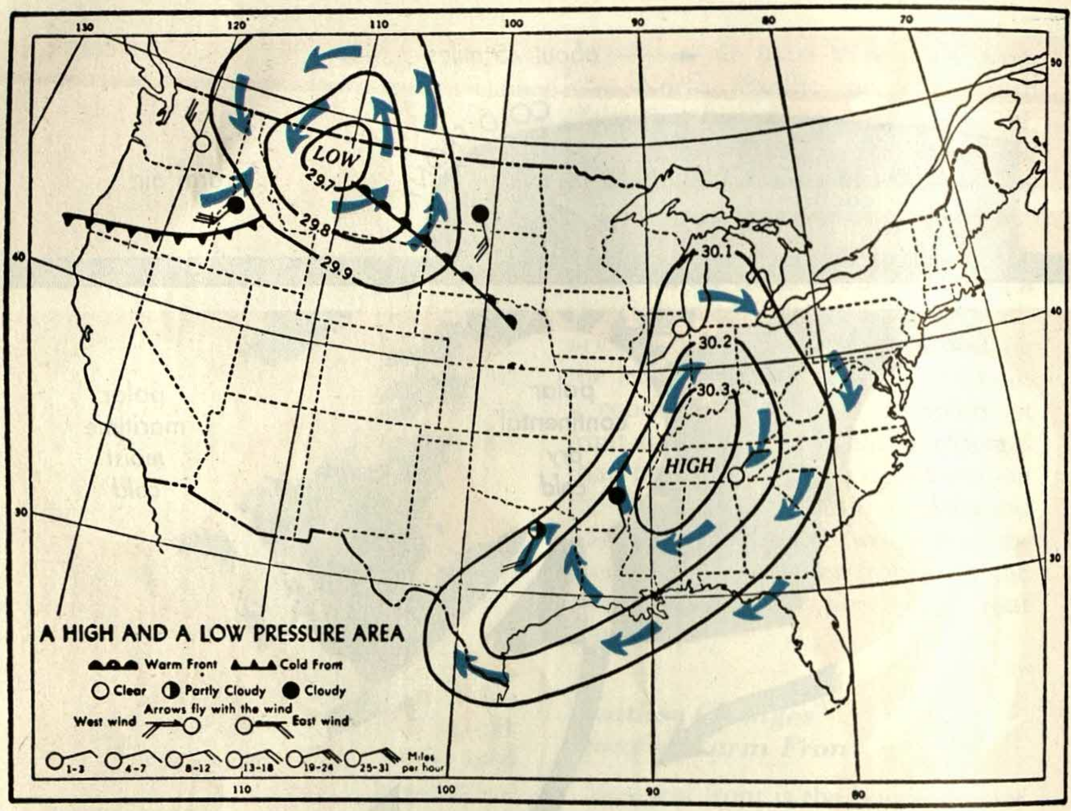
Weather Changes Along a Warm Front

A warm front is the boundary line between two air masses of different temperatures when the warmer air mass is *advancing*. If the colder air mass were advancing, we would call it a cold front. This boundary or front may be 1,000 miles or more long across the country, and 500 to 600 miles wide. It may slope upward from the ground to a height of about six miles.

The warm front is marked by the clouds that form along it. As the cool air of one mass mixes with the warmer air of the other, the water vapor in the warmer air condenses and forms clouds (as if the warm air struck a cold surface). At the highest level of the warm front, cirrus clouds form. As the front advances, the bottom level of the cloud ceiling drops and larger clouds appear. At last come the low-level (1,000 to 3,000 feet) stratus clouds from which rain falls.



113 Air masses from the north polar region and from the tropics bring us the weather conditions we experience in the United States. Where these air masses meet, fronts form. From the diagrams can you tell the differences between cold and warm fronts?



114 Winds whirl counterclockwise around a *low;* clockwise around a *high;* and from the center of a *high* toward the center of a *low*. Meanwhile the centers of the *highs* and *lows* move from west to east.

Other changes mark the advance of a warm front. The barometer drops, and an area of low air pressure called a *cyclone* forms. Remember that *cyclone* here means only an area of low air pressure. In a cyclone in the Northern Hemisphere, winds blow in a large counterclockwise circle (opposite to the direction the hands of a clock turn). The winds spiral slowly in toward the center of the *low* (Fig. 114). Sometimes wind speeds range from light (at outer edge) to stronger gale force (near center), and the area covered is 500 to 2,000 miles in diameter. Then we call the cyclone a *storm*. It is then that storm warnings are put up to warn people. Of course, the flags may go up to warn against something even worse, a *hurricane*. In Fig. 115 you see just such a signal. Storms and hurricanes are both cyclones.

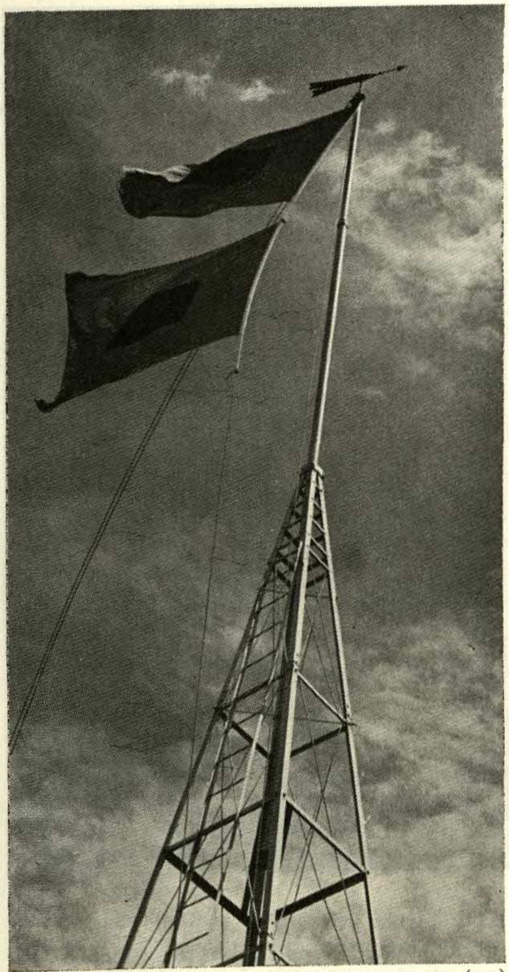
Hurricane warnings are posted when a *typhoon* or *tropical cyclone* is on its way. A tropical cyclone is a violent type of cyclone. It covers a circular area, from 25 to 600 miles in diameter. In the beginning, at least, it has no fronts associated with it. During a hurricane the wind blows at 75 to 150 miles per hour.

There is a type of cyclone that covers an even smaller area, sometimes less than a mile in width. In it winds may whirl as fast as 500 miles per hour or more. This is the terrible *tornado* or "twister" (Fig. 116). The path of a tornado is seldom much more than 300 miles long, and the center travels along at 25 to 40 miles per hour. A tornado is tricky; it usually loops back on its path to hit a place more than once while skipping buildings no farther away than across the street. Sometimes it jumps over a few houses only to come down and hit again. A cyclone cellar is the only safe place to be when a tornado is near.

Weather Changes Along a Cold Front

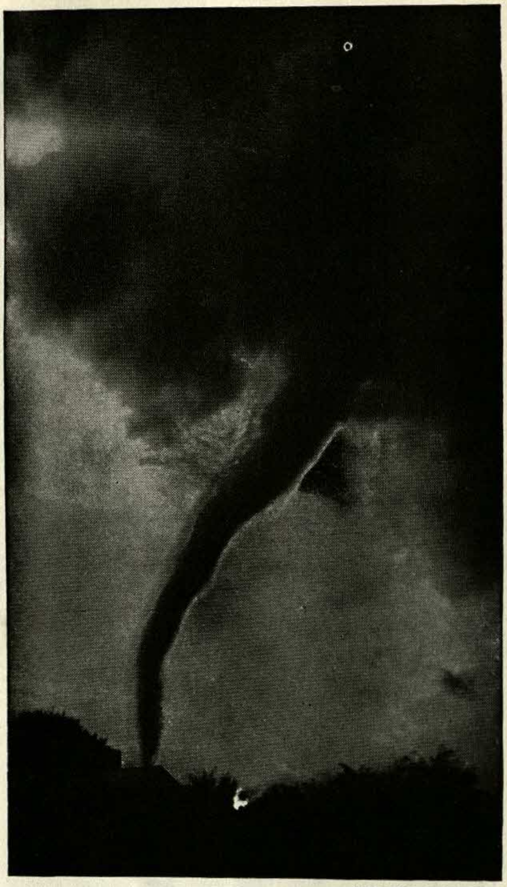
Have you ever driven along a road into and out of a thunderstorm within a few minutes? A thunderstorm is called a local storm because it happens in a small area. It is often the mark of an advancing cold front. Every experienced camper or boat skipper knows that the tiny, high cumulus clouds which build up so quickly in a sky that has been cloudless may soon become the towering anvil-shaped clouds known as thunderheads. Compared to a warm front, a cold front rises steeply from the ground. It covers less territory and brings quick changes in the weather. These changes are: sudden thunderstorms (which usually occur in the summer), a sudden drop in the air temperature, and strong winds. This is followed by rapidly rising air pressure, clearing skies, and lower humidity.

When a cold front advances rapidly, air quickly rushes upward, thus producing violent updrafts (Fig. 113). These updrafts send warm, moist air up into much cooler levels of the atmosphere. There water vapor condenses. High thunderhead clouds begin to build up. The upper parts of these clouds are made up of ice crystals, and from the lower parts come great amounts of pouring rain. Sometimes raindrops are caught in the strong updrafts. As they are carried to higher, cooler air, they may freeze and take on a coating of snow or frost. When this happens, they become hailstones. As the hailstones take on weight, they start to fall. At lower levels they may gather more weight as more water vapor condenses on them and freezes. Hailstones may be blown upward and



STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

115 "Hurricane coming!" is the warning signaled by these red flags with black centers. A cyclone with winds of 75 miles per hour is expected.



BROWN BROTHERS

116 Take cover *fast* if you ever see a funnel-shaped cloud like this one, for a tornado is near. What may happen to a house in its path?

drop downward many times, each time gathering a fresh layer of ice, before becoming large enough to fall to the earth. Some hailstones are as big as baseballs. Needless to say, large hailstones may do a great deal of damage to crops, greenhouses, and other property.

USING WEATHER MAPS

You now have enough information about weather conditions and their causes to understand a weather map. The daily weather map sent out by the U.S. Weather Bureau has much more information than you need to use just now. This information is needed by local weathermen. An official weather map explains what each of the marks and numbers means. (See also Fig. 109.) The back of the map has more printed information about the symbols.

Send to the U.S. Weather Bureau for a series of daily maps. By placing one alongside another, you will be able to see how air masses and fronts travel across the country.

Lines on Weather Maps

Now look at the weather map in Fig. 114. The peculiar solid curving lines you see drawn across the map are called *isobars* (EYE-soh-bahrz). The letters *iso* mean "same"; the letters *bar* come from "barometer." Isobars join places that have reported the same barometric (air) pressure. The closer together the isobars are drawn, the more rapid are the changes in air pressure in the areas they cover.

You may also see broken curved lines on your map. These broken lines are *isotherms* (EYE-soh-thermz), joining the places that have reported similar temperatures.

Isobars and isotherms help anyone reading the map to see at a glance where the same conditions prevail. With this information, plus the readings of your own instruments, plus a glance at the clouds and another at the calendar, plus what you have learned about the causes of weather changes, you should now be ready to try your skill as an amateur weather prophet.

Your Work as an Amateur Weatherman

Start your work as a weatherman by sending for daily copies of the weather map. Then make a large chart with spaces for entering all the information you have gathered on one line straight across the chart. We suggest the headings shown in the sample chart.

You should do this kind of observing until you are able to predict future weather correctly for an average of three times out of four, or 75%.

First, you will have the pleasure of developing an important new skill, one which may be very useful to you. Second, you will be ready to help the U.S. Weather Bureau. Perhaps they will give you permission to hang a sign over your door reading:

METEOROLOGIST—CO-OPERATIVE OBSERVER FOR THE UNITED STATES WEATHER BUREAU

In war and in peace, our country depends upon the work of the amateur weathermen of America. Why don't you become one?

My Weather Chart

Date of observation	6/15	
Time of observation	12:04 PM	
Present air temperature	76° F.	
Present air pressure (barometric pressure)	100.2 millibars	
Percentage of relative humidity	54%	
Change in percentage of relative humidity	53% (8 A.M.) 60% (11 A.M.)	DO
Kind of precipation (if any)	None	
Precipitation since last entry	None	NOT
Direction of wind	East	WRITE
Speed of wind	1.7 mi. per hr.	
Further remarks about the wind	Gentle breeze	IN
Condition of the sky	Clear	THIS
Type of front coming*	Warm	
Type of air mass coming*	cP, from Canada	BOOK
Approximate speed of coming front (or air mass)*	500 mi. per day	
My position with respect to the nearest high (or low)*	Due East	
U.S. Weather Bureau's prediction*	Fair	
My prediction	Fair	
What actually happened†	Fair	

* Get this information from the weather map.

† Enter 24 hours later.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

maximum-minimum thermometer
barometer
stratus cloud
cumulus cloud
cirrus cloud
front
high
barograph
aneroid
altimeter
air mass
cyclone
low
hurricane
theodolite
psychrometer
anemometer
radiosonde
tornado
isobars
isotherms

1. winds blowing counterclockwise about an area of low air pressure
2. an instrument for measuring air pressure by means of a tube containing mercury
3. a heaped-up cloud
4. lines on a weather map connecting observatories reporting the same temperature
5. a thermometer that records the highest and lowest temperatures
6. an instrument used to find relative humidity
7. a layer of clouds covering a large portion of the sky
8. lines on a weather map connecting places reporting the same air pressure
9. an instrument that records air-pressure changes on a graph
10. the boundary between two air masses
11. a barometer that uses no mercury or other liquid
12. a high "mare's tail" cloud
13. a wind of 75 miles per hour or more
14. an instrument for measuring the speed of the wind
15. an area of low air pressure marked on a weather map
16. an aneroid barometer used for measuring the height above sea level
17. a large body of air having, level for level, the same temperature, pressure, and humidity
18. a violent windstorm noted for its funnel-shaped cloud
19. a radio and other instruments attached to a balloon which is sent aloft

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Some facts the U.S. Weather Bureau gathers include the . . . and direction of the wind, the . . . and . . . of the air, the amount of . . . in the air, the kind of clouds and their . . ., and the number of inches of . . . . The Weather Bureau also wants to know the location of cold or warm, wet or dry . . . and the kind of . . . that is between them.

2. If you were making a mercury barometer, you would need a . . . tube than if you were making a thermometer.

3. At the top of a mountain 5,000 feet high, the mercury in a barometer tube will weigh . . . than at sea level.

4. It is more likely to rain when the relative humidity is . . . .

5. The amount of relative humidity is always written as the . . . of water vapor in the air compared to the amount the air could hold if the temperature remained the same.

6. Moisture collects as dew on objects when they have been . . . .

7. A Beaufort arrow showing a wind of 25 to 31 miles per hour from the northeast would be drawn thus . . . on a weather map.

8. Isobars on a weather map are . . . lines connecting places reporting the same . . . .

9. The oldest method of observing the approach of changing weather without the use of instruments is to observe the . . . and to note changes in their . . . and . . . .

10. A person who makes his own weather observations and reports them regularly to the U.S. Weather Bureau is called a . . . .

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN
Dept. of Extension
SERVICE.
CALCUTTA-27

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Organizing a Weather Bureau in your school.* Divide into groups that will keep the records suggested on p. 239. Then study the facts, decide upon a prediction, and post it. Compare your predictions with the predictions of the U.S. Weather Bureau.

2. *Comparing centigrade and Fahrenheit thermometers.* Get a laboratory thermometer that is marked with both the Fahrenheit and centigrade scales. Compare the boiling point of water and the melting point of ice on the two scales. Then learn how to change from one scale to another by doing the simple examples given below.

To change centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply by $\frac{9}{5}$ and add 32.

Problem: Change 20° C. to F.

$20 \times \frac{9}{5} = 36$

$36 + 32 = 68$

Answer: 20° C. = 68° F.

To change Fahrenheit to centigrade, subtract 32 and multiply by $\frac{5}{9}$.

Problem: Change 212° F. to C.

$212 - 32 = 180$

$180 \times \frac{5}{9} = 100$

Answer: 212° F. = 100° C.

Now change:

25° C. to F.
50° F. to C.
140° F. to C.
50° C. to F.

3. *Making a weather movie booklet.* Draw a United States map, about 2½ inches by 1½ inches, showing just the outline of our country. Draw it on a piece of cardboard. Cut out the pattern and trace it on 25 or 30 small pieces of paper. Draw in the position of the highs and lows as they appear on the daily weather map for about two weeks. Use maps at a time when the highs and lows are moving quite rapidly. Then bind the book at the narrow edge and flip it open with your finger. You will have a moving picture of weather changes.

4. *Collecting clouds.* If your camera is a kind to which you can attach a filter, buy a yellow (K–2) and a red filter. Take them along with you on a cloud hunt. Try each filter separately. Which one works better? Take pictures of clouds of various types, to enlarge and exhibit.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Here are certain weather conditions observed in your town. The barometer is falling, the temperature is rising, the wind direction is changing from west to east and its speed is increasing, and low stratus clouds are forming. Explain your weather prediction.

2. Name five good ways to get correct weather information.

3. Why are the following statements about the weather untrue?

a. A high barometer always means fair weather.

b. Hail is harmless.

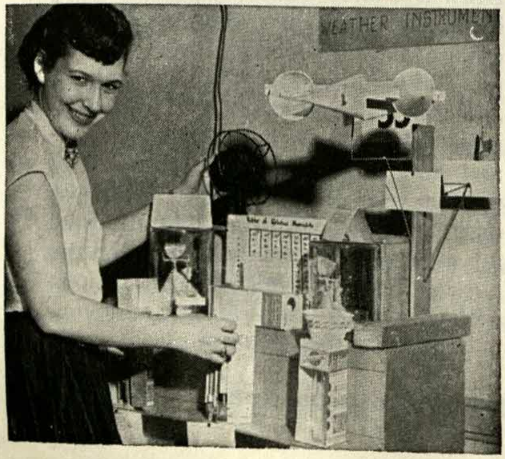
c. Dew falls on cloudy nights.

Adding to Your Library

1. Request from the U.S. Weather Bureau, c/o the Department of Commerce, the class packet for the study of weather. Ask them to include, if possible, the booklets *Cloud Forms*, *Instructions for Co-operative Observers*, and *Weather Forecasting*. Read these from cover to cover if you want to be a weatherman.

117 This sixteen-year old high school student built these weather instruments herself, and you can build ones like them if you try. *Project:* Get together with your classmates and plan an exhibit of those you build.

SCIENCE SERVICE



2. *The Boy Scout Handbook on the Weather* is excellent for those who want to become amateur weathermen.

3. *Weather* by Gayle B. Pickwell, McGraw-Hill, 1938. Get this book, for excellent cloud photographs.

4. *Clouds, Air, and Wind* by Eric Sloane, Devin-Adair, 1941. The author of this book is an artist whose pictures will help you understand the weather.

5. *How to Know and Predict the Weather* by Robert Moore Fisher, Mentor, 1951. This inexpensive pocket book tells you what causes the weather and besides has a handy guide for making forecasts.

6. *All About the Weather* by Ivan Ray Tannehill, Random House, 1953, covers all the common and some uncommon facts about the weather.

7. *Weather Almanac* by J. Henry Weber, News Syndicate, 220 East 42nd St., New York (17), N. Y., 1954. Gives complete data on weather and astronomy for the New York City area, plus climate data for the entire United States.

A Bit of Research

Make an appointment to visit your local office of the U.S. Weather Bureau and make pictures of the weather instruments that are used by the experts. Prepare a set of questions in advance, which you can hand to the man who will be your guide. During the tour, note his answers carefully.

Careers for You

People who make a lifework of weather science are called *meteorologists* (mee-tee-er-OL-uh-jistz). Ask your guidance counselor, or write to the college of your choice and find out what kind of courses you should study in high school if you want to become a meteorologist.

CHAPTER 12

Weather by the Season

Spring, summer, autumn, winter. Why don't we have summer only? Why must we have seasons? One part of the answer is 93 million miles away. Another part is in the way the earth slants.

If you happened to live in Labrador or Scandinavia, you would have only two seasons — summer and winter. The ancient Anglo-Saxons of England and the early North American Indians divided the year simply into cold and warm seasons. In the tropics, wet and dry seasons are the only ones that matter. Some places, such as Burma and India, have three seasons — cold, hot, and rainy. There the rainy seasons and the winds that come with them are called *monsoons*. The Melanesians (mel-ah-NEE-shanz) of the southwest Pacific have even more seasons. We in the temperate zones have four seasons — spring, summer, autumn, and winter.

WHAT CAUSES SEASONS?

From your daily experience, you know that the length of day and night changes with the seasons. During summer the day is longer than the night. And in winter the opposite is true. What is the explanation?

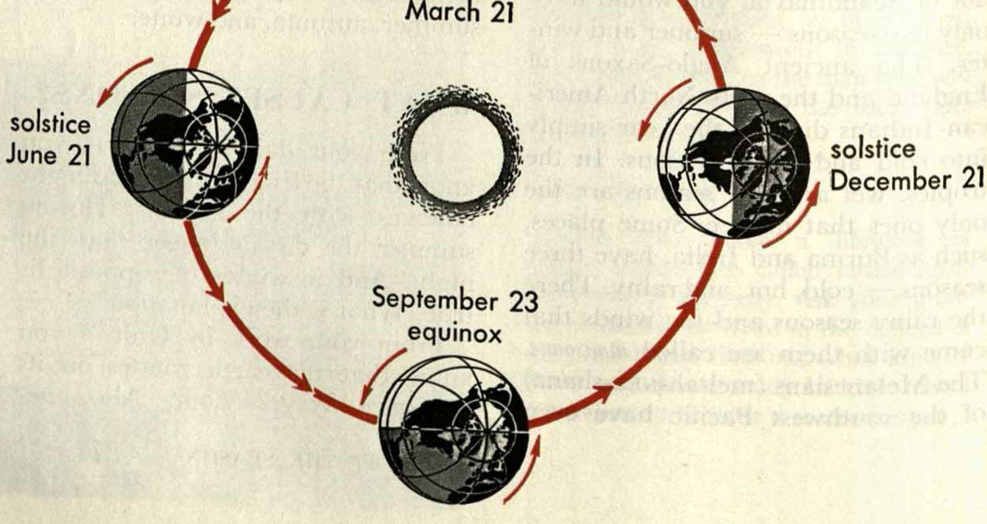
From your work in Unit 3 you know that the earth rotates on its axis once every 24 hours. Also, one-half of the earth is always in the dark, and the other half is always in the light. Thus you would expect all parts of the earth to have 12 hours of daytime and 12 hours of nighttime every day in the year. But this is not so.

The reason this is not so is explained by Fig. 118. Examine it carefully. Notice that the axis upon which the earth rotates is not at right angles to a line drawn from the sun to the earth's axis. Do you see it is tilted at an angle of 23.5 degrees? The direction of this tilt is such that the North Pole of the earth points toward the North Star. Figure 118 also helps you to see what this tilting of the earth's axis at 23.5 degrees has to do with the length of day and night.

As you examine Fig. 118, you will note that, during the summer in the Northern Hemisphere, the north polar region is tilted toward the sun. Do you see that in this position the sun's rays cover the entire Northern Hemisphere? If you could see the South Pole, you would find that it is in complete darkness during the northern summer. Therefore, if you live in the North Temperate Zone, your region spends more than half of each 24 hours in the sun's rays in summer. In summer, the day is, therefore, longer than the night. In winter, the night is longer than the day.

When the North Pole is tilted away from the sun, the South Pole is tilted toward the sun. Thus, while the Northern Hemisphere is having short days and winter, the Southern Hemisphere is having long days and sum-

118 This diagram shows the positions of the earth in its orbit on the days that mark the beginning of each of the four seasons. Half the earth is always in darkness. Its axis always points toward the pole star.



mer. At that time the Southern Hemisphere spends more than half of every twenty-four hours in the sun's rays. Can you see also from your study of Fig. 118 that in December the North Pole is in complete darkness during the entire 24-hour period? At this time the North Pole is turned away from the sun and gets none of its rays. Therefore it is true that the length of the days and nights changes with the seasons. In the North Temperate Zone, there are long days in summer and short days in winter. If there were no other way to note the march of the seasons, we could do it simply by noting the changes in the length of the days and nights.

The March of the Seasons

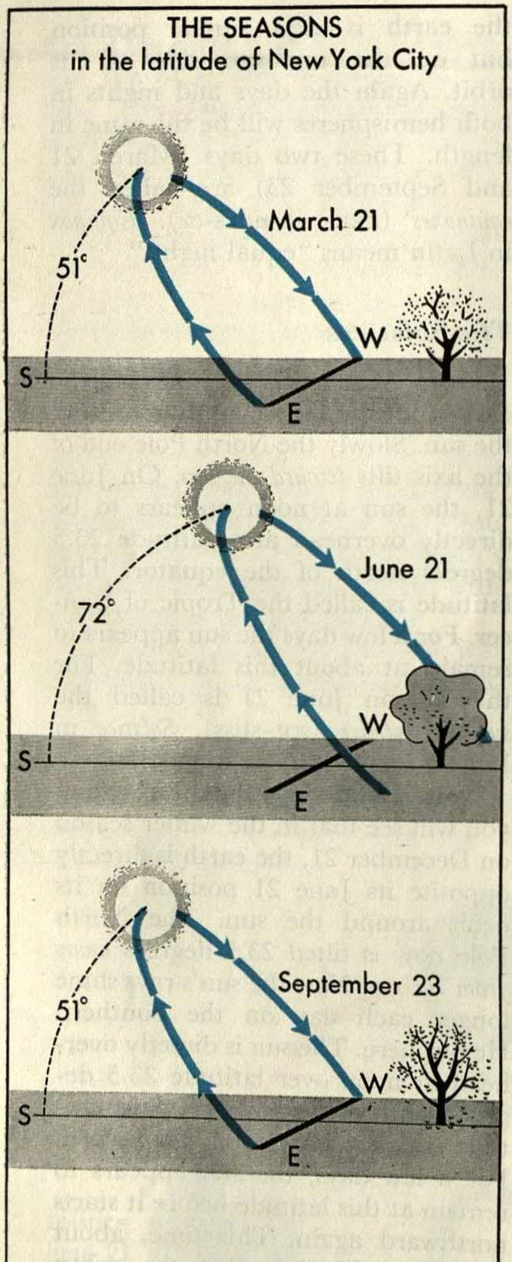
Of course we have the calendar to help us keep track of the seasons. March 21 is generally the beginning of spring. June 21 marks the beginning of summer, September 23 introduces us to fall, and December 21 is the first day of winter. (These dates may vary by a few days.) Have you ever asked yourself why the seasons start on or about these dates?

To answer this question, examine the position of the earth in its relation to the sun on these dates. Study Fig. 118 carefully as you read this. About March 21 the length of the night in the Northern Hemisphere is the same as the length of the night in the Southern Hemisphere. On March 21, at the equator, the sun is exactly overhead at noon. The earth is in the position shown in Fig. 118. As you can see, in this position the axis of the earth is not tilted away from or toward the sun. Therefore both hemispheres get equal amounts of light on March 21. On September 23, the earth is in a similar position but on the opposite side of its orbit. Again the days and nights in both hemispheres will be the same in length. These two days (March 21 and September 23) are called the *equinoxes* (EEK-wih-noks-ez). *Equinox* in Latin means "equal night."

The Solstices

From March 21 to June 21, the earth continues its revolution around the sun. Slowly the North Pole end of the axis tilts *toward the sun*. On June 21, the sun at noon appears to be directly overhead at a latitude 23.5 degrees north of the equator. This latitude is called the Tropic of Cancer. For a few days the sun appears to remain at about this latitude. For that reason June 21 is called the *summer solstice* (SOL-stiss). *Solstice* in Latin means "sun standing still."

Now if you study Fig. 118 again, you will see that in the winter season on December 21, the earth is directly opposite its June 21 position on its orbit around the sun. The North Pole now is tilted 23.5 degrees *away from the sun*. Now the sun's rays shine longer each day on the Southern Hemisphere. The sun is directly overhead at noon over latitude 23.5 degrees south of the equator. This latitude is the Tropic of Capricorn. For a few days, the sun appears to remain at this latitude before it starts northward again. This time, about December 21, is called the *winter solstice*, the beginning of winter in the Northern Hemisphere. The same date marks the summer solstice in the Southern Hemisphere. Figure 119 shows the apparent path of the sun and its noon position over a period of a year in the latitude of New York City. We



119 The latitude of New York City is about 41 degrees. Along this line of latitude across the United States, the sun rises directly in the east twice a year. Its height in the sky at noon is different for each day. It is lowest the day winter begins, and highest the day summer starts. *Project:* Try to make a similar "map" for the place where you live.

say *apparent* path because it is, of course, the earth that moves around the sun. The sun only *appears* to move and change its position.

Although the sun is highest in the sky at noon, it is never directly overhead north of the Tropic of Cancer or south of the Tropic of Capricorn. The Torrid Zone between these two tropics is 47 degrees wide.

The basic reasons, then, why we have our seasons are:

1. The earth revolves around the sun (once during the year).
2. The earth's axis is tilted 23.5 degrees.

THE FOUR SEASONS

Living things need no notice from the Weather Bureau to tell them when a new season has come. Each season has its own effects upon all living things.

Spring

For those who need a date, March 21 is the official first day of spring, but the actual date may be one or two days later or earlier. This is true also of the dates marking the beginning and end of the other seasons.

As you remember, on or about March 21, the sun seems to cross the equator and is right overhead at noon for all who dwell on that line. On

March 21, the spring equinox, the night is the same length in the Northern Hemisphere as in the Southern Hemisphere. The sun rises directly in the east and sets directly in the west. As you can see in the table, all parts of the world have 12 hours of daylight and 12 hours of darkness on the day of the spring equinox, March 21.

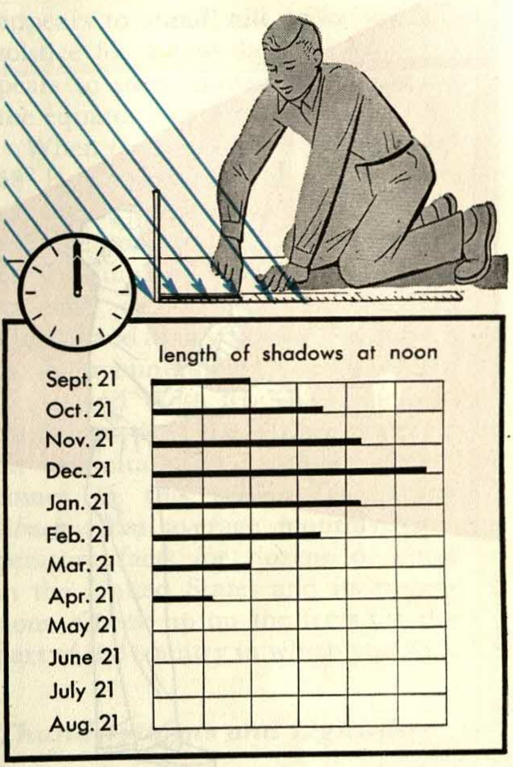
Notice how the hours of daylight gradually increase in all parts of the Northern Hemisphere from December 21 until June 21. Right there you have part of the explanation for the change from winter weather conditions to summer weather conditions. From December 21 to June 21, the hours of sunlight increase in the Northern Hemisphere. This happens because the North Pole and the Northern Hemisphere are tilted more and more toward the sun during these months.

Hours of Daylight

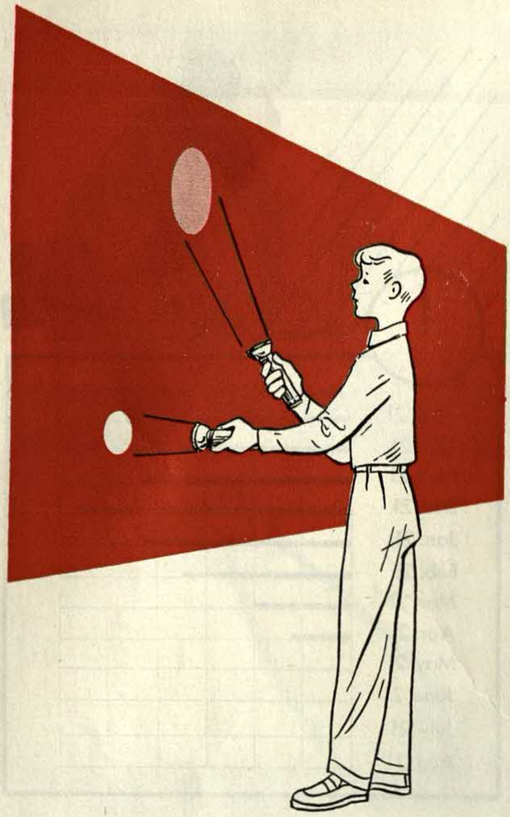
	Dec. 21	*Mar. 21*	*June 21*	*Sept. 23*
NORTHERN HEMISPHERE				
North Pole	0	12	24	12
Arctic Circle	1	12	23	12
40 degrees north latitude	9	12	15	12
Tropic of Cancer	10½	12	13½	12
EQUATOR	**12**	**12**	**12**	**12**
SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE				
Tropic of Capricorn	13½	12	10½	12
40 degrees south latitude	15	12	9	12
Antarctic Circle	23	12	1	12
South Pole	24	12	0	12

Slanting Rays and Changing Seasons

The other half of the reason for changing seasons lies in the changing slant (angle) of the sun's rays as they strike the earth. The sun's rays themselves do not slant. It is the earth that changes its position in such a way that the sun's rays appear to slant in at changing angles. Figure 119 shows how much more the sun's rays seem to slant on December 21 than on June 21. You can prove this by measuring the length of a shadow at noon on each of those dates. The boy in Fig. 120 shows you how to do this. The more the sun's rays slant, the longer the shadows it casts. For the same reason a late-afternoon or early-morning shadow is longer than a noon shadow.



120 *Project.* Measure the sun shadows and make a chart of your observations. Why should all measurements be made at the same time of day? Why is noon a good time to make these measurements?



121 Try this: Point only one flashlight first at a slant and then straight toward the wall. Which spot of light is brighter? Which spot of light is larger? Why?

The sun's light is spread over a wider surface as the slant of its rays increases. Figure 121 demonstrates this.

We suggest that you use a flashlight for the light of the sun. That way you will not have to wait three to six months to complete your observations. Try holding your own flashlight in the same positions against the wall of your room. While you do this, have a friend measure the size of the spot of light with a ruler.

What do your results show? You will find that the size of the spot of light is smallest when the flashlight is pointed straight at the wall. The size of the spot of light grows bigger as the flashlight is turned toward the ceiling so that the rays slant.

Let us suppose that in the summer the sun's rays cover just 100 acres or 100 square blocks of land in a certain part of the Northern Hemisphere. In the winter, as the earth's axis tilts away from the sun, the sun's rays which covered 100 acres now spread over more than 100 acres of land. This is so because the sun's rays in winter come in at a greater slant and thus cover more land. This is what your flashlight experiment has just shown you. Since the same number of rays bring the same amount of heat, it follows that less heat will be supplied to *each* acre in winter than in summer. Therefore the weather will be colder in winter than in summer.

You may have thought, as some people do, that it is colder in winter because the earth may be farther from the sun. Actually the opposite is true. The earth is about 3 million miles closer to the sun in January than it is in July. It is the angle at which the sun's rays hit the earth and not the earth's distance from the sun which causes our changes of temperature from season to season.

As the sun travels higher and higher in the sky (Fig. 119) from December 21 to June 21, the time the sun is in the sky grows longer and the number of hours of daylight increases. The land, the water, and the air in the Northern Hemisphere are exposed longer to the sun's rays and so take more heat from them. Therefore the weather becomes warmer and living things behave accordingly.

We have left one fact out of this

picture until now. Do you know what it is? It is the effect that passing through the earth's atmosphere has upon the sun's rays. The rays have a longer trip through the earth's atmosphere when they come in on a slant than they do when they come in at a steeper angle or a right angle. Scientists have found that the atmosphere acts as a kind of filter or screen for certain rays in sunlight. These are the rays that have the greatest effect on the growth of plants and that give us a coat of tan. They are the ultraviolet rays. From March 21 to September 23, when the sun's rays are less slanting, more ultraviolet rays reach the earth. This is another reason why spring and summer are not only warm seasons but the best seasons for plant growth (and for getting suntanned).

To most of us, the air feels balmy and springlike when the temperature rises to between 50° F. and 60° F. A study of the average daily temperatures in this country for a period of 46 years showed that average temperatures of 50° F. begin as early as February 1 in some of our southern states but are not common in northern New England until May 15. On what date does your area begin to have an average daily temperature of 50° F.?

Summer Weather

Farmers and astronomers do not always agree on the date of the first summer day. The official first day of summer (according to astronomers) in the Northern Hemisphere is June 21. Then the sun seems to be directly above the Tropic of Cancer, 23.5 degrees of latitude north of the equator. As it is seen from the earth, the sun appears to stand still at its summer solstice for a few days. Then it appears to start moving south toward the equator (see Fig. 119).

When temperatures average about 68° F., summer has come. Some parts of the United States never have average summer temperatures over 68° F. Summer temperatures arrive as early as March 1 in southern Florida and as late as July 1 to July 15 in the mountainous sections of the North and West. To some places in the far north of the United States or on mountaintops, summer never comes in this sense. The *World Almanac* has average monthly temperature facts for dozens of cities in the United States and its possessions. Check up on the facts for the part of the country in which you live.

Thunderstorms and Lightning

Thunderstorms, of course, bring *lightning* and *thunder*. Which comes first, the thunder or the lightning? Lightning comes first, although many people believe that the opposite is true.

There are many theories to explain how lightning is made. All we need to understand now is that clouds can become charged with electricity. The electrical charges, you may remember from your earlier science work, are of two kinds, positive (+) and negative (−). It is thought that under special conditions a cloud may develop positive charges in one part and negative charges in another part. Or one cloud may develop negative charges, another only positive charges. Positive and negative charges attract each other. When the number of negative charges has become large enough, they jump to a cloud having positive charges. We then say that the cloud with negative charges is discharged. This discharge in the form of a flash is lightning. A discharge of lightning may also take place between a cloud and the earth or some object on the earth, such as a tree, a person, a building, or a lightning rod.

The discharge of lightning heats and expands the air in its path. The gases in the air are pushed aside and pressed into a small space. As the air expands suddenly and then bounces back, you hear a loud noise. This noise is thunder. The rolls and rumbles of thunder you hear are nothing more than echoes bouncing off masses of clouds.

Standing under a tree during a thunderstorm is a good way to ask for injury or death. At the first hint of an approaching storm, what should you do if you are swimming or playing golf or working in an open field? You should seek shelter in a house. If you are in an automobile during a thunderstorm, you need not leave it, for all-metal automobiles are safe shelters to be in. During a severe lightning storm, beware of parking a car under a tree that may topple over and crush it.

Autumn

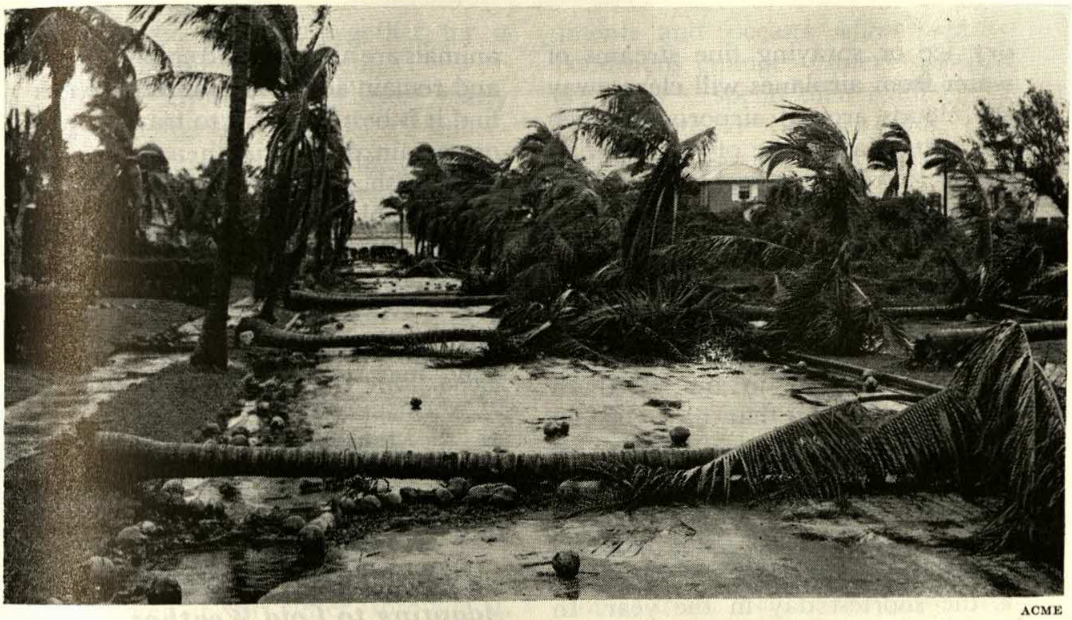
Autumn begins when the sun is again over the equator at noon, on or about September 23. On this day, you will find that conditions are similar to those at the spring equinox. As on March 21, the day and the night are equal in length. The sun rises directly in the east and sets directly in the west. But we know it is not exactly the same as spring, for now the days are growing shorter instead of longer. At the end of September, Daylight Saving Time for those states that have it usually comes to an end. Warm clothes are taken out of moth balls. Hay fever remedies are put away. Fireplaces are lighted and thoughts turn to Thanksgiving.

The weatherman has another way of marking the turn of the seasons. He does not go by the calendar but by the thermometer. Autumn for him has two parts in the months of September, October, and November — Indian summer and the cool fall. When average air temperatures are between 67° and 50° F., we have Indian summer. The cool fall days are those when the temperature may go as high as 50° F. or as low as freezing (32° F.). The temperatures for autumn days average about the same as those for spring days. Along seacoasts the ocean and other large bodies of water cool off slowly. This has the effect of keeping the weather warm through late autumn because the water keeps some of the summer heat. The slow warming up of the oceans in spring keeps the cold weather of winter on into the early summer near the coast.

One more thing helps to explain some of the mild days of autumn. The warm air masses of the tropics seem to be able to come farther north more often than they do in the spring. Whenever one of these air masses manages to go north it makes the weather milder than the seasonal average.

Dew, Fog, and Hurricanes in Autumn

By what other conditions is autumn known? This can be answered in three words: dew, fog, hurricanes.



ACME

122 What happened? Before you turn the page around to look at the answer, see if you can figure it out. Here are some hints. It happened in September. The Weather Bureau warned it would happen. Damage covered many miles. A HURRICANE DID THIS DAMAGE.

Hurricanes have already been described on p. 236. Figure 122 illustrates the kind of damage a hurricane can do. September and October are the principal hurricane months along our southeastern and eastern coasts.

Dew and fog have also been mentioned before (p. 216). Now we are ready to study them further. What kind of weather aids the forming of dew and fog? If you see a heavy dew, you may be sure the night has been clear and calm. If the night is windy, very little dew forms, for wind makes water evaporate quickly. Therefore, a heavy morning dew means that the night was calm, not windy. Frost, also, forms only on calm nights. When the temperature of the air near the earth is below freezing, frost rather than dew is formed.

Fog usually forms in the early morning. It can form at any time, however, but forms most easily when humid (damp) air is cooled. Like dew, fog forms best when the air is not windy. The gentle mixing of cold air with warm, humid air will cause a fog. A fog is really a cloud close to the earth. Fogs formed at night usually disappear when the sun comes up and when its heat is enough to evaporate the tiny droplets of moisture which form the fog.

Smoke in the air, on the other hand, may cause fog because the droplets of water have more dust particles upon which to form. A mixture of fog and smoke, often called *smog*, is much worse to deal with because the tiny smoke particles are in the air in very great numbers. Smog, therefore, is not so easy to get rid of as fog. Airplane landing fields have been cleared of fog by the heat from large amounts of burning gasoline — a costly way to do it. It is hoped that in the future sprinkling dry ice or spraying fine streams of water from airplanes will clear away the clouds around airports at much less cost. Maybe one of you will find a way to solve this problem.

Winter

For many people winter is the best of all seasons, and for some it is the worst. Astronomers say winter begins on December 21 in the Northern Hemisphere. On that day, as you remember, the sun is above the Tropic of Capricorn at noon (Fig. 118). The sun is low in our sky at noon in the United States, rising late and setting early. The first day of winter is the shortest day in the year. In ancient times, people had great feasts to show their happiness that the days were growing longer again. These ancient feasts later became holidays for entirely different reasons.

Even though the days are growing longer in January and February, it is then that we have the coldest weather of the winter season. During winter the northern states and Canada are covered with a blanket of snow.

A winter day is one during which the average temperature is 32° F. or less. Some parts of the United States have this average daily temperature as early as November 20, others as late as December 15, and still others seldom have temperatures as low as this. Winter is a season when most woody plants have lost their leaves and animals look for warmth.

LIVING THINGS AND SEASONAL WEATHER

Not all animals can stand the seasonal changes in the weather the way humans do. Some warm-blooded animals are able to stand cold weather and remain active all winter. Others find it is best for them to travel south or remain quite still in a protected place. Fish and frogs, you remember, are cold-blooded. This means that their body temperature goes down as the temperature of their surroundings goes down. But there is a limit. For them it is fortunate that the ice in a pond floats, leaving a certain amount of warmer water and mud unfrozen at the bottom. Here these cold-blooded animals stay throughout the winter, living quietly on food stored in their bodies.

Adapting to Cold Weather

Plants also have temperature limits beyond which they cannot live. Some plants, like orange trees, orchids, and palms, do not grow in the northern parts of our country. They need warm, moist weather. The plants that do live through the winter in the north become *dormant* (seem to sleep) during cold weather. During the dormant stage, many trees have lost their leaves but are very much alive. Other trees, such as the evergreens, keep their leaves. Like the dormant animals, such as bears and groundhogs, they live on stored food.

Many creatures, like certain birds and the monarch butterfly, go south when the winter weather "kills" the animals or plants they feed on. This seasonal traveling is called *migration* (my-GRAY-shun). It is surprising how far some birds travel when they migrate. How they find their way back to the same place year after year is a mystery to be solved by the scientists of our country and of those nations to which the birds migrate. Scientists of different countries have been working together for a long time on this problem.

The mystery of these yearly mass flights is no harder to understand than the sleeping done by many thousands of animals during the cold months. This winter sleep is called *hibernation* (hy-ber-NAY-shun).

A female black bear hibernates in such a deep sleep that she can give birth to cubs without seeming to be aware of having done so until spring. Many insects and similar animals pass the winter hidden in rotten wood, in soil, or in the bark of trees.

It all adds up to this: If you want to live in any region, you either have to like the weather, make the most of it, forget it, or suffer through it. Some living things, such as lizards and snakes, crawl under rocks to hide when the sun is too hot. Others, like the woodchuck, crawl underground and "sleep the clock around" when the weather is too cold. Some birds, such as the golden plover, fly thousands of miles southward across continents and oceans when weather conditions change. Others — people we know — spend their summers on New England beaches and then *migrate* to Florida or California to spend their winters — again largely on the beaches. Others stay put but change their indoor weather by means of heating and cooling systems built into their houses.

Keeping Comfortable at Home

Where weather conditions are not to their liking, people may make an air-conditioned indoors in which to live.

Before you can make a house a home, you have to make the house a shelter from the changing weather. It is in this sense that we shall consider the problem of better housing in the next chapter. Since we cannot make the outdoor weather to our liking, let us find out how we can build our houses for better health, safety, and pleasant indoor weather, regardless of the season.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

monsoon
summer solstice
winter solstice
lightning
thunder
smog
hibernation
migration

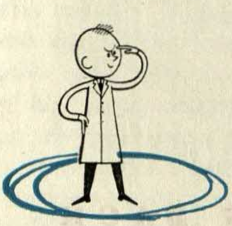
1. the act of remaining quiet or asleep during some or all of the winter season
2. an electrical discharge which usually takes place during a thunderstorm

3. a seasonal wind of India
4. a mixture of fog and smoke
5. seasonal traveling from one place to another
6. for the Northern Hemisphere, the time when the sun seems to be at its farthest south point at noon
7. for the Northern Hemisphere, the time when the sun seems to be at its farthest north point at noon
8. the sound caused by the rapid expansion and bouncing back of heated air when lightning passes through it

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Some animals, such as the . . . , migrate when the seasons change.
2. Other animals, such as the black bear, . . . when winter comes.
3. Astronomers say the seasons change on . . . , . . . , . . . , and . . . .
4. These dates are based upon the position of the . . . in the sky.
5. Because land warms up and cools off more rapidly than water, places near large bodies of water have . . . winters and . . . summers than places near the center of a large continent.
6. All seasonal changes are the result of the . . . of the earth around the sun and the . . . of the earth's axis.
7. The hours of daylight in the Northern Hemisphere are longest on or about . . . .
8. The hours of darkness are longest in the Northern Hemisphere on or about . . . .
9. There are about 12 hours of daylight and 12 hours of darkness all year at the . . . .
10. The nights are of equal length in the Northern and Southern Hemispheres on . . . and . . . .



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Research on temperature of the air.* What has been said about the changes of air temperature for the country as a whole may not be true where you live. The best way to find out is to do some research. With the help of your classmates, take the average of the highest and lowest temperatures where you live every day for a year. Using the temperatures mentioned in this chapter, find out when the growing season begins and ends in your part of the country. Compare these dates with the dates the astronomers say the seasons begin and end in the North Temperate Zone.

2. *Water and air temperatures.* If you live near a large body of water, make a daily record of the temperature of the water and compare this with the temperature of the air. You can mark these facts on a piece of graph paper, using different colors for the two lines showing the temperatures.

3. *Plants and temperatures.* Would you like to have a garden? Open a copy of

America's Garden Book by Louise and James Bush-Brown, Scribners, 1952, to p. 1171, and you will find a list of things to do for and to your garden during each season of the year. The flower garden, the vegetable garden, the lawn, trees, shrubs, and fruit must be given special care at each season. For further information, write to the U.S. Department of Agriculture in Washington, D.C.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Why does the Northern Hemisphere have its warmest weather during July and August, when the earth is farthest from the sun?
2. What would be the probable effect upon the earth and upon living things if the slant of the earth's axis should slowly increase to 50 degrees or decrease to about 5 degrees?

Adding to Your Library

1. Write to the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, in Washington, D.C., for a copy of *Normal Weather for the United States* by J. B. Kincer (10 cents). This booklet tells what kind of weather may be expected in various parts of our country, month by month, during the entire year. It is a reference book any committee reporting on this topic will need.
2. Ask your school librarian for a copy of Cornell Rural School Leaflet 3, Vol. 37, January, 1944. As its title, *Little Climates*, suggests, it tells the effect of small changes in climate upon plants and animals.
3. Write to the National Audubon Society, 1130 Fifth Ave., New York (28), N. Y., for a list of their pamphlets on how plants and animals live through the winter. You may want to use the facts they will give you to build the right kind of houses and feeding stations for birds in your neighborhood.

A Bit of Research

In various parts of the country there are many old sayings about the weather. Some are true, and some are not true at all. Why not collect a few of these sayings and test them? Here is one to begin with:

When dew is on the grass
Rain will never come to pass.

CHAPTER 13

Protecting Yourself Against The Weather

Man, using science, has tried to make weather perfect for himself. In his home, of course! But once he goes outside, the weather gets at him. There he tries to live with the weather. Knowing how is important.

SUPPOSE you are going ice skating and want good protection from the wind. Why will you choose a leather windbreaker? Look at the picture above. Why is the man wearing the clothing he is? Look at a piece of leather and at a piece of woven or knitted material with a hand lens. You will then see why leather is better able to keep wind from your body. Leather has tiny pores, but compared to them the most tightly woven material has great holes. In a strong wind the air goes through these holes, but leather keeps the wind outside.

On a cold day a leather jacket will keep out the wind, but you would freeze if you wore nothing between the leather and your skin. Unlined leather gloves do not keep your hands warm. It is the lining of the gloves, such as fur or wool (as in the parka shown in the picture above), and the several layers of clothes under your leather windbreaker that keep you warm. Why?

Notice again the air spaces between

the wool fibers or between the hairs of a fur lining of a glove. These are dead air spaces in which the air cannot circulate. When air cannot circulate, it gives you good protection against the loss of heat from your body. Fur and wool clothing, therefore, help to keep you warm by keeping the heat of your body inside the clothing. Linings in clothing do the same thing.

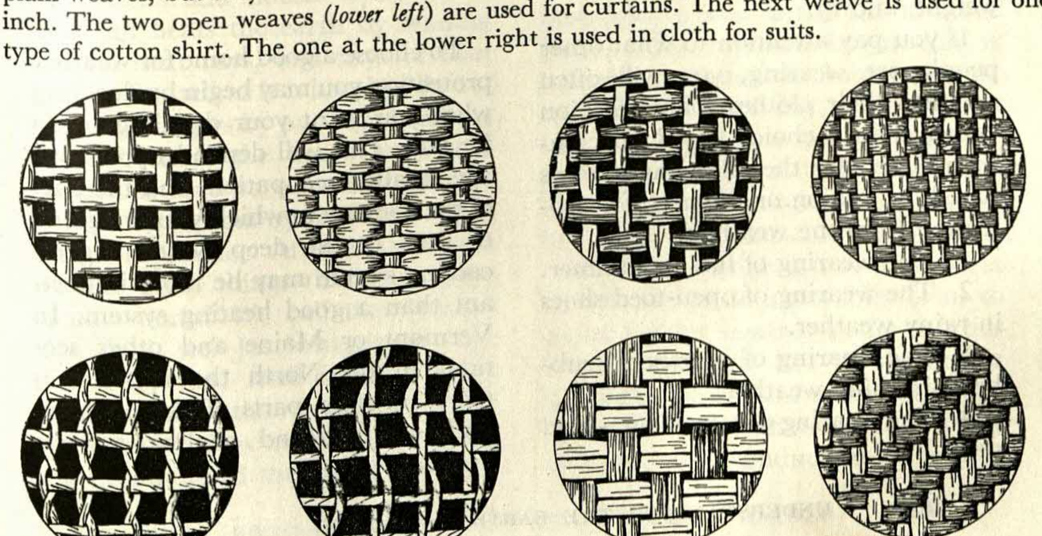
The Right Clothes

If the choice of material is the first matter of importance, the second is the weave of the cloth (Fig. 123).

To understand what we mean by the weave of the cloth, take out your handkerchief. Hold it up to the light. Can you see the light through it? Repeat this test with single layers of the materials in the clothing you wear. Do you notice any difference in the size of the spaces between the threads or fibers? Is the knitted sweater you sometimes wear woven as tightly as the blanket on your bed? How does it compare with the weave of your coat? Compare the weaves of the garments you wear in summer with those you wear in winter. Do you suppose the closeness of the weave has anything to do with keeping you warm (Fig. 123)?

Now look at the color of the material you are wearing. Do colors have anything to do with keeping you warm or cool?

Make this test yourself. Take two pieces of the same kind of material, one white, the other black. Place both pieces of cloth in the direct rays of the sun. Under each place a thermometer. Check the temperature of each at the start of the experiment and at the end of 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, and 5 minutes. You will find that the thermometer under the black cloth will show a greater increase in temperature. Dark colors take in more heat from the sun's



123 Common weaves look like this when seen under a microscope. The top four are all plain weaves, but they differ in quality because each has a different thread count per square inch. The two open weaves (*lower left*) are used for curtains. The next weave is used for one type of cotton shirt. The one at the lower right is used in cloth for suits.

rays than lighter colors. What colors are more popular in summer than in winter? Why?

The fit and finish of clothes also have a great deal to do with your comfort in wearing them under different weather conditions. Have you ever noticed that some well-made overcoats for winter wear have an elastic in the sleeve lining to keep the cold air out of the sleeve? For summer or warm weather our clothes are of a loose fit to allow air to circulate as much as possible. There is a scientific reason for this.

In summer your comfort depends upon keeping your body cool. The air circulating freely through loose-fitting garments allows your perspiration to evaporate faster. You may think it strange for a baseball pitcher to wear a sweater or long-sleeved shirt in summer when he is working so hard. Too much cooling from evaporation might tighten his arm muscles and thus ruin his pitching skill for the day.

When you choose clothing, keep in mind the weather conditions under which you will wear it. Think about the fiber in it, its weave, finish, color, weight, and fit.

If you pay attention to what other people are wearing, you will often see that their clothes follow fashion rather than a choice based on common sense. Are the following choices based on fashion or the need for protection from the weather?

1. The wearing of furs in summer.
2. The wearing of open-toed shoes in rainy weather.
3. The wearing of overshoes (rubbers) in rainy weather.
4. The wearing of a scarf on a cold day.
5. The wearing of tight-fitting gloves on a cold day.

Of course you can give many other examples, but let us go over those in the list you have just read. Furs in summer are surely not needed for warmth, and open-toed shoes give the foot no protection on a rainy day. Overshoes give protection against rain or snow because the rubber keeps water out. They should be taken off indoors because the rubber does not allow body moisture to get out. Leather shoes allow for some evaporation, which is good for your feet. A scarf is good protection, but if it is of rough material, it may cause a rash where it rubs against the skin. Finally, do not wear a tight-fitting glove on a cold day if you want warm hands. The glove slows the circulation of blood in your fingers. If you do not have proper circulation of the blood through your fingers, your hands will not keep warm.

As you go about, notice some examples of the poor use of clothing. Are you sensible about the way you use yours?

HOUSING

To choose a good home for weather protection you may begin by deciding what you want your dwelling to do for you. This will depend upon your age, health, occupation, and the part of the country in which you are going to live. In the deep South a good cooling system may be more important than a good heating system. In Vermont or Maine and other sections in the North the opposite is true. In other parts of the country, both heating and cooling systems are wanted.

Indoor Weather Made to Order

In an area having cold weather, a house must have a heating system. The Indians used to build open fires in their tents and houses. In addition to the danger of setting fire to the house or tent, this method often filled the dwelling with smoke. Fireplaces were an improvement but still dangerous. If a room in which open flames are used for heating has poor ventilation, the people may fall asleep and die because the flames use up too much of the oxygen and replace it with poisonous gases. Furthermore, most of the heat from an open fireplace goes up the chimney. Only the side of a person's body facing the fire is warmed by its heat.

Man has tried for a long time to find better ways of getting more heat from less fuel. What do we need to know about heat?

How Heat Travels

Homes and public buildings became more comfortable places as man learned more and more about how heat travels. It was natural for men of old to heat their caves and later their tents and houses by *radiation*. The sun heats the earth by sending out its heat rays, and rays of heat from a fire tell us it is hot. We do not burn our fingers by putting them in a flame because the flame sends out radiations that warn us of its heat.

Heating a room by radiation is still common practice. After all, what do we call those things that heat some of our rooms? We call them radiators, don't we? Just what is a radiator? The word itself is misleading. While it is true that a radiator radiates heat, it does much more. Have you ever noticed the air wiggle over a hot radiator? As the air touching a radiator is heated, it rises. Cooler air takes its place and is heated and in turn is pushed upward by more cool air until the room is filled with air that has been warmed. The wiggles you see above the radiator are currents of rising air. A current of this kind is part of a *convection current*, that is, a current that carries heat. Actually, in some types of hot-water heating systems the radiator is called a convector.

This method of carrying heat has an advantage over an open fireplace, for you no longer have to stand or sit near the source of the heat. The air that warms you surrounds you, making you as warm on one side as on the other. Thus heat travels by convection as well as by radiation.

Some of the most modern homes have no radiators, and yet they are heated by radiation. The whole floor or the walls are the radiators, for they have hot-water or steam pipes hidden inside them. Heating a room in this way is called *radiant heating*.

Heat travels a third way — by *conduction*. If you heat one end of a nail, the other end will soon become too hot to hold. The heat causes the molecules of iron in the nail to move faster. This increase in motion is passed or conducted from molecule to molecule until the whole nail is hot. The pipes of a radiator become hot in the same way, getting their heat directly by conduction from the hot water or steam flowing in them.

This knowledge about how heat travels has made it possible for us to create indoor weather made to order for our comfort. Let us see how a house can be built to make use of our knowledge of radiation, convection currents, and conduction.

COMPARING CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEMS

Long ago homes had just one room and a wall of one thickness of material. Today most of the houses we live in have a number of rooms, often on more than one floor, and the walls have several thicknesses or a space between an inner and an outer layer. In a *central heating system* the heat is sent from one furnace (usually in the basement) to all the rooms in the house. There are several kinds of central heating systems. Each has its special advantages and disadvantages. The three main kinds of central heating systems are: hot (or warm) air, hot water, and steam.

Each system, however, uses a furnace, which supplies the source of the heat. Regardless of the system he uses, the homeowner must decide whether he will use a furnace that burns gas, oil, coal, or wood. The kind that is best depends upon the care and cost. Many people cannot or will not bother with fuels that leave ashes. Other people prefer to buy the cheapest fuel and to go on using an old furnace in spite of the extra care it needs. The cost of fuel depends largely upon where you live. For instance, coal, gas, and oil are easy to get in most parts of the country, but wood is in better supply in certain places. Can you figure out why homeowners with limited amounts of time and strength often prefer gas and oil as fuels?

Hot-Air Systems

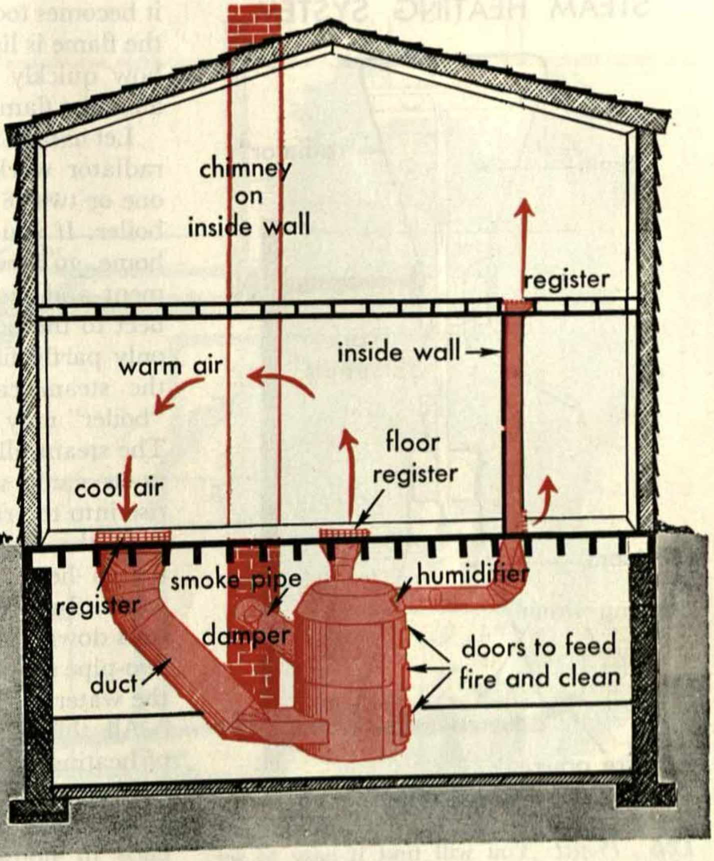
In the early types of hot-air systems, fresh air entered from the outside and was heated. To save fuel, this heated air is now used over again. This re-use of the air may dry out the air so much that eyes and throats become dry. To avoid dryness, water vapor is added to the air by a *humidifier*. A humidifier is usually a pan of water placed inside the metal jacket surrounding the furnace. It is in this jacket that the air is heated (Fig. 124). The water in the pan is evaporated to add water vapor to the air before it reaches the rooms.

In the hot-air heating system, the warmed air generally travels through large pipes called *ducts*. The ends of these ducts are not attached to radiators but are simply covered with an iron grillwork with holes that can be opened or closed. This cover is called a *register*. The register may be put into the floor, baseboard, or wall. The convection currents (p. 259) produced by the heating of the air in the furnace keep the air circulating. In some homes an electric fan built into the main duct speeds up the circulation of the heated air to increase comfort in the rooms.

Hot-Water Heating

Hot-air heating systems, especially those with fans to circulate the air, can warm the air in a cold house very quickly. But the house cools off fairly fast when the heat is turned off. The advantage of a hot-water heating system is that you can bank the coal furnace early in the evening and for hours still have a warm house. It takes a long time for the hot water in the radiator pipes to cool. Many heating systems have a device called a thermostat, which looks somewhat like a thermometer. What you see is really a kind of thermometer, but it is connected to a small electric switch

HOT-AIR HEATING SYSTEM



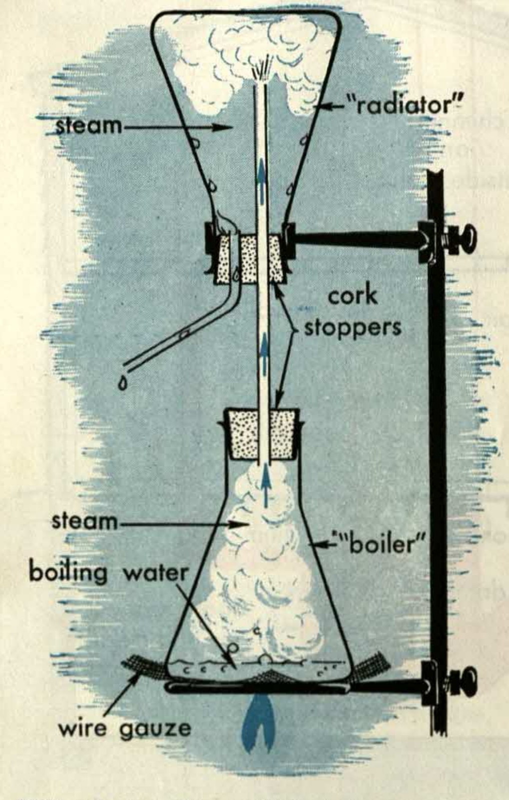
124 In a hot-air heating system, the rooms are warmed by convection currents. Cool air flows downward to be heated and at the same time pushes the lighter warm air up into the rooms.

that turns the furnace on when the thermometer goes below a certain reading and turns it off when the thermometer reaches the temperature you want in the room.

Can you see any disadvantage in a hot-water heating system? Suppose you decide to take a two-week vacation in Florida or southern California when the temperature of your house might go below the freezing point of water. What might happen to the pipes of your heating system if you fail to drain out the water? If you do not know the answer, fill a medicine bottle with water, put on the cap, and set the bottle in a tray in the ice cube section of your refrigerator.

Steam Heating Systems

A hot-water heating system is an open-pipe system because it has one pipe leading to an expansion tank. Water expands as it is heated. Therefore this tank allows for the changes of water level caused by the heating of the water. A steam heating system, on the other hand, is a closed-pipe system. This means that the pipe goes to the radiators and back to the furnace. Steam pressure builds up within the pipes. Of course, there are valves on the radiators which can be opened or closed, and there is a safety valve on the boiler. This valve opens automatically if the steam pressure gets


MODEL OF STEAM HEATING SYSTEM

125 *Project:* You will find it easy to set up this glass model steam heating system. Note that you must leave the return pipe open so the pressure of the steam will not become great enough to blow the system apart.

too high. This is true also of hot-water systems. It is impossible in the model of the steam heating system in Fig. 125 to have a valve like this. If you make this model be sure to leave one tube open to the air. Otherwise, the steam pressure may quickly build up and shatter your model with great force. The model is perfectly safe.

Like hot-air systems, steam heating provides a quick method of heating buildings, especially large buildings. If you put your hand on the "radiator" of your model, you will find that it becomes too hot to touch soon after the flame is lighted. Notice, however, how quickly it becomes cool again after the flame has been put out.

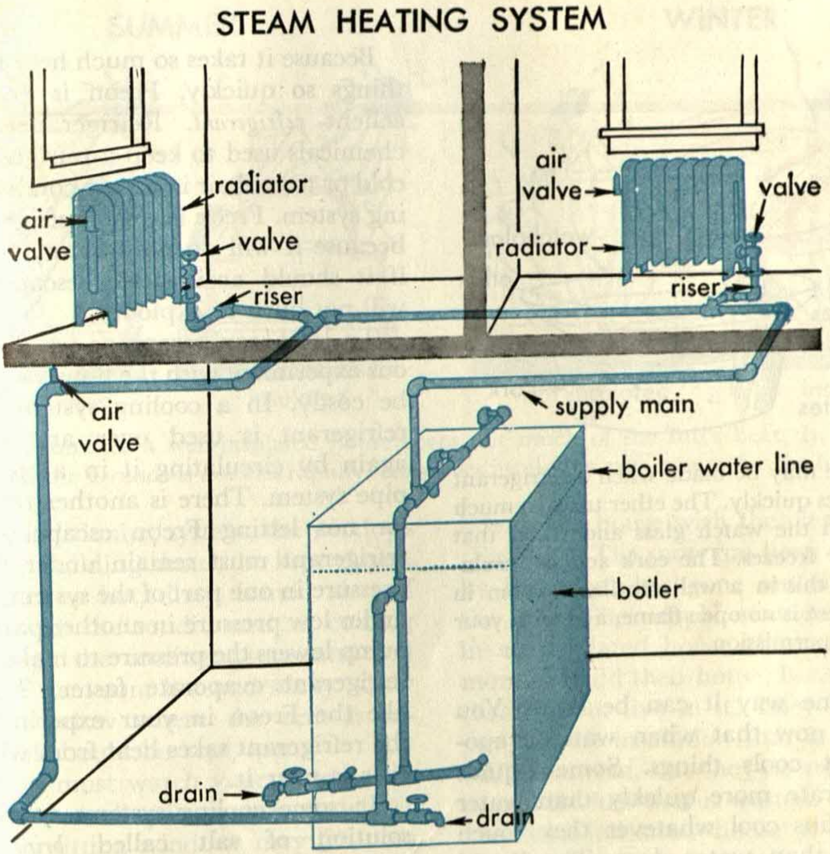
Let us now look at how a real steam radiator works. It may have either one or two pipes connecting it to the boiler. If you have steam heating at home, go down to the cellar or basement and see where the pipes connect to the boiler. The boiler is kept only partly filled with water so that the steam can form quickly. The "boiler" may be a set of coils of pipe. The steam fills the riser pipe, which, as its name suggests, lets the steam rise into the radiators (Fig. 126).

In the radiators, the steam gives up its heat and changes back into water. In a one-pipe system, water runs down inside the riser pipe. In a two-pipe system a second pipe returns the water to the boiler.

All things considered, what kind of heating system is best? To answer that question you will need many facts. There is such a great difference in houses, in climate, in the supply and cost of fuel, and in other costs in our country that no general rules can be stated. However, we can tell you that these are some of the things you will need to consider: first cost, operating cost, convenience, and cleanliness. This is the kind of problem a committee of pupils can investigate. Manufacturers of heating systems will give you information. You can also get some important facts from the U.S. Weather Bureau.

Air-Conditioning Systems

In one way or another, you may solve the problem of heating your home in winter. But what will you do in hot weather? Most people now



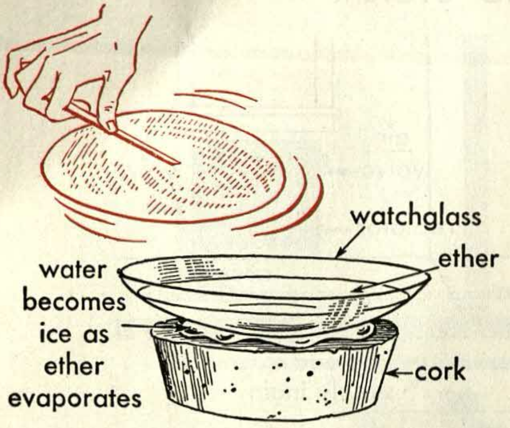
126 In a one-pipe steam heating system, the steam rises to the radiators through the pipe marked "riser" and then condenses as drops of water. These drops run back to the boiler through the same pipe. Why must the apparently horizontal pipes slope a bit? *Project:* Build a model one-pipe steam heating system.

want a system that will give them comfortable indoor weather all year. They want their houses to be properly ventilated at an even temperature (68–70° F.) and kept at about 50% humidity. In short, they want perfect weather at home and in their public buildings.

Indoor weather depends upon what the indoor air is like. Air, as you have learned, carries moisture in the form of water vapor; its temperature is changed by the things it touches; it circulates in convection currents; and it carries odors, germs, and dust. If we can circulate air gently, without drafts, and if we can control the other conditions to our liking, we will have the indoor weather we want for good health and comfort. Such a system is known as complete air conditioning.

Air Conditioning in Every Season

We have seen how heat may be added to air (pp. 260–262), but removing heat from air is a bit of a problem. A simple experiment will show


watchglass
ether
water becomes ice as ether evaporates
cork

127 Ice may be made when a refrigerant evaporates quickly. The ether takes so much heat from the watch glass and water that the water freezes. The cork acts as insulation. Do this in a well-ventilated room in which there is no open flame, and with your teacher's permission.

you one way it can be done. You know now that when water evapoates it cools things. Some liquids evaporate more quickly than water and thus cool whatever they touch faster than water does. The liquid you will use will depend upon what your teacher has on hand, but we will suppose it to be Freon. Freon is a chemical that will boil at about −20° F. When it boils, it takes a great deal of heat from anything it touches.

If you put a fresh flower in liquid Freon for a half-minute, the flower will be frozen stiff. You can then break it with your fingers as if it were made of glass. You would not want this to happen to your fingers, so keep them out of the Freon.[1]

Because it takes so much heat from things so quickly, Freon is an excellent *refrigerant.* Refrigerants are chemicals used to keep a refrigerator cold or to cool air in an air-conditioning system. Freon is a safe refrigerant because it will do no one any harm if it should accidentally escape. It will not burn or explode.

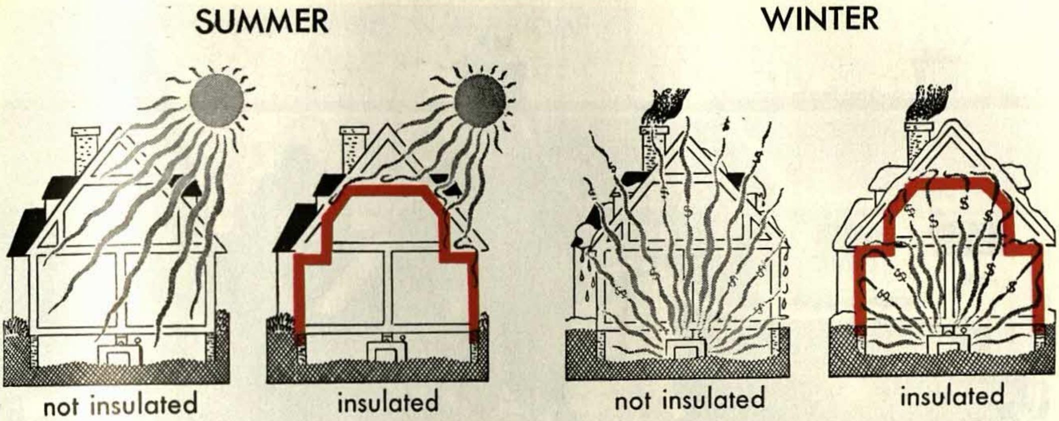
To let Freon escape as we did in our experiment with the flower would be costly. In a cooling system, the refrigerant is used over and over again by circulating it in a closed-pipe system. There is another reason for not letting Freon escape. The refrigerant must remain under high pressure in one part of the system and under low pressure in another part. A pump lowers the pressure to make the refrigerant evaporate faster. Then, like the Freon in your experiment, the refrigerant takes heat from whatever is near it.

In some cooling systems a strong solution of salt called *brine* is used. As this brine is pumped through pipes near the refrigerant, it gives up its heat and becomes very cold. It then flows through pipes to a box through which the air to be cooled is passing. This air now gives up much of its heat to the pipes and brine. Finally, the cooled air is blown through ducts to all parts of the building. Then the cooled air circulates in each room.

This cooling process also removes much of the water vapor from the air. If you have ever seen an air conditioner working on a very humid day, you may have noticed that water drips out of it. This water was taken from the air as it passed through the cooling box. Filters of glass wool clean the air as it goes through the box. To get the best results from an

---

[1] If you cannot get Freon, you can freeze a watch glass to a cork by pouring ether into the watch glass and setting it on a cork wet with a drop or two of pure water. Fan the ether but do not inhale it or have any flame in the room. Ether explodes easily.



128 In summer a well-insulated house keeps out much of the sun's heat. In winter the heat from the furnace is not lost rapidly. How does insulation save money for the homeowner?

air-conditioning system, the windows of the building should be kept closed. Otherwise hot, dirty, humid air will mix with the conditioned air coming through the cooling system and will make the room hot and sticky. Only the window where the unit is installed should be kept open.

You must watch your windows in winter as well as in summer. In winter poorly fitting windows may let in so much cold air that your home will be chilly and drafty even though you keep the heating system going all the time. The simplest thing to do about loose windows is to put weather strips along the edges of the frame. A storm window — an extra window outside the regular window — is even better if you have wide ranges of temperature and very cold spells. Storm windows help put an air space between themselves and your regular windows. Thus they keep the heat in by insulating your windows.

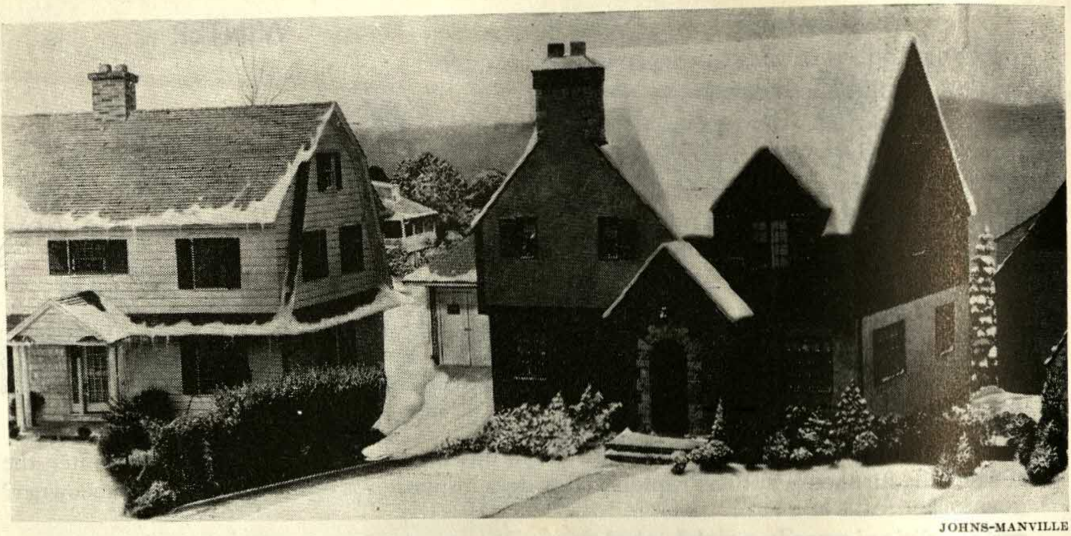
Insulation Adds Comfort

If you live in your own house and if there is little or no *insulation* in the walls and top floor, you may have had the experience of the people who live in the house with the clean roof (Fig. 129). The snow has been melted by heat that has gone out through the roof. The people next door live in an insulated house. It cost them more to build their house, but it costs them less to live in it. They had to pay for the insulation that is in the walls and roof, but they do not have to pay for fuel that is wasted.

A well-insulated house is like a glove with a fur lining. It has a layer of glass wool, rock wool, or some other material with a lot of air space in it in the gap between the inner and outer walls. The roof or attic is also lined with this insulating material. The air in the insulating material is a poor conductor of heat. It helps to keep the heat you pay for inside the house in winter and the heat you do not want outside the house in summer (Fig. 128).

Simple Weather Protection

Even if you live in a poorly built house or one that is well built but does not have air conditioning, you can do several things to improve your indoor weather. Use the knowledge you have gained in this unit.



JOHNS-MANVILLE

129 *Puzzle:* Why is there no snow on the roof of the house on the left? *Answer:* That house is not well-insulated. Heat escaping through the roof melted the snow. This is a waste of money.

Weather-strip material does not cost much. It comes as strips of felt that can be tacked on or as strips of a substance that looks like putty. It will seal openings around windows or outside doors. To help you avoid a draft, place a piece of board or a glass set at an angle to the bottom of the window to send incoming air upward.

Suppose the air is too dry. You can make your own humidifier, first by putting a pan of water on the stove. You can place some growing green plants in the windows. The water green plants give off through their leaves will help to raise the humidity of the air in your room. You must care for the plants, however, at least by watering them daily. Thus you can help air condition any home at low cost.

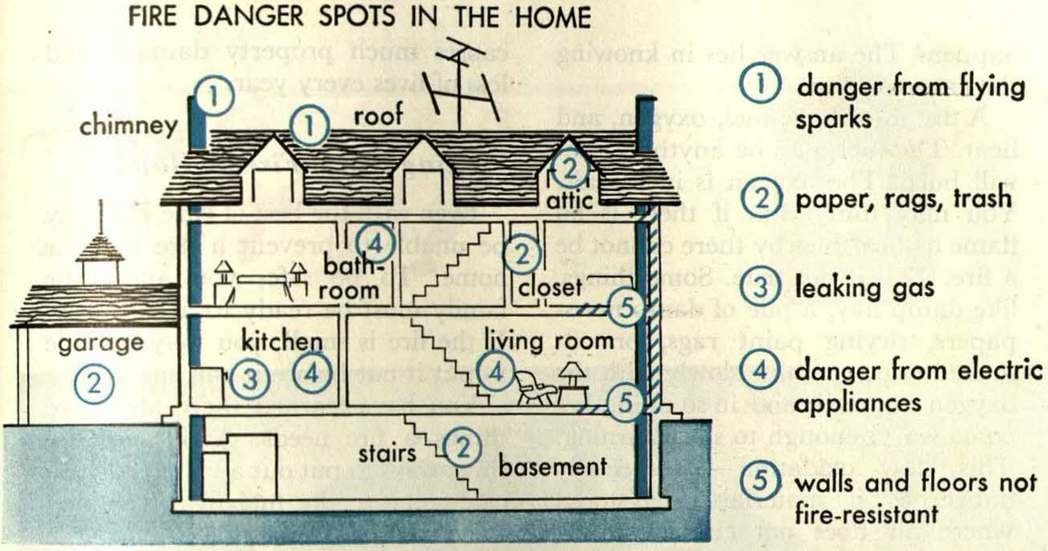
SAFETY FROM FIRE

If it is important to make your home a comfortable place in which to live, it is even more important to make it a safe place in which to live. There are many hazards to safety in a house, but the most dangerous is fire. Let us see how fire protection can be built into a house.

Building in Fire Protection

The framework for the walls of houses is usually studs, which are pieces of wood 2 by 4 inches placed upright 12 to 16 inches apart. To the outer side of the studding the boards of the outside wall are nailed. The material of which the inner wall is made is nailed to the inner side of the studs. This leaves an air space between the inside and outside walls. This space may be left empty or filled with insulating material (p. 265). Why will filling this space with a material like rock wool, which will not burn, keep a fire from spreading quickly? Brick or poured concrete fire stops at each floor level also slow or stop the spread of fire from one floor to another.

As good as it is to prevent a fire


FIRE DANGER SPOTS IN THE HOME
chimney
roof
attic
bath-room
closet
garage
kitchen
living room
stairs
basement
① danger from flying sparks
② paper, rags, trash
③ leaking gas
④ danger from electric appliances
⑤ walls and floors not fire-resistant

130 Draw a plan like this for your home and mark on it any danger spots you may find. Do you find any hidden hazards in your home? If you do, discuss them with your parents and help them to correct each hazard.

from spreading rapidly, it is even better to prevent it from starting. This can be done by getting rid of the fire hazards in your home.

Getting Rid of Fire Hazards

Strange as it may seem, many people burn down their houses while trying to keep the house warm. Of course, they do not mean to do so when they start a fire in a fireplace or furnace. Any fireplace or furnace is supposed to burn fuels safely. However, chimneys, flues, and furnaces may have cracks that need repairs. Sparks from burning fuel may reach parts of the house that will burn. Before a furnace or fireplace is used, chimneys should be inspected, and cleaned if necessary. Sometimes people forget to put a fire screen around a fire in a fireplace, and sparks perhaps pop out on a wooden floor, rugs, or a sofa. These sparks may smolder for some time and then suddenly burst into flame.

Sometimes furnaces and stoves are placed too close to walls that will burn if they become overheated. A sheet of metal placed upright behind the hot stove is helpful. It will carry away enough of the heat and give protection to the walls.

Cleaning cloths, newspapers, and curtains should be kept away from gas heaters, oil burners, electric heaters, and stoves. Matches should be kept out of reach of children. Have you checked all the places in your home where a fire might start or spread quickly? If not, let that be your job for tonight. Do something about any conditions which need correcting.

Fires Which Start Themselves

Sometimes fires start without anyone's lighting them. Such fires are caused by *spontaneous combustion* or spontaneous ignition. In spontaneous combustion, a material suddenly bursts into flame. How does this happen? The answer lies in knowing the causes of fire.

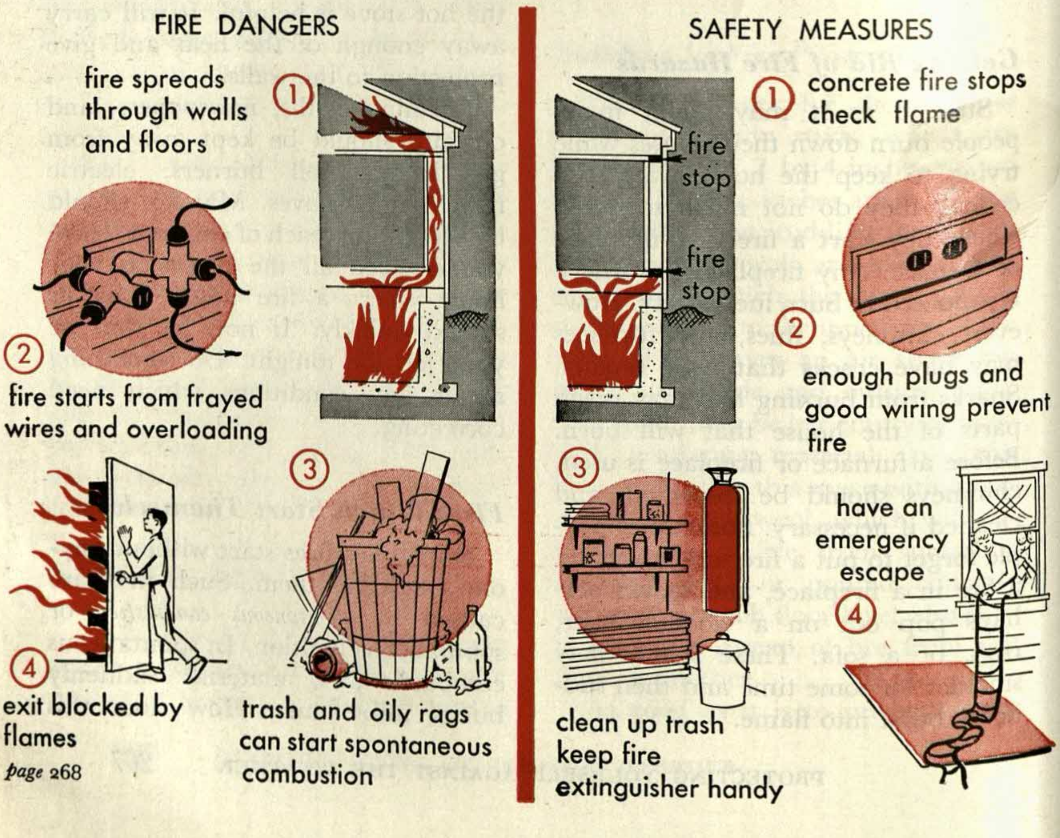
A fire must have fuel, oxygen, and heat. The fuel may be anything that will burn. The oxygen is in the air. You may think that if there is no flame or heat nearby there cannot be a fire. This is not true. Some things, like damp hay, a pile of damp newspapers, drying paint rags, or oil-soaked rags, combine slowly with the oxygen of the air and in so doing become warm enough to start burning. This slow oxidation is especially dangerous if materials are stored where air does not circulate. The heat of slow oxidation builds up, and the materials start to burn. Carelessness in storing materials of this kind causes much property damage and loss of lives every year.

Putting Out a Fire at Home

Even with the best of care you may be unable to prevent a fire in your home. To be safe, you and your family must be ready to act quickly. If the fire is small, you may be able to put it out before it can spread.

You have learned there are three things a fire needs. And there are three ways to put out a fire. First, you can separate the fuel from the fire. For example, you might throw a burning pillow out of the window so it could not set fire to anything else in the house.

131 For each fire danger there is a safety measure you can take. Discuss each of these dangers and safety measures with your parents. One danger not shown is carelessness. Only you can remove that fire hazard by always being careful and alert.


FIRE DANGERS
fire spreads through walls and floors
①
②
fire starts from frayed wires and overloading
③
④
exit blocked by flames
trash and oily rags can start spontaneous combustion
SAFETY MEASURES
①
concrete fire stops check flame
fire stop
fire stop
②
enough plugs and good wiring prevent fire
③
have an emergency escape
④
clean up trash keep fire extinguisher handy

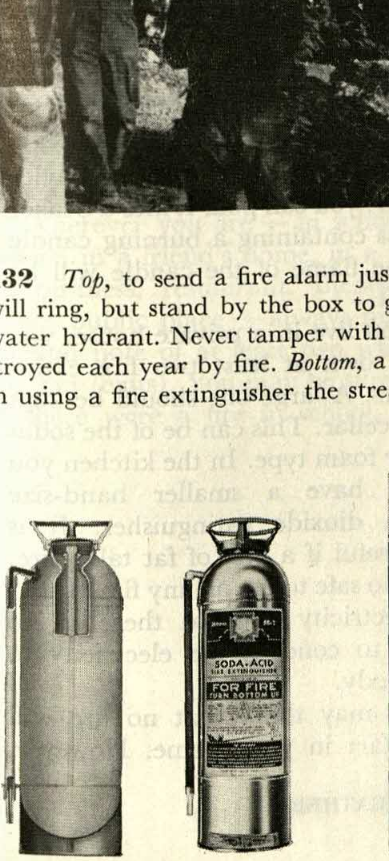
Fire!

GENDREAU

NATIONAL BOARD OF FIRE UNDERWRITERS

132 *Top,* to send a fire alarm just pull down the lever on the outside of the box. A bell will ring, but stand by the box to give the firemen directions to the fire and to the nearest water hydrant. Never tamper with a fire alarm box. *Center,* just one of 340,000 homes destroyed each year by fire. *Bottom,* a soda-acid fire extinguisher, showing contents. Note that in using a fire extinguisher the stream is directed at the base of fire.

AMERICAN-LAFRANCE-FOAMITE CORP.



Second, you can shut off the oxygen supply. This would happen if you dropped a pot cover onto a pan of burning fat. Third, you can lower the temperature of the fuel below its *kindling temperature*. The kindling temperature is the lowest point at which a fuel will burn. Pouring water on most fuels will do this. Water will also shut off the supply of oxygen. To put out a fire you need to do only one of these three things: remove the fuel, remove the oxygen, or lower the temperature. A fire extinguisher does one or more of these things. It is well to have one at home. Keep it where you can easily get at it if you need it.

Fire Extinguishers at School

You may see a pail of sand, an asbestos blanket, or a chemical fire extinguisher in your science room. Do you know why? The sand and the blanket may be used to smother a fire, that is, to shut off the oxygen supply. You should take the blanket out of its holder and practice using it so that you will know what to do if fire breaks out.

The carbon tetrachloride type of fire extinguisher should not be used indoors for demonstration unless you have the windows wide open. The gas that is formed when carbon tetrachloride evaporates is harmful to people. This gas is heavier than air, and so it will settle down around a fire and smother it. The smothering action of the gas makes this kind of extinguisher excellent for putting out fires in electrical machinery, automobiles, and greases.

Many of the larger fire extinguishers in your school are of the soda-acid type (Fig. 132). They get this name from the fact that they contain two main substances: soda, like the baking soda you have in your kitchen; and sulfuric acid. This acid is in the small bottle shown in the cut-away photograph in Fig. 132. When you turn a soda-acid fire extinguisher upside down, the acid pours out of the little bottle and mixes with the soda. At once there is a violent chemical reaction which makes carbon dioxide gas form. The great pressure of this gas pushes the fluid out ahead of it with such force that you can send a stream against a fire 10 to 15 feet away. Sometimes another chemical is mixed with the soda so that a thick foam comes out of the hose. A foam-type extinguisher is very useful in fighting an oil fire because the foam floats on top of the oil like a blanket, keeping the air away from the fuel. Water is heavier than oil and will flow under it and spread an oil fire. It is important to use the right kind of fire extinguisher on different kinds of fires.

There are fire extinguishers which send out a cloud of carbon dioxide gas. Because carbon dioxide is heavier than air, you can pour it into a beaker or glass containing a burning candle and the flame of the candle will be put out.

If you live in a private house, you should own at least two fire extinguishers. A large one should be kept in the cellar. This can be of the soda-acid or foam type. In the kitchen you should have a smaller hand-size carbon dioxide extinguisher. It is very useful if a pan of fat takes fire. It is also safe to use on any fire caused by electricity because there is no liquid to conduct the electricity to your body.

You may think that no fire will ever start in your home. However, the experts who study the facts and figures of fires tell us that somewhere in America a home is burning every minute of the day and night. A fire extinguisher of the right kind used correctly and quickly may keep your home off this list.

In Case of Fire

Fighting a fire just as it starts is a good thing to do, but saving your life is even more important. In case of fire, you must never risk your life trying to put out the fire. Putting out fires is a job for trained firemen. If your house or your neighbor's house does catch fire, the first thing to do is make sure no one will be trapped inside the house. You cannot hide from fire under a bed or in a closet, as some people have tried to do. You must have a plan that will work without fail.

In school you have fire drills to train you how to get out to safety. When the fire signal sounds, make sure you follow every direction your teacher has given you.

Wherever you are — in school, at home, in a friend's home, in a place of business, restaurant, theater, or other public place — always make a mental note of at least two ways to get out (exits). You may be sure that if there were a fire in school, your teacher would know more than one way to lead you to safety should the stairs or exit nearest your room be blocked by flames or thick smoke.

When a fire starts, you have to act quickly. If you think the fire has too big a start, get out as fast as you can. In your haste do not forget to close every door you can put between yourself and the fire. Remember, hot air rises. Do not go upstairs in a burning building. A lungful of heated air may make you collapse long before the flames reach you. Put in a call by telephone from a neighbor's house or from the nearest fire alarm box. Know in advance where the alarm box is and how it works (Fig. 132). Never pull the lever on a fire alarm box unless you are reporting a fire. It is against the law to turn in false alarms.

You spend a large part of your life inside houses of one kind or another. You will want to be comfortable and safe. This chapter has given you an idea how to do so. Many books have been written on this subject, and you have much more to learn. Keep your eyes open and your mind alert to the things that make a house a home. Then we believe you will have a home that is safe and fit to live in. If it is already a fine place in which to live, do all you can to keep it that way.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words against their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

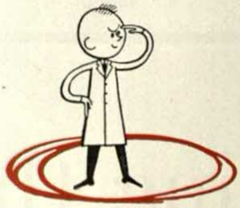
fiber
fabric
radiant heating
convection current
conduction
central heating system
humidifier
duct
register
refrigerant
brine
insulation
spontaneous combustion or ignition

1. material which lessens heat loss and is itself a poor conductor
2. a large pipe used in certain types of air-conditioning systems
3. the transfer of heat from molecule to molecule, by direct contact
4. a single strand of material used in making cloth
5. a device for adding moisture to air
6. a covering of a duct which may be opened or closed
7. a type of fire started by the heat resulting from slow oxidation
8. a strong solution of salt
9. a woven cloth
10. a heating system in which all parts of a house are heated from one furnace, which is usually located in the cellar
11. the upward movement of warm air as cooler air moves in under it
12. the transfer of heat by rays
13. a liquid that evaporates so fast that it cools things, as, for example, Freon

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. An open weave in clothing allows for better . . . and therefore better . . . of sweat.
2. The best protection against the wind is provided by garments made of . . . .
3. Black cloth will take in . . . heat from sunlight than white cloth of the same kind.
4. Hands will be cold in tight-fitting gloves because the . . . is poor.
5. Good wall and roof insulation will keep a house . . . in winter and . . . in summer.
6. The three main types of central heating systems are . . . , . . . , and . . . .
7. The ideal indoor temperature is . . . to . . . degrees.
8. The ideal humidity is about . . . %.
9. Fires are sometimes started by the careless disposal of . . . rags.
10. All you have to do to start a soda-acid–type fire extinguisher is to . . . .



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Cloth and water.* Cut samples of equal size of cloths of many kinds. Be sure each sample was ironed flat and smooth at the start. Dip each for a half-minute into a measured quart of water. Note (*a*) how much water each sample soaked up, (*b*) how long it takes each sample to dry, and (*c*) the smoothness of each sample after drying. What has this to do with protection against rain?

2. *Effect of weather on paints.* Get a dozen or more pieces of unpainted wood of the same size and kind. Paint all but one with one coat of various types of indoor and outdoor paints and varnishes. After the first coat has dried, paint half of each board with a second coat of the same paint. Expose all your samples to the same kind of weather conditions for a month or more and compare them.

3. *Study of building construction.* If a house is being built in your neighborhood, take pictures or draw sketches of it in each stage of development. Have the science reporter of your school or class newspaper interview the builder and ask about the materials the builder is using and how the house is being protected from weather and fire.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. List the things you would look for in buying a good suit, dress, or overcoat. Explain why.

2. Find out from your neighbors or a builder the advantages and disadvantages of different types of houses, including the new prefabricated houses. A prefabricated house is one that is made in large sections in a factory so that it can be put together quickly.

Adding to Your Library

1. *Repair of Clothing and Textiles,* U.S. Army Technical Manual TM 10–267, August, 1950. Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. (25 cents). A handy book for anyone who wants to make his clothing last longer.

2. *Hidden Hazards,* Insurance Company of North America, 1600 Archer St., Philadelphia (1), Pa. This is a free guide to the selection of proper materials and methods of construction.

3. *Judging Fabric Quality,* Farmer's Bulletin 1831, U.S. Department of Agriculture, 1939 (5 cents). The important facts for judging fabrics and fibers.

A Bit of Research

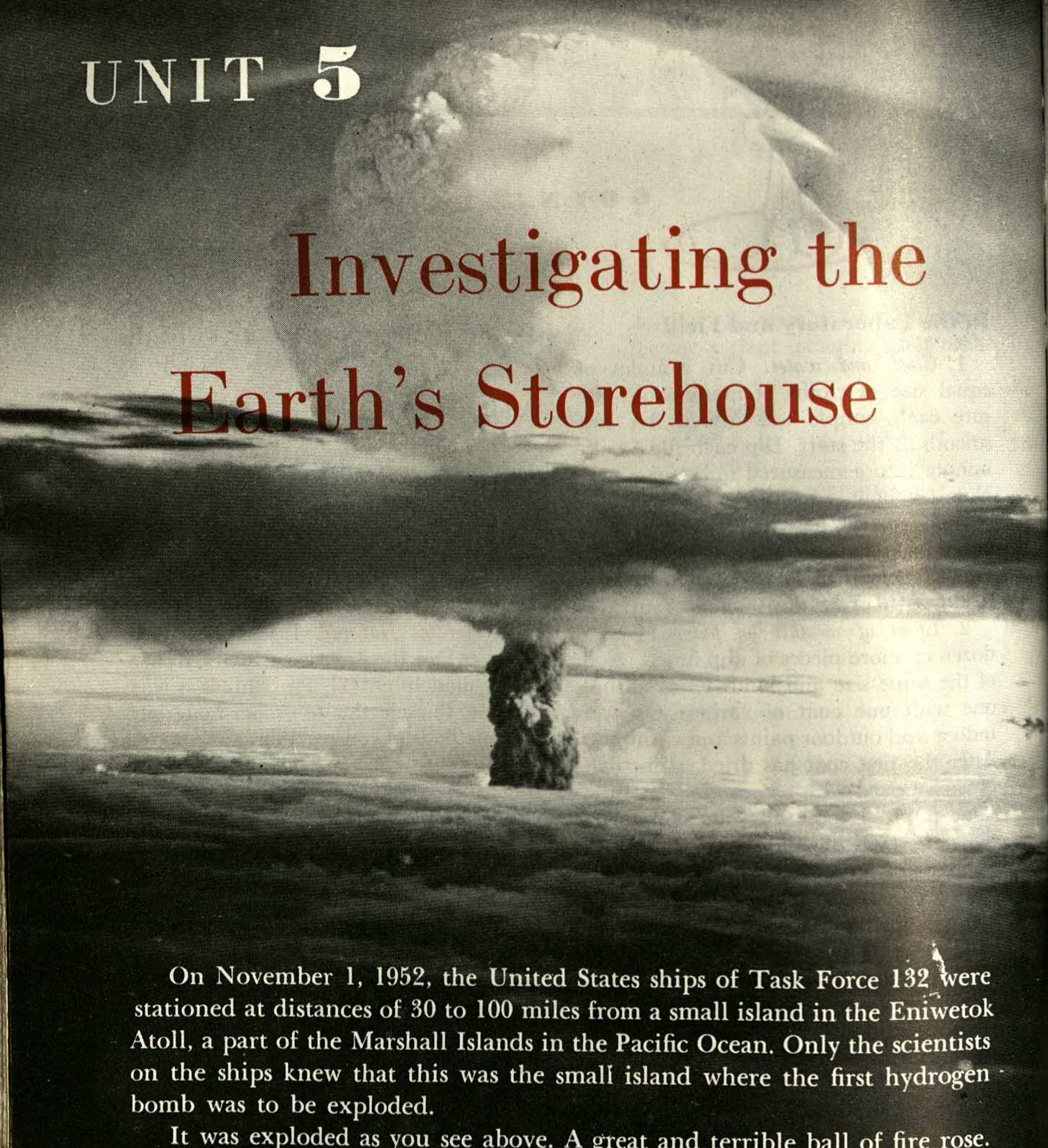
Draw a picture of the house you live in. On the drawing put a red cross wherever you find a place where a fire may start. Place a black cross wherever you find your house is not weatherproof. Finally, put a blue cross wherever you find that repairs need to be made. Put a circle around each of these crosses when whatever needs to be done has been finished.

Careers for You

There are important kinds of work which may be of interest to you now that you have read this chapter. You may find a career in the clothing trade (*designer, tailor*) or building trade (*carpenter, contractor*). You may wish to join the *fire department*, or become an *architect.*

UNIT 5

Investigating the Earth's Storehouse



On November 1, 1952, the United States ships of Task Force 132 were stationed at distances of 30 to 100 miles from a small island in the Eniwetok Atoll, a part of the Marshall Islands in the Pacific Ocean. Only the scientists on the ships knew that this was the small island where the first hydrogen bomb was to be exploded.

It was exploded as you see above. A great and terrible ball of fire rose. Even though the observers wore dark glasses and were at least 30 miles away, they were blinded for a few minutes. It was as if, as some reported, "a piece of the sun suddenly struck the earth."

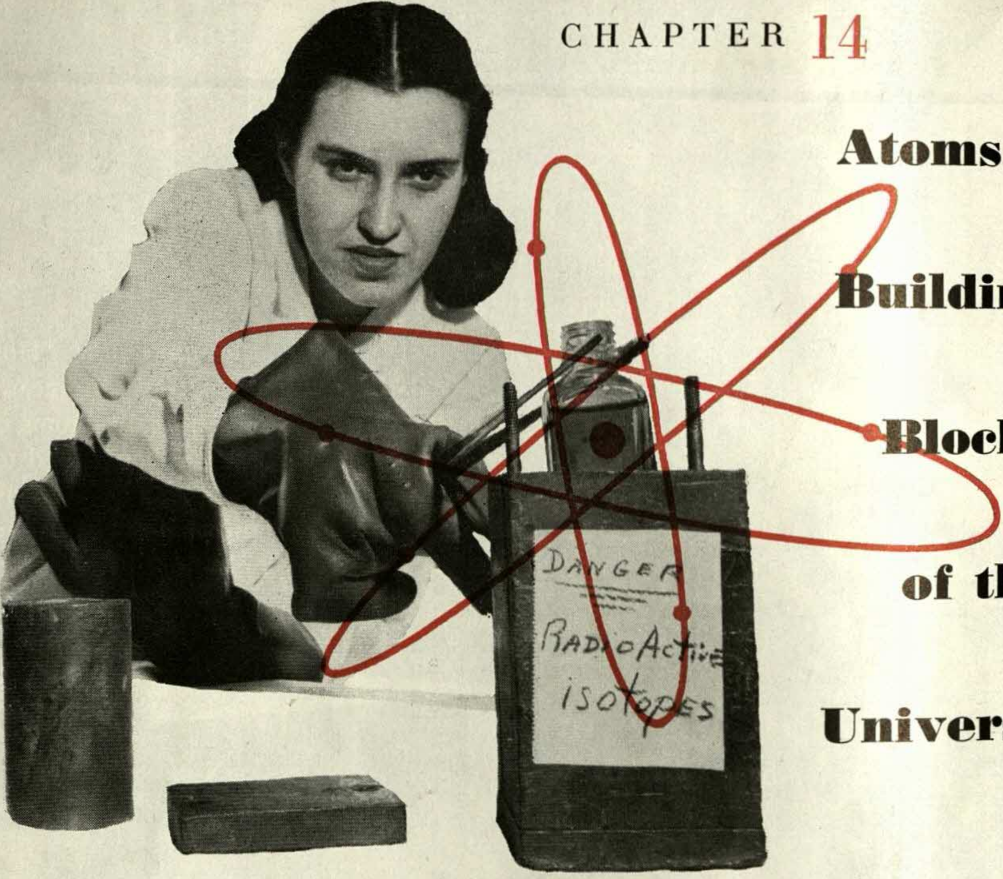
This first explosion of a hydrogen bomb was the greatest ever seen by man, and the most terrible. For this explosion, more powerful than that of early atomic bombs, proved that the hydrogen bomb might be able to destroy much of the world's civilization.

In this unit you will learn about atoms. You will learn what they are, how they are used to make atomic bombs, and how they may be put to work for you in peace. You will see why atoms have been called the building blocks of the universe. And you will see why you must use them intelligently.

Do you see the sign below: "Hot Experiment in Progress"? It means that the energy of splitting atoms is being used. Here it is being used to study how plants make food—a study of great importance. This is only one use of the power of the atom for peace.

CHAPTER 14

Atoms — Building Blocks of the Universe



A long time ago, man discovered fire. It made life easier, but only when it was used wisely. This is the age of the atom. Today man, as scientist, is studying the make-up of the atom — to use it wisely.

"SUPPOSE I cut a piece of gold wire into two equal pieces. Then I divide one, and keep on dividing each half-piece of wire. There must come a time when I can divide the gold no more, no matter what tool I use. I will have reached the smallest bit of gold that could possibly exist. Of course it would be too small to see."

This was the thought of a man who lived about 2,400 years ago in Greece. His name was Democritus (deh-MOK-rih-tus). He was one of the many great thinkers in Greece at that time. He said that everything — living as well as nonliving — was made up of tiny bits of matter. Democritus gave the name *atoms* to these tiny bits.

Democritus in his thinking about atoms was dealing not with gold alone. He was also dealing with everyday stuff — the stuff you see all around you every moment of your life. Scientists call this stuff *matter*. All things are made up of matter.

In this chapter, you will learn what matter is and how scientists since the time of Democritus have studied it. You will find that in their studies of matter scientists have discovered things which have changed your way of living. Let us look into these discoveries.

MATTER — ALL AROUND YOU

To test your ability to observe, examine any object on your desk or in the room. It may be a book, an eraser, a ruler, or a pen. After looking at it carefully, write on a piece of paper everything you can think of that will really describe the object. This is not an easy task by any means. A trained scientist describes materials under many headings, such as:

Color
Size
Shape
Luster (dull or shiny)
Hardness
Weight
Solubility (ability to dissolve in water)
Ability to burn
Kind of matter

Now go back to your list. How have you described your object? Examine a different object, like a penny or another coin. Describe it. Now let us go further.

Matter in All Forms

If you examined your two objects carefully, you may have noticed they were alike in some ways and different in others. But at least each had weight. All matter has weight. Did they also have a definite size and shape? All matter that has a definite size and a shape is classed as *solid*. "But," you say, "not all matter is solid." You are certainly right.

Take a piece of ice, frozen water, a solid. It has a definite size and shape and it has weight. Now put the piece of ice into a beaker and heat it. The size and shape of the ice change as it melts. What is the shape of the water? Continue heating. What happens to water when it boils?

By these simple acts you have checked several important facts. You have seen that water, a *liquid*, takes the shape of the container in which it is placed. You know it has weight because the beaker is heavier with water in it than it is when empty. You have seen that boiling water turns into a different kind of matter: steam, a *gas*. A gas spreads evenly through any container in which it is placed. That is why you get just as much air in one corner of a room as in another. That is why, when you pump up your bicycle tire, you do not expect the air to remain in one part of the tire. A gas also has weight; a truck tire when blown up may weigh as much as 25 pounds more than when it is flat.

You know now that matter is found in three forms, solids, liquids, and gases, as shown in the box on the next page.

Can you think of anything, anywhere, that is not a solid, a liquid, or a gas? What is rock? air? water? wood? even the sun and stars?

Make a list of things around you that you see or use at home, on the way to school, or at play. Now let us see if you can observe the *properties* of each, that is, the things that help you describe it and recognize it. Suppose you were to examine a pebble.

A Pebble	*Its Properties*
Color	Brown
Size	Small
Shape	Round
Luster	Dull
Hardness	Harder than glass
Weight	1 ounce
Solubility	None
Ability to burn	None
Kind of matter	Solid

Do the same for a piece of glass, a can, a penny, water, and air.

You may find that you have to think carefully about some of the things in your list. But you will find that everything on the list is either a solid, a liquid, or a gas.

Three Forms of Matter

1. A solid has a definite size and shape and has weight.

2. A liquid takes the shape of its container and has weight.

3. A gas spreads evenly through its container and has weight.

Now let us look further into what matter is. What are the solids, gases, or liquids you examined made of? Chemicals, you would say. True. But what are chemicals made of?

ELEMENTS ABOUT YOU

You could say your penny is made up of a chemical. Suppose your penny, the one you examined before, were made of pure copper.[1] Your penny would then be made up of the *element* copper. An element is simply a substance which cannot be divided into any other substances by ordinary means. Pure gold is made up of the element gold. The gas oxygen is made up of the element oxygen.

How many elements do you know? Copper, gold, hydrogen, zinc, oxygen? Any others? Table 8 on p. 317 gives you the common elements on this earth.

What is an element made of? An element is made up of its own kind of atoms. Thus the smallest part of the element gold which is still gold is an *atom* of gold. The smallest part of the element oxygen which is still oxygen is an atom of oxygen.

What happens when certain elements join together, that is, when two chemicals combine? Or, put another way, what happens when the atoms of elements combine? Chemists know that the substance formed is entirely different from the atoms which joined to make up the substance. The substance formed is made up of two or more kinds of atoms and is called a *compound*. Most of the materials you use or see every day are compounds. For example, common table salt is made up of the elements sodium and chlorine. Sodium is a metal dangerous to touch. Chlorine is a greenish-yellow poisonous gas. But table salt, a compound, does not hurt your tongue, nor does it give off a poisonous greenish-yellow gas.

Sugar is a compound made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. None of these elements, tasted or breathed separately or together, would be sugar. Likewise, the water you drink is made up of two gases, hydrogen and oxygen. If you breathed both gases together, would they satisfy your thirst?

---

[1] A copper penny is actually made up of 95% copper and 5% zinc and tin.

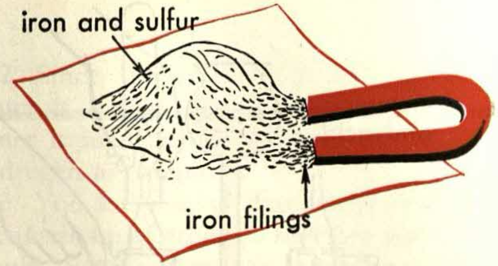
Clearly, some change takes place when elements form compounds. This change makes a compound very different from the elements that are in it. Don't think, however, that compounds are the same as mixtures. They are entirely different one from the other.

Mixtures and Compounds

Place a teaspoonful of powdered sulfur and about two-thirds of a teaspoonful of iron filings on a piece of paper. Mix the iron filings and the yellow sulfur thoroughly. You will find that when you hold a magnet close to the mixture, some of the iron filings hold onto the magnet. The yellow sulfur does not. You see by this that two or more substances in a *mixture* can often be separated one from the other (Fig. 133).

What is the difference between a mixture and a compound? The substances in a mixture have not combined with each other to form a new substance. As in your experiment above, the substances in a mixture may be separated from each other. A compound is a new substance different from the substances from which it was originally made.

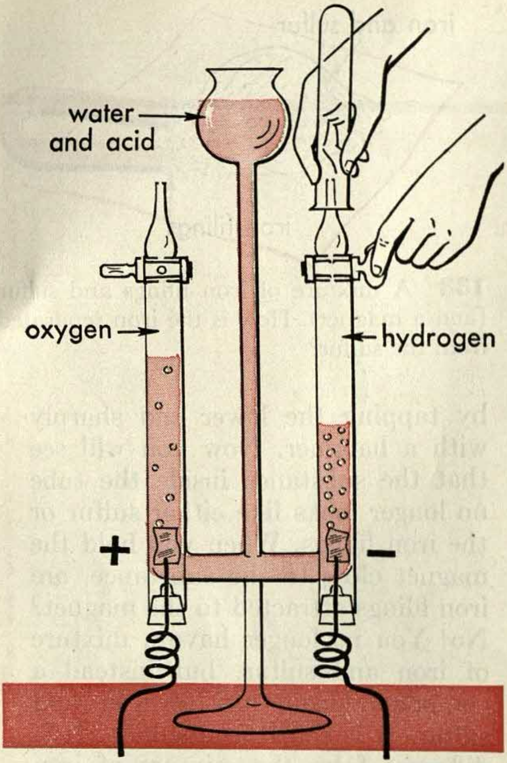
You can make a compound. Place the mixture of iron filings and sulfur in a test tube and heat over the hot flame of a Bunsen burner. You will notice that the sulfur melts and then the mixture glows. Remove the tube from the flame, and after the tube has cooled break it open by tapping the lower end sharply with a hammer. Now you will see that the substance inside the tube no longer looks like either sulfur or the iron filings. When you hold the magnet close to the substance, are iron filings attracted to the magnet? No! You no longer have a mixture of iron and sulfur, but instead a compound made up of iron and sulfur. It is called iron sulfide. It is different from the mixture of iron and sulfur you heated. It has new properties. The two elements iron and sulfur are now combined chemically into a new substance, iron sulfide.



133 A mixture of iron filings and sulfur (and a magnet). How is the iron separated from the sulfur?

Mixtures are found everywhere. You have learned that only a few elements are found in nature the way gold is found. Usually they are found combined with other elements in compounds. And most compounds are found mixed with other compounds in the earth's crust.

The water you drink is not absolutely pure; it has in it small amounts of the substances found in the earth. Sea water has in it larger amounts of these substances than does fresh water, so that it is not healthful to drink. The air you breathe is a mixture of gases; in it are found nitrogen, oxygen (both elements), and carbon dioxide and water vapor



134 An electric current breaks up water (to which a little acid has been added) into two gases, hydrogen and oxygen. How does the volume of hydrogen produced compare with that of oxygen?

(compounds).[1] Most solids, liquids, and gases found on the earth are therefore made up of mixtures of compounds and elements.

Elements and Molecules

Suppose you were to divide some matter, like a cupful of water, into the smallest part which would still be water. What would you have? You would have a *molecule* of water — not atoms of water, as Democritus thought. Let us see why you would have molecules and not atoms. First, what is a molecule?

You must have heard the word *molecule* often — as often as you have heard the word *atom*, perhaps. A molecule is the smallest part of any material or substance that really is that substance. Thus the *smallest* particle of rubber that has the properties of rubber is a molecule of rubber. The *smallest* particle of salt that has the properties of salt is a molecule of salt. The smallest particle of carbon dioxide that has the properties of carbon dioxide is a molecule of carbon dioxide. Molecules cannot be seen with the naked eye or even with ordinary microscopes. However, some very large ones have been seen with the powerful electron microscope.

Molecules are made up of atoms. How is a molecule different from an atom? To see this you will need to do some experiments.

Breaking Up Molecules

Molecules of some substances can be broken up by heating. Heating speeds up the movement of the molecules, causing them to strike together with a force great enough to break them up into atoms. Thus mercuric oxide, made up of mercury and oxygen, will break up into mercury and oxygen when heated. You can do this in your school laboratory (p. 288).

Molecules can also be broken up by electricity. Let us see what happens to water molecules when electricity passes through water.

Your school laboratory probably has a piece of apparatus like that in Fig. 134. Fill the apparatus with water to which has been added a little sulfuric acid. Connect the apparatus to two to four dry cells, as in Fig. 134.

---

[1] Also in air are small amounts of other elements that are gases, such as argon and neon.

Notice the bubbles of gas rising in each tube. In one of the tubes, however, the level of water is falling twice as fast as in the other. A gas is collecting in each tube as the electricity breaks up the molecules of water. What gases are to be found in each tube? Let us test them.

Hold a test tube over the tube which has more gas. Open the end of the tube. The gas rushes upward into the test tube. Test this gas with a burning splint of wood. A small explosion takes place; you hear a small "pop." When flame touches a mixture of hydrogen and air, the mixture explodes. Since you know that water is made up of hydrogen and oxygen, you conclude that the tube with more gas in it (the one with the lower water level) had hydrogen in it.

Now collect the gas in the other tube and test it with a glowing splint of wood. The splint bursts into flame. A splint burns brightly in pure oxygen much better than it does in air. Air, you remember, contains only 20% oxygen. Since one of the elements in water is oxygen, you conclude that the tube with the higher water level contained oxygen.

Here is what you might further conclude:

1. The amount of the hydrogen formed from breaking up water molecules is twice the amount of the oxygen formed. You know this because the water level in the hydrogen tube fell twice as far in the same time as the level of water in the oxygen tube. Therefore, water contains twice as much hydrogen as oxygen by *volume*, that is, by the amount of space it takes up.

2. Since the smallest particle of water is a molecule, a molecule of water is made up of twice as much hydrogen as oxygen.

3. You know now that molecules are made up of atoms. Therefore you would finally conclude that each molecule of water must contain at least two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen. Thus, when an electric current is passed through water, each molecule breaks up in this way until all the water is used up:

1 molecule of water → 2 atoms of hydrogen + 1 atom of oxygen

1 molecule of water → 2 atoms of hydrogen + 1 atom of oxygen

You can see now why water is called H_2O. Writing H_2O is the simplest way to show that there are two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom in a molecule of water.

When we change molecules of water or any other substance into their separate atoms, or unite atoms to form molecules, we have a *chemical change*. This is different from a physical change, in which just a change in the appearance of the material is made. Tearing a piece of paper or changing ice to water or water to steam are examples of physical change.

BUILDING UP THE UNIVERSE

Everything on earth which we have examined — and scientists think that the entire earth, the entire universe

KEYSTONE

135 Madame Marie Curie, discoverer of radium, started scientists on the trail of other radioactive elements.

— is made up of elements, compounds, or mixtures of elements and compounds. You cannot name anything that is not made up in this way. At this point study the following diagram. (The arrows should be read to mean "are made up of.")

earth and universe → elements and compounds or their mixtures → molecules made up of atoms

In a way, atoms are the building blocks of the universe. That is, the universe is made up of atoms.

The Roll Call of Atoms

An element, as you have seen, is a substance which with other elements can make up compounds. Compounds, elements, or their mixtures are the solids, liquids, or gases that make up the earth and universe. All these elements which make up compounds or mixtures are made up of atoms.

How many types of atoms have scientists discovered? Before 1940, we could say that we knew of 92 elements, made up of atoms, on earth. However, as work on atomic energy went on, scientists actually made eight new atoms. Later you will learn how this great discovery, a method for making new atoms, came about. Right now you need to know only that man can make new atoms and that he has actually made eight of them.[1]

The evidence to date shows that there are 100 kinds of atoms, making up 100 different elements.

ATOMS INTO SMALLER PARTICLES

Now let's go back to Democritus. You remember his idea — that the smallest particle of a substance is an atom. It took over 2,300 years after Democritus died for anyone to give any real thought to the make-up of atoms. By that time scientists had begun to gather some facts upon which to base their thinking.

---

[1] The eight new atoms are called neptunium (nep-TYOO-nee-um), *plutonium* (ploo-TOH-nee-um), curium (KYOOR-ee-um), americium (am-uh-RISH-ee-um), berkelium (ber-KEEL-ee-um), californium (kal-uh-FOR-nee-um), eka-holmium (ek-ah-HOL-mee-um), and eka-erbium (ek-ah-ER-bee-um). The first is named after the planet Neptune, and the second after the planet Pluto. The third is named for Madame Curie, the famous Polish scientist (Fig. 135). The fourth is named for America, the fifth for Berkeley, Calif., and the sixth for the state of California. The last two will probably be renamed.

Dalton and His Atoms

In the nineteenth century, a great English scientist, John Dalton, published his atomic theory. He said:

1. Atoms are very small.
2. Atoms of the same element weigh the same. They are different in weight from atoms of any other element.
3. Atoms of one element can combine with atoms of another element. When they do this, they form new substances.

It is true that these statements seem very simple. Yet Dalton was the first scientist to speak of the weight of atoms. He was also the first to say that atoms of different elements have different weights. These differences in weights are shown by numbers. If an atom of hydrogen, the lightest element, is given the weight of 1, an atom of uranium, 238 times heavier than an atom of hydrogen, is given the weight of 238. When we speak later of carbon 12, we shall mean that an atom of carbon 12 is 12 times as heavy as a hydrogen atom. We shall use, therefore, the numbers 238 and 12 to mean the weights of atoms of uranium and carbon. When we speak here of *atomic weight*, we shall mean the weight of one atom of an element.[1] (See Table 8 on p. 317.)

Taking the Atom Apart

Still Dalton had not gone much further than Democritus. Their idea of atoms was the same. Both men thought atoms were like very tiny marbles that could not be seen.

In later years, scientists went ahead faster. In 1898 came the discovery of radium by Madame Curie. A few years later, it was discovered that atoms of radium threw off particles and rays that went through flesh and even metal. Several different types of particles and rays were discovered. Among them, scientists found *electrons* (eh-LEK-tronz).[1]

You can well imagine what this discovery did to the idea that atoms are tiny, *solid particles* like invisible marbles. Since an atom of radium was found to throw off electrons (particles of matter smaller than an atom) there must be electrons in atoms!

Surprises were not over. Scientists knew now what to look for, and they found that atoms of other elements heavier than radium — yes, even uranium — also threw off particles. A name was needed for the strange kind of activity in which these elements threw off smaller particles and rays. Scientists called it *radioactivity*. From studying radioactive elements, scientists came to have a new and different idea of the atom.

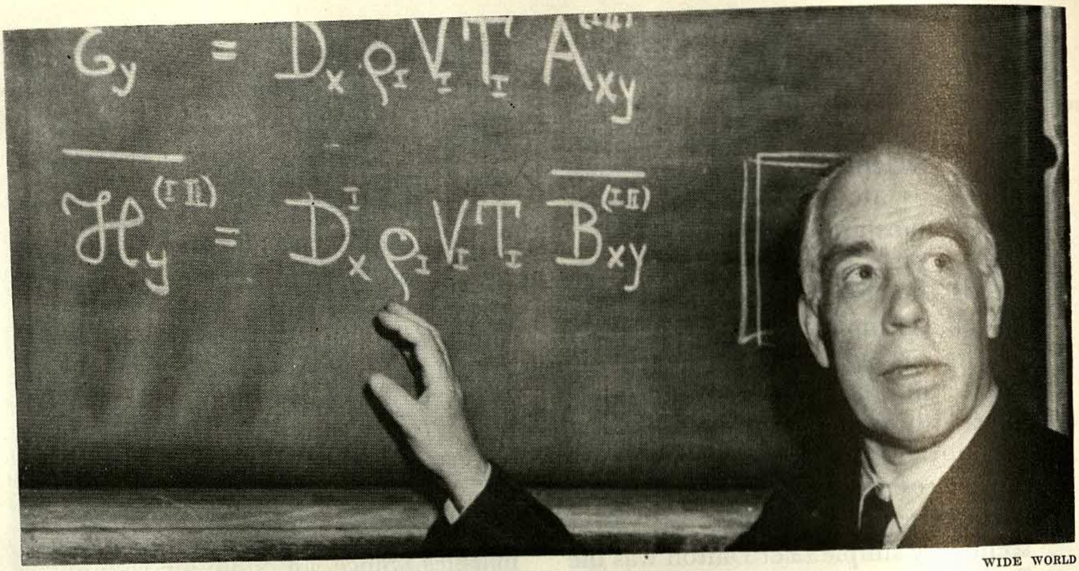
Finding the Nucleus of the Atom

Ernest Rutherford, another English scientist, took up the search. He held the hypothesis, as did Niels Bohr (Fig. 136), a Danish scientist, that an atom is like a very small solar system. A hypothesis, you will remember, is a good scientific guess, or working idea, based on known facts. They supposed that the nucleus

---

[1] Actually, chemists use the weight of the atom of oxygen as the weight to which other other atomic weights are compared. An atom of oxygen is about 16 times the weight of an atom of hydrogen. Since in this text we are using atomic weights in round numbers, we will use hydrogen as the base for comparison.

[1] Electrons are tiny atomic particles carrying a negative charge.


WIDE WORLD

136 The work of the Dane, Niels Bohr, dealt deeply with the structure of the atom. He did much to show the part electrons play.

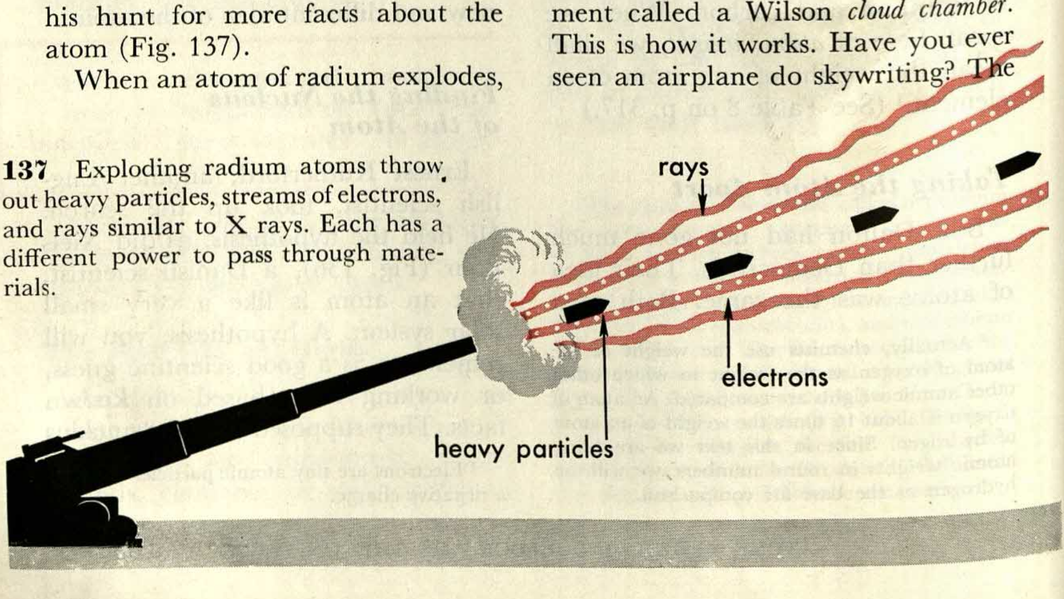
(center) is like the sun, and that the electrons, like the planets, move about the nucleus.

This hypothesis was based on a few known facts, but many other facts were not known. Would the hypothesis fit new facts to be discovered later? It was important to get new facts to check whether the hypothesis was right. Rutherford had the brilliant idea of using radium as a gun in his hunt for more facts about the atom (Fig. 137).

When an atom of radium explodes, certain other particles are given off along with the electrons (Fig. 137). Certain of these particles, much heavier than electrons, have a weight similar to atoms of a gas called helium. These helium particles Rutherford thought of as bullets. Helium particles travel 20,000 times faster than the fastest machine gun bullets! How could he trace their paths?

Nowadays scientists use an instrument called a Wilson *cloud chamber*. This is how it works. Have you ever seen an airplane do skywriting? The

137 Exploding radium atoms throw out heavy particles, streams of electrons, and rays similar to X rays. Each has a different power to pass through materials.

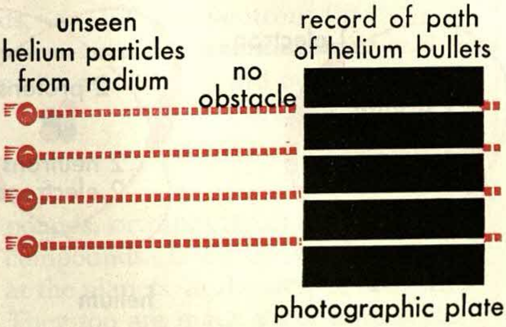


airplane traces its path by giving off a cloud of smoky material. If you could not see the airplane, you would still know it was there by the path it had traced. In much the same way, helium bullets trace a path in the moist air of a cloud chamber (Fig. 138). Rutherford used the cloud chamber in his experiments. He may even have used other methods too complex to be described here. In any event, Rutherford could follow the paths of his invisible helium bullets.

What Rutherford did was to place some tin foil in the paths of these helium particles he was using as bullets. If one of these bullets hit part of an atom in the tin foil, the path of the bullet would be changed, much as a real bullet glances off a hard object. If the bullet did not hit part of an atom, its path would not change.

To Rutherford's surprise, most of his helium bullets hit nothing. They passed through the tin foil as though the tin foil were not there (Fig. 139).

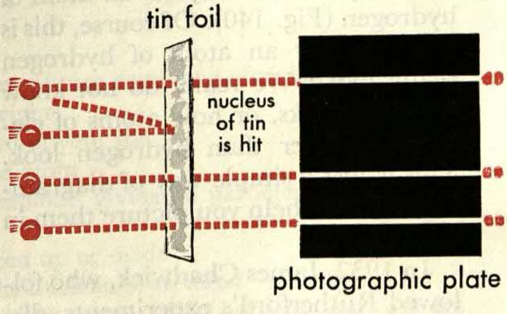
From his work and that of other experimenters, Rutherford built up this picture of an atom: An atom is made up of a tiny center, or *nucleus*, with electrons moving around it. These electrons move around the nucleus of the atom much as our planets move around the sun. Most of the helium bullets passed right through the tin foil because they went through the spaces between the nucleus and electrons of the atoms of tin.



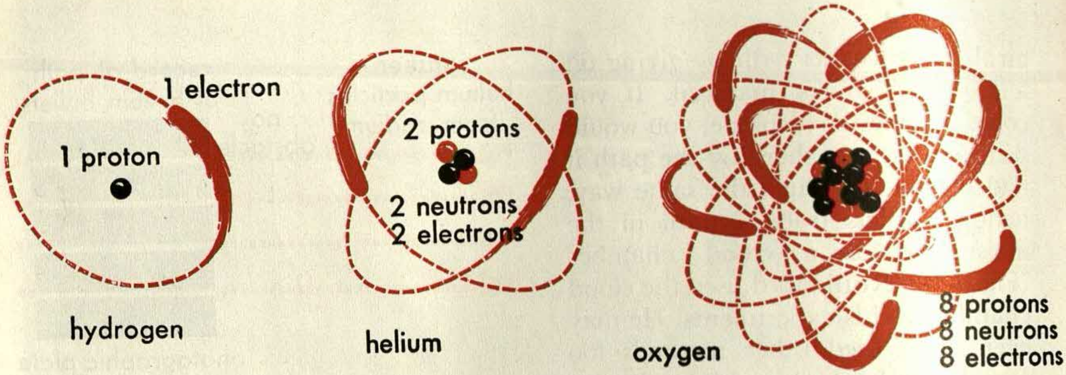
138 The paths of unseen helium bullets can be photographed.

Imagine that it was something like this: Suppose an atom of tin could be enlarged to fill your school playground. The nucleus of the atom would then be as large as a grain of wheat. Standing off to one side of the playground, how many times could you hit the grain of wheat in the middle of the playground with an air rifle? Once in a thousand shots? A hundred thousand shots? This will give you an idea of how hard it is to hit the nucleus of an atom. Remember, however, that under actual conditions the helium bullets used are even smaller than the nucleus of the atoms at which they are fired.

Thus Rutherford concluded that, small as it is, an atom is mostly empty space, with a nucleus at its center. It is now known that if the nucleus of an atom of iron, for example, could be enlarged to the size of an orange, the electrons that move around it would move in circles 45 miles in diameter, that is, about 22½ miles from the nucleus. What an empty space between the nucleus and the electrons!



139 When the nucleus of an atom of tin is hit, the path of the helium bullet is changed. Thus the path does not show on the photographic plate.



140 *Left*, an atom of ordinary hydrogen is made up of one electron rotating about one proton (in the nucleus). Remember that these are not actual size. *Center*, an atom of helium is made up to two electrons rotating about two protons and two neutrons in the nucleus. *Right*, an atom of oxygen is made up of eight electrons rotating about eight protons and eight neutrons in the nucleus.

Exploring the Nucleus of the Atom

Meanwhile, many other scientists were working on the nucleus to find out more about what an atom is made of. They discovered that the nucleus had in it small particles of matter. These they named *protons* (PROH-tonz). They reasoned that the lightest element known — hydrogen — would have the smallest number of protons in its nucleus and the smallest number of electrons outside. The hydrogen atom is now known to have one proton and one electron. Now you see how easy it is to diagram an atom of hydrogen (Fig. 140). Of course, this is not the way an atom of hydrogen really looks. We really do not know how one looks, or how atoms of elements heavier than hydrogen look. This is just a simple way of diagramming atoms to help you picture them in your mind.

In 1932, James Chadwick, who followed Rutherford's experiments, discovered another particle in the nucleus of the atom. He called it a *neutron* (NOO-tron). It weighs almost the same as a proton. Each neutron and proton in the nucleus of an atom is 1,840 times heavier than an electron outside the nucleus. Today scientists know that nearly the entire weight of the atom is in the tiny nucleus.

THE ATOM TODAY

Here is the atom as we know it today, so small that one can hardly picture its size. It would take 250 million atoms of hydrogen placed side by side to make a line 1 inch long. No one has ever seen an atom, not even with the electron microscope. But the unending research of modern science has shown what is inside an atom. To be able to picture an atom of hydrogen, as you have done with the help of this chapter, is something that scientists one hundred years ago would have envied. You now have a good idea of what atoms have in them. You know what is meant by the statement that atoms are the building blocks of the universe. We may exearth and the universe → solids, liquids, gases → elements, compounds, or their mixtures → atoms (of elements) → protons and neutrons (in the nucleus) and outer electrons

press our ideas as shown in the box on this page. Again, read each arrow to mean "are made up of."

Whether you look at your clothing, your pencil, the chocolate you eat, or your home, you are looking at combinations of atoms. They are either in the form of elements or compounds, or mixtures of elements and compounds. Look up at the moon, at the planets, at the sun, at the stars. They too are made up of atoms, elements, and compounds. The atom, truly, is the building block of the universe.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words against their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

matter
gas
liquid
solid
atom
element
compound
mixture
solubility
radium
radioactivity
chemical change
atomic weight
molecule
physical change
cloud chamber
nucleus
proton
neutron
electron

1. a substance in which two or more elements are combined chemically
2. has definite size and shape and has weight
3. stuff you see around you every moment of your life
4. particles of matter in the nucleus of an atom
5. an element whose atoms continually explode, giving off particles and rays
6. the tiny center of an atom
7. a change in which molecules are broken up or made
8. a tiny particle that revolves around the nucleus of an atom
9. the kind of activity possessed by exploding atoms, when particles and rays are given off
10. a change in which the molecules of a substance remain the same
11. spreads evenly throughout its container and has weight

12. the smallest particle of an element which is that element
13. ability to dissolve in water
14. the smallest particle of a substance which has the properties of that substance
15. an instrument for tracing the path of radioactive particles
16. contains substances that have not combined with each other by a chemical change
17. the weight of an atom of an element
18. takes the shape of its container and has weight
19. a substance that cannot be divided into any other substance by ordinary means

Test Yourself

Below are a number of statements, each one of which is either true (based on evidence) or untrue (not based on evidence). In your notebook, mark those which are true with the statement "based on evidence," and those which are not true "not based on evidence." DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. All matter is made up of solids or liquids or gases.
2. A gas has a definite size and shape, but no weight.
3. Changing water into steam is a physical change.
4. A mixture is different from a compound because it is made by a chemical change.
5. A substance is a solid, liquid, or gas because of its temperature.
6. The energy of electricity can be used to separate water into two parts of oxygen and one part of hydrogen by volume.
7. The ability of radium to give off particles proved that Dalton's idea of the atom was correct.
8. All the electrons in an atom are found in the nucleus.
9. Most of the weight of an atom is in the electrons.
10. A hydrogen atom is heavier than an atom of uranium.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. *Heating metal.* Heat a piece of copper wire in a low gas flame for two minutes. Examine the coating on the wire when it cools. What color is it? Is it different from the copper you heated? Many metals when heated in air combine with the oxygen of the air. For instance, when mercury is heated it combines with oxygen. Now go on to *2.*

2. *Breaking up a compound.* Fill a test tube one-third full of mercuric oxide. Place a stopper and delivery tube in the mouth of the test tube. Heat the test tube in a high flame for five minutes. Collect the gas coming from the mercuric oxide in an empty test tube. Test the gas with a glowing splint. Is it the same gas you tested in the breaking up of water (pp. 280–281)? Now examine

the sides of the heated test tube. Compare what you see there with the mercury in the bulb of a thermometer. What do you conclude as to elements that make up mercuric oxide?

3. *A model of hydrogen.* Make a model of an atom of hydrogen by using a soft rubber ball for a nucleus. Mold a small ball of plastic clay on the end of a wire and insert the other end of the wire into the rubber ball. The small ball of plastic clay represents one electron. Now hang up your model as a display in class. (Perhaps you can "make" other atoms.)

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. The formula for hydrogen sulfide is H_2S. What does this mean?

2. How did the discovery of radium help scientists understand the atom?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Atoms at Work* by George P. Bischof, Harcourt, Brace, 1951. This interesting story tells what atoms and molecules are made of and what they do.

2. *Atomic Experiments for Boys* by Raymond F. Yates, Harper and Brothers, 1952. If you want to make a cloud chamber or read a fascinating account about putting atoms together, this book will please you.

3. *Picture Book of Molecules and Atoms* by Jerome S. Meyer, Lothrop, Lee and Shepard Co., 1947. This book has some very good pictures and descriptions of solids, liquids, and gases, together with a clear explanation of atoms and molecules.

A Bit of Research

One of the most important tools of scientists who study the atom is a cloud chamber. From the books recommended in "Adding to Your Library" and from others you may find in your school library, prepare a report on how the cloud chamber has helped scientists unlock the secrets of the atom. The next step is to build a cloud chamber yourself. Directions for building a simple cloud chamber that will show the paths of atomic "bullets" may be had by writing to Editorial Office, Adventures Ahead, Dept. 2–111, General Electric Co., Schenectady (5), N.Y.

Careers for You

From the reading of this chapter and from your reference books you now have a good idea of the work of some of the scientists who have made important discoveries about matter and the atoms of which it is made. Every one of these important discoveries depended upon the work and help of hundreds, yes, sometimes thousands, of other men and women scientists who made discoveries of their own.

In large and small laboratories of industries and of local, state, and national governments there is a constant demand for science specialists such as *chemists* and *physicists*, and for *laboratory helpers* and *technicians*. Would *you* like to make an important discovery in science? or contribute to one? The opportunity awaits you if you go on in science.

CHAPTER 15

Splitting the Atom

An atom bomb goes off, and the terrible mushroom cloud rises. Atoms have split. But splitting atoms are being used for peace, too. An atomic engine has been built. And so has a heating plant using atomic energy.

On March 17, 1953, the morning sky over Las Vegas, Nevada, lighted up with a brightness one hundred times greater than the strongest sunlight. However, there was no excitement. Nor was there any panic when minutes later the air blast of an atomic bomb explosion struck the city. By this time people in Las Vegas knew all about atomic explosions. This was not the first to be set off eighty miles away.

What made this atomic test unusual was that two houses had been built for the test. One was two-thirds of a mile, and the other a mile and a half, away from the explosion. The scientists wanted to find out how houses as far away as that would stand up against the air blast.

Even though 3,500 feet away from the explosion, House No. 1 was completely destroyed. House No. 2, 7,500 feet away, stood, although damaged. Does this give you some idea of the giant power of the atom bomb?

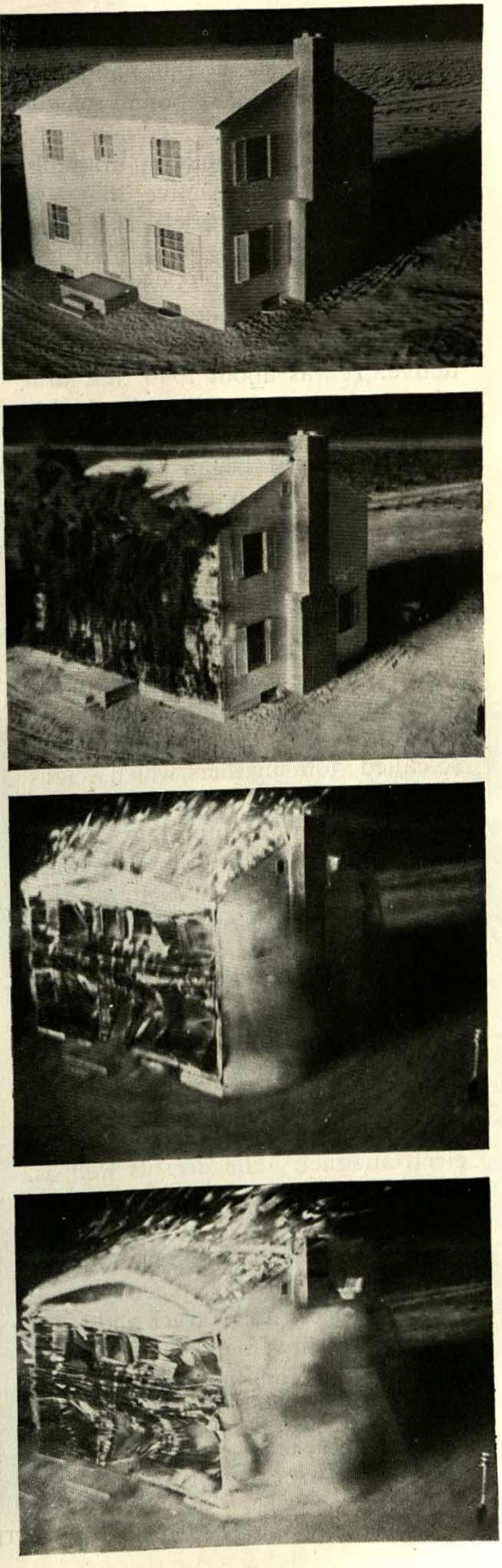
This chapter is the story of scientists at work. It is the story of how they split atoms to make an atomic bomb and fused atoms to make a hydrogen bomb. It is also the story of what the future may bring if the great energy of the atom is used for peace instead of war. It is also the story of the element uranium and how scientists learned to use it.

THE SECRET OF URANIUM

Uranium is one of the most important elements found in the earth. It is so eagerly sought that just a whisper about the discovery of a new uranium deposit sends men rushing to get some of the land at the scene of the find.

However, uranium is never found lying around loose like gold. It is found combined with other elements. A dark, earthy mixture called pitchblende is very rich in uranium (Fig. 153). Pitchblende has been found in a very few places in the earth's crust, such as the Belgian Congo in central Africa, Canada, and Czechoslovakia. Only poor deposits are found in the United States, and these are in a region called the Colorado Plateau. However, much of our supply of uranium comes from this plateau.

No matter where uranium is found, it always has in it two kinds of uranium. One kind, uranium 238, is 99.3% of the total, and uranium 235 makes up the other 0.7%. That



USAEC

141 These pictures, taken in less than 4 seconds by a special camera, show the effect of an atomic bomb explosion on a house 3,500 feet (⅔ of a mile) from the center of the blast. *Top*, the undamaged house before the explosion. *Second picture*, the tremendous heat sets fire to the front of the house facing the explosion. *Last two pictures*, the fire is put out by the great blast of air, which blows the house apart.

is to say, in every 140 pounds of uranium there is 1 pound of the lighter uranium 235.

Scientists have found that uranium, like radium, is radioactive; that is, it gives off rays and particles as radium does. They also have found that it is the lighter uranium 235 which causes most of this radioactivity, although the heavier uranium 238 is also radioactive. It was about 1940 that uranium came to be considered a highly valuable element. Then scientists all over the world began to study its properties, using an instrument called the *cyclotron* (SYKE-luh-tron).

The Cyclotron

To find a way to break up the atom called for the best efforts of man's brain and hands. In Fig. 142 you see a diagram of a cyclotron, one of the so-called atom smashers, which weighs hundreds of tons.

One of the most important parts of the cyclotron is a hollow, divided copper disk. In a large cyclotron this disk is over 5 feet from edge to edge. It is about 2 inches thick but divided into halves, with a 2-inch gap between the halves (Fig. 142).

Because the hollow half-disks are shaped like two D's, they are called dees. The dees are placed in an airtight box surrounded by a powerful electromagnet.[1] The dees as well as the electromagnet are attached to a source of electricity.

Here is how the cyclotron works. Suppose a rabbit were placed in the exact center of a spiral track and were to run in a tiny fraction of a second once around the first small spiral. Then suppose some force made him run around the next longer spiral and the next in the same time. Since the spirals increase in length, pretty soon he is whizzing along at a terrific speed. This is exactly what happens in the cyclotron. Instead of a rabbit, atomic particles are shot into the center of the circle made up by the two dees. Let us follow the path of one of them, say a proton (Fig. 142).

First, the proton is "pulled" by electricity from one dee to the other dee at the rate of thousands of times a second. Each passage between the dees takes place at great speed.

If the dees were not inside a powerful electromagnet, the proton would spend its time rushing back and forth between the two dees. But the strong pull of the electromagnet attracts the proton into a circular path that makes a spiral. What really happens, then, is that the proton keeps circling outward. As it circles, it goes faster and faster in each longer spiral until it is spinning near the wall of the hollow dees. At this point its speed may be over 100,000 miles per second. Now the proton shoots out of a metal window placed on the edge of one of the dees (Fig. 144).

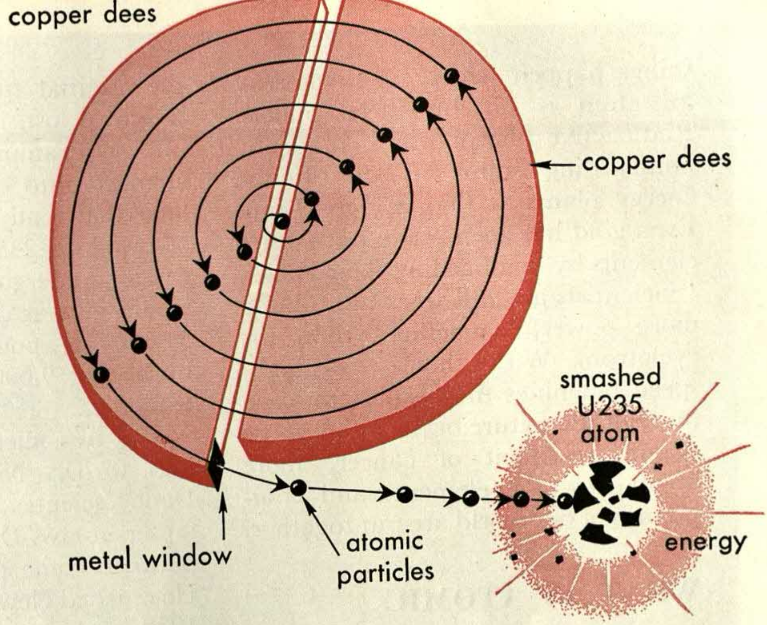
In a thousandth part of a second, millions of these protons pass through the metal window. If they are allowed to escape into air instead of hitting an atomic target, they leave a blue trail several feet in length behind them. This beam is deadly. If a person exposed himself to it for a few seconds, he would die.

Changing Atoms

The particles leaving the metal window of the cyclotron may be thought of as atomic bullets. Strange

---

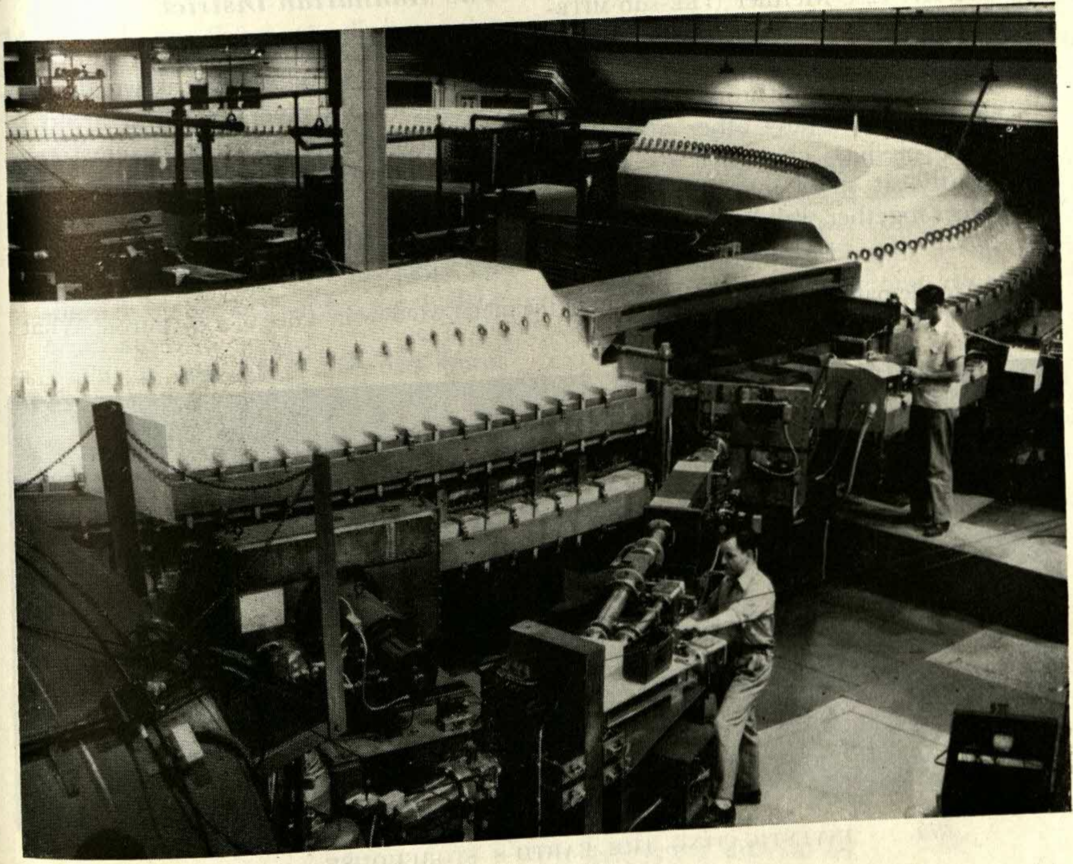
[1] An electromagnet is a magnet made by sending electricity through coils of wire wound around a bar of iron.



142 Atomic particles from a cyclotron split atoms of uranium 235, releasing energy.

143 This cosmotron speeds up atomic particles even faster than a cyclotron does. The atomic particles are sent into the machine where the two men are standing.

BROOKHAVEN NATIONAL LABORATORY



things happen when the nucleus of an atom is hit by these bullets. Radioactive phosphorus is made by bombarding sulfur in the atomic energy plants at Oak Ridge, Tenn. Even gold has been made from other elements by bombarding their nuclei.

Scientists are still working to build more powerful machines than the cyclotron. With these new high-speed machines they expect to learn more of the nature of the atom, more about treatment of cancer, more about how the elements and compounds of our world are put together.

WHAT IS ATOMIC FISSION?

Two scientists, Dr. O. R. Frisch and Dr. Lise Meitner (LEE-suh·MITE-ner), were among the first to bombard uranium with neutrons. They discovered that an atom of uranium behaves unlike any other atom. Instead of just changing its weight slightly, it splits into pieces. These pieces together weigh a little less than the original atom of uranium. Since weight is lost, it is clear that a small bit of uranium must have been changed into energy. It was shown later that if all the atoms in a pound of uranium 235 were made to split, or to undergo *fission*, this pound would give as much energy as could 5 million pounds of coal when burned or 9,000 tons of TNT when exploded.

The two scientists sent their findings to Dr. Niels Bohr, the great Danish scientist, who was Dr. Frisch's father-in-law. Dr. Bohr at once made plans to come to the United States. He reached New York on January 16, 1939, and there he set about getting ready for further work.

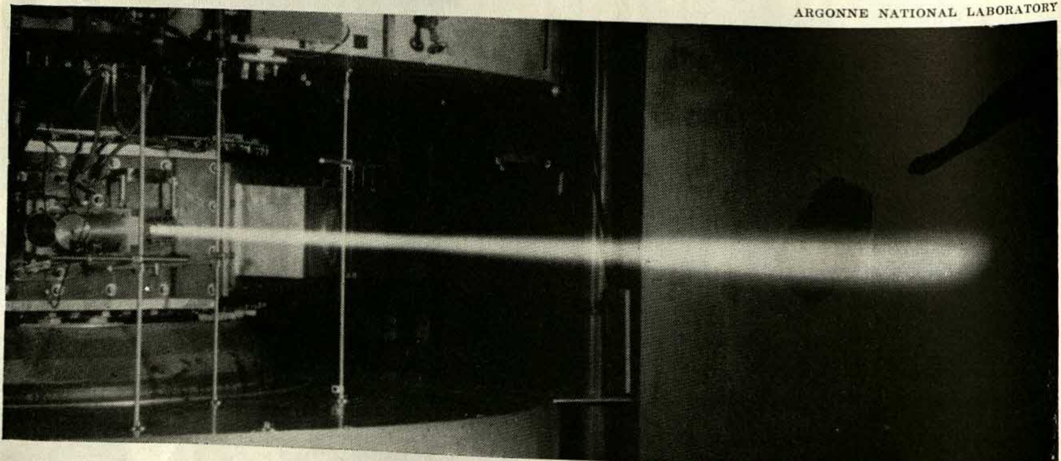
The Manhattan District

Together with Dr. Enrico Fermi (Fig. 145), an Italian scientist working at Columbia University, Dr. Harold Urey, and many other scientists, Dr. Bohr went on to find out more about splitting uranium atoms.

Fermi had found that the nucleus

144 Atomic particles are being shot out of the metal window in a dee of a cyclotron. What causes the beam of light?

ARGONNE NATIONAL LABORATORY



WIDE WORLD

145 Dr. Enrico Fermi, who died recently, is shown operating the controls of a new 100 million electron-volt betatron (BET-uh-tron) at the University of Chicago. The betatron and the cosmotron (Fig. 143) will help scientists find out what holds the nucleus of an atom together.

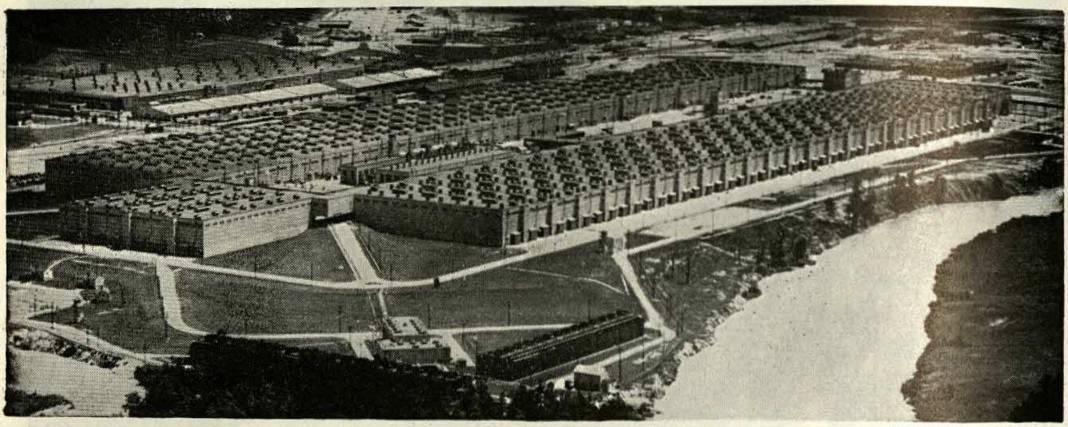
of an atom can easily capture neutrons shot at it if the neutrons are first slowed up. Fermi slowed up the speeding neutrons by passing them through carbon. Then it was easier for them to hit the real target, the nucleus of an atom.

This is what these scientists found when they worked with "slow" neutrons: when an atom of uranium 235 is hit by slowed-up neutrons, it breaks into several parts. *But it also shoots out more neutrons.* These neutrons, in their turn, hit other atoms of uranium 235 and break them up — and more neutrons are produced. As each atom breaks up, a part of the atom turns into energy. This energy is very, very great, beyond that of any known fuel. At once there came into the minds of the scientists the idea of breaking up atoms, one after the other, in a *chain reaction.* This would result in a huge amount of energy.

If an atom in a sizable amount, or mass, of uranium 235 were once split, atoms next to it could be split by the neutrons coming from the first atom. The result might be a tremendous explosion in a millionth part of a second.

The Birth of the Manhattan District

To get atoms to split up in a chain reaction, a sizable mass of uranium 235 was needed. This could be collected by separating it from ordinary uranium. This would be a very hard task because both kinds of uranium (uranium 235 and uranium 238) are chemically the same; the only difference is in weight. Could any means



USAEC

146 A plant at Oak Ridge, Tenn. Here uranium 235 is separated from uranium 238.

be found to separate uranium 235 from uranium 238 on a large scale? There was only one agency big enough to undertake the job — the United States government. The government was then interested in uranium 235 because it hoped that a bomb made of it would bring a quick end to World War II.

By the spring of 1943, the government had brought together the best scientific brains of the nation to tackle the job of splitting the atom. Dr. Vannevar Bush headed a committee of scientific advisers, and the job of making an atom bomb was begun under Major General Leslie Groves and Dr. Robert Oppenheimer. At Oak Ridge, Tenn., the great plants for separating uranium 235 from natural uranium were built (Fig. 146). At Hanford, Wash., other great plants were built. Over 2 billion dollars were spent on this project, even though no one was really sure it would succeed. The whole project was called the Manhattan District, and it was kept secret in the hope that only a few of the top people working on it would have a complete picture of what was going on.

The Separation of Uranium 235

As you know, uranium 235 is a little lighter than uranium 238. It can be separated from uranium 238 by heating. A uranium compound is heated at very high temperature until it turns into a gas. This gas is passed through a fine screen. The molecules of uranium 235, being lighter than those of uranium 238, pass through the screen more rapidly (Fig. 147). They are immediately drawn away by pumps. Thousands upon thousands of special screens are needed, as well as giant pumps for drawing the gas molecules through the screens. Finally, the lighter uranium 235 comes from the last screen in pure vapor and is cooled. Then it becomes the solid metal, uranium 235. How hard it is to get this metal will be clear to you if you recall that in 140 parts of uranium there is only one part of uranium 235.

Now that pure uranium 235 could be made, the scientists at Oak Ridge had the kind of uranium that could start a terrific chain reaction. In other words, they now had the material to make an atomic bomb. Some of this uranium 235 was sent to the University of Chicago, where the first chain reaction in history was to be set off.

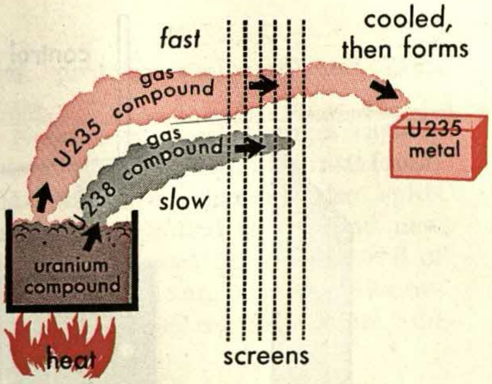
THE FIRST CHAIN REACTION

In the afternoon of December 2, 1942, scientific history was made in the football stadium of the University of Chicago. It was not made upon the football field but in a large room beneath the west stands of the stadium. An outsider looking into that room would have seen a strange sight.

In the center of the room, covered on all but one side by balloon cloth, was a square pile of black bricks and wooden timbers. On a balcony at one end of the room stood a group of scientists, among them Dr. Enrico Fermi and Dr. Arthur Compton. Some of the scientists were looking anxiously at the dials of instruments. The instruments gave off a loud clicking sound. Other scientists stood tensely by, their hands on switches and control rods.

Dr. Fermi spoke: "Move the central control rod out six inches more." One of the scientists pulled it out. The clicking sound rose to a roar, then leveled off. Fermi called, "Pull the rod out another foot!" At once the roar increased and kept increasing. *It did not level off*. Fermi made lightning-like calculations. After three minutes his whole face broke into a smile.

"We have a chain reaction," he announced. "Push in the control rod." The clicking slowed down and stopped.



147 Pumps draw the lighter uranium 235 (gas) through porous screens faster than they do the heavier uranium 238.

That very afternoon Arthur Compton called James B. Conant of Harvard University by long-distance telephone.

"The Italian navigator has landed in the New World," said Compton.

"How were the natives?" asked Conant.

"Very friendly," answered Compton.

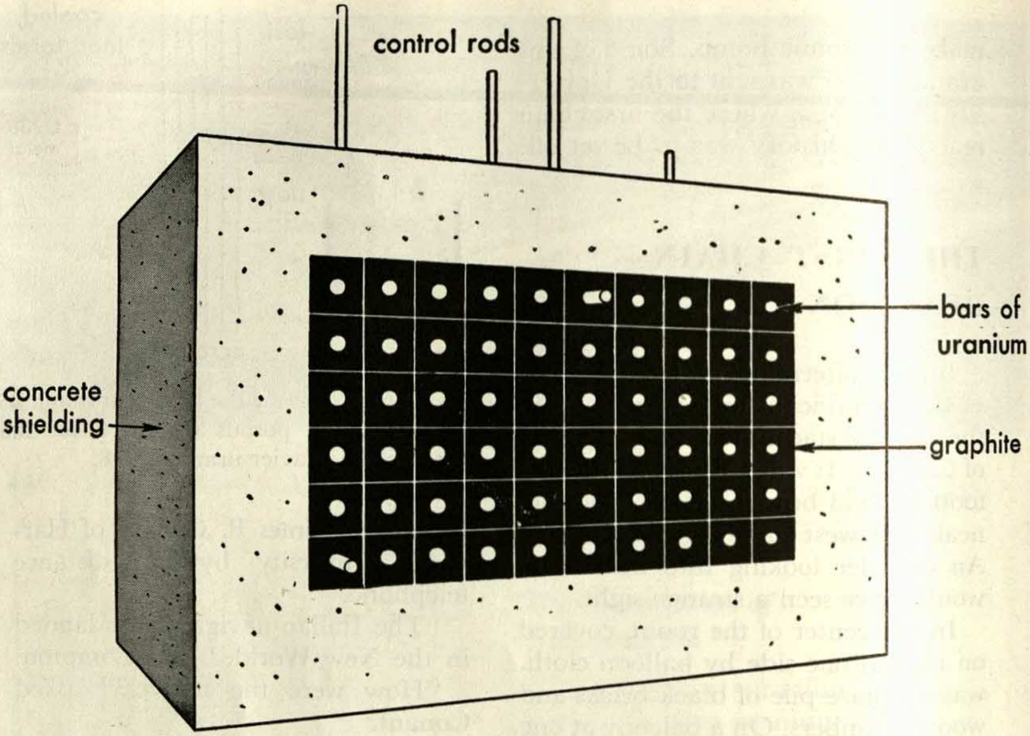
This code meant that for the first time in history man had brought about a chain reaction of splitting atoms and had stopped that action. Man had set free the energy of the atom and had controlled that energy. To do this, he had built the world's first *atomic pile*.

AN ATOMIC PILE

No doubt you have now guessed what was under the balloon cloth beneath the west stands of the stadium.

It was an atomic pile.

Dr. Fermi, along with other scientists, had built it. They had placed bars of both pure uranium 238 and pure uranium 235 in pure carbon blocks and built them up into a certain size that they called a *pile*. In the



148 Notice the cadmium control rods on top of this operating atomic pile. They control the chain reaction caused by the splitting of uranium 235 atoms. Some of the bars, or rods, of uranium are uranium 238, as well as uranium 235. Why is the concrete shielding used? *Project:* Build a model of an atomic pile. You may get photographs from the Atomic Energy Commission.

pile, the fast-flowing neutrons of uranium 235, slowed down by passing through carbon, caused atoms of uranium 238 to split. Thus a chain reaction began to take place.

Great amounts of heat came from the splitting of the atoms in the chain reaction. But how could this chain reaction be made to continue by itself? In other words, how could the heat be controlled?

Dr. Fermi and his fellow scientists found a way to do this.

They knew that the flow of neutrons caused chain reactions in uranium. They thought that, if they could find a substance that could sop up, or absorb, neutrons, they could control atomic energy. They found the substance in the element *cadmium*, a grayish-white metal. They made this metal into rods which were placed in the pile.

When cadmium rods are pulled out of an operating pile, atomic fission begins. The chain reaction starts. When they are pushed in, atomic fission slows down and finally stops. When Fermi called, "Move the central control rod out six inches more," more neutrons started a faster chain reaction. When he said, "Push in the control rod," the chain reaction slowed down and stopped (Fig. 149).

Today, all this is done by machines operated by men far away from the dangerous pile. Because a uranium pile throws off rays deadly to human life while it is in operation, it is placed in heavy walls of concrete (Fig. 148). The walls of concrete stop the rays.

Such atomic piles in operation give off heat beyond imagination. The atomic energy plant at Hanford was built beside the Columbia River because it takes the entire water flow of that great river, cold as it is, to carry away the heat made by the operating piles.

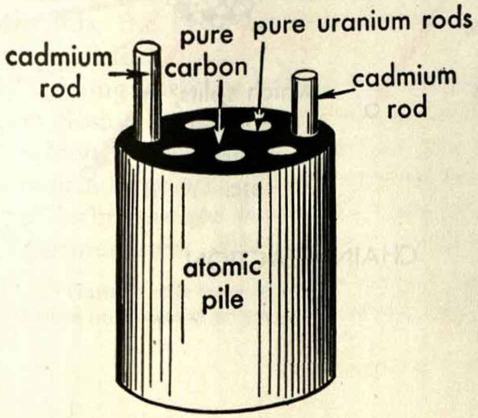
As you will learn later, it is this heat energy from operating atomic piles that may replace our present fuels, coal and oil.

The Discovery of Plutonium

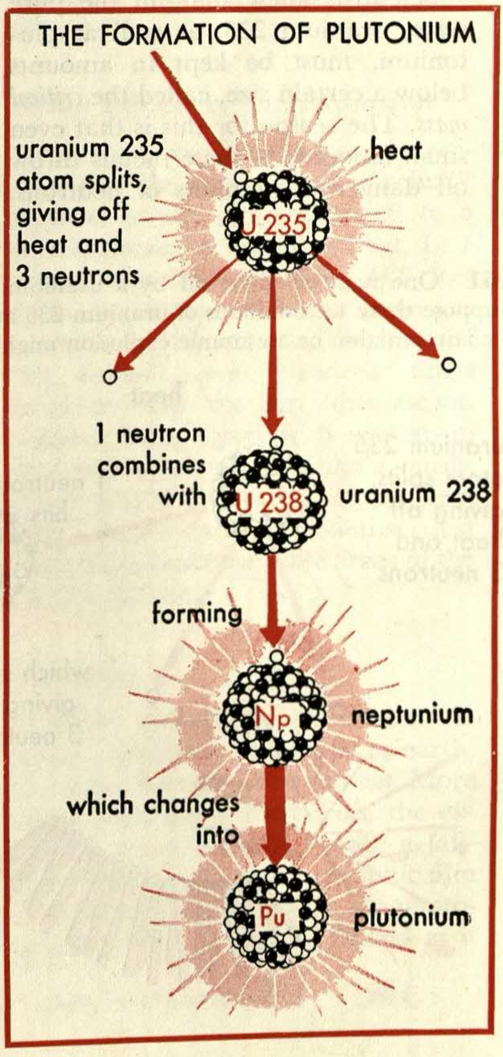
In his small atomic pile in Chicago, Dr. Fermi traced what happens when uranium 238 is bombarded by neutrons. He and the other scientists working with him discovered that, in the pile, some of the uranium 238 changes into an entirely new element. This new substance was given the name *neptunium*. It is highly radioactive, breaking up into many particles, protons, neutrons, and electrons.

Neptunium itself changes rapidly into another element. Scientists found that this new element also splits easily. They called this second new element *plutonium*. So, on the trail of splitting the atom, scientists discovered the new atoms, neptunium and plutonium.

149 The flow of neutrons in an atomic pile is slowed up by the carbon. The number of neutrons which are free at any one time is controlled by pushing in and out the cadmium rods. The cadmium rods absorb neutrons. Why are the cadmium rods movable?



150 The making of plutonium starts when a neutron from a splitting uranium 235 atom enters the nucleus of a uranium 238 atom to make neptunium. Neptunium changes rapidly into plutonium.



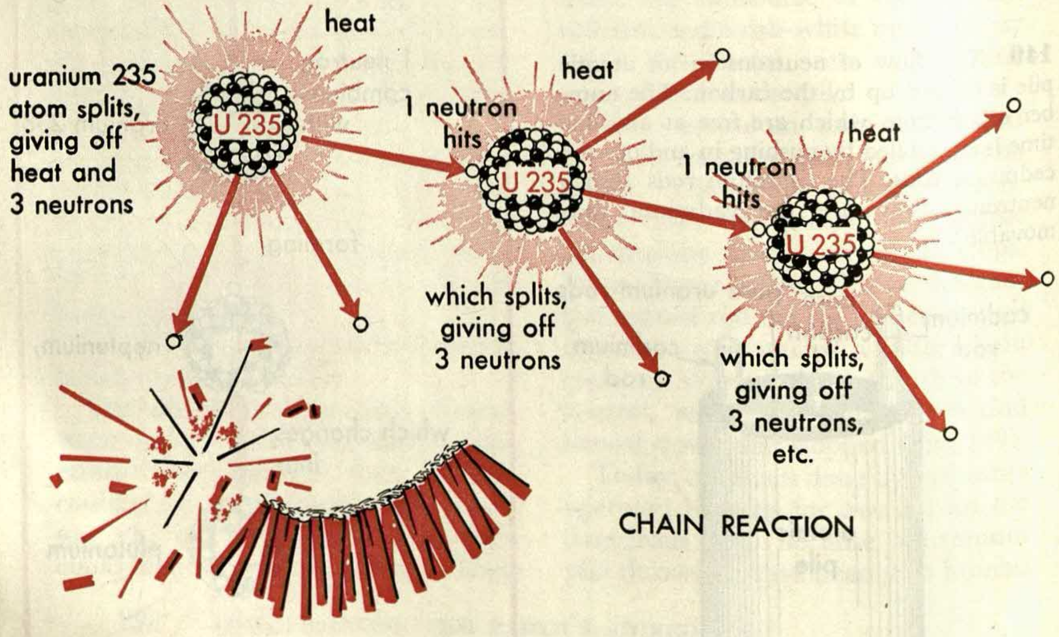
THE FIRST ATOMIC BOMB

The Manhattan District did not end with the making of the first atomic pile and the discovery of new atoms. Scientists now knew they could start a chain reaction in atoms of uranium and plutonium. In the laboratories at Los Alamos, N.M., plans were laid for putting together the first atomic bomb. From the huge plant at Oak Ridge, Tenn., came that very important material, uranium 235.

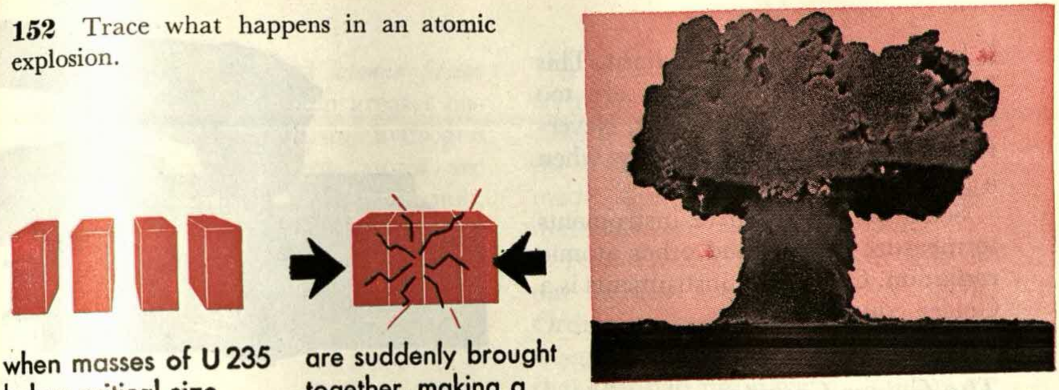
Scientists knew that, in the pure state, uranium 235, as well as plutonium, must be kept in amounts below a certain size, called the *critical mass*. The reason for this is that even small amounts of these metals throw off dangerous amounts of neutrons. Some of these neutrons escape, but others may start a chain reaction as they hit other uranium 235 or plutonium atoms (Fig. 151). When the amount of the plutonium or uranium 235 brought together is large enough, above the critical mass, an atomic explosion occurs.

Chain reactions in pure uranium 235 or plutonium can be stopped by storing these elements in small amounts (below the critical mass). They are kept separate from each other. The first atomic bomb to be tested was built to bring together two small amounts of uranium 235 at the proper second to make a mass beyond the critical size (Fig. 152). Since the explosion would happen almost at once, the bomb had to be built to force the separate amounts of uranium together at the right moment to cause the explosion.

151 One neutron given off by a uranium 235 atom strikes another uranium 235 atom. Suppose there were billions of uranium 235 atoms packed closely together. Can you see how a chain reaction or an atomic explosion might happen?


heat
uranium 235 atom splits, giving off heat and 3 neutrons
U 235
heat
1 neutron hits
U 235
which splits, giving off 3 neutrons
heat
1 neutron hits
U 235
which splits, giving off 3 neutrons, etc.
CHAIN REACTION

152 Trace what happens in an atomic explosion.



when masses of U 235 below critical size

are suddenly brought together, making a mass above critical size... the result is an atomic "explosion"

In the Heart of the Explosion

To get the explosion of the first atomic bomb, the critical mass of uranium 235 weighed a little over two pounds. You could hold this weight easily in the palm of your hand. Yet the explosion of this small amount of uranium 235 produced a temperature of almost 2,000,000° F. If a marble could be heated as hot as that and be placed on a desk in front of you, you and the entire contents of the room would at once be burned to a crisp! Fortunately, it can't be done. You can get a better idea of a temperature of 2,000,000° by comparing it with the heat at the sun's surface. At the surface of the sun, which gives us all our light and heat, it is 10,000° F. Can you now understand how even a half-mile from the center of the explosion of an atomic bomb, the heat alone is enough to kill all life?

Along with the terrific heat of the explosion come showers of neutrons which hit every object in their path over a large area. With these showers of neutrons are showers of powerful gamma rays (like X rays).[1] Also, the blast of air set in motion by the explosion is heavy enough to destroy buildings two miles from the center (Fig. 141).

Other Effects of the Explosion

Within a few thousandths of a second after the explosion, a "fireball" appears as the air is changed to a glowing mass by the great heat. In 1 second this fireball, about 900 feet wide, begins to rise like a huge gas balloon. In 10 seconds, the light of the fireball, one hundred times brighter than the sun, dies down. Then a huge cloud with sucked-up dirt and wreckage rises like a mushroom 40,000 feet into the sky (Fig. 152). Winds carry radioactive dust from this cloud over wide areas of the earth's surface.

Fall-Out

When radioactive dust from an atomic explosion falls back to earth, scientists call the dust a *fall-out*. More than 2,000 miles away from the explosion of one atomic bomb, a fall-out destroyed some photographic film in Rochester, N.Y. That is, the photographic film, in its can, looked as if it had been opened to the light. This fall-out, and others like it, are too slight to harm human beings. Nevertheless, it is important to know when a fall-out takes place.

---

[1] Gamma rays from an atomic explosion may injure unprotected people a mile from the blast.

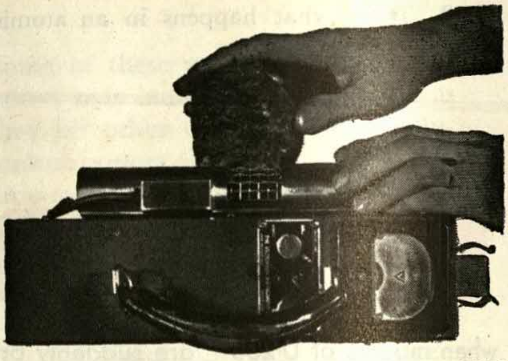
Scientists use sensitive instruments to measure fall-out and other atomic radiation. One of the instruments is a Geiger counter.

The Geiger Counter

A scientist uses a Geiger counter to search for uranium ore. When any radioactive particles pass through the tube of the counter, a click is heard in the headphones. Does that mean the scientist has found uranium? Not necessarily. How will the scientist know?

Not every "click" means uranium or radioactive dust. First, the clicks of the Geiger counter are heard before it is brought near any radioactive materials. There are rays that bombard the earth from outer space. These are called *cosmic rays*, and they cause the Geiger counter to click in a slow and uneven way. The rays may be caused by atomic explosions in the sun and stars. The prospector knows that these "background clicks" do not mean uranium.

Sometimes, however, the Geiger counter begins to click faster than the background clicks caused by cosmic rays. Suppose our scientist knows there is no radioactive rock nearby. What may have caused these clicks? They were probably caused by the fall-out from an atomic explosion, even though the explosion may have been several thousand miles away. By using the Geiger counter scientists may learn that an atomic explosion has taken place, no matter where or in what country. It is the radioactivity of the fall-out that tells them.



USAEC

153 Here is a Geiger counter showing the radioactivity of allanite, a radioactive ore (like pitchblende in appearance).

If there is no possibility of fall-out, our scientist knows that uranium rock is probably present when his Geiger counter begins to click faster. The number of clicks tells him something of how rich in uranium the rock is. (You will learn of other uses of the Geiger counter on pp. 308–311 of this chapter.)

More Powerful Explosions

Since the explosion of the first atomic bomb in 1945, there have been a great number of other atomic explosions, mainly to test more powerful atomic bombs. However, atomic bombs cannot be built beyond a certain size and power. When scientists succeeded in setting off the first atomic explosion, they knew that they could make still more powerful bombs. They soon knew they had the means for making a *hydrogen bomb.*

THE HYDROGEN BOMB

You have learned that the giant energy of an atomic explosion comes from *splitting* uranium or plutonium atoms. This is called *atomic fission* (p. 294). However, even greater energy can be made by fusing hydrogen atoms. When hydrogen atoms are fused (united) in the hydrogen bomb, they make helium. This process is called *atomic fusion*. Atomic fusion, like atomic fission, turns matter into energy.

The Secret of the Sun and Stars

The sun and stars are fusing hydrogen atoms together to make helium day in and day out, year after year. The sun's heat and light come from the energy of this fusion. The sun loses 4½ million tons of its matter every second in giving off heat and light. But the sun is so huge that it will still have 99.9% of its size left after another 15 billion years.

Man-Made Atomic Fusion

How could scientists duplicate on earth what happens in the sun and stars? They have done it by using the 2,000,000-degree heat of an atomic explosion (200 times the heat on the sun's surface) to "trigger" or start the fusion of hydrogen into helium. By doing this, scientists have been able to do something which scientists twenty years ago would not have thought probable. In other words, they have made a *hydrogen bomb*.

The Making of the Bomb

On January 31, 1950, the President of the United States announced that this country would start making hydrogen bombs. Within a year huge plants were built along the Savannah River in South Carolina. Within two years the first bomb was made.

A hydrogen bomb is much harder to make than an atomic bomb and costs a great deal more. Of course, the actual way in which the bomb is made is a military secret, but the materials used are well known.

You remember that hydrogen is our lightest element (see p.. 283). Ordinary hydrogen, with atomic weight of 1, is the kind of hydrogen that keeps an ordinary toy balloon in the air. There are different kinds of hydrogen, just as there are different kinds of uranium. Double-weight hydrogen, which we shall call hydrogen 2, and triple-weight hydrogen, which we shall call hydrogen 3, are the kinds of hydrogen used to make a hydrogen bomb. In other words, hydrogen 2 weighs twice as much as ordinary hydrogen, and hydrogen 3 weighs three times the weight of ordinary hydrogen.

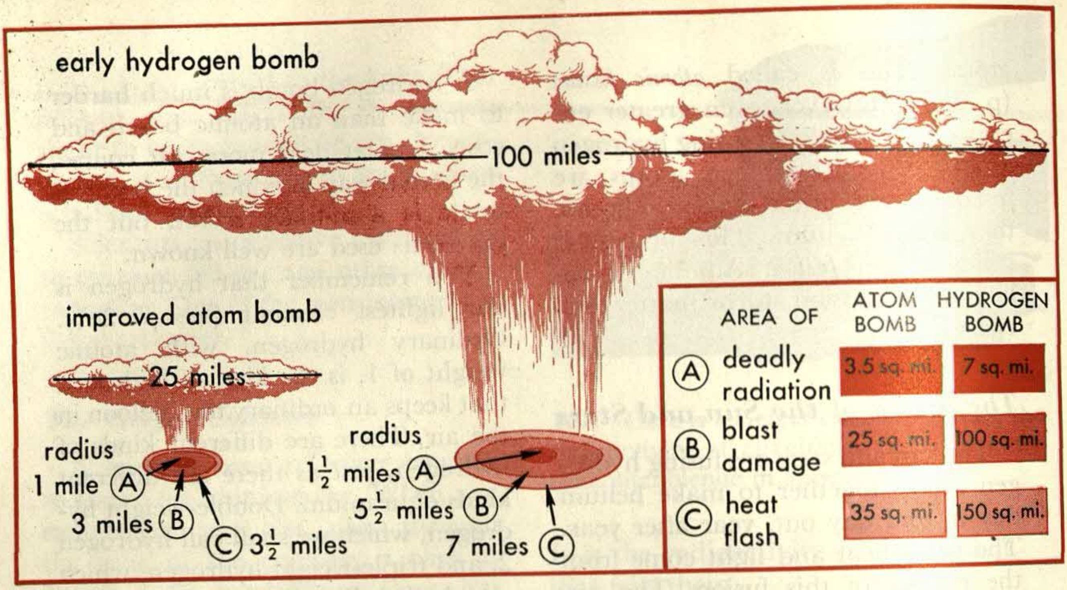
Hydrogen 2, or heavy hydrogen,[1] can be made by the ton without too much trouble from a kind of water known as *heavy water*. There is a tiny amount of this heavy water in every drop of ordinary water.

It is very expensive, however, to make even a pound of hydrogen 3. This extra-heavy hydrogen is very rare. Scientists who found it for the first time in ordinary water estimated that the whole of Lake Michigan would yield only one-tenth of an ounce of hydrogen 3. And so scientists found another way to make hydrogen 3, or tritium. They made it in atomic piles, in which, you recall, substances may be bombarded with neutrons.[2]

---

[1] Hydrogen 2 is also called *deuterium* (dyoo-TEER-ee-um). Hydrogen 3 is called *tritium* (TRIT-ee-um).

[2] To make hydrogen 3, the element lithium is bombarded with neutrons.



AREA OF	ATOM BOMB	HYDROGEN BOMB
(A) deadly radiation	3.5 sq. mi.	7 sq. mi.
(B) blast damage	25 sq. mi.	100 sq. mi.
(C) heat flash	35 sq. mi.	150 sq. mi.

154 The explosive power of the first hydrogen atom blast set off in November, 1952, was 250 times greater than that of the improved atom bomb. In March, 1954, hydrogen bomb explosions 750 times more powerful than an atomic bomb explosion were set off.

In the hydrogen bomb there is a mixture of hydrogen 2 and hydrogen 3. This mixture is fused into helium by the 2,000,000-degree heat of an exploding atomic bomb. In a millionth part of a second, the sun's giant heat is produced on earth. When first produced, the result was the greatest explosion ever recorded.

The Explosion of the H-Bomb

Nothing man has done in the history of science has matched the awful power of the hydrogen bomb. Unlike the atomic bomb, the hydrogen bomb has almost no limit to its size or power.

The first test explosion of a hydrogen bomb took place November 1, 1952, on an island in the Eniwetok Atoll in the Pacific Ocean. The island, 13 square miles in area, actually disappeared beneath the sea.

More powerful hydrogen bombs have since been exploded. A comparison has been made to show how much greater damage the first hydrogen bomb could cause over that which could be caused by the improved atomic bomb (Fig. 154). Do you now realize after your study of Fig. 154 why the giant energy of the atom *must* be used for peace rather than for war? Right now, let us look into some peacetime uses of atomic energy.

ATOMIC ENERGY

How can we use the giant energy of the atom for peaceful purposes? Can we use it for making electricity? heating homes? powering ships and airplanes? Can it be used in medicine, agriculture, and industry? Let us see.

Unless we want to blast away great chunks of the earth's surface, explosions such as are made by atomic or hydrogen bombs have no real peacetime use. Atomic explosions of this size cannot be controlled, once they start. If atomic energy is to be used for peacetime purposes, it must be controlled without explosion. This control is possible in atomic piles (pp. 298–299).

Scientists have been able to build different kinds of atomic piles which use different materials, but each one uses the very rare and expensive uranium 235. These piles are called *nuclear reactors*. In nuclear reactors, atoms are split to produce energy. The chain reactions in these reactors result in a very great amount of heat. At the same time, uranium 235 is being used up. Therefore it would cost too much, at present, to use the heat from nuclear reactors to make power for factories. Soon, however, it may be possible to use nuclear reactors to operate factories, for scientists have found how to make in these reactors *more* atomic fuel than is being used up. Yes, *more* than is being used up.

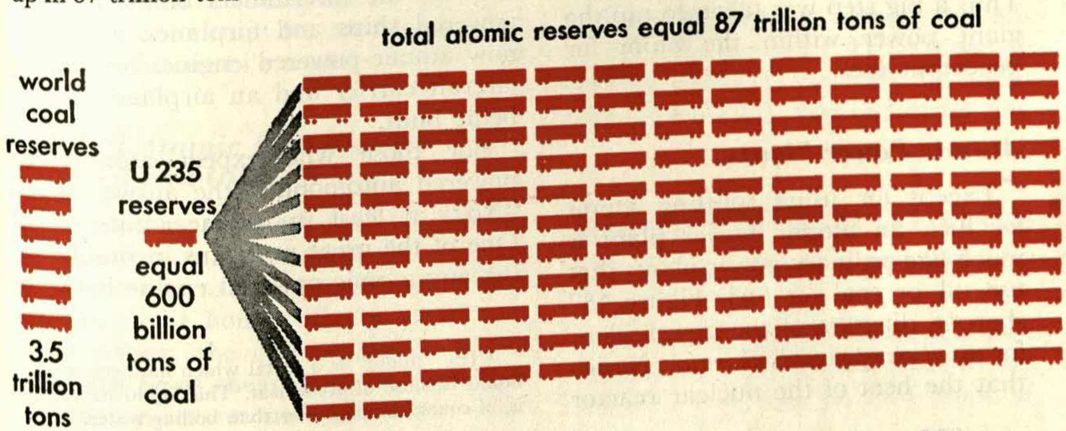
Breeding Atomic Fuel

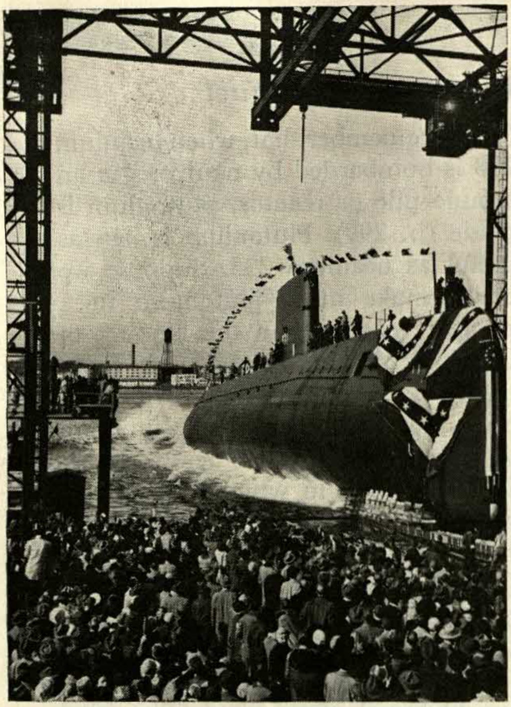
You remember that, when uranium 238 is bombarded by neutrons in an atomic pile or reactor, plutonium is made (p. 299). Plutonium is just as useful as uranium 235. Suppose we could make more plutonium in a nuclear reactor than the amount of uranium 235 that is used up in making it. The chain reaction that produces heat and still more plutonium will keep on going.

The process in which as much or more atomic fuel (plutonium) is being made when another atomic fuel (uranium 235) is being used up is called *breeding atomic fuel*. Scientists worked a long time before they found how to build a reactor that would breed atomic fuel. This kind of reactor is called a *breeder reactor* — it breeds more atomic fuel.

One of the most important announcements in the history of atomic energy was made by the Atomic Energy Commission on December 29,

155 If uranium 235 were our only source of atomic energy, we should have enough of it to equal the energy stored in 600 billion tons of coal. However, other materials which may be used for atomic energy make our total sources of atomic energy equal to the energy stored up in 87 trillion tons of coal.





GENERAL DYNAMICS CORP.

156 The world's first atomic-powered submarine, the *Nautilus*, is launched. Its atomic engine may be the forerunner of atomic engines for ocean liners.

1951. The announcement was that at Arco, Idaho, a successful breeder reactor had been built. Even more important, the heat from this reactor was being used in a power plant to make enough electricity to light the buildings around the power plant. Thus a big step was taken to tap the giant power within the atom for peacetime uses.

Atomic Power Plants

Except for using splitting atoms for fuel, an atomic power plant is much like ordinary power plants that use oil or coal for fuel. Figure 157 shows a diagram of the power plant for an *atomic-powered submarine*. Notice that the heat of the nuclear reactor is carried off by a special liquid.[1] This liquid becomes very hot. Then this very hot liquid passes into the "heat exchanger," where its heat turns water into steam (Fig. 157). The energy in the steam is turned into electricity. The electricity drives the submarine through the water by turning propellers.

In June, 1952, the building of the first atomic-powered submarine, the *Nautilus*, was begun. The *Nautilus* is now a ship of the United States Navy.

The *Nautilus* was followed by the *Sea Wolf*, whose atomic engine was built within the largest steel shell in the world at Milton, N.Y. Contracts for other atomic-powered submarines have been placed.

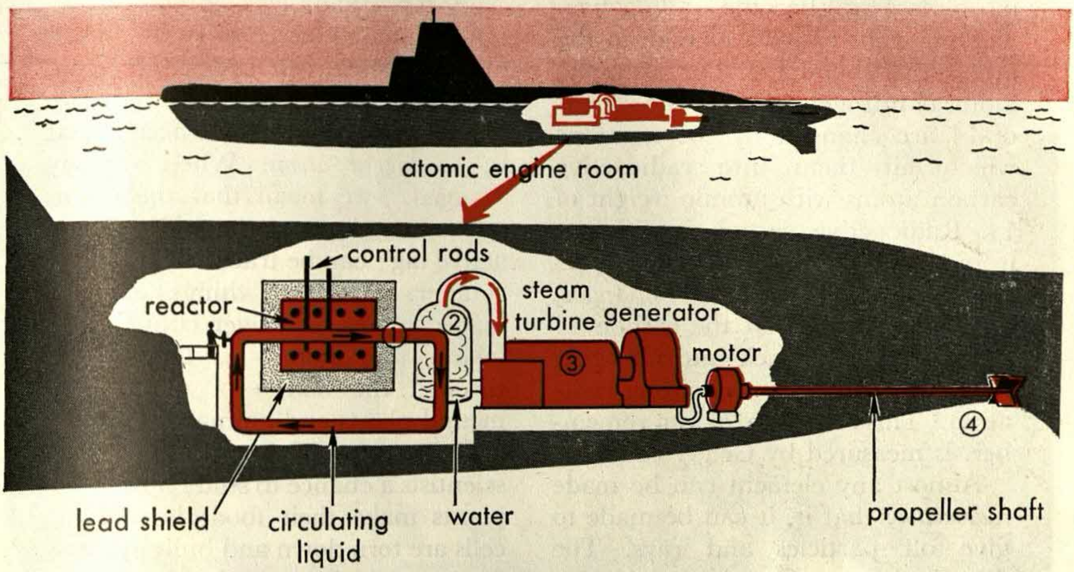
There is a good reason for using atomic power in submarines. First, atomic fuel (splitting atoms), unlike oil, does not need oxygen to burn. Therefore submarines can cruise for a very long time under water without coming to the surface or pushing a long tube up to the surface to get air for burning fuel. Second, these submarines do not need oil for fuel. The valuable space taken up by stored oil can be used for storing other materials. Atomic-powered submarines may be the forerunners of atomic-powered ships and airplanes. Even now atomic-powered engines for an aircraft carrier and an airplane are being built.

For those who expect atomic-powered automobiles, the answer is "No," at least in the near future. One of the great problems in building any atomic-powered engine is to

---

[1] The "liquid" is a metal which has become liquid because of great heat. This liquid metal is, of course, much hotter than boiling water.

THE ATOMIC SUBMARINE



157 Follow the sequence: (1) A special liquid circulating through the reactor is heated to a high temperature. (2) The heated liquid turns water in this tank to steam (3), which runs the turbine and generator (4), which generates electricity to run the motor which propels the submarine.

About two pounds of uranium 235 (the size of a golf ball) in the reactor of the submarine *Nautilus* would give as much energy as 460,000 pounds of fuel oil or 3,000 tons of coal. Besides saving fuel space, what are other advantages of atomic-powered submarines?

protect people from the deadly rays that come from the reactor. In the atomic-powered engine in Fig. 157 the nuclear reactor, the place where atoms are being split, has a heavy lead shield around it to stop these rays. No way has yet been found to make this shielding light enough and yet safe enough for an atomic-powered automobile engine.

Will Atomic Fuel Replace Coal and Oil?

Within the next few years large reactors may be built for making electricity to run factories and to heat and light homes. To be profitable, however, the cost of atomic power must be as cheap as or cheaper than the power we now get from oil or coal. Right now, power from atomic energy costs much more than that from coal and oil. Industrial use of power from atomic energy will not come overnight. Moreover, we have great amounts of coal and oil in this country, but only a small supply of usable uranium rock.

However, atomic energy has another great use today. From it we are getting *radioactive materials* for medical, agricultural, and industrial use.

RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS IN EVERYDAY LIVING

Radioactive materials are made in atomic piles. When bombarded by neutrons set free in the piles, atoms of most elements become radioactive. The neutrons cause a change in the atoms they bombard. For example, atoms of nitrogen with atomic weight of 14 are changed by the neutrons which hit them into radioactive carbon atoms with atomic weight of 14. Radioactive carbon is different from ordinary carbon in one important way. It is unstable; it changes. It is so unstable that the carbon 14 changes quickly back into nitrogen. As it does so it gives off strong radiation.[1] This radiation, as you remember, is measured by Geiger counters.

Almost any element can be made *radioactive;* that is, it can be made to give off particles and rays. The Atomic Energy Commission is now making over one hundred different radioactive substances in the laboratories at Oak Ridge, Tenn. Some of these substances were made in small amounts and at high cost in cyclotrons before World War II. Now they are made in greater amounts at low cost and then are sent out for all kinds of research. For example, in just a few weeks an Oak Ridge pile made a certain amount of carbon 14 at a cost of $10,000. It would have taken some 1,000 cyclotrons, at a cost of $100,000,000, to make the same amount. In 1954 almost 6,000 places in this country were using radioactive materials supplied by the Atomic Energy Commission.

Using Radioactive Materials

Carbon 14 is only one of many kinds of radioactive materials now sent out from Oak Ridge, but it makes up about one shipment out of every ten. Examples of other important shipments are radioactive phosphorus, iodine, calcium, sulfur, iron, zinc, and cobalt. These radioactive materials are used as tracers, that is, as *tagged atoms*. When we say "tagged," we mean that the atoms are radioactive and that this "radioactive tag" can be traced by a Geiger counter. If living things are fed tagged atoms, a Geiger counter can follow the atoms as they move through the bodies of the experimental plants and animals.

This tracing of tagged atoms gives scientists a chance to study how green plants make their food; how living cells are torn down and built up; how fuels may be improved. Already, by the use of tagged atoms, scientists have gained new knowledge of the way the human body works. For instance, the battle against disease, including cancer, has been speeded up.

How Do Radioactive Materials Help Us Study Living Things?

The Atomic Energy Commission has built laboratories and hospitals in many parts of the country to find out how radioactive materials may be used to treat certain diseases. Radioactive materials are also sent to medical schools, hospitals, and other research centers for the same purposes. How are radioactive materials being used in the treatment of disease?

1. *Finding and removing tumors*. Radioactive substances mixed with a certain dye can be injected into a person who has a brain tumor. The dye and the radioactive substance are taken up by the tumor. By mov-

---

[1] Remember that *radiation* means that an atom gives off particles like neutrons, protons, and electrons, and rays like gamma rays.

USAEC

158 A Geiger counter traces radioactive iodine which is used in treating cancer of the thyroid gland.

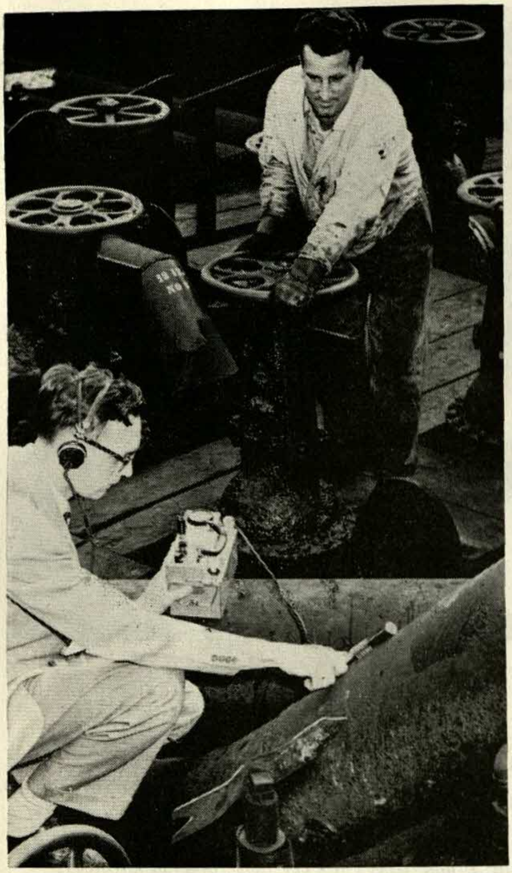
ing a Geiger counter over the head of the patient the tumor (which now has in it the tagged atoms of the radioactive substance) is found. Then the surgeon knows where to operate.

Sometimes a tumor appears on or just beneath the surface of a person's skin. If it is treated with certain radioactive atoms, the tumor may disappear.

2. *Measuring the activity of the thyroid gland.* The thyroid gland is important to the growth of the body. This gland is peculiar in that it picks up almost all the iodine in the body. By feeding a person a small and harmless dose of radioactive iodine, a doctor can find out how well the thyroid gland is working. A Geiger counter held near the gland measures the time it takes for the gland to take up the radioactive iodine (Fig. 158). Also, it has been found that cancer tissue in the thyroid gland takes up radioactive iodine in large amounts. Some cancer growth may be checked this way.

3. *Measuring the speed with which the blood takes up certain food substances, like iron.* Harmless radioactive iron is fed to a person. Then a Geiger counter is placed near the pulse in the wrist. It has been found that in about 24 hours the iron has traveled from the mouth and passed through the intestines and into the blood. Since iron is used in treating some forms of the disease anemia, experiments like this one may lead to better methods of treating some kinds of anemia.

4. *Measuring the speed of life processes.* The use of tagged atoms has also given scientists a clue to the speed at which certain activities take place in the body. For instance, when a person is fed table salt with radioactive sodium in it, the salt is carried to the sweat glands and then brought to the surface of the body in *less than*



CALIFORNIA RESEARCH CORP.

159 Two kinds of oil separated by radioactive materials are flowing through this pipeline. One workman is using a Geiger counter. Why is the other waiting for a signal to turn the valve to switch the flow of oil into another tank?

a minute. No doubt other things your body does take place as fast or faster. Scientists are trying to find out by using tagged atoms.

5. *Studying how green plants make food*. By using radioactive materials as tracers, scientists are getting a much clearer picture of how green plants make food. First, plants are fed carbon 14 and minerals (made radioactive) that plants get from the soil. Then scientists trace the atoms and learn how green leaves make a starch out of sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide. They learn how the roots of plants pick up the chemicals from the soil. They also learn how these chemicals in turn are used in the bodies of the plants.

These studies have given us new knowledge about what kinds of substances plants need as they grow. In time scientists may learn how to speed up the growth of certain crops. Farmers in the United States spend half a billion dollars each year for fertilizers, that is, for the chemicals plants need for growth. Better knowledge of what plants need may help cut the cost and yet give us more and better fruits and vegetables.

How Do Radioactive Materials Help Industry?

Radioactive materials are among the most valuable tools of industry. Here are a few uses for them:

1. *Following the flow of oil through pipelines*. The same pipeline is often used to send out different kinds of oils, one right after another. Once it was hard to know just where one kind of oil in the pipeline ended and the next began. Some of the two kinds of oil often got mixed, which meant that it was wasted. Now a small amount of radioactive material can be put into the pipeline at the point where oil is changed from one kind to another. Then Geiger counters at the other end of the pipeline can be used to find out just where one kind of oil ends and the next kind begins. Sorting out the different oils when they reach the end of a pipeline means a large saving in oil and money.

2. *Measuring thicknesses of sheets of paper, plastic, glass, and metal*. Factories

often get orders for sheets of material that must have a certain thickness. Any other thickness cannot be used. A radioactive gauge (measuring device) to measure thickness saves thousands of dollars a year.

The main parts of a radioactive thickness gauge are the element cobalt, which has been made radioactive, and a Geiger counter. Any change in the thickness of the sheet passing between the radioactive cobalt and the Geiger counter causes a difference in the number of clicks in the counter. In this way the thickness of the sheet is discovered within a thousandth of an inch.

3. *Finding flaws in metal castings.* If there is any break in a metal casting, such as the cast-iron block of an automobile engine or the base of a heavy machine, it can be found by using radioactive cobalt. The radioactive cobalt is placed on one side of the casting, and a photographic film on the other side. A darkening of the developed film shows the location of any cracks, since more radiation goes through these cracks and causes greater darkening of the film.

4. *Finding leaks in water pipes.* In many new houses the water pipes are buried in the concrete flooring. One owner of a new house found that his water bill was $60 per month, and his bill for heating water was $400 per month. He knew there was a leak in one of the hot-water pipes. No plumber could find the leak without tearing up the flooring, which would have cost a great deal of money. But the leak was quickly and easily found by putting a small amount of radioactive iodine into the main water pipe. A Geiger counter followed this radioactive flow of water beneath the floor until it reached the spot where the radioactive flow stopped. This was the place of the leak. Soon the pipe was repaired, at a small cost to the homeowner. Therefore, in the building industry we have another tool to save costly repairs.

There are many other uses of radioactive materials in industry. By using carbon 14 in the oil industry, scientists have been able to follow the changes as gasoline is made from crude oil. And by putting radioactive substances into oil pools at the bottom of oil wells, scientists can even trace the underground path of the pools.

In the steel industry, radioactive carbon and other radioactive elements can be used to find the amount of impurities in steel. As a result, better steel can be made.

These are but samples of how radioactive materials are being used. More and more uses in medicine, agriculture, and industry are being found each day. Do you know of any others?

Now you have become acquainted with the history of atomic energy and some of its uses. How much time, effort, and money have gone into it! We are only at the beginning of our knowledge of atomic energy and its uses. Many scientists believe that your generation will live to see atomic energy used on a large scale as a common source of energy. You will benefit from this energy.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Can you use these words in a sentence which will give their meanings? Use the glossary or refer to this chapter. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

uranium
cyclotron
atomic fission
atomic fusion
atomic pile
fall-out
nuclear reactor
breeder reactor
atomic energy
plutonium
Geiger counter
cosmic rays
radiation
radioactive material

Test Yourself

Copy the phrases in List A. Before the phrase write the letter of the word or phrase from List B that is most related to it. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

List A

1. a source of uranium
2. a metal that takes up neutrons
3. atomic fission that produces usable atomic energy
4. an element as fissionable as uranium 235
5. radioactive dust in the air following an atomic explosion
6. an instrument that measures radiation from a radioactive source
7. the process that causes the sun's heat and light
8. heavy hydrogen
9. a kind of atomic pile used in atomic power plants
10. an element used in measuring the activity of the thyroid gland

List B

a. neptunium
b. Geiger counter
c. pitchblende
d. iron
e. hydrogen 2
f. nuclear reactor
g. chain reaction
h. plutonium
i. radioactive iodine
j. fall-out
k. cadmium
l. atomic fusion
m. cosmic rays

GOING FURTHER

Committee Work

1. *Finding out about radioactivity.* Appoint a committee to report on the following: (*a*) the use of atom smashers, such as the cyclotron; (*b*) atomic fission; (*c*) atomic fusion; (*d*) cosmic rays.

2. *Uses of radioactivity.* Appoint a committee to report on the uses of atomic

energy in: (*a*) medicine; (*b*) agriculture; (*c*) industry.

3. *Defense against the atomic and hydrogen bombs.* Appoint a committee to report on the activities of your local Civil Defense Committee. Perhaps you can ask the chairman to give a report to the class.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. On March 27, 1953, a Geiger counter in a high school classroom in Brookline, Mass., was turned on to show how cosmic rays could be discovered. Instead of the slow uneven clicks caused by cosmic rays, the counter clicked very fast. No radioactive material was near the counter. During the first part of March, atomic explosions had been set off in Nevada, almost 3,000 miles away. The general direction of the winds had been westerly, that is, traveling from west to east.

What harmless radiation did the Geiger counter pick up? What is it called?

2. In September, 1949, President Truman announced that recently there had been an atomic explosion in the U.S.S.R. His statement mentioned that the method of making an atomic bomb was widely known, and that foreign research into atomic energy would come up to our present knowledge in time.

In January, 1950, the President announced that the United States would make hydrogen bombs.

On November 1, 1952, the United States exploded the first hydrogen bomb.

In August, 1953, the U.S.S.R. announced a hydrogen bomb explosion.

a. What instruments may have been used to detect an atomic explosion in the U.S.S.R.?

b. Why had it been expected that other nations would soon be able to make atomic and hydrogen bombs?

c. How do these events point out the need for control of atomic energy? What kind of controls should we have?

Adding to Your Library

You will find it interesting to read about atoms and atomic energy in the following books:

1. *You and Atomic Energy, and Its Wonderful Uses* by John B. Lewellen, Childrens Press, 1949. You will enjoy the excellent pictures and description of atomic energy in this book. There is also a picture glossary of atomic energy terms.

2. *Young People's Book of Atomic Energy* by Robert D. Potter, Dodd, Mead Co., 1948. This book gives a stirring account of the atomic tests at Bikini and the development of atomic bombs.

3. *Mr. Tompkins Explores the Atoms* by George Gamow, The Macmillan Company, 1944. This is an interesting story about the atom and what it contains.

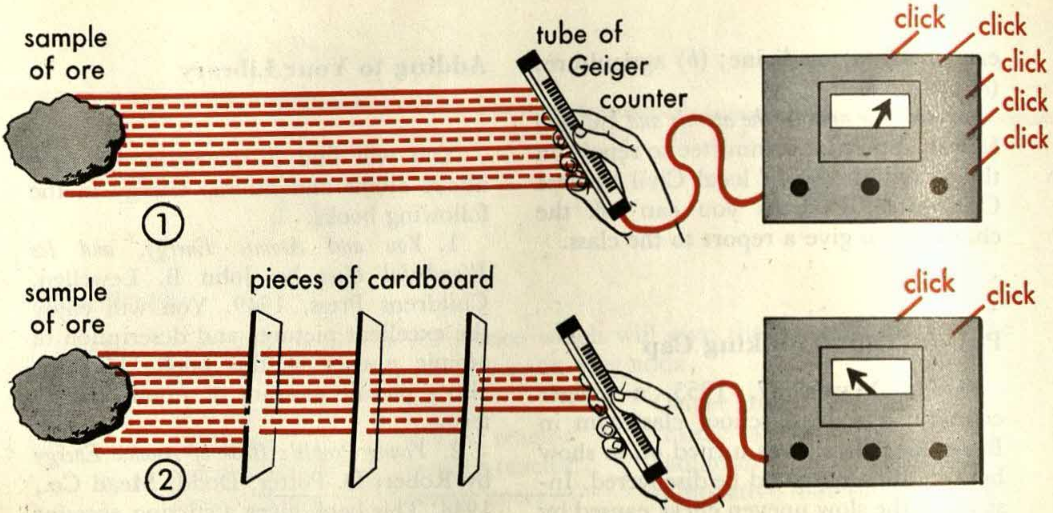
4. *The Atom at Work* by Jacob Sacks, Ronald Press, 1951. This book tells of the uses of atomic energy in the fields of biology, medicine, agriculture, and industry.

5. *Atomic Energy in War and Peace* by Burr W. Leyson, E. P. Dutton, 1951. This is a clear-cut explanation of the atomic and hydrogen bombs, a description of defense measures and of the peacetime uses of atomic energy.

6. *The H-Bomb*, Didier Publishing Co., 1950. This book is a collection of articles about the hydrogen bomb, its military value and destructive force.

7. Those who wish to read further about the atomic and hydrogen bombs and the uses of atomic energy should write to the United States Atomic Energy Commission, Washington, D.C., for the free booklet, *Selected Readings on Atomic Energy*. It lists not only the available publications of the Atomic Energy Commission, but also all books published to date on atomic energy.

Why not begin your library on atomic energy by getting one or more of these books?



160 Pieces of cardboard between the radioactive material and the tube of the Geiger counter prevent the counter from detecting some of the particles thrown off by the material. Why is shielding used on atomic piles? *Project:* If your school has a Geiger counter, try to find out the radioactivity of common materials — coal, iron, a radioactive watch, and other materials.

A Bit of Research

If you have a Geiger counter in your school laboratory or can get one from your local Defense Committee, do these experiments:

1. Turn on the switch of the Geiger counter. Make a note of the number of clicks and how often they start and stop. What causes the clicks?

2. Have a student bring the *luminous* dial (one that glows in the dark) of a wrist watch close to the tube of the Geiger counter. Make a note of the number of clicks. What causes the increase?

3. If your school has a sample of carnotite (KAHR-nuh-tyte), an ore of uranium, or if you can get a sample from a scientific supply company, bring the sample near the tube of the Geiger counter. Make a note of the rate of increase of the clicks as you move the sample toward the tube. Make a note of the rate of decrease of the clicks as you move the sample away from the tube. Now move the sample two inches away from the counter tube. Place some pieces of cardboard, one at a time, between the sample and the counter tube. Make a note of the number of clicks as each piece of cardboard is added (Fig. 160).

Write up this bit of research in your science notebook with a conclusion as to why shielding is used around nuclear reactors.

Careers for You

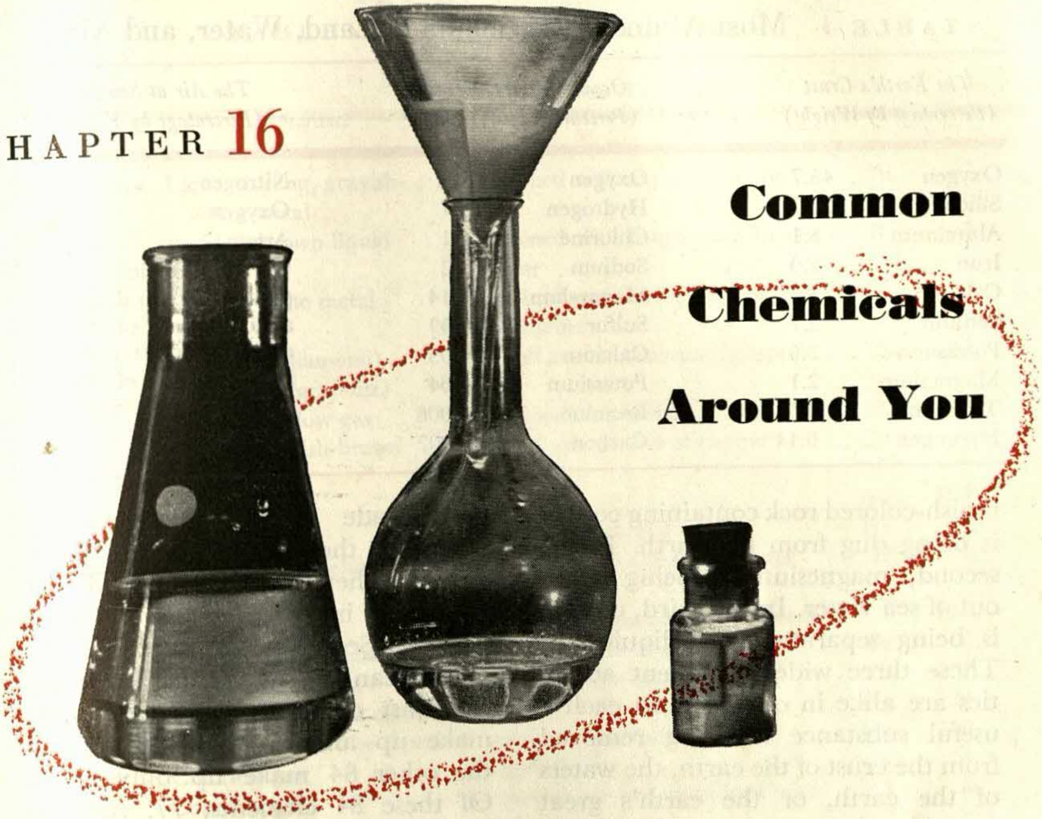
Do you want to be a *nuclear scientist?* a *specialist* in the use of radioactive materials in industry? a *doctor* who might discover new ways of fighting disease by the use of tagged atoms? a *biologist* skilled in the use of radioactive materials in growing better plants and animals?

These are but a few of the opportunities that await you. Perhaps you may decide right now that your future work will be in the field of atomic energy.

Civil Defense — a job for everyone. Have you signed up for a Civil Defense job in your town, village, or city? Go to your Civil Defense office as soon as you can and see whether you can be of service. This is a good way of serving your community.

CHAPTER 16

Common Chemicals Around You



Laboratory apparatus. What does it represent? An experiment being done by a student, or a valuable new substance? It could be either. There are many uses for the common chemicals around you.

IN a Montana mine, every two minutes a huge shovel scoops up ten tons of bluish-colored earth and dumps it into waiting trucks. The trucks carry the blue earth to a nearby plant. The hot furnaces in the plant change the blue earth into a useful metal.

Two thousand miles away in Texas a pipeline runs out into the ocean. Every day millions of gallons of sea water rush through the pipe into huge, round tanks. There the sea water is treated with chemicals. After a while the sea water is pumped out of the tanks back into the ocean. But it has left in the tanks some of the valuable materials it contained.

On the outskirts of a busy city in Massachusetts a sign above a factory reads: LIQUID AIR. Inside can be heard the hum of machinery. Pumps move back and forth. Air — the air that you breathe — is made so cold by this machinery that it turns into a liquid like water. Then this liquid air is separated into pure gases — oxygen, nitrogen, and others.

What connection have these activities with each other? In the first, a

TABLE 7 **Most Abundant Elements in Land, Water, and Air**

The Earth's Crust (Percentage by Weight)		*Oceans, Rivers, Lakes (Percentage by Weight)*		*The Air at Sea Level (Percentage by Volume)*	
Oxygen	46.7	Oxygen	85.	Nitrogen	78.
Silicon	27.7	Hydrogen	10.7	Oxygen	21.
Aluminum	8.1	Chlorine	2.1	Argon	0.94
Iron	5.0	Sodium	1.2	Carbon dioxide	0.03
Calcium	3.7	Magnesium	0.14	(Note: Carbon dioxide is a compound of carbon and oxygen. It is placed here because of its importance to green plants. See Chapter 18.)	
Sodium	2.7	Sulfur	0.09		
Potassium	2.6	Calcium	0.05		
Magnesium	2.1	Potassium	0.04		
Titanium	0.62	Bromine	0.008		
Hydrogen	0.14	Carbon	0.002		

bluish-colored rock containing copper is being dug from the earth. In the second, magnesium is being taken out of sea water. In the third, oxygen is being separated from liquid air. These three widely different activities are alike in one way. In each a useful substance is being removed from the crust of the earth, the waters of the earth, or the earth's great covering of air.

Of course, not all materials making up the world are as valuable as copper, magnesium, or oxygen. No matter how many our wants are, the substances that satisfy our wants and make our life richer come from the earth, its water, and its air. In this chapter, you will learn what some of these things are. You will explore the earth, the waters of the earth, and the air surrounding the earth. You will find that no matter where you go or what you do, you are dependent on the chemicals of the earth's great storehouse.

Beneath Your Feet

Scientists have discovered that all matter in the world is made up of 92 elements. (Eight more, as you know, were made by atomic scientists.) Some of these elements are very scarce. Others may be found almost anywhere in mixtures or in compounds. (See Table 8.)

You can see by Table 7, above, that just eight of the 92 elements make up almost the entire earth; the other 84 make up only 1½%. Of these 84 elements, 77, such as gold, silver, and uranium, make up less than 0.1% of the whole earth! These figures show why some elements are rare and hard to find. But these elements must be found. Let us hunt for some of them.

FROM ELEMENTS TO MINERALS AND ORES

Do you know how most gold rushes start? Someone finds particles of gold in a stream bed or in a rock. The word gets around. From that time on, it is everyone for himself. One good thing about searching for gold is that gold hunters (prospectors) know what to look for. Gold is found free in nature; it is not combined with other elements. All but a few elements in the earth are found

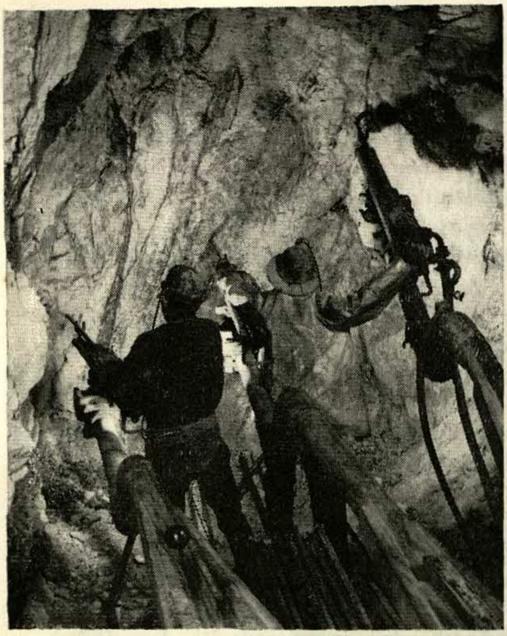
TABLE 8 Some Common Elements

Name	*Appearance*	*Common Way or Ways Element Occurs*	*Symbol*	*Atomic Weight*
Aluminum	Light, shining, grayish-white metal	Combined with oxygen in clay	Al	27.
Bromine	Reddish-brown liquid	Combined with magnesium in salt water	Br	80.
Calcium	Grayish-white metal	Combined with carbon and oxygen in marble	Ca	40.
Carbon	Sparkling (diamond) Black (coal, graphite)	By itself as coal, diamond, graphite	C	12.
Chlorine	Greenish-yellow gas	Combined with sodium in table salt	Cl	35.5
Copper	Shining reddish-brown metal	By itself and in ores of copper	Cu	63.6
Gold	Yellow metal	By itself	Au	197.
Helium	Colorless gas	By itself in natural gas	He	4.
Hydrogen	Colorless gas, lightest known	Combined with oxygen in water	H	1.
Iodine	Salty gray solid	Combined with sodium in seaweeds	I	127.
Iron	Grayish-white metal	Combined with oxygen	Fe	56.
Lead	Bluish-white metal	Combined with sulfur	Pb	207.
Magnesium	Light silvery-white metal	Combined with chlorine	Mg	24.
Mercury	Heavy silvery-white liquid	Combined with sulfur	Hg	200.
Nitrogen	Colorless gas	By itself in air	N	14.
Oxygen	Colorless gas	By itself in air and combined with hydrogen in water	O	16.
Platinum	Heavy white metal	By itself	Pt	195.
Potassium	Soft silvery-white metal	Combined with oxygen in wood ashes	K	39.
Radium	Grayish-white metal	In ore called pitchblende	Ra	226.
Silver	White shining metal	By itself and also combined with sulfur	Ag	108.
Sodium	Soft silvery-white metal	Combined with chlorine in table salt	Na	23.
Sulfur	Yellow solid	By itself and combined with metals	S	32.
Tin	Soft white metal	Combined with oxygen	Sn	119.
Uranium	Heavy white metal	Combined with oxygen	U	238.

combined with other elements. The compounds they form make up most of the minerals found in the earth today. A *mineral* is any substance found naturally in the earth's crust. For instance, sand and clay, as well as the salt in sea water, are minerals.

Now look again at Table 8. Would you expect the most common elements to be part of the most common minerals? That's just what happens. Silicon and oxygen are found combined everywhere as sand or as parts of clay. Clay and sand and rock particles make up most of the earth's soil.

The minerals from which we get useful metals are called *ores*. A bluish-



ANACONDA COPPER MINING CO.

161 Deep in a copper mine, these men are drilling holes into a bluish-colored vein of copper ore to get it ready for blasting. Why is copper ore different in color from copper?

colored ore of copper is being dug from a mine in Fig. 161. Certainly this blue ore of copper is nothing like the copper used in a penny or in the wires that bring electricity into your home. You won't find most metals in the pure state, nor will their ores look as if they contained the metal. For example, you will not find pure lead if you go looking for that metal. It will probably be part of a heavy, shiny black crystal. Pure iron is never found by itself. It is usually part of a reddish or purple ore. The shiny white metal, aluminum, comes from a grayish-white clay. Mercury, the silvery-white liquid in the bulb of your thermometer, is found in a heavy, soft, red earth.

So it goes. Unless the element is found by itself, like gold or platinum, it is part of a mineral that is entirely different in appearance. These minerals are everywhere in the earth's crust, and even in ocean water and in the water you drink.

WATER — A HANDY FRIEND

This water you take so much for granted is one of the most important chemicals on this earth. It is important to the chemist and to you. Without water life could not go on, because every part of your body contains liquid. Most important, water can hold other chemicals, that is, dissolve them in itself. When water dissolves sugar, you cannot see the sugar in the water. The water is just as clear as it was before. A substance (such as sugar) that dissolves in a liquid (such as water) is called *soluble.* Likewise, the mixture of water and a dissolved substance is called a *solution.* The oceans of the earth are solutions of minerals and water.

Why Is the Ocean Salty?

Whenever water comes in contact with soil, it takes up or dissolves some minerals. Even your pure drinking water has some minerals in it. Take an absolutely clean saucer or glass and fill it with tap water. Let the saucer stand in a warm place for a few days until all the water has evaporated, that is, gone into the air. The film you see in the bottom of the saucer is made by the small amount of mineral matter that is ordinarily dissolved in tap water.

In the same way, the hard material which forms on the bottom inside your teakettle comes from minerals. These have settled out of the boiling, over a long period of time. A city's water pipes may become clogged by the minerals from millions of gallons of water flowing through them.

When we say that the ocean is salty, we mean that it has in it a large amount of dissolved minerals. When water evaporates from the surface of an ocean, or a lake without an outlet, the minerals are left behind. This is the reason for the great amount of salt in the Great Salt Lake in Utah and in the Dead Sea between Israel and Jordan.

Dissolved Minerals Are Valuable

Three-quarters of the earth's surface is covered by oceans. Every glass of this sea water has in it about a teaspoonful of salt. This is mainly table salt (sodium chloride). But there are also small amounts of other compounds such as magnesium chloride and magnesium bromide. It is said that, if all the minerals could be taken from the oceans, they would cover North and South America with a blanket 400 feet deep.

In 1 cubic mile of ocean water there are about 160 million tons of dissolved minerals.[1] In these dissolved minerals more than half of all the known elements have been found, even gold. We do not get gold from sea water because it would cost more to get it from the sea than to mine it from the earth.

However, 1 cubic mile of sea water has in it about 5 million tons of magnesium and 1 million tons of *bromine* (BROH-meen). A way to get these two elements from sea water was found 30 years ago. For this purpose millions of gallons of sea water are pumped daily through plants like the one mentioned at the beginning of this chapter.

About 200,000 tons of magnesium and 35,000 tons of bromine are used in the United States each year. Magnesium, a light metal, is used in building airplanes. You may even have a magnesium ladder in your home. Bromine is used in making antiknock gasoline and in chemical industries. Nearly all the bromine and much of the magnesium come from minerals of the sea.

Dissolved minerals have still other values. They help to give drinking water its flavor. Most mineral matter in drinking water is perfectly harmless; in fact, some is beneficial. Small amounts of a mineral with iodine in it are in certain waters. The iodine prevents one kind of simple goiter, a growth of the thyroid gland, which is found in the throat. In some sections of the country water contains compounds of *fluorine* (FLOO-er-een), believed to help prevent tooth decay.

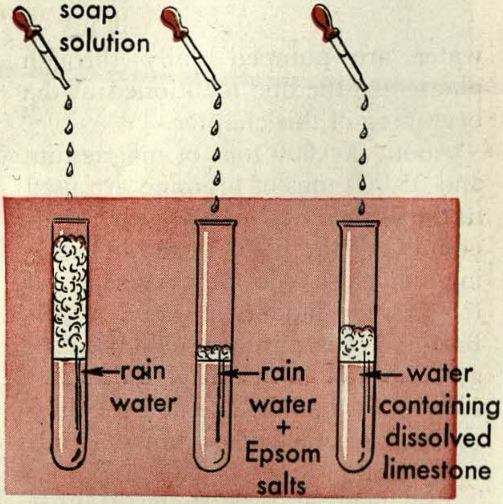
Hard Water

Water in which soap does not lather easily is called *hard* water. Hard water has in it salts of magnesium and calcium. Soap does not dissolve in hard water, with the result that much of its cleansing action is lost. Would you call sea water hard water? It certainly is. Ordinary soap feels like grease when it is used with sea water.

To show how hard water acts on soap, fill two test tubes one-third full of rain water or distilled water. These are soft waters with little or no minerals in them (Fig. 162). Fill a third test tube one-third full of

---

[1] A cubic mile is a square mile of water a mile deep.



162 Does it take more soap to make suds when using rain water or when using water with dissolved minerals in it? *Project:* Try this experiment with different kinds of soaps and drinking water from different sources.

limewater. Using a medicine dropper, allow five drops of a liquid soap to fall into one of the test tubes of rain water. Shake it to form suds. Now add a pinch of magnesium sulfate (Epsom salts) to the second test tube of rain water or distilled water. Add five drops of soap solution and shake it. Do you get as much suds as in the first tube? Would your expenses for soap be greater when using hard water or when using soft (rain) water?

Now blow your breath carefully through a straw into the test tube of limewater. The carbon dioxide of your breath reacts with the limewater to form bits of calcium carbonate, really a form of limestone. If you keep on blowing in carbon dioxide, the milky color will disappear. A soluble compound is formed, and this makes the water hard. How many drops of soap must you add to this test tube to get suds equal to that in the first test tube containing rain water? You will find that you have to add three or four times as much soap. What do you conclude about the cost of using soap in regions where the water is hard, like the water you have been working with? Is the cost higher or lower? Why?

How would you solve the problem of washing clothes in hard water? Wouldn't you try to soften the water? Wouldn't you try to add something to it that would stop the action of the magnesium or calcium salts? That is just what many housewives do. Washing soda or borax or a little ammonia added to hard water will help. There are other commercial water softeners, which take out the magnesium and calcium salts. They are often used in regions where the water is extremely hard.

Limestone Caves and Hard Water

You may have heard of or visited the Mammoth Cave of Kentucky, the Luray Caverns of Virginia, or the Carlsbad Caverns of New Mexico. If you have, no doubt you have wondered how such immense caverns were formed.

You know that a great deal of water is found beneath the surface of the earth. Much of it has carbon dioxide in it. During many past centuries, this underground water bearing carbon dioxide had dissolved the limestone far below the earth's surface. As this hard water dissolved the limestone, it left great holes where the limestone once was. These open spaces form the caves we know today.

When underground hard water

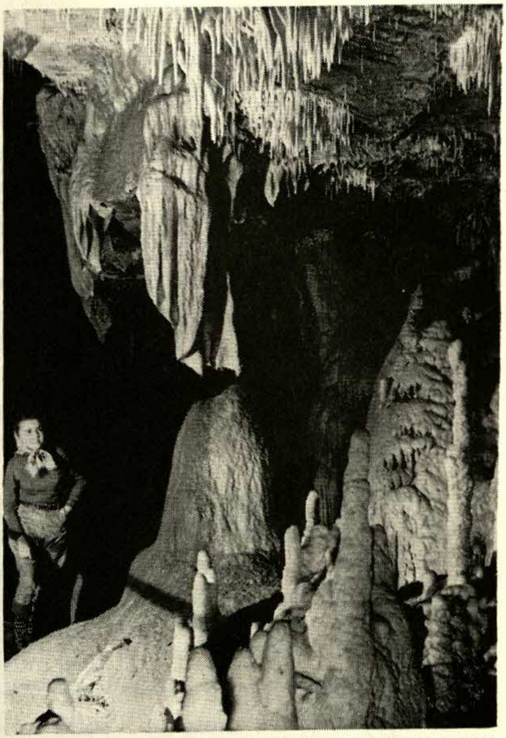
evaporates from the roofs or floors of these caverns, it leaves behind the dissolved limestone and other minerals in the water. As this happens, the limestone often builds up into beautiful shapes like icicles and columns (Fig. 163).[1] The limestone icicles hang from the roofs of the caves. The columns stand up from the floors. Their beauty attracts thousands of visitors.

Handmade Solutions

Of course water dissolves many things besides limestone. It dissolves some substances better than it does others. Let us see how this works.

Fill two test tubes one-third full of water. Now fill a third tube with table salt and a fourth tube with magnesium sulfate (Epsom salts). These we will call your supply tubes. Now add about a teaspoonful of table salt from your supply tube to one of the tubes containing water, and add a teaspoonful of magnesium sulfate to the other tube containing water. Shake well.

Add the salts and shake until you can dissolve no more salt or magnesium sulfate. You have reached a point where the solution in one test tube is *saturated* (SACH-er-ayt-id) with the table salt. In the other tube the solution is one that will hold no more of the dissolved substances at that temperature. Now examine the levels of the table salt and the magnesium sulfate in the supply test tubes. Which one is the lower? Which of the two substances dissolves more readily?



PENNSYLVANIA DEPT. OF HIGHWAYS

163 A visitor admires the beauty of limestone formations in a large cave. Why do some of the formations hang from the ceiling while others stand up from the floor?

Next, take the test tube containing the saturated solution of magnesium sulfate and heat it. Now try to dissolve more magnesium sulfate in the solution. Are you successful? You will be, for as you raise the temperature, more magnesium sulfate will be dissolved.

You have seen by this activity that some substances, like table salt, do not dissolve in water as readily as do other substances, like magnesium sulfate. You have shown that there is a point — the saturation point — beyond which no more of a substance can be dissolved at a certain temperature. And you have seen that if you increase the temperature, a larger amount of the substance can be dissolved. This is true of most soluble substances.

---

[1] The limestone icicles hanging from the roof are called *stalactites* (stuh-LAK-tyts). The columns built up from the floor are called *stalagmites* (stuh-LAG-myts).

Gases can be dissolved in liquids; for example, carbon dioxide is dissolved in ginger ale and soda pop. With gases, raising the temperature of the solution lowers the amount of a gas you can dissolve — just the opposite of what happens with most solids.

How does all this apply to your daily life? A scientist, a doctor, a druggist, and even a housewife must know what substances dissolve easily and what substances do not dissolve or are hard to dissolve. In making medicines or solutions, they must know or be able to find the saturation point of a solution. Then they must know that by heating water they can usually dissolve more of a solid substance in a shorter space of time.

Suspensions

Many solids that do not dissolve in water are still carried by water. These solids are plainly seen, as in a glass of muddy water. Muddy water is a *suspension*. Familiar suspensions in your home are fresh milk, gravy, starch in water, and mayonnaise. Many suspensions, such as muddy water, settle if they are left standing.

Suspensions play a great part in changing the earth's surface. The tremendous amount of soil carried in suspension by the Mississippi River builds the river out 250 feet farther each year into the Gulf of Mexico (Fig. 72). In a similar way, the Nile and the Danube rivers increase their length 13 feet each year. Whenever soil is carried from one spot to another on the earth's surface, suspensions are mainly responsible.

Absolutely Pure Water

How can we get water with nothing dissolved or suspended in it?

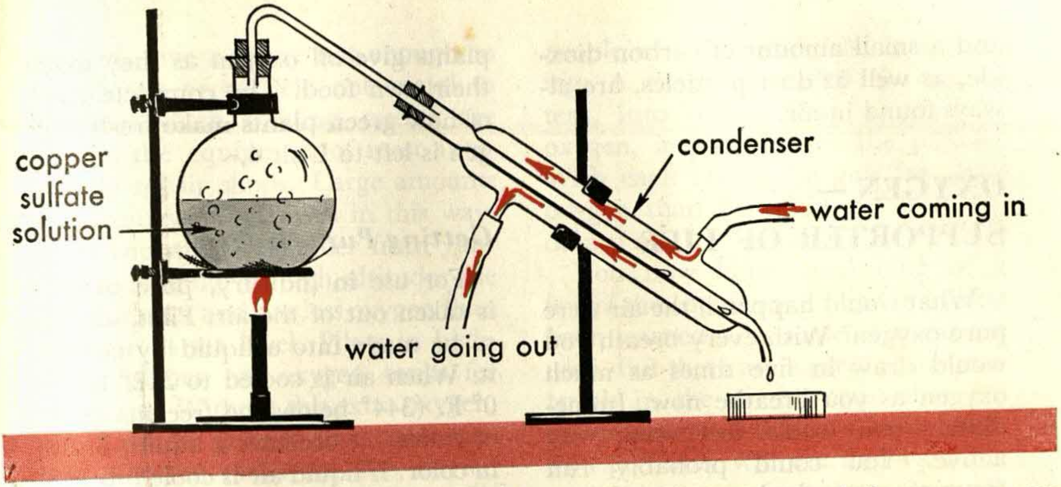
Chemists, doctors, druggists, manufacturers, science teachers, and science students, to mention but a few, need water free from all dissolved material. We can get this by boiling water that has impurities in it. The steam that is formed contains no harmful germs and no dissolved minerals either. The steam is collected and cooled, and finally forms water again. This process of freeing water from its impurities is called *distillation* (dis-tih-LAY-sh'n).

No doubt your school has a distillation apparatus similar to the one in Fig. 164. You may see how it works by filling a large flask one-half full of blue copper sulfate solution. Now set it up as shown in the figure. Boil the copper sulfate until a colorless liquid drips from the condenser tip into the beaker. The water, free from impurities such as the copper sulfate, is called distilled water.

AIR —
AN INVISIBLE OCEAN

"I won't believe it unless I see it!" How many times have you heard someone say that? Strangely enough, many people used to believe that air was not a real substance because they could not see it. In fact, many ancient Greeks did not believe that air was a real substance until one of their famous men, Anaxagoras (an-ak-SAG-uh-russ), fell down on a blown-up goatskin bag.

It happened this way. In those



164 Boiling a solution of blue copper sulfate in the flask produces colorless, pure water which drips from the end of the condenser. How does distillation rid water of impurities?

days blown-up goatskins were used as floats to support rafts. Anaxagoras was carrying a freshly blown-up skin for his raft when he stumbled on the rocky beach and fell. His fall was cushioned by the blown-up bag, and he was not hurt. This started Anaxagoras thinking of air as a real substance. His reasoning, which has come down to us, was as follows: "If there was nothing in the bag, I would have been hurt. If the bag had been filled with moss, a real substance I could pick in the woods, I would not have been hurt. But it was filled with air and still I wasn't hurt. Therefore air, like moss, must be a real substance."

Today we know how right Anaxagoras was. An automobile rides on the cushion of air in its tires. Air holds up a 150-ton airplane in flight.

The great, invisible ocean of air around you is a real substance.

The Earth's Air

No other planet around our sun has air just like the air surrounding the earth. Astronomers tell us that there is not enough oxygen in the air of other planets for life like ours. For example, the air on Mars is mostly carbon dioxide and nitrogen; Jupiter's air is mostly ammonia gas, and Saturn has air that contains methane (METH-ayn), an explosive gas found in coal mines. You can understand that you could not breathe the air on any other planet and live.

What Is Air Made Of?

People who lived more than 175 years ago did not know what air was made up of. It was not until 1774 that the great English chemist Joseph Priestley found that air had oxygen in it. Today we know that air has other gases besides oxygen. For example, air has neon, a gas used in advertising signs to cause the red glow. Air also has argon and nitrogen, gases that fill nearly 2 billion electric light bulbs made yearly in the United States. About 1% of air is made up of argon, neon, and a few other gases. Most of the rest of air — about 79% — is nitrogen, and almost 20% is oxygen. Water vapor and a small amount of carbon dioxide, as well as dust particles, are always found in air.

OXYGEN — SUPPORTER OF LIFE

What would happen if the air were pure oxygen? With every breath you would draw in five times as much oxygen as you breathe now. Immediately you would feel very, very active. You could probably run faster than you had ever run before. If you kept on breathing pure oxygen (in our imaginary air) you would die. However, before that happened, someone would have struck a match somewhere. Entire cities and towns would burn up in a twinkling; even iron would burn. Probably the whole world would soon be lifeless and barren.

The large amount of nitrogen in the air makes the oxygen much thinner than it would be if air were pure oxygen; thus we are able to breathe and live. Nitrogen is called an inactive gas; oxygen, an active gas. That is, nitrogen does not react (combine chemically) with anything at ordinary temperatures. Oxygen reacts with many things.

As you read in an earlier unit, all living things use oxygen. Not only do they take in oxygen when they breathe, but they also use it to burn (oxidize) food in their cells. In this way the food is used for energy and growth. Oxygen is also used up in other ways, as you know from your earlier reading. For instance, a fire could not burn without oxygen. Why is it that our supply of oxygen was not used up long ago? For the present, you need only know that *green* plants give off oxygen as they make their own food. The complete story of how green plants make fresh oxygen is left to Unit 6.

Getting Pure Oxygen

For use in industry, pure oxygen is taken out of the air. First, air has to be made into a liquid by cooling it. When air is cooled to 312° below 0° F. (344° below the freezing point of water), it becomes a liquid, bluish in color. If liquid air is cooled to 362° below 0° F., it becomes a hard solid.

Liquid air is so cold that it changes the properties of many things that are placed in it. A rubber ball dipped in liquid air and thrown against a wall will shatter like glass. A banana becomes so hard that it can be used as a hammer to drive nails. An iron pan, when placed in liquid air, becomes so brittle that it can be broken by hand. If a finger were placed in liquid air, it would freeze solid.

Liquid air has in it the same amounts of gases that are in ordinary air. These gases are, of course, now in the liquid state. When liquid air evaporates, the liquid nitrogen evaporates more quickly than the other liquid gases. Thus the liquid air left becomes richer and richer in oxygen. Argon, neon, and other rare gases then evaporate separately. Thus oxygen that is about 99.5% pure is left behind. In this way, oxygen as well as the other gases in air can be separated in the pure state.

What Are the Uses of Pure Oxygen?

Some substances, such as *acetylene* (uh-SET-uh-leen), when mixed with pure oxygen under pressure and burned, give a flame hot enough to cut metals or to weld one metal to another. Such welding outfits are part of the equipment of most automobile repair shops. Large amounts of pure oxygen are used in this way.

As you may remember from your earlier reading, at high altitudes the air is thinner and has less oxygen than does air at sea level. Pilots in high-flying planes use oxygen tanks for breathing. Without this extra oxygen, pilots would quickly lose consciousness. Oxygen tanks are also carried by mountain climbers. When Sir Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norkay climbed Mt. Everest in May, 1953, they carried oxygen tanks. Without this extra oxygen to breathe, they could never have been the first persons to reach the top of the highest mountain in the world. Hospitals also use oxygen tanks to help sick people who have difficulty in breathing. A covering, called an oxygen tent, into which flows air rich in oxygen, is placed over the patient. With each breath he gets far more oxygen than he could get from ordinary air.

You now know something of a few of the chemicals around you. You have learned how some of them are used. But there are a great many materials in the earth's crust that are not found in everyone's back yard. You probably will not find valuable ores such as ores of uranium, mercury, lead, or iron even within a great distance of your home. You probably will not find gold, silver, copper, or oil in your back yard. How some of these substances are taken from the earth, treated, and used will be the subject of the next chapter, "The Wealth in the Earth's Crust."

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

solution
dissolved
saturated solution
mineral
ore
hard water
suspension
soft water
distillation

1. will hold no more of the dissolved substance at a certain temperature
2. a mineral from which we get a useful metal
3. water in which soap makes suds easily
4. water containing small particles of a substance you see
5. a mixture of water and a dissolved substance
6. any substance occurring naturally in the earth's crust
7. water in which soap does not lather well
8. soluble in water, thus making a solution
9. a method of getting pure water

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Useful . . . are procured from ores.
2. Any substance occurring naturally in the earth is called a . . . .
3. Underground water containing . . . causes the making of caves.
4. Water having particles of soil in it is called a . . . .
5. Water having certain minerals in it is called . . . water.
6. A . . . solution of a substance is one that has all the dissolved substance it can hold at a certain temperature.
7. Water that carries insoluble substances is called a . . . .
8. . . . is a method for making pure water.
9. Neon, the gas that causes the red glow in advertising signs, is taken from . . . air.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. *Making a solution.* Dissolve a crystal of copper sulfate in one-half test tube of water. Now shake up a teaspoonful of soil in another test tube half-filled with water. Hold both test tubes up to the light. Which one is clear and transparent? Let both test tubes stand for five minutes. Which one has an even distribution of color? Which one settles on standing? Now write a clear statement to show that you know what a good solution is.

2. *Recovering a dissolved solid from a solution.* Pour the test tube of copper sulfate solution into an evaporating dish and place the dish on a hot plate or over a lighted Bunsen burner. Allow the dish to stand until all the water has boiled away. What is left in the bottom of the dish? How would you get back silver nitrate dissolved in water?

3. *A chemical reaction in solution.* Stir a few small crystals of table salt and silver nitrate together on a paper. Is there any evidence of chemical change? Now dissolve a few crystals of table salt in one-half test tube of water. Do the same with a few crystals of silver nitrate in another test tube. Pour the solution from one test tube into the other. What evidence of chemical change is there? What do you conclude concerning the use chemists make of solutions to produce a chemical reaction?

4. *Making oxygen.* Fill a small beaker one-quarter full of hydrogen peroxide. Add to it one-half teaspoon of powdered manganese dioxide. The manganese dioxide will cause the hydrogen peroxide to give off oxygen very rapidly. After a moment, light a wood splint and blow out the flame. Put the glowing end of the splint into the beaker close to the surface of the liquid. Does the splint burst into flame? Do substances burn more rapidly in pure oxygen than in air? What would happen if the air were pure oxygen?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. The maker of an electric steam iron advises purchasers to use only distilled

water in the iron to make steam. What is his reason?

2. What would you do to find out if a glass of clear water has dissolved substances in it? How would you make the water pure if it had such substances in it?

3. You have dissolved all the copper sulfate you can in a certain amount of water at room temperature. What must you do to dissolve more copper sulfate?

4. Give the reasons for the following:

a. Large rivers extend themselves out into the ocean.

b. We can get pure oxygen from liquid air.

c. Most metals are not found in the pure state.

Adding to Your Library

The following books are for your reading pleasure. They will give you a better understanding of the things that interested you in this chapter.

1. *The Sea Around Us* by Rachel L. Carson, Oxford University Press, 1951. A most fascinating story of the sea and what it contains. Be sure to read it.

2. *Rocks and Their Stories* by Carroll L. and Mildred A. Fenton, Doubleday, 1951. There are many pictures of different kinds of rocks and minerals in this book. The chapter "Knowing Minerals" is particularly good.

3. *The Great Heritage* by Katherine B. Shippen, Viking Press, 1947. This book tells in the chapter, "Gold! Gold! Gold!" the fascinating story of the first gold rush.

4. *Stories in Rocks* by Henry L. Williams, Henry Holt, 1948. This book gives an excellent description of minerals and ores, especially in the chapter, "Stone Trees and Golden Veins."

5. *America's Treasure* by W. Maxwell Reed, Harcourt, Brace, 1939. This book is a "must" for your reading. It tells how minerals and ores were formed when the earth cooled, where they are found, and what we do with them.

6. *Exploring Caves* by C. Cullingford, Oxford University Press, 1952. This book tells how caves were formed, and how many famous caves were found and explored.

7. *The Sea for Sam* by W. Maxwell Reed and Wilfred S. Bronson, Harcourt, Brace, 1935. Read Chapter 24 to find what useful minerals we extract from the sea.

8. *The Nature of the Universe* by Fred Hoyle, Harper and Brothers, 1950. Read how the earth got its ocean of air and what kind of air is on other planets. You will also find what the author believes was the beginning and may be the end of the world.

A Bit of Research

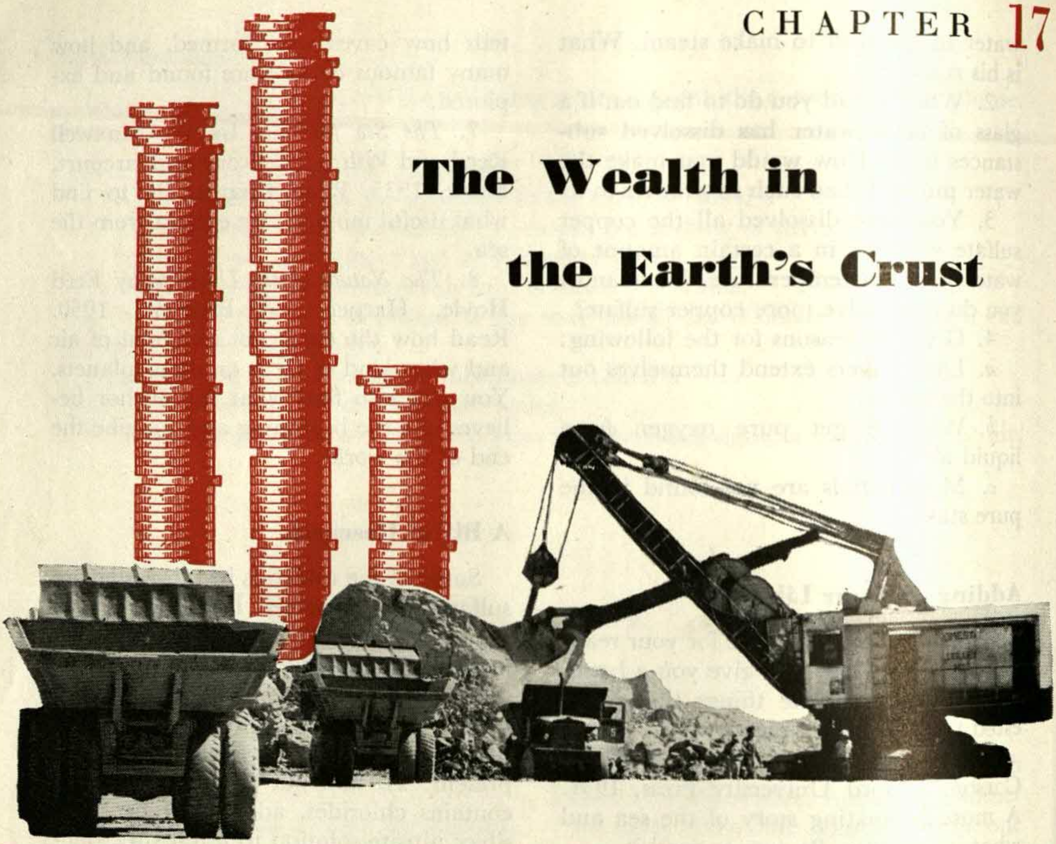
Some of the minerals in tap water are sulfates and chlorides. Find out if your tap water has sulfates in it by adding a few drops of a dilute solution of barium chloride to a test tube one-half full of tap water. A white, cloudy formation of barium sulfate will appear if sulfates are present. To find out if your tap water contains chlorides, add a few drops of silver nitrate solution to a test tube one-half full of tap water. A white, cloudy formation of silver chloride that will dissolve in ammonia water will appear if chlorides are present.

Using the apparatus in Fig. 164, distill some tap water and test the distilled water for minerals. Is the distilled water free from minerals? What do you conclude is the best method for getting absolutely pure water?

Careers for You

Nearly every business or manufacturing plant deals in some way with the chemicals in the earth's crust. Hundreds of men and women are needed at all times as *chemists*, *laboratory assistants*, and *technicians* in laboratories. There are also opportunities for field work as *geologists*, for making surveys of land and for finding out what is in mineral deposits as well as ores.

The Wealth in the Earth's Crust



What is this wealth? Iron, sulfur, copper, aluminum, coal, oil — not just gold or silver. What would your life be like if our country did not have this wealth in the earth's crust?

"*Seek and you shall find.*" Perhaps that was the one leading thought young Charles Hall had in mind one morning in the year 1886. Certainly he had been seeking long enough. He had been patient. He had been thorough. Now at last he thought he had found what he sought.

On this particular morning, Charles Hall and his sister Julia were standing in front of a furnace Hall had built in his father's woodshed in Oberlin, Ohio. Hall pushed an electric switch. Into the bottom of a frying pan lined with carbon trickled a thin stream of silvery-white, molten aluminum. When the current was shut off, the aluminum cooled quickly into a few tiny balls. These balls of aluminum, the first to be made in America, are called the jewels of the great aluminum industry.

METALS AND THEIR ALLOYS

Charles Hall was the first to make aluminum cheaply from an ore of aluminum. The ore is made up of the substance aluminum oxide and other materials. Hall separated aluminum from aluminum oxide by using electricity (Fig. 165). Before he found how to get aluminum from its ore, aluminum cost $542 a pound. Today aluminum sells for about 15 cents a pound.

Besides being cheap, aluminum is a very light, strong metal that does not rust easily. This is why it is used in producing airplanes, automobiles, roofing, storm windows, pots and pans, and hundreds of other things. In this chapter you will discover how important aluminum and other metals are to our way of life.

Iron from Iron Ore

The most important and useful metal in the world today is iron. Iron is necessary for the world's work. It is used in making steel. Without iron or steel, our way of life could not go on.

To get iron from iron ore, a tall furnace 100 feet high is built and lined with special brick (Fig. 168). It is called a blast furnace because blasts of very hot air are blown in at the bottom. In the blast furnace the iron ore yields its iron metal.

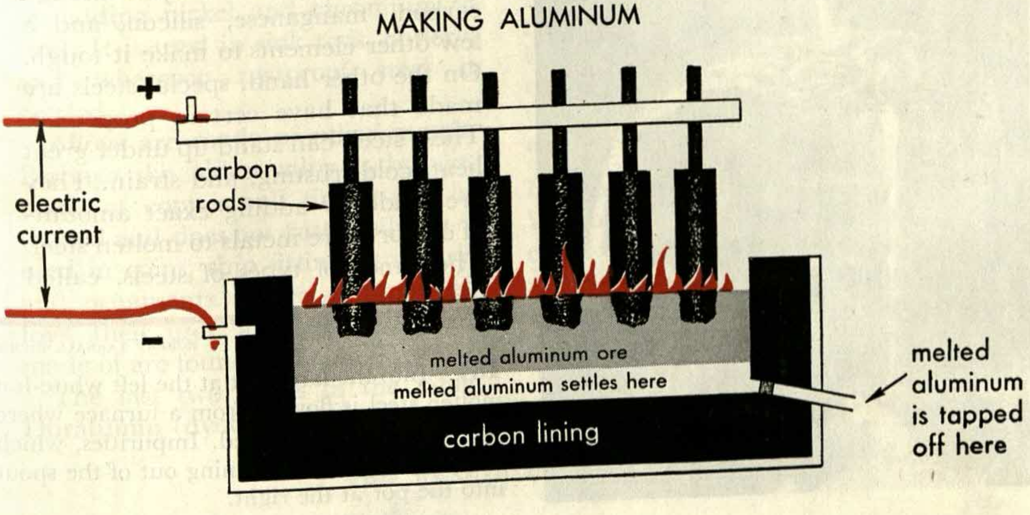
The iron flows out as a liquid at the bottom of the furnace. It is then poured into molds and cools into solid bars called "pigs." Once started, a blast furnace is kept working all the time. If shut down, a blast furnace takes some time to get back in working order again. It must be reheated to the high temperature at which the iron melts.

Pig iron may be melted and poured into molds of different shapes to form automobile engine blocks, stoves, and bases for heavy machinery. Such iron, called cast iron, will not stand bending or heavy shocks or blows. It breaks under such treatment.

Steel, the Backbone of Industry

No other man-made material is so strong or so tough as the different kinds of steel made today. Steel may be made into many shapes and sizes, with the strength of cast iron but without its brittleness. Steel may be rolled, red-hot, and formed into steel rails for railroads. It may also be

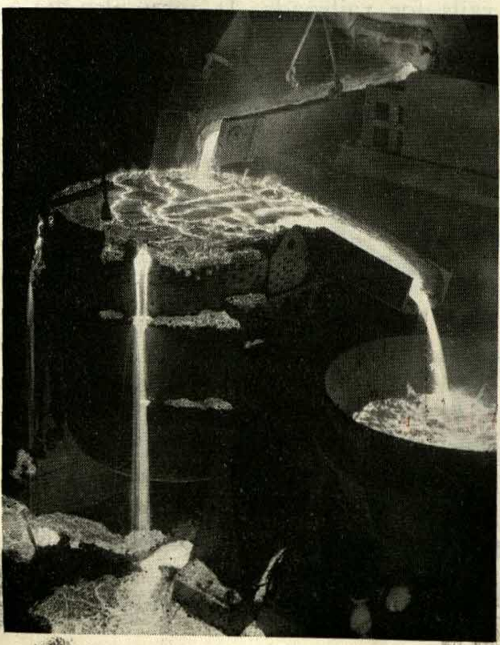
165 When a current of electricity is passed through the melted aluminum ore, the aluminum separates from the ore and collects on the bottom of the electric cell.



ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

166 Notice the huge shovel that strips iron ore from the surface of this mine to fill the ore cars of a long train. This mine is in the Mesabi Range in Minnesota. Why is iron ore so important to industry?

rolled into strips for making tin cans. It may be pulled out into wires. It may be made into armor plates for battleships. From steel come the tools of industry, engines for factories, airplanes, automobiles, and trucks. Whether it is in a watch spring, pen point, or locomotive, steel plays its part in your everyday life.



What Is Steel?

The first step in making steel is to control the impurities in pig iron. Pig iron has in it a number of elements, such as silicon (SIL-ih-kon), phosphorus (FOSS-for-us), sulfur, and particularly carbon. These impurities are found in cast iron. To make steel, these elements are largely burned out of the iron. In this way the amount of carbon is lowered from about 4% to less than 1% (Fig. 167). Ordinary steel is really iron with just enough carbon, manganese, silicon, and a few other elements to make it tough. On the other hand, special steels are made that have certain properties. These steels can stand up under great heat, cold, rusting, and strain. They are made by adding exact amounts of one or more metals to molten steel. Thousands of types of steels, called

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

167 Into the large pot at the left white-hot molten steel is flowing from a furnace where pig iron has been melted. Impurities, which float to the top, are running out of the spout into the pot at the right.

alloy (AL-oi) steels, are made by adding different metals to iron. An alloy, therefore, is made up of two or more metals melted together.

Alloys — Man-Made Metals

In general, alloys are different from the metals of which they are made. For instance, often they are harder and stronger. Today we would find it very hard — if not impossible — to have many comforts of modern life without the use of alloys.

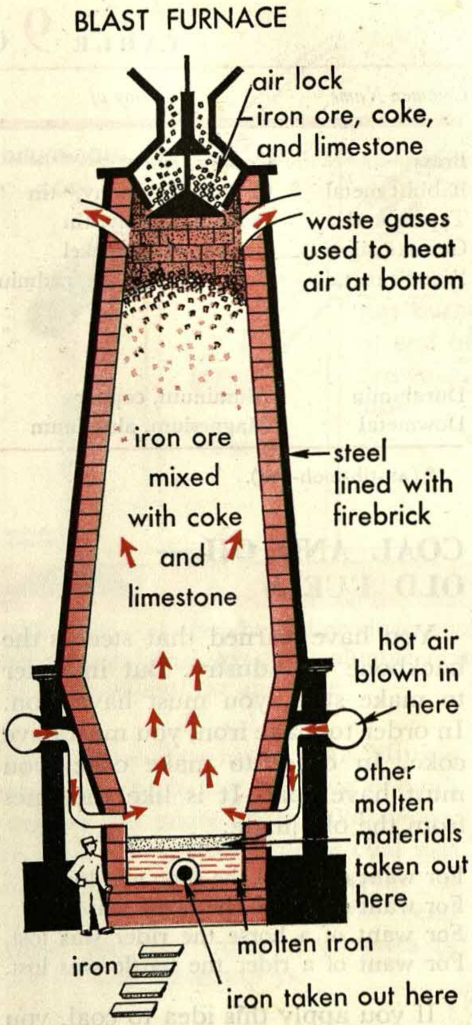
Different Alloys

As we stated earlier, there are many different kinds of alloys. Steel alloys are those in which different metals are dissolved in steel. When about 4% of nickel is added to steel, the alloy is tough and withstands rusting. Gun barrels and armor plate, as well as bridge girders, are made of nickel-steel alloy.

Manganese in steel makes an alloy that is hard and tough enough to withstand blows. This alloy is used in railroad switches, office safes, and heavy road machinery. Silicon in steel makes an acid-proof metal used in making waste pipes for chemical plants. Stainless steel is an alloy made by adding nickel and chromium to steel. It is used in sink tops, cutlery, and wherever rustproof steel is needed.

Alloys are made of other metals. Perhaps the oldest alloy is bronze, made of copper and tin. It can be shaped and does not rust easily. It is used in coins, ship fittings, statuary, and ornaments. Other common alloys, their uses, and what they are made of are found in Table 9.

The last two alloys in the table, Duralumin (dyoo-RAL-yuh-min) and Dowmetal, are very strong and light. Without these the modern airplane could not be built. Likewise, other alloys of aluminum and magnesium have been made to meet the growing demand for safer and faster airplanes. Think of household items in which strong, light metals would be useful.


BLAST FURNACE
air lock
iron ore, coke, and limestone
waste gases used to heat air at bottom
iron ore mixed with coke and limestone
steel lined with firebrick
hot air blown in here
other molten materials taken out here
molten iron
iron
iron taken out here

168 In the blast furnace very hot air causes the coke to burn, which melts the materials — iron ore and limestone — to make iron. Molten iron is tapped from the bottom of the furnace and is cast into bars called "pigs." The lighter molten material with its impurities is drawn off above the molten iron.

TABLE 9 Common Alloys

Common Name	*Alloy of*	*Use*
Brass	Copper, zinc	Water pipes, hardware
Babbitt metal	Copper, antimony,* tin	Engine bearings
Type metal	Lead, antimony, tin	Type for printing
German silver	Copper, zinc, nickel	Tableware
Wood's metal	Bismuth, lead, tin, cadmium	Low-melting alloy plugs in fire doors, oil storage tank valves and automatic fire extinguishers in factories, public buildings, schools
Duralumin	Aluminum, copper	Airplane coverings and framework
Dowmetal	Magnesium, aluminum	Airplane parts, forgings, wings, ladders

* (AN-tih-moh-nee).

COAL AND OIL — OLD FUELS

You have learned that steel is the backbone of industry. But in order to make steel, you must have iron. In order to make iron, you must have coke. In order to make coke, you must have coal. It is like the lines from the old jingle:

For want of a nail the shoe was lost,
For want of a shoe the horse was lost,
For want of a horse the rider was lost,
For want of a rider the battle was lost.

If you apply this idea to coal, you will find coal the nail upon which modern civilization depends.

Coal — A Basic Fuel

Without coal most factories would shut down, and many cities and towns would be without gas, electricity, and power. Moreover, we would soon be without many medicines, dyes, and other products that are made from coal.

Coal is found in many parts of the world from North to South Pole. Early in the earth's history plants grew thickly in the warm moist climate. As the dead plants fell, they were gradually buried. Slowly they were pressed down and heated within the earth. Layer after layer of these plants became pressed together by changes in the earth's crust. Gradually they changed into coal. How do we know that there was once tropical growth near the North and South Poles? Simply because coal has been found in those regions.

Different Kinds of Coal

The most useful coal for industry is soft coal.[1] To see why, take a test tube and fill it half-full of small pieces of soft coal. Fit a one-hole stopper with a delivery tube to this test tube (Fig. 169). Pass the end of the delivery tube through one of the holes in a two-hole rubber stopper. In the other hole place a piece of glass tubing, one end of which has been drawn out to a narrow opening. Fit this stopper into another test tube.

Heat the test tube containing the soft coal. After two minutes hold a lighted match near the drawn-out

---

[1] Soft coal is called *bituminous* (bih-TYOO-min-us) coal.

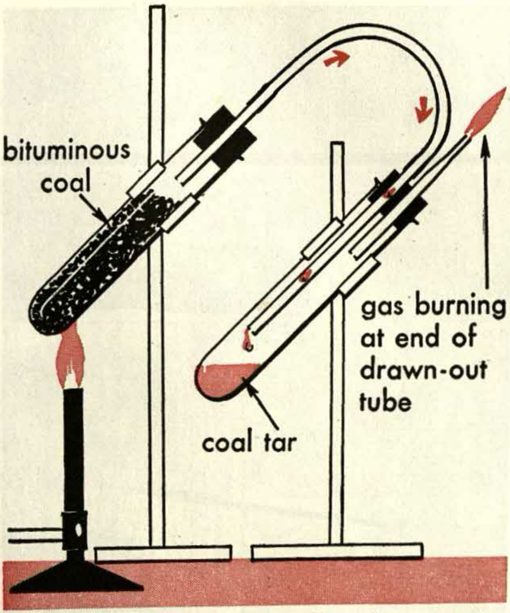
end of the glass tubing. Why does it burst into flame? Keep on heating the tube until the flame goes out. Examine the yellowish-brown material in the bottom of the second test tube. Take your apparatus apart and examine the material left from the coal in the first test tube. What does it look like?

Here is what you have done. You have, on a small scale, entered the gas business. You took soft coal and heated it without any air present. (You drove out the air in the test tube by heating.) The soft coal then gave out a gas, like the gas you burn in a gas stove. That gas you lighted with a match.

The material at the bottom of the first tube is coke, which is used for heating homes and for making steel. The liquid in the bottom of the second test tube is coal tar. From coal tar are made many dyes, drugs, plastics, perfumes, and food flavors.

Soft coal is very useful, isn't it? But that is not the whole story. Heat energy from soft coal runs engines and the machines in factories, and its energy can be turned into electricity. In most sections of the country, you will find soft coal also being used to heat public buildings and many homes.

Another kind of coal, used mainly for heating homes, is hard coal.[1] Hard coal burns with less ash and soot than does soft coal. Many homeowners like it for this reason. Another type of coal is peat, which is burned in many sections of the world where there is not much soft or hard coal. The United States is lucky to have large deposits of the best grades of coal, even though it uses 500 million tons a year. Mining engineers think that we have enough coal to last more than 3,000 years. In 1953 a very hard type of coal was discovered under rock layers in Michigan. Perhaps you will read about this and other discoveries of coal in your newspapers.



169 Soft coal when heated produces cooking (illuminating) gas and valuable materials such as coal tar and coke.

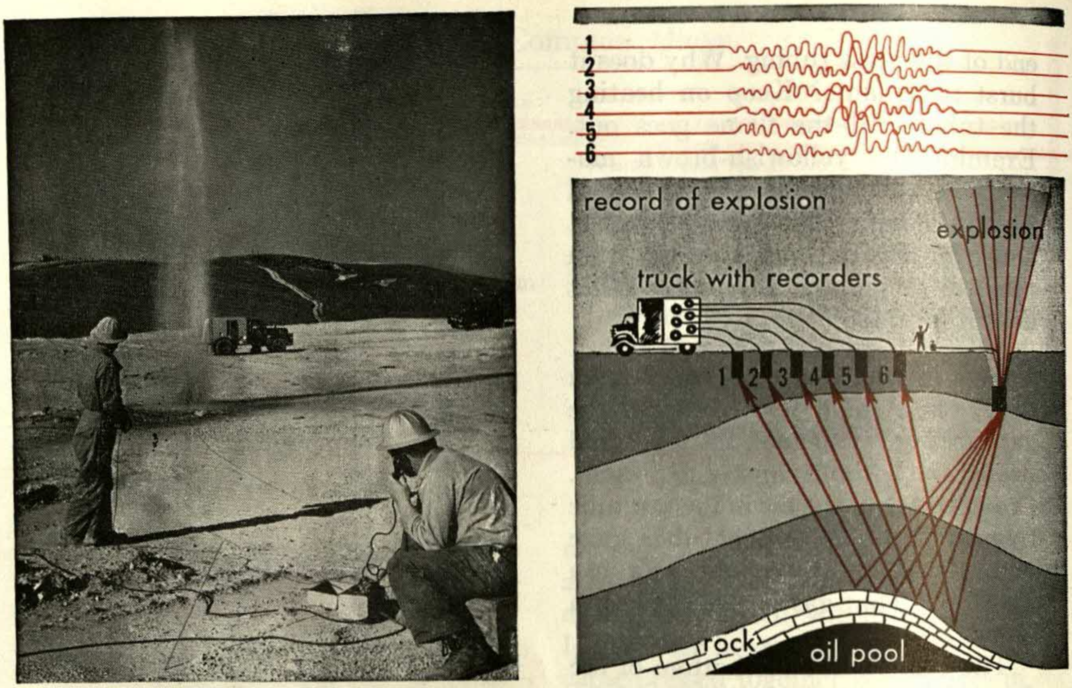
Oil — The Lifeblood of the Nation

Man's ability to travel at modern speeds depends largely upon oil.[1] About three-fourths of the world's oil is used for transportation — to give power to automobiles, steamships, airplanes, railroad trains, trucks, and buses, and to keep their moving parts oiled. Oil is also used in countless machines that help man do his daily work faster and cheaper.

---

[1] Hard coal is called *anthracite* (AN-thruh-syt) coal.

[1] Oil, as used here, means crude oil, from which we get gasoline, kerosene, automobile oil, and oil for heating.



ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

170 How scientists use echoes from exploding dynamite to detect the presence of an oil dome far underneath the earth's surface. The explosion sends sound waves downward. The rock formation reflects them upward to the surface. The pattern of the returning waves on the record of explosion shows where the dome is located.

One-fourth of the world's oil is used for making kerosene for lighting, for heating homes, for making asphalt, rubber, wax, Vaseline, antifreeze, insect sprays, linoleum, medicines, plastics, and countless other items. Do you wonder that oil is called the lifeblood of the nation?

Searching for Oil

To most people there was always something strange about the way oil was buried far down in the earth's crust. Some men claimed they could find this oil with a forked stick. They carried the forked stick before them as they walked over an area being studied. Whenever the stick turned point down toward the ground, they claimed it pointed to a pool of oil. Others said they could smell oil. Still others said oil acted on them like a magnet so that they left tracks twice as deep over land covering a pool of oil. All these ways of finding oil, of course, were based on guesswork, not on scientific knowledge.

Today geologists have worked out a surer way of finding oil. They dynamite over an area where they expect to find oil (Fig. 170). A record is made of echoes coming back from rock layers far below the earth's surface. The shape of the rock layers can be drawn from these records. When the echoes show a mound or dome of rock under which there is likely to be oil, the part of the dome closest to the surface is then found and a well is drilled. A dome of rock is formed by a wrinkling of the earth's surface (Fig. 170). In oil-bearing country this dome is usually made up of hard rock. Under that rock is a large mass of porous rock or sand filled with oil and gas, or gas alone.

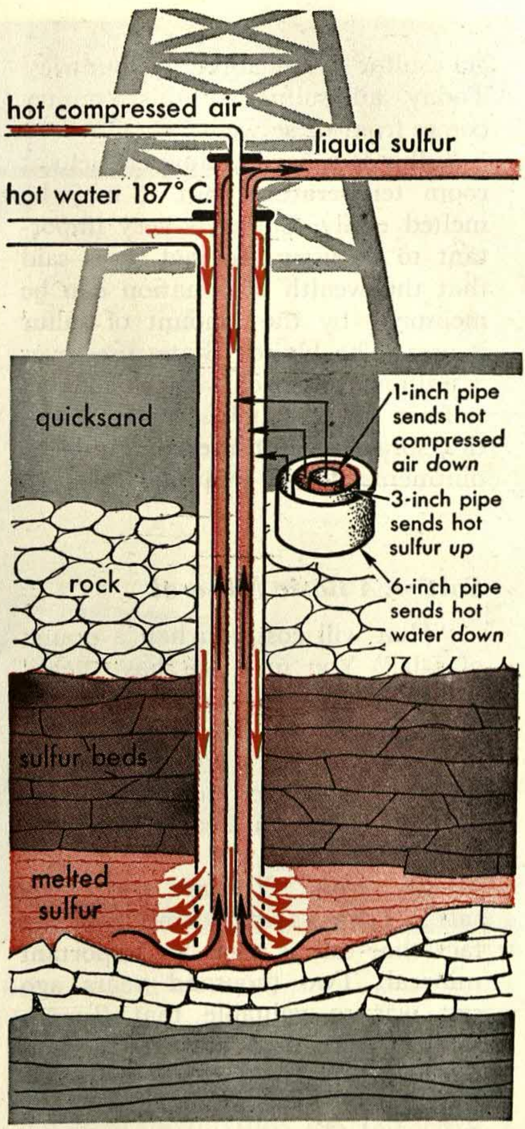
When a well is drilled through the dome, several things may happen. First, a pocket of natural gas wet with gasoline may be found. After taking the impurities out of this gas, the gas is piped to cities and towns. There it may be used for heating and cooking. Second, the pressure of gas or water on the oil under the dome may push the oil up the pipe with great force. To prevent loss of valuable oil from each newly drilled hole, the hole is capped so that the oil can be piped out when needed. Third, the oil may rise only part way up the pipe and may have to be pumped the rest of the way. Fourth — and this happens many times — the well may be dry and yield nothing.

IMPORTANT MINERALS

Sometimes the search for oil has led to the discovery of other important materials.

Sulfur — A Measure of Wealth

Would you have been as disappointed as these men were? Over 60 years ago, four men drilled for oil in Louisiana, near the Gulf of Mexico. Instead of oil they discovered sulfur. It was 500 feet below the surface. It could not be mined like coal because drill samples showed water and sand above the sulfur. The men then gave up in disgust. Herman Frasch (FRAHSH) heard about these beds of sulfur in 1891. He decided that, if he could not go down to the sulfur, he would make the sulfur come up to him. Look closely at Fig. 171. Don't you think that Herman Frasch had a good idea? Before Frasch developed this idea, the United States had to


hot compressed air
liquid sulfur
hot water 187° C.
quicksand
1-inch pipe sends hot compressed air down
3-inch pipe sends hot sulfur up
rock
6-inch pipe sends hot water down
sulfur beds
melted sulfur

171 Herman Frasch invented this process of getting pure sulfur from the earth's storehouse. Superheated water goes down the outside (6-inch) pipe and melts the sulfur. Hot, compressed air goes down the central (1-inch) pipe and forces the liquid, pure sulfur, up the middle (3-inch) pipe.

get sulfur from foreign countries. Today all sulfur in this country comes from these wells.

Sulfur is a hard yellow element at room temperature. But it may be melted easily. Sulfur is very important to industry. In fact, it is said that the wealth of a nation can be measured by the amount of sulfur it uses. The United States uses over 5 million tons each year in making sulfuric acid, matches, paper, plastics, sprays against insects and molds, ointments, and in treating rubber.

Salt — A Basic Mineral

"That will cost you half a pound of salt!" You may not have heard this expression, but you would have heard it had you lived in Kentucky in Daniel Boone's time — or even today if you lived in Ethiopia or Tibet. Have you heard of people being called "the salt of the earth"? Or the saying, "You are worth your salt"? These sayings come from the fact that salt is such an important mineral. Two thousand years ago salt was so valuable that Roman soldiers were paid with it. In fact, our word "salary" comes from the Latin word *salarium*, which means a Roman soldier's pay in salt. Even today some governments tax salt and its uses, and, where salt is scarce, some people use it for money.

Salt (sodium chloride) is a food necessary to life. It is also used in making other necessary products for the home. For example, baking soda and washing soda are made from salt. Chlorine, used to purify the water supplies of many cities and towns, is also made from salt. The chemical industry uses 10 million tons of salt each year in making these and hundreds of other products.

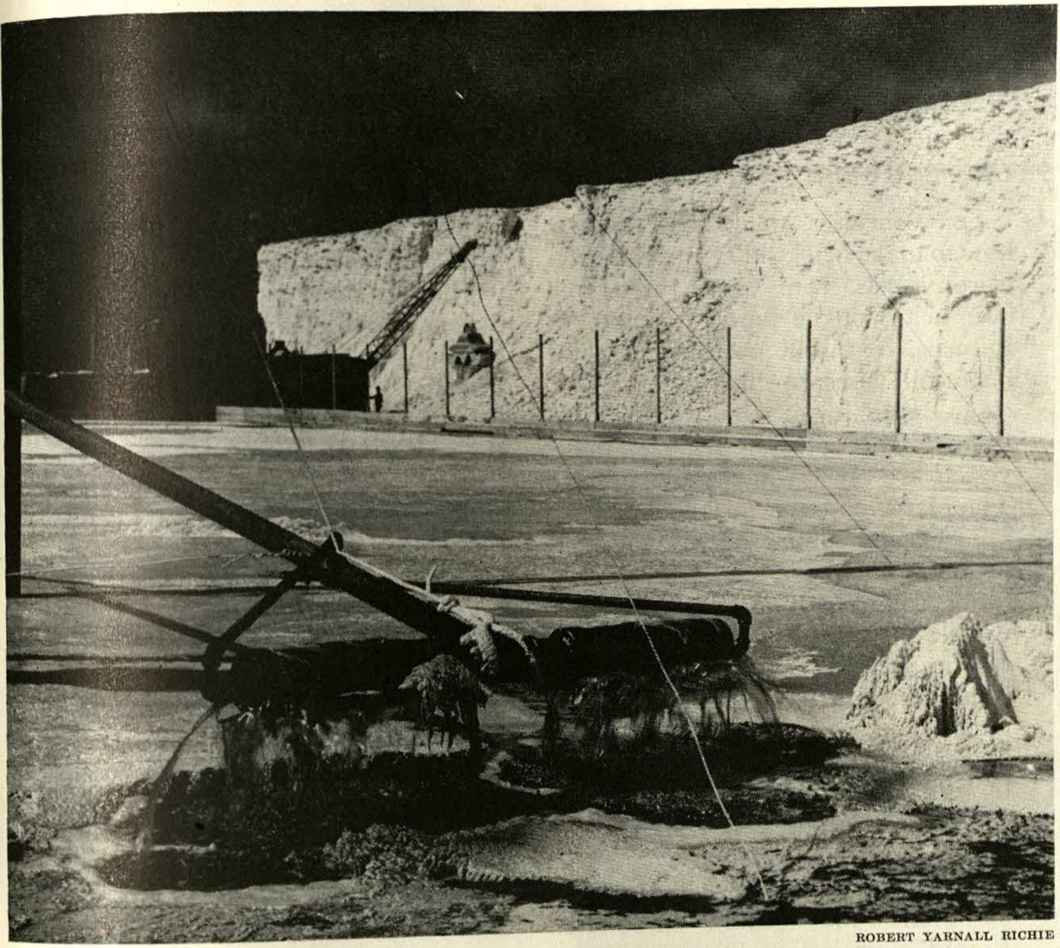
Evaporation of water from ancient seas left large beds of salt now mined in the United States. For example, millions of years ago, there was a deep hollow in what is now the lower part of Michigan. Time after time this hollow was filled by ocean water that evaporated and left salt behind. In fact, over a thousand feet or more beneath the city of Detroit this salt is being mined today.

Many beds of salt below the earth's surface are mined by sinking shafts and digging tunnels. Most, however, are mined like sulfur. Water is sent down to the bed in one pipe to dissolve the salt, which is then pumped up through another pipe. The water is evaporated, and the salt is left behind. Near Watkins Glen, N.Y., salt is mined this way. However, in many parts of the world a great deal of impure salt is obtained from salt lakes and the ocean simply by evaporating the water.

Limestone and Cement

Without limestone no large modern building could be built. Limestone is an important part of cement, and cement is used in making foundations, floors, and supports for modern buildings. To make cement, limestone is mixed with clay. This mixture is then heated and ground to a fine powder. It is used to make concrete.

Concrete is made by mixing one part of cement with two to four parts of sand and gravel or crushed rock. Water is added, and the mixture hardens into concrete. Concrete may be reinforced, that is, made stronger. When it is used for roads, walls, and floors of buildings or for dams, con-



ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

172 Sulfur from a Frasch well in Texas is being sprayed into a bin that will eventually form a huge block of sulfur like the one in the background.

crete is reinforced by pouring it around steel rods. Reinforced concrete is hundreds of times stronger than ordinary concrete. A simple experiment will show you why.

Mix enough concrete (one part of cement with four parts of sand) and enough water to make a moist mixture to fill two shallow boxes like the wooden flats (boxes) used by florists. Push a layer of chicken wire or window screening into the soft mixture in one box when it is half full. Fill the rest of the box with the mixture. Now fill the second box with the mixture, too, but leave out the screen or wire. After the concrete has hardened, remove the slab of concrete from each box. Place each slab so that its ends are on some bricks or pieces of wood. Step upon the middle of each slab. What do you find about the strength of the reinforced concrete?

Over 175 million barrels of cement are used yearly in the United States to make concrete for buildings, dams, bridges, and roads. From this you can get a good idea of the amount of concrete that is made.

Clay and Sand

For centuries men have known how to make bricks, tile, and earthenware vessels from clay. Have you ever heard of the potter's wheel? As it turns, a skillful potter can make beautiful vases by molding the wet clay. Baked in an oven, painted, or treated with a colored glaze, these vessels are always in demand today. The plate you eat from, the cups and saucers and other dishes you use probably are made from pressed clay formed on something like the potter's wheel.

The glasses you drink from, the dishes used in baking, the windowpanes you see through, the glass blocks used in building are made by different methods. But sand is the common material used in each method. Ordinary window glass is made by melting sand with calcium carbonate and sodium carbonate. Liquid glass is first blown out into circular, uneven sheets. These sheets are flattened and cooled slowly. Then the sheets are cut into the needed sizes.

Plate glass is made by rolling molten glass into a sheet upon a metal table. The sheet is then cooled slowly and ground and polished. Plate glass does not have the uneven, wavy surface of window glass. Carefully ground and polished glass also makes the lenses for eyeglasses, cameras, and giant telescopes, like the one at Mount Palomar you read about in Unit 3.

Shatterproof glass is made by joining two pieces of plate glass together with a filmlike sheet of plastic glued between them.[1] If a shatterproof automobile windshield is hit, the plastic keeps the glass from flying and cutting passengers (Fig.173).

Glass is one of the most useful substances in the world. Millions of bottles are made each year by pressing hot glass into molds. The chemist depends upon glassware for his beakers and other bottles. Spun into fine threads, glass is used as glass wool for insulating homes. Even finer threads of glass are colored and woven into waterproof, fireproof, nonfading cloth. Glass has indeed become a worldwide servant.

SAVING OUR MINERALS

The United States is the wealthiest nation in the world, partly because its land has many of the minerals you have been reading about. It was once thought that there were enough of these minerals to last the United States forever, but World War II changed that idea. During that war the United States used up 5 billion tons of its richest minerals and over 8 billion barrels of oil. Today our mercury is 97% gone; silver and lead, 83% gone; copper, zinc, and oil, 60% gone; and almost all our high-grade iron ore is used up.

If we keep using up our minerals without planning, we will become a have-not nation instead of a have nation; we will be poor instead of rich. Is it too late to start saving now? Not at all, as you shall see.

Conserving Coal

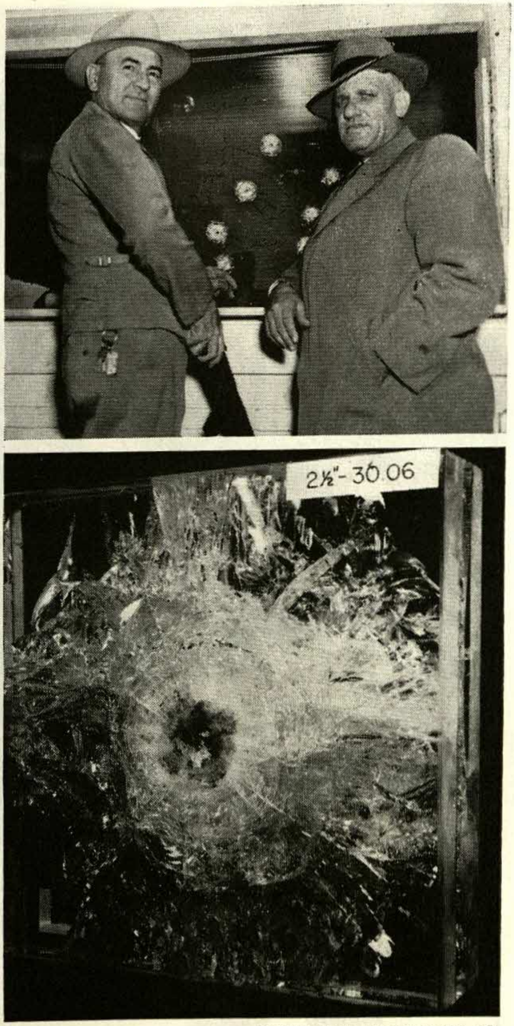
Scientists think our coal resources will last at least 3,000 years. This does not mean that we may mine and use coal wastefully. It costs a good deal of money to mine coal, and, as the coal near the earth's surface is used up, the cost of mining will increase. Everyone who uses coal or things made from coal will then have to spend more for coal.

---

[1] The word *plastic* is used to describe materials such as cellophane. Have you a raincoat made of filmlike plastic?

The people of Pennsylvania knew these facts and in 1939 acted to mine their great deposits of hard coal wisely. In that year they passed the Pennsylvania Commerce Act. This act allows miners and mineowners along with the State Secretary of Mines to plan the mining of hard coal. Each Monday, representatives of the coal miners, the mineowners, and the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania meet to decide how much coal is to be mined that week. With this kind of action, it is possible for the mineowners to plan how much they will mine. As a result, waste is kept very low, and the coal of Pennsylvania is mined with care so that the coal beds will last longer.

For heating homes, running factories, and making electricity, coal ranks first as a fuel. In the past, over one-third of the heat from coal has gone up the chimneys, doing no one any good. Better methods of burning coal have been invented, so that today this loss is now cut in half. Many homes have an invention (known as an automatic stoker) for burning coal more completely in the furnace. Industrial plants have found ways to use one pound of coal to do the work of three. Also we will use less coal for heating and cooking by using electricity made by water power. These and other methods about which you will read later are the modern ways of using our coal resources wisely.

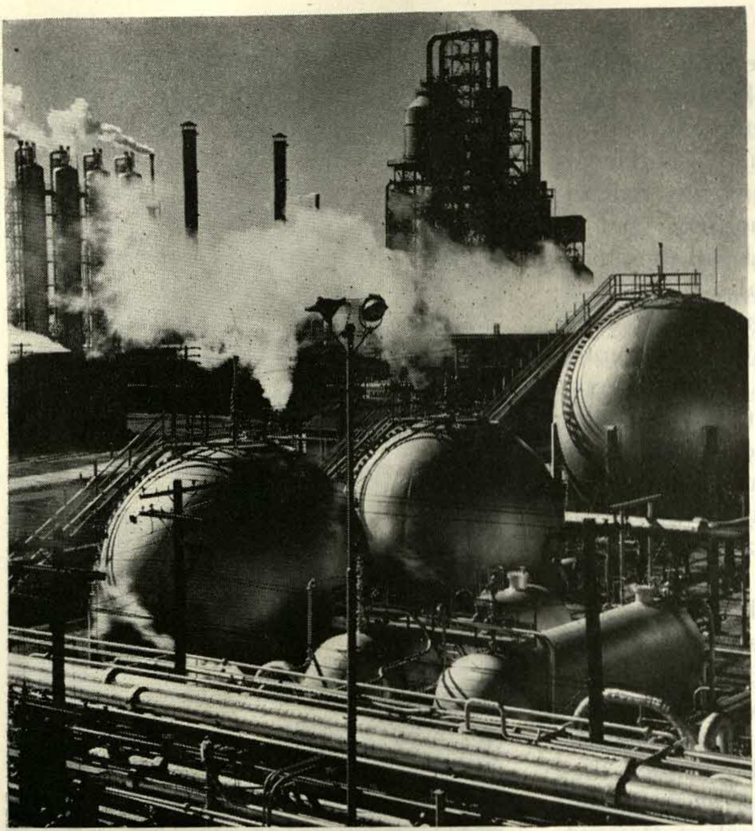


PITTSBURGH PLATE GLASS CO.

173 This shows that glass 2½ inches thick can be made strong enough to stop rifle bullets. "30.06" is a factory mark.

What Are We Doing to Conserve Oil?

We have in this country over 60 million automobiles and 15 million trucks, millions of oil burners in homes and in industries, countless airplanes, tractors, and bulldozers. All these use gasoline and oil. Thousands of oil products, such as asphalt for roads, synthetic rubber, waxes,



174 This oil refinery gets the oil it uses by underground pipelines from oil wells.

STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

dyes, and drugs are needed for everyday use. Moreover, one-third of the nation's yearly supply of oil is used each year by the armed forces. Add these all up, and you have a staggering total of over 100 billion gallons — almost 2 billion barrels used each year. Can we keep on at this rate without coming to the end of our oil supply? Let us look at the facts.

Today our known oil reserves are 22 billion barrels. At our present rate, we shall use all our known supply from wells by 1968. But these reserves are not our only oil resources. In this country we have over 1½ million square miles of land that might produce oil. Only one-half of this area has been searched for oil. Geologists tell us we may expect to find in the future as much oil as we have produced in the past. That would mean another 50 billion barrels. Added to our known resources, that would give us enough oil for the next 35 or 40 years.

Recently scientists have reached the oil under the ocean shores where the tide rises and falls. These areas are called tidelands. They are a rich source of oil, called tideland oil. You will hear a great deal about tideland oil in the future.

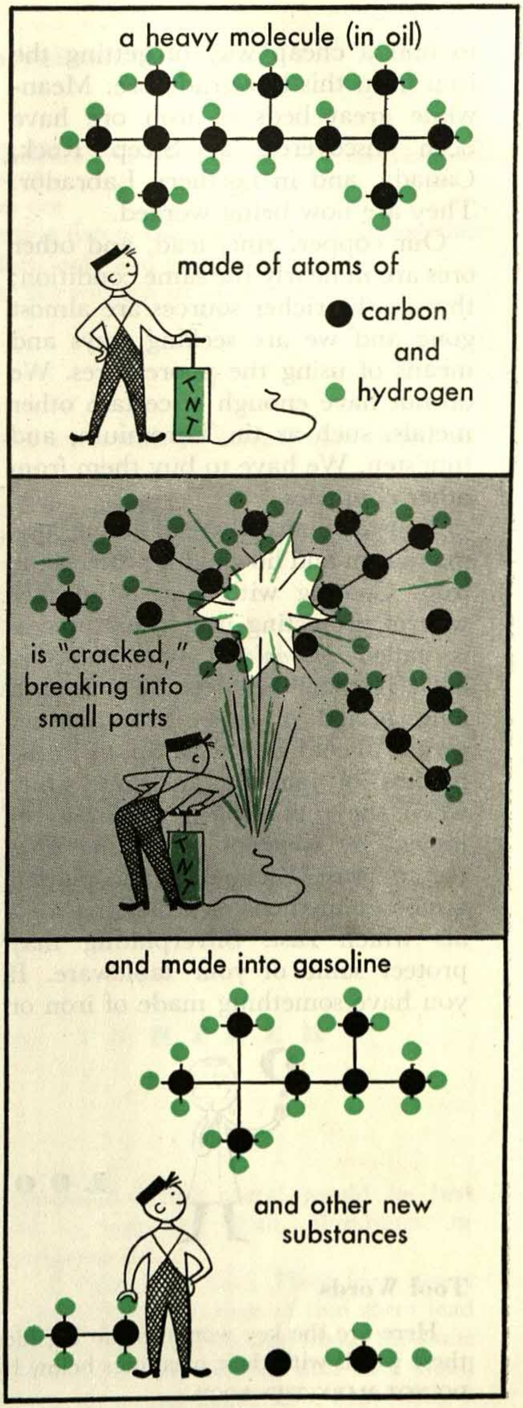
Today, many states have oil conservation laws. The aim of these laws is to draw from the earth only as much oil as is needed. New wells are still being sunk and new fields are still being explored for the future.

The day of the wasted oil well is past. Gas or water pumped into old wells brings all but a small part of the underground oil pool to the surface. Formerly, three-fourths of the oil was left in the ground. Furthermore, both oil and gas wells are used. Gas and oil are carried thousands of miles by underground pipelines.

Greater care is also being used in making gasoline from oil. Much of today's gasoline is made from a process known as "cracking." In cracking, the oils are boiled at a high temperature and heated under great pressure. This causes the heavier oil to break down into the lighter gasoline (Fig. 175). New methods of cracking oil are giving the nation more gasoline from each barrel of oil than it got before. In these ways we are trying to conserve what oil we now have.

Conserving Metals

During World War II we learned from metal shortages that our resources of ores are limited. Today, it may not be possible to find new supplies of rich iron, copper, lead, zinc, gold, or other ores. It is a question of conserving what we have. We need still better methods of using the poorer ores that remain untouched. Our good iron ore in the Mesabi Range in northern Minnesota, from 50 to 60% pure iron, may last for 30 years or so. It will not last as long as that if we use it up at the same rate as we have since the beginning of World War II. During the war nearly 90 million tons of ore were loaded and shipped from the Duluth-Superior harbor each year. The average before the war was about half that much. We still have in Minnesota a great supply of lower-grade iron ore, about 30 to 35% pure iron. Science and industry are now hard at work



175 Molecules of heavy oils from oil wells are "cracked," or heated under great pressure, to make one-quarter of the gasoline used in the United States today.

to find a cheap way of getting the iron from this low-grade ore. Meanwhile great beds of iron ore have been discovered at Steep Rock, Canada, and in northern Labrador. They are now being worked.

Our copper, zinc, lead, and other ores are in nearly the same condition; that is, the richer sources are almost gone and we are seeking ways and means of using the poorer ores. We do not have enough of certain other metals, such as tin, chromium, and tungsten. We have to buy them from other countries.

You have already read about rusting of iron and how paint protects the iron. Coating with zinc is another way of protecting iron. This process is called *galvanizing* (GAL-vuh-nyz-ing). The zinc protects the iron for a long period of time. Still another way is to coat iron with tin, as in the process of making tin cans. Only when the thin coating of tin is removed by wear or scratching does the can rust. Enameling and plating are other methods of protecting metals which rust. Silverplating may protect some of your tableware. If you have something made of iron or steel which you want to store, a coating of oil or grease will help keep it from rusting.

It would be impossible to list all the materials we need to conserve. Those we have mentioned are only a few examples. As you go on in your study of science, you will learn more about how we are conserving our other minerals.

Then, too, scientists are discovering new products to replace those found in the earth. Many of these new products are better than materials found in the natural state. In "Going Further" you can investigate some of the new materials scientists have made.

No matter where you go or where you look, you will see man inventing new ways of doing things. He is using his brain to conserve the storehouse of minerals for all the world. He is beginning to mine the earth's crust wisely and intelligently. But he does more. He takes materials from the earth's storehouse and improves on them. By so doing, he adds to the materials he can use to improve his ways of living. Here is another example of "science for better living."

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct word after its meaning. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

aluminum
blast furnace
cast iron
steel
alloy
soft coal
hard coal
sulfur
galvanizing
conservation

1. a metal that is used as a base for heavy machinery
2. coating iron with zinc
3. a coal from which we get coal tar
4. a light, strong metal used in airplanes and in the home
5. a coal that leaves little ash when burned
6. a furnace used to make iron from iron ore
7. a different kind of metal made by melting two or more different metals together
8. a yellow element used in making sulfuric acid and paper
9. a metal with the strength of cast iron, but without its brittleness
10. wise and intelligent use of resources

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Protecting iron with a coating of zinc is known as . . . .

2. When the right amounts of carbon, manganese, and silicon are added to iron, . . . is made.

3. Coke is made by heating . . . .

4. Pig iron is melted in molds to make . . . .

5. When two or more metals are melted together, an . . . is made.

6. Because it leaves little ash after burning, . . . is used by many people for heating homes.

7. . . . is made by mixing one part of cement with two to four parts of coarse sand and gravel, and then adding water.

8. When limestone and clay are heated and ground to a fine powder, . . . is made.

9. Pig iron is made in the . . . .

10. Charles Hall discovered a cheap way to make . . . .

11. The wealth of a nation can be judged in part by the amount of . . . it uses.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory

1. *Examining metals.* Get from a plumber or a hardware store some small pieces of lead, tin, aluminum, and copper wire and a piece of magnesium ribbon (from your school laboratory). Note the color of each metal. Are the colors different? Try scratching each metal with the point of a knife. Which metal is the softest? Hold a piece of each metal in the flame of a Bunsen burner. (Use a pair of forceps.) Which metal melts the quickest? Which metal would be best for a teakettle — lead, aluminum, or magnesium?

2. *Making an alloy.* Place in a heavy porcelain dish a piece of thin sheet lead about 1 inch square, and about the same amount of tin. Set the dish in a small ring of a ring stand and heat with a Bunsen burner. As soon as the metals have melted, stir the liquid metal for an instant with the handle of a spoon or the end of a file. Now join two clean copper

wires by twisting the ends together, and dip the twisted wires into the liquid metal. Remove the wires and let them cool. Can you untwist the copper wires?

You have made solder (SOD-er), an alloy of lead and tin, by melting these two metals together. When you dipped the twisted copper wires into the molten solder and let the wires cool, the solder fastened the two wires tightly together. Wires are soldered in electric wiring systems in homes and in radio and television sets.

3. *Preventing rust.* Get a tenpenny galvanized nail and two tenpenny ordinary nails from a hardware store. Sandpaper the surface of the two ordinary nails. Fill three glasses with water. Place the galvanized nail in one glass and one of the ordinary nails in the second glass. Rub a little light oil on the surface of the other nail and place it in the third glass of water. Examine the nails each day for five days. Which nail rusts? Remove the galvanized nail and the oil-coated nail and wash them in soapy water. Replace the nails in their separate glasses of water. Examine again after five days. Is galvanizing a better protection for iron than oil is?

4. *Oiling metals.* Take two pennies and rub them together. Now place a drop of oil between the pennies and rub them together. Do you notice any difference? Where one metal surface moves over another, the surfaces must be greased or oiled. If it were not for oil, modern machinery could not work.

5. *Making mortar.* Fill a large beaker or bucket one-quarter full of quicklime. Add enough water to cover the lime by half an inch. Is there any evidence of heat or of chemical action? Now stir in (with a spoon) enough sand and water to make a thick paste. Take two wet house bricks and spread a layer of this mixture on the surface of one. Place the other brick on this surface and with a stick wipe from the joint any extra mortar that is squeezed out. Let it stand 48 hours. Are the two bricks joined together? Is the mixture between the bricks hard?

You have made a mixture, called mortar, by adding water and sand to quicklime. Mortar hardens in air, and then it binds bricks together. How does a mason use mortar to build chimneys and brick houses?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. A party of geologists found that echoes of an explosion they had set off showed a domelike formation of underground rock. What possibilities does this suggest to you?

2. To be an industrial nation today, a nation must have rich deposits of both iron ore and coal. Explain.

3. Why is it necessary to save coal if we have a good supply?

4. In what ways can you save fuel in your own home?

5. How is the oil industry preparing to meet any shortage of oil?

Adding to Your Library

Your reading for this chapter is divided into two groups: pamphlets from the sources listed below, and books.

PAMPHLETS

For interesting reading and class reports write to the following:

1. Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. Ask for free pamphlets concerning the mining of coal, iron, sulfur, and salt.

2. United States Steel Corporation, 71 Broadway, New York (6), N.Y. Ask for their book, *Steel Making in America.* You might find the book in your local library.

3. Aluminum Company of America, 1501 Alcoa Building, Pittsburgh, Pa. Ask for their booklets, *The Story of Aluminum* and *Aluminum and Its Alloys.*

4. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Co., Wilmington, Del. Ask for the booklets, *Salt and the Chemist* and *Man-Made Fibers.*

5. Bituminous Coal Institute, Southern Building, Washington, D.C. Ask for their booklet, *Coal — Plant Life to Plastics.*

6. American Petroleum Institute, 50 West 50th St., New York City. This institute will send you information about our oil reserves and their conservation. Film strips are included.

BOOKS

1. *Careers in the Steel Industry* by Burr W. Leyson, E. P. Dutton, 1945. This book tells how different kinds of steel are made from iron and how people may be trained for this great industry.

2. *Buried Treasure* by Marion Cothren, Coward-McCann, 1945. The story of coal — how it was formed and how mined and used, with many good pictures.

3. *Flowing Gold* by John J. Floherty, J. B. Lippincott, 1945. Stranger than fiction, here is the story of oil, with all its adventure, history, and human interest.

4. *The Glass Industry* by Josephine Perry, Longmans, Green and Co., 1945. An interesting story of glassmaking, from earliest times to the present. Pictures show how glassware is blown and then shaped by hand.

5. *Plastics, Problems and Processes* by Dale E. Mansperger and Carson W. Pepper, International Textbook Co., 1001 Wyoming Ave., Scranton, Pa., 1944. The history of plastics, the kinds of plastics, and the methods of working with plastics to produce useful articles and craft work.

A Bit of Research

Scientists have made many new materials as substitutes for or improvements on materials found on the earth. Make class reports on the following:

1. The advantages of artificial (synthetic) rubber over natural rubber. Include information on silicone rubber.

2. The history and uses of *plastics.* Be sure to study celluloid, bakelite (BAYK-uh-lyte), lucite, and cellophane.

3. How man-made fibers are being used in place of cotton, silk, and wool. Tell how the following are made and used: rayon,nylon, lanital (LAN-ih-tawl), orlon, and glass fibers.

4. How we may have any color (dye) today because of the work of chemists. Read the story of William Henry Perkin, who made the first laboratory dye (mauve) in 1856 when he was only 17 years of age.

5. Make a report on how soap is made, and some advantages and disadvantages of "soapless soaps," commonly called *detergents* (deh-TER-junts).

6. Are some of your clothes dry-cleaned? Find out what chemicals dry cleaners use, and report why such chemicals are better than ordinary soaps for some clothes. Your report should have in it the reason why flammable liquids (liquids which catch fire easily) are not used in dry-cleaning shops. Should they be used for dry-cleaning at home?

Careers for You

All the opportunities for positions in the *mining*, *coal*, *steel*, *oil*, and other *industries* cannot be listed here. Each industry needs trained people; in fact, most industries give further training for the jobs they select you to fill. For example, industry lists hundreds of opportunities for careers in oil. (Send for *Careers in Petroleum*, American Petroleum Institute, 50 West 50th St., New York City.) Men and women who take physical and biological sciences in college are frequently offered jobs even before graduation. Dr. Edward Cooper, in charge of a laboratory for research in plastics, said recently: "We are always in need of additional people with scientific background. Right now we could use seventy men and women to work on new research projects. We are now combing the universities for these people."

CHEMISTRY AS A hobby

How do you make a start in chemistry? Probably you are already a chemist without realizing it. At least, it is fairly certain that there is one chemist in your family — your mother. Every time she makes cookies or bakes a cake or biscuits, she is making something different from the materials she uses. That is what a chemist does. So if you have done any cooking, you have already made a start in chemistry.

Chemistry and You

Look around you — it makes no difference where you are. Either you see chemistry at work or you see what chemistry has had a part in making. If you are outdoors, each living thing you see, from an ant to the tallest tree, is a chemical workshop. Even you and the friend you may be studying with are chemical workshops in motion. You are making carbon dioxide, for instance, every time you breathe.

Chemistry has a part in making everything you wear and everything you use. It has had a part in making the dyes which color your clothes, the materials which clean them, and those which protect them against moths. It has tanned the leather in your shoes and it has made the stockings you wear. It has helped make the paper in this book and the ink that was used to print it. It has made the barrel of your fountain pen and mixed the graphite and clay in the lead of your pencil. Going further afield, chemistry has had a part in making every metal article you see, from a steel rail to an aluminum dishpan, every drug from aspirin to penicillin, every dye from mauve to Congo red, every plastic from cellophane to lucite. In truth, chemistry is one of the most useful of all sciences, and you cannot escape meeting chemistry or its products every day of your life.

Do You Need a Laboratory?

If you are really interested in making a hobby of chemistry, you will need some sort of laboratory. Do not be afraid of the word "laboratory." Your mother has one — her kitchen. You may have a workroom or shop, but do not think that you must have a separate room. Perhaps you can share her kitchen, or you may find a place in the basement where there is running water and a sink. Gas or electricity for heating purposes is not needed. You can use an alcohol lamp, if necessary.

As for equipment, here are the most important things you will need:

1. Two test tubes — at least one of Pyrex glass. The Pyrex glass test tube will withstand changes in heat. It should be used when you boil liquids. You can get test tubes from a drugstore or from a scientific supply company.

2. A test-tube holder. You can make it of wire. Use your own ideas. Use wire heavy enough to clasp the test tube and long enough to bend it into a loop to act as a handle. Or you can buy a test-tube holder from a scientific supply company.

3. Two beakers, or glasses from the kitchen.

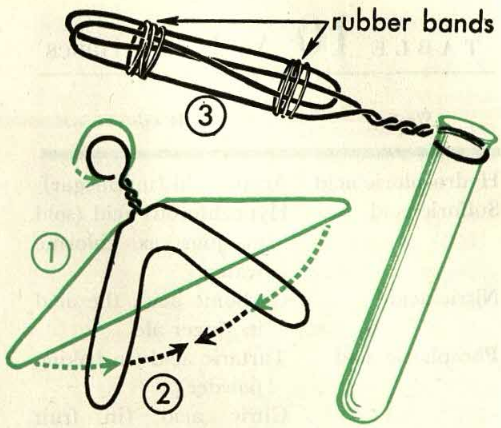
4. Litmus paper, red and blue, from a drugstore. Litmus paper is used to test for the presence of acids and bases. Blue litmus paper turns red when moistened with an acid substance, such as vinegar. Red litmus paper turns blue when moistened with a base, such as washing soda.

5. An alcohol lamp to use when you need heat.

And that is all. Of course, as you learn to do more things with chemistry, you can get more test tubes, glass tubing, rubber tubing, flasks, a ring stand, clamp, and ring to support a flask, as well as scales to weigh out materials. You need only the materials mentioned above.

Testing Acid and Basic Substances

Of course, you know what acids are. Some, like strong hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, can eat away metals, shoes, and clothing. Others are weak, like the acid in vinegar, or diluted (a very small amount and in a large amount of water), like very dilute hydrochloric acid. Acids play an important part in your daily life, as in the digestion of food in your stomach.



176 A wire coat hanger can be made into a useful test-tube holder. *Project:* With your parents' permission, why not begin to build up a small laboratory of your own? You can make many of the things you may need.

Bases are substances which neutralize acids. They are strong in their own way. Some bases have the power to dissolve grease or wool. Materials used to clear out clogged sink drains are mainly made up of the base sodium hydroxide, which dissolves sludge and grease. Other materials, like soap, contain mild bases.

Now let us test some of the familiar substances around home. Take a lemon or a grapefruit. Cut it open. Draw a piece of blue litmus paper across the cut end. Blue litmus paper turns red in the presence of an acid. Is the fruit acid?

Test the liquid from a bottle of chlorine water used in bathrooms and kitchens. Use blue litmus. What happens?

There are a number of other substances in your home which you can test for acid reactions. How about vinegar? mayonnaise? French dressing? There are a number of foods that have acid reaction to litmus. Would

TABLE 10 Acids and Bases

ACIDS

Strong	*Weak*
Hydrochloric acid	Acetic acid (in vinegar)
Sulfuric acid	Hypochlorous acid (sold in jugs as chlorine water)
Nitric acid	Carbonic acid, the acid in ginger ale
Phosphoric acid	Tartaric acid (in baking powder)
	Citric acid (in fruit juices)

BASES

Strong	*Weak*
Potassium hydroxide	Calcium hydroxide (milk of lime)
Sodium hydroxide	Magnesium hydroxide (used in milk of magnesia)
Ammonium hydroxide (weak in household solution of ammonia)	

you refuse to drink lemonade, orange juice, or grapefruit juice because they are acid?

To test basic reactions you need red litmus paper. The red litmus turns blue if a base is present. Moisten a piece of red litmus paper and touch it to a piece of soap. What color does the litmus turn?

Your mother may use ammonia in cleaning or in washing. Is ammonia water basic? Test it by putting a drop of ammonia water on a piece of red litmus paper.

Test all soaps or soap powders in your home with red litmus paper. Do they have basic reactions?

Rub a little kitchen grease on a small piece of cloth. Moisten another piece of cloth with ammonia and rub the stain briskly. As you remember, bases dissolve grease. Does the stain disappear? There are other chemicals that cause stains to disappear, but most of them are used by dry-cleaning shops.

Neutralizing Acid and Basic Substances

Fill your Pyrex test tube half-full of water. Place in it a piece of laundry soap the size of a pea. Heat the test tube until the soap is dissolved. If you do not have an alcohol lamp or a Bunsen burner, shake the test tube vigorously. Pour half the liquid into a beaker or glass tumbler. This liquid now has the base found in the soap.

Fill your other test tube half-full of vinegar. Vinegar has mild acetic (uh-SEE-tik) acid in it. Add the vinegar slowly to the soap solution. Test with red and blue litmus. If too much acid is present, the blue litmus will turn red. If too much base is present, the red litmus will turn blue. If you are very careful and painstaking, you can get a complete neutralization where neither red nor blue litmus will change color.

Now use your knowledge of acids and bases to make some soap. In this experiment you will use lye (sodium hydroxide). (*Caution:* Do not let any lye get on your hands or clothes or anywhere on your skin or near your face or eyes.)

Place 1 teaspoon of lye in a small beaker and add 3 teaspoons of water. Stir slowly and carefully until all the lye is dissolved. Let the solution cool.

Put 6 teaspoons of lard or other cooking fat in a small beaker or evaporating dish and heat it on a hot plate until the fat melts. Remove the beaker and slowly pour the lye solution into the fat, stirring the mixture as you do so. Next, add ½ teaspoon of household ammonia, and keep on stirring until the mixture is about as thick as whipped cream. Place the creamy mixture in a small cardboard box or mold to harden. Let your soap harden for at least two days. Then:

1. Does your soap make a lather like any other soap?
2. Is the soap you made in any way like the materials you used to make it?
3. Is the making of soap a chemical change?

Interested Now?

In this hobby section you have barely looked through the peephole of the door to chemistry. Only a few elementary experiments have been presented. You have not made such important substances as dyes or plastics. With further instruction from chemistry manuals, you can go ahead in these fields.

You can go from here into the reading list which follows. Here you will find a number of good books on chemistry. Start with one of the books below. As you learn more chemistry and become skillful in using its tools, you will go on with other books, high school as well as college texts. You will find a note with each reference below, describing the nature of the book.

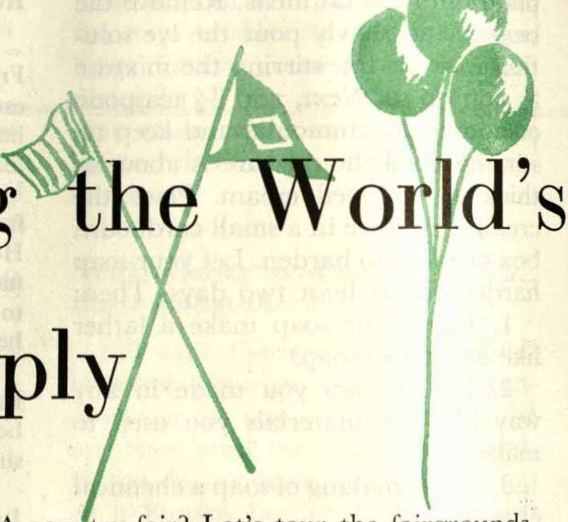
After you have done some work in chemistry, you may decide to become a chemist. Further training in high school and college will test whether your decision is a good one. Whether it is or not, you will have fun and learn something about one of the important sciences in the world.

Reading for the Amateur Chemist

1. *Invitation to Experiment* by Ira A. Freeman, E. P. Dutton, 1940. This interesting book has helpful suggestions on how to use apparatus and chemicals in many different kinds of experiments.
2. *Simple Chemical Experiments* by Alfred Morgan, Appleton-Century, 1941. Here are a number of chemical experiments for boys and girls who would like to know more about chemistry in the home.
3. *So That's Chemistry* by R. Ray Baker, Reilly and Lee Co., 1940. This book presents the facts of chemistry in simple language, interesting to read.
4. *An Open Door to Chemistry* by John L. Horning and George C. McGinnis, Appleton-Century, 1946. Would you like to know how to turn red cabbage blue, take out ink stains, or test engine oil? These are among the experiments which need only the simple equipment listed at the beginning of this hobby section.
5. *Everyday with Chemistry* by Herbert H. Bunzell, Grosset and Dunlap, 1937. This book tells how chemists invent new materials. It is interestingly written and has excellent diagrams.
6. *Mystery Experiments and Problems for Science Classes and Science Clubs*, 3rd edition, by J. O. Frank and G. J. Barlow, J. O. Frank and Sons, 159 West Irving St., Oshkosh, Wis., 1940. A well-known book of spectacular experiments that arouse interest. Good for science clubs or the home.
7. *Science Calls to Youth* by Raymond F. Yates, Appleton-Century, 1941. A guide to young people who wish to explore the scientific world through experimentation.
8. *How Things Work* by George R. Harrison, William Morrow Co., 1941. A book that tells how experimentation has proved its worth in the world of today.

UNIT 6

Improving the World's Food Supply



Have you ever been to a fair? A country fair? Let's tour the fairgrounds. Here is a prize bull — as fine a bull as you would see anywhere. Bulls such as this are a product of the breeder's knowledge.

Over there is an immense Berkshire sow. She can turn food into ham and bacon faster than other kinds of sows. What an improvement on the thin, razor-back hog of long ago! At the fair is a prize hen. She looks like an ordinary hen. But her egg-laying record is high — 288 eggs in her first year, almost one a day.

You may see a cow that looks like any other cow, but she produces about 30,000 pounds of milk per year. In 1900 the best record was only 18,000 pounds. What a prize package this cow is — a result of breeding for milk production!

ARKANSAS STATE COLLEGE

ARKANSAS STATE COLLEGE

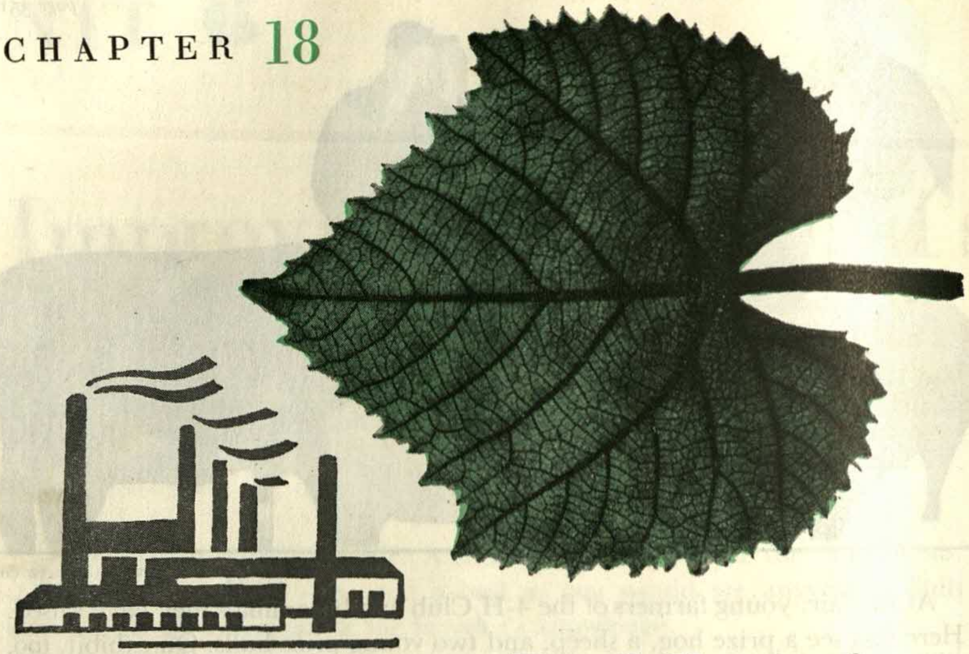
At the fair, young farmers of the 4-H Club exhibit animals they have raised. Here you see a prize hog, a sheep, and two young prize bulls. On exhibit, too, is a collection of prize vegetables. Which do you recognize? You may even see blueberries twice the size of those we pick in woods and swamps. All these are the result of the work of plant and animal breeders.

This unit tells you how better food animals and plants get to your dinner plate. The food you eat comes from someone's farm. It grew in the soil or perhaps in the waters of the sea. Its growth depended on the sun, as well.

It is not at all strange that the problem of growing enough food has become the problem of everyone, including you. What you can do about the problem is part of the story of this unit. Like every other one in this book, this unit is about you and science — about how you can use science for your own better living.

STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

CHAPTER 18



Food Factories of the World

Here is a green leaf. In it is the green "stuff" which enables it to make sugar, the basic foodstuff from which other foods are made. Green leaves are factories which make the food for all human and animal life.

WHAT was the Belgian scientist Helmont up to? First, he had taken a tub of soil and weighed it carefully. Then he had planted in it a young willow tree weighing about two pounds. In the year 1605, this was strange behavior!

The willow tree grew fast. It was watered regularly. After the willow had become quite large, Helmont carefully removed the tree from the tub. Then he weighed the tub with its soil.

He found that the tub and soil weighed about one pound less than when he had first planted the willow in it. But when he weighed the willow by itself, he found it had gained 70 pounds. Helmont decided that the gain in weight of the willow could not be due to the soil.

He thought, therefore, that the added weight and growth of the willow was due to water. At that time scientists knew very little about what water, air, and soil were made of, or how plants grow. Helmont's conclusions were not entirely correct because he did not have the facts we have today. The experiments in this chapter will give you some of these facts.

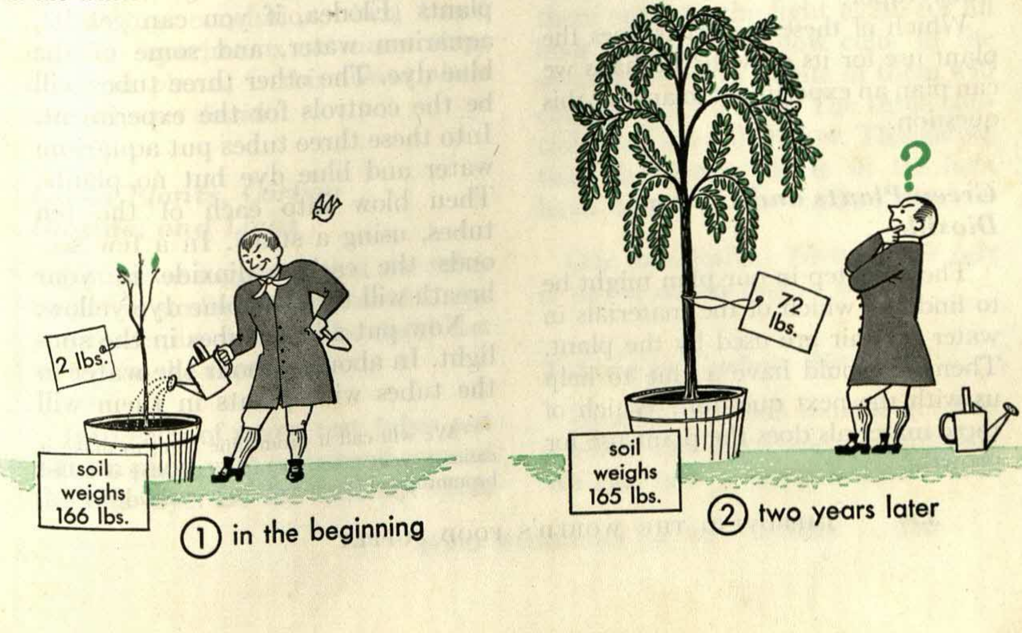
EXAMINING THE WORLD'S FOOD FACTORIES

During the past 100 years, scientists have learned many facts about plants. They now know a great deal about how plants grow and many of the materials they need for growth. Because of these facts, we are very sure that this statement is true: *We depend on green plants for our very lives.*

What are some of the facts that make us so sure that we could not live without green plants?

Sealing Up a Living Thing

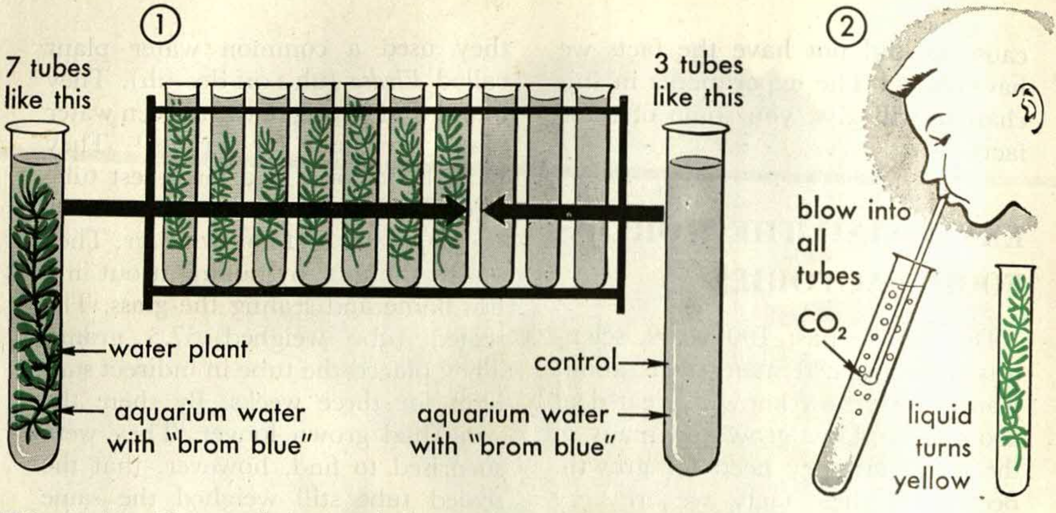
In an eastern high school a group of students repeated Helmont's experiment, but instead of a willow they used a common water plant called *Elodea* (uh-LOH-dee-uh). They found that a sprig of their green water plant weighed 1.1 grams.[1] They placed the sprig in a large test tube filled half with *aquarium* (uh-KWAIR-ee-um) water and half with air. They sealed the tube by pulling it out in a hot flame and sealing the glass. The sealed tube weighed 57.5 grams. They placed the tube in indirect sunlight for three weeks. By then, the sprig had grown longer. They were surprised to find, however, that the sealed tube still weighed the same (57.5 grams). When they removed the sprig from the tube, they found that it had *gained* weight. It now weighed 1.7 grams (a gain of 0.6 of a gram). What had the plant used for growth? Since the plant was sealed in the test tube, it must have taken its food and materials for growth from the materials in the tube.


2 lbs.
soil weighs 166 lbs.
① in the beginning
72 lbs.
?
soil weighs 165 lbs.
② two years later

177 Why did Van Helmont think his tree got its materials for growth from water? His experiment did not tell him that green plants used a gas, carbon dioxide, and the chemicals in the water.

---

[1] 28.4 grams = 1 ounce
16 ounces = 1 pound
454 grams = 1 pound



178 *Project:* First read the text below which describes this experiment completely. Make up a 0.1% solution of the dye bromothymol blue. Add some of the dye to aquarium water in which water plants have been growing.

What was inside the tube? Your answer might be, "Just water and air." But here is where scientists have helped by gathering some important facts about water and air. These are the facts, as you know them from your work in Unit 5:

1. In water there are dissolved minerals and the gases oxygen and carbon dioxide.

2. Air is made up mainly of oxygen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, and water vapor.

Which of these materials does the plant use for its growth? Perhaps we can plan an experiment to answer this question.

Green Plants and Carbon Dioxide

The first step in our plan might be to find out which of the materials in water and air are used by the plant. Then we would have a clue to help us with the next question: Which of these materials does the plant use for growth?

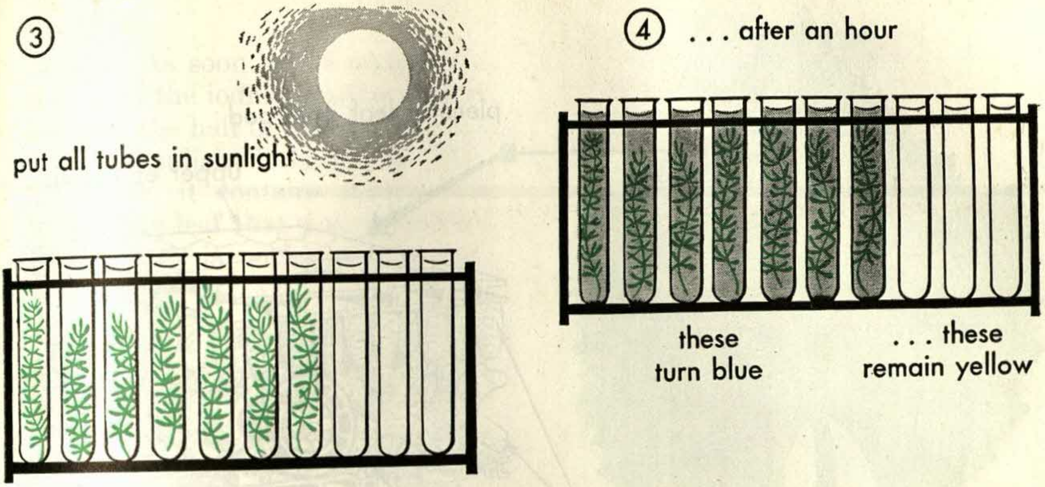
First, let us see if water plants use carbon dioxide. A certain blue dye (brom blue [1]) will tell us whether carbon dioxide is present. This blue dye is right for our first experiment for two reasons. First, water plants can live in it. Second, when carbon dioxide is added, the *blue* dye turns *yellow*.

Now for the experiment. Get ten large test tubes. Into seven of the tubes put sprigs of green water plants (Elodea, if you can get it), aquarium water, and some of the blue dye. The other three tubes will be the controls for the experiment. Into these three tubes put aquarium water and blue dye but no plants. Then blow into each of the ten tubes, using a straw. In a few seconds the carbon dioxide in your breath will turn the blue dye yellow.

Now put all the tubes in the sunlight. In about an hour the water in the tubes with plants in them will

---

[1] We will call it brom blue here, to make it easier to remember. Actually, the dye is called bromothymol (broh-moh-THYE-mohl) blue.



Do the experiment shown above several times with a different plant each time. Now repeat the experiment, but put half the tubes in the dark. What are your results?

turn blue again (Fig. 178). This shows that the carbon dioxide has disappeared. Where has it gone? Into the air or into the plants?

The three tubes without plants tell us the answer. Since the aquarium water in these tubes is still yellow, carbon dioxide must still be in the water. Therefore, in the other seven tubes, the plants must have taken in, or absorbed, the carbon dioxide.

Our first conclusion, then, based on these experiments and many others done on plants, is this: *Green plants take in carbon dioxide.*

Green Plants, Carbon Dioxide, and Light

Notice we suggested that the tubes be put in sunlight. What would happen if we put them in the dark? Let us repeat the experiment.

Into each of seven test tubes put a green plant with water and some of the blue dye. Do the same for three other tubes, but do not put in a plant. Then again blow through a straw into all the tubes. As soon as the carbon dioxide in your breath has turned the liquid yellow, put all the tubes into a dark place.

After one hour in the dark, the water will still be yellow. This shows that the carbon dioxide has not been absorbed by the plants. Even after leaving the tubes in the dark for 24 hours, we will find that the water is still yellow. However, when we bring them out into the light again for an hour or so, the yellow color in the seven tubes with plants in them will change back to blue. The three control tubes are still yellow. This shows that the green plants *in the light* have taken in the carbon dioxide.

Our conclusion: *Green plants take in carbon dioxide only in the light.*

Taking in Carbon Dioxide

How does carbon dioxide get into a plant? Let us use our microscopes. We can take a green leaf and with

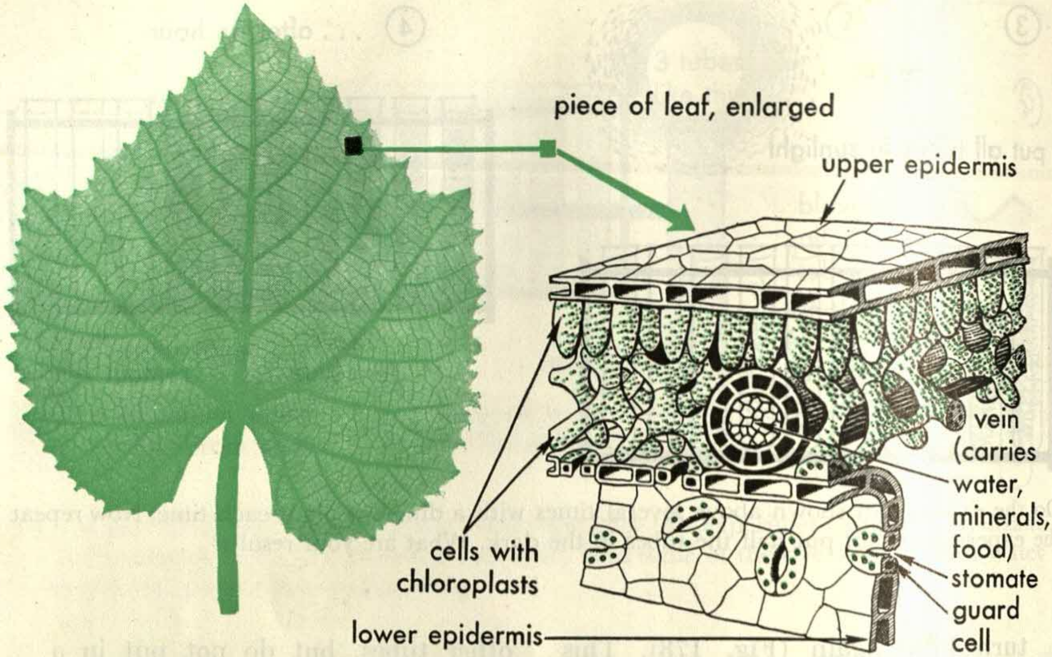


PHOTO BY HUGH SPENCER

179 *Project:* Get a green leaf and strip off its lower epidermis and examine it under the microscope. Do you see the openings, the stomates, as above? Now hold it up to the light. Do you see the veins which carry the plant's food, water, and minerals?

tweezers or forceps peel off the lower, clear, skinlike tissue, called the lower *epidermis* (ep-ih-DER-mis). Then we can put the tissue in a drop of water on a slide and examine it under the lens of the microscope. There we see many tiny openings in the lower epidermis. These openings are called *stomates* (STOH-maytz) (Fig. 179).

Carbon dioxide from the air enters the leaf through the stomates. It has been found that if these openings are closed by Vaseline, no carbon dioxide enters the plant.

Using Carbon Dioxide

What does the plant do with the carbon dioxide it absorbs in sunlight? Is it possible that plants make food only in sunlight?

It has been found that green plants make a kind of sugar, called *glucose* (GLOO-kohss), most of which is changed into starch and stored in different parts of the plant. By a simple test, using a weak solution of iodine, we can tell whether starch is present in any part of a plant. Iodine turns starch blue.

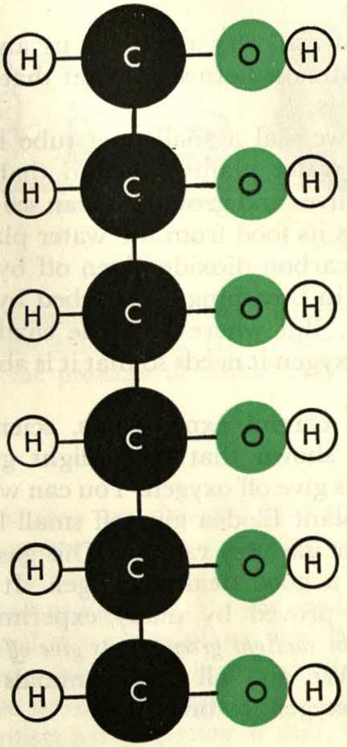
First, take a geranium leaf and cover half of it with black paper, leaving the other half uncovered (as shown in Fig. 181). Place the plant in sunlight. After 48 hours, take the black paper off and test both halves of the leaf for starch. Before we can make our test with iodine, we must first get rid of the green coloring matter in the leaf by boiling the leaf in alcohol. (Alcohol should not be boiled over an open flame. It catches fire. Use an electric hot plate or a double boiler.) Then we can stain the leaf in iodine to find out if starch is present. As soon as we remove the leaf from the iodine solution we can see that the half of the leaf that has been in sunlight is blue (Fig. 181). Therefore, it contains starch. The half of the leaf that was covered by black paper is unchanged. It contains no starch.

No matter how many times we repeat the experiment, we get the same results. Our conclusion is plain: *Green plants make starch only in sunlight.* Actually, plant sugar is made first and then changed into starch. We have found that this cannot take place except in the light.

How Do Green Plants Make Sugar?

Since green plants make sugar *only in light* and absorb carbon dioxide *only in light*, we may say that plants use carbon dioxide to make sugar *only in light.*

The chemist's formula for glucose sugar is shown in Fig. 180. This formula shows that glucose contains carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. But carbon dioxide (CO_2) has only carbon and oxygen in it. Where does the plant get hydrogen? Water is a good source of hydrogen. You remember that the formula for water is H_2O, hydrogen and oxygen. We know also that plants take in large amounts of water.



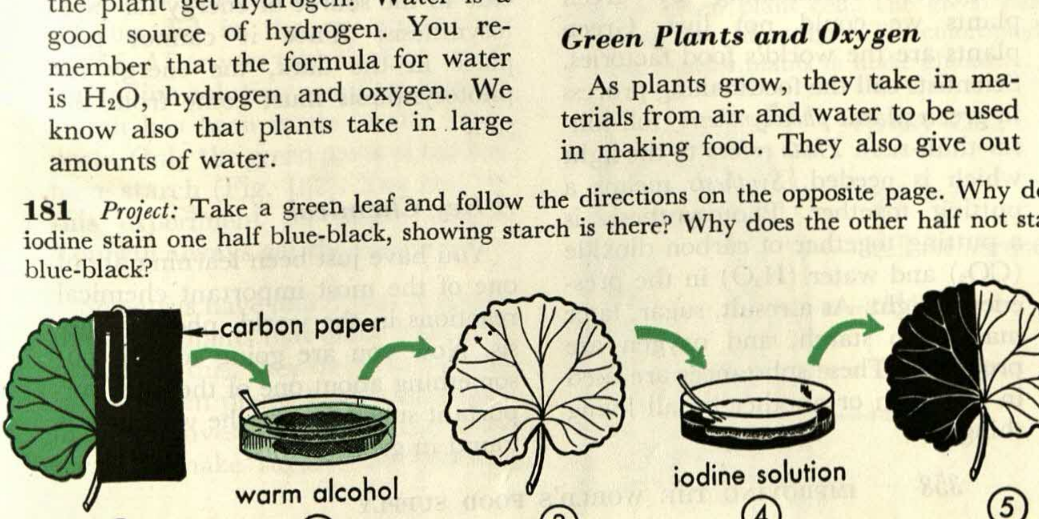
180 An idea of the make-up of glucose: 6 atoms of carbon + 6 atoms of oxygen + 12 atoms of hydrogen (all chemically joined) = 1 molecule of glucose.

From these materials, *carbon*, *oxygen*, and *hydrogen*, green plants make glucose sugar. They make glucose sugar *only in light.*

Green Plants and Oxygen

As plants grow, they take in materials from air and water to be used in making food. They also give out

181 *Project:* Take a green leaf and follow the directions on the opposite page. Why does iodine stain one half blue-black, showing starch is there? Why does the other half not stain blue-black?



a material very useful to us and to all animals. Let us see what that material is.

If we seal a snail in a tube filled with water plants, we find that the snail lives and grows. We can see that it gets its food from the water plants. The carbon dioxide given off by the snail in breathing is absorbed by the plant. But where does the snail get the oxygen it needs so that it is able to live?

By careful experiments, scientists have shown that in sunlight green plants give off oxygen. You can watch the plant Elodea give off small bubbles of gas very rapidly. This gas has in it a good deal of oxygen. It has been proved by many experiments that *in sunlight green plants give off oxygen.* We and all other animals use this oxygen for breathing.

Photosynthesis — A Key to Life

Whenever you have some facts which seem to be related, it is a good idea to try to put them together. We have, in the last few pages, gathered some facts about what green plants do in sunlight. They are shown here in the box.

Without foodmaking by green plants we could not live. Green plants are the world's food factories. Scientists call the foodmaking process in green plants *photosynthesis* (foh-toh-SIN-thuh-siss). *Photo* refers to the light which is needed. *Synthesis* means a putting together. Photosynthesis is a putting together of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and water (H_2O) in the presence of light. As a result, sugar, later made into starch, and oxygen are produced. These substances are used in one form or another by all living things.

Foodmaking in Green Plants

1. Green plants take in carbon dioxide only in light.

2. Green plants make sugar only in light.

3. Green plants use water in making sugar.

4. Green plants give off oxygen in light.

5. Putting these facts together we can say that, in light, green plants use carbon dioxide and water to make sugar, and that oxygen is given off during foodmaking.

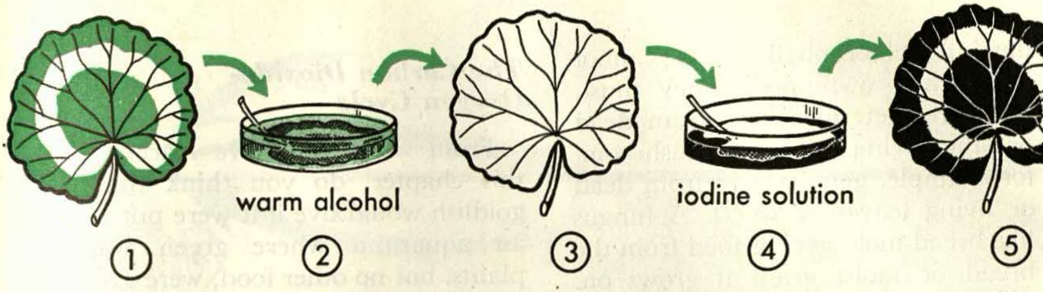
Energy for Photosynthesis

In photosynthesis, as in any other kind of work, energy is needed to get the work done. Where do plants get the energy for making sugar and starch?

Again, let us look at the facts we have just learned. From our experiments we have found out that plants make sugar only if they are placed in the light. Does this fact give you a clue to the source of energy for photosynthesis? Since it cannot take place in the dark, the energy for photosynthesis must come from the sun.

A Key Chemical

You have just been learning about one of the most important chemical reactions in the world, photosynthesis. Now you are going to find out something about one of the most important substances in the world. It is found in green plants.



182 Try this one. Take a leaf of the silver-leaf geranium, which looks somewhat like the leaf at the left. Put it in warm alcohol to remove the chlorophyll. (It becomes colorless.) Place in iodine solution. It is blue-black (showing the presence of starch) only where the chlorophyll was. Why? Compare with leaf at left.

With a straw, blow some carbon dioxide (CO_2) into water (H_2O) in a test tube in the bright sunlight. Then drop a little iodine into the test tube. Since the solution does not turn blue, we know that no starch has been made. CO_2 and H_2O are not enough to make starch. There must be some other substance in leaves to help them make starch. What is it?

Look at a leaf which has a white and green pattern, such as the silver-leaf geranium. Will starch form in both the green and white parts?

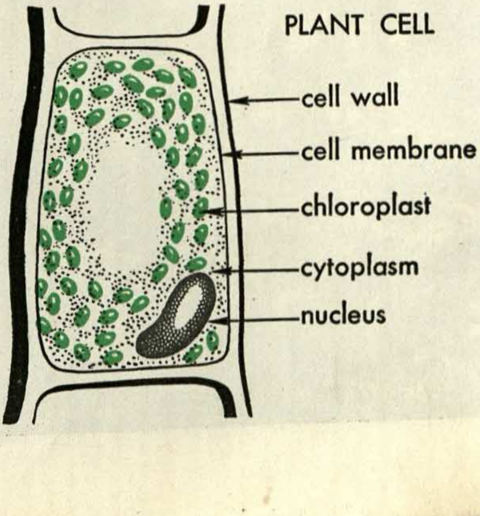
After the plant has been standing in the bright sunlight for a few hours, remove a leaf and test it for starch, as you did in the experiment on p. 356. After you take the leaf out of the iodine solution you find that no starch has been made in the white parts. Only the green parts of the leaf have starch (Fig. 182). You can try this experiment on many plants. You will always get the same results.

Scientists have found that it is only the green plants that make food. The reason for this, they have discovered, is that green plants have a substance in their leaves and stems that helps them to make sugars, like glucose, which may be changed into starch. This green substance is called *chlorophyll* (KLOR-uh-fil).

Look at Fig. 183. Do you see inside the cell of a green plant, tiny bodies called *chloroplasts* (KLOR-uh-plasts)? These have the chlorophyll in them. Scientists have discovered that, without chlorophyll or chemicals like it, plants could not make sugar. Without sugar, the basic substance for foodmaking in plants, all animals would starve.

Colorless plants, called *fungi* (FUN-jye), such as mushrooms and molds, have no chlorophyll. Because they

183 A green plant cell. The green oval bodies are the chloroplasts. The chlorophyll in them enables plants to make glucose.



have no chlorophyll, fungi cannot make their own food. They must, therefore, get their food from dead or other living things. A mushroom, for example, gets its food from dead or living leaves or wood. A fungus like bread mold gets its food from the bread or moist grain it grows on.

Testing the Truth of a Statement

The title of this chapter is "Food Factories of the World." Is this a true description of plants? Do the green-leaf factories really make food for all living things in the world? You might say that there are animals like the tiger and lion which eat meat only. They feed on zebras, wild cattle, or deer. But what do zebras, cattle, and deer eat? Their food is grasses and other green plants. Without plants, then, the tiger and lion would have no food.

Plant-eating animals, such as cattle and poultry, also produce milk and eggs, two very important foods. Green plants do appear to be the basic food factories of the world.

The Carbon Dioxide-Oxygen Cycle

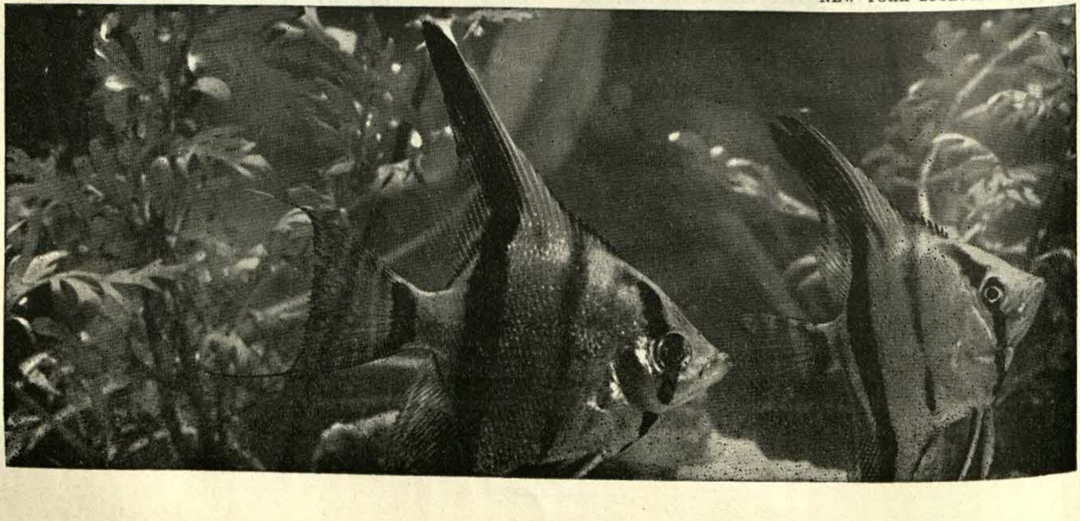
From what you have learned in this chapter, do you think that a goldfish would live if it were put into an aquarium where green water plants, but no other food, were growing? Could the fish live, even though the aquarium were sealed with a glass plate?

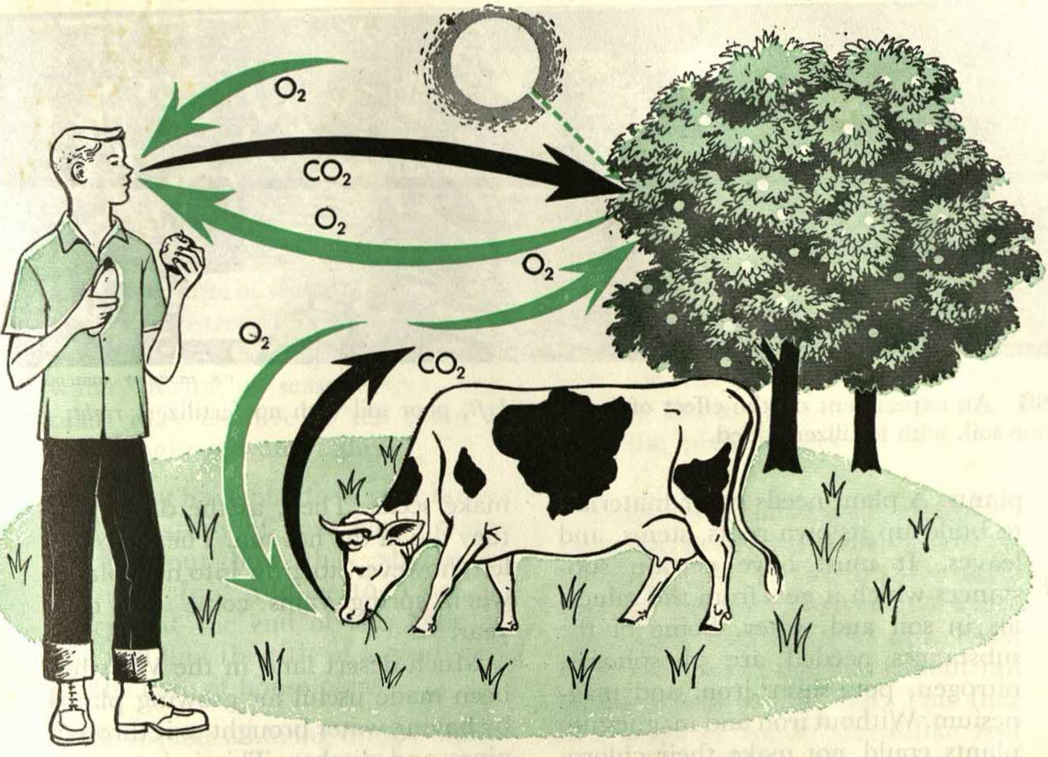
Even though the aquarium is sealed, the fish will get both food and oxygen from the plants, but the plants also will be helped by the goldfish. As the fish breathes out carbon dioxide, the plants will take in this gas. The plants, then, with carbon dioxide, water, chlorophyll, and sunlight, can make food for themselves and the goldfish. They will also give off oxygen, which the goldfish needs. The sealed aquarium is a small world in itself.

Can you see that our world is like the small world inside the aquarium? With millions of other living things, you are giving off carbon dioxide. This carbon dioxide goes into the air, where it is taken in by green plants.

An aquarium. These angel fish and plants live together, each depending on the other. Plants give the fish food; the fish give the plants minerals and carbon dioxide.

NEW YORK ZOOLOGICAL SOCIETY





185 Animals take in oxygen (O_2) and give off carbon dioxide. So do plants. So do you. The O_2 is used in burning food. But green plants (during the day) use the sun's light and take in carbon dioxide (CO_2) to make food. In *using* CO_2 they give off O_2.

Right now, as always, you are taking in air and using the oxygen in it. This oxygen may have been given off by green plants, just as oxygen was given off by the plants in the aquarium. Animals take in the oxygen that plants give off during photosynthesis; plants take in the carbon dioxide that animals breathe out. Plants then use this carbon dioxide as a raw material in making food. In Fig. 185 is a diagram of the give-and-take of oxygen and carbon dioxide.

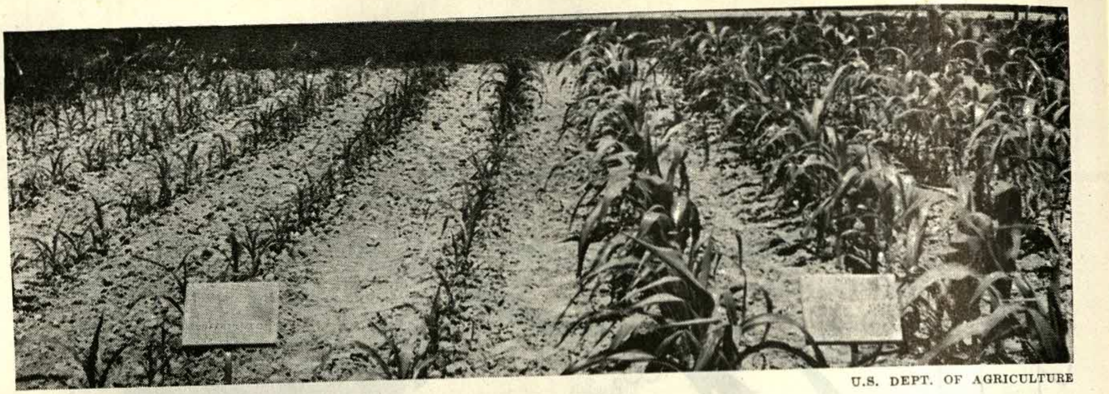
One other point! Plants also use oxygen just as human beings and all animals do. Scientists have proved that green plants take in oxygen and carbon dioxide at the same time, and that plants, like us, use oxygen in the burning of food, that is, in breaking food down for their cells to use.

RAW MATERIALS FOR THE FOOD FACTORIES

Everybody knows that factories would soon have to shut down if their supplies of raw materials were cut off. If even one material were missing, the product could not be made. The same is true of green plants.

Plants Have Many Needs

Carbon dioxide, water, chlorophyll, and sunlight are not enough for the growing of strong, sturdy



U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

186 An experiment on the effect of fertilizer. *Left*, poor soil with no fertilizer; *right*, the same soil, with fertilizer added.

plants. A plant needs other materials to build up its own roots, stems, and leaves. It must have certain substances which it gets from the minerals in soil and water. Some of the substances needed are phosphorus, nitrogen, potassium, iron, and magnesium. Without iron and magnesium plants could not make their chlorophyll. You need these substances, too. You get them from the food you eat, but a plant must get them from the soil in which it grows (Fig. 186).

A plant cannot get these substances — iron, magnesium, potassium, nitrogen, or phosphorus — from dry soil. They must be dissolved in water before the plant can use them. This is another reason why water is so important to plants.

In the deserts of our country, there is very little plant growth during most of the year. Minerals are present in the soil, but there is so little rainfall that they are not dissolved. Therefore, the plants cannot use them. During the time of early spring rains, the desert seems to come to life. The cactus plants grow and bloom and make seeds. Other plants seem to come up from nowhere, but they really come from the seeds in the sand. They grow quickly, bloom, and make seeds. Then, as the days pass, they die in the hot sun. The seeds are left, however, to grow into new plants when spring rains come the next year.

Much desert land in the West has been made useful for growing plants by having water brought to it through pipes and ditches. This is known as *irrigation* (ih-ruh-GAY-sh'n) (Fig. 187). About 500,000 acres of land in the Imperial Valley in California, as well as large parts of Utah, Arizona, New Mexico, and Texas have been irrigated by bringing water from reservoirs, lakes, and streams many miles away. In the state of Washington, the Grand Coulee Dam on the Columbia River has brought water to more than a million acres of land. Each year more waterless land in the western United States is made into good farmland by irrigation. When water is brought to the soil, the minerals in the soil dissolve and then can be used by plants.

How much water does a plant need? The amount differs with the season and with the kind of plant. Plants use more water in warm weather than in cold. Plants with thin leaves use more water than plants with thick leaves. Gallons of water will evaporate from the thin leaves of a maple tree in warm weather. However, the thick skin (epidermis) of a cactus will lose very little water.

It is during the growing season, spring and summer, that plants use great amounts of water. For instance, a big beech tree, 100 years old, takes from the soil about 65 barrels of water during a season. One corn plant may use five to ten times its own weight of water a day.

Do you have plants in your home? Make a study of your house plants to find out how they should be watered. In "Adding to Your Library" at the end of this chapter, you will find the title of a good book on the care of house plants.

Plants, like all living things, cannot live without water and the mineral substances dissolved in it. Animals need the soil minerals they get from eating plants if they are to grow and be healthy. Their life and yours depend upon these minerals.

From the Soil to the Plant

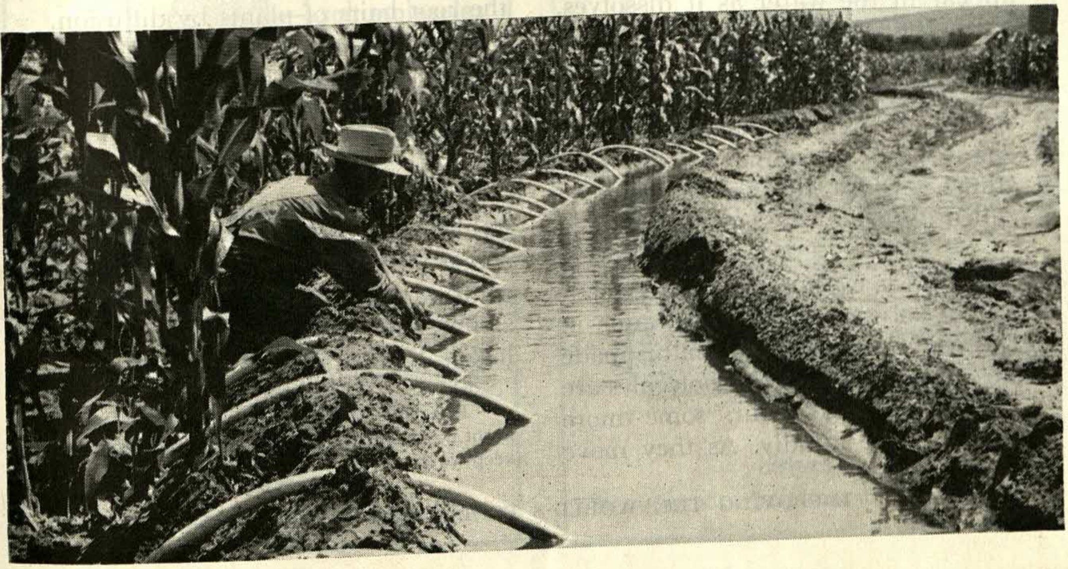
How do phosphorus, magnesium, iron, nitrogen, potassium, and the other needed substances get into the plant? If you have set out plants in your garden or helped to plant a tree, you may have an idea. You know how careful you must be not to injure the roots of the plants or the tree, or the plant may die very quickly. Let us find out how the roots help the plant to get its food.

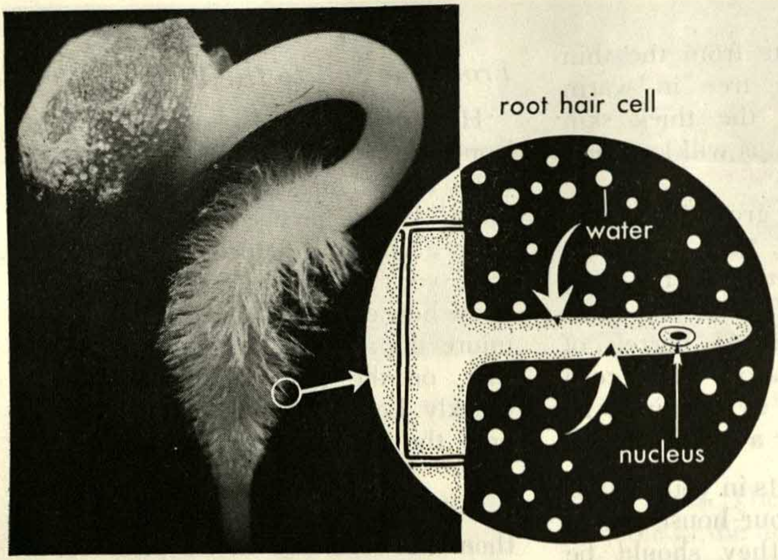
Take some radish seeds and place them between two moist pieces of blotting paper. In two or three days, look at the seeds. Notice the white roots each seed has sent out. Even with your naked eye you cannot fail to see a fuzz on the root. This fuzz is a mass of small, threadlike *root hairs* (Fig. 188).

If you look at root hairs under the microscope, you see that each one is a long, thin, hollow cell, extending out from the root. Each plant has

187 Water brought by irrigating ditches like this one will make a desert grow food.

SOIL CONSERVATION SERVICE





188 *Project:* Plant a radish seedling. In two or three days, examine the root hairs under the microscope. What you may see is diagramed at the right. Water enters the root hair cells. How is the root hair cell fitted to absorb water?

PHOTO BY HUGH SPENCER

millions of these root hairs. Does the water from the soil, with its dissolved minerals, enter the plant through these root hairs? Some experiments, to do at home or at school, will help to answer this question.

Root Hairs at Work

Take a glass of water and let a drop or so of red or blue ink from your pen fall into it. When the ink colors the water entirely, the ink has spread evenly through the water.

Then add a pinch of table salt to another glass of water. Watch it disappear in the water as it dissolves. Even though it can't be seen, you will still be able to taste the salt in the water. The dissolved salt has spread through all the water in the glass. This spreading of one substance evenly through another is called *diffusion* (dif-YOO-zh'n).

Scientists explain the swift spreading of substances through water in this way: You know that salt is made up of molecules. These molecules are always moving about, some more slowly, some rapidly. As they move about in the water, they mix with the water molecules until they are spread evenly through the water.

Not all substances will dissolve in water. For instance, starch molecules do not. Try some starch in water and compare it with the salt experiment. The starch settles to the bottom. Its molecules do not diffuse evenly through the water, as the molecules of salt do.

Fortunately, the minerals in the soil which are needed in plant growth can be dissolved in water. And now let us find out how soil minerals enter the root hairs of plants by diffusion.

Since each root hair is a cell, it has a *membrane* around it. Let us find out if substances can diffuse through membranes.

Take a piece of plain cellophane (which will be the membrane) and shape it into a bag.[1] Put some salt solution into it. Tie the bag with a string and examine it to see if it leaks. Place the bag in a glass of water. After a few hours taste the water in the glass. It is salty. The salt must have diffused through the cellophane membrane into the water in the glass. In the same way, salts found in the soil diffuse through the living cell membranes of root hairs (Fig. 189).

---

[1] The cellophane from a package of cigarettes is not useful for this purpose since it is treated to keep water out.

Carrying the Minerals Upward

How does water carrying the dissolved substances get to every part of the plant? Cut a small piece off the lower end of a stalk of celery and place the stalk in a glass of water colored with red ink. After several hours you can see that the red liquid has climbed up the stalk through tubes inside the stem.

Under the microscope, the tubes or ducts in a plant like corn can be plainly seen. The ducts are in groups like a bundle of straws (Fig. 190).

Scientists have found that some of these ducts carry water with its dissolved substances up to the leaves. Other ducts carry the food manufactured in the leaves downward to all parts of the plant.

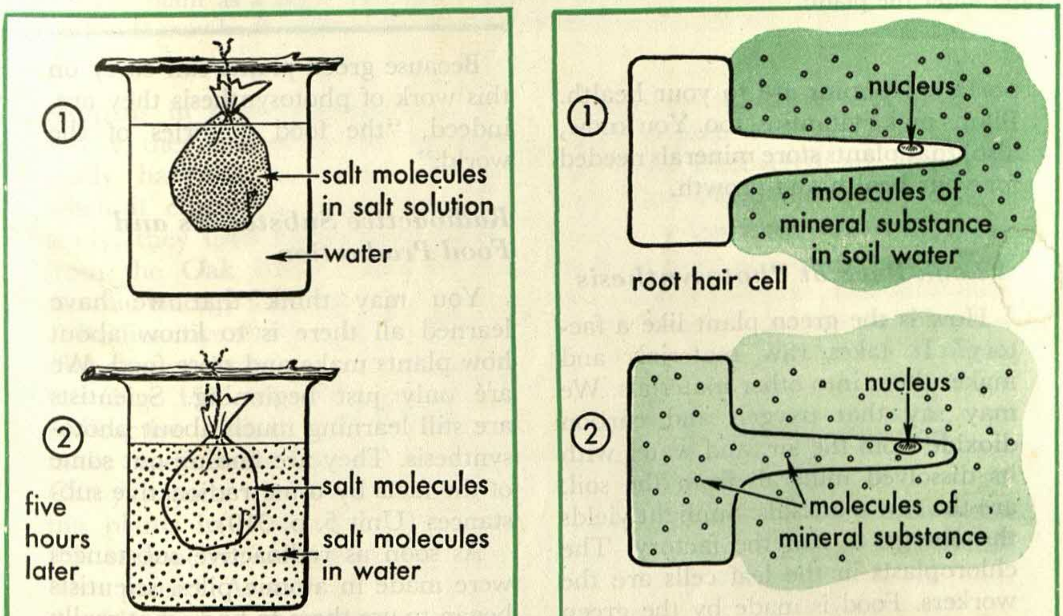
Storing Food

Some of the starch or sugar a plant makes is stored or made into other foods. Seeds contain starch, oil, or sugar. Starch may be stored in underground stems. For example, the white potato is really an underground stem. Starch or sugar may also be stored in roots like those of the carrot, beet, radish, or sweet potato. And, of course, sugar is found in most fruits.

Most nuts and some seeds, like those of cotton and flax, also have oil in them. These vegetable oils are stored foods made by the plant.

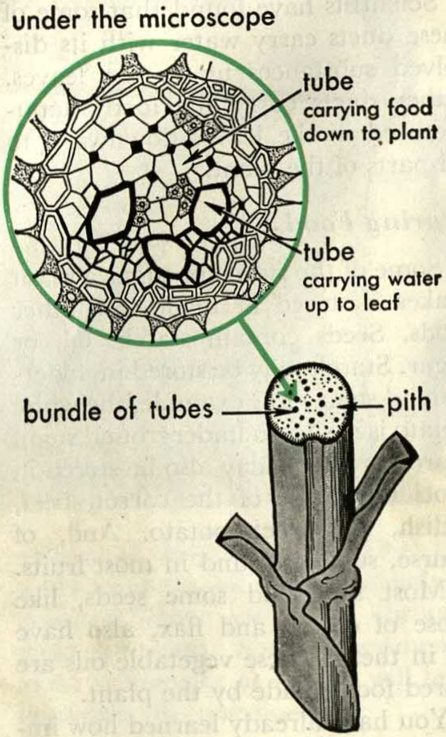
You have already learned how im-

189 *Diffusion:* Molecules of substances dissolved in water move about until they are spread equally throughout. The molecules will travel through membranes — especially those of root cells.


①
salt molecules in salt solution
water
②
five hours later
salt molecules
salt molecules in water
①
nucleus
molecules of mineral substance in soil water
root hair cell
②
nucleus
molecules of mineral substance

diffusion through a membrane in a beaker

diffusion through root hair membranes in soil



190 The next time you go out into the fields, look at the cut edge of a corn stalk to find the bundles of tubes. Where does water enter the plant?

portant vitamins are to your health. Plants make vitamins, too. You know, also, that plants store minerals needed for your health and growth.

A Look Back at Photosynthesis

How is the green plant like a factory? It takes raw materials and makes them into other materials. We may say that oxygen and carbon dioxide from the air, and water with its dissolved minerals from the soil, are the raw materials. Sunlight yields the energy to run the factory. The chloroplasts in the leaf cells are the workers. Food is made by the green plant factory (Fig. 191). In the box below are the steps in foodmaking by green plants, which we call photosynthesis.

Steps in Photosynthesis

1. Water (H_2O) and minerals are absorbed by the root hairs of the plant.

2. The water and the minerals dissolved in it travel up the ducts to the leaves.

3. Carbon dioxide (CO_2) enters the leaves through openings called stomates.

4. In the leaves, chlorophyll brings the carbon dioxide and water together to make sugar. The energy for this chemical reaction comes from sunlight.

5. The ducts carry the manufactured sugar to all parts of the plant. Some of the sugar is changed to starch and stored in roots, seeds, and stems. Some is used for plant growth.

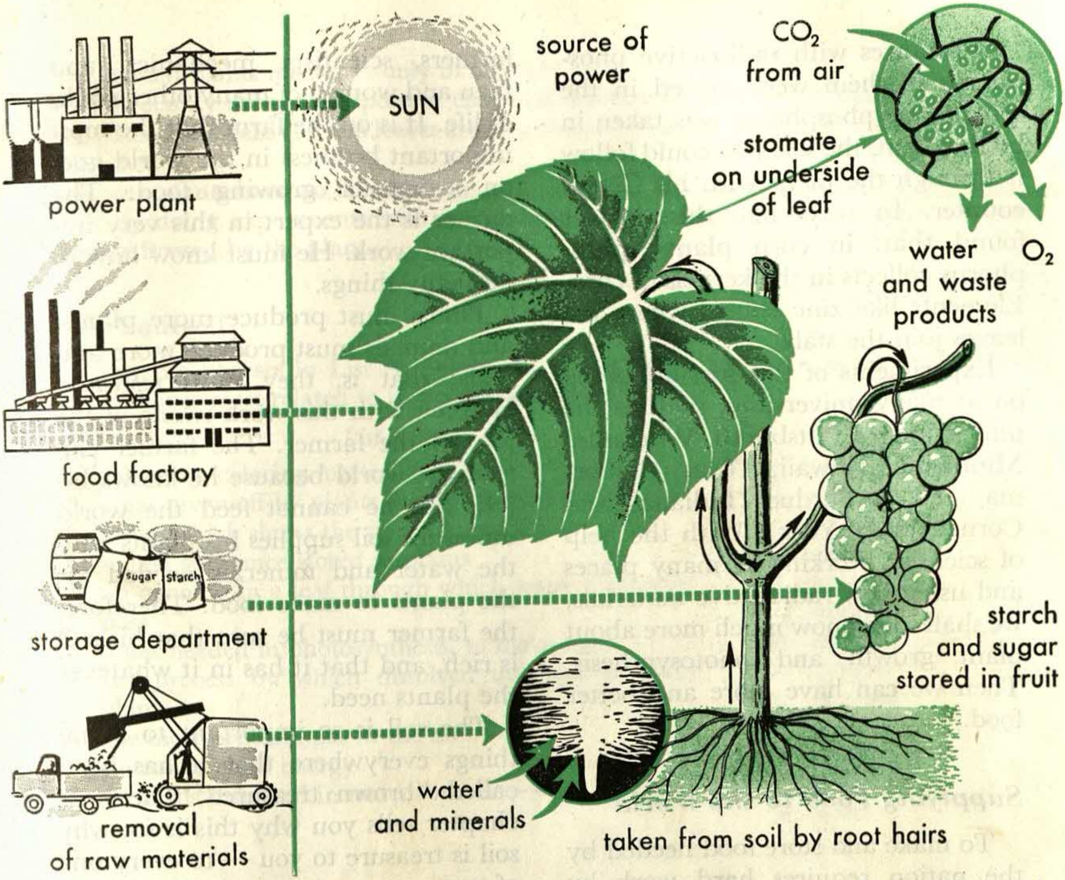
6. Oxygen and water are given off from the leaves through the stomates.

Because green plants can carry on this work of photosynthesis they are, indeed, "the food factories of the world."

Radioactive Substances and Food Production

You may think that we have learned all there is to know about how plants make and store food. We are only just beginning. Scientists are still learning much about photosynthesis. They are finding out some of the facts by using radioactive substances (Unit 5, p. 310).

As soon as radioactive substances were made in atomic piles, scientists began to use them to find what really



191 The plant as a sugar and starch factory. Study this diagram carefully and see why green leaves may be thought of as "the food factories of the world."

happens in photosynthesis. For instance, they wanted to find out what really happens to carbon dioxide when it enters the plant. In their study, they used radioactive carbon from the Oak Ridge plant of the Atomic Energy Commission.

Radioactive carbon gives off rays that cause "clicks" in a Geiger counter (Fig. 153). Scientists combined radioactive carbon with oxygen to make radioactive carbon dioxide. Can you guess why? They put growing plants in a chamber in which this radioactive carbon dioxide had been placed. As soon as the carbon dioxide entered the stomates in the leaves, the scientists were able to follow its path with the Geiger counter. They discovered an important fact. They found that before carbon dioxide is built into sugar, it is first built into a substance which they had not known about. This substance, whose formula is not yet known, seems to help in the making of sugar.

Radioactive Substances and Minerals in Plants

Scientists are using radioactive substances to study another plant problem: What happens to the minerals taken in by the roots?

Substances with radioactive phosphorus in them were placed in the soil. As the phosphorus was taken in by the plant, the scientist could follow it through the plant with his Geiger counter. In ways like this, it was found that, in corn plants, phosphorus collects in the kernels of corn. Elements like zinc collect where the leaves join the stalk.

Experiments of this sort are going on at many universities, such as the universities of Pittsburgh, Wisconsin, Minnesota, Hawaii, Texas, California, and of Purdue (Indiana) and Cornell (New York). With the help of scientists working in many places and using new radioactive materials, we shall soon know much more about plant growth and photosynthesis. Then we can have more and better food.

Supplying Food to the World

To make and store food needed by the nation requires hard work by farmers, scientists, mechanics, and men and women of many other walks of life. It is on the farm that the most important business in the world goes on — that of growing food. The farmer is the expert in this very important work. He must know how to do many things.

Plants must produce more plants, and animals must produce more animals; that is, they must *reproduce.* Helping with this work is one of the jobs of the farmer. The farmer can feed the world because he knows his job. But he cannot feed the world unless his soil supplies his plants with the water and minerals needed for the plants to make food. Therefore, the farmer must be sure that his soil is rich, and that it has in it whatever the plants need.

The soil is so important to living things everywhere that it has been called "brown treasure." The next chapter tells you why this is so, why soil is treasure to you — to every one of you.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

If you understand the key words below, you can place many of them correctly in the spaces in the statements which follow them. Do this by copying the statements in your notebook. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

carbon dioxide
chlorophyll
chloroplasts
diffusion
ducts
epidermis
fungus (pl., fungi)
glucose
minerals
nitrogen
oxygen
photosynthesis
radioactive carbon dioxide
root hairs
starch
stomates

1. Green plants take in soil water containing dissolved . . . .
2. In the light, green plants take in . . . through . . . in their leaves.

3. Green plants make . . . only in sunlight.

4. Probably the most important chemical reaction in the world is called . . . .

5. Inside the cells of green leaves are tiny bodies called . . . , which have in them the substance . . . .

6. . . . plants have no chlorophyll.

7. By doing experiments with . . . , scientists have been finding out how carbon dioxide is used by the plant.

Test Yourself

Copy the phrases in List A. Before the phrase write the letter of the word from List B that is most related to it. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

List A

1. the green coloring matter of plants
2. a gas given off by plants during photosynthesis
3. a dye which shows the presence of CO_2
4. a food substance stored in plants
5. an opening in a leaf through which water and gases pass
6. a gas needed in photosynthesis, to make sugar
7. the process by which dissolved minerals get into plants
8. the most plentiful gas in the air
9. source of plant energy
10. minerals dissolved in water form a ——

List B

a. bromothymol blue
b. calcium
c. carbon dioxide
d. chlorophyll
e. diffusion
f. hydrogen
g. nitrogen
h. oxygen
i. solution
j. starch
k. stomate
l. sun
m. water

GOING FURTHER

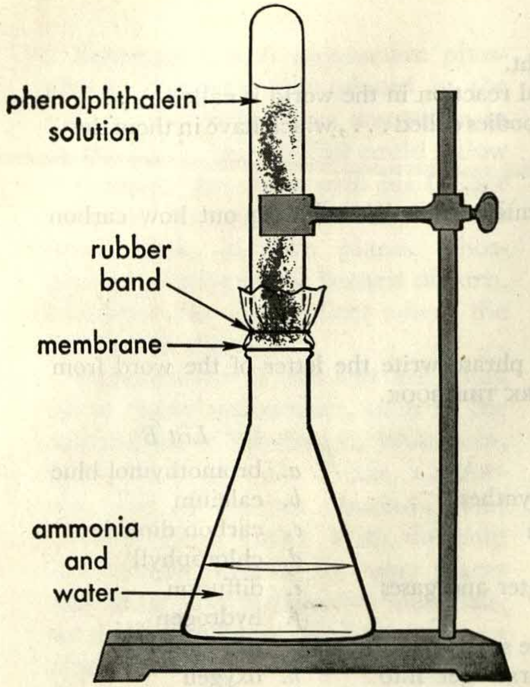
In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Examining stomates.* Take the leaves of the plants you find around your school. Use a microscope to make your examination. Are there stomates only on the undersurface or on the top surface, or both? Are there more on one surface than on the other? Keep notes.

2. *Finding out how plants take in CO_2.* Vaseline will close the stomates. Take a plant like a geranium and, without removing the leaves from the plant, smear the underside of one-half a leaf, three-quarters of another leaf, and then an entire leaf with Vaseline. Do the same for the upper surface of other leaves. Place the plant in the sunlight. Test the leaves for starch (Fig. 181).

3. *Experiment with photosynthesis.* Take two bell jars, each with openings at the top. Put a geranium under each jar. Also, put a wide-mouthed jar of limewater (which takes in CO_2) under one. Now seal the bell jars.

Place both jars in a dark place for 24 hours to rid the leaves of starch. Now place both jars in the light. After a day in the light, test each one for starch. What is the effect of lack of CO_2?



4. *Diffusion.* By using certain chemical reactions you may be able to "see" how diffusion takes place. Fill a test tube with water and add a few drops of 1% phenolphthalein (fee-nohl-THAL-een) in alcohol. (To make this solution, dissolve 1 gram of phenolphthalein in 100 cubic centimeters of water.) Now with a rubber band fasten a goldbeater's membrane or a piece of cellophane around the mouth of the tube. Invert this over an open bottle of ammonia. Molecules of ammonia diffuse through the membrane and react with phenolphthalein to color it red. Watch the spread of the red color as the diffusion of ammonia molecules takes place. (See figure above.)

Put on Your Thinking Cap

A boy did the following experiment. He grew tomato plants in soil which had all the substances commonly found in soil, except magnesium. The green leaves of his plants were speckled with white; some turned yellow, and others fell off. From this the boy could conclude: (1) that magnesium is needed to form chlorophyll; (2) nothing, because a control experiment was lacking; (3) that magnesium is necessary for proper growth; (4) that speckling or yellowing is a result of a lack of magnesium.

Select the conclusion you think is the correct one and give the reason for your selection. If you think you can improve on this experiment, plan a better one and show it to your teacher.

Adding to Your Library

1. *All About House Plants* by Montague Free, Doubleday and Co., 1946. A good all-around book for amateurs.

2. *Elementary Lessons in Gardening* by Paul R. Young, National Garden Institute, Columbus, Ohio, 1953. An inexpensive book in paper covers, giving practical answers to questions about soil, plant growth, and care.

3. *First Book of Plants* by Alice Dickinson Hoke, Franklin Watts, Inc., 1953. A well-illustrated book, simply written.

4. *Fun with Your Microscope* by Raymond F. Yates, Appleton-Century, 1943.

5. *Plants: A Guide to Plant Hobbies* by Herbert S. Zim, Harcourt, Brace, 1947.

6. *Useful Plants of the World* by Willard N. Clute, Willard N. Clute & Co., 1943.

Careers for You

More and better-trained *farmers* are needed to produce better food crops. *Botanists*, skilled in the study of plants, are needed for research work. *Chemists* who are skilled in the chemistry of plants are in demand. Many chemists are working in the branch of science known as *chemurgy* (KEM-er-jee). They find ways in which industry can use what is made in the bodies of plants as they grow (such as the use of the soybean oil in paints). *Horticulturists*, skilled in growing flowers, fruits, and vegetables in the field and in greenhouses can help to supply food for our nation.

Teachers of biology will always be in demand in high schools and colleges.

CHAPTER 19

Better Food from Better Soil

There is a line from your dinner table to the soil, and to the farmer who tends it. He grows the crops and raises the animals which feed on the plants. Soil is "brown treasure" that is yours to use wisely.

Do you live in Texas or near there? Wherever you live, what happened to the soil in Texas a few years ago is important to you.

If you live in the northern or eastern part of the United States you may not have heard about the troubles, very bad troubles, the farmers of Texas had in the years from 1950 to 1953. In the western half of the state they had had a four-year drought. By the summer of 1953 pastures no longer grew enough grass for the range cattle; crops failed, and the farmers lost millions of dollars. Why? The topsoil had blown away in dust storms. The water in the Rio Grande River fell so low that farmers in the Rio Grande Valley could no longer get water from the river.

Could these troubles have been prevented? No one, of course, could have brought the moist winds from the Pacific over the Rocky Mountains, but perhaps something could have been done to save the topsoil and the water.

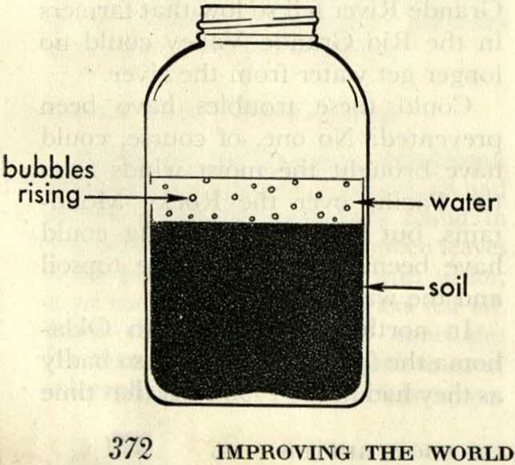
In northern Texas and in Oklahoma the farmers did not do so badly as they had in the 1930's. At that time the land had become a dust bowl. The dry soil drifted in great heaps along fences and around buildings. Growing things were killed by the dust. Great clouds of dust blew through the air, even as far east as the Atlantic Ocean.

Why were conditions in northern Texas and Oklahoma better in 1953 than in the 1930's? The farmers had learned a lesson. They had learned how to plant their crops so that the soil would not blow away when a dry spell came. They had learned, too, how to save for their crops every possible drop of rain. In other words, they had found by bitter experience that good farming practices pay, as well as wise use of soil and water.

To keep the topsoil and make it better is the secret of producing better food for our nation of over 160 million people. To do your part in this job of conserving and improving soil, you will need to understand:

1. What soil is.
2. How soil is lost (eroded).
3. How soil is saved and improved.

192 Water has just been added to garden soil in this jar. Where do the bubbles you see rising come from?



WHAT IS SOIL?

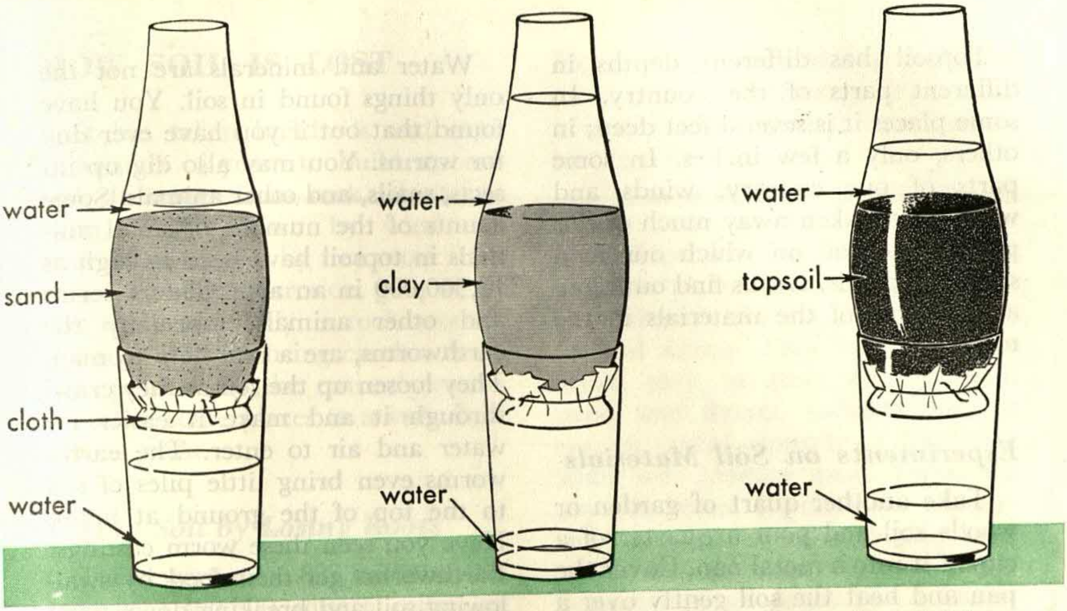
Go out to your garden or to the woods. Scoop out about a quart of *topsoil*, which is the name given to the top layer of soil in which most plants grow.

Put this soil into a two-quart glass jar. Then add water to about two inches over the soil line (Fig. 192). You will see air bubbles leaving the soil. As soon as the soil becomes soaked with water, the air bubbles will stop coming up to the surface. Topsoil holds air, which plants need for their growth. But soil under water holds so little air that plants do not grow well in it.

The amount of air in topsoil depends upon the kind of soil. What is soil made of? Shake up the soil and water in the jar, and then let the mixture settle overnight. What do you find the next day? The soil particles have settled in layers, with the heaviest particles at the bottom, and the smallest and lightest at the top. At the bottom there may be sand or gravel, then silt (fine particles of soil), then clay, made up of the finest particles. At the top you may find floating bits of decaying plant material. These bits of leaves, stems, or roots, as they decay, become part of the soil. This material, called *humus* (HYOO-mus), helps to feed the growing plants.

Humus has in it minerals that plants need for growth. It helps the growth of soil bacteria, earthworms, and other things that live in good topsoil. Humus is very useful, also, in holding water in the soil.

Almost all soils are made up of different proportions of small rocks, bits of rock, sand, clay, and humus.



193 Each lamp chimney holds the same amount of different kinds of moist soil. The same amount of water has been added to each chimney. Why do different amounts of water run through the soils into the glasses?

An experiment will show you the difference in the way these kinds of soil hold water.

Get about a cupful of each kind of these soils: (1) sand, (2) clay, and (3) soil with a good amount of humus. Get three glass funnels with wide spouts or three kerosene-lamp chimneys. Tie a thin cotton cloth over the bottom opening, and set the funnel or chimney in a drinking glass. Then pour the sand into one container, the clay into the second, and the humus soil into the third. Now pour one cup of water into each container (Fig. 193). Compare the amount of water draining through the three containers. Also note how long each kind of soil holds the water. How would this affect plants growing in the soil?

Because clay soil holds water, its very fine particles cling together. The clay packs so hard that most plants cannot grow well or get enough air around their roots. Soils which are made up mainly of clay are hard to work. They pack hard when dry, and are like bread dough when wet.

Sandy soils dry out very quickly. In a dry season the plants do not get enough water, because it drains away so fast. Sandy soils are often lost, because wind blows them away.

Good soil is a mixture of three types of soil material: clay, sand, and humus. We call this soil mixture *loam*. In loam there are enough large particles (sand and humus) to keep the soil porous, and enough small particles (clay) to take in water. The humus in loam also holds water.

Examine the soil from a garden. Is it largely clay or sand, or is it loam? It may be clay loam or sandy loam, but if it has humus in it, you can be quite sure that your garden plants will grow. Of course, they will need water and good care.

Topsoil has different depths in different parts of the country. In some places it is several feet deep; in others, only a few inches. In some parts of our country, winds and water have taken away much of this precious topsoil on which our food supply depends. Let us find out more about some of the materials in the topsoil.

Experiments on Soil Materials

Take another quart of garden or woods soil and pour a quarter of a cup of it into a metal pan. Cover the pan and heat the soil gently over a flame. Look at the inside of the cover. You will see drops of water which have been driven out of the soil. Without water, the soil minerals would not dissolve. They could not be used by plants.

What does soil water have in it? Take another quarter of a cupful of soil and a quarter-cup of distilled water and shake them up well for five minutes. Then filter the water from the soil. Put the filtered water into an evaporating dish and heat the dish until all the water has evaporated. As a control, put a quarter-cup of distilled water with no soil in it into a second evaporating dish. When the water in both dishes has evaporated, you will find whitish mineral salts left in the dish where the soil water was, but not in the other dish. From this experiment you can see that soil water has dissolved minerals in it.[1]

Water and minerals are not the only things found in soil. You have found that out if you have ever dug for worms. You may also dig up insects, snails, and other animals. Some counts of the number of small animals in topsoil have been as high as 13,500,000 in an acre. These worms and other animals, especially the earthworms, are a real help to man. They loosen up the soil as they crawl through it and make it easier for water and air to enter. The earthworms even bring little piles of soil to the top of the ground at night. Have you seen these worm castings? Earthworms get their food by swallowing soil and breaking down parts of it. When the soil leaves their bodies, it is rich in nitrogen, which all plants need for growth. Charles Darwin, a great English scientist, once wrote that a stony field he had seen was completely covered with soil in about ten years by the work of the earthworms in it.

Just as important to us as the animals are certain single-celled plants, the *bacteria*. These can be seen only under a microscope. Like the fungi, bacteria are colorless plants and cannot make their own food. The best soil has the most useful kinds of bacteria in it. Some of these bacteria take nitrogen from the air and change it into substances which plants use. Other bacteria cause leaves and other plant and animal materials to decay, thus adding humus to the soil.

Scientists have also found that some microscopic fungi in the soil can be used to make medicines. For instance, some make penicillin.

Truly, fertile soil is the treasure box of the world! It is worth more to nations than all the gold and precious stones they could find.

---

[1] **Some of the minerals which scientists find in soil are compounds of calcium, phosphorus, nitrogen, iron, sulfur, potassium, magnesium, sodium, manganese, and boron. These minerals are very important not only to plants but also to your own health and growth.**

HOW SOIL IS LOST

It has taken hundreds and even thousands of years to build up our soil. It comes from rock which has been broken down by wind, by water, by ice, and by tree roots. This wearing away, or erosion, goes on all the time. Not only is rock eroded, but so is soil. By being careless, man has speeded up the natural erosion of soil in some places to a very dangerous point.

Losing Soil by Losing Roots

There were some 822 million acres (nearly 1,300,000 square miles) of forests in the time of the Pilgrims. Wave upon wave of settlers came. As they pushed westward, they cut down more and more trees. They destroyed the forests wastefully. What was still worse, they planted no new trees. In cutting trees for lumber, the settlers paid no attention to saving the young trees for future growth.

In these forest lands, the pioneers often cleared away the trees so they could plant their crops. After a few years, they moved on to new land, cut down more trees, and began again.

The early settlers had all the West before them. The prairie grasslands were so fertile and so easily plowed that vast areas of grain were planted. The prairie grasses had held the soil in place, but the plowed soil was often left bare after the grain was harvested. Then the wind could blow away the fertile topsoil. The damage had begun.

In cutting down the trees and plowing under the roots of the prairie grasses which held the soil, the settlers had left the soil open to erosion. Heavy rains would wash it away and carry it down the streams. This waste of good topsoil made the land poorer and poorer.

The natural forests in the East are almost gone; in fact, 96% of the natural forest in our country is in the western states. Federal and state governments now try to protect our natural forests. They have set aside areas, such as state and national parks and forests. Industry, too, is cutting timber carefully so that forest lands will produce good timber for years to come. Farmers are encouraged to plant trees on sloping land so that soil will not easily wash away. Schools observe Arbor Day in early spring to stress the importance of conserving soil and planting trees. You will gain from these efforts being made to repair the damage of past years.

Trees give us many important products, such as lumber, pulp for paper, boxes for shipping, and the furniture in our homes. Their greatest importance, however, is in holding the soil in place, so that rain falling on hillsides will not rush down so fast that it will take the soil with it.

When trees are cut, their leaves can no longer break the fall of the rain. The carpet of leaves on the ground can no longer act as a sponge to soak up the water. The rain then washes topsoil down into the valleys. Soon the heavy clay or sand beneath the topsoil is uncovered. It, too, washes down into the valleys, where it covers the fertile topsoil. Worse than that, the rain tears gullies in the hillside until the land is worthless (Fig. 194). Furthermore, the streams may become so muddy from the silt washed into them that plants and fish cannot live in the water. Are there

U.S. FOREST SERVICE

194 A forest, ruined. Trees cut without replanting others leave a barren waste like this. And the rains wash the soil into the rivers.

any streams in your neighborhood where fishing used to be good? What has happened to the fish in these streams?

Losing Soil Minerals

Soil without its minerals is useless for plant growth. As you have read, plants use large amounts of nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and calcium for growth, as well as small amounts of iron and other substances. If the same crops are planted year after year, these minerals are used up, and the plants will lack what they need for growth. The soil is then said to be *depleted* (deh-PLEET-id).

In one recent year, for instance, it was estimated that crops used 700,000 tons of phosphorus, and another 900,000 tons of phosphorus were washed away. Still another 900,000 tons were lost from pasture lands. Add these up, and you have a loss in one year of 2,500,000 tons of phosphorus in the United States alone.

Phosphorus and other minerals can be put back into the soil by using fertilizers. However, during that one year, farmers put back only 1,100,000 tons of phosphorus, less than half the total loss. This story is true for other substances as well, especially nitrogen, potassium, and calcium. If this loss were allowed to go on year after year, the soil and the plants on it would become poorer and poorer. The farmer would finally have to give up his farm. Depleted soil means low production of food.

Soil that is being blown or washed away and soil that is losing its minerals are the problems of all who are growing food for the world's people. How can these problems be solved?

A Farmer Tries to Solve His Problem

Let us see what a farmer whom we shall call Mr. D actually did for his soil. He had not always owned his farm. He worked hard and finally bought a farm whose soil showed some depletion. Also here and there some of the sloping fields were eroding. He said, "I know it's poor land, but I think I know how to make it right again."

First, he knew that good soil

1. Can hold enough water for growth.
2. Has all the minerals for good growth.

AMERICAN FOREST PRODUCTS INDUSTRIES, INC

195 In the Pacific Northwest, fir and hemlock forests as far as the eye can see. Man has learned from scenes like the one opposite. He is taking care of his forests.

3. Has a topsoil which cannot be blown or washed away.

Second, Mr. D knew about the experiments of the United States Soil Conservation Service. This Service gave him this information (Fig. 196).

1. An acre of land with a slight slope planted with potatoes year after year lost about 60% of its rainfall. It also lost about 1,000 pounds of soil in 19 rainy days.

2. An acre of land planted in grass lost only about 0.2% of its water, and almost none of its soil.

3. An acre of forest land lost about 0.5% of its water and practically none of its soil.

Mr. D had another helping hand in solving the problem of improving his new farm. It was the United States Department of Agriculture.[1] From it, he got a great many facts about what plants need for best growth. For instance, he learned that scientists had grown green plants in chemical solutions to find out what they needed for best growth. To some of these solutions they had added different amounts of such minerals as calcium and potassium. After many years of work they discovered how much of each mineral was needed for the best plant growth. Let us see now what Mr. D did.

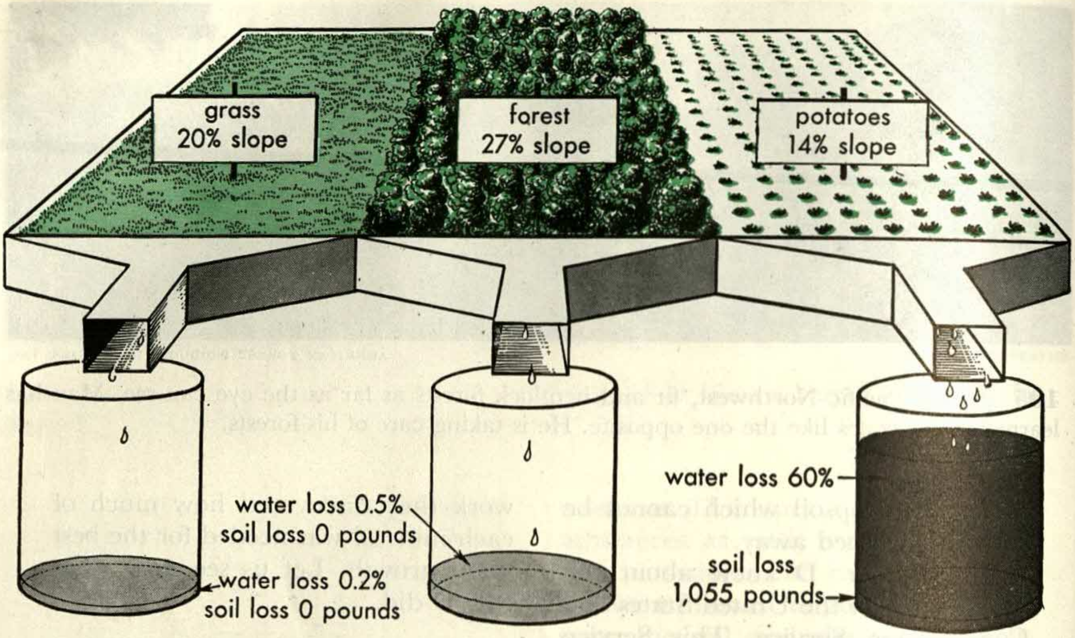
SAVING AND REMAKING SOIL

With all these facts and experiments to help him, farmer D went to work. First, he planted his eroded sloping fields in grass and clover, plants with roots that would spread out and hold the soil in place. He used fields with steep slopes for pasture, never for crops. On other, steeper slopes, he planted trees. In addition, he planted trees around fields to help hold any soil which had washed down and to prevent winds from blowing the soil away.

He left no bare fields to blow away after grain was harvested. With his grain he planted clover or other grass seed to come up and cover the land and hold the soil. The next year grain would be planted in another field. The clover and grass in the first field would produce a hay crop. By *rotating crops* in this way, the farmer also improved his soil. Such crops as clover and alfalfa added nitrogen to the soil.

---

[1] Many of these important facts are found in a book called *Soils and Men*. You can get a copy at the library or from your Congressman.



196 Where grass and forests cover the soil, water and soil are saved. Where the soil is open to wind and rain, soil and water are lost. Compare the loss in soil and water for the three crops.

Checking Erosion in Ditches and Gullies

As soon as all his sloping fields were planted in grass and clover, Mr. D went to a meeting of his farm neighbors at the schoolhouse. He spoke to the group very earnestly. He said that soil erosion was the problem of the entire community. He suggested that the boys and girls in the school help stop some of the soil erosion by working on the gullies.

Soon the boys and girls, with the help of their teachers and parents, went to work. First, they used loose rock to build dams in the small gullies. The water would be slowed down by these dams so that the gullies would not get larger. Then they planted the big gullies and ditches with kudzu (KOOD-ZOO) vine. This vine spreads rapidly and holds the soil. Like clover and alfalfa, it helps add nitrogen to the soil.

Checking Erosion on Hillsides

The previous owner of Mr. D's farm had used even the hillsides for crops. The rain water had rushed down the unprotected slopes, taking the topsoil with it. On another steep hillside, many gullies had formed. Here the boys and girls helped plant thousands of small evergreens. The covering of needles which falls on the ground under evergreen trees holds the water, and the roots hold the soil.

Contour Plowing

Mr. D had learned a way to plow land for his crops that would help prevent water from rushing down the slope. He did not plow up and down his mild slopes. The up-and-down furrows would have made ditches down which the soil and water could wash. Instead, he plowed across the slopes, curving his furrows or rows with the *contour* (KON-toor), or curving shape, of the slope (Fig. 197). This is called *contour plowing*. When the plowing is done following the curve or contour, each row or furrow will hold the water or slow it down.

Strip Cropping

Then Mr. D planted these gentle slopes in strips 75 feet wide (Fig. 197). In one strip he planted corn. In the next strip, he planted grass. He might have planted clover, oats, wheat, or soybeans. Because these crops cover the soil, they are called cover crops. In the next strip Mr. D planted more corn. In between strips of cover crops, he might have planted strips of potatoes or tobacco instead of corn.

Corn, tobacco, or potatoes must be cultivated clean; that is, the soil must be kept clear of grass and weeds between rows. During hard rains, this uncovered soil can easily be washed away. With a wide strip of clover or grass crop to hold and cover the soil, soil does not wash down the slope. *Strip cropping*, as it is called, is a good way to check soil erosion and save water for the growing plants.

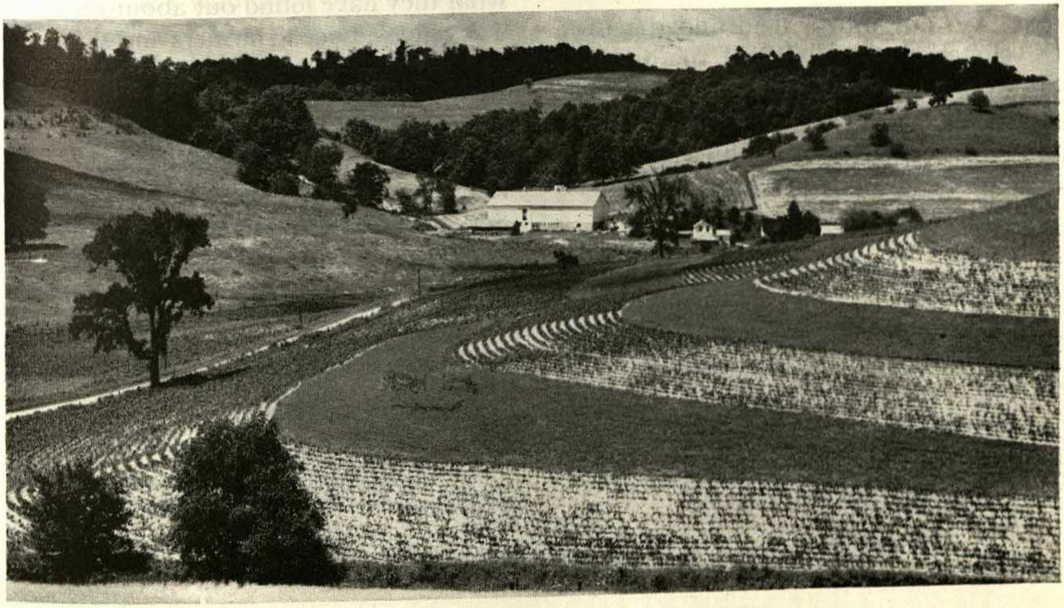
Putting Nitrogen Back Into the Soil

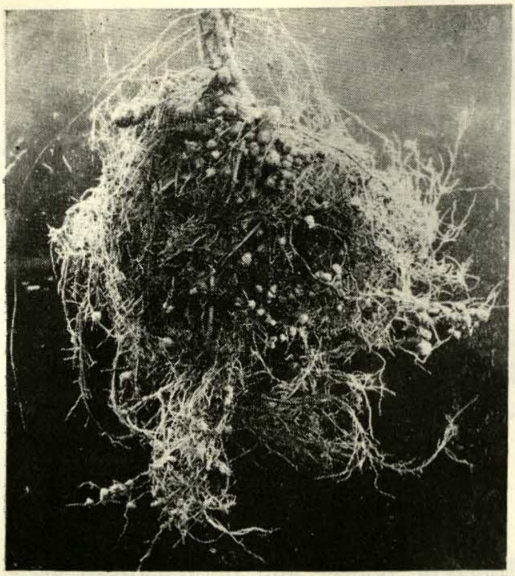
Stopping erosion is not enough. Growing crops each year take certain minerals from the soil. If these minerals are not put back, the plants become poorer and poorer, until at last they are not worth harvesting.

The most important soil loss is nitrogen. Nitrogen compounds dissolve easily and are carried away in water running off the land. Then too, plants use large amounts of nitrogen in their growth. One of the best ways to return nitrogen to the soil is to plant clover, alfalfa, soy-

197 Part of farmer D's farm. Notice the crops in strips planted around the gentle slope. Do you see how water running downhill is caught by each strip — especially by the strips planted with grass or soybeans in between the three strips planted in corn (whitish color)?

SOIL CONSERVATION SERVICE





U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

198 See the nodules (tiny balls) on the roots of the soybean. The bacteria in the nodules help add nitrogen to the soil. *Project:* Collect the fresh roots of clover, bean, soybean, or other members of the bean family. Crush the nodules and stain with iodine. Examine the bacteria under the microscope.

beans, or cowpeas — all members of the plant family called *legumes* (LEG-yoomz). Let us look at one of these legumes.

Go out into a field and dig up a clover plant. Shake off the dirt and examine the roots. You will see small *nodules* (NOD-yoolz) or swellings on the roots. Nodules like these are to be found on the roots of all legumes (Fig. 198).

These nodules are full of a special kind of bacteria. These bacteria can take nitrogen from the air and soil to make nitrogen compounds. Then, when the crop of clover or beans or peas is cut, the roots remain in the ground and the soil is enriched with a new supply of nitrogen.

Enriching the Soil with Fertilizers

Plants need other chemicals besides nitrogen. Good farmers find out, by testing their soil, what each field needs, and then supply what is missing by using different kinds of fertilizers. Year after year, some farmers add animal manure to the soil. Manure has in it some of the minerals needed. Many farmers also add commercial fertilizers, mixtures of minerals with phosphates and nitrates in them. The government also provides some chemical fertilizers free or at cost in certain sections where farmers are trying to improve their soils for food growing.

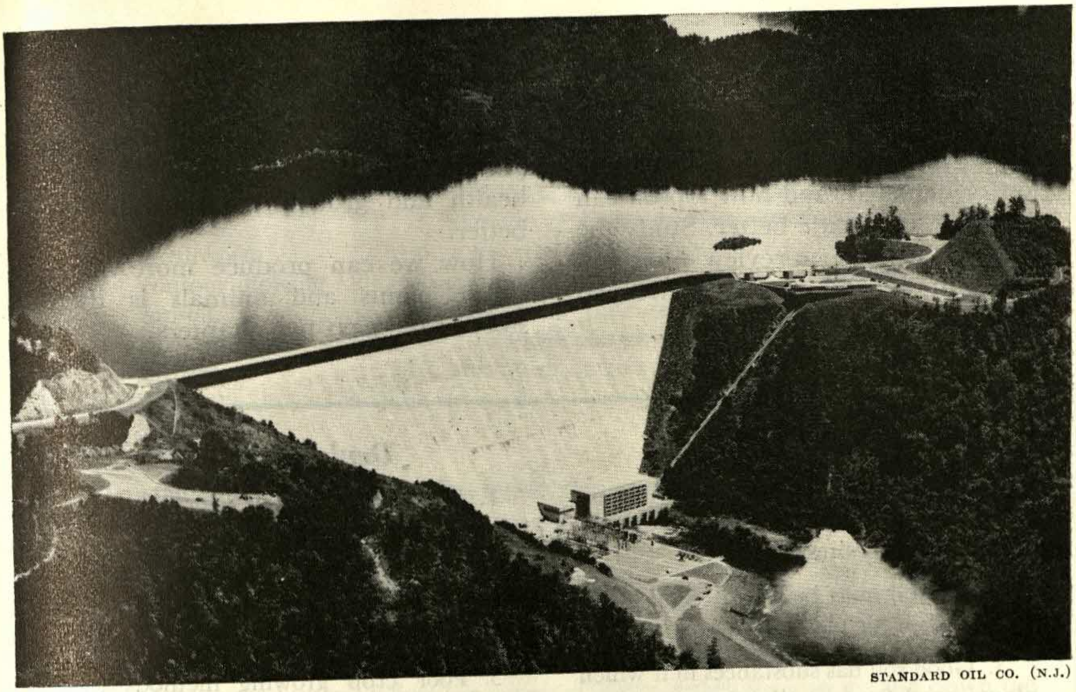
Many farmers have found that in a few years poor soil can be built up if the right methods are used.

Soil Conservation Service

In 1935 the Congress of the United States passed the Soil Conservation Act and set up the Soil Conservation Service. The Service helps farmers in many ways. Scientists in the Service experiment regularly and publish what they have found out about soils. They give advice to farmers and show them how to stop erosion on their farms. They set up model farms where farmers from the community can learn the best ways to save and enrich their soil. The Soil Conservation Service also plans irrigation projects, about which you read earlier.

Large Projects in Soil Conservation

In several parts of our country, the national or state governments have built dams and reservoirs to prevent heavy floods along the rivers



STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

199 Dams like this one near Knoxville, Tenn., control floods — but the water can be used for electric power and, where needed, for irrigation.

In Ohio a number of dams were built a few years ago because each spring great areas were flooded. Since the dams were finished, not once has a flood washed away the topsoil.

Farmers who live in the Tennessee Valley sometimes talk about the time before the TVA, when the Tennessee River used to carry away tons of fertile topsoil. The flooding rivers and poor farming practices had made the land poor, and the poor land had kept the people poor. The Tennessee Valley Authority, a huge conservation project, was set up to improve the region. Its work extended into parts of five states. Dams were built to hold back the rivers. These dams not only prevented floods, but they stored up water that could be turned into water power. This in turn made electricity at low cost for the farmers. Electricity made farm work easier and living more comfortable.

As a part of the project to save the soil and water, the TVA replanted forests. Meetings were set up at which famers talked over the best ways of improving their soil. As a result of the work of TVA, the farms of that section are growing more and better food for the people.

Conservation is Everyone's Problem

As it is now, about 60% of our cropland is turning from bad to worse. Nevertheless, more and more of our farmers and gardeners are learning how to use soil wisely. We need still more men and women who are trained to help teach the methods of soil conservation. Perhaps you would like to make that your lifework.

In order to keep the topsoil on which our food supply depends and make it better, you must know what makes up good soil, how soil may be lost or depleted, and how topsoil can be saved and made better. Study the box on this page to review what you have learned. Put it to use even if you have only a small garden.

Good soil is not everything. Plants and animals can be and are being improved. This means that the food you eat is being improved. Your health and growth are thus made better.

How we can produce more and better plants and animals is the story of the next two chapters.

Good Soil

1. Good soil, called loam, is a mixture of clay, sand, and humus (parts of decaying plants and animals).
2. Topsoil must be able to hold water long enough for plants to take it in.
3. Good soil has substances in it which plants need for growth (nitrogen, phosphorus, calcium, potassium, manganese, iron, and others).

Depleted Soil

1. Erosion by wind or water depletes soil.
2. Minerals in the soil are dissolved and carried away in water.
3. Poor crop growing methods (no rotation) take the same kind of minerals from the soil year after year, without replacing them.

Conserving Soil

Some ways of saving topsoil are

1. Contour plowing (plowing across the slope rather than up and down).
2. Strip cropping (growing plants in rows between strips of cover crops).
3. Rotating crops from season to season.
4. Planting legumes to add nitrogen to the soil.
5. Using fertilizers.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

In your notebook copy the words in List A. Before the word write the number of the phrase from List B that best explains its meaning. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

List A	*List B*
clay	1. the upper 18 or 20 inches of soil
humus	2. a plant that can put nitrogen into the soil
nitrate	3. an animal which helps put air into the soil
legume	4. soil made up of the very finest of soil particles
nodules	5. remains of decayed plant and animal matter
earthworm	6. a gas that is in air (needed by plants)
contour plowing	7. a method of saving the soil on a hillside
topsoil	8. process by which soil loses minerals
soil depletion	9. a nitrogen compound needed by plants
nitrogen	10. structures on roots of legumes

Test Yourself

To complete the sentences below, select the correct word from the pair of words given and write it in your notebook. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. All fertile soils must have in them some (clay, humus).

2. Soil made up largely of very fine dustlike particles is (clay, sand).

3. Soil that has decayed plants and animals mixed with sand and clay is called (humus, loam).

4. Wearing away of topsoil by wind and water is called (erosion, rotation).

5. Making the furrows follow the curves of slopes rather than go up and down the slopes is called (strip cropping, contour plowing).

6. Legumes — clover, peas, beans — have on their roots nodules with (magnesium, nitrogen) in them.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Analyzing soil.* Get three samples of soil: rich humus, ordinary garden soil, and a loam soil.

a. Heat a thimbleful of each soil in separate porcelain dishes. An ammonia-like odor indicates the presence of nitrogen. Which soil has the most nitrogen compounds?

b. Shake up a thimbleful of each kind of soil with water. Examine a drop or so under the microscope. Which soil has the most living organisms? Draw pictures of some of these.

c. Repeat the experiment on p. 374 which determines whether soil contains minerals. Plan an experiment to determine the amount of mineral substances in each kind of soil. (*Hint:* Use equal amounts of dry soil by weight.)

2. *Acid and neutral soil.* Take four equal-sized pots of soil. Make a solution by adding the juice of one lemon (which contains citric acid) to a glass of water. Add this solution to the soil in all the pots until the water dripping from the holes at the bottom is acid to litmus paper (blue litmus turns red in acid). Now mix enough agricultural lime (limestone) into the soil of two pots to turn the litmus neutral. Plant corn seeds, in the acid soil of one pot and in

the neutral soil of another. Plant beans in the other two pots. Allow the plants to grow in a sunny spot. Keep careful notes. What are your conclusions?

3. *Soil minutemen.* If you live in a farm area, take a field trip to survey good and bad farm practices. Organize a club of "Soil Minutemen" to help fight erosion.

4. *A model farm.* Make a model farm which shows good farm practices. You can use bits of sponge colored green for trees in forests, and pebbles glued on cardboard for stone walls. Your teacher will give you more help if you need it.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

In the Missouri Valley, farmers are discussing the value of building dams and controlling rivers. Some are against it. They say it costs too much and does not do much for the soil. Some are for it. They say it will save money in the long run and make the soil grow more crops. What evidence could you give on either side?

Adding to Your Library

PAMPHLETS

You will surely want these pamphlets. Write to the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., for the following:

1. *Little Waters* by N. S. Persons. An admirable little booklet on soil conservation.

2. *Soil Defense in the Piedmont*, Farmers Bulletin 1767, U.S. Department of Agriculture. The story of a fight to save soil in the South.

3. *To Mold the Soil*, Miscellaneous Publication 321, U.S. Department of Agriculture. If you have been impressed by the warning in this chapter you will find this booklet even more impressive — and very important.

BOOKS

You should also write to your Congressman for three books:

1. *Soils and Men.*
2. *Farmers in a Changing World.*
3. *Science in Farming.*

Each book is about 1,200 pages. They are very valuable references on soils and farming.

A Bit of Research

Find out all you can about the organization known as Friends of the Land, which has branches in nearly every state of the Union.

Careers for You

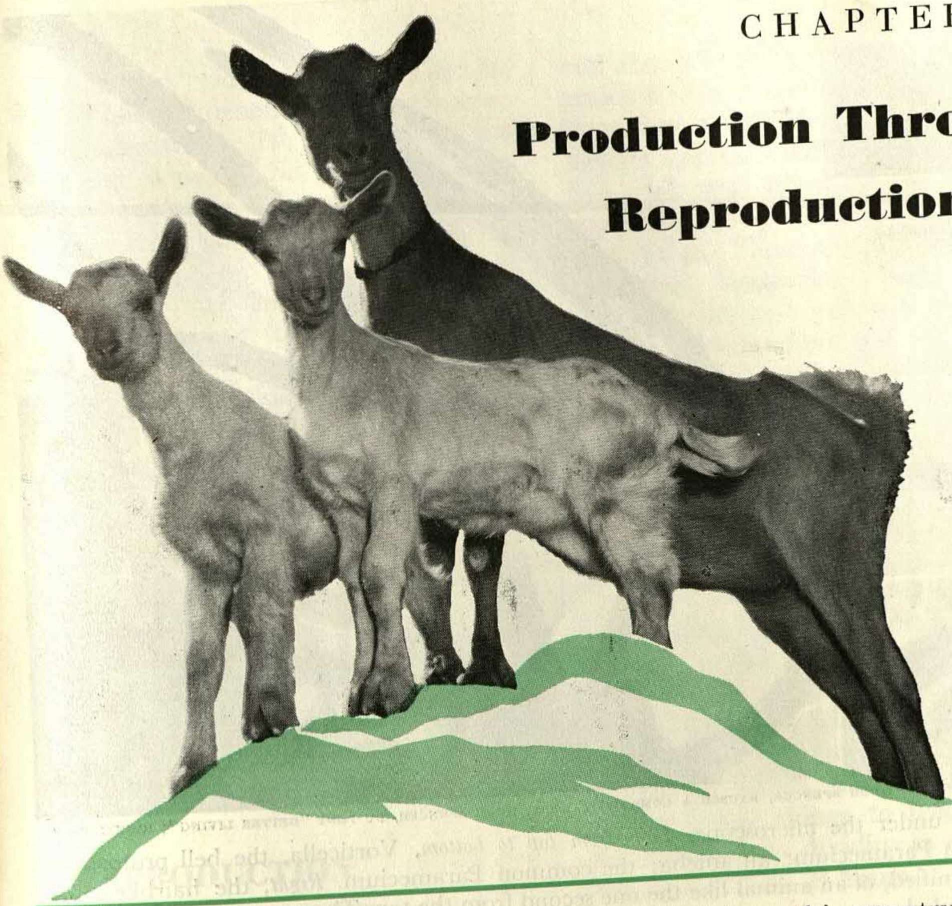
Farmers are needed to use the newer methods of saving and improving the soil. *Farm Bureau agents* test soils and help farmers by showing them how to lay out the patterns for contour plowing. They advise farmers how to improve the soil and prevent erosion.

Soil conservation agents are experts in the branches of service that deal with soils, and can show farmers how to save their soil as well as build up soil that has become depleted.

Think also about the life of a *forest ranger*. Or perhaps you are interested in having a tree nursery. *Nurserymen* are in demand by lumber companies, as well as the Forest Service of the United States.

CHAPTER 20

Production Through Reproduction



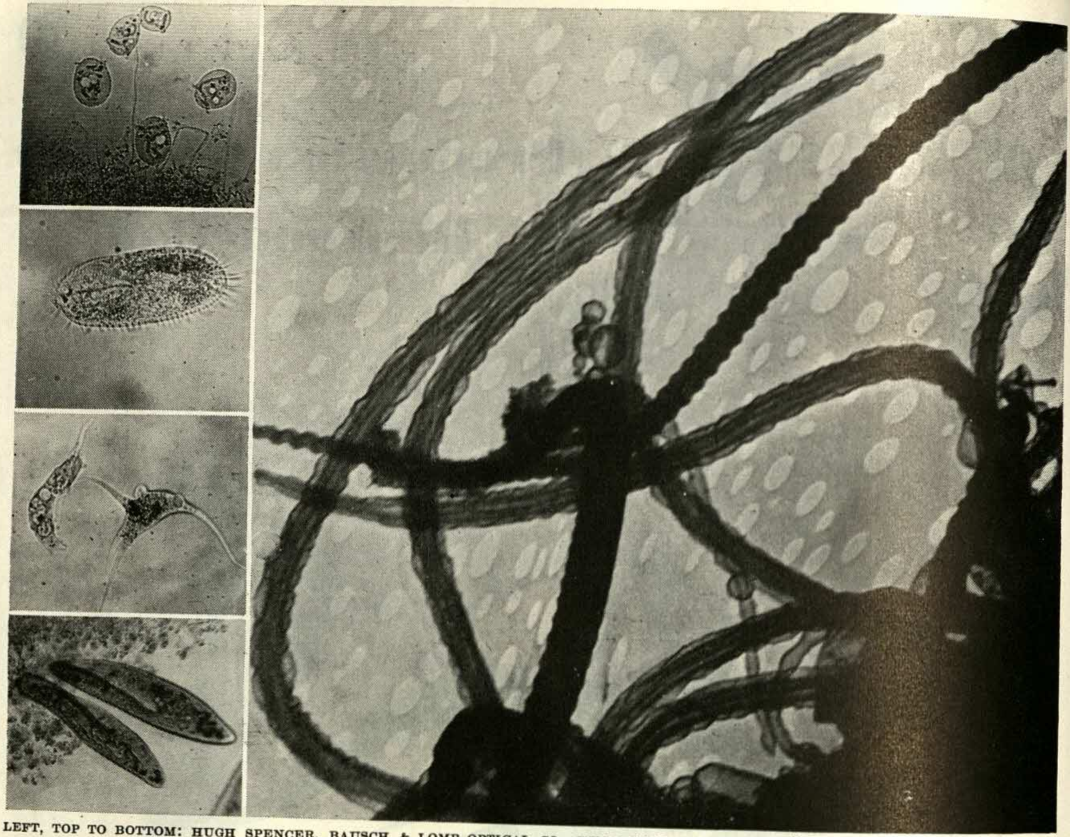
A female goat and her two young kids. Throughout this country — on every farm — parent animals or plants are producing young. This production through reproduction is important to all of you.

What do you see in the picture above? A goat with twin kids. Have you any idea why this picture is here? It is evidence of an important fact. Usually goats give birth to only one kid. Now scientists are trying to develop a strain of goats and sheep which produce twins. That is, they are trying to double the production of goats and sheep.

The farmer of today knows he must make his plants produce not only more plants and animals than ever before but better plants and animals as well. His problem is a double one:

1. To increase production of plants and animals that we want.
2. To keep harmful plants and animals from producing more of the same kind.

In order to understand how this double problem can be solved, we must first know something about how living things *reproduce*. That is, how do living things make new plants and animals? How do the young grow and become like their parents?



LEFT, TOP TO BOTTOM: HUGH SPENCER, BAUSCH & LOMB OPTICAL CO., HUGH SPENCER, DU PONT "BETTER LIVING"; RIGHT: R.C.A.

200 Seen under the microscope. *Left from top to bottom*, Vorticella, the bell protozoon; a rare green Paramecium; an ameba; the common Paramecium. *Right*, the hairlike cilia, greatly magnified, of an animal like the one second from the top. These are viewed under the high-powered electron microscope.

Old Beliefs About Reproduction

You have read about the experiments of Francesco Redi in the first unit of this book. He proved that flies produce flies. Redi and other early scientists introduced the idea that probably only living things can produce living things.

In spite of experiments that Redi and others made, people still asked, "Do all living things come from other living things?" Many persons thought that food and water could produce germs and other microscopic plants and animals.

A great Italian scientist, Lazaro Spallanzani (LAH-zah-roh·spah-lahn-TSAH-nee), planned some experiments to find out whether or not these tiny one-celled living things could be reproduced from nonliving water and soup. In one of his experiments Spallanzani studied some tiny *protozoons* swimming in a drop of water under his microscope lenses. A protozoon is a one-celled, microscopic animal often found in pond water. Next to the first drop of water he placed a drop of pond water that had been boiled long enough to kill all living things.

Under the microscope, Spallanzani carefully joined the two drops of water so that they were connected by a thin bridge of water. Then he saw one protozoon swim into the drop of pure water. He wiped away the bridge between the two drops. Now the protozoon was left alone in the drop of boiled pond water.

He kept on watching the one-celled animal, and what did he see? Just what you, too, can see under your own microscope. He saw the tiny animal divide into two animals. The protozoon had produced another protozoon. Again, Spallanzani had proved that even microscopic living things come from living things, not from any kind of dead or nonliving material. Scientists since the time of Spallanzani have given other proof that plants and animals reproduce their own kind.

Now you will want to see through your microscope some of the same things Spallanzani saw.

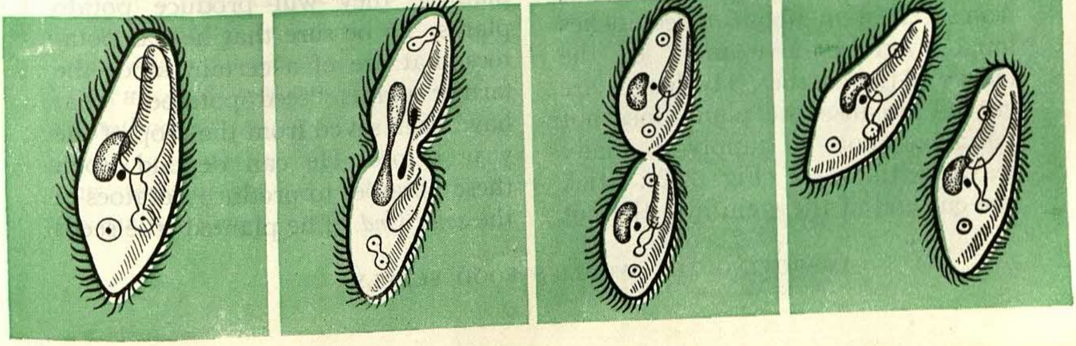
REPRODUCTION BY ONE PARENT

Go to a pond or stream either in the late spring, summer, or autumn and fill several jars with water. Add a little mud from the stream and also some of the water weeds you find in the water. When you get home, add about 20 rice grains or 15 wheat grains to the water in the jars. Set these jars aside where it is neither too hot nor too cold (about 65° F.). In a week or so, if you look carefully, you will see tiny white specks swimming about. These are probably the one-celled animals, protozoons. Probably the one you will see will be the *Paramecium* (pair-uh-MEE-see-um) (Fig. 201). Possibly you will see other microscopic animals, such as those in Fig. 200. Study this figure carefully when you look through your microscope. You will be able to recognize some of these animals.

If you examine some of these single-celled animals under the microscope, you may see one divide. It begins to pinch together in the middle. In a little while it divides in two, forming two animals from one. Paramecia which have plenty of smaller living things to feed upon can reproduce by dividing as often as once every 18 to 24 hours.

There is an important thing to learn from this observation. As you might expect, each daughter paramecium looks like the other, because the two came from one parent. This type of reproduction, in which there is only one parent, is called *asexual*

201 One Paramecium, well fed, begins to divide. Soon there are two. *Project:* Fill a small jar one-half full of pond water. Add 5 rice grains. Let it stand. In two weeks examine under a microscope for Paramecium or other protozoa.



(ay-SEK-shoo-ul) *reproduction.* That is, two animals are produced from one.

Why do the two daughter cells have to look alike? Scientists have found the reason. If you were to stain a paramecium with a special kind of dye, you could see a dark oval structure in its center. You can see this structure in the left-hand drawing in Fig. 201. It is called the *nucleus.* As you remember, almost every cell has a nucleus. Every one-celled animal has a nucleus. When the cell divides, the nucleus divides into two equal parts. Each cell then has an equal amount of the nuclear material responsible for the appearance of the cell. Scientists have found that this material in the nucleus makes any plant or animal look the way it does. You can now answer this question: When the paramecium divides, why are the two cells which are produced just alike?

Gardeners and farmers often use asexual reproduction to get more plants from a single parent. Let us see why and how it is used.

Making Sure We Get the Same Kind

Would you like to experiment with growing plants by asexual reproduction? You can set up experiments at school or at home. There are several ways to make plants reproduce their own kind. Let us try a *cutting* first. You will need a pot of moist sand.

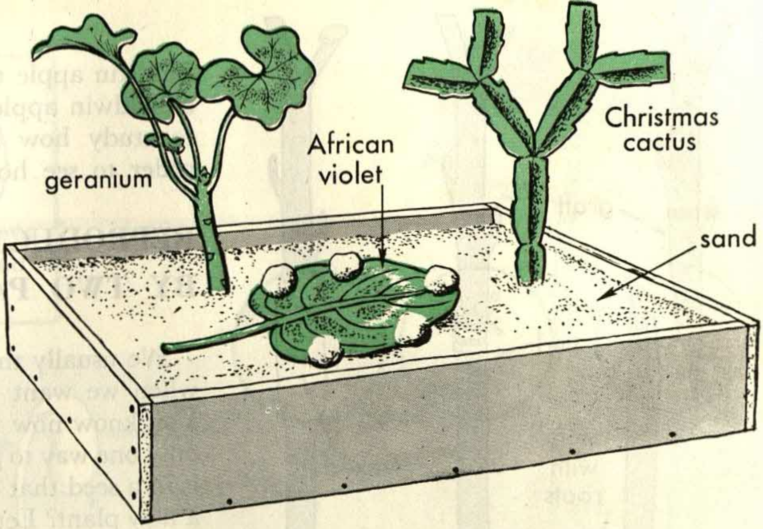
Take a geranium plant and cut from it a stem about three inches long. First, remove most of the leaves of the cutting. The leaves are cut off because the plant does not yet have roots to supply so many leaves with water (Fig. 202). Stick the cut end of the stem into the pot of sand. If you take good care of the cutting, in a few weeks it will be a complete plant with new leaves and new roots. It is now ready to be transplanted to another pot with about one part of sand and three parts of good garden soil. Because you took a cutting of part of the old geranium, the new geranium will look very much like the old one. It will have flowers of the same color as the parent plant.

You may wish to try to grow other plants by asexual reproduction. Try planting cuttings of forsythia, willow, or begonia plants.

Plants can be grown from leaf cuttings of stems or leaves. Many persons start certain plants by keeping a leaf and its stem in moist sand until roots have started. Try starting a leaf from an African violet plant in moist sand. When you put the plant into a pot, be sure the pot is not too large for the little cutting.

You may also grow entire plants from their fleshy roots or fleshy stems. Place a carrot, a beet, or a sweet potato (all fleshy roots) in moist sand. Soon these parts of plants will produce a new plant of the same kind as the parent plant.

The farmer depends upon asexual reproduction for his crop of potatoes. White potatoes, which are actually thick underground stems, are cut up into pieces, each of which has an "eye" or bud. When these pieces are planted, they will produce potato plants. To be sure that he has potatoes that are of a certain kind, the farmer plants "seed potatoes" that have been saved from the crop of the year before. He can depend upon these potatoes to produce potatoes of the *same kind.* If he planted true seeds



202 *Project:* Fill a box like this one with moist sand. Then try to grow plants like these from cuttings. Or try begonia stems or willow twigs. (Be sure the sand has been washed.)

formed from the flowers of potato plants, he could not be sure of getting the same kind of potatoes as those from which the seeds came. You will see why later in this chapter.

More Examples of Asexual Reproduction

A trip through a farm will show you many ways in which the farmer uses asexual reproduction to make his plants reproduce for him. In the strawberry bed, notice how each strawberry plant sends out runners. These runners are long stems that grow along the ground. At certain points on these stems, a new plant will form (Fig. 203).

The underground parts of many plants, such as rhubarb, peonies, day lilies, or dahlias, can be broken into several parts. Each part will produce a new plant of the same kind as the parent.

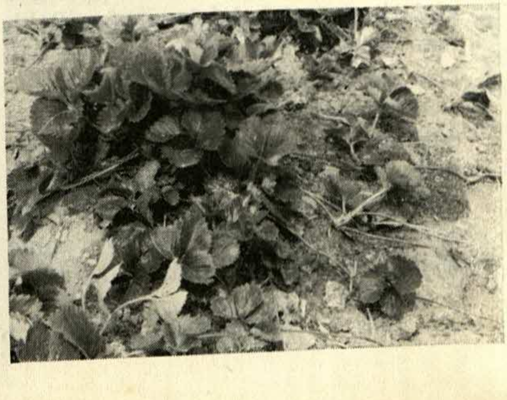
Have you ever seen a rambler rose? You can easily get more ramblers by a method of asexual reproduction known as *layering*. Bend one of the long stems of the rose till it touches the earth. Where it touches, cover it with soil. Next spring a new rose plant will grow from the point where the old stem was buried.

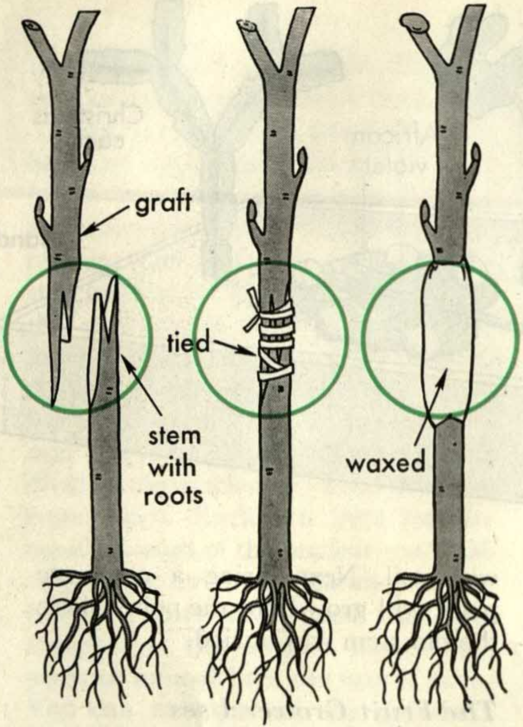
The Fruit Grower Uses Asexual Reproduction

No doubt you have heard about *grafting* fruit trees. Do you know how it is done? In the fall, let us watch the farmer prepare some apple trees for planting. On his bench are a sharp knife, some soft wax, and some raffia (RAF-ee-uh) or twine. He has some crab-apple seedlings (young plants) and some Baldwin apple twigs in a box of cool, moist sand. He is going to join or *graft* the Baldwin twig to the crab-apple seedlings.

203 New strawberry plants grow from runners like the ones you see on the right.

NORTH CAROLINA STATE COLLEGE





204 To make a graft, follow the steps shown. Try it on a twig of a fruit tree.

Study Fig. 204 before you read how the farmer makes his grafts. He takes a crab-apple seedling with roots at one end, cuts off the top and makes a notch or cleft in the stem. Next he takes a Baldwin apple twig and cuts a "tongue" in it. He fits the Baldwin twig into the crab-apple stem (Fig. 204). Then he winds raffia tightly about the place where the two twigs are joined and covers it with grafting wax. Now his little tree has the roots of a crab-apple tree and the stem and leaves of a Baldwin. Believe it or not, the tree will bear Baldwin apples only.

Why doesn't the farmer plant a cutting from a Baldwin tree? The best reason is that cuttings of Baldwin apple trees do not take root easily. Why not plant a Baldwin apple seed? The answer is that seed from a Baldwin apple tree may not produce a Baldwin apple tree. We shall need to study how seeds are formed in order to see how this may happen.

REPRODUCTION BY TWO PARENT PLANTS

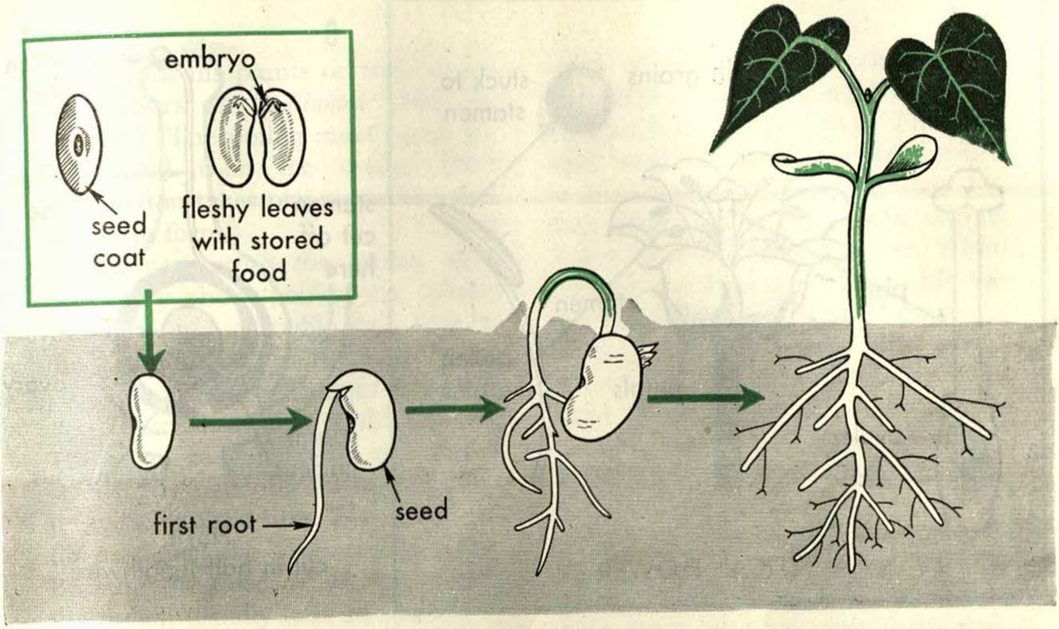
We usually think of planting seeds when we want to grow new plants. You know now that planting seeds is only one way to get new plants. What is in a seed that enables it to produce a new plant? Let us open a large seed and examine it, to find out.

Soak a handful of bean seeds in water overnight. In the morning peel the seed coat from one of them. The seed coat keeps the seed from drying out (Fig. 205). Now divide the two halves of the seed. Each half is a leaf, in which there is stored food for the young plant. Between these two leaves, you will find the young plant, called the *embryo* (EM-bree-oh) (Fig. 205). Can you see the embryo's small leaves and its little root? Examine these with a magnifying glass.

Plant the other soaked bean seeds in moist sand or sawdust. Every three days dig one out and make a drawing of it. Date your drawings. Do your notebook drawings look like those in Fig. 205?

From this work you can see that a seed is an embryo plant with its stored food, protected by a seed coat.

Since people eat the food stored in such seeds as peas and beans, and in such fruits as berries, apples, and tomatoes, the farmer wants to improve his production of seeds and fruits. Much of his time in the sum-



205 Beans develop as shown above. *Project:* Soak other kinds of seeds in water overnight. Then pull them apart and see if you can find embryos and fleshy leaves (with stored food) in them. Plant some of the seeds and compare their development with that of the bean.

mer is spent killing weeds and fighting the insects that harm plants and cut down production. You will read more about plant enemies later.

No Flowers — No Seeds

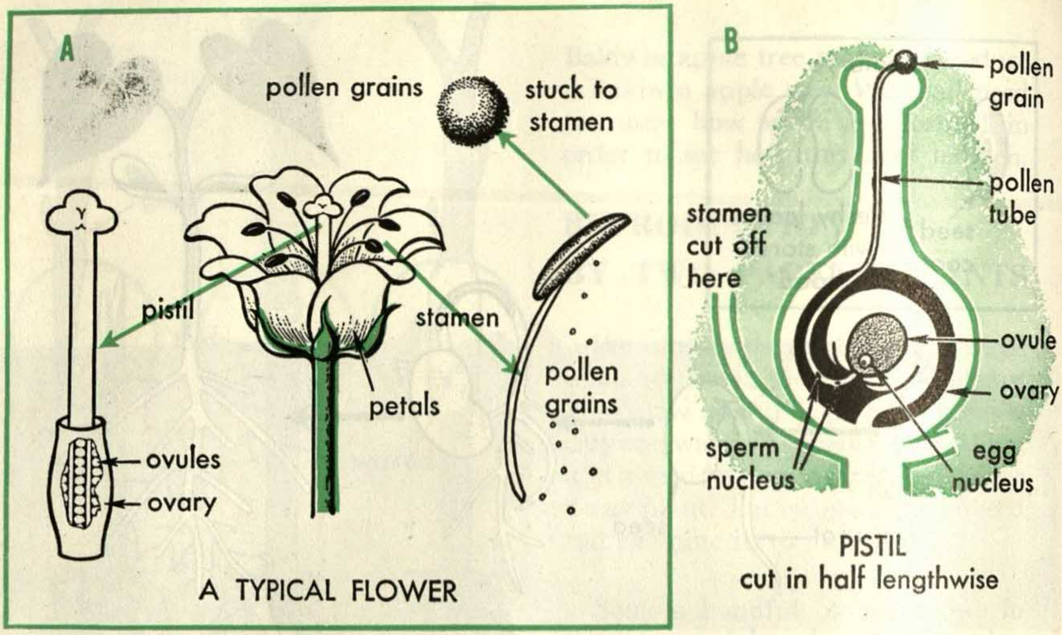
Before you read this section, look carefully at several flowers and compare them with the diagrams in Fig. 206. Perhaps you can find the flower of a lily to examine.

If you push the petals of a lily apart, you will find six long slender pinlike structures with a tiny knob on top. These are *stamens* (STAY-menz). The top of the stamen may be dusty with yellowish *pollen* (POLL-en) *grains*. If you put one of these pollen grains under the microscope you will find that it looks like those in Fig. 206A.

Now examine the thick central structure of the flower. This is the *pistil*. The top part of the pistil is sticky. Therefore, it can catch and hold the grains of pollen. The large bottom part of the pistil is the *ovary* (OH-ver-ee). It holds small oval-shaped bodies that will form into seeds. These beginnings of seeds are called *ovules* (OH-vyoolz).

The lily has six stamens and a pistil. When you examine other flowers you will find different numbers of stamens. The four o'clock has from three to five; violets have five, and buttercups have many stamens.

Some plants, like the willow and the cottonwood (Carolina poplar) have flowers with stamens on one tree and flowers with pistils on another. Can you find staminate and



206 In B, follow the pollen tube into the ovary. When will a seed be formed? *Project:* With the microscope, study the different kinds of pollen grains of different flowers. Also cut open the ovaries and examine the differently shaped ovules.

pistillate flowers of the poplar tree? The staminate flowers will have pollen grains at the tip of each tiny stamen. The pistillate flowers will have a tiny ovary in which the seed will develop (Fig. 207).

Stamens and pistils are the most important parts of a flower. Without them no seed would be produced. Let us now see the way in which seeds are formed.

Fertilization

Seeds cannot be formed unless the pollen grains unite with the ovules. What is in the pollen grain and ovule that is responsible for making the seed?

Scientists have found that both pollen grains and ovules are special kinds of cells, each having nuclei. In the pollen, we find male or *sperm* nuclei; in the ovules, female or *egg* nuclei. Before a seed can be formed, a sperm nucleus must unite with an egg nucleus (Fig. 206B). But the pollen falls on the sticky pistil. How does the sperm nucleus get down from the pollen grain on the sticky pistil to the egg nucleus in the ovule?

If the stamens and pistil are in the same flower, the pollen grains can be knocked off the stamen onto the sticky pistil by the least movement of the flower. In other plants, the wind or insects carry pollen from one flower to another. After the pollen reaches the pistil, each pollen grain grows a long pollen tube. This tube carries the sperm nucleus to the egg nucleus in the ovule. When the tube reaches the ovule, the egg and sperm unite. This union of the egg and sperm is called *fertilization.* As soon as the egg is fertilized, it begins to develop into a seed.

The farmer will not get seed and

fruits from his plants or trees unless the flowers are *pollinated* (POLL-ih-nayt-ed). The pollen must reach the pistil and then the ovule. Then fertilization takes place, and the seed begins to form.

For most crops the farmer need not worry about pollination. Wheat and oats are self-pollinated; that is, the plant's own pollen falls on its pistil. Examine a head of wheat or oats to see how this could happen. The wind may help the pollination of corn by carrying the pollen from the tassels to the silks. The tassels are the stamens; the silks are the pistils. Because the tassel is above the silks, the pollen usually falls on the silk.

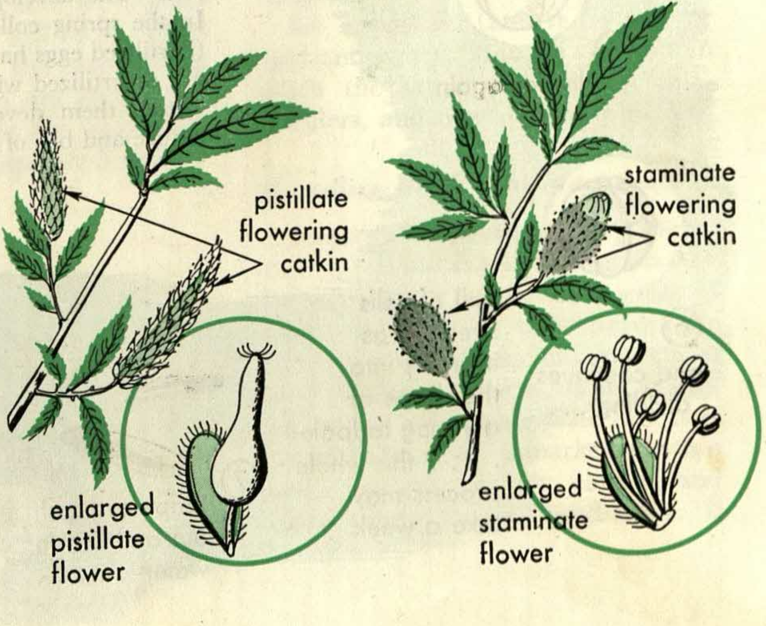
Cross-Pollination

Suppose, however, that the farmer wishes to grow crops that are not self-pollinated. Do you see his problem?

To pollinate his fruit trees, his cucumbers, his buckwheat, and his clover plants, the farmer needs the help of bees. Many farmers keep hives of honeybees for this reason. Bumblebees help, too, especially with the pollination of clover. The bees take some of the nectar and pollen in the flower for food. As they fly, they often carry the pollen of one flower to the pistil of another. When the pollen is brought from a different flower, *cross-pollination* takes place.

You will want to read more about the work of bees. On p. 406 are listed some books with more information than we have space for here. Without bees many of our food products could not be grown.

Now you can see why farmers prefer to get their young fruit trees by grafting rather than by planting seeds. Fruit trees are cross-pollinated. The ovule in a Baldwin apple may have been fertilized by pollen brought from a Greening apple tree. A new tree grown from the seed would be a cross between the Baldwin and the Greening. If the farmer were experimenting to get new kinds of apple trees, he would plant seeds, but if he wanted to be sure of the kind of tree, he would use grafting.

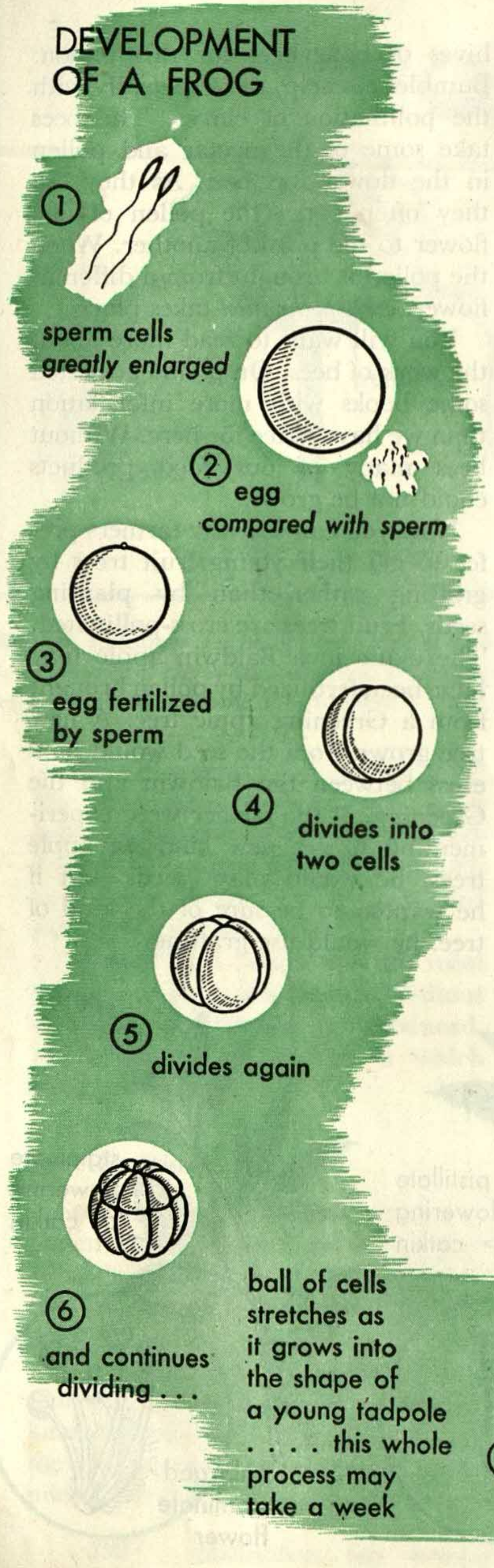

pistillate flowering catkin
enlarged pistillate flower
staminate flowering catkin
enlarged staminate flower

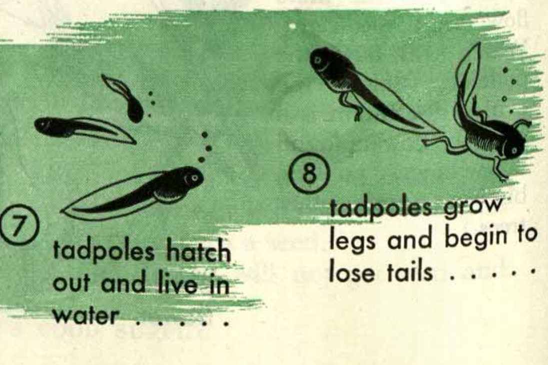
207 Two kinds of flowers of the willow — the female flowers at the left; the male flowers at the right. Which will have the pollen? Which the ovules? (A catkin is a group of flowers found in willows, poplars, birches, and other trees.)

Reproduction by One Parent or Two

In growing plants from cuttings and grafts, only one parent plant is used. This process, as you have read, is called asexual reproduction. When seeds are produced, two parents are needed. Reproduction by two parents is known as *sexual* reproduction, because two sexes are united. The male parent produces sperm (found in the pollen tube), which unites with the egg (found in the ovule) of the female parent.

There is an important difference between the offspring from just one parent (asexual reproduction) and the offspring of two parents (sexual reproduction). With one parent, there is only one kind of nucleus to make the offspring what they are. We can therefore be sure that they will all be the same as the parent. With two parents, there may be two different kinds of nuclei. For example, if a male nucleus from a McIntosh apple tree unites with the female nucleus


DEVELOPMENT OF A FROG
①
sperm cells greatly enlarged
②
egg compared with sperm
③
egg fertilized by sperm
④
divides into two cells
⑤
divides again
⑥
and continues dividing . . .
ball of cells stretches as it grows into the shape of a young tadpole . . . . this whole process may take a week


⑦
tadpoles hatch out and live in water . . . . .
⑧
tadpoles grow legs and begin to lose tails . . . .

208 The development of a frog. *Project:* In the spring collect fertilized frogs' eggs. (Fertilized eggs have the black side floating up, unfertilized with the whitish part up.) Watch them develop. Feed the tadpoles lettuce and bits of cooked liver.

of a Northern Spy apple tree, the young tree may be like both in some ways.

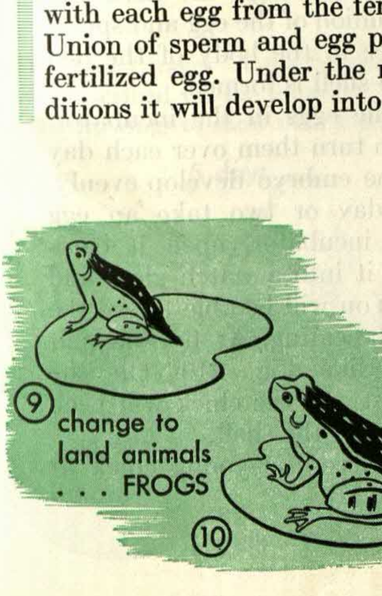
In the asexual reproduction of a Northern Spy tree, 50 of its twigs could be grafted, and the fruit grower would be sure that the new trees would be Spy trees. If he planted 50 seeds from the Spy tree, many of the young trees would be different. They might be like either parent or like both of them in some ways.

REPRODUCTION BY TWO PARENT ANIMALS

You probably know that most animals have two parents. Chickens, sheep, and horses are common examples. So is a frog (Fig. 208).

Animal Reproduction — The Frog

In the early spring, search for frogs' eggs in the small ponds and streams. They will be in a jelly-like mass. Probably the eggs will already have been fertilized; that is, a sperm from the male frog will have united with each egg from the female frog. Union of sperm and egg produces a fertilized egg. Under the right conditions it will develop into a frog.



Sperm cells are so small that they can be seen only under the microscope (Fig. 208). By moving their tails they swim rapidly until they enter an egg, which is many times larger. The frog egg is surrounded by jelly. It is also filled with whitish yolk, which will be the food of the frog embryo as it develops.

You will find it interesting to watch a frog's egg develop. With a hand lens, you will be able to see that the fertilized egg is a ball of cells. In about a week this ball of cells develops into the shape of a young tadpole.

The tadpole hatches out of the jelly and begins to feed on water weeds. It is a water animal breathing by means of its gills. As time goes on, the tadpole begins to lose its tail, and its legs appear. At the same time lungs for breathing on land are developing. Thus a water animal, a tadpole, changes into a land animal, a frog. The frog must live in a moist environment, because it breathes through its skin as well as with its lungs.

All *amphibian* (am-FIB-ee-un), or land-and-water, animals develop in much the same way. Toads, salamanders, and newts are amphibians.

Breeding Birds and Mammals

Farmers breed chickens, turkeys, and geese for market. The poultry farmer usually keeps a pure line of stock; that is, he may have only Plymouth Rock hens and roosters or only White Leghorns. This is important to the farmer if he produces poultry and eggs for market. Certain breeds are better for eating, and others better for egg production. If

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY

NORTH CAROLINA STATE COLLEGE

209 Believe it or not, you are looking at a good substitute for the mother hen. The eggs (*left*) are placed in the incubator (where the temperature is kept at about 103° F). Twenty-one days later — a tray full of chicks (right).

two parents are of the same breed, the chicks will be like their parents.

You may wish to watch fertilized hens' eggs develop into chicks in the classroom. Buy about a dozen fertilized eggs at a chicken farm. The eggs will need warmth to develop. Have you seen hens sitting on eggs to keep them warm? On many farms, eggs are kept in an incubator, which is built to hold the eggs and keep them warm while the chicks are developing. In this way, several dozen eggs can be cared for at the same time (Fig. 209). In the classroom, you may also use an incubator.

To start your incubator, put a pan of water in it to keep the air moist. Keep the temperature at 104° F.

As soon as you bring your eggs to the classroom, open one of them. The shell keeps the eggs from drying out. On the yolk you can see a whitish spot. This is where the embryo will begin to develop. The egg white and the yolk serve as food for the embryo as it develops.

Because the tiny sperm could not possibly get through the hard egg shell, the union of the egg and sperm takes place in the body of the hen before the shell is formed.

Place the eggs in the incubator. Be sure to turn them over each day to help the embryo develop evenly.

Every day or two take an egg from the incubator, open it carefully, put it into a watch glass and cover it. You will be able to see the tiny heart beating. At five days it will look like Fig. 210. On the twenty-first day the chick will peck its way out of the shell.

Do not feed the young chick at

first. It has enough stored food from the egg yolk to last for 48 hours. Keep it warm, and in two days it will be an active little chick, ready to feed itself.

Not all birds are like the chick that is born almost ready to feed itself. Some, like the robin, are born helpless and without feathers, in a nest high above the ground. They depend upon their parents to bring them food.

Mammals on the Farm

The mammals on the farm — the cattle, pigs, sheep, goats, and horses — are even better protected during their development than are the birds. A developing chick is protected only by its shell. But most mammals are fertilized and develop inside the body of the mother. They are born alive, and after birth the mother cares for them and protects them.

All mammals feed their young milk from their milk (mammary) glands. No other animal group feeds in this way.

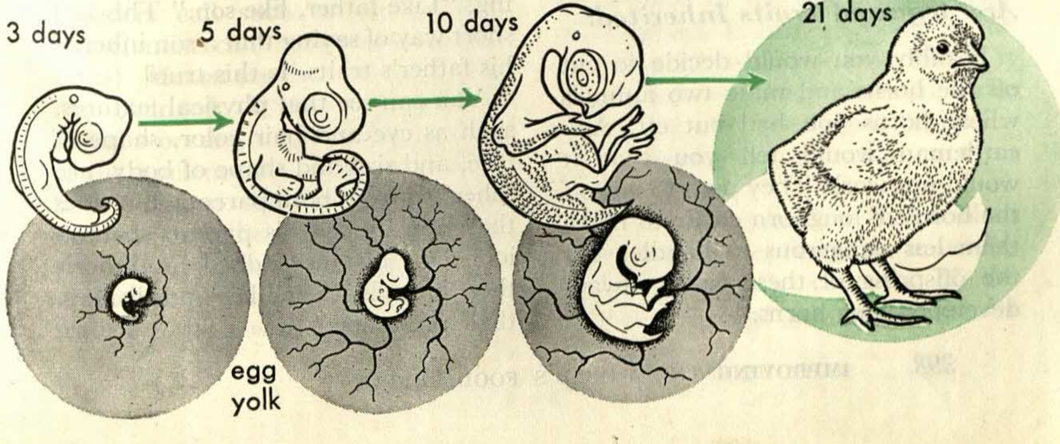
The farmer is kept very busy providing food for the mammals on his farm. The mother animal must have plenty of food not only for herself but also to provide milk for her baby. When it is old enough, the young mammal can be turned out to pasture or given prepared food.

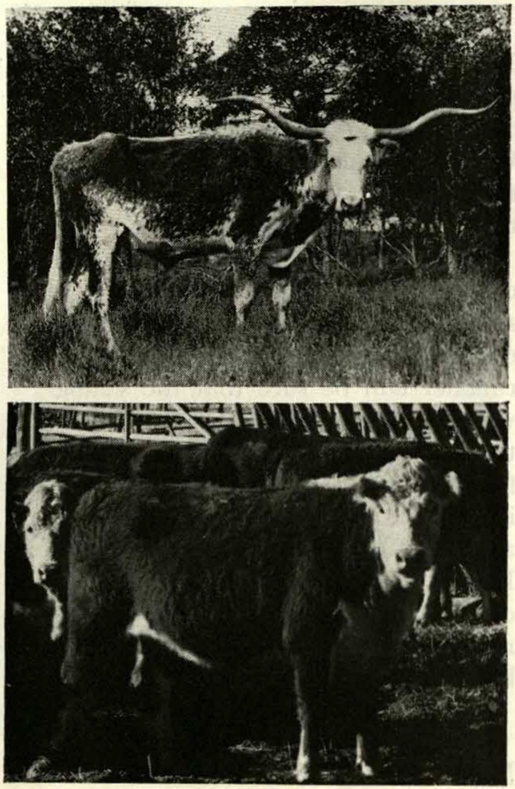
Most farmers or ranchers raise only one breed of cattle or hogs or sheep. Since the male and female are of the same breed, the farmer or rancher can be sure that the young will be like its parents. He keeps only the strongest and best of his animals for breeding. Thus he is always working to improve animal production and the food supply for the market. However, he does not depend only on the same kinds of plants and animals. He tries to develop new and better types. Let us see how.

NEW FORMS FROM OLD

You must have been to a movie recently in which you saw a western cattle ranch. Did you see any longhorn cattle? Probably not. Longhorn cattle, as you can see from Fig. 211, are dangerous animals. These animals would be hard to handle. When

210 Four "stages" in the development of a chick from a fertilized egg. If you do the experiment described on the opposite page, you will find some stages not shown below. *Project:* Make drawings to show the "stages" you see if you do the experiment.





U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE AND STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

211 Above, a longhorn. Scientists have bred heavier, much safer hornless animals like the shorthorn below.

shipped to market in boxcars, they would fight and gore each other. You can see that a breed of shorthorns would be better to raise than longhorns. As it happens, shorthorn cattle are heavier; they have more beef. How would you go about developing such a breed?

Are Acquired Traits Inherited?

Possibly you would decide to cut off the horns and mate two animals whose horns you had cut off. Any cattleman would tell you that it would not work. They used to cut off the horns of longhorn cattle to make them less dangerous to handle. Yet the offspring of these cattle always developed long horns.

Cattlemen know that the trait of growing long horns is inherited. In human beings, eye and hair color, shape of face, nose, ears, and height are among the traits we inherit. Scientists call any physical trait which is not inherited an *acquired trait*. If hair is dyed, for instance, the new color is an acquired trait.

August Weismann (VYSS-mahn), a scientist, wondered whether acquired characteristics could be inherited. He wanted proof. In the late nineteenth century he began working to find out. He took some young mice and cut off their tails. When they became adult mice, he mated them. Would the offspring have tails or not? They all had tails. He cut off the tails again. He mated this second generation, but again the offspring were born with tails. Weismann did this for many generations of mice, until he was sure that having a tail was an *inherited trait*. He concluded from his experiments that acquired traits cannot be inherited (Fig. 212).

We see now why the hornlessness gained by cutting off the horns of cattle is an acquired trait. It cannot be passed on to the offspring.

Applying These Facts to Yourself

No doubt you have heard the saying, "Like father, like son." This is a short way of saying that a son inherits his father's traits. Is this true?

You can see that physical features, such as eye and hair color, shape of face, and size and shape of body, are inherited from both parents. But does the child inherit his parents' behavior? For instance, does he inherit their hatreds, their likes and dislikes, their prejudices?

If you think a moment you will know that such things are learned, not inherited. They are acquired traits and are taught to children by their family and friends, by their teachers, the radio, the television, and the movies. These acquired traits cannot be passed on by inheritance; each generation must learn them for themselves. A man's knowledge of mathematics or music or science is acquired. His children, therefore, must go through the work of learning mathematics, science, or music.

What then can be inherited? Scientists today believe that the only traits that can be passed on to the offspring are those that are present in the nuclei of sperms and eggs of the parents.

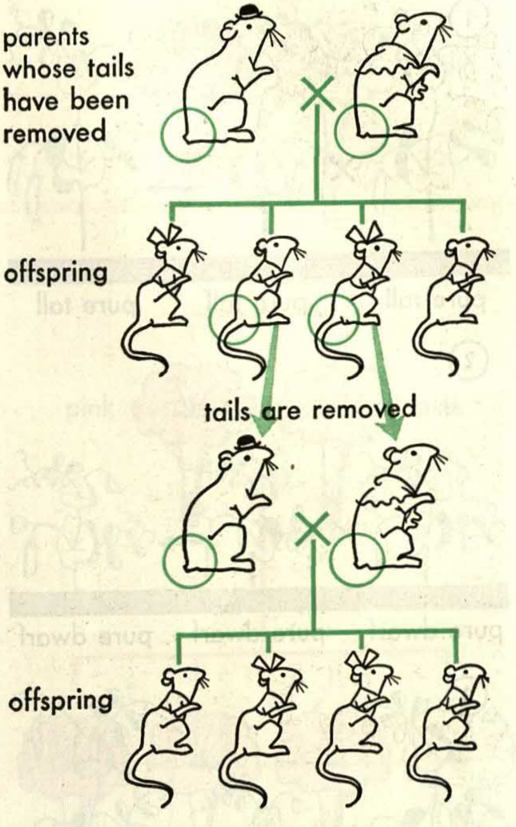
Then is it hopeless for cattlemen to try to breed shorthorned cattle? Let us go on.

Mutants

How can we get a breed of cattle with short horns if we cannot get rid of the long horns by cutting them off? The answer is that we must wait for an *accident in inheritance.*

Have you ever seen a white crow or a white robin? They are called *albinos* (al-BY-nohz). They are an accident in heredity. Such accidents are very rare, but they do happen. Breeders call such accidents *sports,* but scientists call them *mutants* (MYOO-tants). *Mutant* means something that has changed. When a change or *mutation* occurs, some of the contents of the nucleus of a sperm or egg has been changed. This change produces the new trait. Scientists do not know yet how such changes happen.

How can you test whether a new trait is a *mutation* or an *acquired trait?*

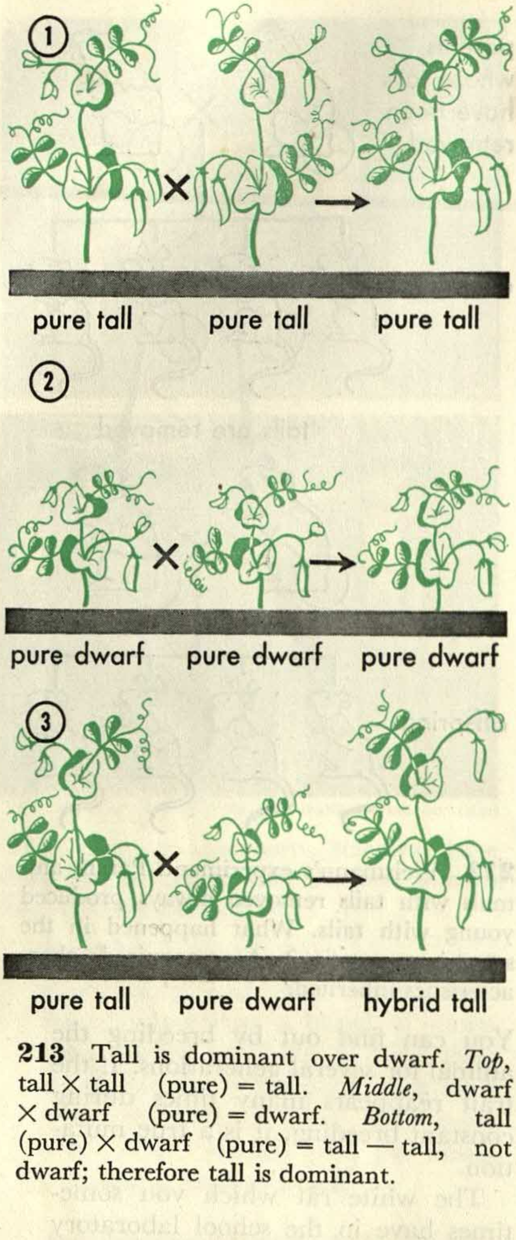


212 Weismann's experiment. Parent animals with tails removed always produced young with tails. What happened in the second generation? Are acquired characteristics inherited?

You can find out by breeding the animal for several generations. If the trait reappears many times during constant breeding, it is a true mutation.

The white rat which you sometimes have in the school laboratory is a mutant. It first appeared in the offspring of two gray rats. When it was mated to another white rat, more white rats were produced. White fur was, therefore, a mutation, not an acquired trait.

Now let us go back to the problem of the longhorns. Scientists have discovered that the contents of the sperms and eggs are responsible for



213 Tall is dominant over dwarf. *Top,* tall × tall (pure) = tall. *Middle,* dwarf × dwarf (pure) = dwarf. *Bottom,* tall (pure) × dwarf (pure) = tall — tall, not dwarf; therefore tall is dominant.

such traits as long horns. By now you have probably guessed that a mutant shorthorn was found in a herd of longhorns. The breeder who wanted to get more shorthorns followed these principles of breeding:

1. He selected the trait he wanted. In this case, it was short horns. His shorthorned animal was a mutant.

2. He mated his shorthorned animal with a longhorned animal. Some of the offspring born had the trait for short horns.

3. Then he mated only shorthorned animals. This inbreeding produced only shorthorned animals.

Because of such experiments, longhorned cattle are rapidly being replaced with the more desirable shorthorned breeds.

What Characteristics Can Be Inherited?

In a monastery in Austria in 1850, a monk was experimenting with pea plants. He was trying to find out what traits could be inherited. The experiments of this Austrian monk, Gregor Mendel (MEN-del) (Fig. 216), are today the basis of all that scientists know about the passing on of traits from parents to children.

For two years Mendel had worked to produce a pure line of tall pea plants and another pure line of dwarf pea plants. What is a *pure line?* Whenever Mendel mated two pure tall plants, the offspring were always tall (Fig. 213). Since the offspring were always tall, the parent plants must have been pure-line tall plants. He did the same thing with his dwarf plants. When he mated two pure dwarf plants, the offspring were always dwarf.

A pure line always produces in the offspring the one trait for which the parents were bred. Tallness was in the nuclei of the tall plants; dwarfness was in the nuclei of the dwarf.

The next step in Mendel's experiments was to mate a pure-line tall pea plant with a pure-line dwarf plant. What do you think happened? The result was very puzzling: all the offspring were tall. Not a dwarf plant appeared, even though he mated pure tall plants with dwarf plants again and again. He had made another important discovery.

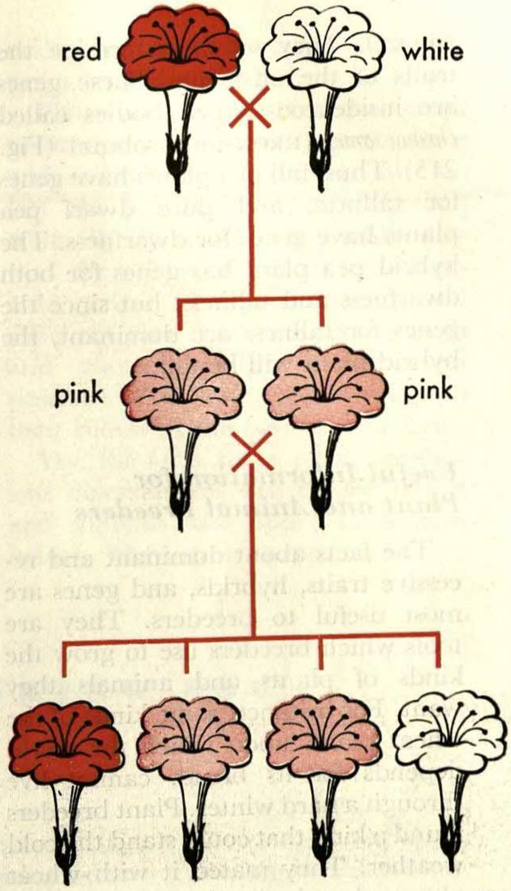
Mendel had found that the trait of tallness in pea plants masked, or hid, the dwarfness. This had to be true, since he had mated pure tall plants with ones that were pure dwarf. Not one dwarf plant had appeared among the offspring. In other words, even though the material from the nuclei of the dwarf plants was there, in the offspring the trait of tallness was *dominant*. The hidden trait of dwarfness Mendel called a *recessive* trait.

There are many dominant and recessive traits in your own inheritance. Brown or black eye color is dominant over blue eye color. Blue eye color is recessive. Dark hair color is dominant over blond.

Since the time of Gregor Mendel, other scientists have discovered that some traits are neither dominant nor recessive. The traits may blend, in fact. For instance, when a pure red-flowered four-o'clock is mated with a pure white one, the offspring are neither red nor white. They are pink (Fig. 214). Neither red nor white is dominant in four-o'clocks.

Hybrids

You may have heard of hybrid plants — hybrid corn, for example. What is meant by the term *hybrid?* It is the opposite of pure-line. When the pure-line tall pea plant was mated or "crossed" with a dwarf pea plant, the offspring was a hybrid. Even though it looked tall it still contained the hidden trait of dwarfness in its cells. It was no longer a pure-line plant. Pink four-o'clocks are also hybrids. They have in them something that makes for redness and whiteness.



214 Red × white four-o'clocks = all pinks. But pink × pink results in red, pink, and white four-o'clocks. The pinks are, therefore, hybrids; they have the characteristics for red and white in them.

The Discovery of Genes

Have you been wondering what it is in the nuclei of sperm and egg cells that decides the traits that will show up in the offspring? Since 1900, scientists have been looking for the answer to this question. After years of study they have found in tiny bodies the nuclei of cells. These microscopic bodies are called *genes*

(JEENZ). They set or determine the traits of the offspring. These genes are inside rod-shaped bodies called *chromosomes* (KROH-muh-sohmz) (Fig. 215). Thus, tall pea plants have genes for tallness, and pure dwarf pea plants have genes for dwarfness. The hybrid pea plant has genes for both dwarfness and tallness, but since the genes for tallness are dominant, the hybrid plant will be tall.

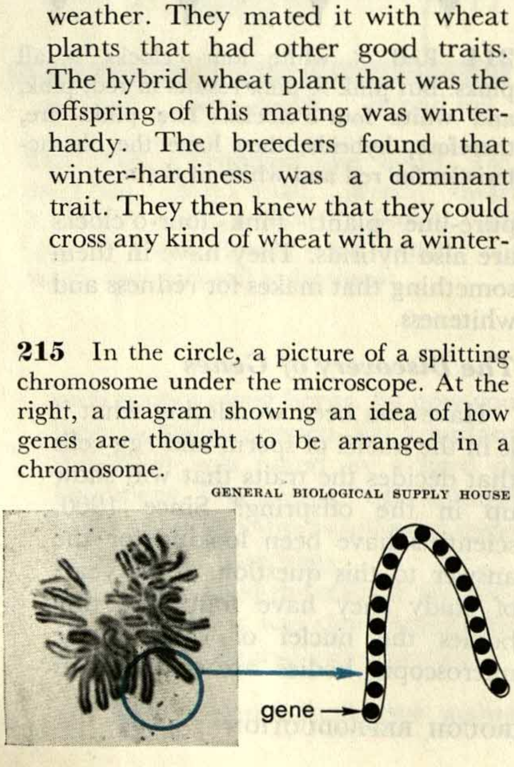
Useful Information for Plant and Animal Breeders

The facts about dominant and recessive traits, hybrids, and genes are most useful to breeders. They are tools which breeders use to grow the kinds of plants and animals they want. For instance, some kinds of the wheat plant, upon which the world depends for its bread, cannot live through a hard winter. Plant breeders found a kind that could stand the cold weather. They mated it with wheat plants that had other good traits. The hybrid wheat plant that was the offspring of this mating was winter-hardy. The breeders found that winter-hardiness was a dominant trait. They then knew that they could cross any kind of wheat with a winter-hardy kind and the resulting plant would be able to stand cold weather.

The breeder's job is a search for desirable genes. Desirable genes are those that will benefit man. Short-horned cattle produce more beef than longhorned cattle; winter-hardy wheat produces good wheat that will not be killed by winter weather.

215 In the circle, a picture of a splitting chromosome under the microscope. At the right, a diagram showing an idea of how genes are thought to be arranged in a chromosome.

GENERAL BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY HOUSE



BROWN BROTHERS

216 Gregor Mendel, a monk, whose very important experiments on inheritance in garden peas form the basis of what we know of how plants and animals inherit their physical traits.

Are Inherited Genes the Only Cause of Traits?

If you have been thinking that traits are determined only by genes, you are wrong. Heredity is only part of the story. You have both inherited and acquired traits. Where and how you live and what you eat also have much to do with the traits you show.

A baby may have genes for good straight bones. However, without the right amount of vitamin D, the sunshine vitamin, his bones may not grow straight. The baby may get rickets from the lack of the D vitamin. Here it is the environment, not the genes, which is to be blamed for crooked bones.

A cow may have genes for good milk production. If the farmer fails to give the cow good food, fresh water, and the right care, the cow may never produce as much milk as she could. However, if she does not have the genes for good production of milk, a good environment cannot make her produce more than the genes have determined.

Plant and animal breeders work to produce better and better plants and animals. For breeding, they select those with the best inherited traits. By doing this, they make sure that the offspring will inherit desirable genes. Then the farmers and ranchers give these selected animals and plants the best environment possible. The best traits develop to their fullest in the best environment.

Yes, the facts about what heredity and environment can do for plants and animals also apply to human beings. They apply to you.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

asexual reproduction
cross-pollination
cutting
egg
embryo
fertilization
grafting
ovary
ovule
pistil
pollination
sexual reproduction
sperm
stamen

1. a female cell
2. a part of a flower that holds pollen grains
3. the baby plant or animal in the early stages of its development
4. the carrying of pollen from one flower to another
5. reproduction from one parent
6. reproduction from two parents
7. the part of a flower that contains the ovary with its ovules
8. any portion of a plant (leaf, stem, root) used for growing a new plant by asexual reproduction
9. the male cell
10. the part of the plant that produces the egg cells
11. the transfer of pollen from the stamen to the pistil of the same or different flowers
12. joining the cut branch of one plant to another rooted plant
13. a part inside the ovary where the egg is to be found
14. the union of the male sperm cell with the female egg cell

Test Yourself

a. If you understand the key words below, you can place most of them correctly in the spaces in the statements which follow them. Complete the statements in your notebook. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

acquired trait
chromosomes
dominant
environment
genes
heredity
hybrid
inherited trait
mutant
mutation
pure line
recessive

1. Gregor Mendel's experiments with . . . pea plants showed that the trait of tallness is . . . over the . . . trait of dwarfness.
2. The mule is the offspring of a donkey and a horse. It is a . . . animal.
3. The . . . in the parent cells determine what traits can be inherited by the offspring.
4. A trait that cannot be passed on from parent to child is an . . . .
5. A . . . is an accident of heredity.
6. We have learned that both . . . and . . . are important in the development of plants and animals.

b. Are the following sentences true or false? If they are false, rewrite them in your notebook to make them true. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Potatoes are usually grown by planting potato seeds.
2. The paramecium multiplies by dividing.
3. Asexual reproduction is a method used to make sure that a plant reproduces others like it.
4. All living things come from living things.
5. The offspring of two parent plants will always look alike.
6. Grafting is a form of sexual reproduction.
7. Pollen grains are sperm (male) cells.
8. A female cocker spaniel mated to a male cocker spaniel can produce only cocker spaniels.
9. The eggs of birds are fertilized after the eggs are laid.
10. In sexual reproduction two parent cells are needed.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. Bring to your classroom an ear of corn showing some undeveloped kernels. Why did these kernels not develop?

2. Grow a carrot plant from a root (asexual reproduction). Be sure the carrot still has some green leaves at the top. Grow an onion plant from a bulb, and a begonia plant from a cutting.

3. *Egg development.* In the spring, collect frog or toad eggs. Allow some to develop at room temperature. Keep others in a cool place. Which develop faster? Keep a daily time record of their

growth. Make complete drawings of the stages of development.

4. You may be able to find some turtle eggs near the shore of a lake or stream, even though the female turtle usually covers the eggs with sand or soft soil. Take three or four of the eggs to your home or classroom, put them into a box of moist sand and set them in the sunlight. Be sure to keep the sand moist so that the eggs will not dry out too much. As soon as the little turtles hatch, put them into a terrarium where there are soil, water, and growing plants.

5. You may wish to raise guppies, a type of tropical fish. Get a book of instructions from a pet shop or library to help you. *Exotic Aquarium Fishes*, by William I. Innes, published by the Innes Publishing Co., Philadelphia, will give you the information you need.

6. Sow some radish or beet seeds in a row in your garden or in a box of soil in the classroom. When the plants are a few inches tall, decide which plants should be pulled out to make room for the best plants to grow. How do you decide which plants to pull and which ones to encourage? Does anything in this chapter help you with your decisions?

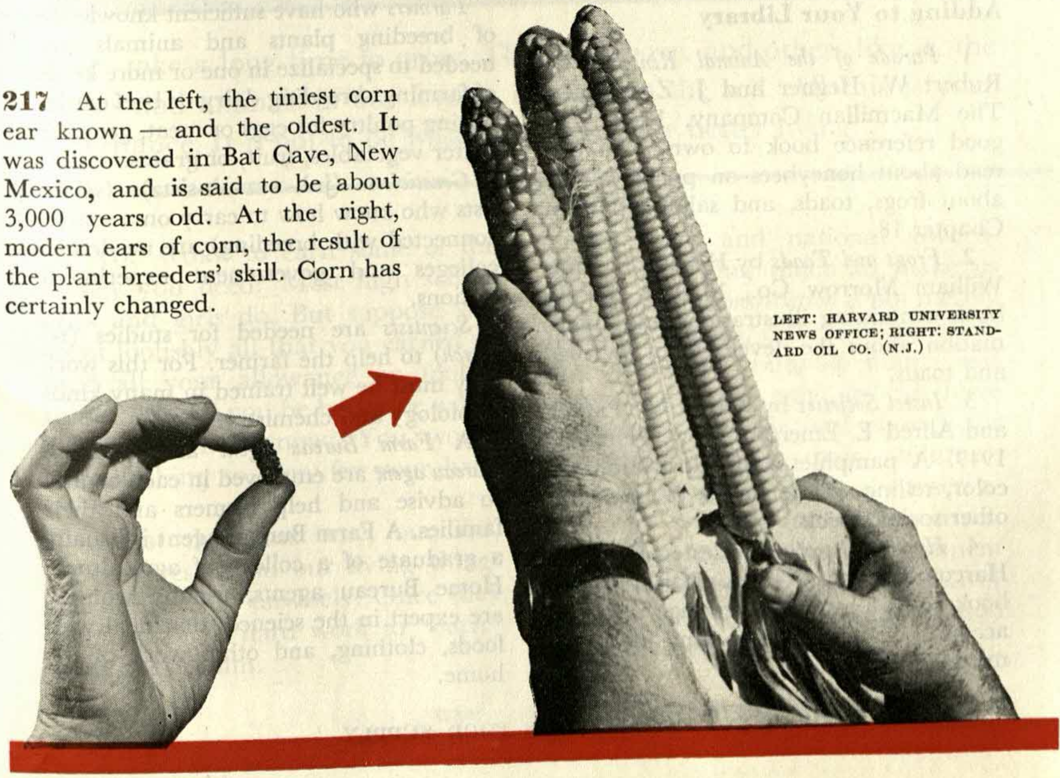
7. *Rat experiment.* If your school has white (albino) rats and hooded black rats, mate the two kinds. What will the offspring be? When the young rats are born, decide which trait is dominant.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. This article appeared in a newspaper:

COW COMPLETES TEST

With 776 pounds of butterfat and 19,545 pounds of milk to her credit, a registered Holstein-Friesian (HOHL-steen·FREE-zhun) cow has completed a 364-day production test in official Herd Improvement Registry. Her record averages approximately 25 quarts of milk daily for the period covered by her test.



217 At the left, the tiniest corn ear known — and the oldest. It was discovered in Bat Cave, New Mexico, and is said to be about 3,000 years old. At the right, modern ears of corn, the result of the plant breeders' skill. Corn has certainly changed.

LEFT: HARVARD UNIVERSITY NEWS OFFICE; RIGHT: STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

Why would a dairy farmer go to the trouble of keeping records of the amount of milk produced by any one of his cows during a year?

2. Farmer A has a 100-acre farm. Farmer B has a 200-acre farm. Both are dairy farmers. How can Farmer A produce nearly as much milk as Farmer B? Assume that both can get enough feed.

3. In Florida and other Gulf states the dairy cows were never very good until they were mated with the zebu (ZEE-byoo) cattle from southern Asia. How did the breeders work to get the present successful dairy breed? You can read about this in the 1947 Yearbook of the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

4. A breeder of flowers wants to be sure that he gets only seeds that produce a yellow iris. In order to do this, he must get the pollen of a yellow iris on a pistil of another yellow iris. How can he do this?

5. Sometimes you see an ear of corn with kernels of different colors. What do you think is the reason for this?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Parade of the Animal Kingdom* by Robert W. Hegner and J. Z. Hegner, The Macmillan Company, 1942, is a good reference book to own. You can read about honeybees on pp. 236–239; about frogs, toads, and salamanders in Chapter 18.

2. *Frogs and Toads* by Herbert S. Zim, William Morrow Co., 1950. A simple book containing illustrations and information about the development of frogs and toads.

3. *Insect Societies* by Bertha M. Parker and Alfred E. Emerson, Row, Peterson, 1949. A pamphlet with illustrations in color, telling of the habits of bees and other social insects.

4. *Human Growth* by Lester F. Beck, Harcourt, Brace, 1949. A clearly written book, well illustrated, giving a simple account of reproduction and development.

5. *The Wonder of Life* by Milton I. Levine and Jean H. Seligman, Simon and Schuster, 1940. This book is another introduction to the facts of early development.

6. *Elementary Lessons in Gardening* by Paul R. Young, National Garden Institute, 1368 North High St., Columbus, Ohio, 1953. This booklet will give you many pointers on reproducing plants in the house and in the garden.

7. From the United States Department of Agriculture get the Yearbooks for 1935, 1937, and 1947. These books — about 1,000 pages each — are full of information about breeders and special breeds of plants and animals.

8. *New You and Heredity* by Amram Scheinfeld, J. B. Lippincott, 1950. This book is most interesting reading about the inheritance of man's traits. It discusses such traits as baldness, musical talent, red hair, and many others.

Careers for You

Farmers who have sufficient knowledge of breeding plants and animals are needed to specialize in one or more kinds of farming: breeding dairy or beef cattle, raising poultry for eggs or meat, growing better vegetables, fruit, or grains.

Geneticists (juh-NET-uh-sistz) (scientists who know how to carry on research connected with breeding) are needed in colleges and government experiment stations.

Scientists are needed for studies (*research*) to help the farmer. For this work they must be well trained in many kinds of biology and chemistry.

A *Farm Bureau agent* and a *Home Bureau agent* are employed in each county to advise and help farmers and their families. A Farm Bureau agent is usually a graduate of a college of agriculture; Home Bureau agents, usually women, are expert in the sciences that deal with foods, clothing, and other work of the home.

CHAPTER 21

Wise Use of Our Inheritance

Trees take a long time to grow. The tree above, and others like it, the plants and animals in our forests, depend on the soil. All this is your inheritance. It is not to be wasted, but used for better living.

Do you work to earn some of the money you need? Most high school boys and girls do. But suppose you spent foolishly all that you earned or used all your allowance on foolish things. Would you be better or worse off a year from now? You would have nothing to show for your hard work.

In just the same way, our soil, water, forests, and our living things can be used up unwisely. Once they are spent, it is hard work to "earn" them back again.

Our state and national governments are doing much to make us see the need. *Conservation* is not merely saving; it means, rather, using wisely and protecting valuable plants and animals. In that way we can have enough for our use and enough for our children and their children's children. As an example of conservation, the wise use of our resources, let us look at what our government has done to save the Columbia River salmon, an important source of food for many people.

At the same time every year, salmon come in from the ocean and start up the Columbia River. Nothing stops them. They jump small falls. If they fail at the first try, they jump again and again until they gain the quiet waters above. Where the falls are too high for the salmon to jump, men of the conservation service have built "fish ladders." These ladders are a series of stone basins (Fig. 218).

Finally, in the upper branches of the river, the females lay their eggs and the males deposit sperm over them. Then the adult salmon die. Soon the young of the salmon are hatched (Fig. 218).

What happens to the young? They grow for a while and then start on a long, hard journey down the river to the ocean. Those that do not die on the way grow to adults in the ocean. In about three years they start the long trip back up the same river, over the fish ladders to the exact place where they were hatched. Here they spawn and die as their parents did.

When the huge Grand Coulee Dam was built on the Columbia River, scientists of the Conservation Service knew that the fish could never pass this great dam on their journey up the river. So they began a conservation experiment.

First, the experimenting scientists caught thousands of the female salmon and shipped them to hatcheries. There the eggs of the females were removed. The milt of the male, which contains the sperms, was mixed with these eggs. As soon as the young hatched, they were placed *below* the Grand Coulee in the rivers which flow into the Columbia River. Many of these fish were clipped through the tail so they could be recognized, and then allowed to swim out to the sea.

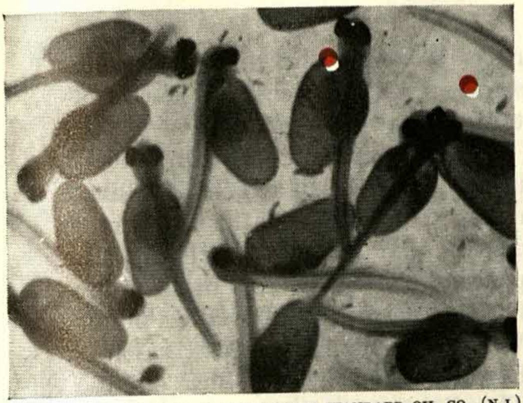
The scientists knew that the salmon would come back to spawn, but would they try to get up the face of this dam and kill themselves trying? Or would they go back to the rivers below the dam in which they had been placed?

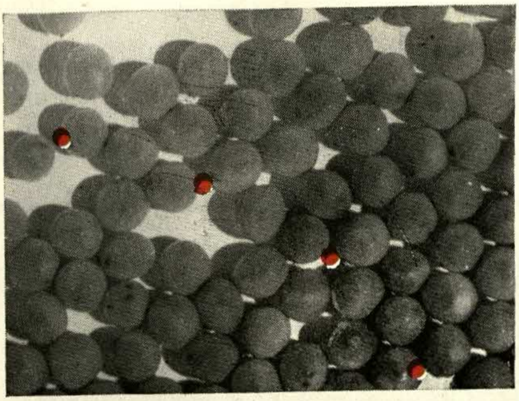
When spawning time came (three years later), the grown salmon returned. The men watched anxiously to see if their experiment would work. Sure enough, here were the fish with marked tails. They were not killing themselves on the rocks of Grand Coulee; instead, they were stopping at the streams below in the exact spot where they were first placed by the scientists. A valuable food supply and a quarter of a billion dollar industry had been saved by the skilled scientists of the Conservation Service.

The Problem

Not more than 150 years ago, states like Pennsylvania, Ohio, and Indiana were covered with forests in which roamed many wild animals. The forests have largely disappeared, cut down to make room for homes, factories, and farms. The animals, robbed of their natural homes and killed for food or for sport, have been disappearing rapidly. Once there were great herds of bison (buffalo) roaming the plains. Now the few remaining bison are in wildlife refuges, like the one in Jackson Hole in Wyoming. There they are fed, protected, and cared for on government land.

Birds, fish, and useful wild mammals are protected by game laws. Hunting and fishing seasons are kept short so that not too many of the animals will be killed. Limits are set



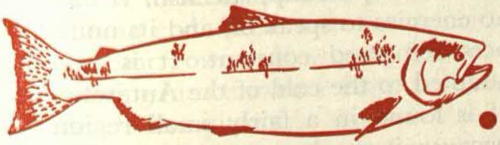


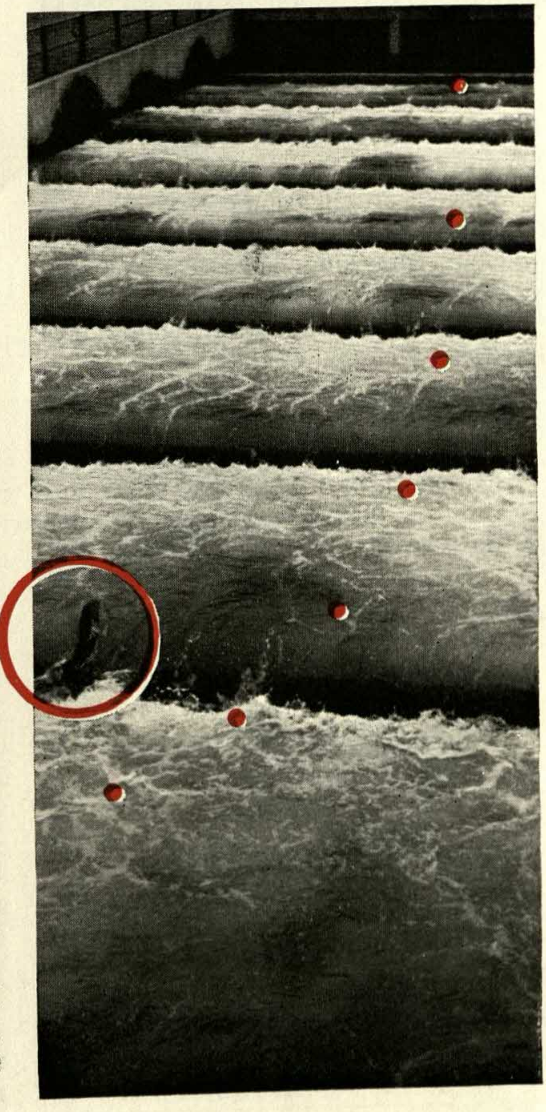
U.S. FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE AND STANDARD OIL CO. (N.J.)

also on the number of each kind of animal that a sportsman may take. During the rest of the year, the game is allowed to reproduce. Thus the killed animals are replaced.

No Limits to the Catch

Just as the catch or bag is limited for certain animals, so there is no limit on others. Some animals are harmful to our food supply, and their numbers must be kept down. For instance, in many states there is no limit in the hunting season on the number of rabbits that may be taken. Rabbits reproduce very fast. They may ruin vegetable gardens or crops or destroy trees and shrubs by gnawing at the bark. Hunting keeps the number down.





218 Here are salmon jumping the fish ladders at Bonneville Dam on the Columbia River. The ladders help the salmon reach the upper river where they spawn and lay the eggs you see, *above right*. These develop into the young salmon, or fry, *above left* (shown with yolk sacs they use for food).

Why must we limit the catch, or have a closed season, for some animals? Why do we have open season on others — killing all the animals we can? The answer lies in the meaning of two words, *adaptation* and *balance*.

BEING ADAPTED

Adaptation means being suited to live and reproduce in certain surroundings or *environment*. For instance, the body and fins of a fish enable it to swim in water. Its gills enable it to get oxygen from water. A fish is not adapted to living on land; it dies in such an environment. A rabbit is adapted for breathing air. So are you. Your lungs are not adapted to breathing oxygen from water.

Birds are adapted to flying. Their hollow bones give them light bodies; their wings and tails, as well as their streamlined bodies, fit them for movement in air (Fig. 219). Their oiled feathers protect their bodies against rain or the water in which some birds swim.

Desert plants, like the cactus, can live on small amounts of water. Many of them store it for use in times of drought (Fig. 219). However, you will find no beech trees or geraniums in a desert. They are not adapted to a desert environment.

The Price of Not Adapting

No doubt you have visited a museum and seen the bones of ancient reptiles, such as *dinosaurs* (dy-nuh-sawrs) (Fig. 219). You may have seen the huge king dinosaur, 18 feet high, its great head filled with pointed teeth, each the size of your fist. You may have seen the thunder reptile, some 40 tons in weight. These creatures do not exist today.

Why did they die out? One theory is that the land in which they lived changed from a wet, lush, swampy one to a land that was fairly dry and prairie-like. Many of these huge, fierce-looking reptiles lived on plants. When the plants they used as food began to die out, they died out too. The dinosaurs were not fitted to the new environment.

How would you judge whether a plant or animal is well adapted to its environment? By the fact that it lives? Scientists use at least two standards to test adaptation. They ask: Does the living thing reproduce its own numbers? How widely is it distributed, that is, where is it to be found on the earth? Let us apply these standards to several test cases.

The Emperor Penguin

The scientists with Admiral Byrd's expedition to the Antarctic carefully studied the habits of the emperor penguin. They noticed that it could not fly. They observed how its young hatched in the below-zero weather. They noticed how tough the bird was. They saw how easily it got its food — fish, shrimp, shellfish. It had no enemies to speak of, and its numbers remained constant. It is well adapted to the cold of the Antarctic. It is found in a fairly small region because it needs a special environment in which to live.

Man

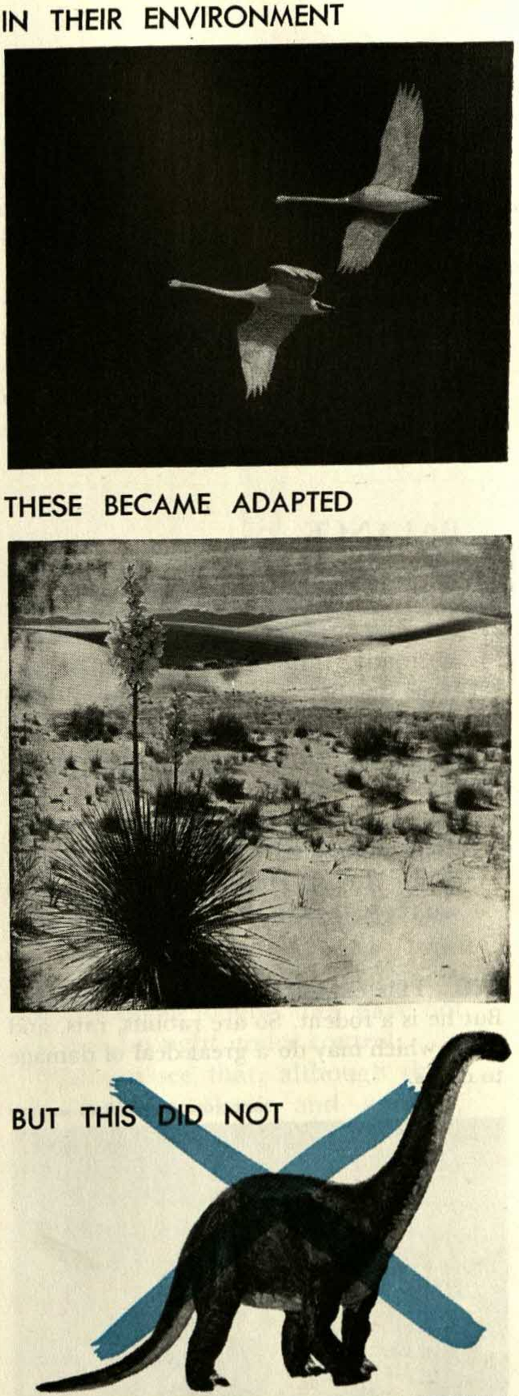
Because he has a remarkable brain, man is especially good at mastering many kinds of environment. His airplanes enable him to compete with the birds; his submarines and ships with the fish; his automobiles with the horse. His clothing and his heating devices enable him to master cold climates; his refrigeration systems enable him to master hot and cold climates. He is increasing his numbers. He has spread over the earth. He is, therefore, well adapted to the present environment. His environment takes in nearly the whole earth. This entire book is really the story of man's ability to master his environment.

If we apply the standards of adaptation, we see that both the emperor penguin and man reproduce their numbers. The emperor penguin is adapted to a special environment, but man can master almost any environment.

Man's Chief Competitors

Scientists who study insects and their habits tell us that if we should stop our fight against insects for one season, we should soon lose our dominant position on earth. The scientists point out that there are almost 600,000 different kinds of insects. They live in all parts of the world. They greatly outnumber man. Man's fight against insects goes on without end. Right now we are holding our own. However, disease-carrying insects make it impossible for man to live in certain areas of Africa.

Another of man's competitors is a group of animals called *rodents* (ROH-d'nts). In this group are rats, mice, rabbits, prairie dogs, beavers, and other gnawing animals (Fig. 220). They reproduce in large numbers and eat grains and other plants that man uses.



NATIONAL PARK SERVICE AND AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

219 By slow change in heredity birds and desert plants became adapted. The dinosaur may have changed too slowly.

The insects and the rodents are so well adapted to the environment that they compete with man wherever he is. Man has to keep them in check, or they will destroy his food supply or kill him with the diseases they carry.

So man tries to keep his competitors' numbers down. He tries to keep a balance between himself and his competitors. In fact, he tries to keep a balance among all plants and animals.

BALANCE

There are about one million different kinds of animals and one-third as many different kinds of plants. How do these plants and animals live together? Why don't the biggest, the most powerful, or the fastest-multiplying plants or animals kill off the others and thus cover the earth with their own kind? Do you think they could do it? Here are several cases which will help you decide.

220 This chipmunk may do little harm. But he is a rodent. So are rabbits, rats, and mice, which may do a great deal of damage to crops.

NEW YORK ZOOLOGICAL SOCIETY

Mistake No. 1

In a Southern fishing town, the fishermen got together at town meeting and voted a bounty for every heron brought in (Fig. 221). The herons, they said, were destroying their fishing grounds.

The bounty plan worked. Herons were brought in by the dozens. Soon there were very few herons about. For a good number of years the fishermen enjoyed heavy catches. Then their catches began to get smaller again. At this point scientists were called in for advice, and here is what they found.

After the herons were killed, the fish began to multiply. They fed on water plants. However, the water plants could not keep on reproducing fast enough to feed the fish. The plants, surprisingly enough, depended on the herons. The herons' droppings supplied some of the chemicals the plants needed to make food. The plants in their turn furnished the fish with food for growth and reproduction. The fish furnished men with a livelihood and the herons with food. Thus, you see, there was a delicate balance between heron, fish, and water plants. The fishermen's mistake was to destroy this balance.

Mistake No. 2

In pictures you have seen of the African or Brazilian jungles, everything seems just to grow. That is not so, as the early Dutch settlers in Africa found out.

They sent out expeditions to kill the lions and leopards, which sometimes took one or two of their farm animals. Lions and leopards are called *carnivorous* (kahr-NIV-er-us) animals, or *carnivores* (KAHR-nih-vohrs); that is, they eat meat. Where the hunters killed most of these carnivores, the grazing animals, or *herbivores* (HER-bih-vohrs), deer and antelope, giraffe, wild boars, and rodents increased in number. Why? They had been kept down by the carnivores. Without the carnivores to keep them in check, they ate up the natural vegetation and then began to eat the farmers' crops.

In one area the herbivores made farming impossible, and the Dutch had to leave. They had learned that it was unwise to upset the balance between the carnivores and their prey, the herbivores, even though it meant that some of their cattle would be eaten.

The jungle is one large community, each living thing fitting into its proper place. Carnivores eat herbivores, herbivores eat plants, and green plants make their own food from the soil, water, and air.

The idea is summarized in an old rhyme:

> Great fleas have little fleas
> Upon their backs to bite 'em.
> And little fleas have lesser fleas,
> And so *ad infinitum*.[1]

Other Mistakes

Suppose man were to introduce an animal into an environment where it had never lived before and allow it to compete with the animals and plants already living in balance. What would happen then?

Leopold Trouvelot (troo-veh-LOW), a New Englander, brought the gypsy moth here from France in 1869. He wanted to breed a better silkworm moth. Unfortunately, some of the moths escaped. By 1900, they had become a great pest in New England, eating their way through orchards and stripping shade trees of all their leaves. Today, although they are being fought, they have not yet been brought under control.

AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

221 The heron feeds on fish. He is part of a cycle; his droppings and those of birds like him help plants grow. The fish feed on the plants. Result: a greater number of fish than the heron eats.

You can see that, although there are countless plants and animals, they are governed by two principles: First, they are adapted to the environment in which they live. Second, they live in a balance in that environment. These principles apply to elephants, Baltimore orioles, men, wheat, fish, game animals, bamboo, mosses, germs — to all living things.

Balance and Conservation

The Conservation Service protects only those animals and plants that need protection. For instance, in some states, such as Michigan and Ohio, it is against the law to hunt quail. These valuable birds, which eat weed seeds and insects, need protection, because they can just about keep their numbers at the same level.

---

[1] (AD · in-fih-NY-tuhm). It means "endlessly."

Wild flowers are protected, too. When certain flowers like wild orchids (lady's slippers), arbutus (ahr-BYOO-tus), dogwood, and mountain laurel are picked too freely, they become scarce. Laws have been passed to make it illegal to pick them. Many persons are learning to enjoy these flowers by looking at them or photographing them.

These few examples point to a very important principle of conservation: Protect the helpful wildlife whose numbers are decreasing, and reduce the numbers of those that damage crops or other animals.

Another principle is equally important: Be careful not to disturb the balance of nature by killing all of one kind of living thing or introducing a new one without its natural enemy.

Balance in a Forest Sanctuary

Wildlife refuges are set aside as homes for plants and animals that are in danger of becoming *extinct*, that is, of being wiped out completely. There is probably one or more of these sanctuaries near where you live. If you visit it you will learn much about wildlife.

Come with us to a wildlife sanctuary. Sit down here in the shade of a big tree and watch. There is a rustle in the underbrush. A big black snake moves along over a rock. The black snake is a good catcher of rats and mice. A good number of snakes helps keep down the number of mice.

There is a hawk gliding in the air overhead. Suddenly he swoops and dives down into the brush. When he rises, he has a small bird in his claws. You wonder why hawks should not be killed. They must be a danger to the other birds, you think.

In a sanctuary, only man is kept from killing plants or animals. All other living things live in balance, because they are not disturbed by man. Of course, some animals kill others, but they kill for food. Because each animal lives on other plants and animals, all of them are kept in check. Living things that depend on each other for food make a *food chain*. Look at the food chain shown in Fig. 222. The hawk cannot increase its numbers faster than its food supply. Neither can the snake, nor the mouse. In any food chain, if the food supply goes up or down, the number of plants or animals also goes up or down.

If all hawks, snakes, and foxes in the sanctuary were killed off, rats, mice, and rabbits would multiply in great numbers. Their natural enemies would be gone. They would feed on the bark of trees, and in a few years the trees would be gone. With the trees gone, birds and woods mammals would leave. The water and soil would not be held back; the rivers would be choked with mud, and the fish would die. You can see that living things live in a delicate balance that should not be upset.

Balance on a Farm

Farmers, too, are learning that keeping the balance is important. Farmer A cuts down the thickets of shrubs and trees around his cornfield. He thus drives off the quail that nest

222 Who feeds on whom? Do you see how some animals keep others under control?

in these thickets. They go to a neighboring farm where the thickets have been left. Next year the chinch bugs come, and the corn on Farmer A's farm is ruined by the bugs. On the neighbor's farm, the quail eat so many chinch bugs that the corn is saved. The quail help to balance the harmful insects.

DESTROYING PESTS

Some of the worst enemies to our production of plants and animals are insects.

You know that many insects are helpful. Without bees, for instance, we should lose $75,000,000 yearly in a honey crop. Fruit trees and other plants would not be cross-pollinated. The silkworm (one of the early stages of the silk moth) produces about 120 million pounds of silk per year. The lac insect produces a material used in making shellac. Still other insects, like the ladybird beetle and the praying mantis, help us to kill other insects that are harmful.

Many insects are pests. They destroy at least 10% of our crops each year. The Colorado potato beetle can cause serious damage to the potato crop. Corn worms can ruin a farmer's corn crop. The Mediterranean fruit fly almost destroyed the Florida fruit industry before it could be wiped out. Table 11 lists some of our insect enemies and tells how they can be controlled.

Insect Life Histories

The small white and yellow cabbage butterflies do much damage to the cabbage crop. The butterfly lays

TABLE 11 Some Insect Enemies

The Pest	*Its Destructive Work*	*How to Control It*
Codling-moth larva	Feeds on apples	Poison spray
Corn earworm	Feeds on corn	Crop rotation, poison spray
Cotton boll weevil	Larva feeds on cotton pods, called bolls	Spraying
Western grasshopper	Feeds on all grasses	Chemical spraying, fire (when large numbers infest the fields)
Gypsy moth	Feeds on all trees (New England)	Poison spray, sticky bands on trees
Potato beetle	Feeds on potato vines	Sprays
Chinch bug	Feeds on corn	Sprays
Japanese beetle	Feeds on wide variety of plants	Sprays
Cottony-cushion scale	Sucks juice of citrus fruits	Ladybird beetle
Flies, mosquitoes	Annoy livestock; carry disease	DDT*

* Spray carefully. With all sprays, follow instructions, and do not breathe in spray, which is thought to be harmful to man and livestock.

its eggs on a cabbage leaf. In a week or so, each egg hatches into a tiny, green, wormlike animal, a *larva* (LAHR-vuh). These larvae feed on the cabbage leaves. When they are about an inch long, they form a *pupa* (PYOO-puh) (Fig. 224). While they are in the pupal stage, they change from a wormlike creature to an adult butterfly. The butterfly then lays more eggs.

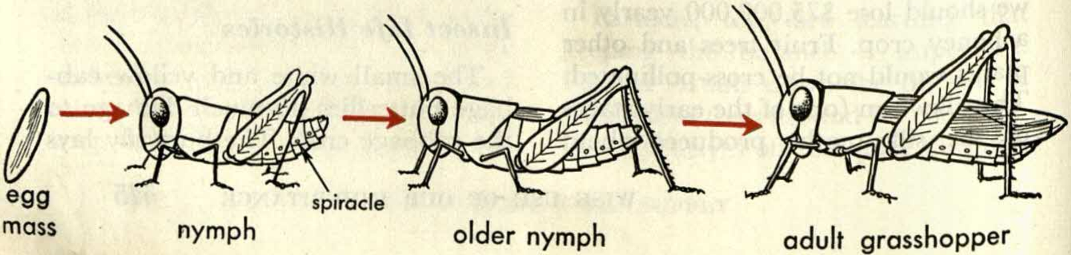
This life cycle, made up of four stages — egg, larva, pupa, and adult — is the life story of butterflies, moths, beetles, flies, bees, and ants. Can you spot the clue to one method of destroying the cabbage butterfly? Does the butterfly eat cabbage? Does the pupa?

It is the larva or caterpillar that chews holes in the cabbage leaves. Therefore, if we wish to destroy the enemy of the cabbage plant, we must kill the larvae — as young as possible — so that they can do the least damage.

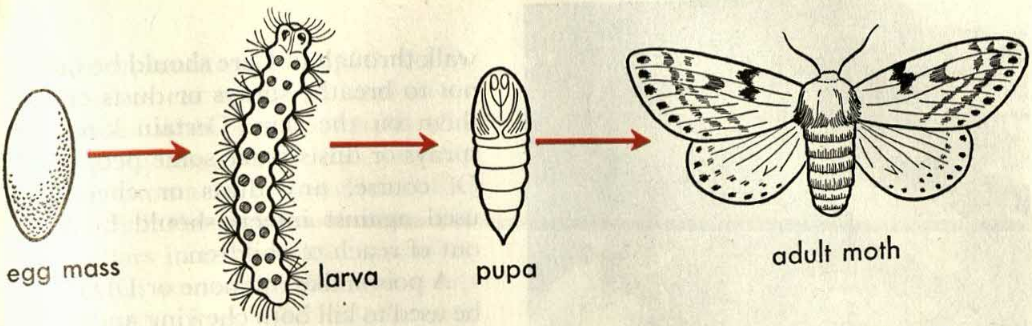
It is important to be able to recognize the different stages of insect life (Fig. 224). You may be able to destroy harmful pests in the egg, larva, pupa, or adult stage before the plants have been damaged.

When you see a caterpillar you will know that it is the larva of a moth or butterfly. However, most larvae of beetles are tan or white grubs.

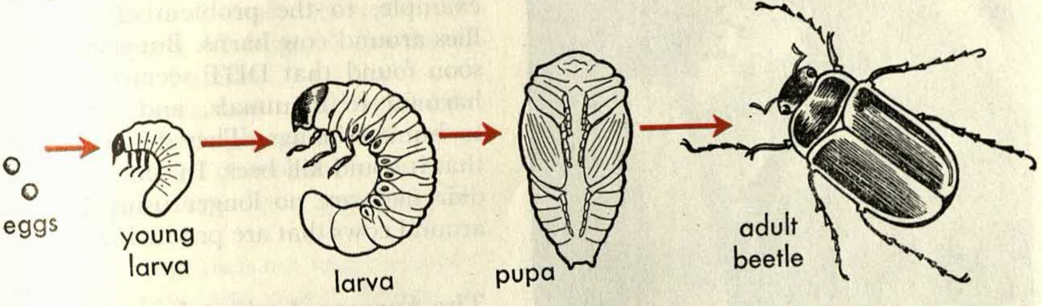
The pupal stage of some of these insects may be different. Moth cater-



223 The development of a grasshopper. Can a nymph fly? How does the development of the grasshopper differ from that of a moth? from that of a beetle? *Project:* In the summer collect the nymphs of grasshoppers. Then feed the nymphs on grass till they become adults.



224 *Above*, the development of a moth. *Below*, the development of a beetle. The moth lays a mass of tiny eggs. Each egg then develops as shown. What are the stages in the development of a moth? of a beetle?



pillars spin a cocoon about themselves. Some spin it in the ground, and others attach it to a leaf or stem.[1]

The larva of a butterfly or beetle is so different from the adult that it is hard to believe that one comes from the other. However, with insects like the grasshopper, cricket, katydid, and roach, it is easy to recognize the young. They look like the adults except that they do not have wings. They are called *nymphs*. The wings develop gradually (Fig. 223).

Grasshopper nymphs hatch from eggs laid in the ground in the fall.

Chewing and Sucking Insects

A poison put on the food of a chewing insect will get into its stomach and kill it. But we must be careful that a vegetable is not sprayed with a poison that is harmful to humans. *Rotenone* (ROH-teh-nohn) and *pyrethrum* (py-REE-thrum) are harmless to man. These two insect poisons are often used by gardeners on such vegetables as cabbage, broccoli, and Brussels sprouts. No matter what chewing insect attacks your plants, remember that a *stomach poison* will kill it. Always wash fruits and vegetables to remove any chemicals used in sprays.

For sucking insects, such as aphids (plant lice), a different kind of poison is needed. Sucking insects do not chew the leaves; they pierce the leaf or stem and suck the sap. How, then, can sucking insects be killed?

All insects breathe by means of openings in the body called *spiracles* (SPY-ruh-c'ls) (Fig. 223). These openings connect with a great number of

---

[1] Butterfly caterpillars make a shiny case called a *chrysalis* (KRIH-s'l-is).

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

225 Getting rid of pests is one job of the farmer and rancher. Here cattle are being sprayed and dipped against cattle ticks.

air tubes which run to every part of the body. Sucking insects can be killed by a poison that closes up their spiracles and thus shuts off their supply of air. This type of poison is called a *contact poison.* A spray or dust containing tobacco juice or nicotine sulfate (sometimes sold as Black Leaf 40) is such a contact poison. A mixture of kerosene and soapsuds can also be used. Most household insect sprays get into the insect's body through the spiracles.

The poison called DDT enters an insect's body and poisons its nervous system. DDT will kill insects that walk through it. Care should be taken not to breathe sprays or dusts or get them on the skin. Certain kinds of sprays or dusts make some people ill. Of course, any dusts or chemicals used against insects should be kept out of reach of children.

A poison like rotenone or DDT can be used to kill both chewing and sucking insects. When DDT was first used, it was thought to be the answer to the problem of harmful insects, for example, to the problem of killing flies around cow barns. But scientists soon found that DDT seemed to be harmful to mammals, and perhaps to human beings. They found, too, that it could kill bees. In some states, dairymen are no longer using DDT around cows that are producing milk.

The Farmer Against Insect and Other Pests

The farmer has many ways to protect his animals from insects and other destructive pests. He sprays his barns and chicken houses. He dusts his poultry with insect-killing powders to get rid of bird lice. He sprays or dips his cattle and sheep in creosote to get rid of ticks, mites, and lice (Fig. 225). He protects his young chicks from rats and weasels by building the kind of houses for them that these animals cannot enter.

The farmer and the gardener have some very valuable helpers in their fight against insects, rats, mice, and weeds. These helpers are the birds.

Birds Are the Farmer's Allies

What is inside a bird's stomach will show you how birds serve the farmer. They eat the insects which feed on the farmer's crops. They devour quantities of weed seeds. Some birds eat small rats and mice.

Here is what some scientists discovered by examining the contents of birds' stomachs. One yellow-billed cuckoo had the remains of about 275 caterpillars in its stomach; a starling had eaten some 300 different kinds of insects. (Even the much-hated starling was found to be helpful.) A killdeer had the remains of 300 mosquito larvae in its stomach, while one nighthawk had destroyed 340 grasshoppers, 52 bugs, 3 beetles, 2 wasps, and 1 spider.

Other birds had a different diet. A ring-necked pheasant had eaten about 8,000 chickweed seeds; a mourning dove had gathered 700 weed seeds.

Hawks and owls eat large numbers of mice, rats, and moles. Robins, in spite of the fact that they eat a few cherries, live chiefly on worms, grasshoppers, beetles, and bugs, with some wild fruits and berries.

As you may remember from your reading in Unit 4, many of our birds migrate to the southern United States and to countries south of the United States in the winter. To protect these birds during their stay in other countries, migratory bird treaties have been made between our country and the countries to which the birds migrate.

Man Against a Beetle

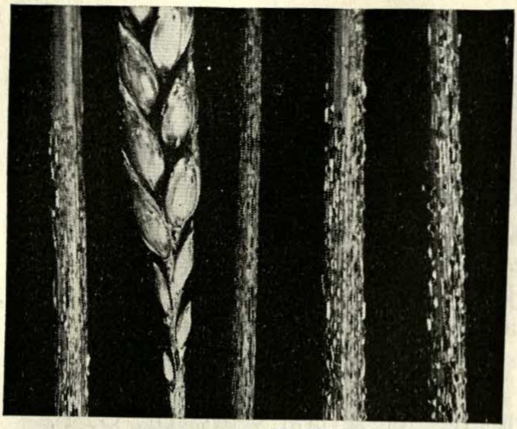
A grim fight is now being waged against the Japanese beetle. In 1916 some of these beetles were brought by accident from Japan in a clump of iris plants. They came first to the area around New York, but they are rapidly spreading to the West. They do much damage to lawns during the larval or grub stage, and even more damage as adults to flowers, fruit, and foliage of trees. The eggs are laid in July. The grubs stay in the ground until late June. In spring they feed on grass roots; in May and June they go through the pupal stage; in late July they come out of the ground as adult beetles and begin to feed on all sorts of plants.

Scientists have been battling these beetles for several years. Dr. G. F. White, an entomologist (en-tuh-MOL-uh-jist) — a student of insects — began a study of the reason why areas that had been heavily infested with Japanese beetles seemed to have fewer of them after a time. After two years of study, he said that he believed that a disease, called "milky disease," had been destroying the grubs. The milky disease is caused by bacteria that attack the grubs, making them turn a milky color and die. Wherever you suspect that Japanese beetles are underground, you can spread the bacteria of this milky disease. Chlordan dust is also used to kill the larvae of Japanese beetles.

The natural enemies of the Japanese beetle have been imported from Japan. One of these is a wasp

226 Japanese beetles feeding on an apple. *Project:* Discuss ways of controlling plant pests in your state and make a plan for getting rid of them.

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE



U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

227 Wheat rust. The flaked stems of the wheat are part of the damage the rust fungus causes to this important grain. *Project:* If you live in a farm area, or have a garden, collect samples of damage done to crop and garden plants by fungi. Exhibit them in class.

whose young feed on the grubs of the beetle. Many thousands of wasps have been bred by the Department of Agriculture and released into the fields to kill the beetle.

Man Against the Mediterranean Fruit Fly

In the spring of 1929, Florida was invaded by one of the worst of all citrus fruit pests, the Mediterranean fruit fly. Congress voted more than $7,000,000 to fight it before it could spread to other states. About 1,000 separate orchards needed treatment. If these pests had been allowed to live, all the oranges, tangerines, and grapefruit of the Gulf states would have been damaged. These are the steps that were taken:

1. All fruit trees were sprayed with poison.
2. All fruits on the infested trees were destroyed.
3. All states to which fruit had already been shipped were warned.
4. No fruit could leave Florida; the state was under quarantine.

This was severe treatment, but it worked. The Mediterranean fruit fly was under control in about one year.

FUNGUS PESTS

Not all pests are animals; some are plants. Have you ever seen an ear of corn or a stalk of wheat stained by a black powdery material (Fig. 227)? If you examine some of this powder under the microscope, you will find that it is made up of thousands of *spores*. Spores, you remember, are the tiny reproductive cells of fungus plants.

Man Against Fungus Pests

Fungi are simple plants that have no chlorophyll. Since they have no chlorophyll, they cannot make their own food. They must, therefore, get their food from other plants, animals, or nonliving matter.

The black spores on oats or corn are produced by *smut* fungi. They cause great damage to our grains. Some smuts can be controlled by treating the seeds before planting. Corn smut cannot be controlled in this way because the smut fungus infects the growing plants. The best way to control these fungi is to breed corn, wheat, oats, barley, rye, and other plants that are resistant to smut disease.

Rust fungi that are very much like the smuts cause even more damage. By learning about the life cycle of rust fungi, scientists have found a way to control them. It has been found that wheat rust fungi spend one part of their life on the native barberry bush. We say that wheat rust has two *hosts*. A host is a plant or an animal on which the fungus grows. For the first part of its life, the host of the black stem rust is wheat. For the second part the host is the native barberry. Therefore, if the barberry can be destroyed, the wheat rust cannot complete its life cycle. Since 1918 the government has been killing off native barberry bushes, especially in the valley of the Mississippi, where so much of our wheat is grown. They are getting the wheat rust under control by this method.

Molds and Mildews

No doubt you have seen molds. They, too, are fungus plants. If you have not done so before, grow some bread mold so that you may look at it under the microscope. Expose a piece of bread to the air for about ten minutes. Then place it in a jar in a warm place. Add a few drops of water. Close the jar. In a few days you will see a fuzzy growth; in a few more days the bread mold will be producing spores in small black bodies like the head of a pin.

How can you prevent mold from forming on foods? If you keep foods covered so that mold spores from the air cannot fall on them, and store them where they are dry and cool, molds will be less likely to develop.

Mildew spores, too, are found almost everywhere. They are fungi that will grow on plants, leather, and clothing — on any material where there is enough moisture, warmth, and food. Mildew often grows in the hot, humid days of summer. Good ventilation will usually prevent its forming, however.

Preventing Growth of Fungi

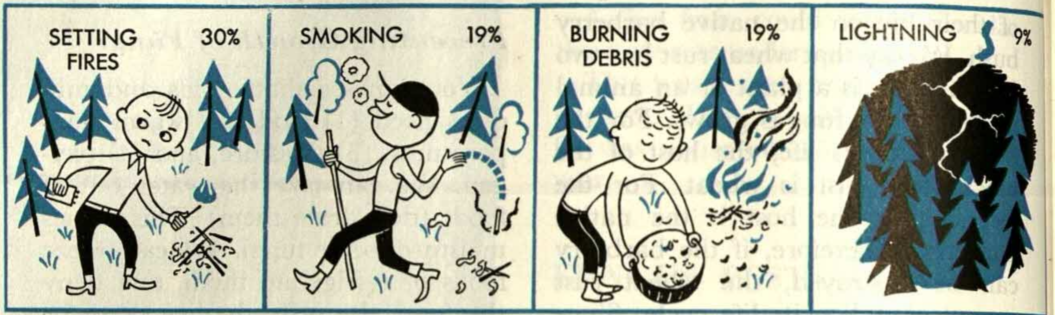
You can see that molds and mildews need (1) food, (2) warm temperatures, (3) moisture, and (4) oxygen. We can take the water out of foods (dehydrate them). This denies moisture to the fungi. We can freeze foods or refrigerate them, and deny the fungi the warmth they need for growth. Or, we may can foods and keep the air away. Scientists have also developed ultraviolet lamps that help kill mold spores.

The spores of fungi are everywhere. Much food is wasted because mold is allowed to form on it.

PROTECTING OUR FORESTS

The United States Forest Service reports that there are, on the average, about 510 forest fires a day. They damage about 2% of the trees in our forest areas annually. In 1894 the great Hinckley fire in Minnesota destroyed timber worth $25,000,000, killed 418 people, and burned 12 towns. In Pennsylvania, nearly 2 million acres of forest land have been destroyed by fires. In 1947, Maine forest fires destroyed several towns and resulted in $30,000,000 damage. Fortunately, valuable species of pine, spruce, hemlock, birch, maple, oak, beech, and aspen have reseeded themselves over 67% of the area.

Who is responsible for these fires? Usually man. More than one-third of our forest fires are set by careless or ignorant persons. Smokers and people who leave trash fires unattended start many of them. Lightning starts fewer than one in ten. A lighted match thrown carelessly aside


MAJOR CAUSES OF FOREST FIRES

may be responsible for a fire like the Tillamook forest fire in Oregon. In 1933, this fire burned some 267,000 acres, at a loss of $350,000,000 to labor, industry, and the public.

However, insects and disease destroy more than twice as much timber each year as does fire. The Engelmann spruce beetle in the Rocky Mountains destroyed 1,600 square miles of spruce trees between 1939 and 1948. The elm leaf beetle is carrying a disease from elm tree to elm tree in the eastern states. Hundreds of elm trees are already dead; others are dying fast. Some are being saved, for a time at least, by being sprayed with a poison solution. Shade tree experts suggest planting trees that are resistant to disease.

Guarding Our Forests

Our forests are being watched over by the trained men of the United States Forest Service. Many states employ foresters and rangers. In Michigan, for instance, foresters and rangers watch over 7 million acres of private, state and national forests. From high towers they watch for fires day and night. Patrolling is also done by air. Trained fire crews are on call to answer any alarm.

In addition, about 900,000 acres of young trees have been planted in Michigan. These trees are planted sometimes for windbreaks, sometimes for farm wood lots, and sometimes to reforest sloping land.

Mainly, however, trees are now being planted as crops with a long life. Seedling trees replace trees that have been cut down in both private and government forests. Government and industry are co-operating to save our forests.

Conservation Makes America Richer

The program of conservation of our helpful plants and animals is an important part of our work of im-

HOW TO PREVENT FOREST FIRES

BURN TRASH ON WINDLESS DAYS
BE SURE CAMPFIRE IS OUT
BE SURE CIGARETTES ARE OUT

proving biologic production. Again, science helps us to better living.

We need to do three things if we are to conserve our natural resources. We must first guard them against destruction by man, pests, and fire; second, we must keep the balance; third, we must give the plants and animals we want to conserve the best environment for their growth.

Conservation practices are based on scientific work, as you have learned here. You can help personally by taking and keeping this pledge:

Conservation Pledge

I give my pledge as an American to save and faithfully to defend from waste the natural resources of my country — its soil and minerals, its forests, waters, and wildlife.

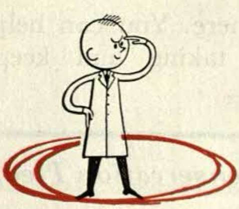
LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after the word. Watch out! Not all words are defined. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

balance of nature	host	smut
conservation	larva	spiracles
contact poison	mold	spores
food chain	pupa	stomach poison
fungus (pl., fungi)	rust	wildlife sanctuary

1. protection and wise use of natural resources
2. having enough of different kinds of living things so that all will have food, but none will multiply too rapidly
3. a place where all living things are protected against mankind
4. a line of plants and animals that feed upon or are eaten by another in the line
5. the caterpillar or grub stage of insects
6. the resting, changing stage of insects
7. a poison that kills insects by shutting off their supply of air
8. a plant on which a fungus grows
9. the reproductive parts of fungi



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. Write to your state conservation commission to find out if there are any school forests in your state. Perhaps your school would like to take part in one that has been started, or start one in your part of the state.

2. Survey the trees in your schoolyard, on your street, or in the nearest park to see what needs to be done to save them. Are there broken branches or openings in the bark that should be painted with creosote to keep out wood-boring insects and fungi of disease?

3. Make birdhouses and bird feeders for use at the proper time of year.

4. Begin an insect collection. Collect live insects on their food plant; collect others for mounting. See "Adding to Your Library" for a reference on collecting insects.

5. If you live on a farm, get a sample of corn smut or wheat rust. Examine the spores under the microscope. Find out what grains are resistant to these diseases. Your County Farm Bureau agent can help you.

6. Learn the Conservation Pledge. Letter it at the top of a chart and persuade as many of your schoolmates as possible to sign it.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. In a southern state a bird called the myna bird eats cherries and other small fruits, but also eats tent caterpillars and other harmful insects. At a local meeting, the planters are discussing a drive against the myna. What would you say?

2. If there is a bill in Congress to spend money on scientific research to improve plant production, should it be passed? Why?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Conservation in the United States* by Axel F. Gustafson, Comstock Publishing Co., Ithaca, N.Y., 1944. This book covers many phases of conservation: soil, water, forests, wildlife, and minerals.

2. *The Japanese Beetle and Its Controls*, Farmers' Bulletin 1856, U.S. Department of Agriculture, 1940.

3. Your school may also wish to buy *American Bird Songs*, a collection of recordings on disks, by Albert R. Brand Song Foundation of Cornell University, published by the Comstock Publishing Co., Ithaca, N.Y.

4. Write to the American Forest Products Industries, 1816 N Street N.W., Washington (6), D.C., for their booklets and charts showing what industry is doing to preserve our forests.

5. Guidebooks that will help you identify living things are to be found at the end of the hobby section, "Living Things as a Hobby."

Careers for You

There may be a future for you in many lines of conservation work:

1. As an *entomologist* to find out how to control insect pests.

2. As a *forester* or *forest ranger* to work in state or national forests. Some universities have a college of forestry to train people for these positions.

3. As a *naturalist* in wildlife sanctuaries to help people enjoy and learn about plants and animals found there.

4. As a *teacher* of the biological sciences in a high school or college.

LIVING THINGS AS A hobby

Why not take a field trip this spring or summer? See for yourself many of the different kinds of living things about you. You may want to collect some animals and plants for classroom, laboratory, or museum.

Invite a few friends to go with you. Take jars of various sizes, a dip net, and a metal can in which you can store plants so that they will keep fresh and moist. If you have an old pillowcase or a burlap bag, take that, too. You may come across some harmless snakes you will want to have for the school museum. Be sure to take a notebook. And, of course, take a good lunch and a first-aid kit.

Probably you will find a pond. As you approach it, you may hear soft "plops" as frogs jump into the water. Look for sunfish, which are found in the shadows of rocks. Catch some with your net, for sunfish are fine for the school aquarium. Also take some of the water plants to stock the aquarium.

Classifying an Animal

How do you know sunfish are fish? Most fish have fins, gills, and scales. Reptiles, such as snakes, turtles, and lizards, have scales, too. However, reptiles have no gills and fins. You can come to know a good many animals by grouping those which have the same characteristics. When a scientist places living things with similar characteristics in one group, he is *classifying* them. For instance, all animals with fins, gills, and scales are classified in one group as *fishes*, and all animals with feathers are classified as *birds*.

Naming Plants and Animals

It is both useful and satisfying to know the names of the animals and plants you come upon. Just knowing that a plant is a fern or moss does not satisfy you. You want to know which fern or moss it is. Knowing that a feathered creature is a bird is not enough. Which is it? Robin, bobolink, kingbird, or yellow-throated vireo? Which frog is it? Bullfrog, grass frog, pickerel frog, or spring peeper?

In the eighteenth century, Carolus Linnaeus (kar-oh-lus·lih-NAY-us) and his friend Peter Artedi (ahr-TEH-dee) set about giving each animal and plant two names. The two names tell what kind, or *species*, of animal or plant any specimen is. Their system is a very useful one, as you will see.

Where you live, do you find bitterweed, wild tansy, hayweed, hogweed, wormwood, stammerwort, or carrotweed? These are names for ragweed in different parts of the country.

Linnaeus and Artedi gave two Latin names to each living thing.

JULIUS FANTA

228 Learning about living things. *Project:* With your teacher's help, organize a group (in class) or a club, to take field trips regularly. Collect specimens and bring them to class.

Since Latin is no longer a common spoken language, its words are no longer changing form or meaning. Therefore, a Latin name used now will not change and will be recognized by scientists everywhere. One common ragweed is *Ambrosia trifida.* People who are familiar with the system of Linnaeus will know what we are talking about, whether they are in England or Brazil.

Suppose you learned the name of just one new living thing each week. In a year you would know more than fifty! In several years you would be an expert on the living things in your area. At the end of this hobby section, you will find titles of books which describe the habits and give the names of many living things you will find in your surroundings. Why not start learning their names now?

We are going to help you learn the scientific way to classify and name plants and animals. On the following pages you will find descriptions of the major groups of plants and animals. With them are drawings of some important members of each group. These drawings will help you recognize some of the living things which belong to the group. After all, the living things in any one group are similar to each other in many ways. *The numbers given after each of the descriptions on pp. 428–31 show which books in the following reading list will give you the most information about the group.* Why not start a class museum with examples of animals and plants which can be easily collected and shown?

Reading for the Amateur Naturalist

1. *Field Book of Ponds and Streams* by Ann H. Morgan, Putnam, 1930.

2. *How to Know the Mosses* by Elizabeth M. Dunham, Houghton Mifflin, 1916.

3. *Ferns of Northeastern United States* by F. A. Wiley, Macking Printing Co., Easton, Pa., 1936.

4. *Beginners' Guide to Wild Flowers* by Ethel Hausman, Putnam, 1948.

5. *The Book of Wild Flowers for Young People* by Ferdinand S. Mathews, Putnam, 1923.

6. *Field Book of American Wild Flowers* by Ferdinand S. Mathews, Putnam, 1912.

7. *Wild Flowers* by Homer D. House, The Macmillan Company, 1934.

8. *Field Book of American Trees and Shrubs* by Ferdinand S. Mathews, Putnam, 1915.

9. *Field Book of Common Gilled Mushrooms* by William S. Thomas, Putnam, 1928.

10. *Handbook of Nature Study* by Anna Comstock, Comstock Publishing Co., Ithaca, N.Y., 1947.

11. *Parade of the Animal Kingdom* by Robert W. and Jane Hegner, The Macmillan Company, 1935.

12. *A Field Guide to the Shells* (Of Our Atlantic and Gulf Coasts) by Percy A. Morris, Houghton Mifflin, 1947.

13. *The Butterfly Book* by William J. Holland, Doubleday (Nature Library), 1931.

14. *Field Book of Insects* by Frank E. Lutz, Putnam, 1921.

15. *How to Know the Insects* by Harry E. Jaques, Iowa Academy of Science, 1936.

16. *Field Book of Marine Fishes of the Atlantic Coast* by Charles M. Breder, Putnam, 1929.

17. *Handbook of Frogs and Toads* by Anna and A. H. Wright, Comstock Publishing Co., Ithaca, N.Y., 1934.

18. *Snake-Hunters' Holiday* by R. L. Ditmars and W. Bridges, Appleton-Century, 1935.

19. *Snakes of the World* by Raymond L. Ditmars, The Macmillan Company, 1931.

20. *Field Book of Wild Birds and Their Music* by Ferdinand S. Mathews, Putnam, 1921.

21. Sets of Colored Bird Cards (Spring, Summer, Fall, Winter), National Audubon Society, 1130 Fifth Ave., New York (28), N.Y.

22. *Book of Birds for Young People* by Ferdinand S. Mathews, Putnam, 1921.

23. *Field Book of North American Mammals* by Harold E. Anthony, Putnam, 1930.

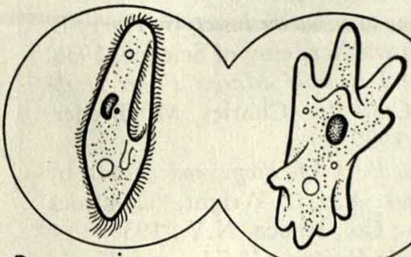
24. *Pets, and How to Care for Them* by Lee S. Crandell, New York Zoological Park, New York City, 1930.

NEW BRUNSWICK INTERNATIONAL PAPER CO.

229 This spruce budworm eats our spruce trees, causing some damage to them. *Project:* Collect, mount, and exhibit harmful insects found in your community. Helpful books about insects are listed above.

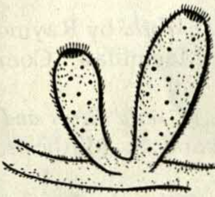
Animal Kingdom

INVERTEBRATE ANIMALS (*Animals Without Backbones*)

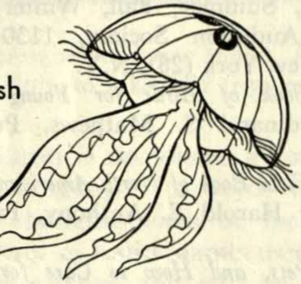


Single-celled animals. In this first group you will find microscopic animals made up of one cell.

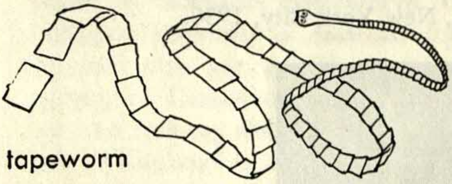
Some single-celled animals, like Paramecium, move about by means of tiny hairlike structures. Others, like Ameba, send out projections of the body and seem just to flow along (1, 10, 11).



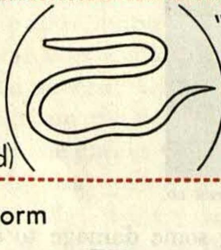
Sponges. At home you have probably used the common bath sponge (not the artificial rubber sponge). This bath sponge is the skeleton of an animal which lives on the bottom of the ocean. It takes in food through pores in the body (1, 10, 11).



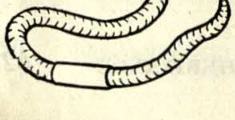
Cup animals. These strange animals are generally shaped like a cup or umbrella. The jellyfish and sea anemones belong here. Most of the animals in this group are to be found living in the ocean. The animals have batteries of stinging cells in their waving, armlike tentacles. When a small animal touches these tentacles, it is paralyzed by the stinging cells. It can then be eaten by the cup animal (1, 10, 11).



Flatworms. The worms in this group are what their group name states — flat. The tapeworm and liver fluke, both of which infect man, are in this group. The worm Planaria, commonly found in streams, is also a member of this group (1, 10, 11).

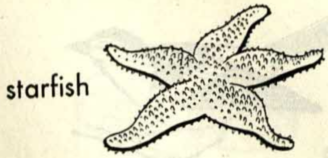


Roundworms. These are the smooth round worms like the common "vinegar eel" (found in vinegar) and the common horsehair worm. The hookworm and trichina are also roundworms (1, 10, 11).

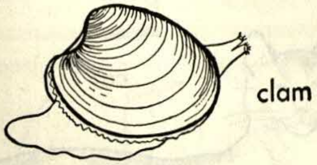


Ringed worms. The very common earthworm and the sandworm belong to this group. The animals of this group have bodies which seem to be made of rings or segments. However, do not mistake a millipede for a ringed worm. Ringed worms have no legs like the millipede (1, 10, 11).

Spiny-skinned animals. To be found in this group are the starfish, sea urchin, and sand dollar. All of these animals have a spiny skin or a hard outer shell (1, 10, 11).



Soft-bodied shelled animals. In this group you will find the oyster, clam, snail, slug, squid, and octopus. Most of the animals in this group have two shells, like the clam, or a spiral shell, like the snail. The squid and octopus have a straight shell inside the body (1, 10, 12).



Joint-legged animals. This is the group that has the greatest number of animals. All of them have legs made up of joints. In this group are:

Crabs, lobsters, and their relatives (with five pairs of legs).

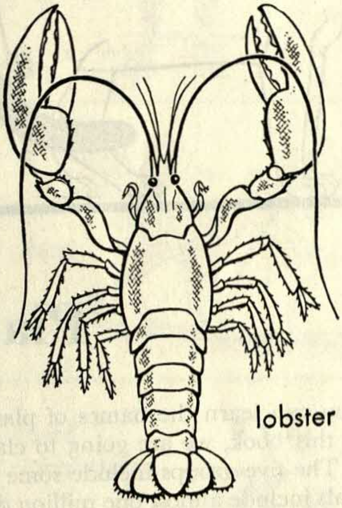
Centipedes and millipedes, with many legs.

Insects, with three pairs of legs. Most insects have wings.

Spiders, with four pairs of legs and no wings (10, 11, 13, 14, 15).

All the animals in these groups are very different from you. They have no internal skeleton and no spinal cord. They are called invertebrates.

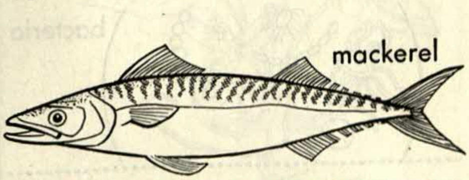
You, and such animals as birds and lions, have internal skeletons and belong to the next group, the vertebrates.



VERTEBRATE ANIMALS

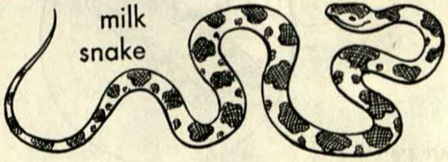
Although all the vertebrates belong to one group, they are classified into several subgroups. For example:

The fishes. These are very common animals with scales and fins. As you know, they live in water (1, 16).

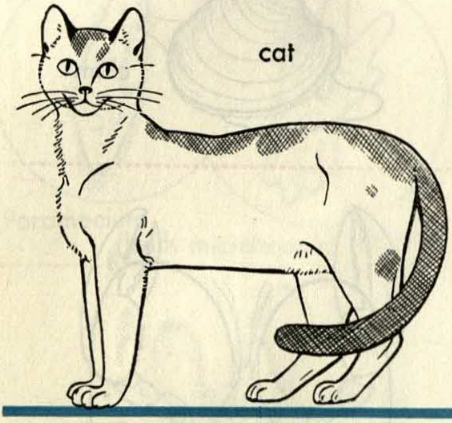


The amphibians. Frogs and salamanders belong to this group. The adults generally live on land but lay their eggs in water. The young live in the water until they become adults (1, 10, 11, 17).

The reptiles. Animals like snakes, turtles, lizards, alligators, and crocodiles belong to this group. These animals have scales, and most of them lay eggs with shells (10, 11, 18, 19).



The birds. These animals that fly are warm-blooded and have feathers and wings. They lay eggs with shells (20, 21, 22, 23).



The mammals. You will find the furred warm-blooded animals are among this group. In most mammals, microscopic eggs develop into young within the mother's body. The young are fed milk from mammary glands. The mammals also give their young great care.

Within the mammal group are such strange animals as the duckbill, or platypus, which unlike other mammals lays hard-shelled eggs outside its body. However, it suckles its young like other mammals.

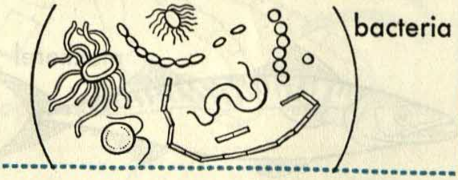
You, of course, are a mammal (10, 11, 24, 25).

Plant Kingdom

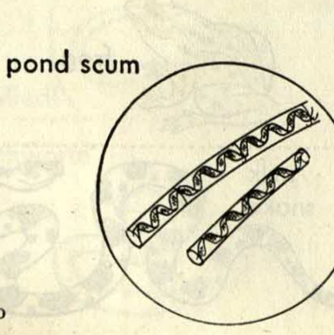
You can learn the names of plants in much the same way as the names of animals. In this book, we are going to classify all plants into five major groups.[1]

The five groups include some 350,000 kinds of plants. The various groups of animals include almost one million different kinds. Where you live, however, there is only a small number of different animals and plants. Once you know the common plants and animals, you will find it easy to identify others as you find them.

The five major groups of plants are:



Bacteria. In this group are microscopic, colorless, single-celled plants. Most of the bacteria are harmless, some are helpful, and some cause disease (Chapter 5).



Simple-bodied plants. These very common plants have no roots, stems, or leaves. They are the common pond scums — soft, green masses sometimes found floating on the surface of ponds or streams. In a jar of water, a mass of these plants looks like a mass of fine, soft green hair.

---

[1] As you go on in your study of biology, you will find that some scientists group the plants into four groups, and others group them into five. For beginners, however, we think it better to group the plants into five groups.

In this group also are the colorless plants, the fungi. *Colorless* here means "lacking chlorophyll." Some fungi are blue, yellow, or red. The fungi include the mushrooms, bread molds, and blue molds (1, 9, 10, and Chapter 18).

The mosses. The common green-colored mosses are small plants which live where it is moist. There are two kinds of mosses. Some mosses, called liverworts, have flat bodies. Others have upright leafy bodies (like those in the drawing). All produce spores in a structure which looks like a tiny golf club. Spores are microscopic cells which reproduce the plant (2, 10).

The ferns. You will find most of these plants easy to recognize by their leaves, or fronds, shown in the drawing. At certain times, the backs of the fronds produce spores. Ferns have underground stems and roots (3, 10).

Club mosses and horsetails also are classified as ferns.

The seed plants. The seed plants are the common plants you see everywhere about you. They generally produce flowers and seeds. Oaks, maples, oats, wheat, and corn all belong to this group. Other members of this group are the pines, hemlocks, and spruces.

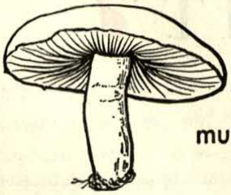
There are several subgroups. The two most important are:

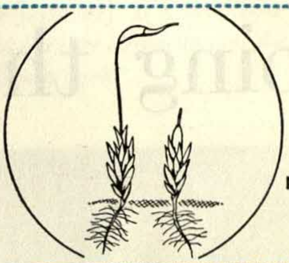
Plants with flowers. The flowers may be small, as in the grasses, or large, as in the lily or magnolia.

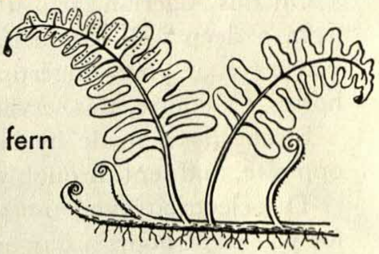
Plants with cones. These are the plants with needle-shaped leaves, like the fir, pine, and spruce. Their seeds are found in cones (5, 6, 7, 8).

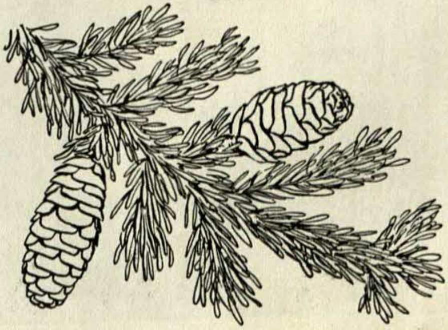
You are on your way. This is the simple way in which the writers of this book began. It is the way many an expert on plants and animals began.

Ask your teacher's help in your study. Also get several of the reference books. In any event, if you begin this hobby now, you should be an accomplished naturalist when you leave high school.









UNIT 7

Doing the World's Work

On this Algerian farm it takes one horse and two men to draw water up from a deep well for the farmer's animals to drink. By flipping a switch, you have at your fingertips a powerful servant to do the work of many horses. Of course, this servant is electricity.

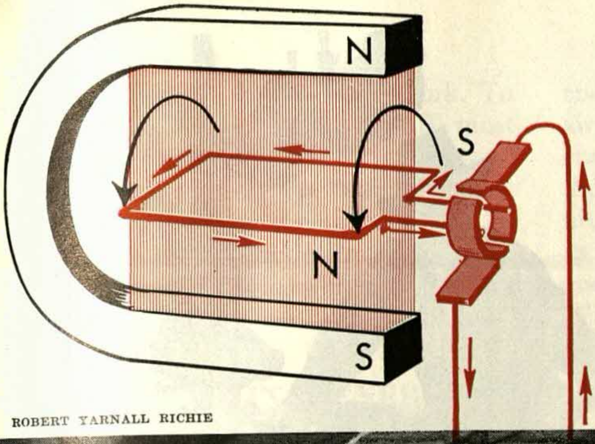
Electricity is made by large devices called generators, like the huge one opposite, and sent through wires to do work in cities and thousands of homes.

The electricity you use gives you about one to five servants, who work for you eight hours a day and sometimes longer. To put it another way, the electricity you use to light or heat your home, to use the phone, radio, or television, to do washing and to iron your clothes, is equal to the work of one to five servants all day long.

In other times men were judged wealthy by the number of slaves they owned. Because of your one to five servants, you are today wealthier than many wealthy Romans of the year 100 B.C. You are today wealthier than many wealthy Americans of the year 1900.

How has all this come about? You will learn in this unit that man has multiplied his muscle power thousands of times by using the energy in fuels and electricity. You will learn how science is still working on machines to get many times more energy to make man's work easier and more efficient.

CHARLES PHELPS CUSHING



The device at the left is — believe it or not — the same as the one below. Both are generators, and both have the same basic parts — a magnet and a coil moving within the magnet (called an armature). It is this device which supplies the electricity that does much of your work.

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

CHAPTER 22

Aiding Your Muscles

You can easily lift a weight ten times your own (or more). How? You use simple machines. You use your arm, a hammer, the gears on your bicycle. Each simple machine helps to multiply your muscle many times.

Have you ever had a flat tire when you were riding in the family car? This may happen to anybody. It happened to Mr. Doe and his son one day while they were driving down a country road. It was just then that Mr. Doe remembered that he had no jack in the car; he had lent it to a neighbor the day before. But there was a long fence rail and a stone wall nearby, and Mr. Doe was a handy man.

He placed a large stone underneath the rear bumper. He then put one end of the fence rail over the stone and underneath the rear axle of the car (Fig. 230). He pushed down on the other end of the rail and easily lifted the car while his son built up a support for the axle with the other stones. The tire was soon changed, the stones and fence rail put back, and everyone was happy.

Mr. Doe used a fence rail to lift his car. Scientists have a special name for any tool that helps a person do *work*. It is called a "machine." Thus the fence rail that Mr. Doe used was really a simple machine. It moved a great weight with a little force, and in this way did work. To do work, force (a push or pull) must be used to move something.

In this chapter you will learn how work is done by the use of force. In short, you will understand how machines help you in everyday life.

CONTROLLING ENERGY

To use force you must have energy — the energy of your body or energy in some other form. Learning what these forms of energy are and how to take advantage of them in the tools we use will help you to understand how the world's work is carried on.

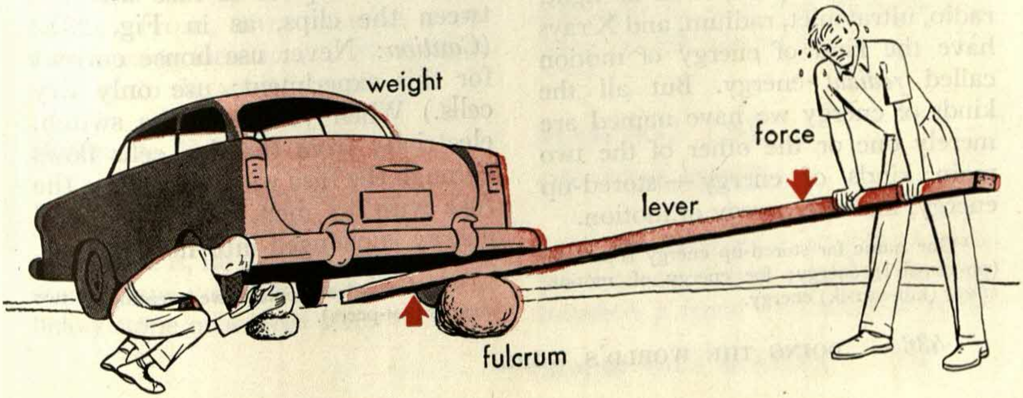
What Is Energy?

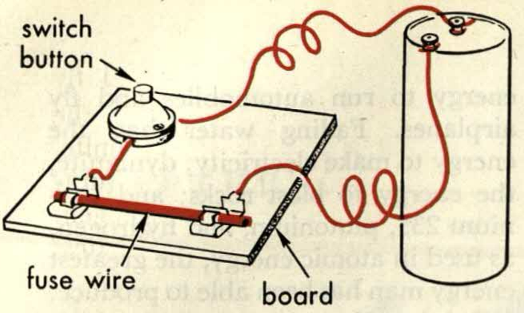
No one has ever really defined *energy* to everyone's satisfaction. Here is one way of explaining what energy is: Anything that is able to move itself or to make other things move has energy. You are able to run and play football, basketball, and other games because you get energy from the good, well-balanced meals you eat. All living things store up food energy. Coal yields energy to heat homes and run factories. Gasoline gives the energy to run automobiles and fly airplanes. Falling water has the energy to make electricity; dynamite, the energy to blast rocks; and uranium 235, plutonium, and hydrogen, as used in atomic energy, the greatest energy man has been able to produce. Wind has the energy to move sailboats and, during hurricanes and tornadoes, to destroy homes; an avalanche has the energy to uproot trees and move rocks; and a rocket, the stored energy to rise hundreds of miles above the earth's surface. So it goes — you can give many other examples of energy in things that move or have power to move other things.

Not all examples you give would have the same kind of energy. Would you say that dynamite has the same kind of energy as a rocket in flight? Scientists have names for the different kinds of energy. Let's see what they are, so that we can keep our thinking about energy straight.

Often a body may appear to have no energy at all, but, because of what it is made of or its position, it may really have a great deal of stored-up energy. Stored-up energy is energy not in use but able to be used at a later time. Water just at the top of a waterfall has stored-up energy be-

Compare what Mr. Doe is doing with your experiment on p. 438.





231 When electrical energy is changed to heat energy in the fuse wire, the wire melts.

cause of its position. This stored-up energy changes into energy of motion as the water falls. This energy of motion[1] in falling water turns turbines at the base of large dams, and the moving turbines make electricity. In the same way, an archer stores up energy in his bent bow. As he releases the string, the stored-up energy of the bow is changed to energy of motion. Thus energy of motion is given to the arrow. Electricity flowing through a wire has energy of motion. This form is called *electrical* energy.

Dynamite, gunpowder, coal, and gasoline, together with other explosives and fuels, have stored-up energy because of what they are made of, that is, because of their chemical nature. This kind of stored-up energy is often called *chemical* energy. Coal or other substances that have stored-up chemical energy give it off in the form of *heat* energy. Machines that do work through motion are said to have *mechanical* energy. Waves that travel through space, such as light, radio, ultraviolet, radium, and X rays have the kind of energy of motion called *radiant* energy. But all the kinds of energy we have named are merely one or the other of the two main kinds of energy — stored-up energy, and the energy of motion.

Where Does Energy Come From?

If you were asked to tell where energy comes from, what would you say? You might say from coal, oil, the earth — and in one sense you would be perfectly right. Yet all the energy that has practical uses in this world of ours comes from the sun.

It is the sun's radiant energy that warms the earth and causes water to evaporate into the air and later to fall as rain. Radiant energy from the sun causes seeds to grow into plants. You have learned that coal, the greatest single source of energy in the crust of the earth, was formed by pressure upon plants that lived millions of years ago. These plants grew because of the sun's energy. Oil was formed by the earth's pressure upon the remains of plants and animals that also lived millions of years ago. Thus coal and oil really got their stored-up energy from the sun.

Without the sun, there could be little heat or light on the earth. The earth would be a dark, frozen planet. Its temperature would be hundreds of degrees below zero. There would be no life as we know it — none of our plants and animals could exist.

Energy Changes Its Form

Connect a piece of fuse wire between the clips, as in Fig. 231.[1] (*Caution*: Never use house current for this experiment; use only dry cells.) When you push the switch, electricity from the dry cells flows through the fuse wire and causes the fuse wire to melt. Here electrical energy is changed into heat energy.

---

[1] One name for stored-up energy is *potential* (po-TEN-sh'l) energy; for energy of motion, *kinetic* (kih-NET-ik) energy.

[1] The fuse wire should have a rating of two *amperes* (AM-peers).

When you press the button of your flashlight, you are changing electrical energy into both heat and light energy in the bulb. In another way, the chemical energy of gasoline is changed into heat energy in the motor of an automobile.

Energy is always changing its form. But is it destroyed? That question is answered in the principle known as the law of conservation of energy. This law states: *Energy may change its form but is neither created nor destroyed.* In a ship, the energy stored in the fuel oil changes its form several times but finally gives the ship motion. To take another example, when you throw a baseball, you give the ball energy of motion. This energy of motion changes to heat energy when the baseball strikes the hands of the player who catches it.

Energy and Force

Changes in energy result in *force.* Force is a push or a pull used to make something move. The energy in steam forces a heavy freight train to a distant city. The energy of gasoline forces a heavy truck up a steep hill. The energy of your body gives force to your bat, which in turn sends a baseball over the wall. Mr. Doe at the beginning of this chapter also used the energy of his muscles to force his car upward with a fence rail. Everyone, every moment of the day, is using force and is seeing force used to do the world's work.

When Do You Work?

As you will remember, you can use a great deal of energy and yet do no work, that is, no work in the scientific sense. Have you ever tried to move a heavy stone or a large piece of furniture like a piano? You may have tired yourself out, but the stone or piano remained there because the force you used was not enough to move it.

Work is done only when a force moves an object a certain distance (Fig. 233). Therefore no matter how hard you push a piano, you do no work you can measure unless the piano moves.

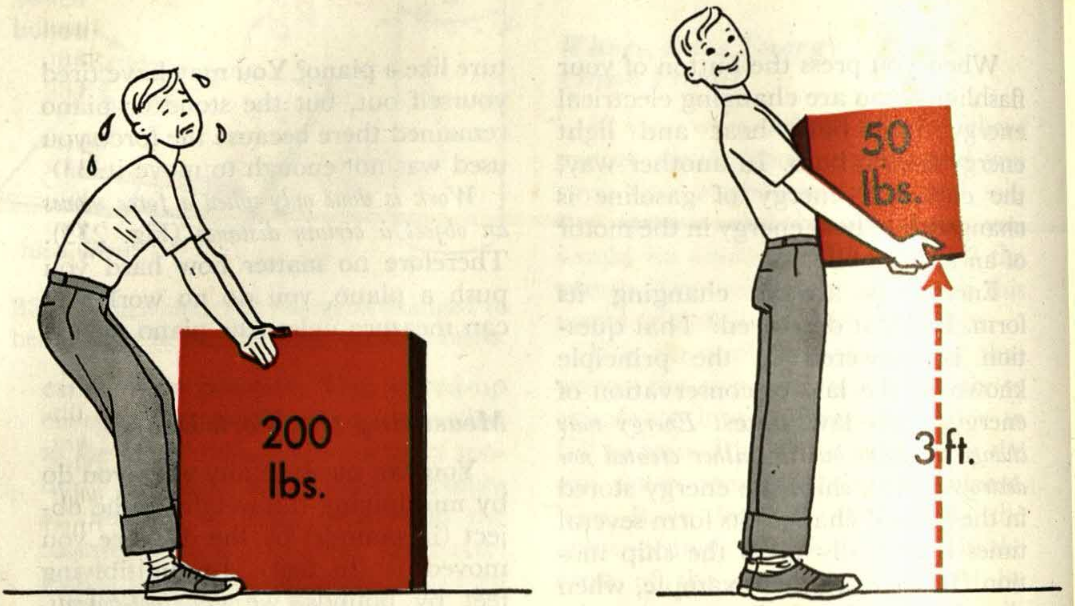
Measuring the Work Done

You can measure any work you do by multiplying the weight of the object (in pounds) by the distance you moved it (in feet). In multiplying feet by pounds, we get *foot-pounds.* For example, you may have chinned yourself on a bar. You reached above your head and by grasping the bar with both hands pulled yourself up until your chin was over the bar. If you weigh 100 pounds and you lifted yourself two feet, you did 100 × 2, or 200 foot-pounds of work. But no matter how much energy you used to keep yourself chinned, you did no work while you remained with your chin on the bar. Work is done only when a force has moved an object a certain distance.

Of course, it is much easier to do work when we make use of machines instead of just our muscles. Machines help us do tasks that would otherwise be beyond our strength. They also help us save our strength and speed up the jobs we do.

MAKING USE OF MACHINES

At the beginning of this chapter you learned that a machine (in that instance, a fence rail) helps us to do



NO WORK

150 FOOT-POUNDS OF WORK

232 Work (in its scientific sense) is done only when an object is moved a certain distance. Is the boy at the left doing any work? Are you now doing any work?

work. Most machines help us to do work by directing force we use or making it greater. For example, the fence rail Mr. Doe used was really a simple machine called a *lever*. Let us see how a lever is used to do work.

How Does a Lever Help Us to Do Work?

For this experiment you need a ruler, an eraser, and a book. Place your finger under the edge of the book and raise it slightly, testing its weight. Now place the end of the ruler over the eraser and underneath the edge of the book. With your finger press down on the other end of the ruler. Can you lift the book more easily with the ruler than with your finger alone? Now move the eraser toward the middle of the ruler and press down on the ruler again. Can you raise the book as easily as before?

To explain this experiment, you must learn a few words. The ruler, as you used it, was a lever. It was supported at one point (the eraser). This point of support is called a *fulcrum*. You applied a *force* by pushing down with your finger at one end of the lever. The book, because of its weight, pushed down at the other end of the lever. The weight (of the book) resisted the force of your finger. The weight to be lifted is therefore called a *resistance*. When you use levers there is always a force, a fulcrum, and a resistance. The force acts against the resistance.

Now you can apply this knowledge to your own experiment and to Mr. Doe's experience in Fig. 230.

1. The ruler was a lever. The fulcrum (the eraser) was between the force (the pressure of your finger) and the resistance (the book).
2. You found the force you used to

push down on the end of the ruler much less than the resistance (weight of the book). That is, you saw why small forces can move heavy objects and why Mr. Doe was able to lift his car with the fence rail.

3. You noticed that when you moved the eraser (the fulcrum) toward your finger, the force you used to lift the book became greater; that is, you had to push harder. You would conclude that, in order to lift a heavy object with a little force the fulcrum should be as close as possible to the object (Figs. 230 and 233).

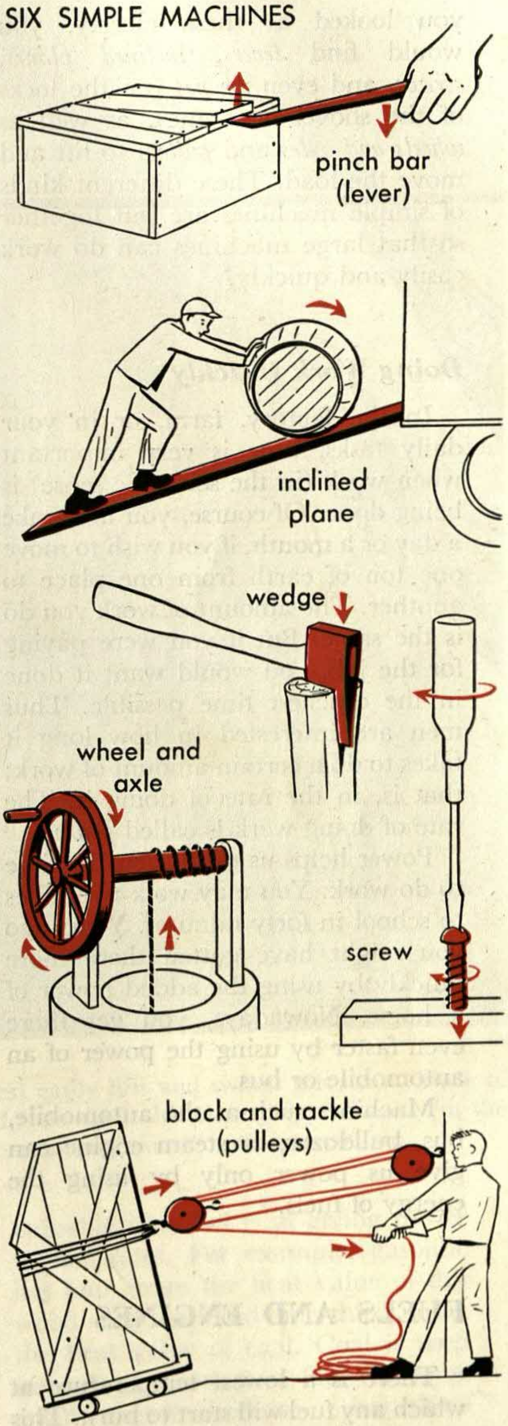
Five Other Simple Machines

Certainly it is a great help to use a simple machine like a lever to make work easier to do. However, there are five other simple machines that also make work easier to do. Study the illustrations on this page.

1. Slopes or *inclined planes* make it easier to roll or push heavy articles to a height than to lift them straight up.
2. *Screws* lift or fasten heavy weights.
3. *Wedges* with the use of a small force can move or split rock, metal, or wood.
4. *Wheels and axles* can drag or lift very heavy objects.
5. *Pulleys* or block-and-tackle arrangements can move a house (Figs. 233 and 234).

Have you used any of these simple machines at home or at school?

All larger machines that do our work are made of one or more of these simple machines (Fig. 234). Have you ever seen a Diesel shovel dig tons of earth and dump it into a large truck? Or a crane lift and swing great loads from place to place? If



233 These six simple machines make work easier to do. Can you see why?

you looked at these closely, you would find *levers*, *inclined planes*, *screws*, and even *wedges* (on the locks of the shovel or crane), as well as *wheels and axles* and *pulleys* to lift and move the load. These different kinds of simple machines are put together so that large machines can do work easily and quickly.

Doing Work Quickly

In the factory, farm, or in your daily tasks, time is very important when work (in the scientific sense) is being done. Of course, you may take a day or a month, if you wish to move one ton of earth from one place to another. The amount of work you do is the same. But if you were paying for the job, you would want it done in the quickest time possible. Thus men are interested in how long it takes to do a certain amount of work; that is, in the rate of doing it. The rate of doing work is called *power*.

Power helps us to shorten the time to do work. You may walk two miles to school in forty minutes. Years ago you might have gotten there more quickly by using the added power of a horse. Nowadays, you get there even faster by using the power of an automobile or bus.

Machines such as the automobile, bus, bulldozer, or steam engine can give us power only by using the energy of fuels.

FUELS AND ENGINES

There is a lowest temperature at which any fuel will start to burn. This temperature is called the *kindling temperature* of the fuel.

To Light a Fire

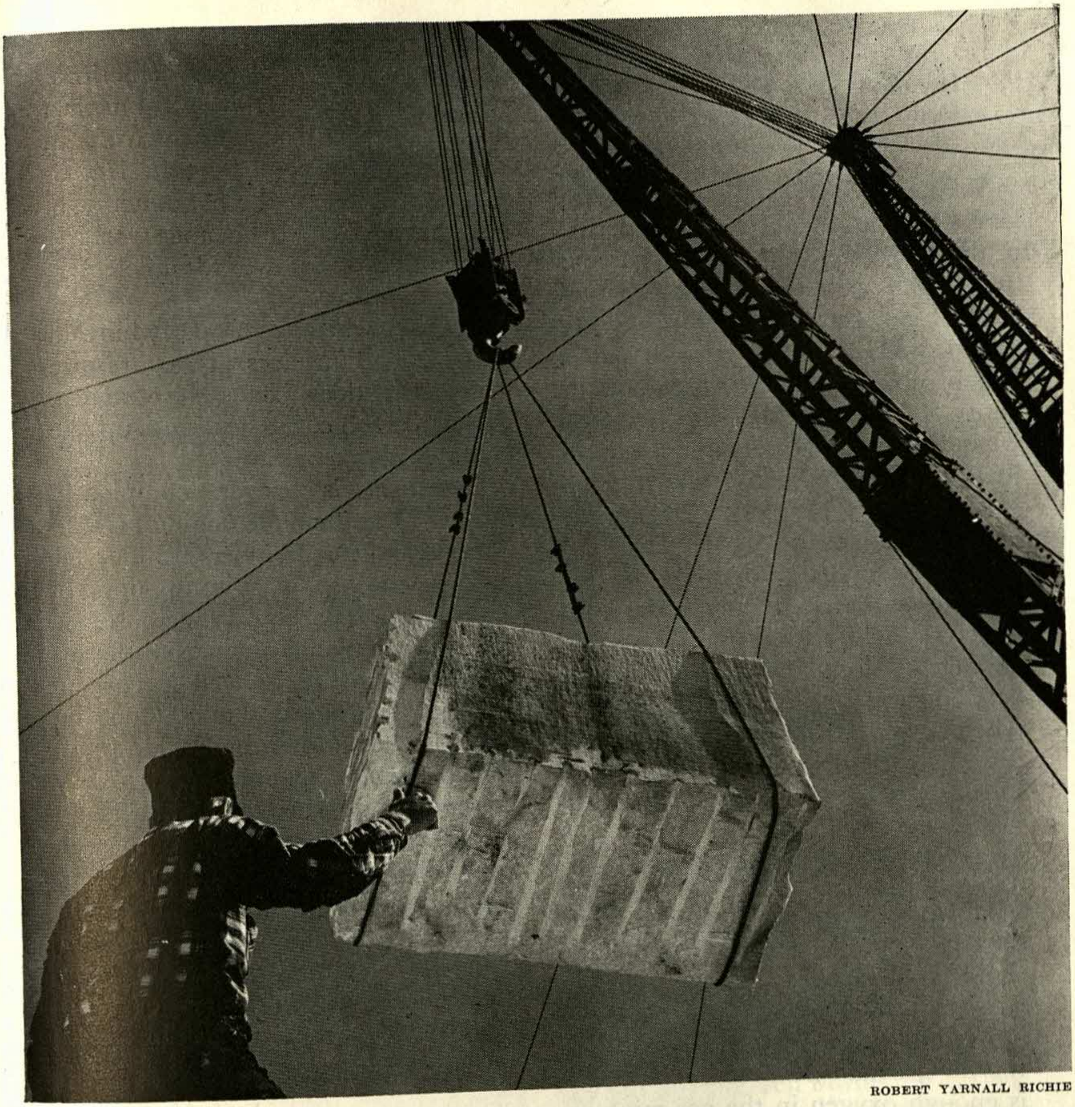
Fuels have different kindling temperatures. For example, rubbing the head of a match on a rough surface causes chemical fuel in the match head to be heated. This small amount of heat makes these chemicals burn. The heat of a burning match head is enough to cause the paper of the match to burn. The paper has a higher kindling temperature than the chemicals in the match head. Wood matches can be made to burn the same way, or wood kindling can be set on fire by the heat of burning paper. Coal with a higher kindling temperature than wood can be set on fire by the heat of burning kindling wood. Coal fires are usually started with kindling wood because the heat from a tiny burning match is not great enough to set fire to a piece of coal of ordinary size. However, a match or even a spark may set fire to powdered coal or dust.

Certain fuels, such as illuminating gas, natural gas, alcohol, gasoline, and cleaning fluid have very low kindling temperatures and can be set on fire easily by the heat of a burning match or even a spark.

How Do Fuels Burn?

Some fuels, like coke and charcoal, are almost pure carbon, but most fuels contain both hydrogen and carbon, as, for example, gasoline and kerosene. When the kindling temperatures of these fuels is reached and there is enough oxygen, the fuel burns. The carbon then may burn to make carbon dioxide, and the hydrogen burns to make steam.

In the burning of these fuels a great deal of energy in the form of



ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

234 This crane (made up of simple machines) easily lifts and swings this heavy block of granite out of a quarry. What simple machines do you see in this photograph? *Project:* For the next week carry a small notebook and list all examples of simple machines you see.

heat is given off. The more heat given off for each pound of fuel, the more valuable that fuel is in giving power to machines. For example, gasoline has four times the heat value of dry wood and one and one-third times the heat value of coal. Coal is used instead of wood as a fuel for some steam engines because it has three times the heat value of wood. In the order of their heating value you have:

hydrogen + oxygen → steam + heat

carbon + oxygen → carbon dioxide + heat

	Heat Value per Pound
Dry wood	= 1
Coal	= 3 times wood
Gasoline	= 4 times wood

Solid fuels, like coal, burn slowly, giving off their heat for a long period of time. On the other hand, gaseous fuels, such as illuminating gas and natural gas, burn quickly if they are mixed with air in a closed space. When mixed with air, the vapors or gases of a liquid fuel may explode when the mixture is set on fire. Liquid fuels, such as gasoline, which form gases easily, are exploded in gasoline engines by an electric spark. It is very dangerous to use gasoline indoors or to light a match in any room into which a fuel gas may have been escaping. Explosive cleaning fluids are as dangerous as gasoline. Gasoline, when mixed with air, has more explosive force than dynamite, pound for pound.

Do Fuels Burn Completely?

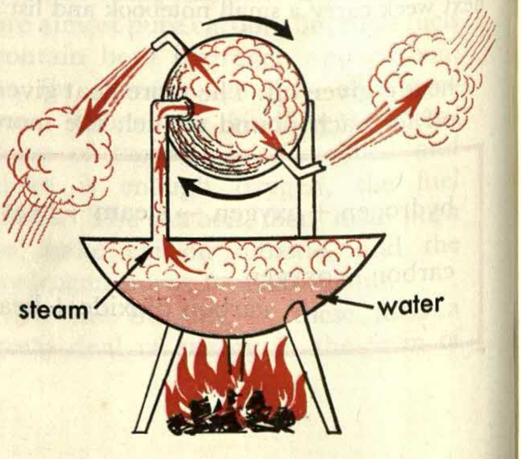
How does air enter a gas stove burner? In the pipe behind the burner there is an opening. As the fuel gas passes by this opening in the pipe, air enters and mixes with the gas. When this air-gas mixture is set on fire, there is enough oxygen in the gas mixture to burn the hydrogen and carbon of the gas. When hydrogen and carbon burn completely, water and carbon dioxide are formed. All the heat value of the fuel is given off.

It makes a difference what method is used to burn a fuel. In a coal furnace much of the heat of the fuel goes up the chimney. Modern boilers are built in such a way that this heat passes back and forth in the furnace under water jackets or tubes before going up the chimney. In this way, heat is saved. Blowers are sometimes used to force air through burning coal to get most of the heat from it, thus leaving very little ash. Newer methods of saving the heat energy of coal have given us cheaper-working locomotives and power to run electric power plants.

Fuel oil, when it is properly burned in stoves and furnaces, gives out more heat than does coal. Here again, though, much of the heat goes up the chimney.

Gasoline is never completely burned in automobile engines. Gasoline, as you remember from your earlier reading, is a compound of hydrogen and carbon. When gasoline burns incompletely, its carbon forms carbon monoxide, as well as carbon dioxide. Illuminating gas (cooking gas) also has carbon monoxide in it. Carbon monoxide, however, is a very poisonous gas. Therefore, you should make sure that every gas burner in your home is safely turned off when not in use. Not a week goes by without reports in newspapers of persons being killed by carbon monoxide from illuminating gas in homes or from the exhaust of automobiles in closed garages.

235 Hero's steam engine. Why does the ball turn?



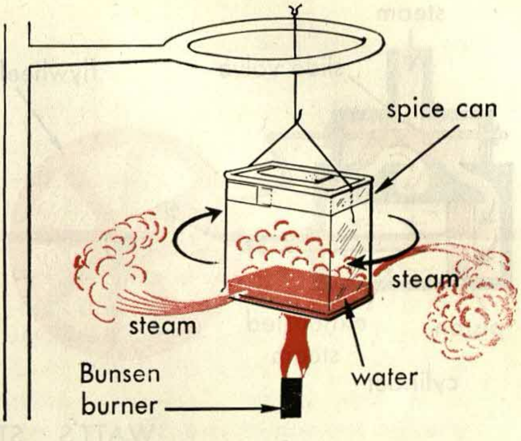
Today we have many different kinds of fuels and many ways of burning them. We also have many kinds of engines which make use of these fuels. The search for more fuels and engines to use them has not ended. Even as you read this chapter, engines for using atomic energy are being built (p. 306). These engines use the heat of splitting atoms to turn water into steam. This steam gives power in much the same way that steam gave power to the first steam engine.

The First Steam Engine

If you could have been in Alexandria, Egypt, on a hot summer's day almost 2,000 years ago, you might have seen one of the first attempts that anyone ever made to use the energy of steam.

A young man named Hero had often boiled water in a pottery jar. Noticing that the force of the steam as it escaped kept lifting up the cover, he thought that, if the steam could push up a cover, it might be made to move other things. Steam might even be made to move an object by pushing it against the resistance of air. So Hero made an engine like the one in Fig. 235.

Hero placed two bent metal tubes on opposite sides of a hollow ball. He then mounted the hollow ball upon a metal rod so that it would turn easily. Then he filled the boiler half full of water and built a wood fire under it. The steam rushing out of the ends of the bent tubes set the ball turning in the same way water rushing out of the bent arms of a lawn sprinkler sets a sprinkler turning. This motion is caused by the force of the stream of steam or water pushing against air.



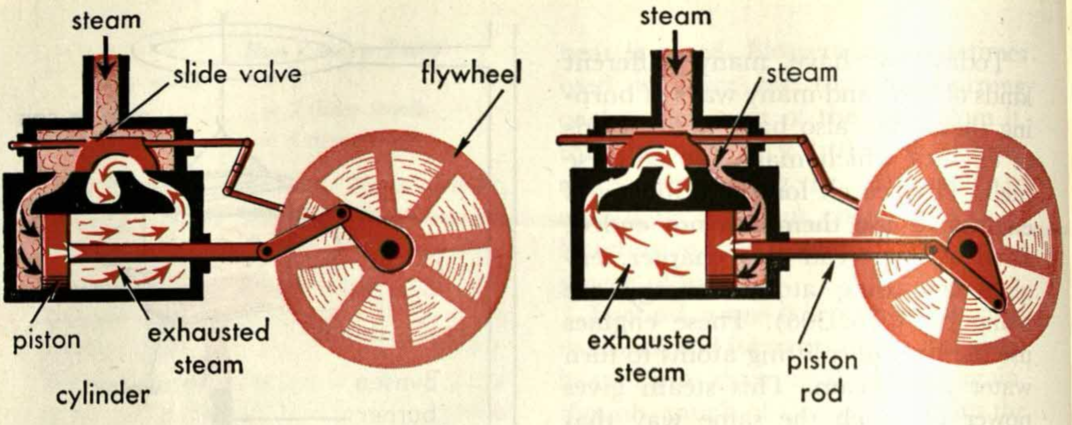
236 What causes the spice can to whirl when the water inside is changed to steam?

You can show how the energy of steam can be made to move an object. With a nail and hammer punch holes diagonally across from each other near two corners of a small pepper can. These holes should be about one-half inch above the bottom and just around the corner on the broad surface of the can. Put about two tablespoonsful of water in the can and close the opening in the top. Hang the tin to the ring of a ring stand by the handle of thread attached to each side of the can with pieces of adhesive tape (Fig. 236).

The can should balance and swing freely. Now heat the bottom of the can with a Bunsen burner or alcohol lamp. What comes out of the holes? What makes the can whirl?

James Watt and the Age of Steam

Hero's tiny engine was the first ever invented to make use of the energy of steam, but it was thought of in his time as just an interesting toy. It was not until the middle of the eighteenth century that James Watt, one of the greatest of Britain's scientists, built the first practical



WATT'S STEAM ENGINE

237 In Watt's steam engine, the motion of the slide valve changes the direction of the steam entering the cylinder (*left*). The slide valve moves to the right, allowing steam to rush into the cylinder in front of the piston, forcing the piston to the right. This moves the flywheel (*right*). The slide valve moves to the left, allowing steam to rush into the cylinder in back of the piston, forcing the piston to the left. This keeps the flywheel turning.

steam engine. When he started his work, he knew that steam takes 1,700 times as much space as the water from which it came. He found ways to make this power of steam do work faster and cheaper than it could be done by horses. Figure 237 shows how Watt's steam engine worked.

James Watt's invention came just at the time industry (the making of goods by machines) was ready for power. His steam engine, invented in 1768, was the only engine to give this power. The age of steam power began, and other inventors used steam to make new kinds of engines.

Steam Starts an Industrial Revolution

James Watt died in 1814, but not before he had seen his steam engine start the Industrial Revolution, the greatest revolution the world has ever known. In the eighteenth century, England's most important industry was the spinning and weaving of cloth by hand. New inventions for spinning and weaving appeared, but they needed more power than was at hand. More and more coal was needed to give this power. Fortunately, the power from Watt's engine helped to mine more coal by lifting it to the surface from deep down in the mines. The coal was then burned to make steam to run the steam engines of mills. People who had done their weaving on small hand looms moved to cities where miles of cotton and wool cloth were being woven daily in great factories powered by steam engines. As this change from work by hand to work by machine spread, more and more people moved to cities where manufacturing plants could get transportation and fuel and cheap power.

James Watt's steam engine stayed in one place and did work. George Stephenson, an English engineer, got the idea of putting a steam engine on wheels. In 1814 he succeeded in hauling ten coal cars at the dizzy speed of four miles an hour! Thus the first locomotive was born.

Imagine yourself among a crowd that gathered on the banks of the Hudson River in 1807. You would have been amazed and perhaps somewhat fearful to see a ship without sails belching forth flame and smoke. Yet it was moving up the river against tide and wind. Although other ships had used the power of steam to move against both wind and tide, the *Clermont*, Robert Fulton's ship, was one of the first to make a successful trip. He had taken care not to repeat the mistakes of other inventors.

Parson's Turbine

Watt's steam engine, and others like it, wasted a great deal of the energy of steam. Not all of the heat energy in the steam was used up before it left the engine.

Over 60 years ago Charles Parsons, another English engineer, thought of a way to get more power from steam. He made a machine that looked like a series of windmill blades of different sizes, one behind the other. The blades were carefully built to use up the energy of the steam as it passed from one row of blades to the next.

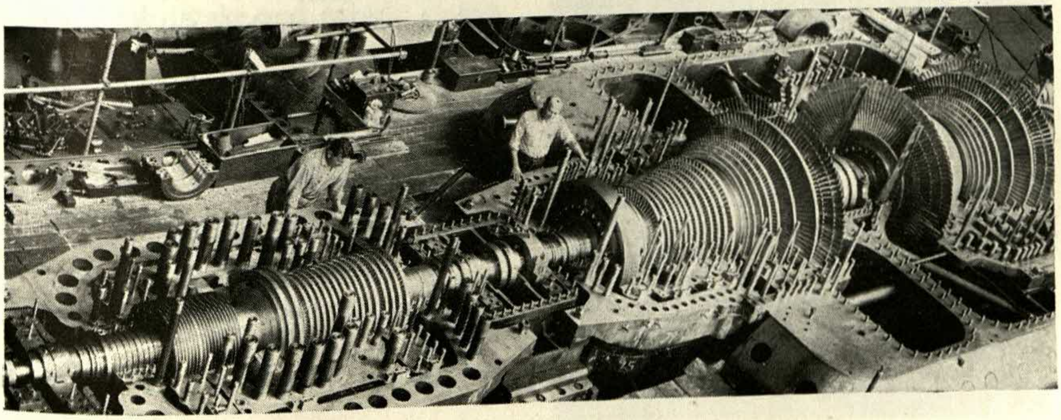
When this engine was placed in an outer shell, the steam entered the shell at high pressure and temperature. When the waste steam came out, it had given up most of its heat energy. Meanwhile this energy had been used to make the shaft of the machine turn at high speed. Parsons found that his machine, called a *turbine* (TER-bin), would run at a speed of 1,800 revolutions per minute just as long as high-pressure steam entered it. Moreover, for its size and light weight, it gave an amazing amount of power. Many steam turbines today give over 50 times the power of Parsons' turbine (Fig. 238).

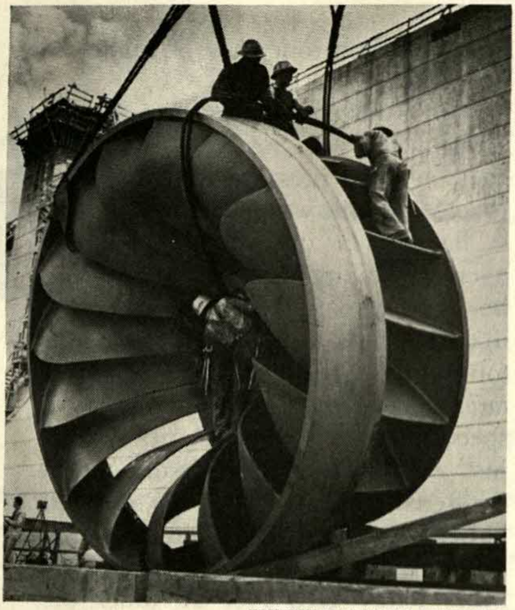
Steam turbines do a great deal of the world's work in giving power to industry. In the future, the heat of atomic energy may be used to replace coal and oil. As you remember, the heat of splitting atoms is already being used to run turbines in the submarines *Nautilus* and *Sea Wolf* (p. 306).

Other turbines, built somewhat like the steam turbine, make use of the energy of falling water. The Francis wheel, a water turbine, has

238 This is one of our most powerful modern steam turbines (with the upper half of its outer shell removed). Why are the rows of blades placed carefully in a circle, one behind the other?

WESTINGHOUSE





TENNESSEE VALLEY AUTHORITY

239 A Francis wheel turbine for the TVA Cherokee Dam. Note the huge blades that cause the turbine to whirl by making use of the energy of falling water.

blades placed in its rim (Fig. 239). It is used where water falls with great force. To make the water in rivers fall with enough force to turn water turbines, dams are built to raise the water level. That is why at the base of most large dams you will find plants where huge dynamos, machines which produce electricity, are turned by the energy of falling water.

GASOLINE AND DIESEL ENGINES

You have learned that a liquid fuel such as gasoline forms a gas even at low temperatures. This gas, when mixed with the right amount of air, is a very explosive mixture.

It is hard to say just who should get the credit for the invention of an engine that would make use of the energy caused by the explosion of gasoline. Certainly men had thought about it ever since the drilling of the first oil well in 1859. A German engineer named Nikolaus Otto (NIK-oh-lowss·AW-toh) is listed in the records as having built the first internal-combustion engine in 1886.

An *internal-combustion engine* burns the fuel inside the engine to give it power. The gasoline and Diesel engines are internal-combustion engines. The steam engine and turbine are *external-combustion* engines. Their fuel is burned outside the engine to give it power.

How Does a Gasoline Engine Work?

The modern gasoline engine is one of our best engines for giving power. In automobiles and trucks, these engines have four, six, and eight cylinders. In airplanes there are many more cylinders. However, each cylinder does the same kind of work. You need to know how one cylinder works before you can understand how the many cylinders of large engines work.

There are thousands of one-cylinder gasoline engines used for sawing wood, for hand cultivating and plowing, and for cutting grass. All of them have these parts:

1. A cylinder.
2. A piston which is tightly fitted into the cylinder.
3. Valves to let in a mixture of gasoline and air and to let out waste or exhaust gases.
4. A spark plug whose spark explodes the mixture of gasoline and air.
5. A timing device to bring the spark to the cylinder at just the right time.

6. A rod from the piston which connects with the engine's crankshaft.

7. A flywheel.

8. Oil to make the moving parts move more smoothly.

The Strokes of a Gasoline Engine

The strokes of a gasoline engine give it power. But what are strokes? In the steam engine the piston moves up and down in the cylinder. Each movement is a stroke, forced by the entering steam. In the gasoline engine, strokes are forced by the explosion of the full mixture of gasoline vapor and air. Here is the way it works. Study Fig. 241 carefully as you read the next section.

1. *The intake stroke.* The piston moves downward in the cylinder, letting in a mixture of gasoline vapor and air. At this time the intake valve in the cylinder is opened. It is like your bicycle pump, in a way. When you pull the handle up, air rushes into the pump through a valve.

2. *The compression stroke.* When you push against the handle of your bicycle pump, you push air into your tire. You *compress* it; that is, you press it into a small space. In the gasoline engine the piston moves *upward* against the mixture of gasoline and air. Both intake and exhaust valves are now closed. The piston is fitted so tightly into the cylinder that no gas can escape (Fig. 241). The movement of the piston pushes the mixture of gas and air into a small space. The gas is now compressed. This pressure against the gas mixture makes it very hot.

3. *The power stroke.* An electric spark (Fig. 241) jumps across the points of the spark plug just as the piston reaches the end of the compression stroke (which compresses the gas). Immediately the hot mixture of gasoline and air explodes. The hot gases resulting from the explosion expand and force the piston downward. This gives the gasoline engine its power.

A connecting rod from the piston to the shaft causes the shaft to turn (Fig. 241). A heavy wheel attached to the shaft turns also. The movement of this wheel, called the flywheel, brings the piston up into the cylinder again.

4. *The exhaust stroke.* As the piston moves upward, the exhaust valve opens. The rising piston pushes out

240 This Diesel-powered shovel has lifted, and is about to dump, tons of earth into the waiting truck. Why are Diesel engines better than gasoline engines for this work?

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

the gases that remain after the power stroke. Every trace of the burned mixture, except some unburned carbon, is pushed out of the exhaust pipe. When the piston reaches the end of its exhaust stroke and starts downward again, the intake valve opens and another intake stroke begins. Thus the strokes of the gasoline engine come one after another. If the strokes do not come one after another, the engine may fail to work.

Turn your attention again to Fig. 241. See if you can describe the strokes of the engine, the *intake*, *compression*, *power*, and *exhaust* strokes.

The Diesel Engine

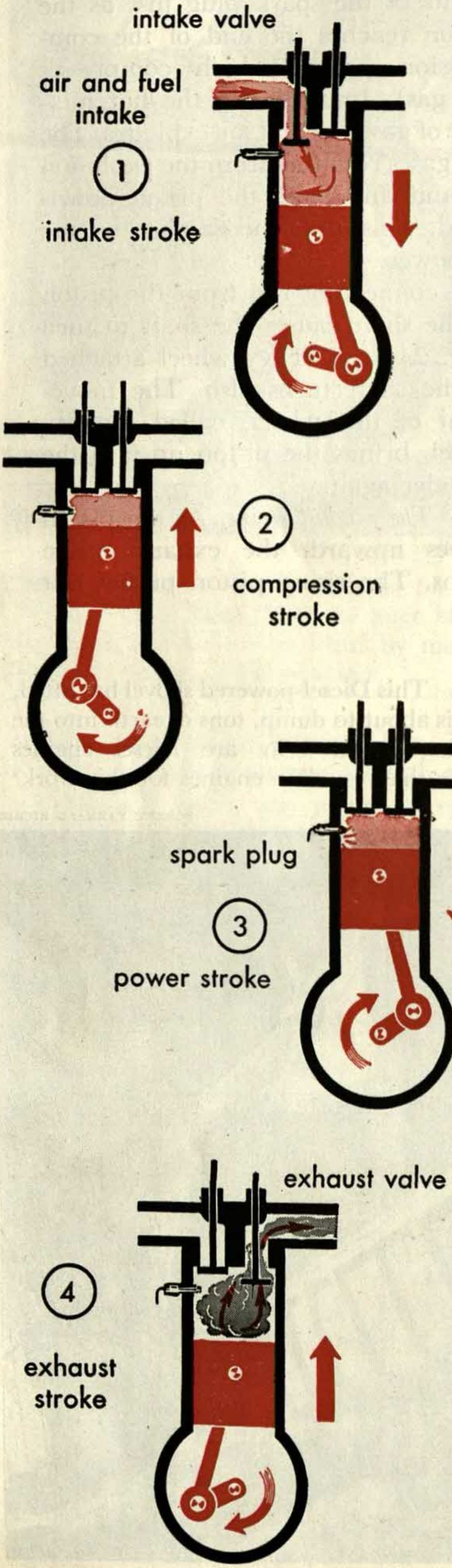
Nearly four-fifths of all power used in the United States comes from internal-combustion engines in automobiles, trucks, trains, buses, ships, tractors, bulldozers, and small power plants. For heavy work the Diesel engine, rather than a gasoline engine, is often used.

The Diesel engine (Fig. 242) is very much like the four-stroke gasoline engine. It is different only in these ways:

1. The intake stroke admits air only through an intake valve.

2. The tight-fitting piston, moving upward in a long cylinder, compresses this air in such a small space that the air is heated to a high temperature. (This heat is far above the kindling temperature of heavy fuels.)

3. Just at this point fuel oil under heavy pressure is sprayed into the cylinder. The air has become so hot



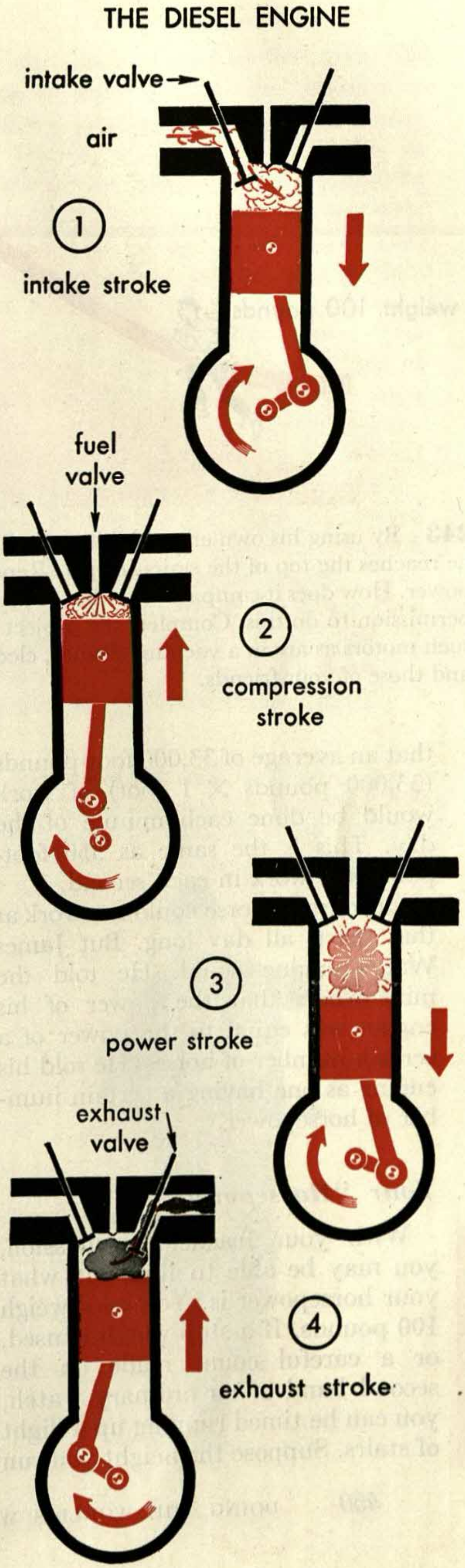
241 The four strokes of a gasoline engine. What causes the power stroke?

that the mixture of fuel oil and air explodes. (A Diesel engine has no spark plugs.) This explosion forces the piston downward with great force. On the next stroke the upward movement of the piston pushes out the burned gases through an exhaust valve. Then the cycles are repeated, as in the gasoline engine (Fig. 241).

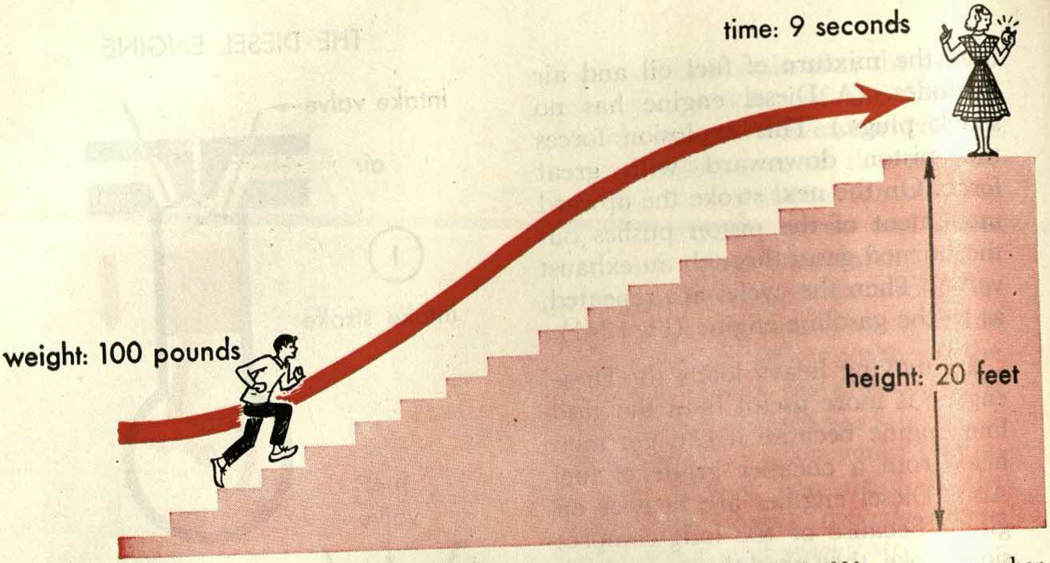
In moving heavy loads the Diesel engine is more useful than the gasoline engine because it can get more heat from a cheaper grade of fuel. Also, Diesel engines are heavier engines. Because of the long compression stroke, they need the strength of a thick-walled cylinder. A gasoline engine of the same power is lighter and better, therefore, in automobiles and airplanes. Diesel engines are very useful in locomotives hauling modern trains. Look about you if you live near a rail center and note the many Diesel locomotives.

HORSEPOWER AND YOU

The term "horsepower" was first used by James Watt when he was trying to sell his steam engine to mineowners who were then using horses to raise coal from mines. He thought in this way: "My engine can do the work of several horses in the same length of time. But how can I measure the power of my engine?" After careful measurement, he decided that a strong horse could lift on pulleys a weight of 33,000 pounds the distance of 1 foot in 1 minute. If the horse could keep on doing that lifting all day long, it would mean


THE DIESEL ENGINE

242 The four strokes of a Diesel engine. What causes the power stroke?



243 By using his own energy, this boy will have produced about one-half horsepower when he reaches the top of the stairs. *Project:* Repeat this experiment and measure your own horsepower. How does it compare with that of your friends? Be sure to get your teacher's or parents' permission to do this. Complete the project by making a chart of the horsepower produced by such motors as are in a vacuum cleaner, electric mixer, and other motors found in your home and those of your friends.

that an average of 33,000 foot-pounds (33,000 pounds × 1 foot) of work would be done each minute of the day. This is the same as 550 foot-pounds of work in each second.

Of course, a horse could not work at that speed all day long. But James Watt's engine could. He told the mineowners that the power of his engine was equal to the power of a certain number of horses. He sold his engine as one having a certain number of horsepower.

Your "Horsepower"

With your teacher's permission, you may be able to find out what your horsepower is. You may weigh 100 pounds. If a stop watch is used, or a careful count made on the second hand of an ordinary watch, you can be timed running up a flight of stairs. Suppose the height you run up is 20 feet and you make it in just 9 seconds by trying hard, even by taking two steps at a time. You have raised your own weight 20 feet in 9 seconds. This is how you figure it:

**Height of stairs: 20 feet
Your weight: 100 pounds
Time: 9 seconds**

You have done 20 × 100, or 2,000 foot-pounds of work in 9 seconds. Two thousand foot-pounds divided by 9 (seconds) equals 222.2 foot-pounds of work done in 1 second. One horsepower is 550 foot-pounds of work per second. The 222.2 pounds of work you did in 1 second is close to one-half of 550 foot-pounds of work in 1 second (which is 1 horsepower). You have produced by your own energy almost one-half horsepower (Fig. 243).

You could not keep that up all day long. But engines can keep on producing horsepower for the world's work.

Cost of Power

Today, the problem is to get power as cheaply as we can. The cost of the horsepower we can get depends upon many things. Here are a few:

1. The source of power (wood, coal, natural gas, gasoline, atomic energy, wind, and water).
2. The engine used (stationary steam, steam turbine, water turbine, gasoline, Diesel, or jet and turbo-jet, about which you will read on p. 498).
3. The greatest energy per pound of fuel.

Only a very small amount of our nation's energy supplies have been tapped. This is particularly true of water power. During the last 30 years great dams have been built—Hoover, Grand Coulee, and those in the Tennessee Valley, to mention a few. They harness the energy of rivers and produce power by making electricity. More dams will store up flood waters and make the power of electrical energy of greater use to the life of our nation. It may also be possible to use the energy of tides to produce power.

Power for You

In the introduction to this unit you read that one to five servants work for you. These servants are given you by electricity. A man doing light work eight hours a day uses, on the average, about one-tenth of a horsepower. The electricity used today in most homes gives you the work of one-tenth to five-tenths of a horsepower eight hours a day. This is equal to the work of one to five men. To put it another way, the amount of electricity to light or heat your home, to use the television set or radio, to wash or iron your clothes, is equal to one-tenth to five-tenths horsepower, or the work of one to five men. This does not take in all the uses of electricity in your life.

Because of electricity alone, you are richer than most men living in the year 1900. For most of these men did not have the powerful servant Electricity working for them. Would you like to know what electricity is, how it works, and how it makes power? Then read the next chapter on "Harnessing the Electron."

You have heard of the Stone Age and the Bronze Age. In Chapter 23 you will learn why this age might be called the Age of Electric Power.

244 When you ride a bicycle, you are using a machine to aid your muscles. What simple machine does the bicycle represent?

BICYCLE INSTITUTE OF AMERICA

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

To be sure you understand the key words below, write the statements in your notebook and replace each blank with the correct word from the list. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

stored energy
Diesel engine
power stroke
energy of motion
turbine
inclined plane
machine
internal combustion
screw
work
horsepower
wedge
kindling temperature
force
wheel and axle
steam engine
resistance
pulley
external combustion
fulcrum
lever
gasoline engine
exhaust stroke

1. Anything that can move itself or make other things move has . . . .
2. Anything that moves has . . . .
3. When a force moves an object a certain distance, . . . is done.
4. Any device that helps men do work is called a . . . .
5. The six simple machines are . . . , . . . , . . . , . . . , . . . , and . . . .
6. The temperature at which a substance takes fire and burns is called the . . . .
7. A steam engine is a (an) . . . engine.
8. The . . . is used where a steam engine of light weight and high speed is needed.
9. The gasoline and Diesel engines are . . . engines.
10. The stroke of the piston of the gasoline engine that pushes out the waste gases of the explosion is called the . . . stroke.
11. The stroke in which the piston gives power to the shaft and flywheel is called the . . . stroke.
12. A unit for measuring power is the . . . .

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Making a teeterboard — a lever.* Make a teeterboard by placing the middle of a plank about 12 feet long over a sawhorse. Let one person get on the plank 1 foot from the sawhorse. Push down with enough force 6 feet away from the opposite end of the sawhorse to raise the

first end of the plank from the ground. Now do the same, but with the person at the far end of the plank. In which position did you use less force? Where on a lever should a fulcrum be to move a large weight with little force?

2. *Kindling temperatures.* On separate asbestos mats, place a match, a piece of paper, a small block of wood, and a chunk of soft coal. Light a Bunsen burner and direct its flame on each article until each one catches fire, that is, until you notice the articles giving off light and heat. Make a note of the time needed for each article to catch fire. List them in order of their kindling temperatures.

3. *Power of steam.* Fill a test tube one-quarter full of water. Cover the outside of a cork stopper with Vaseline and insert it into the mouth of the test tube. Holding the test tube with a test-tube holder, with the corked end pointed away from you and everyone else, bring the bottom of the tube into the flame of a Bunsen burner. When the water starts to boil, what happens? What do you conclude as to the power of steam? Has it enough force to push a piston in the cylinder of a steam engine?

4. *Model turbine.* Insert into a one-hole stopper a glass tube that has been narrowed down at one end. Insert the stopper into the mouth of a flask one-quarter full of water. With a pair of tin cutters make a series of cuts about 1½ inches long and 1 inch apart on the rim of the cover of a tin can that has no lip. With a pair of pliers, twist the notched pieces of tin so that they are somewhat like the blades of a windmill. Pierce the center of the cover with a nail. Wind a short length of string around the nail on each side of the cover so that the cover will turn on the nail easily and yet not move along the nail. Now attach the nail with its cover to a ring stand.

Heat the flask, which is now under the cover. The force of the steam coming from the narrow end of the glass tube strikes the tin blades of the cover, and the cover turns on the nail. What does this show you about the power of steam to turn the blades of a turbine?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. What sort of simple machines would you use to

a. pry up a large boulder?

b. put a 400-pound barrel of vinegar into a truck?

c. split an oak log?

2. Why does steam give power?

3. What would you use to light

a. a wood fire?

b. a coal fire?

c. gasoline vapor and air in a gasoline engine?

4. What happened when the steam engine was invented?

5. Which engine would you use — stationary, steam, steam turbine, water turbine, gasoline, Diesel — for the following work:

a. Making electricity at the foot of large dams.

b. Pumping water into the large water pipes of a city.

c. Running a power lawn mower.

d. Sawing wood with a power saw.

6. A man weighing 160 pounds and carrying a 5-pound bag of sugar ran up a flight of stairs to the floor above. The vertical distance was 10 feet, and his time was 6 seconds. Which of the following numbers tells the horsepower he used in running up the stairs: 3½, 1, ¾, ½?

Adding to Your Library

You will find interesting reading about power and machines in the following books:

1. *Machines That Built America* by Roger Burlingame, Harcourt, Brace, 1953. Read how the important machines that made a great nation were invented and built. You will especially like the chapter, "Six-Shooter."

2. *From Man to Machine* by Agnes Rogers, Little, Brown, 1941. Here is the

story, mainly in pictures, of the great inventions that make your life easier today. You will find in the chapter "Mechanical Power" interesting stories of Watt's steam engine and Fulton's steamboat.

3. *Power from Start to Finish* by Franklin M. and A. C. Y. Reck, Thomas Y. Crowell Co., 1941. This book traces power from the first source — the sun — to power for our modern factories.

4. *Science Looks Ahead* by A. M. Low, Oxford University Press, 1943. The section called "Power" tells how power is gotten from water, steam, coal, and oil. Special mention is made of the Diesel engine.

5. *It Works Like This* by Burr Lyson, E. P. Dutton, 1942. This book has excellent explanations of the Diesel engine and the steam engine.

6. *The Story of the Turbine*, General Electric Co. A pamphlet that explains the working of the steam turbine and its uses. Enough pamphlets for a class may be had by writing to the General Electric Co., Schenectady, N.Y.

A Bit of Research

It is one thing to do some research and another to report on what you have done. It is by the reports of scientists that other scientists know what is being done in the field of science they are working in. Sometimes they are saved a great deal of work by not having to do what someone else has already done.

For your research on this chapter you will have to seek what someone else has done. Organize a committee to make class reports on the following:

1. The history of the use of steam as a means of power.
2. The use of air as a means of power.
3. The use of water as a means of power.

Careers for You

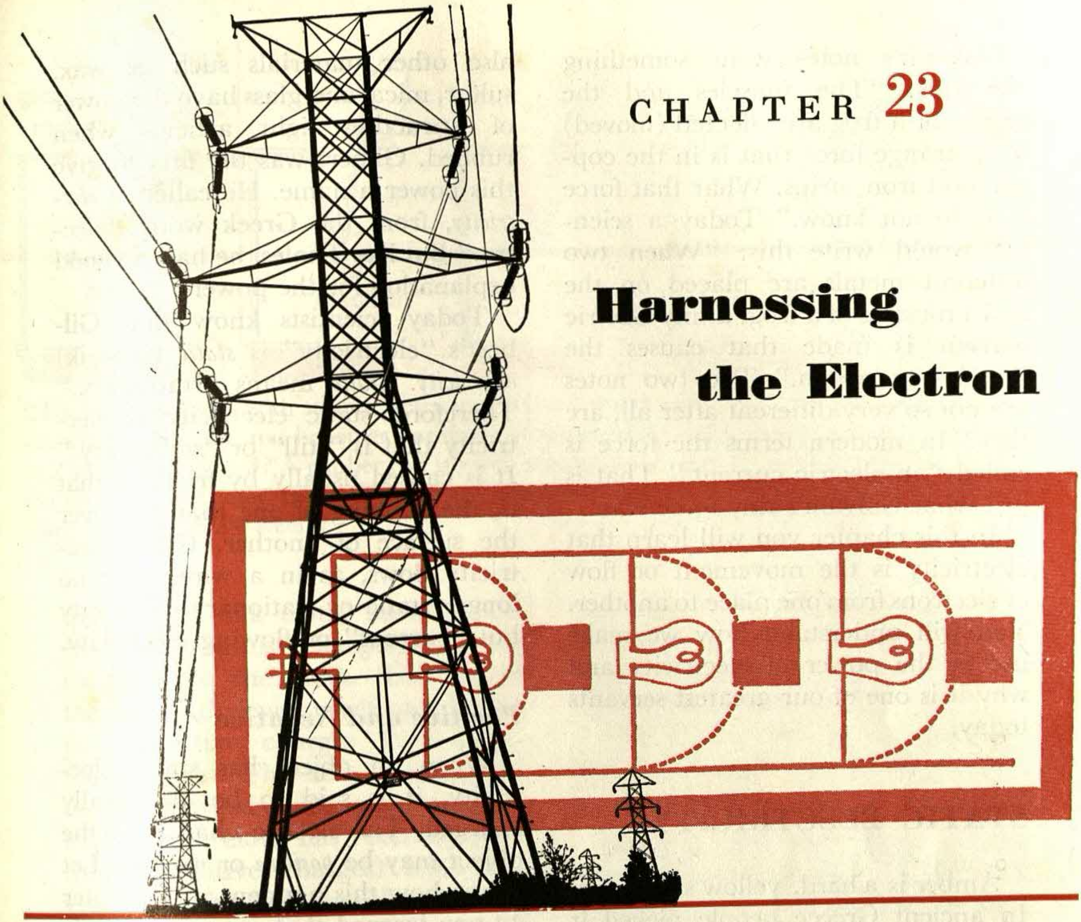
You can get an *engineering* education if you are interested. Many colleges have courses which a student takes for ten weeks, then works for an engineering company ten weeks. This goes on during the entire year, with no summer vacation. In five years the student gets his college degree and has had practical experience. Moreover, the student has earned most of his way through college.

Many large companies train their workers by sending them to college part-time while giving them paid part-time work. There are also scholarships if you are a good student and really interested in making engineering a career. To find what kind of engineering may be your choice, write to colleges for catalogues.

Have you ever thought of *teaching* as a career? The United States needs teachers badly, and, with an increase in population of 3 million people each year, the need will continue for a long time. We especially need teachers trained in science — teachers who can use the chapter you have just read as a springboard to give pupils further knowledge of power and machines that there is not room to discuss here; teachers who can work with students interested in science and start them on a scientific career in research, in industry, or in the nation's laboratories. Why not think of teaching?

CHAPTER 23

Harnessing the Electron



Press a button or flick a switch. A lamp lights, the radio goes on, a motor hums, a car starts. Electrons flow, that is, electricity flows. Man, the scientist, has harnessed the electron and put it to work for you.

WHY SHOULD a doctor be interested in hooking up frogs' legs, of all things, to an electric current? Let's visit the laboratory of Luigi Galvani (loo-EE-jee·gal-VAH-nee), an Italian doctor in the year 1790, to find the answer.

Galvani had stretched out a pair of frogs' legs on the bench in front of him. They were the legs of a very large and powerful frog, and they had looked so good to Galvani's wife that she had bought them for her husband's dinner.

That didn't matter to Galvani. He wasn't going to ruin the meat. He was just going to do another experiment to help him write a book about how animal flesh reacted to different kinds of metals.

Galvani took up a strip of iron and a strip of copper and touched the muscles of the frog's legs with the two metals. The legs started to twitch. He moved the metals over to another place. Again the legs twitched. Galvani took careful notes.

Galvani's notes went something like this: "The muscles and the nerves of a frog are affected (moved) by a strange force that is in the copper and iron strips. What that force is I do not know." Today a scientist would write this: "When two different metals are placed on the moist muscles of a frog, a tiny electric current is made that causes the muscles to twitch." The two notes are not so very different after all, are they? In modern terms the force is called "an electric current." That is just what Galvani's tiny force was.

In this chapter you will learn that electricity is the movement or flow of electrons from one place to another. You will understand how we make use of the power of electricity and why it is one of our greatest servants today.

STATIC ELECTRICITY

Amber is a hard, yellow substance. In ancient Greece people picked it up on the seashore and made it into ornaments. It remained for Thales (THAY-leez), a Greek philosopher who lived about 2,500 years ago, to find that amber, or "electra" as the Greeks called it, has a strange power. If rubbed quickly with a cloth, it attracts small particles, such as pieces of straw and dried leaves. However, Thales had no good explanation for this attraction, and this property of amber remained a mystery for centuries.

Electricity Gets Its Name

About 2,150 years after Thales, an English doctor named William Gilbert found that not only amber but also other materials such as wax, sulfur, mica, and glass have the power of attracting light articles when rubbed. Gilbert was the first to give this power a name. He called it *electricity*, from the Greek word "electra." But like Thales, he had no good explanation for the power.

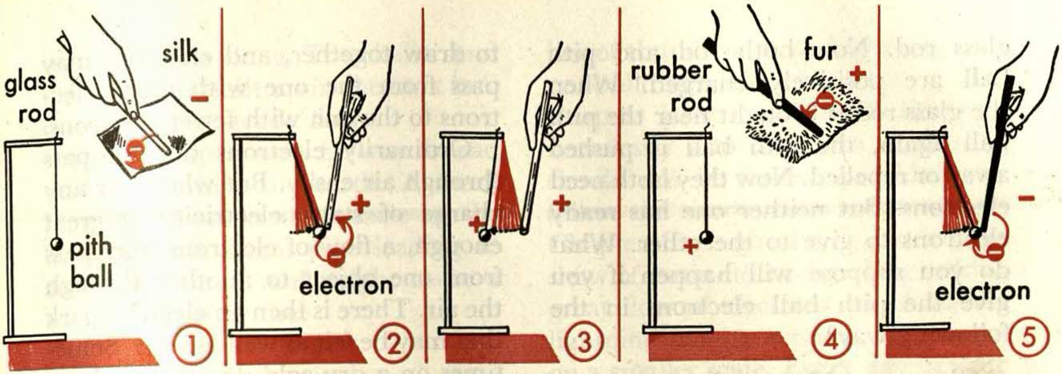
Today scientists know that Gilbert's "electricity" is *static* (STAT-ik) *electricity*. *Static* means "stationary." Therefore, static electricity is electricity that is "still" or "stationary." It is caused usually by friction, that is, the rubbing of one material over the surface of another. Once electricity flows, as in a wire, it is no longer static or stationary electricity but "current" or flowing electricity.

Positive and Negative

When an object has static electricity, it is said to be electrically charged. The electric charge on the object may be *positive* or *negative*. Let us see how this happens. In Chapter 14 you learned that atoms are made up of particles such as electrons, protons, and neutrons. The protons and neutrons are inside the nucleus; the electrons are outside. You also learned that electrons are always negatively charged. Protons are always positively charged.

In an atom the number of positive protons and negative electrons is the same. Therefore, the atom is electrically balanced. In other words, an atom has the *same* number of positive and negative charges. It is electrically *neutral*.

The electrons in some substances can be disturbed easily by friction or rubbing. They may be actually passed from one article to another. For example, when you rub a glass



245 Experiments with static electricity. When rubbed with a piece of silk, a glass rod loses electrons to the silk and becomes positively charged. Why is the pith ball attracted to the rod in *2* and repelled in *3*? A rubber rod is given a negative charge by rubbing it with fur. Why is the pith ball attracted in *5*? *Clues:* What happens to the electrons? Can protons move freely? Can electrons move freely?

rod with a silk cloth, some of the electrons (negative charges) from the rod pass to the cloth. This leaves the rod with fewer electrons. It has more positive charges than negative charges. The rod is thus said to be charged with positive electricity. The cloth has received electrons (negative charges) from the glass rod. The cloth is said, therefore, to be charged with negative electricity (*1* in Fig. 245).

On the other hand, if a hard rubber rod is rubbed with woolen cloth or a piece of fur, electrons from the cloth or fur pass to the rubber rod. In this instance the rubber rod, having received electrons, becomes negatively charged. The wool cloth or fur, having lost electrons, is positively charged.

Whenever an object loses electrons, it becomes unbalanced as far as its supply of electrons is concerned. It needs a supply of electrons to get back its balance. Therefore, the object draws (or attracts) electrons to itself. Thus the object which can attract electrons to itself is said to be positively charged. This is true of the glass rod. However, an object which has taken on more electrons than it needs is negatively charged. This is true of the rubber rod.

Would you like to see how two kinds of charges are produced and how they act?

Hang a pith ball from a ring stand by a silk thread. (A pith ball is about the size of the end of your little finger and is made from the inner part, or pith, of the dried stem of a plant.)

Now rub a glass rod briskly with a piece of silk. When you rub the glass rod with the silk cloth, the rod loses electrons to the cloth. Now touch the pith ball with the end of the rod (*2* and *3* in Fig. 245).

The rod, you remember, has lost electrons. It is now positively charged. That is, it can take on electrons to become electrically balanced. It takes some of these electrons from the pith ball. While the pith ball is giving up these electrons, it clings to the glass rod. After the pith ball has given up electrons it becomes positively charged and drops from the positive glass rod. Now both rod and pith ball are positively charged. When the glass rod is brought near the pith ball again, the pith ball is pushed away or repelled. Now they both need electrons. But neither one has ready electrons to give to the other. What do you suppose will happen if you give the pith ball electrons in the following way?

Give a rubber rod a negative charge by rubbing it briskly with wool or a piece of fur. Bring the end of the rubber rod close to the positively charged pith ball. The pith ball, positively charged (it lost electrons to the glass rod), is attracted to the rubber rod, which has extra electrons. There it clings while taking electrons to get back its electrical balance. Its electrons now are equal in number to its protons. The pith ball is neutral again (*4* and *5* in Fig. 245).

From experiments like these, scientists have found that (1) friction between two different objects like glass and silk, or rubber and fur, places a positive charge on one and a negative charge on the other, (2) two objects with the same kind of charge (+ and + or − and −) repel each other, and (3) two objects with different charges (+ and −) attract each other. These findings may be stated in a simple law: *Like charges of electricity repel each other, and unlike charges of electricity attract each other.*

What Causes Electric Sparks?

The reason two objects with unlike charges of electricity attract each other is that one lacks electrons and the other has extra electrons. Thus two objects with unlike charges tend to draw together, and electrons may pass from the one with more electrons to the one with fewer electrons.

Ordinarily electrons do not pass through air easily. But whenever any charge of static electricity is great enough, a flow of electrons may pass from one object to another through the air. There is then an electric spark that may be felt as well as seen. Sometimes on a dry cold day you pick up electrons when you walk on a deep rug. When you touch a doorknob you may see and feel the spark jump across from your hand to the knob. Were you positively or negatively charged?

If you rub a cat's fur in the dark when the air is dry and cold, you will notice the sparks in the fur. Friction on the countless number of cat hairs builds up a great deal of static electricity. You see this static electricity pass between the hairs in the form of electric sparks.

Electric sparks, caused by static electricity, are feared by people who work in coal mines or in factories where flour or other powdery products are made. Fine dust is an explosive substance when mixed with air. Any source of static electricity is carefully watched so that a spark will not set off an explosion.

Drivers of gasoline trucks also fear static electricity. The friction of the sloshing gasoline inside the tank can build up a large charge of electricity. The rubber tires on the truck keep the electricity that is built up in the tank from passing into the earth. If there were no way to keep the charge of static electricity from building up, the gasoline might explode. But it does not. Why not? Next time you see a gasoline truck you may notice chains dragging on the ground as the truck rolls along. The chains send the electrons built up in the tank into the earth in a steady flow.

Suppose there were no way to lead this charge into the earth. A spark jumping between the nozzle of the hose and the metal pipe leading to an underground tank might cause a bad explosion or fire.

Lightning

Lightning is a kind of great electric spark passing between charged clouds or between the clouds and the earth. How is this electric charge built up?

When air currents rise, they cause friction between the particles of water vapor in the clouds. This friction starts to build up an electrical charge. As the heat of this friction is built up, air currents and clouds move up and down more quickly. Of course, this makes the amount of friction greater, and larger charges of static electricity are built up in the clouds. Finally, a jagged flash, followed by thunder, breaks across the sky. The flash is a giant electric spark that is really a discharge of electrons from a negatively charged cloud to a positively charged cloud. Thunder is heard after the flash.

In the same way, there is a flash when heavily charged clouds move close to some point on the earth with an opposite charge. You see a bolt of lightning that passes between the clouds and the oppositely charged ground. The thunder is caused by the rush of the surrounding air to fill the space caused by the sudden expansion (pushing outward) of the air heated by lightning.

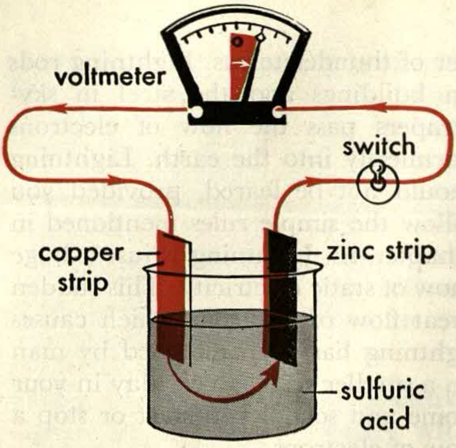
Lightning causes very little damage when we consider the great number of thunderstorms. Lightning rods on buildings and the steel in skyscrapers pass the flow of electrons harmlessly into the earth. Lightning should not be feared, provided you follow the simple rules mentioned in Chapter 12. Lightning is just a huge show of static electricity. This sudden great flow of electrons which causes lightning has been matched by man on a smaller scale. Every day in your home and school you start or stop a flow of electrons.

ELECTRONS AND THEIR FLOW

Have you ever thought how important a switch is on your bicycle headlight, your flashlight, or in your home? Switches are useful things. They start or stop a flow of electrons. But the electrons must have been produced somewhere. Where did they come from? Why does the flick of your finger on a switch heat an iron or light your home?

Volta's Cell

In 1796, Alessandro Volta, an Italian scientist, made a great discovery. He built an arrangement of zinc and copper disks like coins, separated by strips of leather soaked in salt. He connected the zinc and copper disks separately to wires. Whenever he touched the ends of the wires to the flesh of frogs' legs, he could make the legs jump. We now know that when he connected the zinc disks and the copper disks, electricity flowed through the wire connecting the disks. What Volta made is now called a voltaic pile in his honor. We would call a voltaic



246 The meter shows that an electric current (a flow of electrons) is produced by a simple voltaic cell. What is the source of the flow of electrons?

pile a battery. This was the first method used to make electricity flow through wires. This flow of electricity is called "current" electricity.

Later on Volta found that, if he put two different metals in a drinking glass holding acid and water, he could also get a current of electricity when the metals were connected by wires.

You can make this simple voltaic cell by placing a copper strip and a zinc strip in a solution of dilute sulfuric acid. Connect the zinc and the copper strips to a switch and a meter by using bell wire, as shown in Fig. 246. The meter measures the flow of the electrons. When you press the switch, the needle of the meter will move. This shows that a flow of electrons is coming from the voltaic cell. When you release the switch, the flow stops and the meter needle returns to its first position, that is, to 0.

The source of the flow of electrons in the voltaic cell is chemical action. The zinc and copper strips are called "poles," when used in a voltaic cell. When zinc and copper poles are placed in sulfuric acid, chemical action starts. The chemical action causes the copper strip, or positive pole, to give up electrons, and the zinc strip, or negative pole, to have a large supply of electrons. These electrons flow out through the wire. They go to the copper strip, or positive pole, which lacks electrons. In this way a complete path for the electrons is made. This path is called an *electric circuit*. When this happens we say we have a current or flow of electricity.

Flowing Electricity

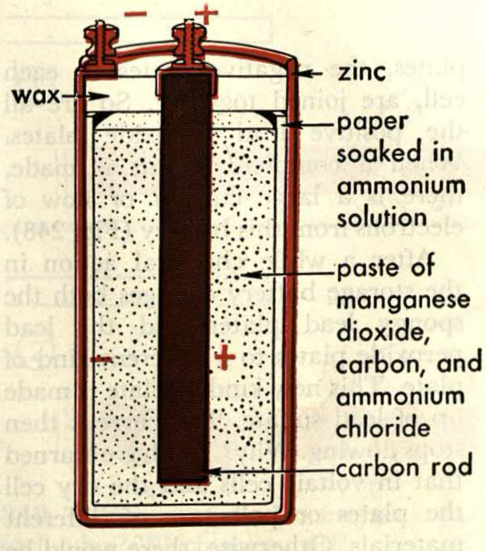
What happens when you turn on a light in your room by pressing a switch? You join two ends of a wire inside the switch. Electrons flow along the wire from a source making electricity, through the light bulb in your room, and back to the source again. An electric circuit has been completed. When you turn off the light you open the switch, and no electrons can pass the gap. Wherever electricity is used, a complete electric circuit is made just by closing a switch. This action allows electrons to flow and do work in lighting, heating, and giving power to electric motors. Opening the switch breaks the electric circuit; closing the switch completes the circuit.

Have you ever had a choice of two guesses and made the wrong guess? Although Benjamin Franklin was one of our great scientists, he made a wrong guess about the direction in which electricity flows. He guessed that electricity passed from the positive pole to the negative pole. In this book we shall follow the modern evidence that electricity flows in the opposite direction in a wire — from the negative pole to the positive (Fig. 246). And you know the reason: electric current is a flow of electrons. The flow has to start from the point where there is a great supply of electrons (negative charges), and that is at the negative pole.

The Dry Cell

The dry cell is today a common source of electricity. The dry cells in your flashlight are not really dry. Each cell is made up of the following materials: a zinc can that acts as the negative pole, and a carbon rod through the center that acts as the positive pole. Around the inside of the zinc can is a lining of paper that has been soaked in ammonium chloride. Between this paper and the carbon rod there is a paste of manganese dioxide, fine carbon particles, and ammonium chloride (Fig. 247). As in the voltaic cell, the source of the flow of electrons in the dry cell is chemical action. The zinc and carbon poles react with the ammonium chloride. This chemical action sends a flow of electrons from the negative zinc pole to the positive carbon pole when they are joined by a wire. However, hydrogen gas is made by the chemical action. It is removed by the manganese dioxide in the paste. If it were not removed, the hydrogen would act as a blanket to cover the carbon pole and the flow of electrons would lessen or stop.

When a dry cell is used for a long time, it grows weak because more hydrogen is made than can be taken care of by the manganese dioxide. Also, the ammonium chloride is being used up. After a rest the cell may get back some of its ability to give a flow of electrons. This is so because the manganese dioxide has had time to remove extra hydrogen from around the carbon pole.


–
+
zinc
wax
paper soaked in ammonium solution
paste of manganese dioxide, carbon, and ammonium chloride
–
+
carbon rod

247 This is what you would see if you cut a dry cell lengthwise. *Project:* If you have some old, useless dry cells, take one apart. Can you find the parts shown above?

After further use, however, the dry cell goes "dead"; that is, chemical action has used up the ammonium chloride. Then no more electrons pass from the zinc pole to the carbon pole.

The Storage Battery

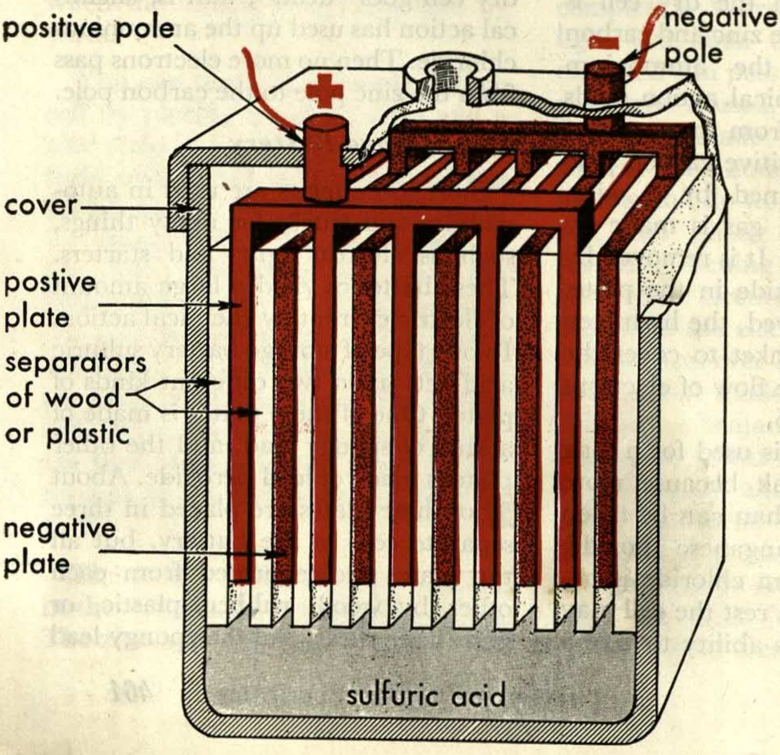
Storage batteries are used in automobiles and trucks for many things, such as electric lights and starters. These batteries yield a large amount of electric current by chemical action. In one type of storage battery sulfuric acid acts upon two different kinds of plates. One of these plates is made of a kind of spongy lead, and the other plate is made of lead peroxide. About 50 of these plates are placed in three separate cells of the battery, but all the plates are separated from each other by wood, rubber, plastic, or glass fiber sheets. All the spongy lead plates, the negative plates in each cell, are joined together. So are all the positive lead peroxide plates. When a complete circuit is made, there is a large current or flow of electrons from this battery (Fig. 248).

After a while chemical action in the storage battery changes both the spongy lead plates and the lead peroxide plates to a different kind of plate. This new kind of plate is made up of lead sulfate. The current then stops flowing. Why? You have learned that in voltaic cells and the dry cell the plates or poles are of different materials. Otherwise, there would be no flow of electrons. The storage battery must also have different kinds of plates. When a large part of all the plates has been changed to lead sulfate, the battery is "dead."

To keep the storage battery from going dead, we must recharge it by sending electrons into it from some other source. These new electrons flow into the battery in a direction opposite to that of the current coming from the battery. This current that we now send into the battery makes the plates unlike again. This is the sort of thing that happens in an automobile battery. While you are using electricity from your battery to run your engine and lighting system, your engine at the same time runs a device called a *generator*, which makes electrons flow back into your battery to keep it "charged." But if you keep lights on without running your engine, all the plates in your battery will become alike. Then your battery will be discharged and useless.

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY

The shepherd Magnes (MAHG-nez), who lived long ago near the city of Magnesia in Asia Minor, made a



248 The inside of a storage battery, like the one used in an automobile to start the engine and light the headlights. How is this battery recharged?

surprising discovery. As the story goes, Magnes, while tending his flocks, found that the iron nails in his sandals as well as the iron tip on his staff were drawn to the earth. Digging down into the ground, he discovered a rock which stuck to his sandals. This was the natural magnet that is called loadstone. Because of its strange power, for thousands of years people believed that loadstone would cure many diseases and even toothaches.

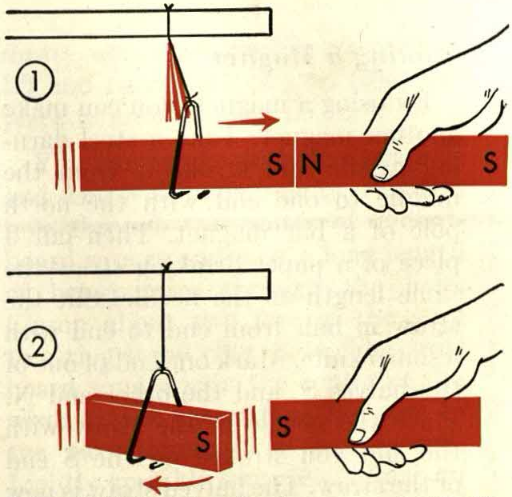
The First Magnet

Loadstone (or magnetic oxide of iron) is found in many countries of the world. It is this rock that was used in magnetizing needles for the first compasses. Today we have magnets made of steel or special alloys. These magnets are hundreds of times more powerful than loadstone. With electricity we can make even more powerful magnets.

How Magnets Act

Place a penny, a nail, a brass screw, a piece of glass, a gold ring, a piece of paper, and a paper clip on a table. Bring a bar magnet close to each one. (A bar magnet is a straight piece of magnetized metal, not U-shaped.) Which articles are attracted? Now bend a paper clip to form a hook at one end and a loop or cradle at the other. Lay a bar magnet upon the cradle, and hang the hook end from a support with a piece of string. Let the bar magnet come to rest. Does it point north and south?

You have now made a kind of compass. Why does a compass tell direction? It tells direction because the end of the magnetized bar or needle always points north and south.



249 Which poles of a bar magnet attract each other? Which poles repel?

Bring one end of another bar magnet near one end of the magnet in the cradle. Do the two attract or repel each other? Now bring the same end of the bar magnet near the other end of the magnet in the cradle that points north. What happens? By these experiments you have shown that magnets have certain properties.

Properties of Magnets

1. Magnets attract only certain substances, such as iron or steel.

2. When allowed to swing freely, one end of a horizontal straight magnet will point north and the other end will point south. In other words, a magnet has a north-seeking pole at one end and a south-seeking pole at the other end.

3. Unlike poles of magnets attract each other; like poles repel each other.

Making a Magnet

By using a magnet, you can make another magnet. Take a steel darning needle and stroke it from the middle to one end with the north pole of a bar magnet. Then cut a piece of a paper drinking straw the same length as the needle. Slit the straw in half from end to end with a sharp knife. Mark one end of one of the halves S, and the other end N. Place the needle in the straw with the end you stroked on the S end of the straw. The halved straw is now like a tiny boat, carrying the needle. Place the straw boat in a saucer of water. Bring the south pole of the bar magnet near the stroked end of the needle. The needle is repelled, and the boat swings around. This shows that you have made a south pole at this end of the needle by stroking it with the north pole of a magnet. Has a north pole been made in the other end of the needle at the same time? How would you find out?

Now let the darning needle on the floating straw come to rest and watch which way it points. Have you made a compass as well as a magnet?

This experiment has shown that:

1. A magnet can make another magnet.
2. The new magnet also has north and south poles.
3. The new magnet can act as a compass.

What Is Magnetism?

No one knows exactly what magnetism is or exactly how it makes magnets of metals. Since the invention of the first compass, men have known that the earth had a strange force that caused a compass needle to point north and south. We know now that the earth itself is a large magnet that causes this.

The north and south magnetic poles of the earth are some distance from the north and south geographic poles. A compass needle, therefore, points to these magnetic poles and not to the geographic poles. Maps are drawn showing the geographic poles. Fliers and ship captains, therefore, must be able to use the compass so that they can tell where they are at any time.

It is also known that some magnetized metals have stronger magnetism than others. The magnetism is also held for different lengths of time. Soft iron magnetizes easily and loses its magnetism just as easily. Steel magnetizes less easily but makes a strong magnet that holds its strength for a long time. An alloy called alnico, made of nickel and cobalt, magnetizes with difficulty. However, it makes a very strong magnet that holds its strength longer than any other metal.

Picturing Magnetism

Even though we don't know exactly what magnetism is, we can make a picture of it.

Place a glass plate or cardboard square over the length of a bar magnet. Shake some iron filings over the surface of the plate. Tap the plate gently with your finger. The iron filings take on a certain pattern (Fig. 250). Now take away the plate. Move the north pole of another bar magnet about one inch away from the south pole of the first. Place another glass plate over both poles, sprinkle more iron filings over the plate, and tap as before. Examine the pattern (Fig. 250). Repeat, but this time with a glass plate over two like poles. Again look closely at the pattern.

You have found by these experiments the following facts:

1. Magnetism shows itself in a pattern called *lines of force*. These lines (shown by the pattern of iron filings) seem to go out in all directions — all around and through a magnet from the south to the north pole. The strength of a magnet depends upon the width or "field" of these lines of force.

2. Two unlike poles are attracted when the lines of force surrounding both poles are united.

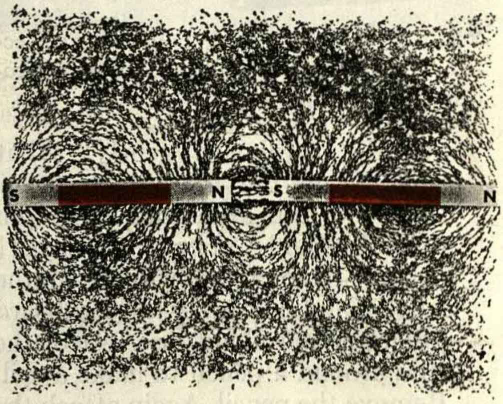
3. Two like poles are repelled when the lines of force surrounding both poles are repelled.

Magnetism from Electricity

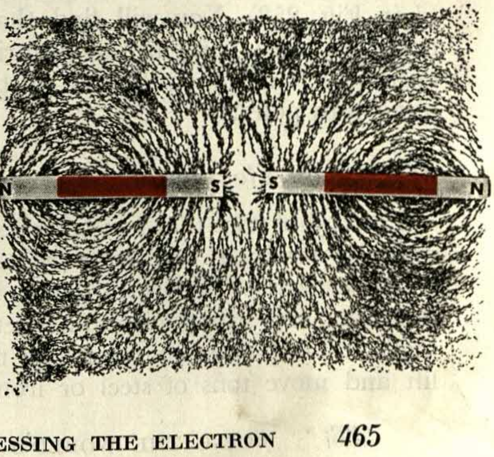
In 1819, Hans Oersted (UR-sted), a Danish scientist, made an exciting discovery. He found that when he held a wire carrying an electric current over a compass, the compass needle would turn away from its north-seeking position. He learned that any wire carrying a current of electricity has a magnetic field around it.

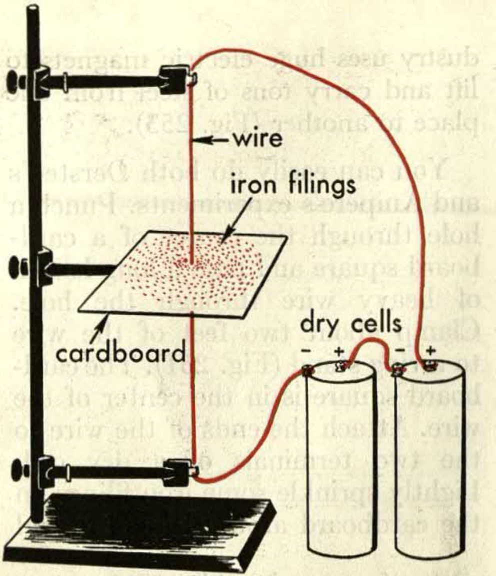
A year later, in 1820, a French scientist, André Ampère (an-DRAY. (ahm-PAIR), found that a coil of wire carrying an electric current acted the same way as a magnet. That is, it had north and south poles. Later discoveries showed that a bar of soft iron placed in the center of the coil of wire would greatly add to the strength of this magnet. Today, industry uses huge electric magnets to lift and carry tons of steel from one place to another (Fig. 253).

You can easily do both Oersted's and Ampère's experiments. Punch a hole through the center of a cardboard square and pass a long length of heavy wire through the hole. Clamp about two feet of the wire to a ring stand (Fig. 251). The cardboard square is in the center of the wire. Attach the ends of the wire to the two terminals of a dry cell. Lightly sprinkle some iron filings on the cardboard around the wire and



250 Lines of force around and through a bar magnet. *Above*, attraction of unlike poles. Notice how the lines of force join. *Below*, repulsion of unlike poles. Notice how the lines of force push away from each other.





251 How did Oersted show that an electric current flowing through a wire produced magnetism?

tap the cardboard gently. What position do the iron filings take? How does this experiment help you to understand Oersted's discovery?

Now remove the wire from the battery and take away the cardboard square. Wind about two feet of the wire around a pencil to make a coil. Remove the pencil. Again attach the ends of the wire to the terminals of the dry cell. Bring one end of the coil near the north pole of a compass. Is there attraction or repulsion? Do the same with the other end of the coil (*1* in Fig. 252). You will find that a coil of wire carrying an electric current acts as a magnet with north and south poles.

Making an Electromagnet

The coil of wire that you have just made is really a weak *electromagnet* when it carries an electric current. But how are strong electromagnets made, that is, those that are able to lift and move tons of steel or iron? You can find out by doing a few simple experiments.

On a cardboard square sprinkle enough iron filings or tiny nails to make a small pile. Take the coil of wire you have just made and attach the ends of the wire to the two terminals of the dry cell. Now touch the pile of iron filings with one end of the coil. You will find that some of the filings are attracted by the coil.

Pass a steel knitting needle through the center of the coil and touch the filings as before. Now the steel knitting needle picks up some of the filings. The needle with its wire is an electromagnet, a magnet whose attraction for certain metals is due to electricity.

Use an iron spike in place of the knitting needle. The thick iron spike picks up more of the filings than did the needle.

Attach another dry cell to the first by joining the center terminal (+) of one to the side terminal (−) of the other with a short piece of wire. Attach the ends of the coil around the spike to the two other terminals of the cells and touch the filings as before. The iron spike picks up more iron filings because a stronger electric current flows through the coil.

Now wind six feet of wire around the spike. Attach the ends to the dry cells and repeat as before. You will find that the spike picks up more filings when more coils of wire carrying an electric current are wound around it (2 in Fig. 252).

By now you have come to some understanding about how strong electromagnets are made.

1. A strong magnet needs a heavy iron core (the iron spike).

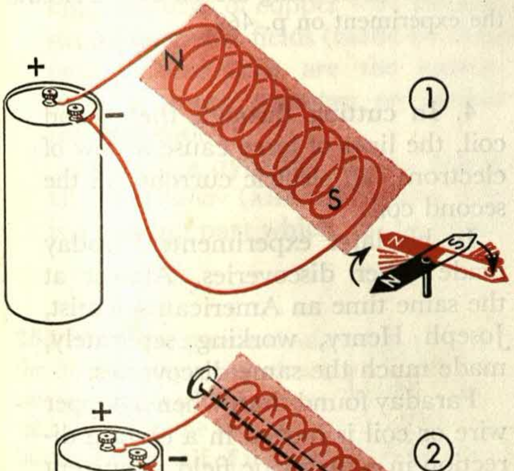
2. A stronger electric current makes a stronger magnet.

3. More turns of a wire about the core make a stronger magnet.

A magnet that lifts tons of iron or steel must be made with a huge iron core with thousands of turns of wire carrying a powerful electric current.

Electricity from Magnetism

About a hundred years ago the son of a blacksmith, who had not even a part of the knowledge you have today, became interested in science. At thirteen this boy went to work for a bookbinder. Luckily this job gave him a chance to read scientific books. He then was appointed a laboratory assistant and was allowed to work with the most famous scientists of England. Because of him, we know how to make electricity by using magnetism. He was Michael Faraday.

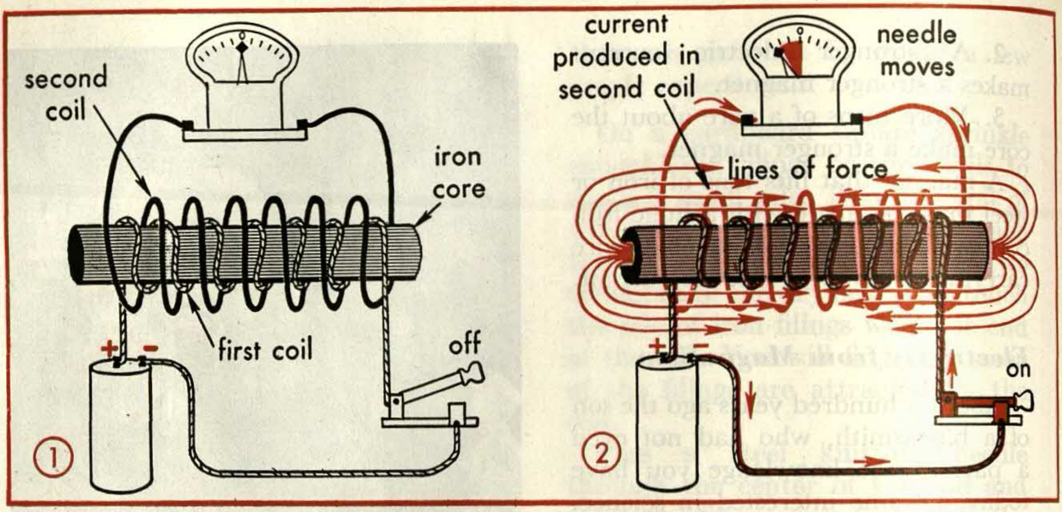


252 An electric current flowing through a coil of wire (*1*) makes north and south poles. Why is the north pole of the compass attracted to one end of the coil? An iron core (here, a spike) thrust through the coil (*2*) makes it a magnet strong enough to pick up small tacks. *Project:* Can you make an electromagnet and show how it works?

UNITED STATES STEEL CORP.

253 A huge electromagnet is used to lift and carry scrap steel (in this case discarded tricycles, sewing machines, shovels, and so on) from stockpiles to furnaces for melting.

Faraday knew that Hans Oersted had discovered that electricity makes magnetism. Wasn't it possible to make electricity by using magnetism? Faraday did experiment after experiment to find the answer to this question. His first clue came when he wound two coils of wire alongside each other on an iron ring. He connected one of the coils to a meter that measured tiny electric currents. He connected the other coil to a battery (Fig. 254). Nothing happened, even though he connected over fifty batteries to the coil. How-



254 Here is Faraday's discovery. When the switch is closed, lines of force from the first coil cut through the second coil. This causes a flow of electrons (electric current) in the second coil. Why does the needle of the meter swing back to zero (after being moved by the electric current)? Use the dynamo (*left*) to help you do the experiment on p. 469.

ever, he noticed one thing. Remember. that one coil is connected to the meter only, and the other to the battery only. When Faraday completed the connection of the battery-coil circuit, the needle of the meter gave a jump. When he broke the connection of the battery-coil circuit, the needle gave another jump. Here was the answer. The battery circuit had caused a current in the second coil (connected to the meter) when the electric circuit was made and also when it was broken (Fig. 254). But how could this have happened?

The explanation is this:

1. The passage of an electric current through a coil of wire makes the coil a magnet.

2. This coil magnet sends out lines of force. We can say a magnetic field is formed the instant the switch is closed and a complete circuit is made (Fig. 254).

3. These lines of force "cut" through the second coil.

4. In cutting through the second coil, the lines of force cause a flow of electrons (an electric current) in the second coil.

In his later experiments Faraday made other discoveries. Almost at the same time an American scientist, Joseph Henry, working separately, made much the same discoveries.

Faraday found that, when a copper wire or coil is moved in a certain direction in a magnetic field, a current of electricity is made to flow in the wire. This happens when the magnetic lines of force are cut. If the copper wire is moved in the opposite direction, it cuts lines of force in the opposite direction as well, and the electricity in the wire flows in the opposite direction. This discovery was the first step toward making electricity the powerful servant it is today.

You can show how an electric current is made to flow in a wire when it is moved so that it cuts lines of force.

Attach a coil of wire to a sensitive meter (Fig. 254). Thrust a bar magnet quickly through the coil. Does the needle of the meter move? In what direction? Now pull the bar magnet quickly from the coil. In what direction does the needle move now? How does this experiment explain Faraday's discovery?

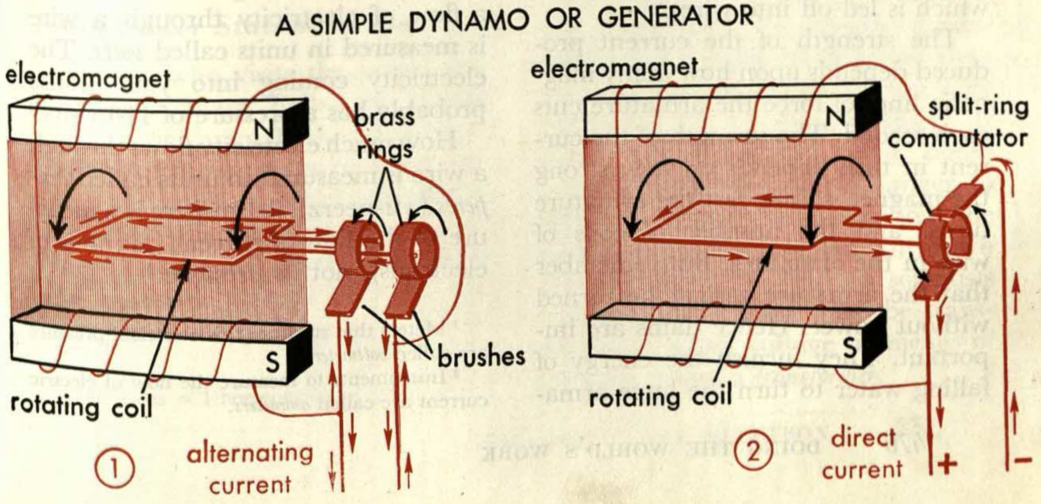
In an Electric Power Station

If you have ever visited an electric power station, you know that the energy of falling water or steam (from coal) is used for turning turbines. These turbines whirl coils of thousands of turns of copper wire through strong magnetic fields (made by magnets). These coils are the moving parts of huge *generators* or *dynamos* (DY-nuh-mohz).

What is a dynamo? It has, first of all, an *armature* (AHR-muh-cher). This is a moving part which, in the simple dynamo we are describing (Fig. 255) is made of only one coil of wire. Second, there is a magnet, between whose poles the armature turns. This magnet has a strong magnetic field. As the armature is turned in the magnetic field, its movement cuts across the magnetic lines of force and makes an electric current flow in the wire. To understand how electric generators or dynamos work, study the diagram along with the text. In Fig. 255 you will notice:

1. The electromagnet has north and south poles and a strong magnetic field.
2. As the coil of wire, the armature, makes one complete turn in this magnetic field, an electric current flows. In one complete turn, the loop of wire changes the direction in which it cuts the lines of force. Thus, the current flows first in one direction, then in the other direction, or, as we

255 In these simple dynamos, a coil of wire (armature) turns in a magnetic field. In *1*, the flow of electricity alternates in direction. It is called alternating current, or AC. In *2*, the current of electricity on the first half-turn of the armature flows out through one-half of the split ring. On the second half-turn, the armature cuts lines of force in the opposite direction, but the other half of the split ring sends the current in the same direction as the first flow. The current is called direct current, or DC. Do you have AC or DC in your home?



A SIMPLE DYNAMO OR GENERATOR

say, it *alternates* in its flow. Because the current moves in alternating directions, it is called an alternating current, or AC.

3. The ends of the armature are attached to two brass rings (*1* in Fig. 255). Steel brushes (made of replaceable, springy steel wire) rub on these brass rings. As they do this, they lead the alternating electric current off to an outside wire.

4. An alternating current can be changed to *direct current*, or DC, by using a device made like a split ring. You can see in *2* in Fig. 255 that the split ring is simply a ring which is split into two parts. (In measuring direct current, the needle of the meter [Fig. 254] remains steady. This shows that the current flows only in one direction. That is, it is a direct and not an alternating current. You will find that some electric devices will work only on AC or DC but not on both.)

Here is how electricity is made by dynamos at an electric power station: Falling water or steam turns turbines, which turn the armatures of huge generators. These armatures, thousands of coils of wire with iron cores, cut across magnetic fields of force. This makes a current of electricity, which is led off into wires.

The strength of the current produced depends upon how many magnetic lines of force the armature cuts each second. The strength of the current in turn depends on how strong the magnet is, how fast the armature turns, and the number of coils of wire in the armature. But remember that the armature cannot be turned without power. Hence dams are important. They furnish the energy of falling water to turn the huge armatures in the power stations. This does not mean, however, that all generators are huge. Millions of small generators are used in automobiles, trucks, buses, airplanes, and trains to make the electricity that helps them run. The generator in your automobile makes the electricity that charges the storage battery.

MAKING USE OF ELECTRICITY

In making any use of electricity you will want to know how much of it you need, how long you will need it, and how well it will do the job. You will want to know how to measure its flow, the force of pressure of its flow, and how much you use.

Measuring Electricity

Electricity flowing through a wire is somewhat like the flow of water through a hose. You know that there is a pressure behind the flow of water in the hose, because it leaves the nozzle with great force. You also know that a certain amount of water leaves the nozzle of the hose.

The pressure (like the pressure forcing water through a hose) forcing a flow of electricity through a wire is measured in units called *volts*. The electricity coming into your house probably has a pressure of 110 volts.[1]

How much electricity flows through a wire is measured in units called *amperes* (AM-peerz). An ampere is a measure of the flow of current (number of electrons), not its pressure.[2]

---

[1] Meters that measure this electrical pressure are called *voltmeters*.

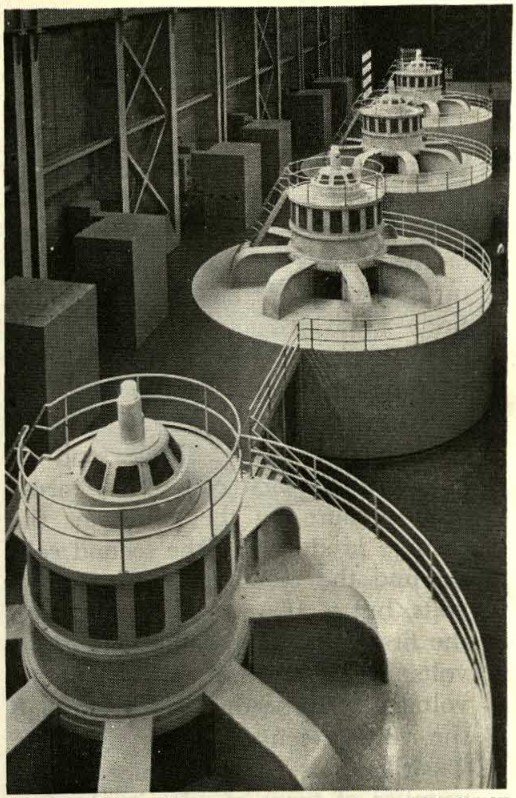
[2] Instruments to measure the flow of electric current are called *ammeters*.

In other words, the volt is the unit for measuring the *pressure* of electricity. The ampere is the unit for measuring the *amount* of electrons passing through a wire. As you may have guessed, *volts* and *amperes* are named after the scientists Volta and Ampère.

Most electrical devices have marked on them the number of volts and amperes that they take. The number of volts and amperes shows you the pressure and flow of electricity needed to work any electric device.

You can often see another marked unit called a *watt*, named after James Watt. A watt is the unit that measures electricity in terms of power.[1] Power, as you remember, means the rate of doing work. For example, about 600 watts of electric power are used in heating your electric iron. Sixty watts may be the amount of electric power used in lighting an electric light bulb in your home. It may take 1,500 watts of electric power to heat a burner in your electric stove. The watts you use indicate the rate at which you use electricity. How does this electric power get to your home to be used?

From Power Station to You



BUREAU OF RECLAMATION

256 These four huge generators, running "full load," make electricity at the power plant of the Hungry Horse Project in Montana.

Anyone who visits the power stations at Niagara Falls, the Grand Coulee, or any TVA (Tennessee Valley Authority) dam can hear the powerful hum of giant generators (Fig. 256). Electricity is being made. Where does it go? That would seem easy to answer, wouldn't it? Just take some large copper wires, insulate them well with heavy rubber, and send the current into them. Then put up poles and lead these wires over the country into homes. Unfortunately, the problem isn't so simple as that.

For instance, certain generators at Niagara Falls give electricity a pressure of 2,200 volts. Your home electrical appliances, however, use only 110 volts, $\frac{1}{20}$ of that pressure. If 2,200 volts went into your house wires, it would be a real danger to life and property. It is clear that the high voltage must be brought down to the useful 110 volts. As scientists say, the high voltage must be transformed to a low voltage by means of a device called a *transformer*.

---

[1] 746 watts = 1 horsepower (p. 450).

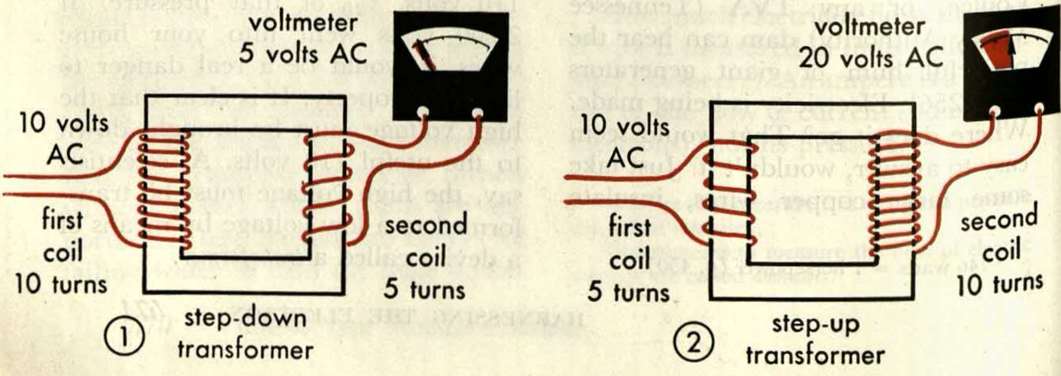
Transformers

Suppose we make a transformer. We may take a steel ring and wind two coils of wire around it. The first coil, connected to a source of alternating electric current, may have 40 turns of wire. In the second coil, entirely separated from the first, we have 20 turns. This second coil we have connected to a voltmeter. This instrument can tell us the voltage, or electric pressure. If we send 10 volts into the first coil (of 40 turns) and measure by the voltmeter the voltage produced in the second coil, we find the voltmeter reads not 10 volts, but 5. If we send 20 volts into the first coil, we find the voltage 10 volts in the second coil. Thus the voltage in the second coil is one-half the voltage sent into the first coil. Clearly, it is the difference in the number of turns of wire in the first and second coils which causes the difference in the voltage. The ratio of 40 turns of wire to 20 turns of wire is 2 to 1. The voltage is also brought down from 2 to 1 (10 volts to 5). A transformer works in the simple way we have described (Fig. 257). There are step-down and step-up transformers. Step-down transformers bring down the voltage; step-up transformers raise it. The voltage can be brought down by using a smaller number of turns of wire in the second coil; it can be raised by using a larger number of turns of wire in that coil.

A big generator at Niagara Falls sends out electricity at a pressure of 2,200 volts. This pressure (2,200 volts) must be raised to a greater voltage, or pressure, to send a current of electricity to distant cities. Therefore, the pressure may be raised to 22,000 volts by a transformer and sent through wires to Buffalo, let us say. To raise 2,200 volts to 22,000, you would use a transformer in which the number of turns in the second coil is 10 times as great as the number in the first coil (22,000 volts is 10 × 2,200). Suppose you wanted to bring the voltage down from 22,000 to 2,200 volts. You would use a step-down transformer in which the first coil has ten times as many turns of wire as the second coil. Then to use the current at home you might use a second transformer to bring the 2,200 volts down to 110 volts. How would you do this?

$$\frac{2{,}200 \text{ volts}}{110 \text{ volts}} = \frac{20}{1}$$

257 *1*, a step-down transformer. Can you explain why the voltage in the second coil is one-half that in the first? *2*, a step-up transformer. Why is the voltage in the second coil twice that in the first?



Thus you would use a transformer with 20 times as many turns of wire in the first coil as in the second.

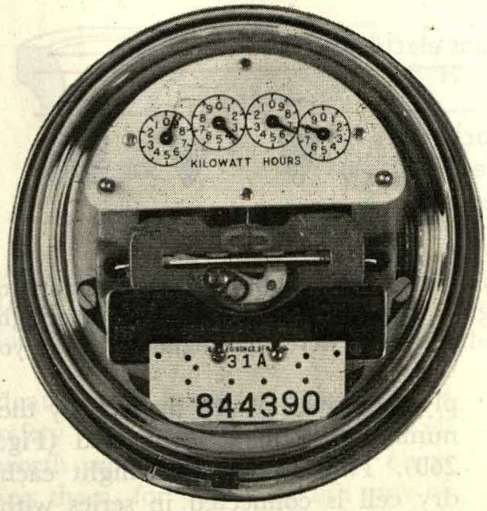
Next time you see the black boxes on the poles carrying electric wires you will know them as transformers. We now know that the voltage of the current which the transformer puts out depends upon the number of turns of wire in the two coils. If the number of turns of wire in the second coil is greater, the voltage of the current is raised; if it is less, the voltage is brought down.

How to Read a Meter

Like most forms of energy, electricity must be paid for. Electric power companies charge for the electricity they send you. They measure the power you use in *kilowatts.* A kilowatt is a thousand watts. Each user of electricity is charged for what he uses by the kilowatt-hour.[1] Have you ever looked at your family electric light bill? If you haven't, ask your parents to let you look at it to find out how much electric energy in kilowatt-hours your house or apartment used this past month. Compare it with the amount used at other times of the year.

Electric power companies use meters to measure how much electric energy a home uses. Do you know how to read a meter? Here is how it is done.

You will notice that your meter has four dials (Fig. 258). Each dial is numbered from 0 to 10; that is, up to 10 kilowatt-hours. From right to left, this number of kilowatt-hours (from the first dial) is multiplied by 10 for each dial; that is, the second dial from the right reads from 10 to 100; the third from the right 100 to 1,000, and the fourth from the right, 1,000 to 10,000. In reading a meter, take the left-hand dial first and read the figure last passed by the pointer. Do the same for each dial as you go from left to right. The result is the total number of kilowatt-hours used by your home since electricity first flowed through the meter. Read your meter each day for two days. You will get an idea of how much electricity you use daily.



CONSOLIDATED EDISON CO. OF NEW YORK

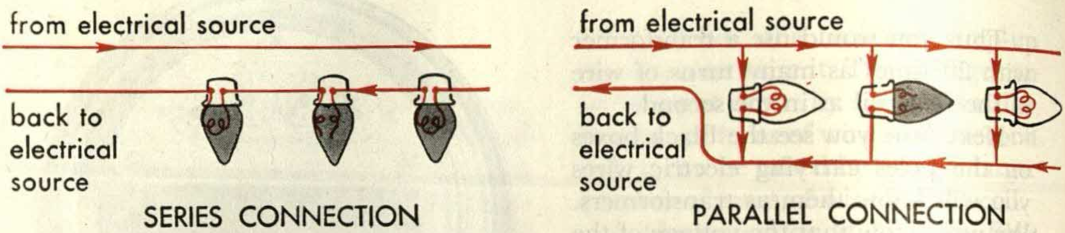
258 A modern electric meter for a home. How does it show that 9,368 kilowatt-hours of electric energy have been used? *Project:* Try to read your meter at home. Check your reading with your electric light bill.

Electrical Connections

Have you used Christmas tree lights that were connected in *series* (Fig. 259)? Then you know that when one light goes out, all go out. That happens because the complete electric circuit is broken by the broken filament of one light. For this reason, series connections are not often used in wiring houses. However, they are used in connecting dry cells to multi-

---

[1] A kilowatt-hour equals 1,000 watts an hour.



259 *Left,* If one light goes out, all lights go out. Has this happened to your Christmas tree lights? *Right,* If one light goes out, other lights remain lighted. If you have had to replace a bulb recently, were other lights still on in your home?

ply the power of one dry cell by the number of cells so connected (Fig. 260). Thus in your flashlight each dry cell is connected in series with the next so as to make the power of the light greater.

Parallel connections are used in wiring homes (Fig. 259). Thus if one light goes out, the others will still light because a complete circuit is not broken for the others. Each electric appliance (like a lamp or radio) is connected as if it had its own circuit. When the appliance is turned on, it makes a complete circuit by itself.

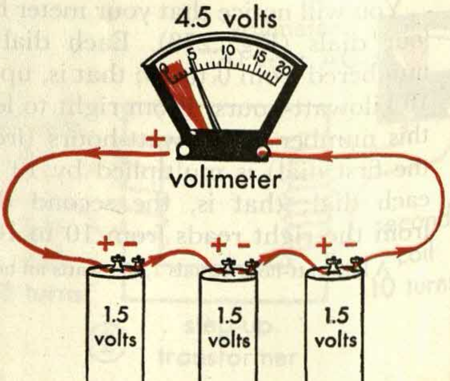
The use of parallel connections, however, causes more electric current to flow through the house wiring as each light or electric appliance is turned on. Again you may compare this flow of current to a flow of water through pipes. The more pipes — or connections between the pipes — to carry the flow, the more flow is needed to fill the pipes. The larger the size of each pipe, the easier it is for the flow of water to pass through.

So it is with electricity. Wires carrying a current of electricity through a house must be thick enough to carry the flow of electricity safely, even if all the lights and other electric appliances are turned on at the same time. The thinner the wire, the harder it is for a large number of electrons to flow through it. Another way of saying it is that a thin wire resists the flow of electrons. The thinner the wire, the greater its *resistance* to the flow of electric current. This resistance causes heat.

Handling Electricity Safely

Many fires are caused by faulty wiring of houses, either by using unprotected wires or wires too thin to carry the flow of current. Wires carrying electric current must be carefully insulated: that is, they must be covered with something like rubber which does not conduct electricity. When the insulation is broken, the unprotected wires may start a fire. Also when the insulation around a wire is frayed and the wire is bare to the touch, there is great danger of injury. The electric current may go

260 Three dry cells connected in series. Why does the voltmeter show 4.5 volts?

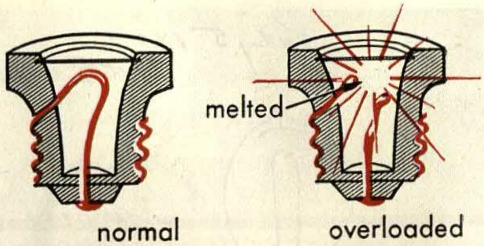


through the body instead of through the wire. Never touch a frayed wire unless the plug is first removed from the wall socket.

There are safety devices called *fuses* which break the electric circuit when the circuit is "overloaded." A circuit is overloaded when too much current enters it. Fuses are placed in metal boxes, and the incoming current passes through low-melting alloy wires in the fuses (Fig. 261). The heat (due to the overloading of electric current in the wires) melts the fuse wire, and the connection is broken. Overloading the circuit is caused by using too many electric appliances on the same circuit or using appliances that call for more electricity than the wires can carry safely. Then the fuse "blows"; that is, the alloy wire on the fuse melts when there is an overloaded circuit.

In the ordinary circuit, electric current goes from its source to an electric appliance, say a lamp, and back to its source. A short circuit is caused when two bare wires carrying electricity to and from your lamp touch each other. Instantly a large electric current finds an easy path back to its source. The heat in the wires becomes so great that the bare copper melts and sparks fly where the wires touch. However, the heat also melts the wire of the fuse. The cause of the short circuit must be removed and the right fuse replaced before you again have electricity in that circuit. It is important, therefore, that all cords to electric appliances be examined often and replaced as they become frayed. Do not wait for a short circuit.

It is even more important that you and the members of your family know and follow certain safety rules. Many deaths are caused because these safety rules are overlooked. It is well worth repeating them — and obeying them, for your very life may be at stake.



261 What happens when a fuse "blows"? What causes it to blow? Where are the fuses in your home wiring system located?

Rules for Dealing with Electricity

1. Never touch a bare wire carrying an electric current.

2. Do not put your finger into any electric socket.

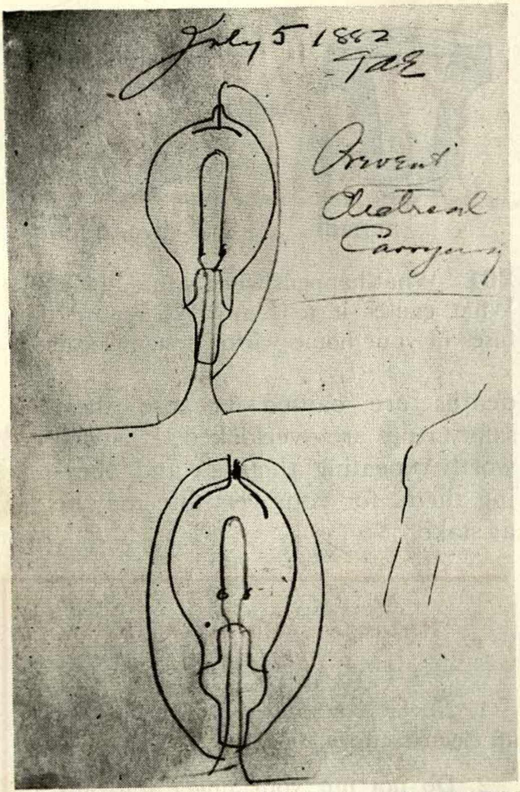
3. Do not turn on an electric light or handle an electric appliance when your hands are wet. You may get a "short circuit" through your fingers or body.

4. Do not, while in the bathtub, turn on a switch or handle an electric appliance. This is extremely dangerous. The electricity may go through your entire body. And do not have a radio in the bathroom.

5. Never leave an iron, toaster, electric heater, or any kind of heating appliance "on" when you leave the house. These may cause a fire.

Light from Electricity

Thomas Edison was the first scientist to get useful and practical light from electricity. He had many prob-



THOMAS ALVA EDISON FOUNDATION

262 Edison's drawing of one of his many attempts to make a practical electric light bulb. Note his initials. How are your home light bulbs different from this one?

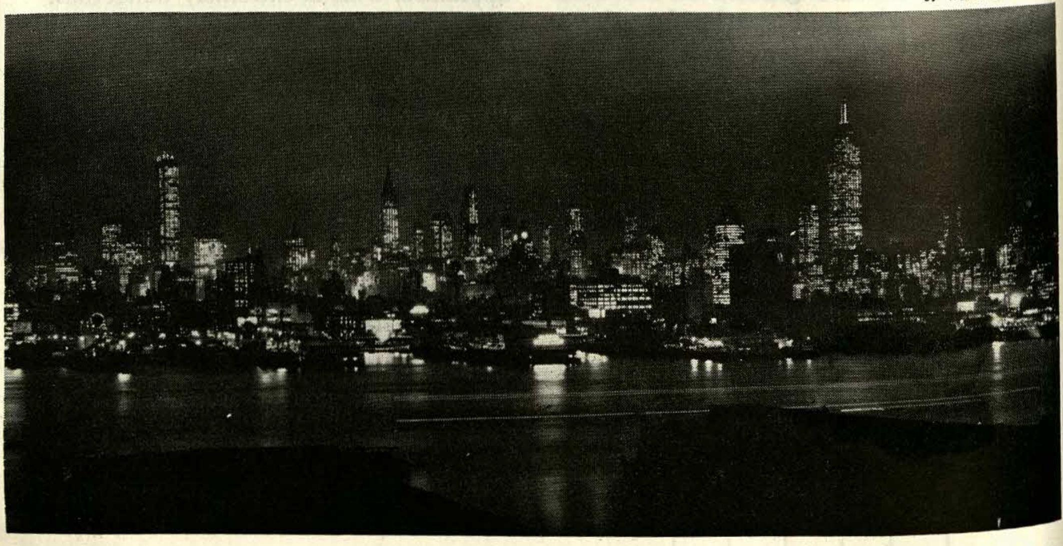
263 Light from electricity produces this breath-taking skyline of New York City at night.

lems to work out. First, he needed something as fine as a thread that would heat up and glow when electricity was passed through it. Also, he wanted a filament, as he called it, that would not melt even at this heat. He finally found the answer to his problem by baking a piece of cotton thread in an oven until it became a thread of carbon. The oxygen in the air would cause this carbon thread to burn if he heated it red-hot in air. He solved this problem by sealing the filament in a globe of glass from which he had pumped out the air.

He also found a way to connect the ends of the filament to a base in the bulb so that when the base was put into a socket, a complete electric circuit was made. So Edison invented the base of the bulbs you buy today.

How are today's light bulbs different from those invented by Edison? Not too much (Fig. 262). In fact, except for using (1) coiled tungsten in place of carbon filaments, (2) frosted globes to give a softer light, and (3) a gas such as argon to give a longer life, they are the same. Modern factories turn out millions of bulbs for every bulb that Edison made by hand (Fig. 263).

J. WALKER GRIMM



Most of the energy of the electric current flowing through an electric light bulb, unfortunately, is used in making heat instead of light. For example, you cannot hold your hand on a 60-watt bulb that has been lighted even a short time. The loss of electric power through its change into heat has led to wide use of the fluorescent (floo-er-ESS-unt) tube or lamp. The fluorescent tube gives off more light with less use of electricity than does the electric bulb. More of the electricity in the fluorescent tube is used in giving light. These tubes cannot be screwed into an ordinary electric socket, but need a special connection to the electric circuit.

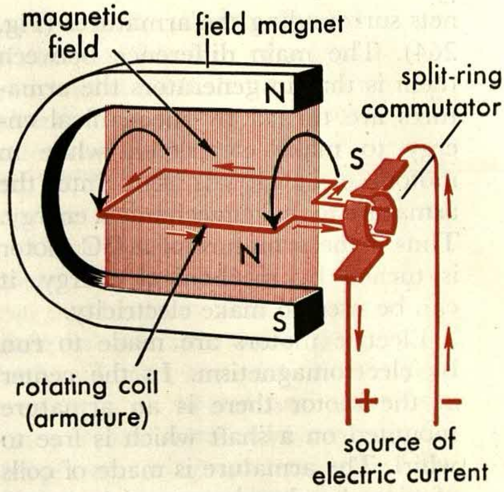
Useful Heat from Electricity

You have learned that some metals like copper conduct electricity easily. Other metals, like tungsten in a lamp filament, offer great resistance to a flow of electrons and become red-hot. One metal that gets red-hot as soon as electricity flows through it is nichrome (NY-krohm) (an alloy of nickel and aluminum). Nichrome wires are used in electric toasters, irons, and stoves. In this and other ways we get useful heat energy from electricity.

Power from Electricity

Look around your house. Are there any appliances that "run" by electricity? Have you an electric sewing machine, cake mixer, washing machine, vacuum cleaner, refrigerator, fan, deep freezer, or oil burner? Then you know how useful electric power can be in running appliances that make your home a more comfortable and convenient place in which to live.

A SIMPLE MOTOR



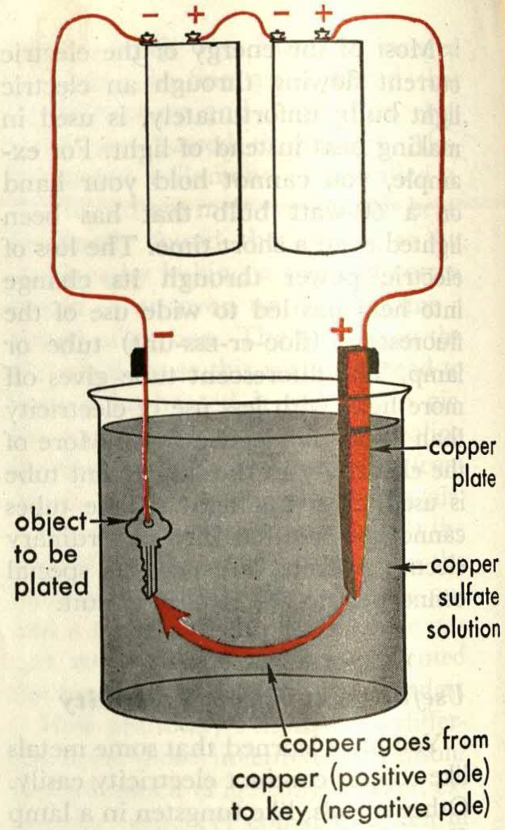
264 This is how an electric motor runs. A coil of wire carries an electric current which throws out magnetic lines of force. Each side becomes a north or a south pole, depending on the turn of the split ring. At the same time the field magnet with its opposite north and south poles attracts first one side of the coil of wire (armature) and then the other side. An electric motor has thousands of turns of wire in the armature, and it has a large magnetic field. With pulleys or gears attached to the shaft of the armature, electric motors run machines. Which machines in your home are run by an electric motor?

Electric power is used not only in the home. The motors that run the great machines of industry, that turn the propellers of the largest ocean liners and the wheels of monster locomotives are run by electricity just like the motors in your home.

Electric motors are usually built to run by using either direct or alternating electric current but not both. They are marked DC or AC on the outside. However, many motors are built to run equally well on AC or DC. Electric motors are like electric generators in that they have similar parts, such as armatures, and magnets surrounding the armatures (Fig. 264). The main difference between them is that in generators the armatures are turned by mechanical energy to make electricity, while in motors electricity is sent into the armature to make mechanical energy. Thus if the armature of a DC motor is turned by mechanical energy, it can be used to make electricity.

Electric motors are made to run by electromagnetism. In the center of the motor there is an armature mounted on a shaft which is free to whirl. The armature is made of coils of wire. An electric current is passed through the coils of wire in the armature, making them electromagnets. These coils, like all electromagnets, now have north and south poles (Fig. 264).[1] Each north pole in the armature is attracted to a south pole in the surrounding magnetic field. Each south pole in the armature is attracted to a north pole in the surrounding magnetic field. This attraction causes the armature, which is attached to a shaft, to turn over and over. Study Fig. 264 as you reread the paragraph above.

The power of electric motors is often taken from them by a pulley attached to the shaft of the armature. This pulley is connected by a belt to another pulley on the shaft of a machine. Electric motors vary in power output from the smallest, about 1/1,000 horsepower, to giants the size of an ordinary room, which make over 40,000 horsepower. Electric motors do not waste much of the energy of electricity. Where electricity is easily available they have replaced other ways of making power.



- +
- +
-
+
copper plate
object to be plated
copper sulfate solution
copper goes from copper (positive pole) to key (negative pole)

265 In plating objects with copper, silver, or gold, you must have a positive pole made of the metal. You must have a negative pole, the object to be plated. You must have a solution of the salt of the metal. Here, it is copper sulfate. As the current of electricity flows from the positive copper pole to the key, pure copper is plated on the key.

Endless Uses of Electricity

In this chapter there is not enough space to mention all the uses of electricity. But we can mention a few of the more common ones. Have you wondered how bright chromium finish is put on automobile trim and bumpers? Or how your silverware was plated with silver? This is done by a process called electroplating.

Suppose you want to plate a sheet of metal with copper. You will need a source of electricity, a positive and a negative pole, and a solution containing copper, generally copper sulfate. The electric current can be supplied by two dry cells. The positive pole is made of copper and is connected to the positive pole of one of the dry cells. The negative pole is the sheet of metal you wish to plate with copper. It is connected to the negative (or side pole) of one of the dry cells. When the copper pole and the object you wish to plate are placed in the copper sulfate solution, an electric circuit is completed from the positive pole through the copper sulfate solution. The copper in the solution is deposited on the metal sheet and is replaced by copper from the positive pole. After a certain length of time, a thin film of copper covers your metal sheet. It has been electroplated. In much the same way, printers make copper plates for printing books. This page you are now reading was made by electroplating.

---

[1] In most motors an electric current is also passed into coils that surround the armature.

There are many other uses of electricity. For instance, X-ray machines run by electricity take pictures of the skeleton and internal organs of the body. X rays are also used in the treatment of cancer and other diseases. Neon signs, television, radio, telephone, telegraph, movies — the useful or entertaining things that depend upon electricity — are many. Electricity is indeed one of man's most useful servants.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

To be sure you understand the key words below, write the statements in your notebook and replace each blank with the correct word from the list. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

static electricity
current
storage battery
dry cell
circuit
electromagnet
lines of force

field
series
parallel
alternating current
volt
kilowatt-hour
short circuit

generator
ampere
direct current
armatures
attract
repel

1. Electricity made by friction is called . . . .
2. Like charges of electricity . . . each another, while unlike charges . . . each another.
3. A flow of electrons through a conductor is called . . . electricity.
4. When an electric current flows from its source back to its source, it makes a complete electric . . . .
5. A . . . furnishes electricity for the lights and starters of an automobile.
6. A source of electricity that has an outer covering of zinc is the . . . .

7. A current of electricity that flows first in one direction and then another is called . . . .

8. The . . . is a unit for measuring the pressure of electricity.

9. Like magnetic poles . . . one another; unlike poles . . . one another.

10. The lines of force around a magnet are called a magnetic . . . .

11. Electric current is made when . . . are cut by coils of wire.

12. When electricity flows through a coil of wire wound around an iron core, an . . . is made.

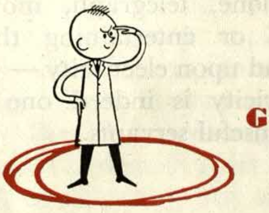
13. When a fuse "blows" in your home, it is usually due to a . . . .

14. Connections in . . . are used in wiring houses.

15. A thousand watts of electric power used in one hour is called a . . . .

16. Connections in . . . are used in batteries for your flashlight.

17. Electric generators and electric motors have . . . , field magnets and rings that rub against brushes.



GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Charging a balloon.* Blow up a balloon and hang it from a support. Rub the balloon briskly with a piece of woolen cloth or fur. If your fountain pen is made of plastic or rubber, rub it briskly with the wool or fur. Bring the pen near the balloon. What happens? Take a glass rod (a glass towel rack or the insert to a Silex coffeemaker will do) and rub that with a piece of silk. Bring the rod near the balloon. Is there attraction now? Remember that the rod is now charged with positive electricity and the fountain pen was charged with negative electricity. What charge is on the rubber balloon? How does this experiment help you to understand the simple electrical law concerning charges of electricity?

2. *Examining a dry cell.* Open a dry cell by carefully breaking the top. Examine the contents. Find the following: the carbon pole; the mixture of manganese dioxide, ammonium chloride, and carbon; the paper lining; and the zinc container. Are the insides really dry?

3. *Building an electric motor.* Send to Westinghouse Electric Corp., 306 Fourth Ave., Pittsburgh (30), Pa., for the booklet, *How to Build an Electric Motor.* You can build this motor by using a few nails and some wire. After you have built the motor, connect it to two dry cells. Can you explain why it runs?

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. Two rubber balloons are blown up and hung from a support so that one inch of space separates them. Each one is rubbed with a piece of fur. Will the balloons now (*a*) come together, (*b*) swing farther apart, (*c*) remain as they are?

2. You move the floor lamp from one position in a room to another. As you push the plug into a socket, you notice that the cord appears frayed near the plug. When you move your lamp nearer your chair, suddenly all the lights in the room go out. Where would you look for the cause of the "short circuit"? What would you do to (*a*) make your floor

lamp light again, (*b*) make all the rest of the lights in the room light up?

3. Which would you think costs less to use, a 60-watt lamp burning 12 hours or a 40-watt lamp burning 20 hours? (A kilowatt-hour is 1,000 watts per hour.)

4. If you were wiring a Christmas tree, would you use series or parallel connections? Why?

5. Wheat is ground into flour by machinery which would be injured by the metal articles such as nails, screws, and bolts often found in carloads of wheat. Can you think of an easy way to take metal articles out of the wheat?

Adding to Your Library

You will find interesting reading about electricity in the following books:

1. *Atomic Experiments for Boys* by Raymond F. Yates, Harper and Brothers, 1952. Would you like to experiment with static electricity and magnets? or make electricity with magnetism? For experiments at home or at school, read this book.

2. *Home Electrical Repairs* by Alfred P. Morgan, Crown Publishers, 1950. This book has many pictures and drawings showing how electricity is brought into your home and how you can use it safely.

3. Would you like to build a small laboratory and experiment with electricity? Here is the book for you: *Fun with Electrons* by Raymond F. Yates, Appleton-Century, 1947.

4. *Boys' Book of Science and Construction* by Alfred P. Morgan, Lothrop, Lee and Shepard Co., 1948. Read Chapter 8 to find out how electricity is used in the telegraph or radio.

5. *The Romance of Electricity*, General Electric Co. A pamphlet that explains how electricity is made and brought to your home. Enough pamphlets for a class may be had by writing to the General Electric Co., Schenectady, N.Y.

A Bit of Research

If you use electricity in your home, it comes from some source. Find out where that place is, how the electricity is made, and how it gets into your home.

Careers for You

Do you want to join the men and women who make electricity work for you? The electric light, telephone, radio, and television companies and their laboratories need trained people. The manufacturers of electric washers, refrigerators, stoves, and other electric appliances need not only trained people but also people who can design and invent better ways to make electricity a better servant.

Electrical engineers are always needed by industry. They are the persons who know where and how electricity should be used to get power cheaply; they plan the miles of electric wiring in a jet plane; they make improvements in radar, radio, and television. Why not be an electrical engineer?

CHAPTER 24

Modern Pack Horses

How far from New York to Los Angeles? About 3,000 miles. This isn't the whole answer. It is about seven hours by modern airliners. The world has shrunk because of the modern "horse" in horsepower.

Do you think anyone could travel around the world in fifteen hours — travel at the speed of almost 1,500 miles an hour? Actually an airplane has flown as fast as that, which is faster than the speed of a rifle bullet. If this pace could be kept up, the airplane could fly from New York to San Francisco in less than two hours, and around the world at the equator in about fifteen hours. But this speed could not be kept up.

To reach this great speed, the airplane used rocket engines. These engines work somewhat on the same principle as the skyrockets you see shooting into the air in fireworks displays. Also like skyrockets, rocket engines burn up their fuel very quickly. That is why airplanes using rocket engines cannot keep up their speed for more than a few minutes. That is also why the airplane mentioned above could not fly around the world in fifteen hours.

Ever since man learned that he could run faster than he could walk, he has been finding new ways to travel faster. From your reading in Unit 3 you know it is quite possible that some day man may travel clear of the earth's envelope of air in rockets at speeds of thousands of miles an hour, if the rockets can carry enough fuel. In this chapter, however, we shall deal with travel on land, on the sea, and in the air. You will learn that it is not just by accident that a train has certain kinds of rails or that an automobile has gears. You will learn why a ship floats on water and why a submarine can rise or sink. You will learn why an airplane has wings and how a jet engine works. You will learn how modern science is always finding better ways and cheaper ways to get you where you want to go speedily and safely.

ON LAND

You may not know who the Duryea (DER-yay) brothers were, but they certainly had a hard problem to solve in 1892. They were building the first automobile.

The First Automobile

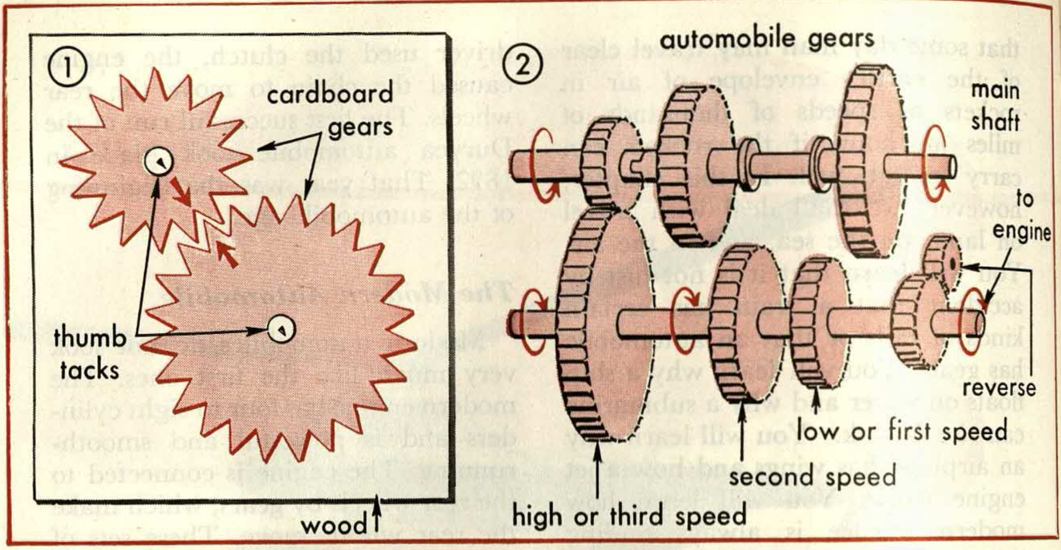
In your study of the gasoline engine on pp. 446–448 you learned that its power turns a shaft on which may be pulleys or gears that run other machines. The Duryea brothers had the problem of making the shaft of their engine turn the wheels of a wagon whenever the driver wanted to move. So they invented the "clutch." By pushing a pedal of the clutch, they were able to connect the power of the engine to the rear wheels or to disconnect it. The rear wheels were connected to the clutch by a chain, which ran over gears, as does the chain on a bicycle. When the driver used the clutch, the engine caused the chain to move the rear wheels. The first successful run of the Duryea automobile took place in 1892. That year was the beginning of the automobile age.

The Modern Automobile

Modern automobiles do not look very much like the first ones. The modern engine has four to eight cylinders and is powerful and smooth-running. The engine is connected to the rear wheels by gears, which make the rear wheels move. These sets of gears, called the *transmission* and *differential* (dif-uh-REN-shul), help the engine turn the rear wheels and make the car move forward or backward.

You can find out how gears work by looking at your bicycle. Bicycle gears work somewhat like the gears of an automobile. For example, you turn a large gear by pushing on the pedals. A chain joins this large gear to a small gear on the back wheel. When you turn the large gear once around, the small gear moves the back wheel many times around.

You can show this action by cutting out two round pieces of cardboard 8 inches and 2 inches in diameter and making notches or teeth around the outside of each. Fasten these cardboard gears to a piece of wood by thumbtacks placed through their centers. Make sure that the teeth of one gear fit into the open spaces between the teeth of the other gear (Fig. 266). Make a mark with a pencil on one of the teeth of the larger gear and also mark the place where the tooth rests between the two teeth of the smaller gear.



266 *1, Project:* Make two cardboard gears, as in the drawing. Follow the directions on p. 483. Why is a large gear attached to the pedals of your bicycle? *2,* an automobile transmission. The bottom shaft, with gears, is turned by the power of the engine. The top shaft, with gears, turns the rear wheels. How do you know that the automobile is in high, or third, speed?

Now turn the large gear around once. How many times around does the small gear turn? Does this show why you can go so fast on a bicycle even though you turn the large gear slowly with the pedals?

Place the marks on the gears opposite each other again. Turn the small gear around once. How far does the large gear turn? If the small gear were attached to the pedals of a bicycle and the big gear to the rear wheel, would it be easier for you to ride up a steep hill? Would you go very fast?

Small and large transmission gears of an automobile are shifted so that the car can go at different speeds with different changes of power. In many cars the gears can be shifted by a gear-shift lever that is on the steering wheel column. You can see how a gear-shift lever works in Fig. 266.

The rear wheels of an automobile are connected directly to the differential gears. These gears allow one of the rear wheels (the inside wheel when turning a corner) to turn more slowly than the outside wheel. Otherwise the wheels would be badly damaged.

The power of the engine can be stopped from going through the gears to the rear wheels by pushing down on the clutch pedal and using the gear-shift lever to separate the transmission gears.[1] This action is called "shifting into neutral" (Fig. 266). When the driver pushes down the pedal of the clutch with his left foot, he keeps the power of the engine from moving the rear wheels. When he removes his foot from the pedal, he lets the power of the engine move the rear wheels, if the gear shift is not in neutral.

---

[1] In most modern cars the gears change by themselves according to the speed that the car is moving and according to the power that is needed. This is called "automatic shift."

Getting Ready To Drive

No doubt you are looking forward to the time when you can get a license to drive an automobile. In most states boys and girls must be sixteen years old before they can get a driving license. They must take a driving test with an inspector and pass a written or oral test on driving regulations.

You are not of age now, but soon you will be able to get ready for this test. Your state registry of motor vehicles probably can send you a booklet on motor-car rules and regulations. It will tell you everything you must *know* and *do* if you are to drive a car in your state. Perhaps your high school has a driver training course that you can take. At the end of the course, if you are sixteen, you take the tests for your driving license.

Until you get your license *do not drive an automobile unless a person who has a license to drive is sitting beside you.* In most states there is a heavy penalty for not obeying this warning.

A Safe Car

Brakes and lights are the most important safety features of modern cars. In 1912, the first automobile with electric lights and a starter was made. It was not until 1924 that automobiles were given four-wheel brakes. To be able to come to a stop quickly and to see at night are so necessary for safe driving that many states make car owners have their brakes and lights examined twice each year. If your family has a car, find out when its brakes and lights were last examined. *A safe car has good brakes and good lights.*

Safety on the Highways

In 1894, there were only 30 automobiles in the United States. You can see that there must have been few traffic accidents then. Today there are over 50 million automobiles and over 20 million trucks on the nation's highways. In 1953, over 38,000 people were killed and more than 1¼ million were injured in automobile accidents.

Most automobile accidents are caused by careless driving. Some are caused by careless walking, such as crossing in the middle of busy streets. Remember that the average modern

267 Although the automobile was not going over 35 miles an hour, note what happened to it when it skidded on the wet road and struck the bus.

AMSTERDAM (N.Y.) "RECORDER"

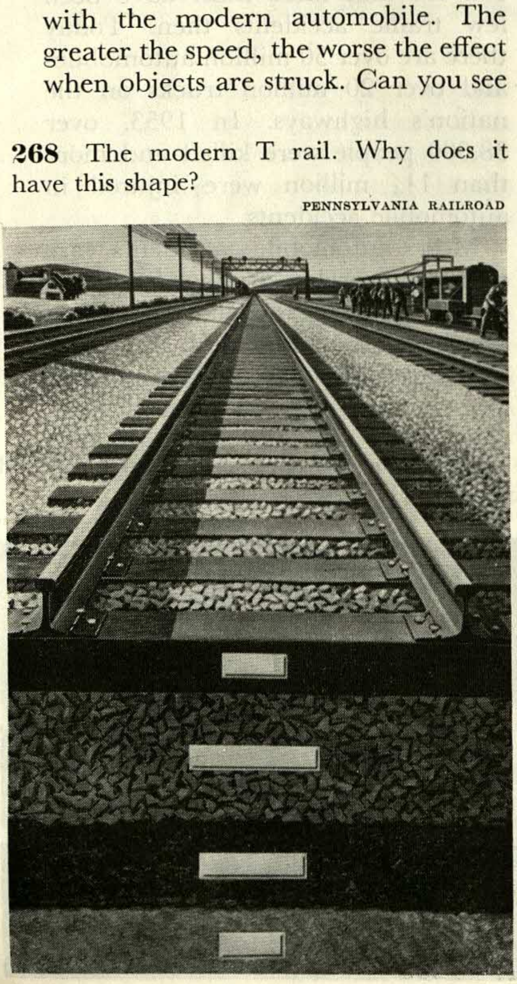
car weighs over 3,000 pounds, and is capable of speeds of over 80 miles an hour. Even at 35 miles an hour it has a great amount of energy. At this speed it has a striking force of over 156,000 foot-pounds. Such force is more than enough to break off a telephone pole or a small tree, or to kill a person walking (Fig. 267).

Moreover, if a car moving at 35 miles an hour strikes a tree or a pole, the car stops at once, but the passengers don't stop. They keep on moving forward at 35 miles an hour. Do you wonder that persons are thrown through windshields and that the driver's body often breaks the steering wheel in accidents of this sort? And 35 miles an hour is a rather low speed with the modern automobile. The greater the speed, the worse the effect when objects are struck. Can you see what happens when a person drives carelessly at a high speed on an unsafe highway? He may be the cause of one or more of the yearly million and a quarter deaths or injuries that happen each year from automobile accidents.

Automobiles and trucks are needed for our everyday living. Indeed, large parts of this country do not have any other means of travel. The automobile lets people build homes far from bus and railway lines. Doctors can reach patients quickly; firemen can rush their fire trucks to fires quickly; and police can protect large parts of towns and cities with only a few men. Trucks carry food swiftly and smoothly over our 3 million miles of road. Nearly everything you use each day has been carried all or part of the way to you by trucks. Without automobiles and trucks our life today would be very difficult.

268 The modern T rail. Why does it have this shape?

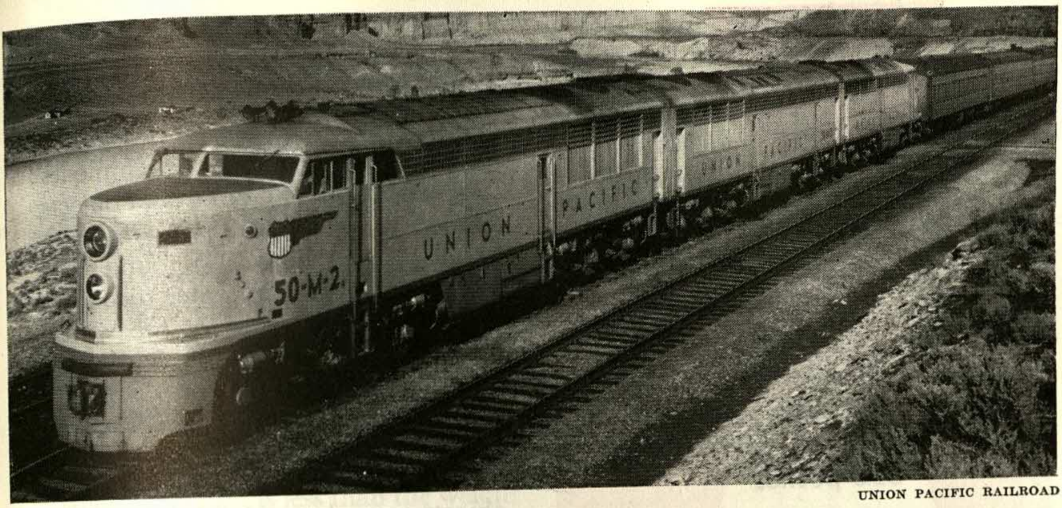
PENNSYLVANIA RAILROAD



The Steel Rail — Gift of Engineering

Though we need trucks, we need trains even more. They carry materials for industry. Most of our big industries would shut down in a short time if railroads stopped carrying heavy freight.

The next time you go to a railroad station or walk across railroad tracks, look closely at the rails. In cross-section a steel rail is T-shaped, with a broad base and narrow top (Fig. 268). This T-shaped rail is the result of a hundred years of study and experiment. The first rails used for trains were made of wood, with iron bands fastened to the top. From these first rails to those used today, there have been seventeen kinds of rails made. The top of the modern rail is



UNION PACIFIC RAILROAD

269 Diesel engines like the one above have replaced steam locomotives on many railroads.

made to fit and hold the flanges (FLAN-jez), or overhanging sides of the car wheels. The stem of the T is so strongly made that it will not bend too much or break under tons of weight passing over it. At present no other kind of rail can do this better. The rail seems very simple, but years of research were needed to make it.

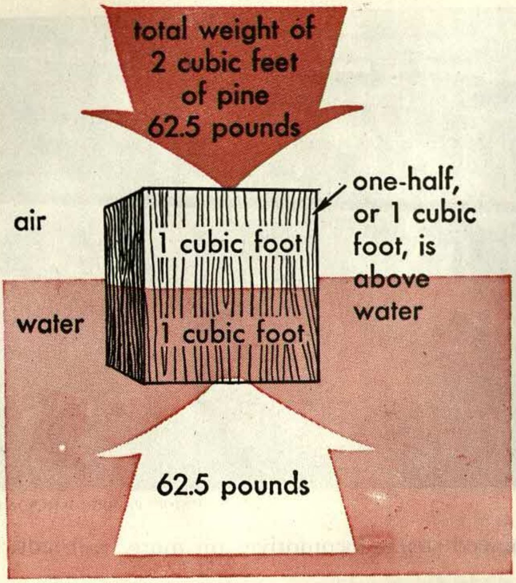
In 1832, there were only 40 miles of railroad in the United States; in 1861, 30,000 miles; in 1880, 94,000 miles, and today over 400,000 miles of steel T-track carry each year a billion passengers and 2½ billion tons of freight.

The Modern Railroad Train

Modern railroad engines are very much different from Stephenson's first engine, or from the engines that drew trains in 1861, in 1880, or in 1905. The fastest recorded run by a locomotive was made in 1905 at 127 miles an hour at Elida, Ohio. This run, however, was a test speed run over three miles of straight track. Modern locomotives do not make such test runs. To prevent accidents, the fastest modern locomotives average, with stops, little more than 60 miles an hour over long distances. Many of these locomotives draw streamlined trains with cars joined together so that the entire train seems to be one unit. Some trains have observation cars with glassed-in roofs. Many have the comforts of the best hotels.

Railroads are always trying to find better and cheaper ways to run their trains. Because the fuels are cheaper than coal, engines that burn gasoline or kerosene have been used on short runs. Electric engines that have no fumes or smoke are often used to draw trains through large cities.

Today, Diesel engines using oil for fuel are replacing the steam engines that used coal (Fig. 269) because they are cheaper to run. These Diesel engines give power to generators which in turn send a current of electricity to motors. These motors, geared to the wheels of the engines, pull the trains swiftly along. Some engineers predict that Diesel engines may soon replace coal-burning engines. Others are not so sure.



270 The 2-cubic foot pine block is buoyed up in water by a force of 62.5 pounds. Why does one-half of the block float above the surface?

ON THE SEA

Only 150 years ago, the first steamboat, with sparks and smoke belching from its stack, chugged along against wind and tide. No longer would men have to wait for a favorable wind or tide to take them out of harbors. Today great steel ships weighing thousands of tons go to all the harbors of the world. Although some are powered by Diesel engines, most of these ships use the power of steam to turn high-speed turbines. These turbines are often connected by gears directly to the propeller shafts. On very large ships the turbines turn generators which send electricity to motors that turn the propeller shafts. In the largest ocean liners each propeller is turned by a 40,000-horsepower electric motor. Remember that 40,000 horsepower means the equivalent of the powerful pull of 40,000 horses!

How Does Water Support Ships?

Over 2,200 years ago, Archimedes (ahr-kih-MEE-deez) found that objects seemed to weigh less in water than in air. Archimedes also found that any object placed in water displaced or pushed aside some of the water. You can make the same findings if you fill a glass brimful of water and carefully drop a stone into it. Some of the water overflows. But Archimedes went further. He knew that objects seemed to weigh less in water. He weighed the water that overflowed. He found that the weight of the overflow water just equaled the weight that the object lost when placed in water. After many experiments he wrote a statement about his work. The statement is known today as Archimedes' principle. It is this: Any object placed in a liquid is pushed upward by a force equal to the weight of the liquid displaced by the object.

An object will float on water if it displaces an amount of water equal in weight to its own weight (Fig. 270). A tiny, heavy object does not displace much water. Since it is heavier than the water it displaces, it sinks rapidly.

Suppose you had a block of dry pine wood, 2 cubic feet in volume, which weighed 62.5 pounds. If you put this block of pine into water, it would sink only halfway under and then float. The 1 cubic foot of wood below the water surface has displaced 1 cubic foot of water. One cubic foot of water weighs 62.5 pounds. The wood is thus held upward by a force equaling its own weight (Fig. 270). But the volume of the pine block is 2 cubic feet. So one-half of it, or 1 cubic foot, will stick up above the surface of the water. This is so because the entire block (2 cubic feet) is only half as heavy as the weight of 2 cubic feet of water. From this, it is easy to see why an empty rowboat floats higher in water than does one with people in it.

Why Does a Steel Ship Float?

You see now that an object floats when its weight is less than the weight of an equal volume of water. An object sinks when its weight is greater than the weight of an equal volume of water. Any object that sinks displaces a volume of water equal to its own volume. If 1 cubic foot of steel weighing 500 pounds is placed in water, it will displace a cubic foot of water weighing 62.5 pounds. Since its weight is eight times as heavy as the cubic foot of water, the block of steel sinks rapidly.

But steel can be made to float. How? If you were able to cut the cubic foot of steel into thin sheets, you might fasten the sheets together to make a box about 5 feet long, 5 feet wide, and 4 feet high. Your box contains 5 × 5 × 4, or 100 cubic feet. Will it sink? Remember that 100 cubic feet of the steel box still weighs 500 pounds. On the other hand, 100 cubic feet of displaced water weighs 100 × 62.5, or 6,250 pounds, more than 12 times the weight of the steel box. So the steel box, weighing 500 pounds, is more than 12 times lighter than 100 cubic feet of water weighing 6,250 pounds. Thus the steel box floats well out of the water.

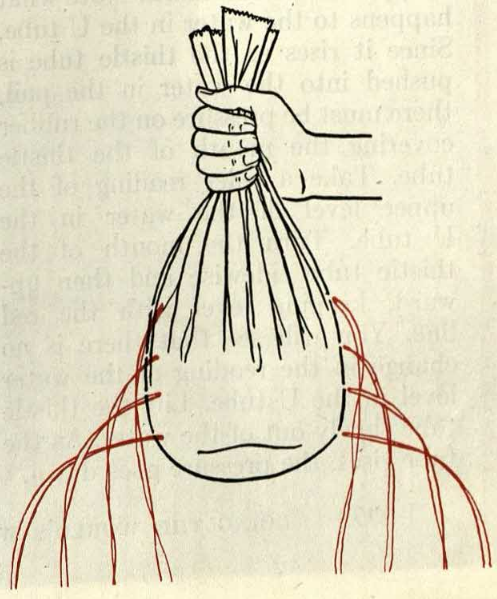
So it is that large steel ships can carry heavy cargoes. To keep people from overloading ships, lines or figures are marked on the hull of the ship. These lines show how far a safely loaded ship will sink into the water.

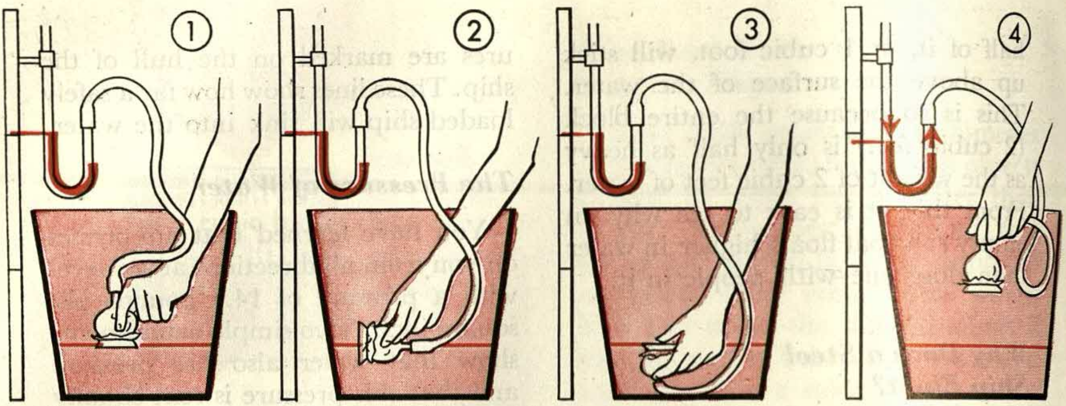
The Pressure of Water

You have learned that air presses on you from all directions at sea level with a pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch. Two simple experiments show that water also has pressure and that this pressure is sent equally in all directions.

First, pour about 2 quarts of water into a heavy paper bag. Lift the bag carefully and punch four small holes with a needle around the bag, about 1 inch from the bottom. Punch three more rows of holes, each hole 1 inch above the other around the bag. Note the force of the stream of water coming from each hole (Fig. 271). From which holes does the water spurt farthest?

271 Why do streams of water spurt farther from holes near the bottom of the bag? *Project:* Repeat the experiment. Do you get the same results? Why?





272 Water pressure, like air pressure, pushes in all directions, as in *1*, *2*, and *3*. If this pressure changes, as shown in *4*, how does it affect the level of the liquid in the U tube?

Now make a mark with a red wax crayon on the inside of a 10-quart pail, 4 inches from the bottom. Fill the pail with water. Stretch a thin piece of rubber over the end of a short thistle tube and fasten it with a rubber band (Fig. 272). Fill the bend of a U tube with water and attach one end to the stem of the thistle tube with a piece of rubber tubing. Attach the U tube to a ring stand, and place the face of a ruler just behind the open end of the U tube. Push the thistle tube into the pail until the rubber-covered end is opposite the red mark. Note what happens to the water in the U tube. Since it rises as the thistle tube is pushed into the water in the pail, there must be pressure on the rubber covering the mouth of the thistle tube. Take a ruler reading of the upper level of the water in the U tube. Turn the mouth of the thistle tube sidewise and then upward, keeping level with the red line. You will see that there is no change in the reading of the water level in the U tube. Lift the thistle tube slowly out of the water. As the tube rises, the pressure goes down.

From this experiment you can conclude, as shown by the water level in the U tube, that at one depth water pushes with the same pressure in all directions. Does this pressure increase with depth?

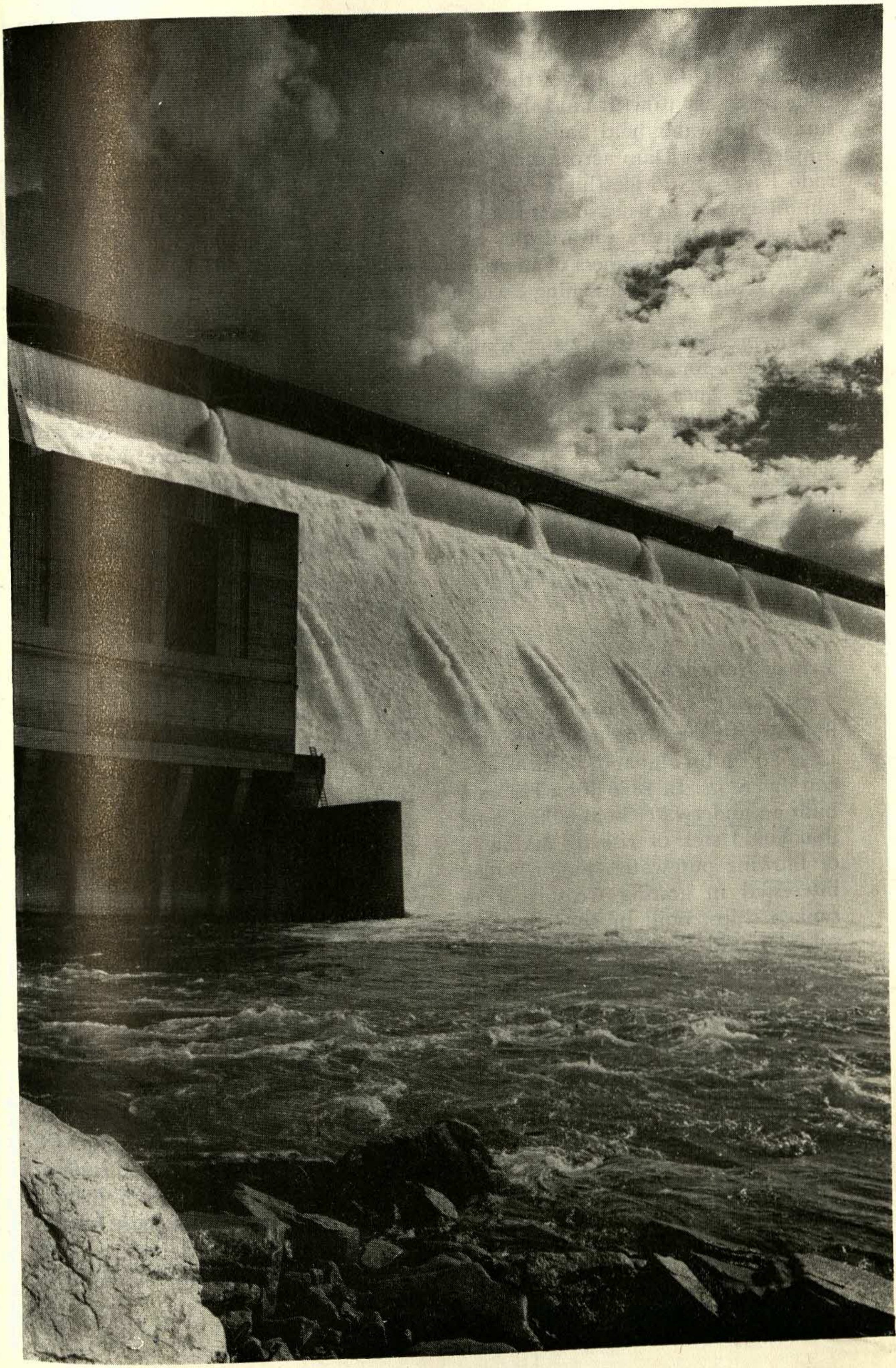
Deep Water

Actually, for about every 34 feet you go below the surface of water, the pressure is multiplied by 14.7 pounds per square inch (the amount of pressure at the surface). Even if you dive only a short distance below the surface, you can feel this increased water pressure on your eardrums. Native pearl divers of the South Seas have been known to dive to depths of over 100 feet. However, they often become deaf, crippled, or paralyzed after a few seasons of such work.

The pressure of deep water is a problem for engineers who build huge dams (Fig. 273). They must

ROBERT YARNALL RICHIE

273 The Grand Coulee Dam across the Columbia River is one of the world's longest. Why is it almost as thick through at its base as it is high?



carefully measure the thickness of the base and the strength of the concrete necessary to withstand the pressure of the water held back. For example, Hoover Dam across the Colorado River is 726 feet high. Yet it is almost as thick at its base as it is high. It gradually tapers toward the top as the need for thickness of the dam lessens with the lessening water pressure.

The pressure of deep water is also a problem for the builder of submarines. Since submarines travel below the surface of the ocean, there is a limit to the depth they can go without being crushed by water pressure. However, the hull of the modern submarine is now so strong and so well braced that it can withstand the pressure of several hundred feet of water.

Travel Beneath the Sea

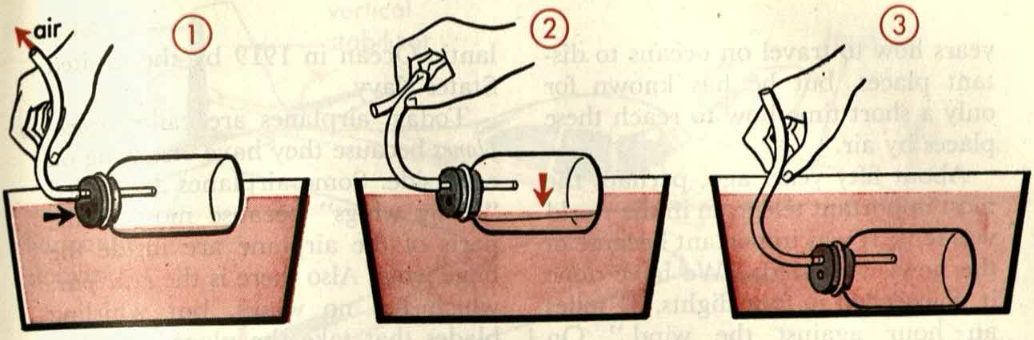
The credit for the building of the first useful submarine goes to Simon Lake and John Holland, both American inventors. In 1875 John Holland built an underwater boat 60 feet long that could sink or rise by taking in or blowing out water. Simon Lake, interested in getting treasure from sunken ships, built in 1897 the first submarine that could travel in the open sea.

On both sides of a modern submarine there are many tanks, called ballast tanks. In these tanks are huge Kingston valves that work from a control inside the submarine. A Kingston valve is like a swinging door that may be opened or shut to let water in or out of the tanks. There are also *vent* valves, like small swinging doors, at the top of these tanks. They let air out of the tanks. When the Kingston valves are open, no water can get into the tanks while the submarine is moving forward, unless the vent valves are open at the top to let air out. In other words, to let water into the tanks the vent valves must be opened to let air out of the tanks.

To run the submarine with most of it under the surface, ready for a "crash dive," the Kingston valves and the vent valves are opened. Air rushes out of the vent valves as enough water rushes into the tanks to bring the submarine level with the ocean surface. The vent valves are then closed, and no more water can enter the tanks unless air is let out of the vents. In submarine language the ship is then "running on the vents." To dive quickly, the vent valves are opened. Then water rushes into the tanks, and the submarine goes beneath the surface as its tanks fill with water.

If the submarine did not move forward and had no way of getting the water out of its ballast tanks, it would sink to the bottom of the ocean. However, it has electric motors to run the propellers underneath the surface and compressed air to blow out the water in the ballast tanks. When the commander wishes the submarine to rise, compressed air blows the water out of the tanks. The vessel then rises to the surface.

You can show how a submarine may sink or rise by doing this experiment. Through one of the holes in a two-hole rubber stopper place a piece of glass tubing to which a piece of rubber tubing about 2 feet long has been fitted. Place the stopper in a glass bottle and then lay the bottle on its side on the surface of the water in a deep



274 *1*, air is forced out of the bottle as water enters. The bottle starts to sink. *2*, if the rubber tube (vent valve) is closed, the bottle remains half under water. *3*, opening the vent valve (rubber tube) causes the bottle to fill with water and sink below the surface. Does this show how a submarine may ride "on the vents" or sink below the surface of the ocean? How does the submarine rise to the surface? ***Project:*** Make a "submarine" like the one above.

glass dish. The other hole in the stopper now allows water to enter the bottle somewhat as a Kingston valve does in a submarine. The rubber tubing acts as a vent valve.

After the bottle is one-quarter full of water, pinch the rubber tubing tightly. No more air can now be forced out of the bottle; therefore no more water can come in. Release the rubber tubing. The bottle fills and sinks (Fig. 274). Does this show how a submarine may "ride on the vents" or sink below the surface? Now blow through the rubber tube. Does the bottle rise? Does this explain how a submarine rises? Why?

Living Beneath the Sea

During World War II, most submarines had to come to the surface quite often to charge the electric storage batteries that gave the power to run the submarine beneath the surface of the sea. This charging was done by Diesel engines, which needed air to burn their fuel. These Diesel engines also ran the submarine on the surface.

It was not long before the German navy found that running submarines on the surface was very risky. After the loss of over 500 submarines, the Germans made a tube, called a snorkel, that would reach up above the surface of the sea and take in the air needed to burn the fuel used in the engines. With the aid of the snorkel some submarines stayed under water for months.

Today, using atomic engines instead of Diesel engines (p. 306) and using the snorkel to replace the air the crew uses up, submarines can stay under water as long as the crew can stand the strain. Perhaps in time to come, large freight-carrying, atomic-powered submarines may travel beneath the seas from continent to continent without risk of storms or shipwreck. As you know, two atomic-powered submarines are already in use.

IN THE AIR

Just as the oceans surround continents, so air surrounds the earth. Man has known for thousands of years how to travel on oceans to distant places, but he has known for only a short time how to reach these places by air.

About fifty years ago, perhaps the most important telegram in the world was sent. It was important because of the news it carried: "We have done it. Succeeded in four flights, 31 miles an hour against the wind." On December 17, 1903, Wilbur and Orville Wright in Kitty Hawk, N.C., sent this telegram to their sister.

Almost no one believed the message. Many newspapers did not print the news, or they gave it only a line or two of mention. If people had known then how really important was man's first flight in an engine-driven airplane, every newspaper might have had these headlines:

A NEW AGE HAS BEGUN
FOR THE WORLD — THE AIR AGE

Even after Orville and Wilbur Wright had proved that their airplane could fly, most people believed that flying an airplane was only for those who didn't mind taking the chance of sudden death. Some people knew better. Year by year, they made planes stronger and flew them faster, higher, and longer, with greater safety. To know how they did this, you should first know what an airplane needs in order to fly.

The Parts of an Airplane

The modern airplane is very different from the one first made by the Wright brothers. Their airplane, in a way, was like a canvas-covered box kite, with two sides, or wings. Airplanes with two wings, one above the other, were called *biplanes*. Biplanes were flown across the Atlantic Ocean in 1919 by the United States Navy.

Today, airplanes are called *monoplanes* because they have one wing on each side. Some airplanes are called "flying wings" because most of the parts of the airplane are inside the huge wing. Also there is the *helicopter*, which has no wings, but whirling blades that take the place of wings.

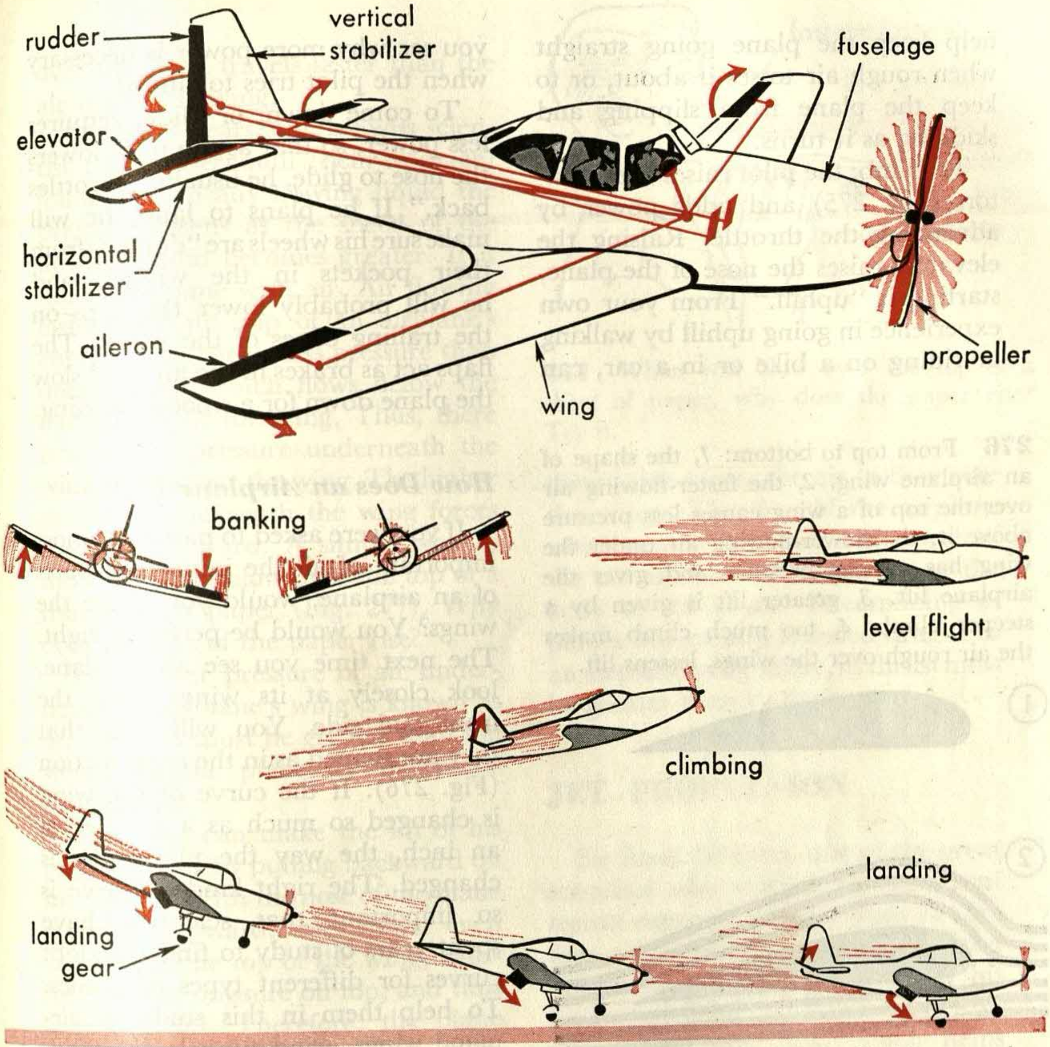
Most airplanes have certain parts in common. Examine these parts (Fig. 275) carefully before you study the following sections. Then refer to the figure as you read.

Ailerons (AY-ler-onz) are flaps placed in the rear edges of the airplane wings. When one is raised, the one on the opposite side is lowered. The push of air against the raised and lowered ailerons causes one wing to rise and the other wing to lower when in flight. This makes it possible for a pilot to "bank" or make a sharp turn with his plane. Sometimes parts of both wings, called the flaps, are lowered to slow down the speed of the plane in landing.

The body of the airplane is called the *fuselage* (FYOO-z'l-ij). In the front of the fuselage are placed the pilots' seats, controls, and instruments.

Most airplanes have *engines* and *propellers* mounted in the wings or in front of the fuselage. The engine furnishes power to turn the propeller. The propeller may have many blades, which can be turned so that they strike more air as they whirl.

Planes using jet engines do not need propellers. The engines are pushed by hot gases thrusting out from the rear of the plane. This gives them greater power with less weight than heavy gasoline engines have. Jet engines are used mainly on military aircraft.



275 The airplane and its most important parts. How are they used in climbing, turning, diving, and landing?

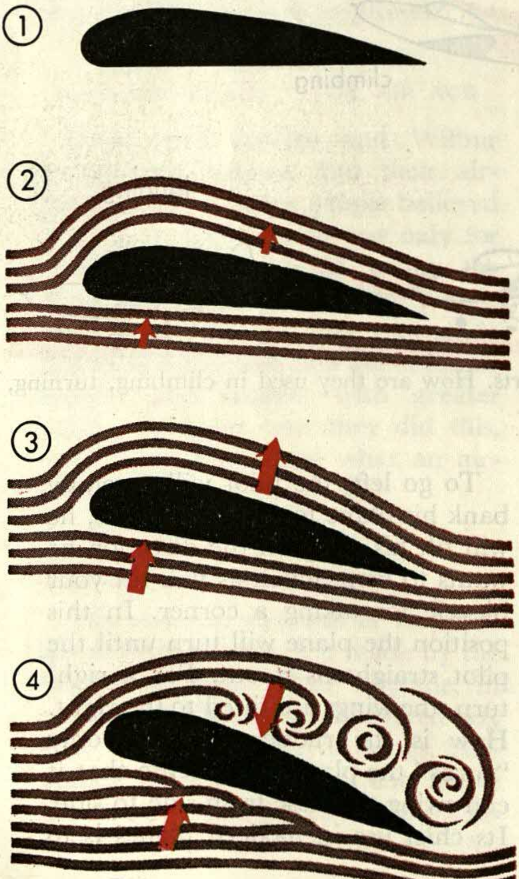
Just what happens when a pilot wants to go up or down or turn to the left or right? The rudder, and all the parts that can be moved (Fig. 275), are attached to the control column or "stick" or to pedals in the cockpit. There is also the throttle which, like the gas pedal or accelerator on a car, lets the pilot control his engine. The throttle is worked by hand so that the pilot's feet are free to rest on the rudder pedals.

To go left, the pilot will carefully bank his plane to the left; that is, he will tilt his wings in the direction he wants to turn, much as you tilt your bicycle for taking a corner. In this position the plane will turn until the pilot straightens it out. For a right turn, the wings are tilted to the right. How is the rudder used? It only "turns" the plane in the sense that it can swing the nose from side to side. Its chief use in modern planes is to help keep the plane going straight when rough air tosses it about, or to keep the plane from slipping and skidding as it turns.

To climb, the pilot raises the elevators (Fig. 275) and adds power by advancing the throttle. Raising the elevators raises the nose of the plane, starting it "uphill." From your own experience in going uphill by walking or riding on a bike or in a car, can you see why more power is necessary when the pilot tries to climb?

To come down, or glide, requires less power, so that as the pilot lowers the nose to glide, he usually "throttles back." If he plans to land, he will make sure his wheels are "down" (from their pockets in the wings), and he will probably lower the flaps on the trailing edges of the wings. The flaps act as brakes in the air, and slow the plane down for a smooth landing.

276 From top to bottom: *1*, the shape of an airplane wing. *2*, the faster-flowing air over the top of a wing causes less pressure above it; the slower-flowing air under the wing has greater pressure and gives the airplane lift. *3*, greater lift is given by a steeper climb. *4*, too much climb makes the air rough over the wings, lessens lift.



How Does an Airplane Fly?

If you were asked to name the most important of all the important parts of an airplane, would you name the wings? You would be perfectly right. The next time you see an airplane, look closely at its wings from the front and side. You will note that they are shaped as in the cross section (Fig. 276). If the curve of the wing is changed so much as a quarter of an inch, the way the plane flies is changed. The right kind of curve is so important that scientists have spent years of study to find the right curves for different types of planes. To help them in this study of airplane wings, wind tunnels are used. Some wind tunnels are so strong that winds of over 700 miles an hour can be made to test the wing shapes of airplanes.

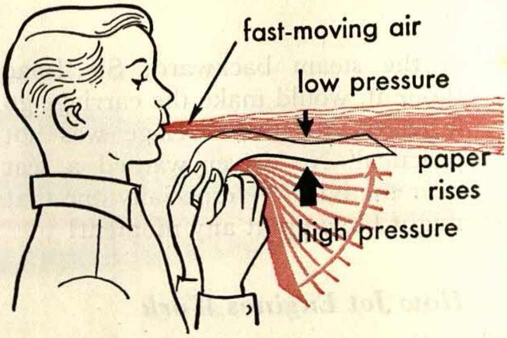
The wing of an airplane strikes the air in such a way as to cause the plane to be lifted. Air meeting the curve of the upper part of the wings is swept upward and over the curved surface (Fig. 276). The air currents take the same time to pass over and under the wing, but the currents over the wing travel the longer distance and so go faster in the same time than the currents under the wing. Thus the air over the wing travels faster than the air under the wing.

Over 200 years ago, a Swiss scientist named Bernoulli (behr-NOOL-ee) found that in any flowing liquid the pressure lessens as the speed of the flowing liquid becomes greater. It is much the same with air. Air flowing faster over the top of an airplane's curved wing causes less pressure than does the air which flows below the flat surface of the wing. Thus, there is a higher pressure underneath the wing than above the wing. The higher pressure underneath the wing forces the wing upward. A simple way to show this is to blow over the top of a thin strip of paper (Fig. 277). Why does the end of the paper rise?

The higher pressure of air underneath an airplane's wing is known as *lift*. The lift must be greater than the weight of the plane, or the plane cannot fly.

The pilot can make the lift of his plane greater by pulling backward on his "stick." With the nose of the plane pointing upward, air flows even faster over the top of the wing, causing a lower pressure on top, and thus a greater lift. Therefore, the plane can climb rapidly.

The angle of the wing shown in Fig. 276 is called the *angle of attack*. The angle cannot be increased beyond a certain point because the air flowing over the back part of the wing "burbles" or becomes rough. When this happens, the speed of the airplane slows down and the lift quickly lessens. Of course, in order to have any lift at all, the plane must be in motion. This is caused by the propeller, which bores into the air like a screw forced into wood or like a boat's propeller blade into water. This motion is called a *thrust*. The thrust also causes the air to flow over the wings. The *drag* of the airplane which resists the thrust is the push of the air against the movement of the body of the plane. Streamlining of planes has greatly lessened drag. For an airplane to fly safely, its thrust must be greater than its drag.



277 When you blow over the top of a sheet of paper, why does the paper rise? Try it.

JET PROPULSION

Sir Isaac Newton, one of the great scientists who worked in the seventeenth century, made a study of motion. After many experiments and observations Sir Isaac published his findings, called "the Laws of Motion." His third law, which helps explain how jet-propelled planes fly, is this: "For every action there is an equal and opposite reaction."

Even the ancient Greeks had an idea of this kind. For example, they knew that steam pushed out from a container of boiling water with great force (Hero's engine, p. 443). If they had had the knowledge of later scientists, they might have built a steam carriage like the one Sir Isaac Newton invented. This had a large container of boiling water just behind the driver's seat. A valve let the steam out of a jet, facing the rear. The push of the steam backward, Sir Isaac thought, would make the carriage go forward. But the carriage was not practical. No driver wanted a seat near the boiler — especially one that might blow up at any moment!

How Jet Engines Work

You can learn something about Newton's third law of motion by blowing up a small rubber balloon. You may also learn something about jet engines.

Blow a balloon full of air and suddenly let it go. You will see the balloon darting this way and that, finally coming to rest only when the thrust (or push) of the air inside stops coming out of the neck of the balloon.

This thrust or push from the balloon in one direction causes the same size thrust or push against the balloon in the other direction. This opposite push sends the balloon through the air.

There are three kinds of jet engines that make airplanes fly in much the same way as the toy balloon flies. They are the *turbo-jet*, the *ram-jet*, and the *turbo-prop* engines.[1]

The Turbo-Jet Engine

The turbo-jet engine has three main parts: a *compressor*, a *combustion chamber* to burn kerosene, and a *gas turbine* (Fig. 278).

The compressor starts the work of the engine. Like a fan, it blows the air backward and compresses it into the combustion chamber. In the combustion chamber an explosive fuel, like kerosene, is let loose. When the mixture of kerosene and compressed air is set afire, all the hot gases push out of the rear opening at a speed of over 1,200 miles an hour. It is the push of these gases that gives jet airplanes their great speed.

To get greater speed from turbo-jet engines, an "after-burner" has been placed behind the gas turbine. More fuel is sprayed into the after-burner, where the great heat explodes it. The push of the burned gases gives the plane a greater speed.

The Ram-Jet Engine

The ram-jet engine is the simplest form of a jet engine. It has no moving parts. It takes air into the front opening and crowds it into a small space. The fuel is then sprayed in and burned. The hot gases shoot out the rear. In order to get enough air into the front opening, this engine must be moving through the air at a high speed before it will start to work. Therefore, airplanes that use the ram-jet engine must have some other kind of power to take off from the ground.

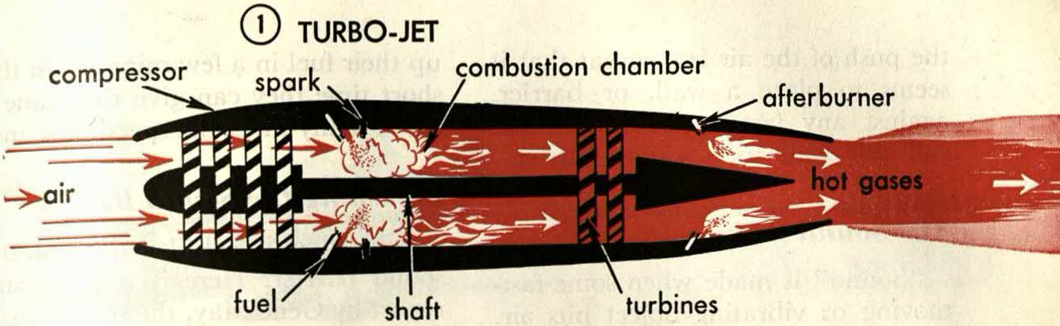
The Turbo-Prop Engine

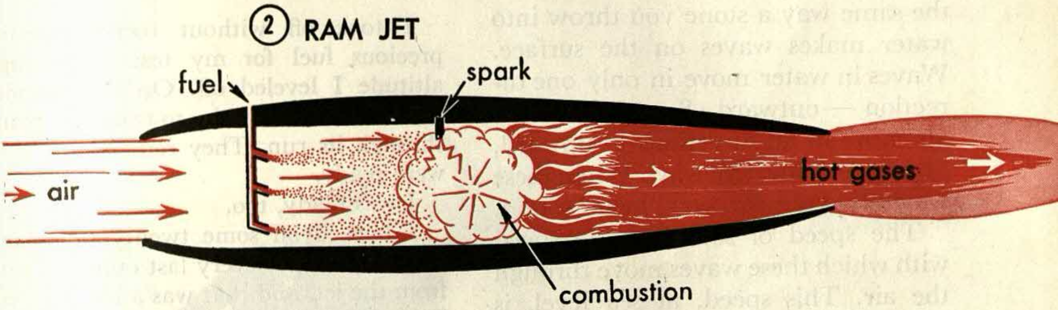
The turbo-prop engine is much like the turbo-jet engine, except that it has a propeller. This propeller is turned by the same shaft that turns the compressor and gas turbine. Though smaller and lighter in weight, the turbo-prop engine gives more power than do heavier and larger piston engines. It uses less fuel than the turbo-jet engine or ram-jet engine.

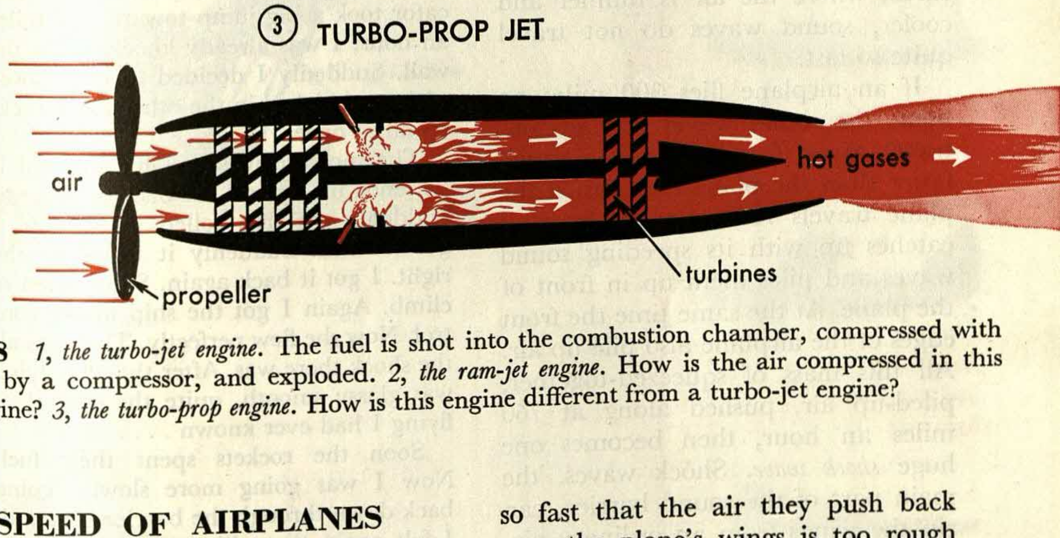
Now return to Fig. 278 and study the differences among the three engines.

---

[1] A fourth, less common type of jet engine is the *pulse-jet* engine.







278 *1, the turbo-jet engine.* The fuel is shot into the combustion chamber, compressed with air by a compressor, and exploded. *2, the ram-jet engine.* How is the air compressed in this engine? *3, the turbo-prop engine.* How is this engine different from a turbo-jet engine?

SPEED OF AIRPLANES

Since the Wright brothers' first flight, the speed of airplanes with propellers has risen from 31 miles an hour to over 600 miles an hour. There is a limit, however, to the speed that propellers can pull an airplane through the air. Beyond 600 miles an hour the propeller blades whirl so fast that the air they push back over the plane's wings is too rough to give the plane the needed lift (Fig. 276). It is clear that, for greater speed, another kind of engine is needed than one that turns a propeller.

The push of air against an airplane becomes greater as the speed of the plane increases. At 760 miles an hour the push of the air is so great that it seems to place a wall, or barrier, against any faster speed. Scientists call this wall the "sound barrier."

The Sound Barrier

"Sound" is made when some fast-moving or vibrating object hits air. This makes waves in air, somewhat the same way a stone you throw into water makes waves on the surface. Waves in water move in only one direction — outward. Sound waves in air move in all directions — upward, downward, and sideways. When these waves hit your ear, you "hear" sound.

The speed of sound is the speed with which these waves move through the air. This speed, at sea level, is about 760 miles an hour. Above the earth, where the air is thinner and cooler, sound waves do not travel quite so fast.

If an airplane flies 300 miles an hour, the sound waves it sends out travel away from the plane much faster than the plane flies. But if the plane travels 760 miles an hour, it catches up with its speeding sound waves and piles them up in front of the plane. At the same time the front edges of the airplane also pile up air. All this mass of squeezed-together, piled-up air, pushed along at 760 miles an hour, then becomes one huge *shock wave*. Shock waves, the main part of the sound barrier, can rip the wings from an ordinary airplane. To lessen the effect of these shock waves on planes as they fly through the sound barrier, planes have been given a different-shaped wing (Fig. 279).

Planes also have been given turbojet and rocket engines for greater speed. Although rocket engines use up their fuel in a few minutes, in this short time they can give the plane a speed many times the speed of sound.

Smashing the Sound Barrier

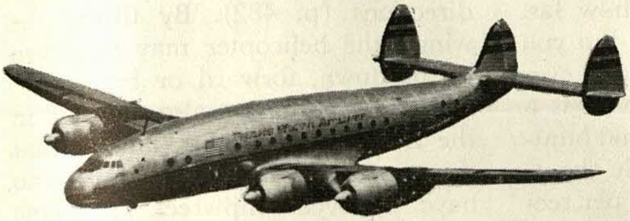
What does it feel like to smash the sound barrier? Here is a first-hand report by Gene May, the second man to fly faster than sound.

> I took off without rockets, saving precious fuel for my test. At a high altitude I leveled off. On the ground, radar stations stood by to track the plane through its run. They radioed me they were ready.
>
> I was ready, too.
>
> I backed off some twenty miles and started in. I got every last ounce of stuff from the jet, and that was a lot of speed. Then I cut in number one rocket. I felt a walloping pickup. My air-speed indicator took a big jump toward 760 miles an hour. I was already knocking on the wall. Suddenly I decided to get it over with, and kicked in the other three rockets all at once.
>
> The increase in speed hit so hard it flattened me against the back of my seat. Suddenly the ship rolled to the left. I got it back. Suddenly it rolled to the right. I got it back again. She started to climb. Again I got the ship under control. Now she flew perfectly. That was all the shock there was. After that the flying was glassy smooth, quite the smoothest flying I had ever known . . . .
>
> Soon the rockets spent their fuel. Now I was going more slowly, going back down through the barrier of sound. I felt again the rolling of the airplane, first one way and then the other. Gradually, the ship became easier to control, and I was back in the world I had left a scant three minutes before . . . .[1]

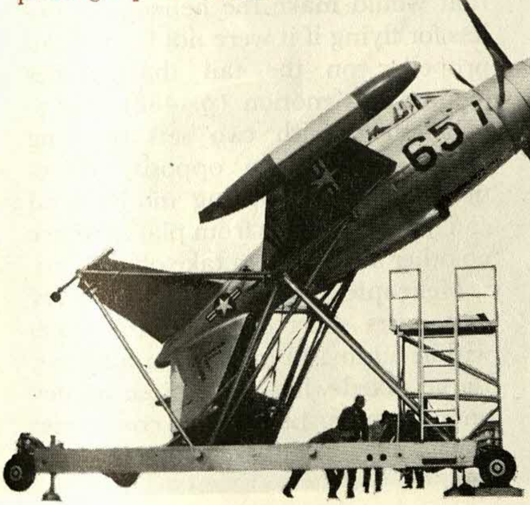
On December 12, 1953, Major Charles Yeager flew the X-IA, a

---

[1] From "My Biggest Thrill," *Flying* Magazine, June, 1953.

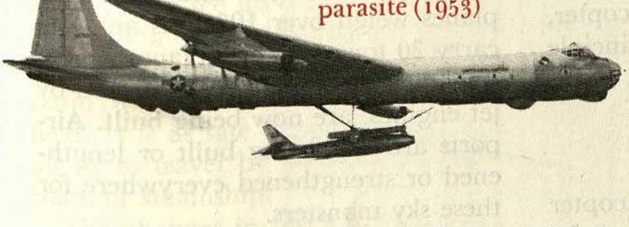


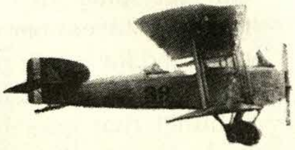
trans-oceanic
passenger plane (1944)



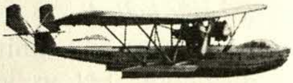
vertical-take-off
jet fighter (1953)

carrier bomber
with jet-fighter
parasite (1953)

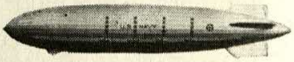




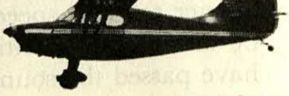
military biplane
(1917)



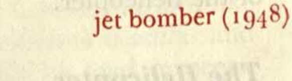
seaplane (1929)



dirigible (1935)



four-place
personal plane
(1948)



jet bomber (1948)

279 The story of flight in pictures. *Project:* Make a scrapbook to picture other changes that have taken place in aircraft design since the first aircraft was launched.

rocket plane, 1,650 miles an hour, or over twice the speed of sound. Do you really have any idea how fast this is? Not many people do. But you can get some idea if you have ever fired a .22 caliber rifle, which is a rifle used for target practice and hunting small game. The .22 rifle shoots a bullet that goes 1,300 feet per second. You will certainly agree that if a man went through the air at that speed, he would be going very fast indeed. When Major Yeager flew his X-IA plane 1,650 miles per hour, *his speed was almost twice the speed of a .22 rifle bullet!*

Is there any limit to the speed of airplanes? Let us look at the facts. If an airplane flew for just five minutes at a speed of 2,600 miles an hour, 40,000 feet above the earth, air friction would heat its metal surface to a temperature of 900° F., even though the air itself is icy cold — some 65° below zero at this altitude. Unless they were protected, persons inside the plane would be killed by the heat. At faster speeds the metal of the plane would light up as a meteor does when it flashes across the sky. This heat barrier to great speed may sometime be crossed by scientists, just as they have passed the sound barrier.

At today's speeds, airplanes need large airfields with miles of runway to land on. However, there is one kind of plane that needs a space only a little larger than itself for landing or taking off. This plane is the helicopter, or planes that work on the principle of the helicopter.

The Helicopter

Pilots sometimes call a helicopter an egg beater. Do you see why? Its "wings" — really large, long propeller blades — are whirled by an engine and can be tilted in many directions (p. 482). By tilting the wings, the helicopter may be flown up or down, forward or backward, and sideways. It can also stay still in the air over one spot. Think what this means in rescuing persons who have survived shipwreck or plane crashes! Hundreds of persons have been saved by helicopters.

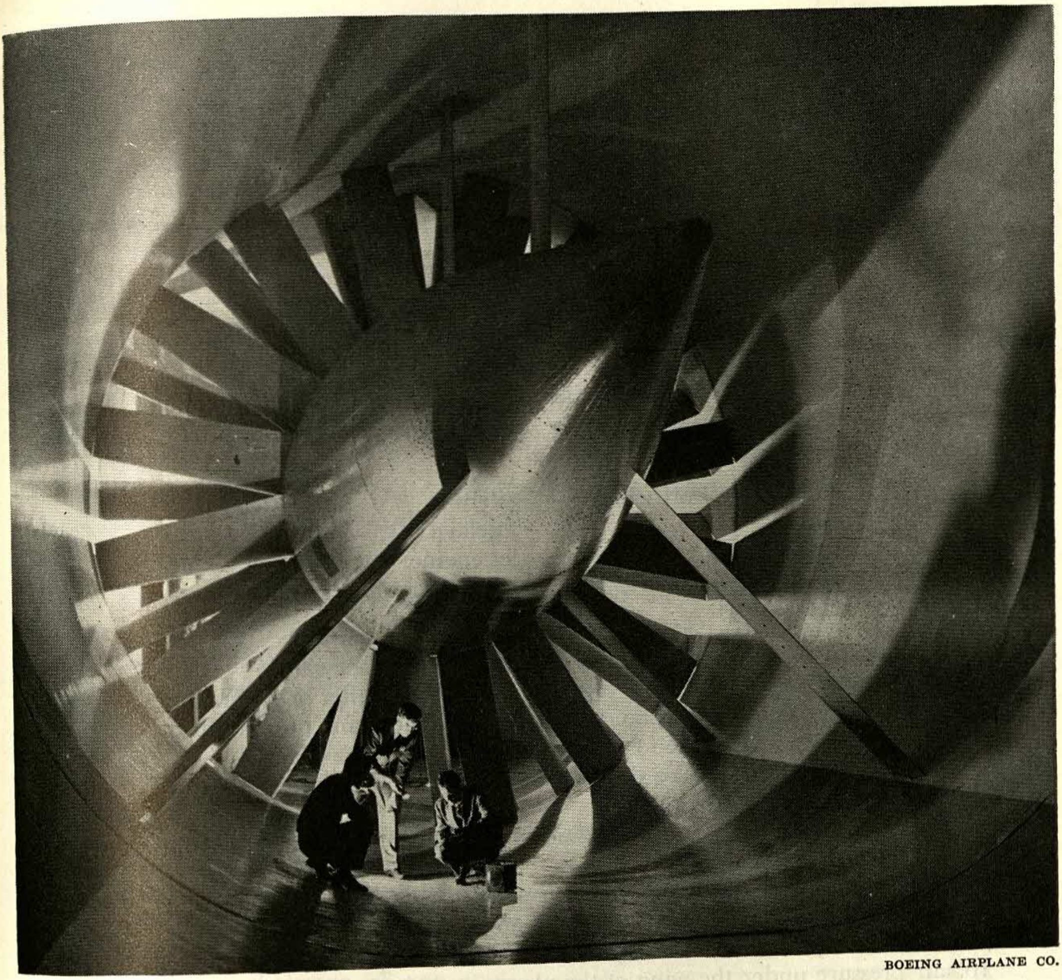
The large whirling blades on a helicopter cause a twisting motion that would make the helicopter useless for flying if it were not for a small propeller on the tail that pushes against this motion (p. 482). Large helicopters, with two sets of wing blades whirling in opposite directions, stop this twisting motion and can lift heavy loads from places where no other airplane can take off or land.

Helicopters are now used to carry passengers short distances to places within 50 to 100 miles from airports. Large, fixed-wing planes lose money on such trips, but airline companies can make a profit by using helicopters.

A Look into the Future

It is now a matter of only a few flying hours to cross oceans. Today airplanes carry millions of passengers and hundreds of thousands of tons of freight in the United States each year. Some freight and passenger planes weigh over 100 tons and can carry 20 tons of cargo. Planes weighing much more than this, powered by jet engines, are now being built. Airports are also being built or lengthened or strengthened everywhere for these sky monsters.

Science has also made better controls for safety. No longer does a



BOEING AIRPLANE CO.

280 This powerful electric fan can send air at a speed of hundreds of miles per hour against scale models of airplanes hung in the wind tunnel. Does this picture help you understand how engineers work to find out what shape the wing of an airplane must have to fly faster than the speed of sound?

plane have to fly "blind" in a fog or storm. The pilot has radar pictures of the sky ahead and the ground below. He can see his landing field. He also has a radio "beam" to guide him in landing, and he can talk by radio to the control tower on the field. It is as safe today to travel by air as to travel by automobile, railroad, or steamship.

The changes in the last few years have been so many that no one can really say what the next few years will bring to travel on land, on sea, or in the air. Plans have been drawn up for atomic engines for airplanes that use only 1 pound of uranium 235 to give the power of 1,700,000 pounds of gasoline. One of these engines is being built right now. Atomic engines like those in the submarines *Nautilus* and *Sea Wolf* may also be used in ocean liners to give them greater speed while saving the space now used for carrying fuel oil. It is safe to say that changes in travel will be exciting.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

Archimedes' principle
clutch
transmission
Kingston valves
vent valves
ailerons
fuselage
jet engine
helicopter
drag
lift
thrust
rudder
stabilizer

1. gears used to make an automobile go forward or backward
2. the forward motion given to an airplane by a propeller or jet engine
3. a movable part of an airplane that can cause the plane to go right or left
4. a force which lessens the forward motion or speed of a plane
5. any object placed in a liquid is pushed upward by a force equal to the weight of the liquid displaced by the object
6. a device that connects or disconnects the power of the engine from the rear wheels of an automobile
7. valves in a submarine that when opened let water fill the ballast tanks
8. the main body of an airplane, which holds the passengers
9. a device on the tail of an airplane to balance the plane
10. air pressure under the wing of the plane
11. flaps set in the edge of airplane wings to control the course of the plane
12. valves that let air out of the ballast tanks in a submarine
13. an engine that uses the thrust of hot gases for power
14. an airplane that can stay still in the air over one spot

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. A . . . disconnects the power of an automobile engine from the rear wheels.
2. The . . . of an automobile can make it go forward or backward.
3. Any substance floats in water when it displaces the amount of water . . . to its own weight.
4. Water pressure . . . with depth.
5. Banking of an airplane is done by moving the . . . .
6. The . . . of an airplane contains passengers and freight.
7. An airplane's nose is made to rise or fall by using the . . . .
8. An airplane gets lift when the pressure on the upper surface of the wing is . . . than the pressure on the lower surface.

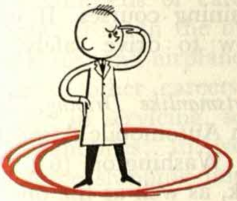
9. The angle of the wing as it meets air resistance is called the angle of . . . .

10. A speed of 760 miles per hour at sea level is the speed of . . . .

11. Streamlining of planes has greatly lessened . . . .

12. Engines that depend on the thrust of hot gases for power are called . . . engines.

13. A plane which can rise or descend vertically and travel in any direction is called a . . . .



GOING FURTHER

1. *Driving and automobile safety.* Because most boys and girls of your age will sometime drive an automobile, appoint committees in your science class to do the following:

a. Have the chairman of one committee write to two or three automobile makers for booklets about their automobiles. Ask for information and pictures of engines, clutches, transmission and differential gears, and any other literature they can send. Have the committee report on this information.

b. Have the chairman of one committee make arrangements for the committee to visit the manager of an automobile repair and service station. If possible, have the manager explain to the students what problems he has to solve in making repairs and giving service to customers. Ask the members of this committee to give a report of their visit.

c. Ask the chairman of one committee to write to your state registry of motor vehicles for a booklet telling about rules for safe driving. Have members of the committee report on these rules and show by diagrams on the blackboard what the rules mean.

d. Have the chairman of one committee invite the chief of police or another police officer to speak to the class about safe driving. Next day, let each member of this committee tell the class *his* idea of safe driving.

2. *Checking Archimedes' principle.* Tie a piece of string around a stone or a small piece of scrap iron. Weigh the stone or iron with a spring balance. Fill a jar or beaker brimful of water. Now weigh on the balance any small pail into which the bottom of the beaker will fit. Place the jar of water in the pail. With the stone attached by string to the balance, slowly lower the stone into the water. Note the difference between the weight of the stone in air and its weight in water. How much weight did the stone seem to lose?

Remove the jar from the pail that now holds the overflowed water. Weigh the pail again and make note of its increased weight. What is the weight of the overflowed water? Compare this weight with the loss of weight of the iron or the stone in water. Is Archimedes' principle true?

3. *An experiment in "floating."* Fill a pail with water. Place an empty tin can on the surface of the water in the pail. Does it sink? Now add weight to the tin can by dropping in pebbles or sand. Note how the can sinks as its weight increases. Does it displace more and more water?

Remove the tin can, empty it, and smash it flat with a hammer, bending it over and over again. Place the battered can in the water. Does it sink? Does it displace as much water as before? What effects have size and weight in making objects sink or float?

4. *Checking Bernoulli's principle.* Make a fold in a sheet of composition paper about 1 inch from the end. Hold the fold about 2 inches away from your mouth, and blow against the fold and over the top of the remaining paper. What do you conclude as to the reason for the lift given to the paper? Is Bernoulli's principle true?

5. Make a trip to a nearby airport. Write down all the parts of an airplane you can identify.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. In what ways have the automobile and truck affected life in the United States?

2. If you were to give a talk on the need of a safety program, what points of careful driving would you stress?

3. In what ways has the T form of rails affected the growth of railroads?

4. Why does a ship made of steel float, whereas a piece of steel sinks in water?

5. A pine log is pushed into a river. The log contains 4 cubic feet and weighs 125 pounds. Will it sink or float? (Remember that a cubic foot of water weighs 62.5 pounds.)

6. How does an airplane get lift?

7. If the drag of an airplane is less than its thrust, can the airplane fly? Why?

Adding to Your Library

We suggest the following books and pamphlets for your reading. You will find each one exciting.

1. *O.K. for Drive-Away* by Henry B. Lent, The Macmillan Company, 1951. This book explains how automobiles are built and how clutch and transmission gears work.

2. *Fill 'Er Up* by Bellamy Partridge, McGraw-Hill, 1952. Here is the story of the first 50 years of making automobiles. The pictures are very interesting.

3. *Man and the Motor Car*, Albert W. Whitney, ed., Accident Prevention Department of the Association of Casualty and Surety Companies, 60 John St., New York City, 1949. This book, as well as the one listed below, is used in driver-training courses. If you want to learn how to drive safely, read both books.

4. *Sportsmanlike Driving*, 2nd edition, American Automobile Association, Mills Building, Washington (6), D.C., 1948. This book, as well as the one above, is a *must* for you to read. There are many diagrams and pictures to show you how to drive an automobile.

5. *The Wright Brothers* by Fred G. Kelly, rev. edition, Farrar, Strauss, 1951. This is the complete story, with photos, of how Orville and Wilbur Wright flew the first airplane.

6. *Stick and Rudder* by Wolfgang E. Langewiesche-Brandt, Whittlesey House, McGraw-Hill, 1944. This book tells how a pilot flies an airplane. Are you a future pilot?

7. *Rockets and Jets* by Herbert S. Zim, Harcourt, Brace, 1945. To fly faster than sound, jet or rocket engines must be used for power. This book tells the history of jet and rocket engines and their future use.

8. *A Flier's World* by Wolfgang E. Langewiesche-Brandt, McGraw-Hill, 1951. You will find interesting reading in this book about flying the airplanes of today.

A Bit of Research

There is much more to learn about the automobile than you have learned from reading this chapter. We suggest that you find out about the following from the library, from automobile companies, or from your local garage:

1. How the electrical system works.

2. How the braking system works.
3. How the steering system works.

These are three of the most important systems, on which safe driving depends. In your science notebook make a drawing of the systems, showing the parts.

Careers for You

There are hundreds of careers that you may choose from in the making of automobiles, ships, and airplanes. There are hundreds of other careers waiting for your choice in servicing, selling, or designing automobiles; in work connected with large shipping lines, or on the ships themselves; in piloting and servicing airplanes, or in other work at airports or with airlines.

How can you get training for these careers? Most universities give training for *engineering* careers with automobile, ship, and airplane companies. There are many schools, some even in large airports, where men are trained to *service airplanes* and women are trained as *hostesses*. There are maritime academies in many seacoast cities where men are trained as *ship's officers* and *engineers*. If you really want a career in the field of transportation, the opportunity awaits you.

MODEL AIRPLANES AS A hobby

Have you ever seen a model airplane conte[illegible] If you have, you know what thrills and satisfaction boys and girls get from flying their own model planes. The ones who watch get a thrill, too, because some of these planes fly at a speed of over 100 miles an hour.

One great satisfaction a model plane builder gets is seeing a plane he has just built make its first successful flight. Perhaps, however, he has built a nonflying model. Then his thrill comes when he first puts the model on display as an exact copy of a large aircraft.

Today thousands of boys and girls enjoy the hobby of making model airplanes. Their enjoyment comes from building something with their own hands and brain, and from getting the results they planned for when they started their work. Perhaps you, too, want to build model airplanes as your hobby. If you do, you will find interesting reading and advice in this section.

WHAT YOU SHOULD HAVE TO START WORK

When you look at the sleek lines of a model airplane, you may feel that building a model plane is a big job. That is not true. The building of a model plane is made up of several little jobs. Each one of the little jobs must be done just right to make the finished plane a fine piece of work. You need only four things:

1. A place to work.
2. Tools to work with.
3. Materials to work with.
4. A plan of the model plane you want to build.

A Place to Work

When you are building a model plane, you need a room you can use as a workshop. Ask your parents which room they will let you use. You will need good lighting and a place to store safely the materials you use. A table or small bench to work on is a must. Here you may check your plans as you work. A small box with a hinged lid and lock is a good place to store tools. Most of the tools you will use are sharp. Be sure to keep them out of reach of small children.

Tools to Work With

A beginner in building model airplanes needs very few tools. You should have a jackknife with two sharp blades and sharp points. You will find it your most important tool for cutting and trimming away extra wood. Razor blades make a very useful tool for the fine cutting you need to do. Be sure, however, that they are placed in a holder, which you can get at any hardware store.

You will need two pairs of pliers; one pair of small size, with a round nose, and the other pair somewhat larger, with a flat nose and a wire-cutting edge on the side. You will need these pliers to bend landing gears as well as tail skids and propeller shafts.

Because you will often be taking measurements you will need a yardstick, a rolled steel tape, or a carpenter's folding rule. Whatever measuring device you use, it should be at least 36 inches long.

One of your very useful tools will be a changeable-blade coping (KOHP-ing) saw. You will use it to cut out parts from sheets of wood. Solid fuselage blanks are also cut to shape with this tool.

A small hand plane, as well as a hand drill and several sizes of twist drills, will be useful. The most used sizes of these drills are $\frac{1}{32}$ inch, $\frac{1}{16}$ inch, $\frac{3}{32}$ inch, and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch. You will also need a screw driver, a pair of scissors, and a tack hammer. Finally, for smoothing parts of your model, you will need sandpaper.

Materials to Work With

All flying model airplanes are made of balsa wood. This wood is very light and is easy to work. It must be handled carefully, however, because it is so soft that it can be dented with the thumbnail. Balsa wood can be bought in any store that sells model airplane materials. It comes in sticks of many widths and thicknesses or as "sheet balsa" in the form of thin boards that can be cut into strips or panels.

Bamboo is a hard, light wood that you can get in split lengths from model supply stores. It is stronger than balsa. When small strips are gently heated, they can be bent to form parts of a model plane that need strong support.

You can buy nails ($\frac{1}{4}$- and $\frac{3}{8}$-inch sizes), small screws ($\frac{1}{4}$-inch size), wire, and similar materials at any hardware store. Pieces of aluminum, if you need them, are sold at model-plane supply stores. There you may also buy the cement known as Ambroid Liquid Cement. Model plane makers agree that this is the best cement for such work.

Usually the covering of a flying model plane is a very fine grade of Japanese paper. Pure Para rubber strands or tiny gasoline engines power the flying models.

Plans of Model Planes

Every builder of a model plane carefully checks each step of his work with a plan of the plane he is building. Usually these plans are full-sized working drawings that the model builder has made himself or has enlarged from smaller drawings of planes he has found in books or model-airplane magazines. However, if the parts of the model plane have been bought in kit form, full-sized working drawings usually come with the kit. The advantage of using full-sized working drawings is that the size and shape of many parts of the plane can be drawn directly on sheet balsa wood and then cut out.

There are plans or working drawings for every model airplane. Which set of plans will you choose to use?

KINDS OF MODEL PLANES

As we said at the beginning of this hobby section, there are two kinds of model planes: nonflying and flying. The nonflying type is usually a solid model; that is, it is carved from solid pieces of balsa wood or white pine. There are, however, two main types of flying models: free-flight and control-line flight.

Nonflying Models

Nonflying model planes are built to be exact copies of large aircraft. When hung by small threads in a display cabinet or placed on a mantel, shelf, or desk, they seem to be really flying or about to rise from the ground. Solid models are useful also for wind-tunnel testing by airplane companies; for checking plane handling when designing aircraft carriers; and for laying out airfields and designing hangars.

Solid models are usually built to the scale of ¼ or ½ inch to the foot. That is, each ¼ or ½ inch of length or span on the model plane equals a foot on the full-size plane. When these models are used for display purposes, extra pains are taken to give them a smooth coat of paint and to include all the fittings possible. The solid model is perhaps the easiest one to build (Fig. 281).

Free-Flight Flying Models

Free flight means that once the model plane gets into the air, it is not controlled by anyone. The moment these planes take off, they are "on their own," and they must be perfectly balanced in order to stay in the air.

The simplest free-flight model you can build is a glider. The wings may have a span of 1 to 2 feet and are cut from solid sheet balsa. To lessen air resistance, the wings are carefully sanded and polished. Often these gliders take several minutes to return to the earth after being thrown into the air (Fig. 281).

After making a glider, you should build a rubber-powered model plane. It is much like the glider. It is called a stick model because its fuselage is just big enough to hold the rubber strands that give it power. Stick model planes can fly several minutes if the rubber strands are wound up tightly enough (Fig. 281).

When you get further experience, you may want to build engine-powered, free-flying models. However, these models need much more care in building and often "crack up" in flying because their flight cannot be controlled. Perhaps the most popular are the control-line models.

Control-Line Flying Models

Control-line flying models are seen at every flying model airplane contest. Two wires from 25 to 100 feet long run from the plane to a vertical handle held in the flyer's hand. A helper starts the engine of the plane. The plane then takes off from the ground and flies around the flyer, who turns as the plane circles around him. By moving the vertical handle in his hand, the flier moves the elevators of the plane up or down, causing the plane to climb or dive.

Control-line planes are not hard to build; in fact, many beginners have built and flown them successfully. These models can be built with solid-sheet balsa wings and hollowed-out fuselages, thus giving them strength and protection against crack-ups (Fig. 281). You will have a lot of fun flying a control-line model plane.

Will Model Airplanes Be Your Hobby?

In this hobby section there has not been room enough to tell of the many different kinds and types of model planes you can build. Only a few have been mentioned. However, in the reading list at the end of this section you can find complete instructions and plans for building many more. Will building model airplanes be your hobby?

Reading for the Model Plane Builder

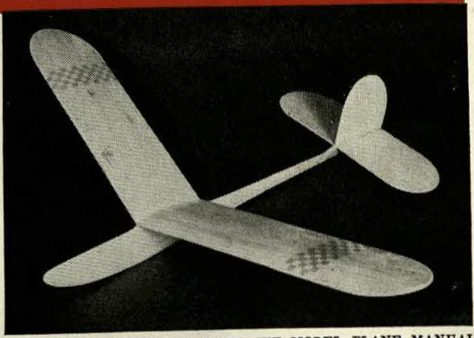
The books listed below are for the beginner and advanced beginner in building model planes. You will find in them much useful information.

1. *Model Planes for Beginners* by Horace H. Gilmore, Harper and Brothers, 1947. This book tells how to make a few simple, solid, nonflying model planes. No special skill is needed to make them.
2. *Design for Flight* by Charles Hampson Grant, Greenberg, Publisher, 201 East 57th St., New York (22), N.Y., 1947. This book gives an excellent description of many kinds of model planes and how to make them.
3. *The Model Plane Manual* by Walter A. Musciano, The McBride Co., 200 East 37th St., New York (16), N.Y., 1953. You will find in this manual a list of the tools and materials a model plane builder needs. The author also tells how to build many free-flight and control-line model planes.
4. *Building and Flying Scale-Model Aircraft* by Walter A. Musciano, The McBride Co. (address above), 1953. The directions for building planes mentioned in this book are clear and simple. The beginner will find many of these model planes easy to build.
5. *Model Jets and Rockets for Boys* by Raymond F. Yates, Harper and Brothers, 1952. The first part of this book deals with the history and development of jets and rockets. If you would like to build model planes powered with jet and rocket engines, you will find several good plans and sets of directions in Chapters 3, 4, and 5.

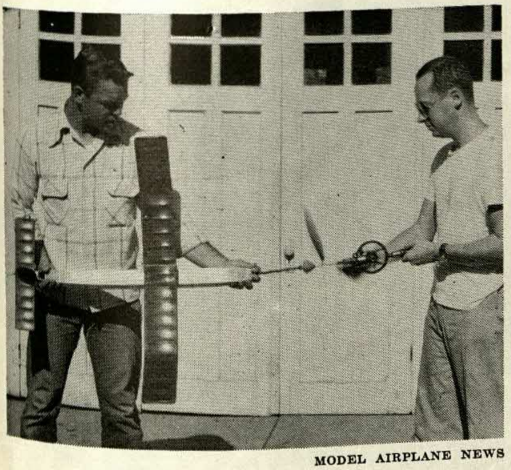
MODEL AIRPLANE NEWS

MODEL BUILDING

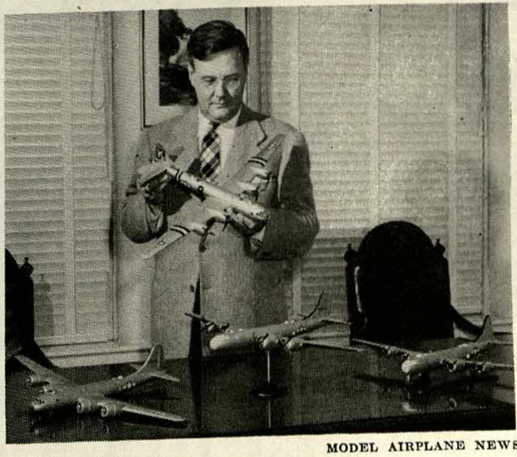
281 *Right*, a model glider. *Bottom right*, four solid scale-model airplanes, exact copies of a B–29. *Bottom left*, flying model powered by rubber bands. *Top*, gasoline-powered free-flight model. All are fun to build, and the powered models exciting to fly.



MUSCIANO FROM THE MODEL PLANE MANUAL



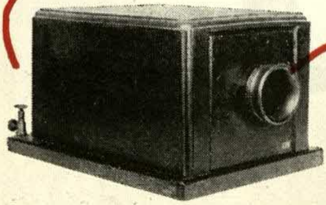
MODEL AIRPLANE NEWS



MODEL AIRPLANE NEWS

UNIT 8

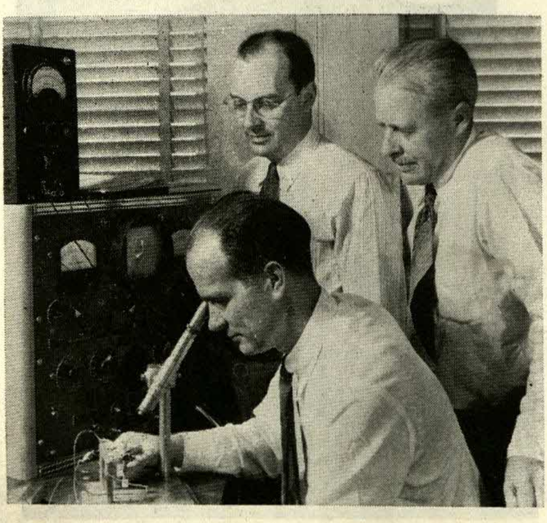
Improving the Exchange of Ideas



About eighty years ago a human voice was first carried over a wire. What a difference between the first boxlike telephone and the modern dial phone! Today, you can talk with a friend on a ship at sea, on a speeding train, or in the air within less than a minute.

Scientists and inventors are working to improve ways of exchanging ideas. Below you see a number of devices called transistors, so small that a dozen or more can lie in the palm of your hand. Some of them may be used in tomorrow's phones, or to replace the tubes in your radio or television set. They are little "gadgets"; they carry light and sound; they will carry your voice — or your picture — or music — over wires or through the air.

In this unit you will learn how science, beginning with simple kinds of signals, has improved ways of exchanging ideas. You will learn how ideas can be recorded to bring you face to face with people and things of other places and other times. In short, you will learn how knowledge of light and sound is conquering time and space.

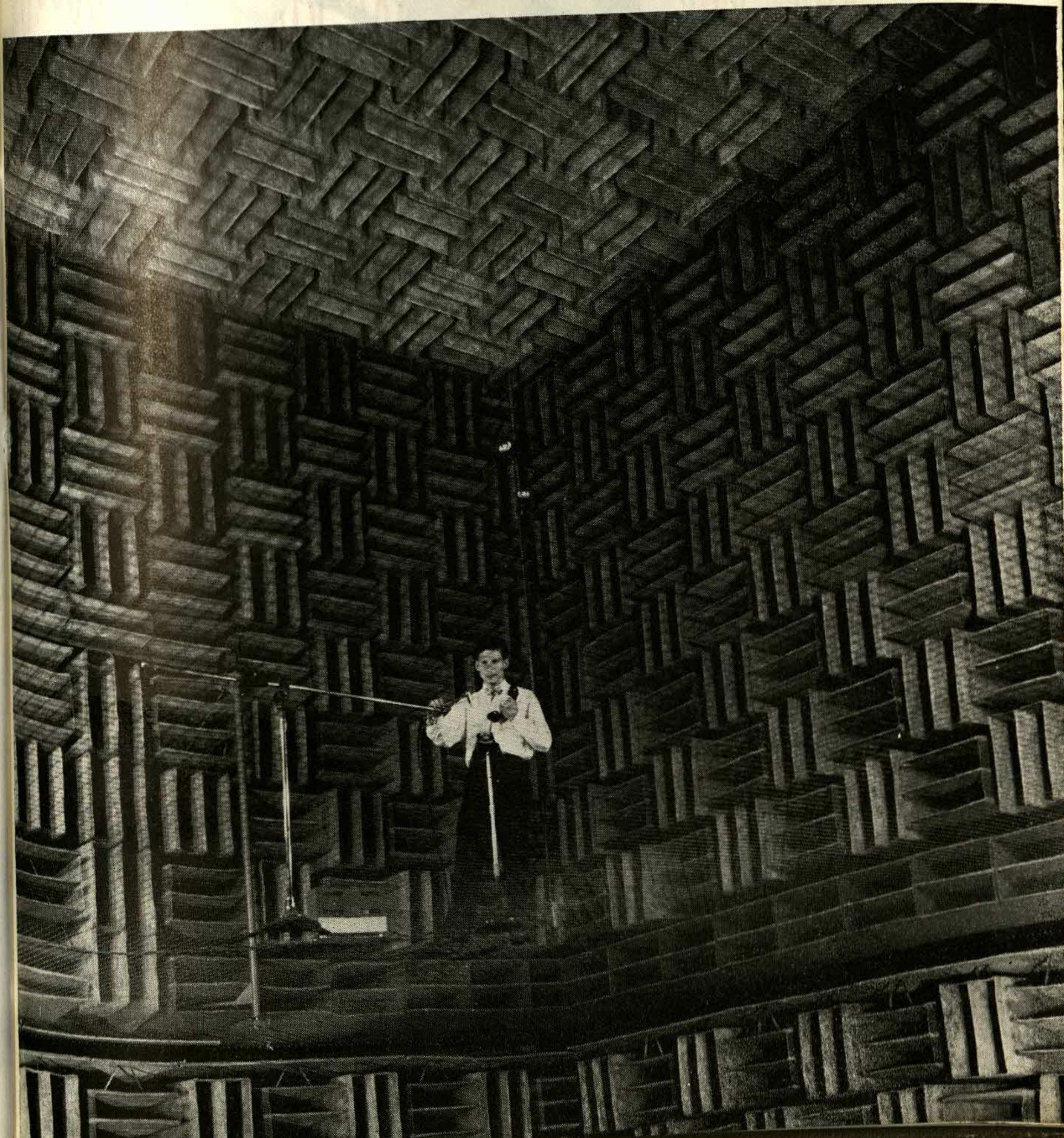


BELL TELEPHONE LABORATORIES

HAYMAN STUDIOS

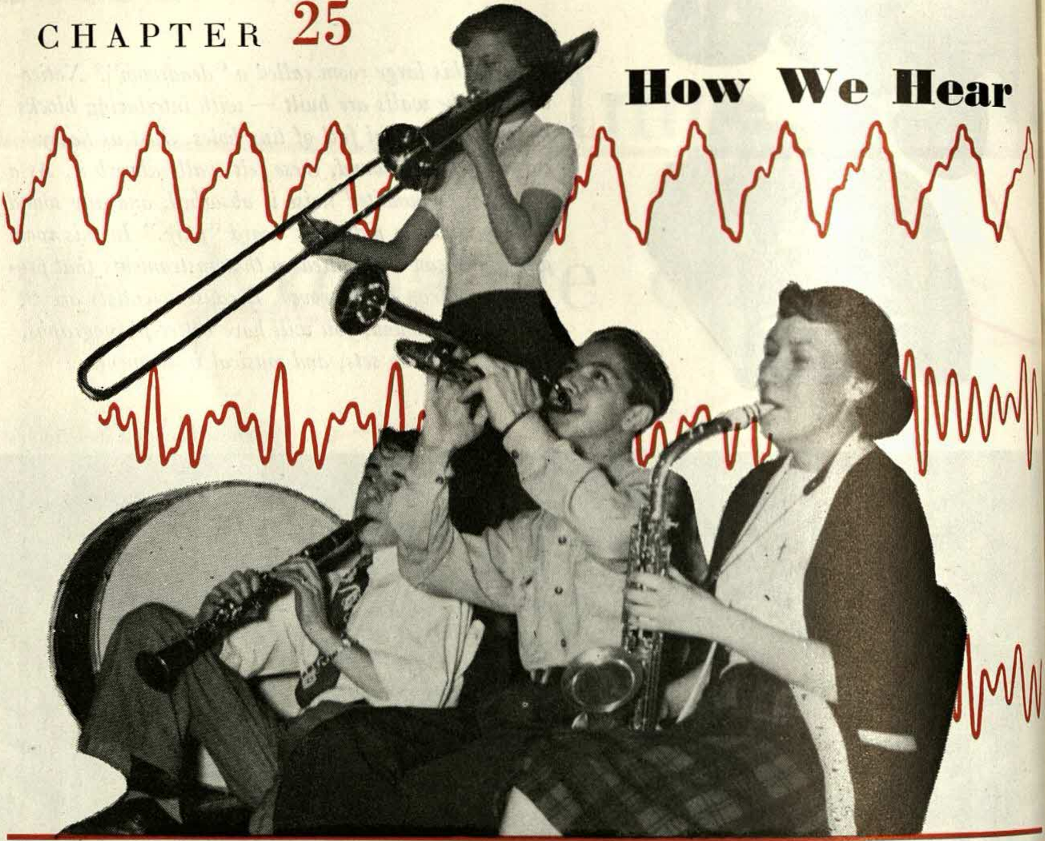
Why is this large room called a "deadroom"? Notice the way the walls are built — with interlacing blocks of feltlike material full of tiny holes. Just as heavy curtains absorb sound, these felt walls absorb it. As a result, any unwanted noise is absorbed, and any sound the experimenter makes is heard "pure." In this room any sound can be studied so that instruments that produce sound can be improved. Because scientists are interested in sound, you will have better phonographs, radios, television sets, and musical instruments.

BELL TELEPHONE LABORATORIES



CHAPTER 25

How We Hear



Plug your ears with cotton. Then put your hands over your ears — just for a minute or so. A different world without sound! Much of the world comes to you through your ears. Your ears are precious to you.

A MINER was sitting in a Washington, D.C., motion picture theater one snowy day. In spite of his interest in the film, he suddenly jumped out of his seat, shouting a warning of danger, and ran for the nearest exit. Moments later the roof caved in, killing some people and injuring others in the audience who had not heeded his warning.

Good hearing and good listening had saved the miner's life and the lives of others. A miner is by habit always alert for the sound of a possible cave-in, a constant danger in mines. His ear had caught the faint noises which had come just before the roof caved in because of the weight of the snow that had fallen on it. His mind had understood their meaning. Few people make such good use of their ears.

YOUR HEARING

Probably no two people hear the same things the same way, but every normal person has the same kind of organ to hear with, the human ear.

Collecting Sounds

The human ear has many parts, only one of which can be seen easily. This part is the outer ear. Each of your outer ears leads to a middle ear, which in turn connects with an inner ear (Fig. 282).

Hearing begins when sound *vibrations* reach your outer funnel-shaped ears.

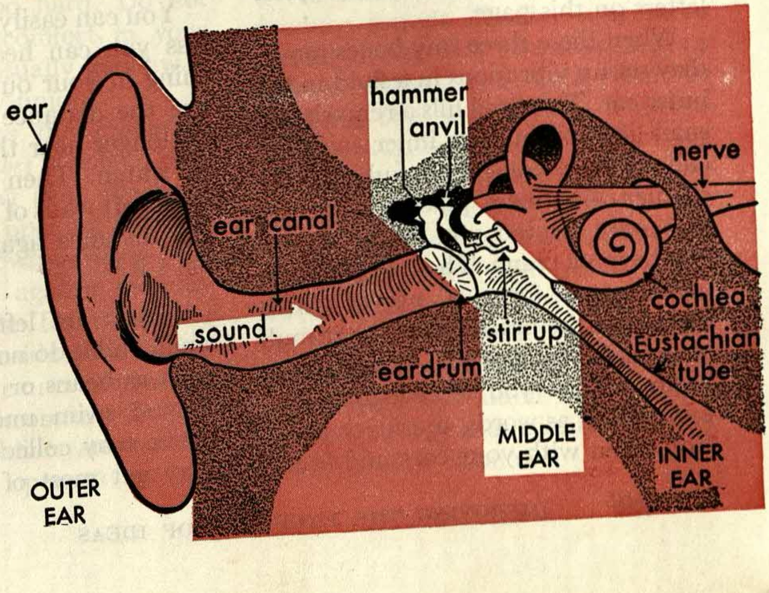
What are vibrations? Here is a way you can see as well as hear sound vibrations.

Stretch a rubber band as far as it will go and flick it with the nail of a finger. Notice how the rubber band moves back and forth; that is, it vibrates. If it vibrates too slowly you will hear no sound. Make it vibrate so fast that your eye cannot see more than a blur. Now you can hear a twanging sound. This sound is caused by the rapid motion or vibrations of the rubber band. These vibrations set up sound waves in the air, and some of them in turn set the air inside your ear in motion.

When a person plays the violin, he makes a few strings vibrate. These make sound waves that travel to your ear. A trumpet player makes sound waves by blowing air into his instrument. A drummer makes sound waves by causing the tight skin of his drum to vibrate. The air then carries these sound waves to your ears.

Things that are vibrating fast enough to make sounds that you can hear are usually moving back and forth so rapidly that you cannot see the vibrations. For instance, if you were to strike a tuning fork, you might hear the sound but you probably would not see the motion of the prongs of the fork except as a blur.

One way to see that a tuning fork makes vibrations is to strike it, then dip it quickly into a glass of water. The vibrations will make the water splash. Another way is to attach a needle to one of the prongs of the tuning fork before you strike it. Then while the fork is sounding, hold the point of the needle over a piece of glass that has been smoked in a candle flame. The needle will make true wavelike marks which you can easily see. A third way to show vibrations is to fasten a tiny mirror to a violin string. Shine the light from a flashlight against the mirror



282 The three main parts of the human ear. What is the purpose of each part?

283 When the bugle is blown, vibrations within it set in motion sound waves which spread out in all directions.

while someone else runs the violin bow across the string to make it vibrate. See how the beam of light reflected by the mirror dances on the opposite wall.

Listening with Your Brain

Vibrations carried by the air first reach your outer ear. They keep on traveling until they reach your *eardrum*. Then, if your eardrum is in good working order, it too begins to vibrate. The eardrum is a thin, skin-like tissue separating the outer ear from the middle ear.

When the eardrum starts to vibrate, it sets in motion the three smallest bones of the human body. They are called the hammer, the anvil, and the stirrup. Do not be fooled by the size of these bones as they appear in Fig. 282. Actually, they are about the size of the capital letters on this page.

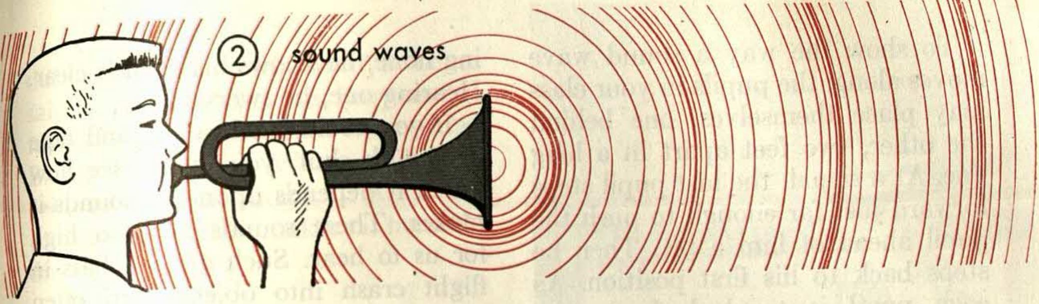
When these three tiny bones move, they set up vibrations in a fluid in the inner ear. This fluid fills a remarkable snail-like coil in your inner ear. It is called the *cochlea* (KOK-lee-uh). In the cochlea are fibers placed in a way that may remind you of the strings of a harp or piano. These fibers come together to form a nerve which reaches to the brain. Thus the stimuli of sound reach your brain. Your brain enables you to recognize certain sounds as words, music, or noise. You listen with your ears and brain.

Why Some People Find It Hard to Hear

Some people are born deaf, and some become deaf later on. Deafness that comes after birth may be caused by an obstruction in the ear, or it may be the result of an injury. The injury may be an accident such as a broken eardrum, or it may be the aftereffect of an illness. Since the eardrum is so thin, it is easily damaged. It is not wise to use any hard object such as a toothpick or match to remove wax or dirt from your ears. Only soft, moist cotton should be used. If the wax is hard, let a doctor remove it. He knows how to do it without putting a hole through your eardrum. Sometimes the nerve connecting the cochlea to the brain is damaged, or the blood vessels leading to it may not be in working order.

You can easily find out how much less you can hear if there is something in your outer ear. First measure the distance at which you can no longer hear the ticking of a clock or watch. Then plug up your ears with soft wads of cotton and measure the distance again. It is much less, isn't it?

If you are left to take care of a small child, do not let him put things such as beans or beads into his ears. If you swim under water or dive, water may collect in your ears. You may get most of it out by bending



over. Never neglect an injury to your ear. Go to your doctor, for he knows how to protect you against loss of hearing.

Discomfort in the Middle Ear

There are times when putting something into your ears makes sense. For instance, a plug of soft cotton in your ear when you are high diving or swimming under water may save you from a broken eardrum. A broken eardrum is real discomfort.

A change of air pressure against your eardrums may cause you mild discomfort for a few moments. You have had the feeling if you have ridden through a deep tunnel or traveled up or down in a high-speed elevator in a very tall building or blown your nose too hard. Do not let this kind of discomfort in your ears worry you. It usually goes away if you swallow a few times.

Swallowing causes the *Eustachian* (yoo-STAY-kee-un) *tubes* to open. These are air tubes leading from the back of the throat to an opening into the middle ear. Swallowing forces the air in the tubes up against the eardrums from the inside. This makes the pressure the same inside and outside the eardrum. It is the uneven pressure that causes your discomfort. During a bombardment soldiers are told to keep their mouths open to prevent broken eardrums which may be caused by the great, sudden blasts of pressure from the explosions. If the mouth is open, the air pressure changes in the Eustachian tubes at the same time that it changes in the outer ears.

Although the Eustachian tubes serve us well in one way, they are also paths along which germs may travel from the nose and throat into the middle ear. When this happens, you may have an earache. If you should have an earache, go to the doctor at once and follow his advice. If infection of the middle ear is not corrected, it may lead to the loss of hearing. Resolve now not to do anything to cause a loss in your hearing.

Vibrations and Waves

We know that vibrating objects produce sounds. Really, it is more correct to say that vibrating objects produce sound waves. Each vibration produces one sound wave. You are familiar with water waves. You have probably tossed a stone into a pond and watched the ripples or waves spread out from the center. How are sound waves different from water waves? First, you can see water waves but not sound waves. Second, sound waves move in all directions from the point where the sound begins. They do this in a way that is unlike a water wave but easy to show.

To show the way a sound wave moves along, the pupils in your class may place themselves, one behind the other, two feet apart in a long line. At a signal, the last pupil steps forward just far enough to push the pupil ahead of him a bit. Then he steps back to his first position. As each pupil is touched, he moves forward, pushes a bit, and steps back. This is the way a sound wave moves.

Really, it is the molecules of the gases in the air which move back and forth. Imagine that each pupil is a molecule. Each molecule moves forward when pushed until it pushes against another molecule. Now this molecule in its turn pushes against another. Once each molecule has pushed against its neighbor, it returns as the pupils did. Sound waves are a series of forward and backward movements of the molecules in the air.

Sound Vibrations You Cannot Hear

Strangely enough, we cannot hear all sounds. Scientists have found that an object must vibrate at least 16 times per second to make sound waves which we can hear. They have also found that we cannot hear sounds made by vibrations of more than 20,000 per second. With special instruments, scientists have been able to measure and photograph sounds lower and higher than the human ear can hear.

It may surprise you to learn that bats make sounds with their mouths when they fly. This is their way of avoiding whatever is in the path of their flight. The bat sends out the sound and listens for an echo. Hearing none, he knows his path is clear. Hearing one, he swerves.

If you could catch a bat and tape its mouth shut, you would see how much it depends upon the sounds it makes. These sounds are too high for us to hear. Such gagged bats in flight crash into objects and often are killed. Scientists call sounds beyond the range of our hearing *ultrasonic* (ul-truh-SON-ik) *sounds*. Bats, insects, and other animals have been using ultrasonic sounds for thousands of years. Man is just beginning to make use of sounds he cannot hear.

Ultrasonic Sonar

The science of ultrasonics is very young. It was used in World War II to locate submarines under the sea. Enemy submarines had been escaping by stopping their engines when our destroyers were near. When they lay quietly under water, they could not be found by ordinary sound detectors. To find these submarines, our navy put *sonar* (SOH-nahr) to work.

"Sonar" stands for *so*und *n*avigation *a*nd *r*anging apparatus. Sonar can find objects that are beyond the range of ordinary sighting and hearing devices. Sonar sends out sound waves which bounce back when they strike an object such as a submarine. Just as flying bats detect the presence of objects by their ultrasonic sounds, so sonar detects objects which can be identified by the pattern of the echo they send back.

Echoes

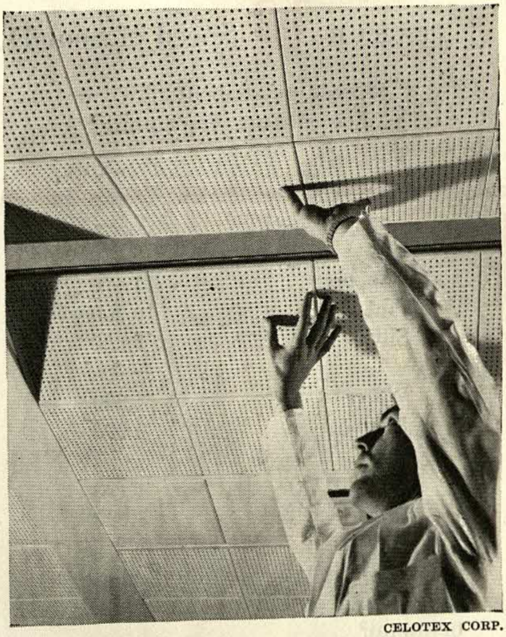
Sonar works because sound waves can bounce. You can make ordinary sounds bounce too. You call them echoes. Have you ever noticed how difficult it is to hear what is being said in some auditoriums, busy restaurants, and even some classrooms? Blame the echoes. When walls and ceilings reflect sound waves, the jumble of echoes makes a horrible din.

Echo Killing

No doubt the best way to fight echoes is to call in an *acoustics* (uh-KOO-stiks) expert. Acoustics is the science of sound. An acoustics expert is an echo killer. When he kills unwanted sounds in an auditorium, a restaurant, or a broadcasting studio, he does it by catching the sound waves before they can become echoes.

One trick of an acoustics expert is to hang soft draperies on walls and window frames. These materials absorb the sound waves. You may have noticed that your voice seems louder when carpets have been taken out of a room and curtains are down. Take out the furniture, and the sound seems still louder. The clothing and bodies of people in a room also absorb sound waves. Thus the voices of actors rehearsing a play in an empty auditorium may sound louder than when there is an audience present.

Here is another trick of the acoustics expert. He covers the walls and ceilings or both with a layer of material that is full of holes or pores. These openings break up the sound waves so that very little of the wave can echo back into your ears to annoy you (Fig. 284). You can test what these materials do by sitting for a time in a noisy room without such insulation. Then sit in a room that has acoustical materials on the ceiling or walls. You will find the insulated room is more restful. It is easier to work in it because most of the echoes have been stopped.



CELOTEX CORP.

284 The holes in this ceiling material absorb the sounds by breaking up the waves that echo and re-echo from smooth surfaces.

How Do Sounds Travel?

There is one place where you would not be bothered by echoes, or for that matter by any sounds. You may have guessed from your earlier reading that this place might be the moon. The moon has no air to carry sounds. Thus it is a place where there can be no echoes.

Air is not the only substance that can carry sound waves. You have already seen (p. 516) how the bones of your head carry sound vibrations. Put your ear against the top of your desk while someone else touches a vibrating tuning fork to a distant corner of that desk. You will hear the tone of the fork even more clearly than you did when it was held in the air near your ear. What would you

TABLE 12 Speed of Sound

(Speeds are at about 20° C., or normal room temperature)

	Feet per Second
In Solids	
Iron	16,820
Copper	11,670
Pine wood	10,900
Silver	8,550
In Liquids	
Water	4,800
Alcohol	3,890
In Gases	
Air (20° C.)	1,130
Air (0° C.)	1,090

From this table, which of these is the best carrier of sound — air, water, wood, or metal?

conclude? You would be right if you said that some solids carry sound waves better than the air does. Metals, for example, are very good carriers of sound. Can liquids such as water also carry sound?

To test whether water can carry sound, put one ear below the surface of the pond or lake the next time you go swimming. Ask someone to strike two stones together under the water. You will find that water carries sound very well. It does it better than air.

Test explosions made underwater have been picked up by instruments as far away as 3,000 miles. Table 12 shows you how fast sound travels through some common substances.

Sounds and Storms

You can use the following facts about sounds to find out how far away a thunderstorm is. You know that there are lightning flashes during a thunderstorm and that the sound of thunder always comes after the lightning. Sometimes the storm is so far away that you cannot hear the thunder. Sometimes you hear the thunder several seconds after you see the lightning. The length of time between the flash and the sound shows you about how far away the storm is. You can see the lightning almost at once because light travels about 186,000 miles per second. But the sound of thunder travels much more slowly, at about 1,100 feet per second.

Let us suppose you see the lightning. At the same instant you look at your watch. Five seconds later you hear thunder. How far away was the lightning? Since sound travels through the air at about 1,100 feet per second, in 5 seconds it went 5 × 1,100, or 5,500 feet (a little over a mile, which is 5,280 feet).

In the same way, soldiers can guess at the range of an enemy gun. They note the length of time between seeing the flash of the gun and hearing the roar of the gun's explosion. By doing the same thing you can guess at how far away not-too-distant fireworks are. If you have seen the newsreel pictures of the atomic bomb tests, you may remember that there was some time between the flash of the explosion and its roar. This proves that the person who was taking the pictures was a long distance from the exploding bomb. If he had not been, he probably would not have lived to bring back the pictures.

From experiments you have read and done, you now know the facts about sound which are given in the box on the next page. Remember that both light and sound are "waves," but are very different in speed

VIBRATIONS YOU MAKE

Man not only hears certain sounds; he makes them. The ability to produce sounds made it possible for man to develop language, one of his most powerful tools. Read the last sentence aloud. How did you make the sounds which were the words?

Your Voice

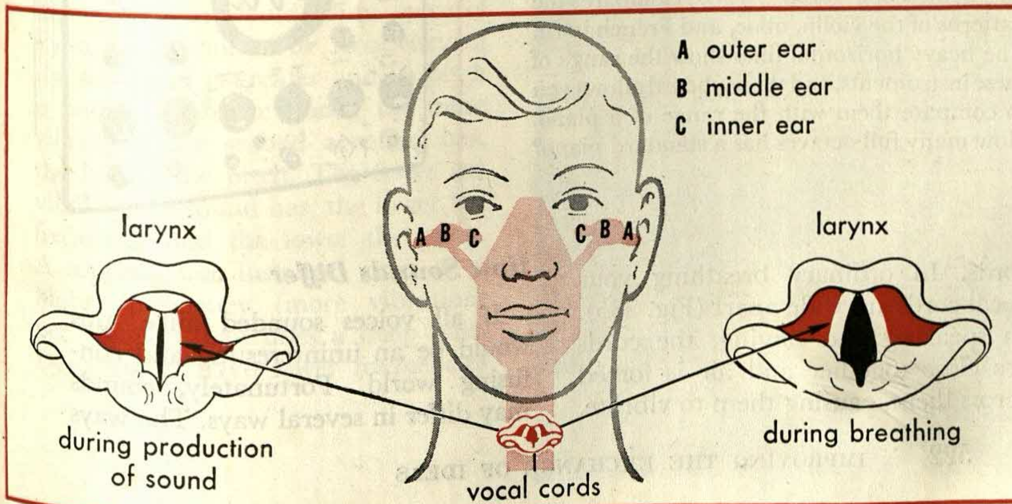
Of course you made those sounds with your voice. Therefore, there must be something in your throat that vibrates rapidly enough to produce the sounds. Human sounds are made in the voice box, also called the *larynx* (LAIR-inks). If you could look into your larynx, you would find your vocal cords; they look like flat folds or bands (Fig. 285). Put your hand lightly on the larynx just below your Adam's apple. Read the words in the next sentence aloud. Can you feel the vibrations of your vocal cords?

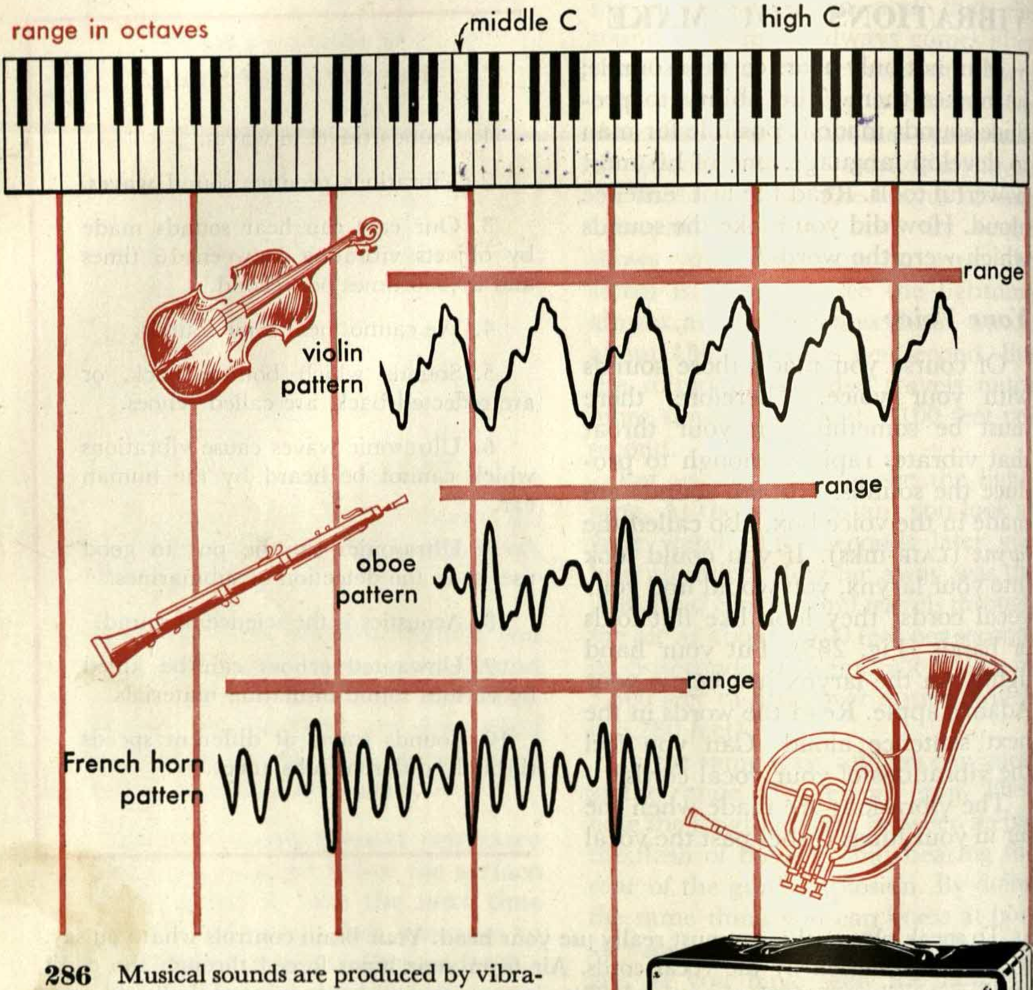
The vibrations are made when the air in your lungs rushes past the vocal

The Nature of Sound

1. Sounds travel in waves.
2. Vibrations produce sound waves.
3. Our ears can hear sounds made by objects vibrating between 16 times and 20,000 times per second.
4. We cannot hear some sounds.
5. Sounds which bounce back, or are reflected back, are called echoes.
6. Ultrasonic waves cause vibrations which cannot be heard by the human ear.
7. Ultrasonics can be put to good use, as in the detection of submarines.
8. Acoustics is the science of sound.
9. Unwanted echoes can be killed by various sound-insulating materials.
10. Sounds travel at different speeds through different substances.

285 To speak pleasantly you must really use your head. Your brain controls what you say. Your voice is produced by the vocal cords. Air from your lungs forced through the cords causes them to vibrate, producing sound. The air passages and bones in your skull add resonance. What happens to the vocal cords during breathing?





286 Musical sounds are produced by vibrations whose waves form regular patterns. These patterns may be seen with the aid of an oscilloscope (*lower right*). Compare the patterns of the violin, oboe, and French horn. The heavy horizontal lines show the range of these instruments, and the keyboard allows you to compare them with the range of a piano. How many full octaves has a standard piano?

cords. In ordinary breathing your vocal cords are wide apart (Fig. 285). In speaking and singing, the cords are close together and air is forced across them, causing them to vibrate.

How Sounds Differ

If all voices sounded alike, this would be an uninteresting and confusing world. Fortunately, sounds may differ in several ways. The ways sounds differ may be seen most clearly when they are fed into a microphone which is connected to an *oscilloscope* (os-SIL-oh-skohp). This instrument (Fig. 286) shows the pattern of sound waves as curves of light on a screen.

Suppose you were to sing *do re me fa sol la ti do* into the microphone of an oscilloscope. The waves which are caused by the sound *do* would have a certain wave pattern. If you kept singing *do* for a few moments without changing your voice in any way, you would find that all the waves one after another would look exactly alike. If you could count them, you would find that there were a certain number per second. For instance, the key of middle C on the piano sets in motion 256 sound waves per second. The number of sound waves per second is called the *frequency*, and this number tells us the *pitch* of a sound. We say that frequency determines the pitch. Let us look into the meaning of pitch and see how it depends on the frequency.

Sing the musical scale again, beginning at middle C. What is the difference between the first and the last *do?* You know that you sing up the scale to reach the second *do*. It is of a higher pitch than the first *do*. If you could see the waves of the higher *do*, you would count more of them per second. The frequency of the higher *do* is greater and its pitch is higher. In other words, the more vibrations per second a sound has, the higher the pitch. The fewer the vibrations a sound has, the lower the frequency and the lower the pitch. A soprano, for instance, sings at a higher frequency (more vibrations per second) than does a deep bass. Deep voices have lower frequencies (fewer vibrations) than do high voices. The higher the pitch, the higher the voice; the lower the pitch, the lower the voice.

Pitch and Loudness

Do not confuse pitch and loudness. Pitch depends upon the frequency of the waves. If you were to sing *do* softly, you would see on the screen of the oscilloscope a wave that is short from top to bottom (Fig. 286). If you were to sing the same *do* loudly, the waves would be higher from top to bottom. The pitch would be the same, but the height of the waves would be greater. The height of a wave is called its *amplitude* (AM-plih-tyood). The greater the amplitude, the louder the sound you will hear. On the screen of the oscilloscope the wave of *do* sung softly will be a smaller wave from top to bottom than *do* of the same pitch sung loudly.

287 Students testing the tone of a homemade musical instrument. The pattern of the sound waves it makes will be shown on the oscilloscope. Sound waves look like the ones in Fig. 286.

UNESCO "COURIER"

Quality of Sounds

Voices can differ in quality as well as in loudness and pitch. Some voices are husky; others are brassy, harsh, or soft. Musical instruments, too, have different "voices." For instance, a flute and a French horn may be used to make sounds of the same pitch and loudness, but the sounds are different in quality. This is because the instruments are of a different size and shape. Human beings also differ in the size and shape of their vocal organs. Each person uses his mouth, tongue, teeth, and vocal cords a bit differently. So even if you and your friend sing a note of the same pitch and loudness, it may not sound the same. This is because voices also differ in *resonance* (REZ-uh-n'ns).

Resonance

To demonstrate resonance, strike a tuning fork and listen to it as you hold it in your hand. Now strike it again and put the end against a door or hollow box. The sound will appear fuller the second time. The extra fullness is caused by the added vibration of the thing you rested the tuning fork against. By using a delicate instrument, you would find that the whole door or box is vibrating with the tuning fork.

Have you ever noticed the way a violin is made? The box is made so that it vibrates when the bow plays across the strings. How much a violin is worth depends a great deal upon the resonance of its box. More than two centuries ago a man named Stradivarius (strad-ih-VAIR-ee-us) made violins in Italy. Today musicians prize his violins because of the wonderful resonance of the box.

What part of you gives resonance to your voice? The way to find out is to sing out a sound such as *ah* as long as you wish. While you are singing, pinch your nose gently so that the air passages are closed a bit. Do you notice any change in the sound? Besides the air passages in your nose, mouth, and throat, which you know about, there are the *sinuses* (SY-nuh-sez). These are small caves or tubes near your nose. Have you ever noticed how different your voice sounds when you have a cold? The sinuses may fill up with fluid and change the resonance of your voice.

Extending the Sound of Your Voice

In this chapter, you have learned how you hear sounds and how you make sounds. Using the voice is the most common way people communicate with one another. The better a person can use his voice to produce sounds, the better he can make himself heard over a distance. Some great speakers and singers can be heard clearly in a building as large as an opera house without having to use mechanical or electrical aid. But even such fine voices cannot reach very far. Today most speakers use a microphone if talking in a large or noisy room. The microphone is just one part of a public-address system that was unknown fifty years ago.

Many years earlier, man had found ways to send messages quickly over distances too great for his own voice to carry. He saw that light (and sight for receiving it) were more useful for sending a message quickly across many miles. In the next chapter, you will learn how man exchanges ideas by using the speed of light.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

vibrations
eardrum
cochlea
Eustachian tubes
ultrasonics
sonar
acoustics
larynx
oscilloscope
frequency
pitch
amplitude
resonance
sinuses

1. the number of vibrations or waves per second
2. a part of the windpipe containing the vocal cords
3. the science of sounds pitched above the range of human hearing
4. a thin membrane in the ear which vibrates as sound waves strike it
5. a machine that changes sound waves into a wave that can be seen
6. the air tubes leading from the back of the mouth to the middle ears
7. the height of a sound wave
8. submarine detection and ranging apparatus using the echoes of ultrasonic sounds
9. a certain number of vibrations per second producing a distinct note or sound
10. the science dealing with sounds
11. the small canals which when filled with air add resonance to the human voice
12. the special quality of a sound caused by the vibration of nearby materials
13. a coiled part of the inner ear which helps the brain to distinguish different sounds
14. rapid forward and backward motions of sound waves

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Sound waves are made by objects that are . . . .
2. The sounds made by some animals, like bats, cannot be heard by us because these sounds are . . . .
3. Sounds usually reach our ears as . . . which travel through the . . . .
4. Sounds may be distinguished by their differences in . . . , . . . , and . . . .
5. Upon reaching our ears, sound waves set in motion a membrane called the . . . .
6. The three bones of the middle ear are the . . . , . . . , and . . . .
7. The middle ear is connected to the mouth by the . . . tubes, which open when we . . . .
8. The human voice is caused by the vibration of the . . . .
9. The vibration of the air in our sinuses adds . . . to our voice.
10. Sound waves travel more rapidly in . . . and . . . than in air.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Making a string telephone.* A string telephone is a simple device for sending a message a short distance. Punch a small hole in the center of the bottom of two cardboard cups of the kind used for ice cream or cottage cheese. Push the ends of a string or thread through these holes. Knot the ends so that the strings cannot pull out. Hold one cup to your mouth and talk while someone else holds the other cup to his ear. Be sure to hold the string stretched taut and do not let your fingers or anything else touch the string. Try different distances and see how far apart the cups can be and still work.

2. *Musical glasses.* Make a set of musical glasses or bottles. You will need at least eight of the same kind. Add different amounts of water to each bottle until you have them tuned to the scale of a piano. Then play a simple tune; use a spoon to strike the bottles or glasses.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. How far away is a cliff if a man can hear the echo of his shout two seconds after he utters it?

2. Why does an orchestra rehearsing in an empty auditorium sound louder than it does when an audience is present?

3. Why do peoples' voices sound different even though they say the same words?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Ways to Better Hearing*, Lowell Brentano, Franklin Watts, Inc., 1946. It tells how to understand lip reading, and what to do about hearing defects.

2. *Sound* by Floyd R. Watson, John Wiley & Sons, 1935. An elementary textbook on the science of sound and hearing.

3. *Hearing Aids* by Fred W. Kranz, Sonotone Corp., Elmsford, N.Y., 1939. This booklet discusses the electrical principles of modern hearing aids and how to fit them to the needs of people with different degrees of hearing loss.

A Bit of Research

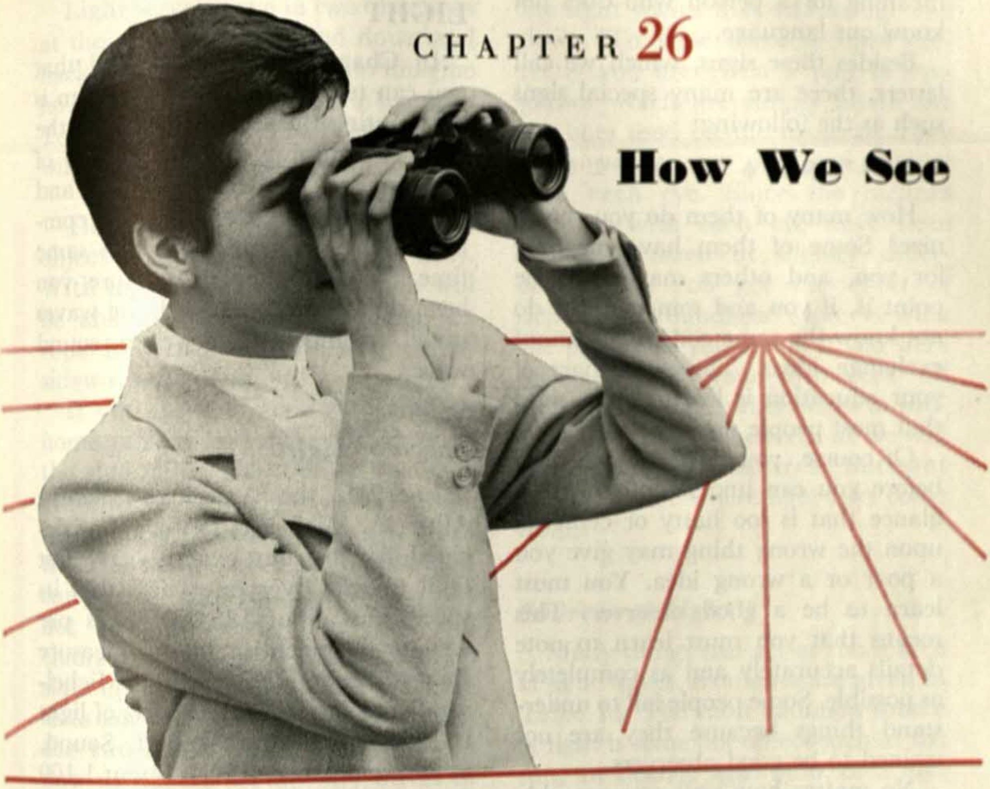
How well does your sense of hearing serve you? With your teacher's help you can find out. Ask your teacher to prepare a set of twenty or more things that make noises which you should be able to recognize. At a signal you can be blindfolded, along with the rest of your class, which has been divided into two teams as if for a spelling bee. If you guess correctly what has made the noise, you remain in, but if you guess wrong the person opposite you has to name it. Only those who drop out may remove their blindfolds. This test will not tell you how well you hear but how well you have trained yourself to use your hearing.

Careers for You

Find out how much demand there is for people who know acoustics. If your guidance teacher cannot tell you about the opportunities in this field, write to the physics department of a large university. Persons trained in acoustics are needed as *architects*, as *sound engineers*, and as *designers* of sound effects in radio and television studios.

CHAPTER 26

How We See



Close your eyes for one minute. How would it be if you could not see your way about? If you could not enjoy the world brought to you by your eyes? Close your eyes and think how important your eyes are.

Have you ever watched the referee at a football or basketball game signal to the scorekeeper what happened? He tells a great deal just by putting his hands on his hips or by holding his arms in a certain way. He is making signs that carry meaning to those who know the code he is using.

Early men, who could not understand each other's speech sounds, discovered that they could exchange ideas by using certain signs made with arms, hands, and fingers. The American Indians developed their sign language so well that they used it to carry on long conversations. Since they often wanted to leave a message somewhere along a wilderness trail, they also made marks on trees or piled up stones or twigs in certain ways.

You may think that sign language is no longer used, but even the letters on this page are a form of sign language. Look at them one by one. They are not pictures such as the Egyptians once used. They are signs that we have learned to put together in ways that have meaning for us even though they might have no meaning for a person who does not know our language.

Besides these signs, which we call letters, there are many special signs such as the following:

π # $ % & △ φ * ¶ + @ ¢ ♃ ! £

How many of them do you recognize? Some of them have meaning for you, and others may not. The point is, if you and someone else do not know the same code, you cannot exchange ideas. Therefore, part of your education is learning the signs that most people use.

Of course, you must see the signs before you can understand them. A glance that is too hasty or centered upon the wrong thing may give you a poor or a wrong idea. You must learn to be a good observer. This means that you must learn to note details accurately and as completely as possible. Some people fail to understand things because they are not trained to be good observers.

No matter how well you are able to observe, you will need enough light if you are to see the details. You cannot expect to read this page in the dark. Light is always needed when we want to gain ideas by using our eyesight. The question is, how much light do we need for different seeing tasks? Before we can find the answer to this question, we must know something about light itself.

LIGHT

In Chapter 25, you learned that you can tell how far away a storm is by counting the seconds between the flash of lightning and the sound of the thunder. The flash of light and the rumble of the thunder start coming toward you at about the same time. You see the light before you hear the sound because light waves travel so much faster than sound waves.

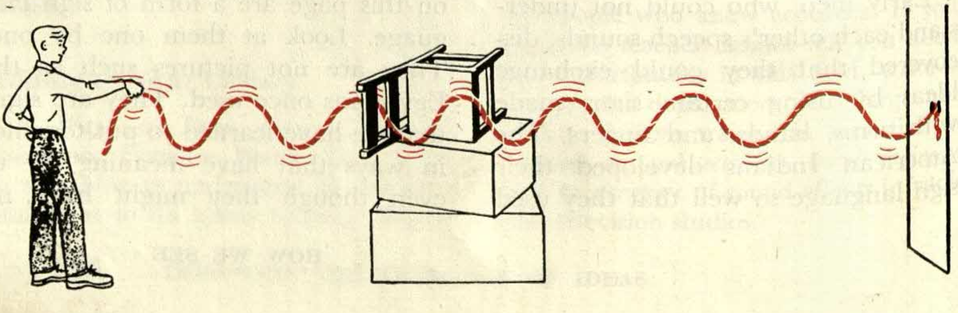
Speed of Light

In 1931, the American scientist Albert A. Michelson (MY-k'l-son) decided to find out exactly how fast light travels. Everyone knew that its speed was about 186,000 miles per second. But scientists like to measure things as exactly as possible. Michelson found that the true speed of light is 186,284 miles per second. Sound, as you remember, travels about 1,100 feet per second. Thus light travels about 900,000 times as fast as sound.

Light Waves

Light waves are like water waves in some ways, but light waves travel much faster and are much smaller. About 50,000 light waves take up no more than an inch of space. A light wave is thus 1⁄50,000 of an inch.

Light waves, represented by rope waves in the diagram, travel freely if nothing interferes.



Light waves move in two directions at the same time, up and down and back and forth. It is hard to imagine how any wave could vibrate like this. You will understand this better if you will do this simple thing.

Tie one end of a rope to a fixed object such as a post (Fig. 288). With only a little practice you will be able to send a wave along the rope in either an up-and-down or sideways direction.

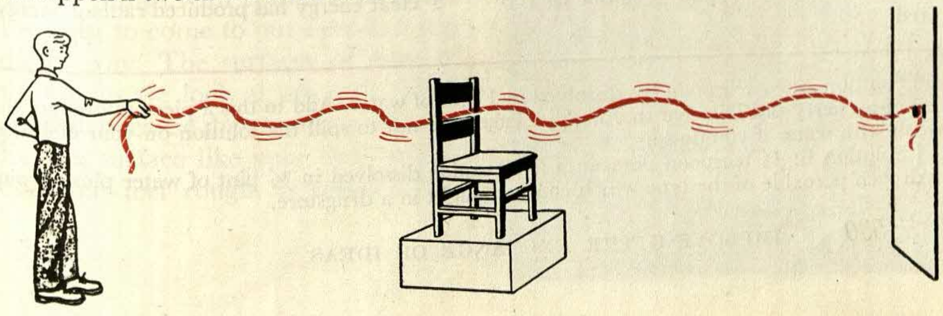
If you have a chair with slats at home, put one end of the rope through the slats (Fig. 288). When the slats are upright, you can wave the rope up and down but not sideways. Turn the chair the other way, and you can wave the rope sideways but not up and down. Now put two chairs back to back, one with the slats upright and the other with the slats sideways. Run the rope through the two chair backs. Why are you now unable to set up any waves in the rope?

Certain types of 3-D moving pictures make use of the double vibrations of light waves. Two pictures are printed on the same film. *One* picture is made with a camera fitted with a special filter that admits only the light waves vibrating *sideways*. The other picture is made with a camera lens fitted with a filter that admits only the light waves that vibrate up and down. To view these pictures correctly you are given a pair of eyeglasses which are simply filters like the ones used on the cameras. They allow you to see only one picture with each eye. Since the pictures you see with each eye have been originally taken at slightly different angles, you get the effect of depth and roundness while viewing the picture as you would if you were seeing it with your own eyes. Of course, there are other ways to produce the same 3-D effects, as we will explain later in Chapter 28. But right now let us see where light rays come from.

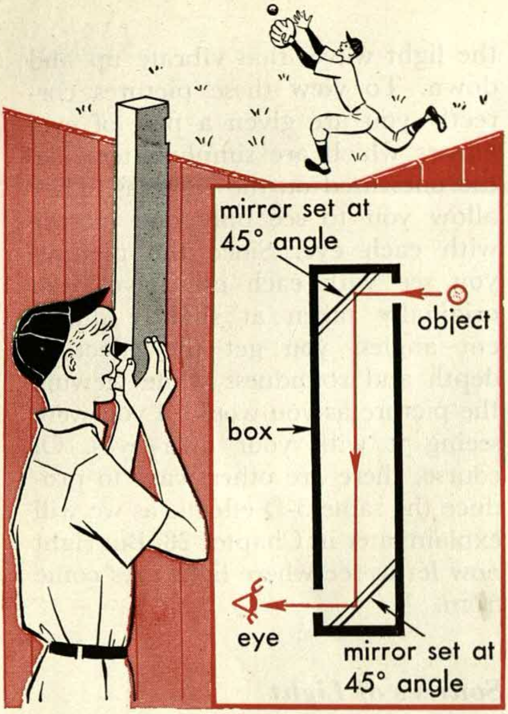
Sources of Light

Many things can act as the source of light waves. Examples are given in Table 13. The most common source of light is some hot object such as the sun, an electric light bulb, or a fire.

What are some of the ways in which signals are made with light? No doubt you can think of many useful ways. The signal flares that are planted along a railroad track behind a stalled train tell just one idea, but it is a very important one. They tell the engineer of any train coming along to stop even though he cannot see the train that is halted. Lifeboats also have signal flares that can be shot



The chair slats are like a grating. They permit waves to move in only one direction. What would happen if two chairs were used at the same time in the positions shown? Try this yourself.



289 A periscope changes the direction of light by reflecting it twice, both times through an angle of 45 degrees. *Project:* Make a periscope like the one shown here.

up like skyrockets. They tell rescue crews where to look. Now go ahead. Make your own list of light sources that may be used for sending ideas.

How Light Travels

Before you study lighting, you should know how light travels.

Try looking through a piece of rubber tubing that is about 18 inches long. See if you can make the light from a candle travel through the tube to your eye. Do you see the light? Keep trying until you do see it. Then look at the position of the tubing. You will find that you can see the light source only when the tube is perfectly straight. You may now conclude that light waves travel in straight lines. In other words, light cannot travel around a corner, and you cannot see around a corner unless something is used to make the light change its direction.

TABLE 13 Producing Light Energy

Things to Do	*Energy Change Produced*
1 Mix solution A * and solution B † by pouring them at the same time into a gallon jug half full of water. Do this in the dark.	1 Chemical energy has produced radiant (light) energy.
2 Heat a piece of magnesium ribbon in a Bunsen flame.	2 Chemical energy has produced radiant energy.
3 Turn on an electric light bulb.	3 Electrical energy has produced radiant energy.
4 Operate a friction gas lighter, a cigarette lighter without fuel, or a toy sparkler.	4 Mechanical energy has produced radiant energy.
5 Heat an iron nail until it glows cherry red.	5 Heat energy has produced radiant energy.

* Solution A: ¼ teaspoon lye dissolved in 1 pint of water. Add to this a piece of luminol the size of a cherry pit. Dissolve thoroughly. Take care not to spill the solution on your clothing. Wash with water if you do so.

† Solution B: ½ teaspoon potassium ferricyanide dissolved in ½ pint of water plus ½ pint hydrogen peroxide of the type which can be bought in a drugstore.

A periscope (Fig. 289) is one of the things that change the direction of light waves so that you can see around a corner. As a matter of fact, you are able to see most things only because they send to your eyes light that has reached them from some source. To put it another way, we see things because they are properly lighted.

LIGHTING

When light rays strike any object, they bounce off again. That is to say, they are *reflected* from the object. When this happens, the object is lighted by reflected light.

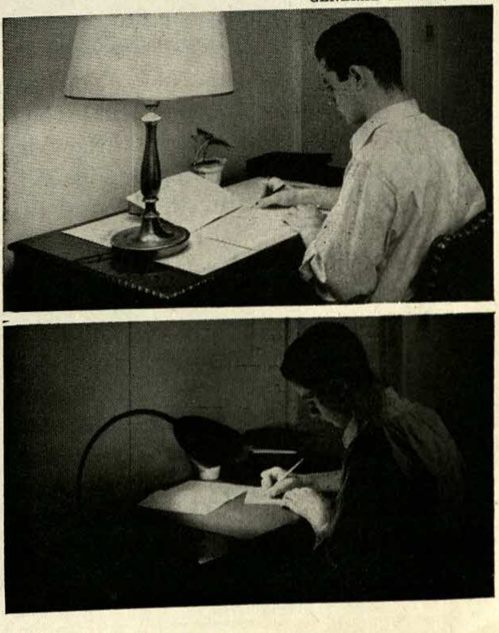
Quality of Lighting

There are two main types of reflecting surfaces, shiny and dull. A mirror is a shiny surface; it gives direct reflection. Mirrors of various kinds have been used for thousands of years for sending signals with light. The soldiers of ancient Greece used their polished shields as mirrors to send battle messages to watchmen on distant hills.

A simple periscope is a tube with a mirror at each end set at a 45-degree angle (Fig. 289). By using a periscope a watcher can see what is going on without being seen. So you see that mirrors may be used for receiving as well as for sending information.

If sunlight from a mirror shines in your eyes, you know it is blinding. To see things with comfort, we want the light to come to our eyes in a less direct way. The surfaces of most of the things we look at are dull. They are dull because they are not polished. Even a surface like your skin, which does not feel rough, is rough compared to a mirror. From a dull surface the light reflected is scattered, or *diffused*. Because diffused light is scattered in many directions, it is easy to look at anything which has a dull surface.

Even a dull surface may reflect unwanted light into your eyes. This unwanted light is called *glare*. When you are reading or writing, you can avoid glare by placing your work so that light shines on it properly. Seat yourself in different positions as you read this book and note in which position there is the least glare. If you are right-handed, we think you will find the most comfort when you read or write if the light comes over your left shoulder. Try out different combinations of light position, posture, and work position until you find the one that seems best for you. Compare your arrangement with that of the student in Fig. 290.



290 *Top*, proper lighting of a student's desk. *Bottom*, the student has made his seeing task difficult. His work area is too bright, and the room too dark.

GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

BAUSCH & LOMB OPTICAL CO.

291 Sir Isaac Newton produced a visible band of colors (a spectrum) by letting a ray of sunlight pass through a three-sided glass prism. Note how it spreads and bends the ray.

Breaking up White Light

Up to now, we have been talking about light as if it were all one color — white. From your daily experience, you know that there are many different colors. How are they made?

Our explanation begins with an experiment done by the famous English scientist, Sir Isaac Newton, at Trinity College in 1666. You can repeat the main part of this experiment simply by holding a three-sided glass prism in a ray of light (Fig. 291).

Newton, by doing this, found that a ray of white light is not just one kind of light. It is really made up of different kinds of light waves, six of which can be clearly seen by your eye as different colors. Each of these colors has a different wave length. Again remember that light travels in a straight line. When light enters a glass prism, the direction of the wave is changed and the light ray is bent. Each wave length is bent differently. Thus the colors which are mixed together in white light are separated by the prism. The series of colors which appears is called a *spectrum*. In a spectrum the light waves are arranged from the shortest (violet) to the longest (red) (p. 14 of pictorial introduction to the book). Light waves which make red are bent the least by a glass prism. Slightly shorter waves make orange; then come yellow, green, blue, and violet. The waves that make violet are the shortest in the visible spectrum, that is, in the spectrum we can see.

We speak of the visible spectrum to distinguish it from the invisible rays which are also a part of the spectrum of white light. Among the invisible rays are infrared (longer than red) and ultraviolet (shorter than violet). These rays are also found in sunlight.

The color of something seen by reflected light depends in part upon the kind of light rays it reflects. A piece of red cloth looks red because it reflects more waves of red than of any other color. You see red because most of the other color waves are absorbed by the cloth. A green blotter pad looks green because it reflects green light waves and absorbs all the other colors. A sheet of white paper reflects nearly all the light rays. Thus it appears to have the color of white when white light is shining on it and red if only red light is shining on it. On the other hand, a sheet of black paper absorbs nearly all the rays of light. Black is not a color but the absence of color. Grays are made by mixing black and white. Have you ever noticed how many shades of gray there are? How can you account for this?

Rules for Good Lighting

1. Judge a lamp by the way its light is directed rather than by its brightness.

2. Is the light steady or flickering? The light should be steady, and the task should also be held steady.

3. Avoid glare caused by unshaded lamps and by the reflection of light directly into the eyes.

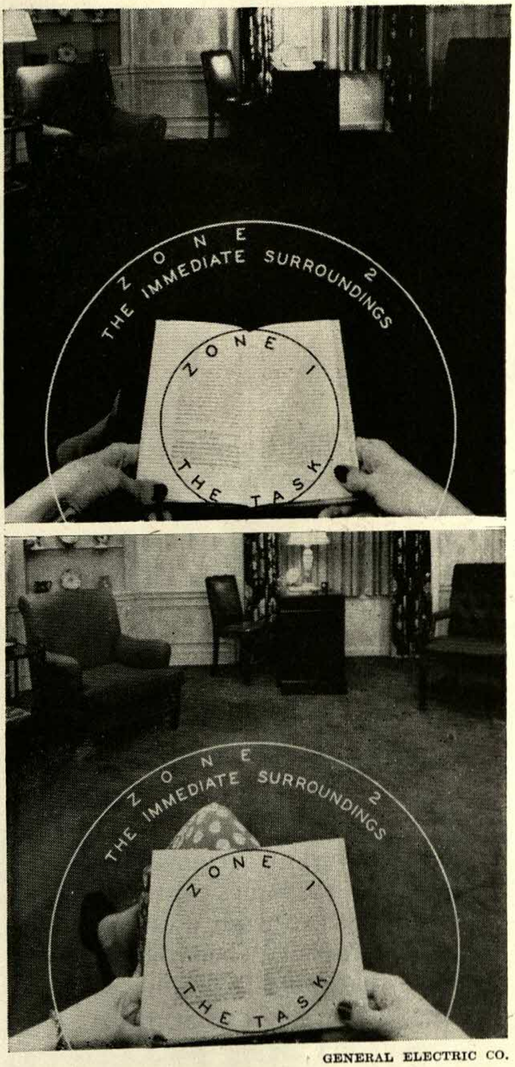
4. Use light where it is needed most, but also have enough general lighting so that the zones around your seeing task are neither too bright nor too dark.

5. Light for reading and writing should come over one side or shoulder. In this position your head and hands will not cast shadows over your book or paper; glare will be reduced.

6. Examine your light fixtures and lamps. Dirt should be cleaned from bulbs, globes, and reflectors. Any blackened electric light bulbs should be replaced.

Comfortable Seeing Conditions

Seeing comfort depends in part upon the amount of light on the work surface. It also depends upon the brightness of the zone around your seeing task. Figure 292 shows you the three zones that affect your seeing comfort when you are reading a book. If you have no light in the room except the one that is lighting your book, zones 2 and 3 may be so far below zone 1 in their brightness that you will feel tired or uncomfortable within a short time. If you try to read while facing a much brighter zone, you will also be displeased. Zone 3 should not be more than 10 times as bright as nor less than 1/10 the brightness of zone 1. Zone 2 should be about the same brightness as zone 1.



GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

292 Lighting the area around a seeing task is just as important as lighting the task itself. *Above,* zone 2 and the zone beyond (zone 3) are too dark. *Below,* proper lighting of all zones reduces eyestrain.

How to Get Proper Home Lighting

Proper lighting can be judged best by the beauty and comfort of the surroundings. If the room is full of heavy, ugly shadows, or if the people in it suffer from headaches and eyestrain (Fig. 292), the room is not properly lighted. You can use the general rules shown in the box as a guide to judging your home lighting.

These are good rules to follow if you want your eyes to do their best work in comfort. You will understand the importance of eye comfort all the more after you learn how your eyes use light for seeing.

SEEING

Sight is light plus the help of the eye and the brain. Our eyes are truly our windows to the world. They are so wonderful and precious that everyone should know their structure and use.

An eye contains the parts for seeing: the eyeball, the socket in which the eyeball moves, and the muscles and nerves that move the eyeball. Since the eye is a living part of the body, it has in it the means of staying alive and useful. It has blood vessels to bring food and remove cell wastes, an eyelid and lashes to protect it, and tear glands to wash away dust and to lubricate it. Then there are the parts that make it possible for us to see. Do you know what they are?

From Light to Sight

Let us follow a ray of light as it reflects from this page and enters your eye. First, the ray, along with many others just like it, goes through a transparent shield called the *cornea* (KOR-nee-uh) (Fig. 293). A material is transparent if you can see through it. The surface of the cornea is kept clean by the regular blinking of your eyelid. The cleaning fluid is supplied by your tear glands.

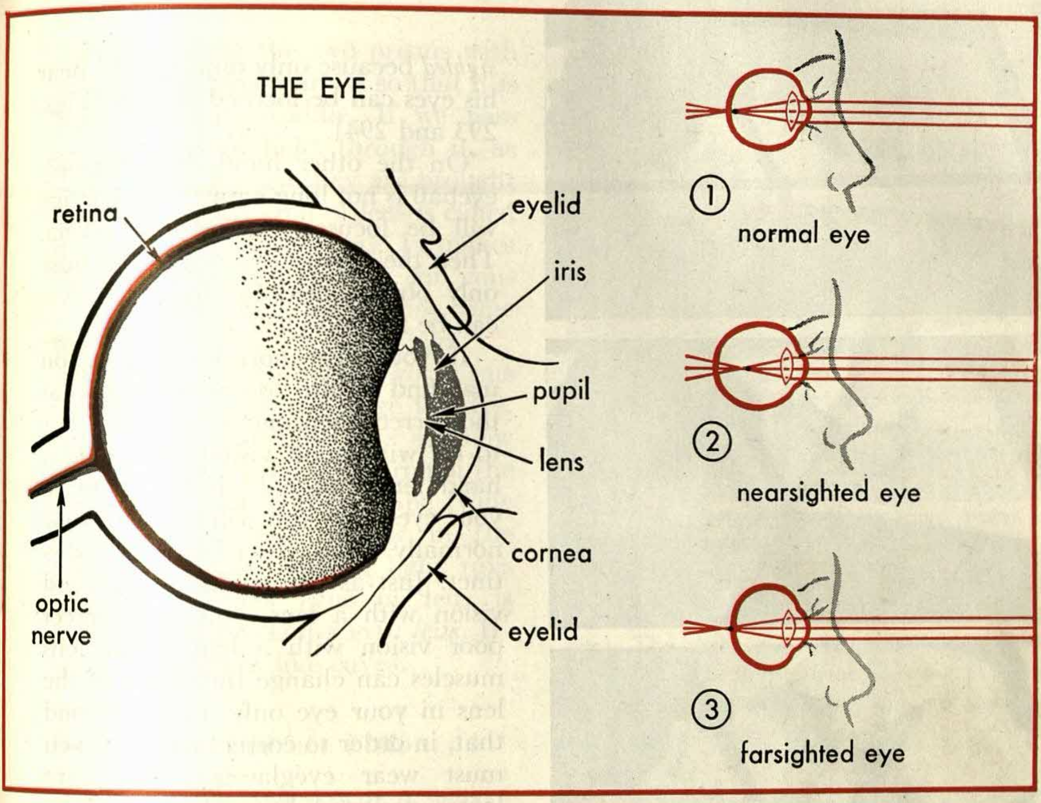
From the cornea, the ray goes through an opening in your eyeball called the *pupil*. The pupil is a hole in a doughnut-shaped screen of muscle tissue called the *iris* (EYE-riss). The iris is usually blue, brown, gray, or some shade of these colors.

Look at your own pupils in a mirror. Are they large or small? Make the room as dark as possible. Wait a minute. Then turn on a dim light and again look at your eyes. The pupils will be larger. The muscle in the iris makes the pupil smaller in bright light and larger in darkness. Thus your eyes are protected from light that is too strong.

The light ray passing through the pupil enters the *lens* of your eye. The lens focuses the light ray upon the *retina* (RET-ih-nuh). The retina is made up of a great number of cells that are sensitive to light. These cells have two shapes which look something like rods and cones. These cells are sensitive not just to light but to the different wave lengths of light. Thus they permit us to see things in their proper colors. Nerves join all these cells of the retina to a large nerve, the *optic nerve* which enters your brain. It is your brain that interprets the meaning of the things you see. We see with our brain as well as with our eyes.

Some Common Defects of the Eye

If the eye sees poorly, the brain may give you an incorrect idea. Often the mistakes you make are caused by poor eyesight which plays tricks upon your brain. The eye is such a delicate organ that a number of things may go wrong with it. As soon as you know something is wrong with your eyes, you should go to an eye doctor for



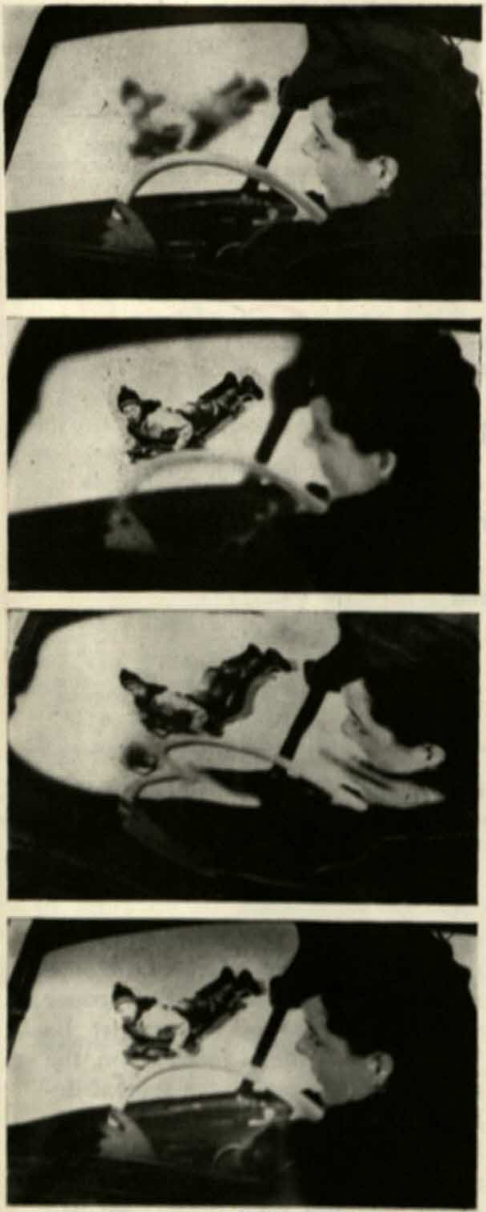
293 Light rays enter the human eye through the opening in the iris called the pupil. Then, if the eye is normal (*1*), the lens focuses the rays on the retina. If the eye is nearsighted (*2*) or farsighted (*3*), the rays are not focused sharply on the retina.

advice. If you neglect eye trouble, it may get worse. What are some of the things that can go wrong with your eyes?

An eyelash or a large speck of dust may fall upon your cornea and get under your eyelid. This is a minor trouble, but it can cause you a good deal of annoyance. Do not try to remove it with a sharp or pointed instrument or fingernail, and do not rub your eye. The speck can usually be removed by another person with a bit of moist cotton. If the object is stuck to or embedded in the lid or cornea, a doctor should remove it.

More serious are the faults that cause poor vision. What are they? It should be clear that a defect in any one of the several parts of the eye may cause faulty vision. For proper vision, the rays of light must be brought to a sharp focus upon the retina. An eye may have several defects at the same time which may balance each other to some extent or simply make double trouble. Here, as we mention each defect, we will assume it is the only defect and that the other parts of the eye are perfect.

One cause of faulty vision may be an eyeball of the wrong length from front to back. If the eyeball is too long, the image will be focused in front of the retina and, of course, will be indistinct. Such a person is *near-*



BETTER VISION INSTITUTE, INC.

294 *Top to bottom,* to a nearsighted passenger in the back seat the boy seems indistinct, the driver clear; to a farsighted passenger, the boy seems clear, the driver less clear; to a passenger with astigmatism, the whole scene is indistinct; but to a passenger with normal or corrected vision, the whole scene is clear.

sighted because only objects held near his eyes can be focused clearly (Figs. 293 and 294).

On the other hand, if a person's eyeball is not long enough, the image will be focused behind the retina. Then the person is *farsighted* because only objects held far from his eyes can be focused clearly.

If you have normal vision, you may find it hard to understand what the correct focusing of light rays has to do with good vision. But take a hand lens and hold it too close to your eyes, and you will see how your normally clear vision becomes indistinct. Just as you spoiled your good vision with a lens, you can correct poor vision with a lens. Your lens muscles can change the shape of the lens in your eye only a bit. Beyond that, in order to correct a defect, you must wear eyeglasses, which are lenses designed by a doctor. Many cases of poor vision are caused not by eyeballs of the wrong length but by lenses of the wrong kind. The eyeglasses your friend is wearing may help you to see better if you borrow them, but they will probably make your vision worse. Eyeglasses must be made to order for you. To understand this, you will need to know how lenses bend rays of light.

How Lenses Bend Light Rays

When you did Newton's spectrum experiment (p. 532), you saw how a glass prism bends light rays. Notice what happens when you place two glass prisms base to base and shoot a beam of light through them. The rays bend so that they come together a short distance beyond the prisms. This point where the rays meet is called the *focus*.

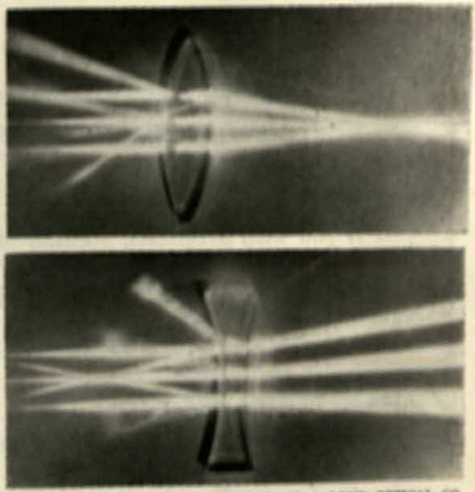
Now replace the two prisms with one piece of glass curved so that it is thickest at its middle. If we pass several rays of light through it, as in Fig. 295, we see they are brought to a focus. This kind of lens is called a *convex* (KON-veks) *lens*. It makes light rays come together, or converge. The point at which they come together is the focus of the lens.

Suppose you turn the two prisms so that they now rest edge to edge. Notice that the light rays are now spread apart as they go through the glass. A lens of similar shape (wide at the edges and narrow in the middle) will also spread light rays (Fig. 295). This type of lens is called a *concave* (kon-KAYV) *lens*. Its sides look hollow like caves.

How Lenses Correct Vision

The lens of your eye is a convex lens. It is elastic. This means that it can change its shape slightly and become more convex or less convex, but it cannot become concave. In this way, you can focus sharply upon things that are a few inches away from your eye and on things that are miles away. Try focusing your glance on objects at different distances. You will notice that you can change your focus instantly. The lens in your eye changes quickly (a doctor would say it *accommodates*) to allow you to see things both near and far.

Wonderful as they are, especially when you are young, the lenses of your eyes cannot change enough to overcome extreme faults in your vision. Therefore, we must aid them by wearing eyeglasses of the right kind. What kind is the right kind? Only a doctor can tell exactly, because fitting glasses requires training.



BAUSCH & LOMB OPTICAL CO.

295 Light rays coming from the left are brought together by the convex lens (*top*) and spread apart by the concave lens (*bottom*). The extra rays are caused by reflections from the lens surface. *Project:* If you have lenses, note how they change any object you examine.

You will remember that a farsighted person's eyeball is not long enough (Figs. 293 and 294). We can bring the rays of light to a focus on his retina by moving the point of focus nearer to the lens (that is, toward the front of the eyeball). He needs a convex lens in his eyeglasses.

What about the nearsighted person? His eyeball is too long. We must move the focal point away from the lens (back to the retina). This can be done by spreading the light rays a bit with a concave lens. If you would like to see the effects of these lenses upon your own vision, borrow eyeglasses from your friends. Are the lenses convex or concave?

You may have seen older people who need two pairs of eyeglasses, one for reading and close work and one for distance. Or they may wear *bifocal* (by-FOH-k'l) eyeglasses combin-

Good Conditions for Reading

1. Do you sit straight while reading?
2. Do you have enough light to give you good seeing conditions?
3. Does the light come from the right direction?
4. If you wear eyeglasses, are they of the right kind? Do you keep them clean?
5. Do you have your eyes examined regularly?

ing two lenses in one piece of glass. These people need two lenses because their own lenses have lost their *elasticity* (ee-las-TISS-ih-tee). Their lenses are no longer able to accommodate well enough to allow them to see clearly objects both far and near. Ask a person who wears bifocals to show you his eyeglasses and compare them with ordinary eyeglasses.

How Well Do You Use Your Eyes?

Have you had your eyes tested lately? The most common test uses the Snellen Eye Charts with letters of different sizes. The test may show that you have normal vision, but this does not necessarily mean that you use your eyes well.

There is only a certain amount of help that other people can give you. After that you are on your own.

Have you ever gone on a field trip with a trained woodsman? Have you noticed how he sees animals and plants, tracks and signs that you have missed? You may wonder how he does it, and yet his eyesight may be no better than yours. The difference is that he has trained himself to use his eyesight to see things that other people overlook. One way to increase your ability to see things is to let your glance linger longer on things. Another trick is to think about what you see. Notice small details. Thus you become not only a person who sees but one who observes.

A scientist must be a good observer. He must be able to describe what he sees. This means being able to put into words a description of what he has seen. To observe means to see well but also to attach meaning to what you see. How accurate an observer are you?

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

reflected light
spectrum
cornea
pupil
iris
retina
optic nerve
farsighted
nearsighted
focus
convex lens
concave lens
accommodation

1. the path by which light rays seen by the eye are carried to the brain
2. the ability of the eye to focus upon objects at different distances
3. an arrangement of light rays according to their wave lengths
4. a curved piece of glass which makes light rays spread apart
5. a curved piece of glass which makes light rays come together at a focus
6. a person whose eye focuses an image sharply in front of the retina and who for this reason can see well only those objects that are held close to his eyes
7. an opening in the eye through which light rays may enter
8. a person whose eye focuses an image sharply behind the retina and who for this reason can see well only those objects that are held farther away from his eyes
9. light that has "bounced" from some surface after leaving its original source
10. the inner lining of the eyeball which contains light-sensitive cells made up of rods and cones
11. the doughnut-shaped screen of the eye which surrounds the pupil and thus controls the amount of light that may enter the eye
12. the transparent covering in front of the pupil and iris of the eye
13. the point at which light rays are brought together (or seem to be brought together) by a lens

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Light is a form of . . . that travels in . . . lines.
2. The speed of light is about . . . miles per second.
3. The longest visible light rays are . . . in color, and the shortest are . . . in color.
4. Light rays entering the eye are bent by . . . and are focused on the . . . when vision is normal.
5. Lighting of good quality is free from . . . and . . . .
6. . . . a lamp is one way to prevent glare.
7. A . . . lens is used to correct the defect of farsightedness.
8. A . . . lens is used to correct the defect of nearsightedness.
9. When you are writing, the light should come . . . . In this way glare and . . . on your work will be avoided.

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Experimenting with lenses.* The *focal length* of a convex lens is the distance from the lens to the image it forms. Hold several lenses, one at a time, near a piece of white paper pinned to the wall, moving the lens forward or back until a sharp picture (image) appears. Now measure the distance from the lens to the wall. Compare the sizes of the images made by lenses of different focal length.

2. *Measuring amount of light.* Borrow a light meter from your science teacher

and then measure the strength of the light in various parts of your home. Test with the light bulbs you would regularly use and then make more tests, using larger or smaller bulbs until you get the amount of illumination that is (*a*) most comfortable and (*b*) recommended in the first reference in "Adding to Your Library," below. Compare all these figures and draw some conclusions about the lighting in your home. Have you any changes to recommend?

3. *Testing your eyesight.* If the giving of eye tests is not a regular part of your school program, get an eye chart and have your teacher test the eyes of all the pupils in your class. If you do not have eyeglasses and this test shows you need them, see your eye doctor as soon as possible. Even if you have eyeglasses, this test may show that you need new glasses or even that you no longer need them. But do not stop wearing them without getting permission from your doctor.

4. *Dissecting an eye.* The eye of a steer is similar in many ways to a human eye. Get one from your butcher. Cut it open with a thin, sharp knife. If you use a razor blade, mount it in a holder so you will not cut your fingers. Try to identify each part of the eye. Remove the lens.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. How can you get the best lighting for reading, studying, or some other seeing task?

2. Why may a larger quantity of light alone not give you comfortable seeing conditions?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Recommended Practice for Residence Lighting*, prepared by a committee of the Illuminating Engineering Society, 1860 Broadway, New York (23), N.Y., 1953. This is an authoritative bulletin with excellent tables and charts showing what kind of lighting should be found in every room of your house. It is technical but not too hard to understand.

2. *Contemporary Lighting* by a committee of the Illuminating Engineering Society (address above), 1950. If you want to be a good interior decorator (see "Careers for You"), you will want to read this bulletin on how to use lighting in home decoration.

3. *Eyes, Our Windows to the World*, published by Better Light Better Sight Bureau, is a simple but well-illustrated free bulletin which may be obtained from the Bureau at 420 Lexington Ave., New York (17), N.Y.

4. *Signaling*, a Merit Badge Handbook, Boy Scouts of America, 2 Park Ave., New York (16), N.Y. This is a booklet that will help you to make use of light for the exchange of ideas.

A Bit of Research

Call upon the local public service which supplies electricity to your home. Ask for information about the correct use of lighting and then make a survey of the lighting conditions in your home or school. You may be able to bring about better seeing conditions. Sometimes it isn't the lights but the seats in a room that need to be adjusted for better seeing comfort. Sometimes more windows or new lampshades are needed. Stop taking your seeing conditions for granted. Find out how good or bad they really are.

Careers for You

A college professor told us not long ago that there is a great field for young people in the science of optics. This is the study of the use and control of light. You may find it will be interesting for you to study optics. Ask your guidance teacher for a list of the jobs that make use of light in fields of *interior decoration*, *signaling*, *staging*, and *advertising*.

CHAPTER 27

Wire and Wireless

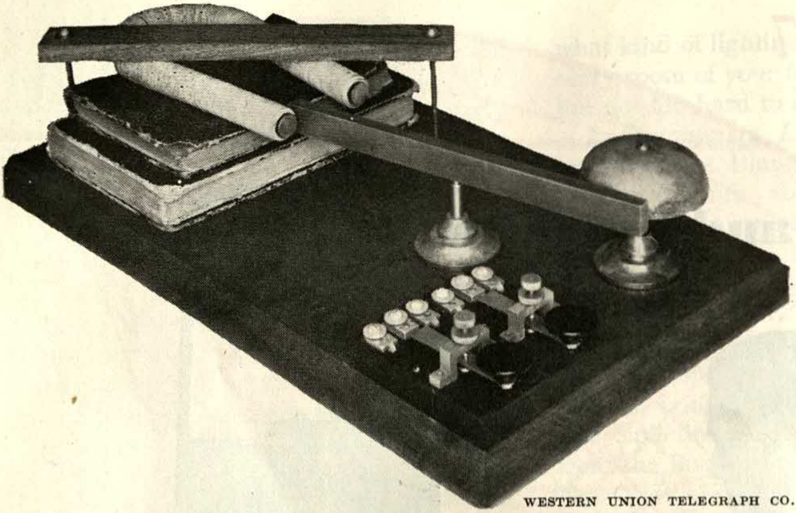
"What hath God wrought?" the first words by telegraph. "Come, here, Mr. Watson, I want you," the first words by telephone. The letter *s* (· · · in code) the first signal by wireless. What wonderful advances followed!

To exchange ideas — that is, to get in touch with others quickly — has always been a goal for man. The jungle tom-toms, the smoke signals of the North American Indians, the beacon fires of people in olden times, the semaphore telegraphs of Napoleon's day, and the Pony Express were all invented and used to speed up communication between men.

As early as 1730 the Englishmen Stephen Gray and Granville Wheeler sent electricity through 886 feet of wire. Looking back, you would think that in another six years or so someone would have invented a simple, practical telegraph. Why then did it take 106 years?

Part of the answer is that in those days scientists did not know of each other's work as quickly as they do now. Another reason is that scientific ideas can be put to work only after they have been tested in a laboratory. Many years of experimentation were needed to solve the problems of sending messages by electricity. You will see how some of these problems were solved as you read this chapter.

The three problems that must be



WESTERN UNION TELEGRAPH CO.

296 Joseph Henry invented this electric gong. Note the moving armature and the electromagnet. Compare this with a modern electric gong, such as the kind used in schools.

solved by anyone who wishes to use electricity for sending messages, or — as we shall call it — for communication, are:

1. What kind of sender or transmitter is needed?
2. What kind of receiver is needed?
3. What is to carry the signal from sender to receiver?

The telegraph, the telephone, radio, and television each make use of different answers to these three main problems.

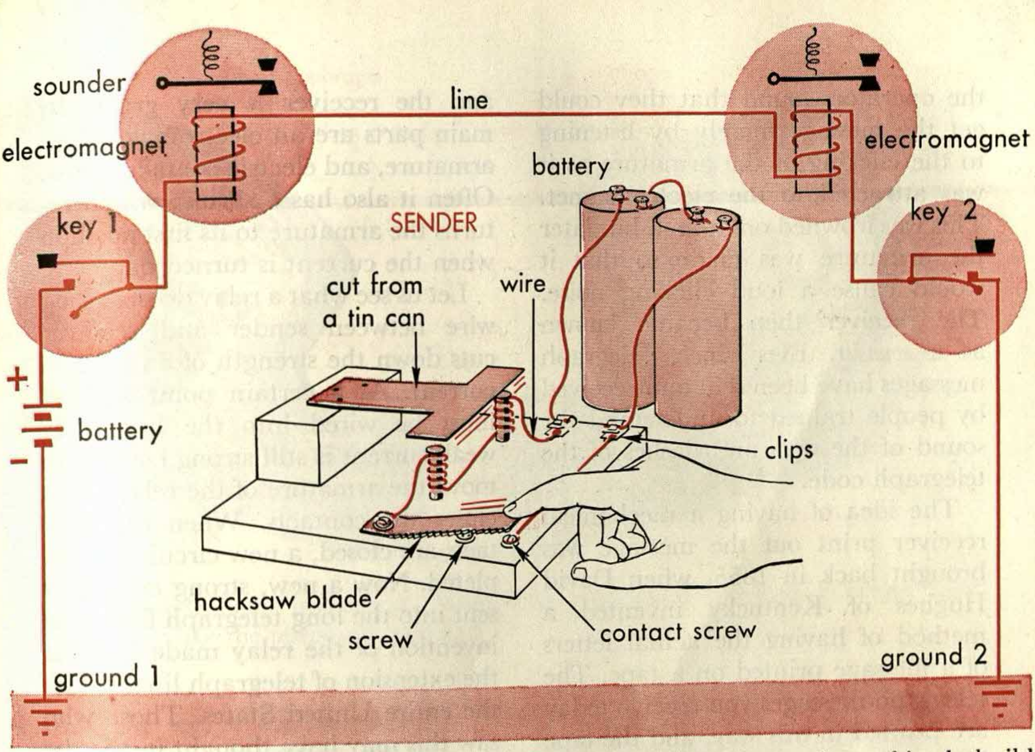
THE TELEGRAPH

The success of Gray and Wheeler in 1730 suggested the first answer to question 3. It was to send energy — electricity — along a wire connecting the sender and receiver. The thing to remember is that in those days wire was not made as it is today. A person wanting to use some for conducting electricity first had to find a way to insulate it, that is, to keep the electricity from running wild. Even a hundred years later Joseph Henry had to wind silk by hand around the wire he wanted to use to make an electromagnet (Fig. 296).

Another thing to remember is that in the 1700's and early 1800's there were no power stations to make electricity as we have today. The early workers with electricity had to use static electricity (p. 456). Later they had to use current from chemical cells (pp. 459–460). Since you have already learned about the discovery of electromagnets, you will find it easy to understand how the invention of the electric gong led to the first telegraph.

Joseph Henry, an American scientist teaching at the College of New Jersey (now Princeton University), first produced a very simple electric bell. He put together an electromagnet, a swinging iron bar, and a bell in a way that made it possible to ring the bell (Fig. 296). Of course he had to send an electric current through the wires of the electromagnet. It remained for Samuel F. B. Morse, an American portrait painter, to use Henry's invention.

Morse learned about the invention of the electric bell and went on to invent the first practical telegraph. The main parts of a simple telegraph are: (1) a key (which is just a special

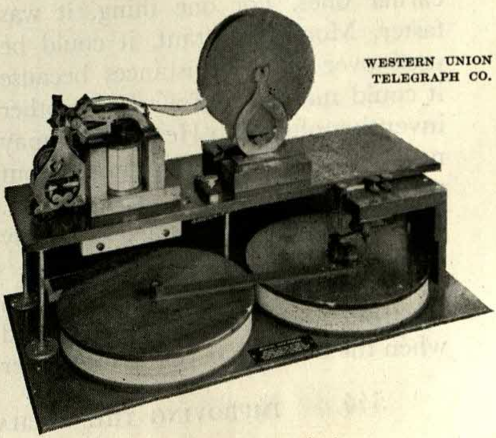


297 A homemade telegraph key and sounder (*center*). *Project:* With one of your friends, build two similar sets and connect them as shown in the wiring diagram. All the parts needed are easy to get. If your sets are connected as shown, you will be able to exchange code signals. You will need to hold your key down to receive messages. Why?

kind of switch to turn the flow of the electric current on and off); (2) a source of current (one or two dry cells will do); (3) wire (to carry the current from the sender to the receiver); and (4) a receiver. The simplest receiver need have only two parts, an electromagnet and a moving *armature*. An armature, you remember from your reading in Unit 7, is a piece of metal that is set so that it can move back and forth. Being made of iron, it is attracted to the electromagnet when the current is turned on. When the current is turned off, a spring pulls the armature back to its first position. It should not be hard for you to make your own telegraph set (Fig. 297).

Morse's first telegraph made marks on a moving roll of paper (Fig. 298). The famous first message sent by Morse in 1844 said in a code that Morse invented, "What hath God wrought?" The message was received as a series of dots and dashes. Soon

298 In 1844, Morse was using this kind of receiver. Operators soon learned to listen to the clicks and no longer needed the tape.



WESTERN UNION
TELEGRAPH CO.

the operators found that they could get the message merely by listening to the clicking of the armature as it was attracted to the electromagnet. This was frowned on at first, but later the armature was made so that it would cause a loud clicking noise. The receiver then became known as a *sounder*. Ever since, telegraph messages have been sent and received by people trained to understand the sound of the dots and dashes of the telegraph code.

The idea of having a mechanical receiver print out the message was brought back in 1855, when David Hughes of Kentucky invented a method of having the actual letters of a message printed on a tape. The telegraph messages you receive today are printed in this way, and the tape is pasted to a message blank. It is not hard to train an operator to receive messages of this kind. Of course, the telegraph now in use differs as much from the one invented by Hughes as a modern typewriter differs from one your grandfather may have used.

The Telegraph Lines Grow Longer

You may wonder why Morse's telegraph was so much better than earlier ones. For one thing, it was faster. More important, it could be used over greater distances because it could make use of a *relay*, another invention of Joseph Henry. You may never invent a better telegraph, but you should know how a relay works. It is an important part of many pieces of electrical equipment.

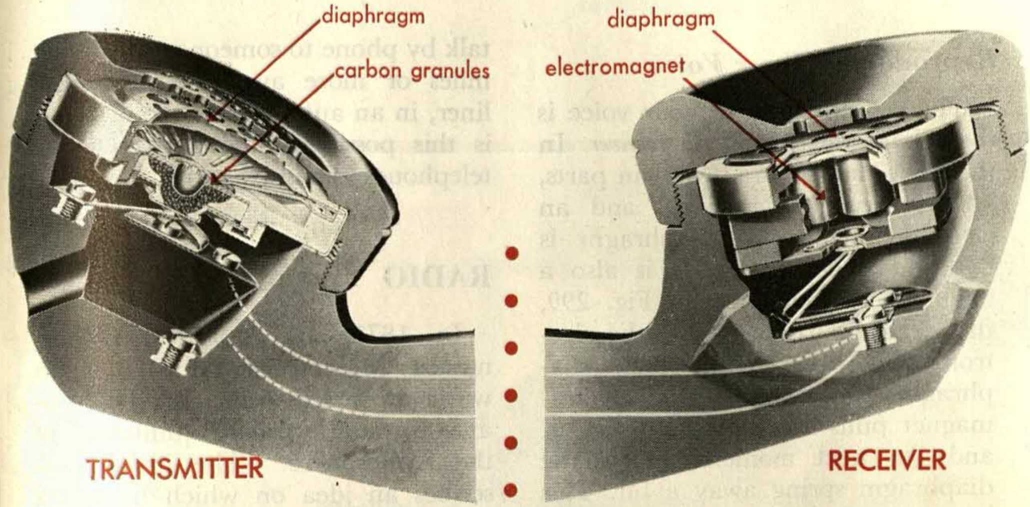
A relay may rightly be called an electromagnetic switch. It is needed when the distance between the sender and the receiver is very great. Its main parts are an electromagnet, an armature, and electric contact points. Often it also has a spring, which returns the armature to its first position when the current is turned off.

Let us see what a relay does. A long wire between sender and receiver cuts down the strength of an electric current. At a certain point a relay must be wired into the line. The weak current is still strong enough to move the armature of the relay. This closes the contacts. When the contacts are closed, a new circuit is completed. Now a new, strong current is sent into the long telegraph line. The invention of the relay made possible the extension of telegraph lines across the entire United States. Those who saw this may have thought it was the last word in communication. Actually, it was only the beginning.

Now it is possible to send 288 messages over a single pair of wires at the same time. Telefax is another new development. With this invention, a telegram, picture, drawing, or letter is put into a slot and sent as a picture almost as in television. In addition to this, the telegram may be read to you over the telephone, an instrument that was not invented until after the first telegraph made by Morse had been in use for over thirty years.

THE TELEPHONE

Perhaps you have never thought of your telephone as a talking telegraph, but Alexander Graham Bell thought so. The title on his application for a patent on his first telephone was "Telegraphy" (teh-LEG-ruh-fee).



299 A modern telephone instrument. What does each labeled part do? Which part operates somewhat like the telegraph receiver?

As you will see, a telephone is in some ways like a telegraph. It uses wires to connect the sender and the receiver. It uses an electric current, and it uses electromagnets. It is an instrument with almost 500 parts and many more pieces of equipment in central stations and repeater stations. But the way your telephone works is not hard to understand.

At the Sound of Your Voice

The part of your telephone that you speak into is called the *transmitter* (Fig. 299). The transmitter helps to change the sound waves made by your voice into a flow of electric current to match the sound of your voice. This is done by having the electricity flow through a small box which has tiny grains of carbon in it. When these grains of carbon are pressed together more tightly, more electricity can flow through them. When they are less tightly pressed together, less electricity can flow through them.

The top of the box holding the carbon grains is a lightweight cone of metal about two inches in diameter. It is called a *diaphragm* (DY-uh-fram). This diaphragm is just inside the top of the transmitter. As you talk, the sound waves push against the diaphragm, which pushes against the grains of carbon. Since your voice box sends out strong and weak vibrations, you can see that the diaphragm will vibrate strongly or weakly. Therefore, the current sent through the box of tiny grains of carbon will be stronger or weaker, depending on the vibrations of the diaphragm. Thus the sound of your voice controls the flow of electricity. The different sounds you make with your voice cause differences in the way the carbon grains are packed together. If you were to read this sentence into a telephone, there would be many changes as each word was read.

Now all that is needed is a receiver that can change the changing electric current back into sound waves like those made by your voice.

Reproducing Your Voice

The reproduction of your voice is the job of the telephone *receiver*. In the receiver there are two main parts, another metal diaphragm and an electromagnet. This diaphragm is flat and bends easily. It is also a magnet. As you notice in Fig. 299, the electric current reaches the electromagnet just below the metal diaphragm. One moment the electromagnet pulls the diaphragm closer, and the next moment it lets the diaphragm spring away a bit. This causes the diaphragm to vibrate just the way your vocal cords vibrated as you spoke into the transmitter.

Since your voice made the first sound waves, it can be said that the receiver is reproducing your voice. This is done so well by modern telephone receivers that the person listening not only hears a voice but he is able to know that it is *your* voice.

Has the sound of your voice traveled over the wires? No. It has only been reproduced. Your voice merely changes the electric current. Thus the wires carry what scientists call a changed or modified electric current. The great success of the telephone led inventors to look for other ways to communicate by means of modified electric currents.

To speak by telephone is no doubt the most commonly used way of exchanging ideas quickly when people are at places which can be joined by wires. Soon wires will carry telephone messages between North America and Europe. It is not practical to link a ship at sea by telephone line to a place on shore, nor is it possible to connect telephone lines to fast-moving automobiles or trains. However, you can pick up your telephone and talk by phone to someone a thousand miles or more away on an ocean liner, in an auto, or on a train. How is this possible? The answer is by telephones joined by radio.

RADIO

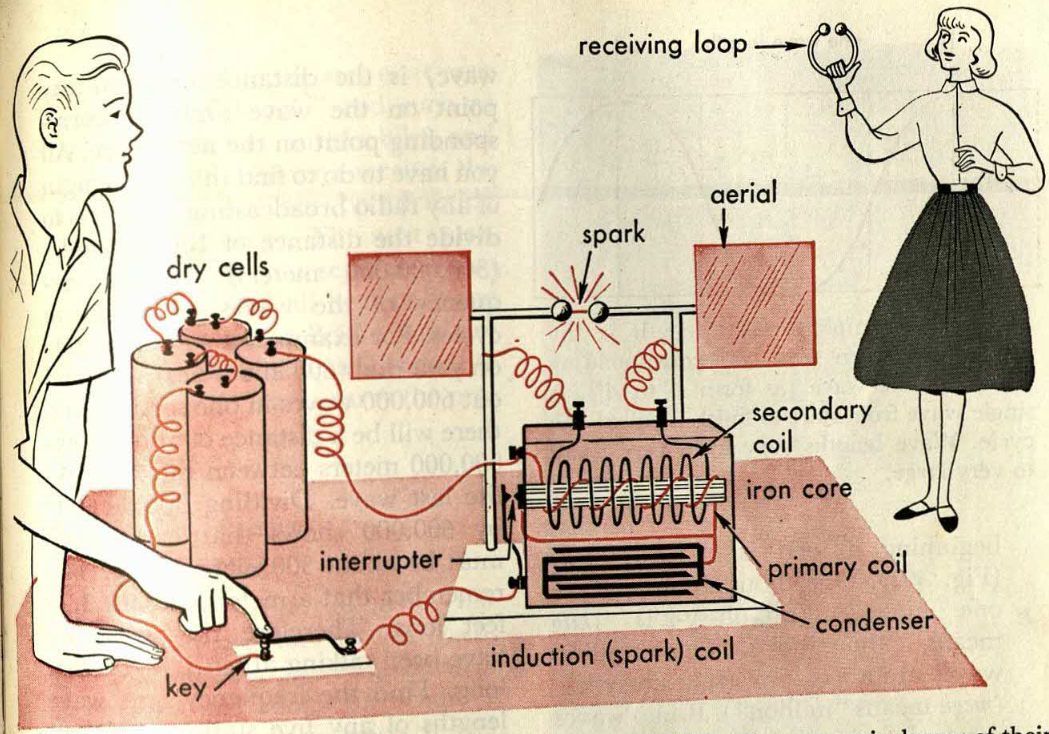
In 1872, an American dentist named Mahlon (MAY-lun) Loomis wrote an article called "A Disturbance in the Electrical Equilibrium of the Atmosphere." The article describes an idea on which he got a patent that year. A few years later the idea became known as wireless telegraphy. Today we call it radio.

Producing Radio Waves

In 1872, the telephone had not even been invented, and yet here was Loomis, who believed it would some day be possible to send and receive messages by setting up electrical waves in the air. He had none of the three things needed for this kind of communication — no transmitter, no receiver, and no electrical waves to carry the message. But he had a good idea.

Scientists began to explore the idea, which Loomis and others had suggested, by looking first for a suitable wave. One of the first scientists to produce such waves was Heinrich Hertz (HYN-rikh·HEHRTS), a German, who published his findings in 1887. The apparatus he used was so simple that it is not difficult for you to do what he did.

In Fig. 300, you see an apparatus that will produce Hertzian (radio) waves. You need an electrical coil (called an induction coil) which



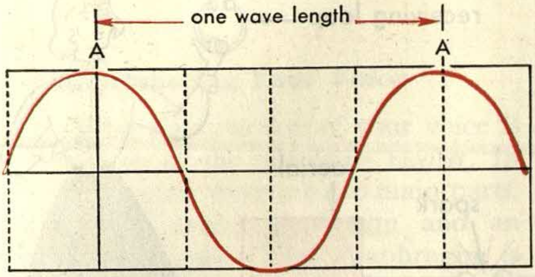
300 *Project:* To send a spark by radio waves (also called Hertzian waves in honor of their discoverer), you may build an apparatus like this. Be sure the sending aerial is made of large metal plates and that the receiving loop is a heavy loop of copper. You will need to buy the spark coil.

makes sparks. You will also need a switch (key), four dry cells, and a spark gap joined to an aerial of some kind (the metal plates shown will do). Hertz received the spark made by the coil by using a heavy wire loop which he held near the transmitter. If you have no loop like this, you can hear the effect by turning on a radio nearby. Do not keep up this experiment too long, or your neighbors who are trying to listen to radio programs will complain. Furthermore, it is against the law to broadcast any signal unless you have a license and obey certain rules.

Hertz was an experimenter, not a radio broadcaster. Guglielmo Marconi (gool-YELL-moh·mahr-KOH-nee), a young Italian scientist, wanted to use Hertzian waves for sending messages long distances. In 1901, after many trials, he sent the first signal (the letter *s*) by radio across the Atlantic Ocean. Soon ships were using Marconi transmitters and receivers to exchange ideas with other ships and shore stations. The signal used was the noise of the spark sent as dots and dashes like a telegraph message. What has this to do with broadcasting music, baseball games, and mystery stories by radio and television? A great deal, as you shall see. First, there are some things you need to know about these waves.

Radio Waves

A radio wave, like other waves, has a beginning, highest point, lowest point, and an end. One full wave from



301 One complete wave length is the distance between any two corresponding points on the wave (as from *A* to *A'*). A single wave from start to finish is called one cycle. Wave lengths vary from very small to very large.

beginning to end is called a *cycle* (Fig. 301). One thousand waves are one *kilocycle* (KIL-uh-sy-k'l) (*kilo* means "thousand"). One million waves are a *megacycle* (MEG-uh-sy-k'l) (*mega* means "million"). Radio waves are known by their frequency. Frequency is the number of kilocycles or megacycles that a broadcasting transmitter sends out every second. For example, Station KDKA, the Westinghouse station in Pittsburgh which was the first radio broadcasting station in America (Nov. 2, 1920), uses a frequency of 1,020 kilocycles (1,020,000 cycles per second). This means that this station sends out 1,020,000 radio waves every second it is broadcasting. On your radio dial, this station would be tuned in at 1020. Station WNYE, the broadcasting station of the New York City Board of Education, is tuned in at 91.5 megacycles. Here 91,500,000 radio waves leave the station's transmitter every second. Since all these radio waves travel at the same speed, the speed of light (186,000 miles per second), you can see at a glance that there must be a great difference in the length of these waves.

A wave length (the length of a wave) is the distance between any point on the wave and the corresponding point on the next wave. All you have to do to find the wave length of any radio broadcasting station is to divide the distance of 186,000 miles (300,000,000 meters) by the frequency of the waves expressed in cycles. For example, a station at 600 on your dial (600 kilocycles) will send out 600,000 waves in one second, and there will be a distance of about 300,000,000 meters between the first and the last wave. Dividing 300,000,000 by 600,000 shows that each wave must be about 500 meters long. You remember that a meter is about 3.25 feet long. Therefore the wave we have been talking about is 1,625 feet long. Find the frequency and wave lengths of any five stations you can tune in on your radio receiver.

Receiving Radio Waves

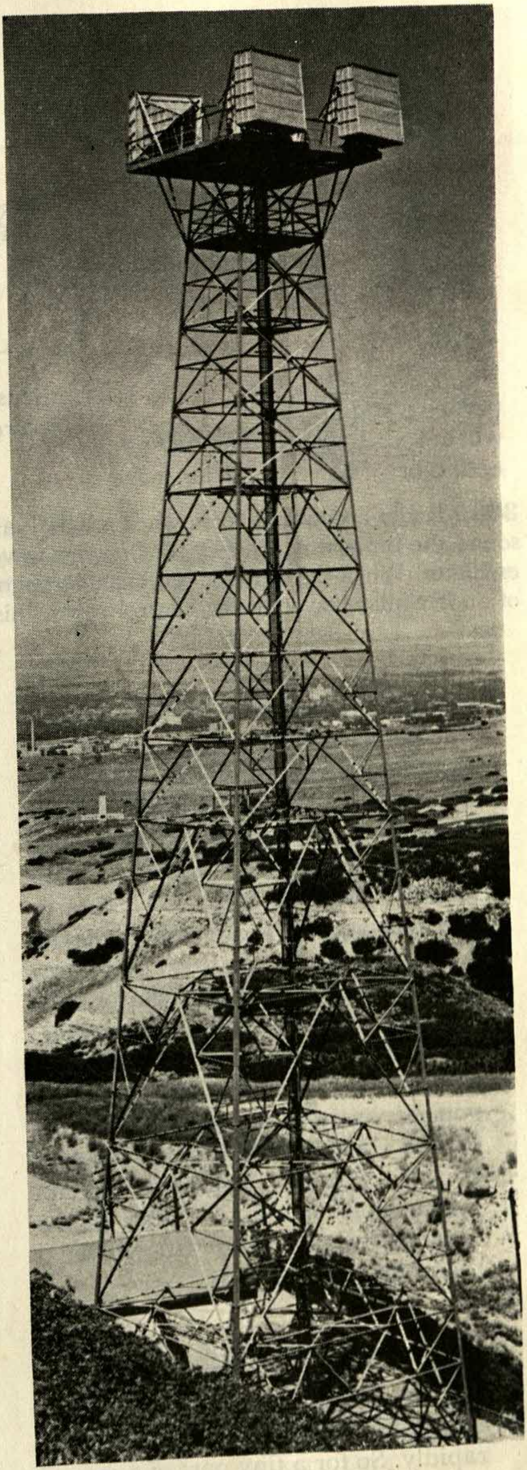
You may have discovered that you are able to tune in many local radio stations and a few stations that are many miles away. Some may be in a foreign country halfway around the world. Like light waves, radio waves go out in all directions from their source. Within a few hundred miles the waves near the ground lose their strength, but not all the waves that shoot up into the upper layers of the atmosphere are lost. Many are reflected back by a layer of air known as the Kennelly-Heaviside (KEN-uh-lee · HEV-ee-syde) layer in honor of the men who discovered this effect.

You will probably hear radio programs better if your receiver (your radio) has an *antenna*. The antenna may be a length of wire strung between poles on a roof; it may be a loop of wire inside the set; or it may be a metal "fish-pole" rod such as you have seen on automobiles and police cars. The antenna receives the radio waves of every broadcasting station within range. The next question is: How do you separate radio waves so that you will hear only one program at a time? Before you can understand this, you will need to know how radio waves carry the programs to you.

How Radio Waves Carry Programs

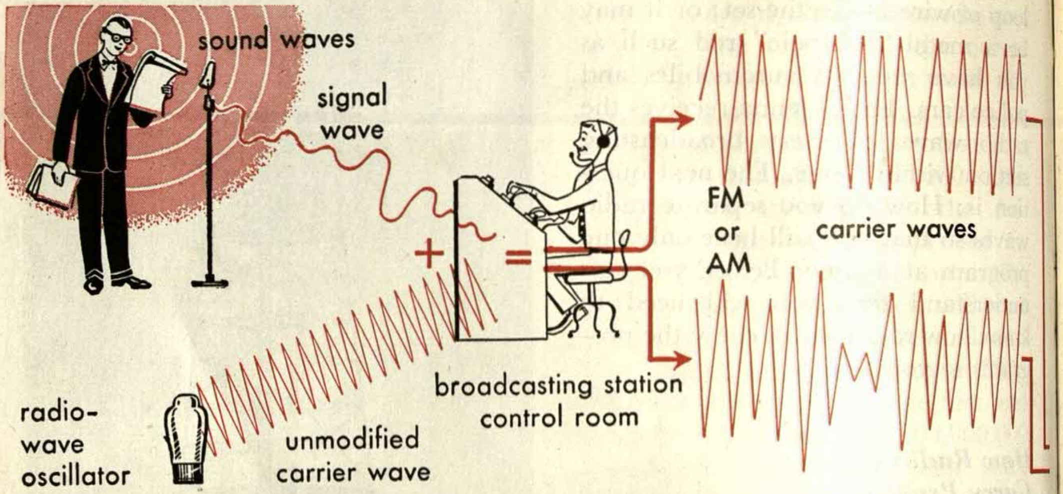
Radio stations try to avoid moments of silence for fear of losing listeners. But once in awhile between programs these moments occur. If you are tuned in to a station at such a time, you will hear a low hum which shows that the station is really on the air. The low hum is caused by the radio wave that carries the program to you. It is, therefore, called a *carrier wave* (Fig. 303).

If you will compare the radio with the telephone, you will see what makes the radio work. You remember (p. 545) that in the telephone your voice, acting through the box of carbon grains, changes or modifies the flow of an electric current along the wires connecting the transmitter and the receiver. In radio broadcasting, the microphone is like the telephone transmitter. It sends an electric current modified by the voice along a wire. But the wire is a short one. It leads only to a box that has some



302 This tower, near Salt Lake City, Utah, is part of one of 107 microwave radio relay towers over the country.

HOW YOUR RADIO WORKS



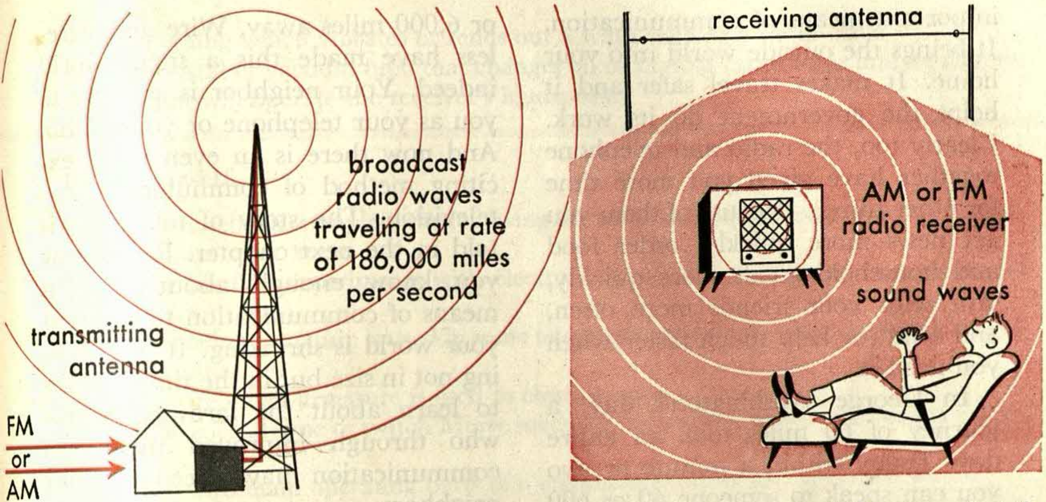
303 Radio broadcasts begin when a signal takes a ride on a carrier wave. The signal is any sound the broadcaster makes. The carrier wave is a radio wave made by a device called an oscillator. When the sound enters the microphone, it becomes an electrical signal in the form of an irregular wave. In the control room, this signal wave is put aboard the carrier wave,

radio tubes and other parts connected by short wires in a way that is too complicated to explain here. This device is called an *oscillator* (os-sil-lay-ter). An oscillator makes radio waves move back and forth very rapidly. Because these waves carry the message they are called carrier waves. When the modified voice current is fed into the oscillator, the result is a modified carrier wave. Now suppose your radio receiver is tuned to a certain station. In tuning you separate the special modified carrier wave of the station you want to hear from the modified carrier waves being sent out by other broadcasting stations. Thus you will hear the program you want.

Receiving a Radio Program

A modified carrier wave, as we have said, moves back and forth very rapidly. So for a tiny part of a second there is a small electric current flowing in one direction through your radio antenna and into your radio receiver. Then, an instant later, there is a small electric current flowing in the opposite direction. This, as you learned earlier, is what we call an *alternating current* because it flows alternately, first in one direction and then in the other.

An alternating current is of no use in reproducing sound waves. We must get rid of one-half of the oscillating radio wave and keep the other half. We do this by means of an electric valve or door which allows only one-half of the radio wave to pass through. The device that does this job is called a *detector*. The detector may be a radio tube, or it may be a crystal of some special kind. The cheapest detector is a bit of lead-pencil graphite. (The "lead" of a lead pencil is not really lead but a hard form of carbon known as


receiving antenna
broadcast radio waves traveling at rate of 186,000 miles per second
AM or FM radio receiver
sound waves
transmitting antenna
FM
or
AM

which is then changed in one of two ways — AM or FM. As you can see, AM means that the height or amplitude of the carrier waves has been changed. FM means that the spacing between the waves, or their frequency, has been changed. When tuned in, these radio waves are changed back to sound waves by the receiver.

graphite.) Graphite does not work very well as a detector of radio waves, but you can make a "foxhole" radio receiver with it if you follow the directions given in the first book listed in "Adding to Your Library."

A better type of crystal detector is galena (guh-LEE-nuh). You can buy galena crystal detectors in stores that sell radio parts, or you may buy a kit with one included with the wire and other things you need for a simple crystal radio receiver. Again, do not expect very good results. Crystals may be used as detectors of radio waves, but the most commonly used detector is a radio vacuum tube.

Radio vacuum tubes are very useful things. They can be used as detectors or as *amplifiers* (AM-plih-fy-erz). An amplifier is needed to make weak currents of electricity stronger. An amplifier is to radio and telephone communication what a relay (p. 544) is to a telegraph. To repeat, an amplifier makes weak electric currents stronger. It should be clear to anyone who has had a look at the inside of a radio set that there is much more to making a radio than we have told you so far. If you want to understand *all* about radio, you need to know a great deal more about electricity than you can learn in a general science course. If you are interested in radio so much that you want to make a radio set with vacuum tubes, read the books listed at the end of this chapter and buy a kit containing the needed parts plus complete wiring instructions and a diagram. Just be careful of one thing. Do not plug your radio into a 110-volt house line until you have had the wiring checked.

Our Shrinking World

Whether you make a radio or not, you have no doubt listened to one long enough to be sure that it is an important means of communication. It brings the outside world into your home. It makes travel safer and it helps the government do its work. Clearly too, the radio and telephone together have given you more time for other things. Because of them you get news more quickly, order food and household goods more quickly, visit with your friends more often, and send for help much faster when you need it.

In George Washington's day, a journey of 60 miles took an entire day. Today within a minute or two you can speak to someone 60 or 600 or 6,000 miles away. Wire and wireless have made this a small world indeed. Your neighbor is as close to you as your telephone or your radio. And now there is an even more exciting method of communication—television. The story of television is told in the next chapter. Right now you know enough about modern means of communication to see that your world is shrinking. It is shrinking not in size but in the time it takes to learn about the faraway people who through improved means of communication have become your neighbors.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

transmitter
receiver
armature
relay
diaphragm

modified current
cycle; kilocycle; megacycle
antenna
carrier wave

oscillator
detector
amplifier
sounder

1. a special wire or wires used for receiving radio waves
2. the part of a telegraph receiver which is hit by a moving armature
3. any device for sending a message
4. a radio wave that carries a signal from the antenna of the transmitter to the antenna of the radio receiver
5. a device for making a sound or signal louder or stronger
6. a device used to open and close an electric circuit by a distant operator
7. an electric current that has been changed by a transmitter
8. a single wave; 1,000 waves; 1,000,000 waves
9. a thin piece of metal or membrane which is caused to vibrate in a transmitter or receiver
10. a piece of metal which is held in a way that permits it to move when acted upon by a magnetic field
11. a device for receiving a message or reproducing a signal

12. anything which vibrates or sends out a wave such as a radio wave

13. a crystal or vacuum tube that changes an oscillating radio wave into an electric current that will operate the receiver's loudspeaker

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. For his first experiments with electromagnets, Joseph Henry's best source of electric current was . . . .

2. A moving armature is used in some telegraph receivers to hit a . . . which makes dots and dashes.

3. In a relay an armature is used to close or open . . . .

4. The special type of switch Morse invented for sending dots and dashes is called a . . . .

5. The two main operating parts of a telephone receiver are a . . . and a . . . .

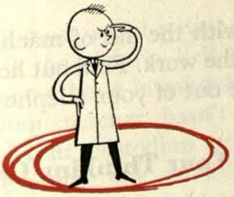
6. The flow of current through a telephone transmitter is regulated by a box containing . . . .

7. The first radio signals were made by the . . . sent out from an induction coil.

8. Marconi was the first man to send a radio signal across the . . . Ocean.

9. When a radio transmitter sends out radio waves that oscillate 1,020,000 times a second, the transmitter is said to be broadcasting at . . . kilocycles.

10. To change an oscillating radio wave into a kind of current that will operate a loudspeaker, we must pass the radio wave through a device called a . . . .

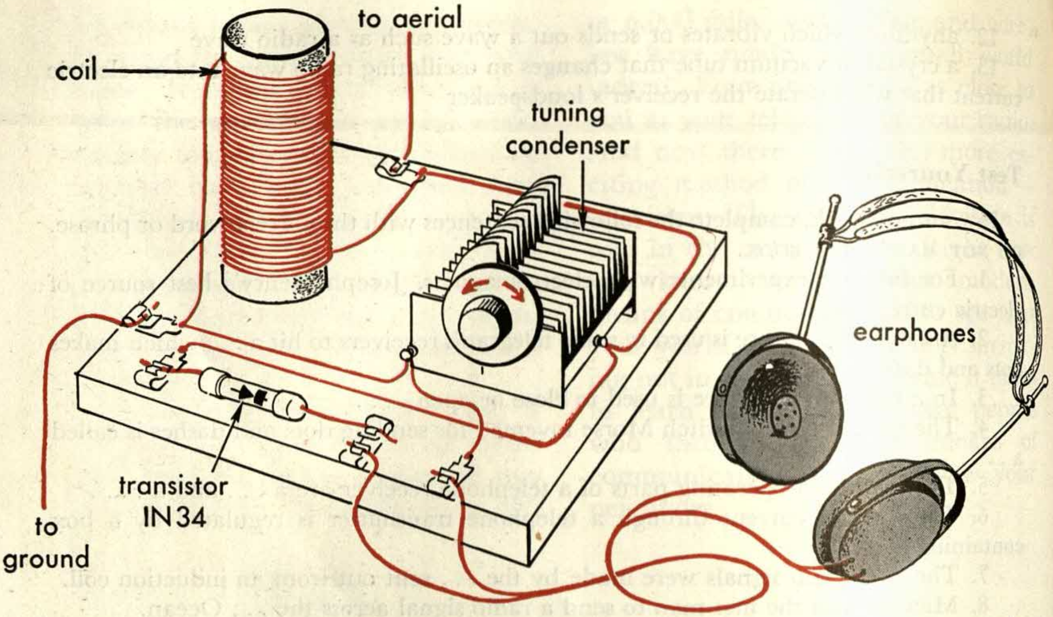


GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Making a two-way telegraph.* Set up a two-way telegraph communication system with some other pupil who has also made a telegraph key and sounder. Figure 297 shows you how to make a simple telegraph set and how two of them may be connected. The telegraph key may be made from a straight piece of springy metal such as a piece of hacksaw blade. The sounder can be a T-shaped piece of metal cut from a tin box or can with a strong pair of shears. The electromagnet is easy to make from 20 to 30 feet of cotton-covered wire which is wound around two large iron nails. In connecting the two sets, do not stretch the wire across a public street or highway.

2. *Making a crystal radio.* The first reference book in "Adding to Your Library" contains directions for making a "foxhole" radio receiver. If you make one, be sure to use a long antenna and also a connection to the ground. But we think you will get much better results if you build the transistor receiver shown in Fig. 304. You will also get much better results if you solder all your connections.



304 This simple radio receiver uses a germanium (jer-MAY-nee-um) transistor instead of the galena crystal and "cat whisker" found in some crystal sets. Be sure to use a 50- to 75-foot aerial and a good connection to the ground. To tune in a station, turn the knob of the tuning condenser slowly. Now examine your own radio. What do you think is behind the knob you use to tune your radio?

Do not depend upon winding wires around a nail or other wires for good connections. At least put the wires between two washers and fasten the washers to a board with a roundhead screw.

3. *Making a vacuum-tube radio.* Your best chance of success, if you are a beginner in radio, is to make a simple vacuum-tube receiver. You can buy a kit with all the parts you need and complete directions for putting the parts together. Your radio dealer will probably be glad to give you some help or advice with it, and he will be able to get a kit for you, but first ask your teacher. He may have all the needed parts in his supply closet.

4. *Visiting a telephone central office.* If you live near a telephone central office, ask your teacher to arrange a visit. You will see there how all the telephone calls are handled by the switchboard. In the larger cities, all this is done by a few people with the aid of machines that do most of the work. Find out how to get the most use out of your telephone.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. If it is possible now to send radio messages across the Atlantic Ocean, why is a transatlantic telephone cable needed?

2. Why is it necessary for the Federal Communications Commission to regulate and license those who wish to make radio broadcasts?

Adding to Your Library

1. *All About Radio and Television* by Jack Gould, Random House, 1953. This book is a simple and accurate introduction to the subject of radio and television. It is well illustrated and has directions for building a "foxhole" radio receiver.

2. *Elements of Radio* by Abraham and William Marcus, 3rd edition, Prentice-Hall, 1953. For beginners who want to go more deeply into the subject, this is a clearly written book which will help you build various types of radio receivers.

3. *The Radio Amateur's Handbook* and *A Course in Radio Fundamentals*, published by the American Radio Relay League, Inc., 38 La Salle Road, West Hartford (7), Conn. These are standard works which give exact facts useful to those who want to make radio a hobby.

4. *The ABC's of Radio*, prepared by the Electronics Department of the General Electric Co., Schenectady, N.Y. If you understand all this booklet contains, you will be well on your way to becoming a radio expert.

5. *Electric Shortcuts for Hobbyists*, Sylvania Electric Products, Inc., 1740 Broadway, New York (19), N.Y., 1951. This booklet shows the radio hobbyist twenty-four simple uses for the new germanium transistors.

A Bit of Research

One of the most useful means of communicating is the electric bell or gong such as you may have in your home or school. If your teacher hasn't one of these, go to your custodian or janitor and ask to examine one. Make a complete report on the way in which the bell or the gong operates. This is something explained in many textbooks, but we think that by this time you are able to do a bit of research and find out for yourself how these things work. If you want to investigate further, find out also how the special door chimes which some people have in their homes work.

GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

305 Albert Raizner of New York City made this crystal radio from directions for a model similar to that shown in Fig. 304. *Project:* With a little effort you can make one, too.

Careers for You

There is no wider field for career hunters than in communications. If radio appeals to you, the best way to begin is by earning your amateur's (ham) license. Write to the American Radio Relay League, 38 La Salle Road, West Hartford (7), Conn., for their booklets on *How to Become a Radio Amateur* (50 cents), *Learning the Radio-Telegraph Code* (25 cents), and *License Manual* (50 cents). For the information on other careers in the communications field, speak to your guidance teacher.

CHAPTER 28

Moving and Talking Images

No miracle, television. Television, like many other discoveries in science, is the result of slow, patient, hard work by many men and women. One result: using the discoveries of science for better living.

YOU PROBABLY KNOW that one of the best ways to exchange ideas is to put them into pictures or sounds. Then these pictures and sounds can be delivered as packages of ideas. Think of all the packages of ideas you use — books, pictures, drawings, motion pictures, filmstrips, phonograph records, tape recordings, and other records of many kinds. Much of the day's news as well as much of what we know about the people of long ago comes to us in little packages of ideas. Thousands of years from now people may find a few of our packages and treasure them for the ideas they will reveal about life in our times. In this chapter, you will learn how science has helped to make better and longer-lasting packages of ideas.

STORING IDEAS ON FILM

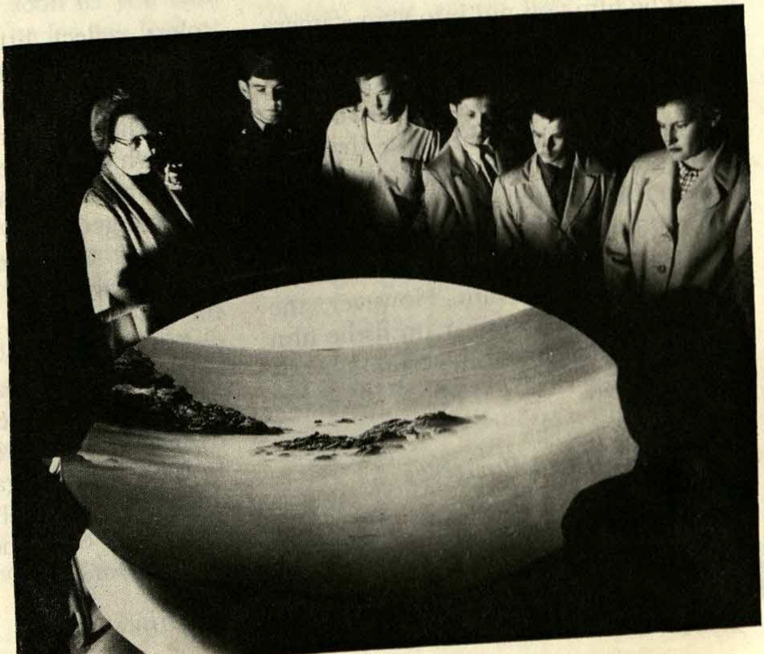
Long before anyone knew how to make a photograph, the secret of the camera was known. If a tiny pinhole is made in one side of a box and if that is the only way light can enter the box, you have a simple, pinhole camera. The picture in Fig. 306 shows what people in a dark room see looking out through a small opening which has a lens. These people see an *image* that does not last. When the sun goes down, the image will disappear because there is no longer any light. A pinhole camera also may be made with a lens. The picture in Fig. 307 was made with a pinhole camera.

Let's Make a Photograph

Until about 100 years ago, no one knew how to make a lasting light image, or, as we say, a photograph.

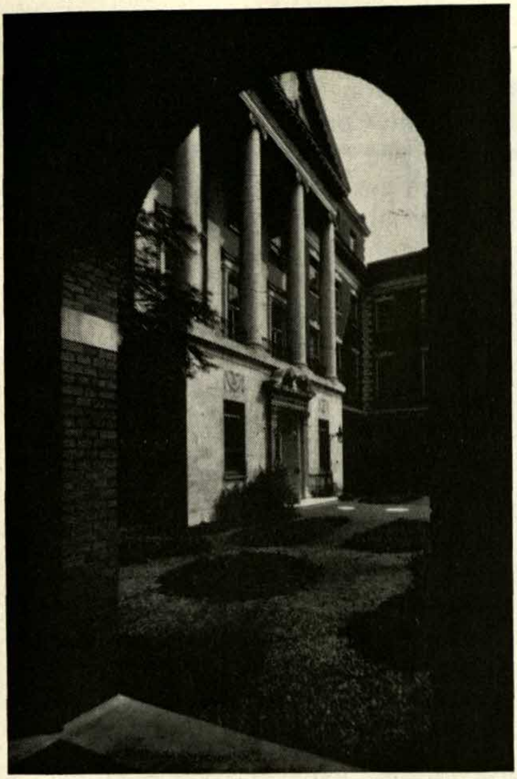
We are going to start with the simplest kind of photograph — a shadow picture. Draw the dark shades and put out the lights in the room. Now, even if it is daylight outside, it is dark enough inside your room to take a piece of photographic "contact" paper out of its package for a moment without spoiling it. Contact paper is a type of paper used to print photographs. You can get a package of No. 4 or 5 contact paper in any store that sells photographic supplies. Even if you spoil one piece of this paper by looking at it in the light, examine it. You will see that one side of the paper is dull. The other side is smooth and shiny because it is coated with certain chemicals. These chemicals change when light strikes them.

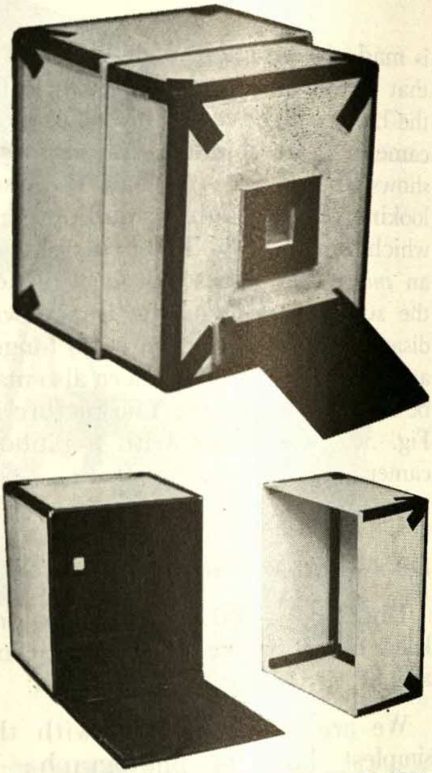
Put on a table top the piece of paper you are going to use, with the smooth, coated side up. Lay two or three keys on top of the paper. Be sure they are separate and lying flat. Make sure the rest of the paper in the package is covered. Turn on the room lights for a minute. When you develop the paper according to the directions given in the section "Photography as a Hobby," you will find that the paper bears a white shadow picture or photographic image of the keys.



306 From a dark room with a small opening, people get a fine view of Seal Rocks, rugged islands located in the Pacific Ocean near San Francisco. Why is this like being inside a pinhole camera?

BY "LIFE" PHOTOGRAPHER J. R. EYERMAN, © TIME, INC.





PHOTOS COURTESY PHOTOGRAPHY MAGAZINE

307 This picture was taken with a pinhole camera. Notice that there is no moving object in the picture. With the fastest film, you must allow 1 to 2 minutes' exposure for making a picture of well-lighted scenes. A pinhole camera you can put together in an hour will make real photographs. This camera has two half-boxes which fit together. Only one piece of cut film at a time can be loaded into the camera. How is an exposure made?

The film you put into your camera also is coated with chemicals which change when light strikes them. When you click the shutter on the camera, you let light enter the dark box and strike the coated side of the film. Since this is light which has been reflected from something or someone, you get an image of that subject on your film. However, the image does not appear until the film has been developed in certain chemicals, as described on pp. 577–578.

Negatives and Positives

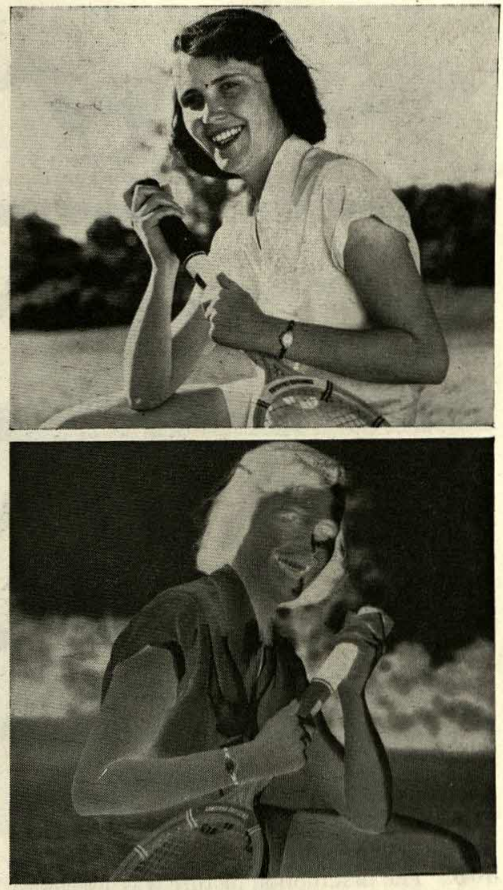
Let us suppose you are taking the picture of a girl (Fig. 308). As dark colors reflect little light, the trees behind her will send few rays into your camera. Her light skin and the outfit she is wearing will reflect many rays which will enter your camera. Thus the chemicals on the film will be changed very little by the rays from the tree and changed a great deal by rays from her skin, suit, and the tennis racket. In the *negative*, the girl's face and the other light objects will be almost black. Shadows will be shown by shades of gray. A negative of this kind is shown in Fig. 308. It is called a negative because it is the exact opposite of the picture you want — the photographic print, called a *positive*.

From the negative, it is possible to make positive prints. The positives are really shadow pictures like the one you made of the keys. The negative is placed on a piece of contact paper (chemically coated side against coated side). Then a light is turned on. As you can see, the light passes easily through the light parts of the negative (the tree), but the thick, dark parts of the negative (her suit) allow very little light to change the chemicals on the printing paper, with the result that you see in Fig. 308.

You can make both positives and negatives on film, on paper, or on glass if they are coated with the right chemicals, exposed to light in the right way, and correctly developed.

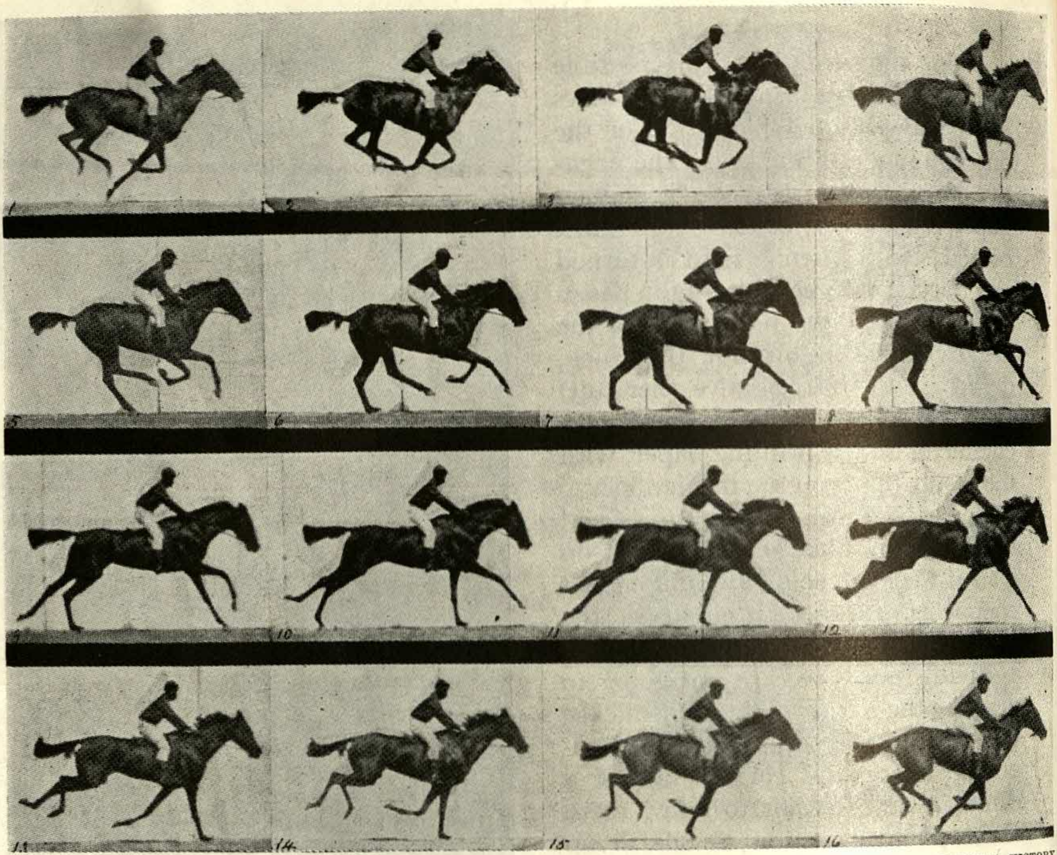
At this point we are not going to describe the nature of these chemicals, the kinds of film, the methods of exposing it, or the correct use of a camera. If you want to know more about photography or to take it up as a hobby, you should read the section "Photography as a Hobby" at the end of this chapter. Get started in photography as soon as you can.

Ask your teacher to let you look at some lantern slides. Also ask him to let you examine all the parts of a slide projector. Your teacher may also have a smaller projector for showing a smaller-size slide. This 2 × 2 inch slide is really a holder for a small piece of film. Some of these smaller projectors can show a strip of pictures printed on a length of 35 millimeter (abbreviated mm.) film, known as a filmstrip. It may surprise you to find that the pictures on these film slides and filmstrips are positives and not negatives.



308 In the positive (*top*) the girl's hair and the trees appear dark, but in the negative (*bottom*) these appear light. Can you explain why?

When most people think of photographic film, they think of the film that they use in their camera for taking snapshots. Photographs are usually printed on paper from the film negatives. It may not have occurred to you that from the film negative a positive can be printed on film. This may be done by using another film as if it were a piece of photographic paper, or by reversing the image on the film negative by means of chemicals so that it becomes a positive (Fig. 308). These positive prints may be made on glass or film, both of which allow light to pass through. Film slides and filmstrip are positives



AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

309 The first motion picture was a series of 24 ordinary photographs, of which 16 are shown here. These pictures were taken in rapid order when the horse's body pushed aside thin strings attached to the shutters of 24 cameras set up in a row.

which you can show and make larger by putting into a projector. There is an even more important use for positives printed on film. Film can be run at high speed through a motion picture projector. This, as you know, throws a beam of light upon a screen some distance away.

The First Moving Pictures

The first motion pictures were not printed on film. They really were moving pictures, dozens of them, printed on paper like ordinary pictures. They were arranged on a wheel that turned. The very first motion pictures were made by an English photographer, Eadweard Muybridge (ED-werd MY-brij), to decide a bet of $25,000. The story is unusual, as the bet was made by Governor Leland Stanford of California.

Governor Stanford believed that at times a horse lifts all four feet off the ground while galloping. Others were just as sure that a horse does not do this. Neither side had proof because the feet of a galloping horse move too quickly for the human eye to follow. Of course a motion picture would have supplied the answer, but in 1872, when the bet was made, no motion picture camera existed. So

Stanford hired Muybridge to solve the problem.

To do so, Muybridge set up 24 ordinary cameras in a row and ran long, thin strings from their shutters across the racetrack. The strings were arranged so that, as the horse galloped through them, the shutters snapped open and then closed. Thus 24 pictures of the galloping horse were taken in rapid succession. Several of the pictures showed all four of the horse's feet raised off the ground (Fig. 309), and Stanford won his bet. But you have heard only half the story.

All 24 pictures were mounted in a round frame like the toy that children still enjoy using. When the frame was spun — presto, the horse really seemed to be galloping. It was the first time anyone had seen a moving picture of a live animal in action.

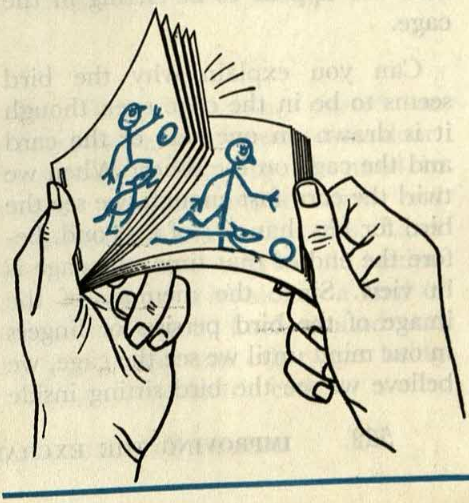
For the next ten years, Muybridge used the same arrangement of cameras to take photographs of people and animals in motion. In other parts of America and Europe, inventors began to think of better ways to show motion pictures. One early method is still used in the penny-arcade movie machines. In the old days, the viewer turned a handle which made a set of post-card–size photographs flip past a viewing window. As the viewer looked (peeped) into the window, he got the idea of motion just as you can when you flip the pages of a flip booklet as shown in Fig. 310.

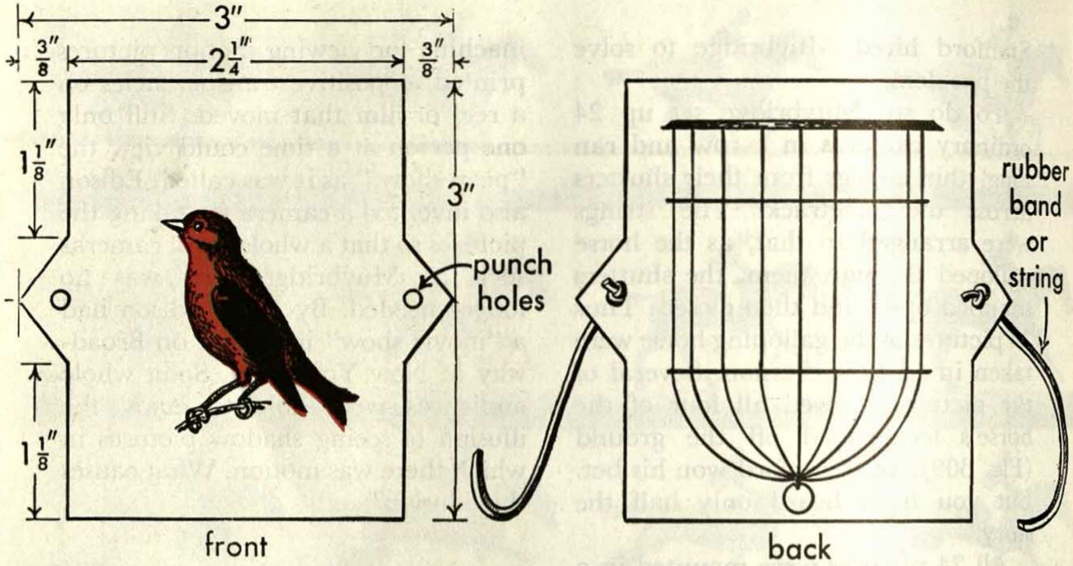
When Muybridge made his pictures, his cameras were loaded with coated glass plates that became his negatives. In 1884, George Eastman found a way to coat photographic chemicals on film. Within five years Thomas A. Edison and his associate W. K. L. Dickson had invented a machine for viewing motion pictures printed as positive transparencies on a reel of film that moved. Still only one person at a time could view the "peep show," as it was called. Edison also invented a camera for taking the pictures so that a whole set of cameras such as Muybridge used was no longer needed. By 1894, Edison had a "movie show" in a store on Broadway in New York City. Soon whole audiences were able to enjoy the illusion of seeing shadow pictures in which there was motion. What causes this illusion?

Persistence of Vision

By an illusion we mean a trick played on our eyes. With motion pictures the trick played on us is that we think we see motion when there really is none in the picture. The only thing that is really in motion is the film going through the motion picture projector. This throws one image (shadow picture) after another on the screen so quickly that our eyes

310 Animated cartoons to show a series of actions are easy to draw. Fasten them together, and you will have your own movie "flip booklet" to illustrate persistence of vision.





311 *Project:* Draw the cage and bird as shown. (The cage is drawn upside down on the back of the card.) Twist the rubber band or string. The card will twirl when you pull on the twisted bands. What principle will you be illustrating?

hold the first image even as they see the second and the next and the next. This makes the whole series of images seem to blend. The blending of pictures or images takes place whenever we see one after another in less than ¹⁄₁₆ of a second. The blending of pictures or images is due to an effect known as *persistence of vision.*

By making the simple device shown in Fig. 311, you can test your own persistence of vision. If you whirl the card rapidly enough, the bird will appear to be sitting in the cage.

Can you explain why the bird seems to be in the cage even though it is drawn on one side of the card and the cage on the other? When we twirl the card fast enough, we see the bird for less than ¹⁄₁₆ of a second. Before the end of that time, the cage is in view. Since the memory of the image of the bird persists or lingers in our mind until we see the cage, we believe we see the bird sitting inside the cage. This simple effect helps explain the motion of motion pictures. Persistence of vision makes it possible for us to have the illusion of seeing lifelike motion pictures.

Making Movies Talk

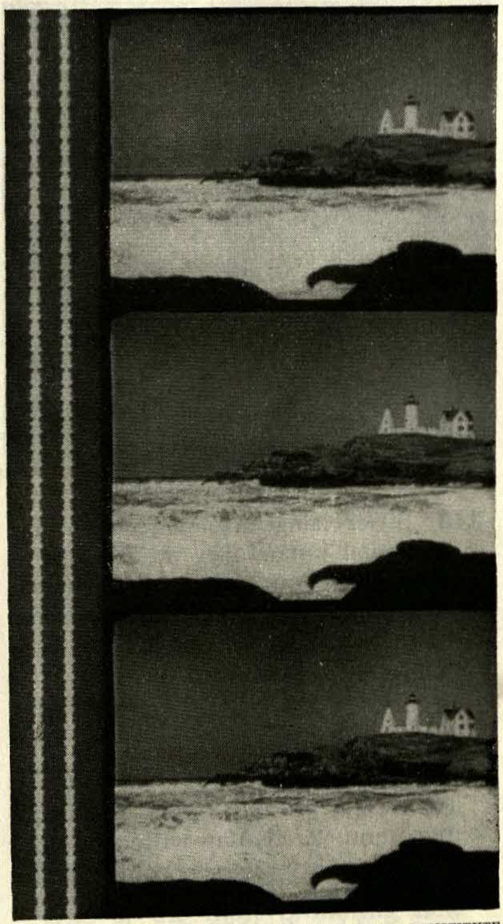
People were not satisfied with motion alone. They wanted to hear their actors talk and sing. They also wanted to hear the natural noises of the surroundings. How was sound added to motion pictures?

Your search for the answer to this question might well begin with a small piece of motion picture film such as is shown in Fig. 312. Do you see the uneven track along the left-hand edge? That is called the sound track. As you can see, it is a picture of light and dark areas with a saw-tooth pattern. This design was made by a ray of light which was moving back and forth very quickly within the width of the sound track. The beam of light was connected to a device which moved back and forth in time with the sound vibrations picked up by a microphone. Thus the sound track is really a photograph of sound waves.

The next step is to reproduce the original sounds. This is done by allowing the film with its sound track to run through the projector. One light throws the image (shadow) of the picture on the screen, and another light sends a tiny beam through the sound track. This light beam, which changes according to the pattern of the sound track, strikes a *photoelectric cell*. This cell changes the flickering beam of light into an ever-changing current of electricity. The electricity then flows through a loud-speaker. As in a radio or telephone receiver, it reproduces the sound waves in a form that is reasonably true to life.

To understand how it is possible for a photoelectric cell to change light into electricity, you will have to study advanced science. But this much is not hard to understand. In 1887, Heinrich Hertz (p. 546) discovered that certain substances give off electrons when they are struck by a beam of light. This discovery led to the invention of the photoelectric cell, which is sometimes called an electric eye.

Besides being used in projectors of sound motion pictures, photoelectric cells have many uses. For instance, a photoelectric cell may be used to open a door. Have you ever walked up to a door in a store or railroad station, only to find that it opened before you could touch it? As you walked up to the door, your body broke a beam of light which had been focused on an unseen photoelectric cell. This started the flow of current through a special type of relay. This, in turn, started an electric motor which opened the door. Photoelectric cells are also used in certain types of burglar alarms and as safety devices on elevators. Later you will find that a principle behind the working of television is a kind of photoelectric cell. Look around and see if you can find other uses being made of photoelectric cells.



AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE

312 The sound track on a motion picture film is the area to the left of the three pictures (called frames). Examine the track with a magnifying glass. You will see it is an irregular pattern. Why is there almost no difference in the three pictures?

RADIO CORPORATION OF AMERICA

313 Styles change in sound recording and reproduction just as they do in clothing. If you look in your attic, you may find a phonograph like this one, which was popular 40 or 50 years ago.

SOUND RECORDINGS

The motion picture film with its sound track is not a very old invention, and yet it may within another ten to twenty years become as old-fashioned as your grandfather's talking machine. In 1877, Thomas Edison invented the first talking machine (Fig. 313), and ever since then many people have been inventing new ways to make sound recordings. How many have you used or heard?

Talking Machines — Then and Now

Edison's first talking machine had few parts. It was just a metal cylinder with a means for turning it. To this was added a short, cone-shaped speaking tube with a blunt needle held to a thin diaphragm at the narrow end of the speaking tube. To make a recording, a person had to shout into the speaking tube while someone else turned the handle. This handle turned the cylinder, which was covered with a sheet of tin foil. As the sound waves moved the diaphragm, the diaphragm moved the needle so that it pressed little grooves into the tin foil. To play back the recording, Edison returned the needle to its starting point on the cylinder and again turned the handle. The sound that came out of the tube as the needle now moved the diaphragm could be recognized as the words which had been shouted into the tube.

To those who had never before heard the human voice reproduced by a machine, Edison's invention seemed like magic. Actually the sounds coming from the speaking tube were terrible. One or two playbacks were all that could be expected before the tin foil had to be thrown away. Of course, Edison himself was among the first to note these faults, and he set to work to correct them. Here are some of the improvements which have been made in talking machines and sound recording:

1. Wax, glass, paper, and plastic materials, as well as magnetic wire and tape, have taken the place of the tin foil.
2. Except on office recording machines (used for the temporary recording of messages to be copied by a typist), cylinders have been replaced by disks or reels of tape or wire.
3. A master recording on a metal plate now makes possible the production of thousands of perfect copies of the same recording. The record you buy is made by heating an easily molded material and then pressing it against the master record.
4. The machines for making the records and for playing them back

are all turned by electric motors, not by hand. This gives us a constant speed and is much less bother than the old-style phonographs, which were run by a spring-driven motor.

5. The shape of the horn was improved many times until all horns were replaced by loud-speakers like those used in radio receivers. Only a few kinds of portable phonographs still let the sound come out through a horn.

6. Phonograph needles have been improved to reduce wear and tear on the record as well as to cut down surface noise. Some people still prefer to use a new needle for every record they play. But some needles may be used from 400 to 1,500 hours of playing time. These are tipped with a diamond. In spite of advertising claims, most jewel-tipped (sapphire) and precious-metal–alloy needles will damage records after only 15 hours of playing time. It is important to avoid damage to expensive records, especially those of the LP (long-playing) type.

7. The "hill and valley" type of needle groove has been replaced by grooves which have a wavy appearance when seen under a microscope. Since the wavy grooves are all of the same depth, they wear better and the sound is greatly improved.

8. Long-playing records and automatic record changers have added to the pleasure of listening to recorded music. Some automatic record changers when loaded with LP records will run for several hours.

9. The latest improvement to become popular is called hi-fi, which means "high-fidelity sound reproduction." Hi-fi equipment is meant to do away with three things that reduce listening pleasure. These are noise, distortion, and lack of balance. Noise is any sound such as a scratch, crackle, hum, or hiss. Distortion is any muffling, harshness, roughness, or shrillness that is unpleasant. Balance, in this case, means not too much or not too little stress on certain sounds.

All these improvements have added a great deal to the popularity and enjoyment of sound recordings. Radio stations have libraries of records of music and sound effects. They also have records called transcriptions of entire programs which may be used for rebroadcasts. Transcriptions are sometimes used as evidence in court that a particular statement was or was not made. Do you have recordings of relatives' and friends' voices? How many ways does your school use recordings? Inventors are still at work seeking new and better ways to preserve and reproduce sounds of all kinds.

Making Use of Tape Recording

One of the most promising new methods of sound recording is the tape recorder. The principle of tape recording is simple. If you have studied pp. 465–468 carefully, you already understand it. It is: (1) electricity can produce magnetism; (2) magnetism can produce electricity. The device that makes this change work both ways is a narrow piece of paper or plastic tape coated in a special way with iron oxide. The uncoated side of plastic tape is shiny; on paper tape it is tan. Tape seldom breaks, but if it does or if you want to cut out or add a section, all you have to do is overlap the ends and cut them on a slant with a pair of scissors. Then, holding the ends so they just touch, fasten them with a

UNESCO "COURIER"

314 A tape recorder is shown in use here. As the girl speaks into the microphone held in the officer's hand, a magnetic pattern is made on the tape. Just flip a switch to play it back.

bit of splicing tape or cellophane tape. That is all there is to it, and you are ready to go on recording or listening.

To record on tape, set the tape reels in position and start them turning. Then all you have to do is talk or sing into the microphone just as if you were using a telephone. The tiny current of electricity modified by the sound waves flows through a "recording head." As the tape moves past this head an invisible magnetic pattern is recorded upon it. As soon as this happens, you may play back the recording. Of course, you must first rewind your tape so that you will start at the beginning. You must also be very careful to have the "safety button" in the "up" position so that you will not erase your recording accidentally.

If you do not like what you hear, you can push the button down and erase the recording. This is one of the great advantages of tape recording. You can use a tape over and over again for new recordings when you are tired of the old one or have finished with it. During the playback the magnetic pattern on the tape causes a tiny current to flow in the recording head. This current is made stronger by an amplifier and fed into a loud-speaker or headphones. The same recording may be played over and over again.

If tape recording is so easy and so practical, you may wonder why anyone is still making or buying disk records. One reason why disk records are still popular is that they are cheap. Tape recorders are expensive. A first-class tape recorder costs about as much as a low-priced automobile, and even an ordinary tape recorder costs about as much as a television set. The hi-fi experts tell us that the best long-playing records are far better than any tape recording. In Fig. 314 you see some of the parts of this latest type of tape recorder.

On December 1, 1953, the first tape recording of both color and black and white television programs was demonstrated. It is still in the final stages of development, and so we cannot tell you much about it. When it is made perfect, tape recordings of television programs will have many uses. For example, a program which will teach you something about science will be put on tape and sent to your school (or, if you are unable to go to school, to your home). There it will be played back to you on your own television receiver when you want it and as often as you want it. The future of television seems to be wrapped in a package tied with "video tape." *Video* (VID-ee-oh) is the Latin word meaning "I see," and from it we have made words like "vision" and "television." By bringing the many experiences of a modern world to you, television is playing a great part in your education and in your life.

TELEVISION

Let us start our study of television with black and white television. It is an invention that makes use of ideas you have met before in the explanation of motion pictures, radio, and photography. These ideas include the use and control of light, persistence of vision, the photoelectric cell, modification of carrier waves, and the growing knowledge of the use of vacuum tubes, such as those used in radio receivers. All these are used to broadcast and to reproduce television images.

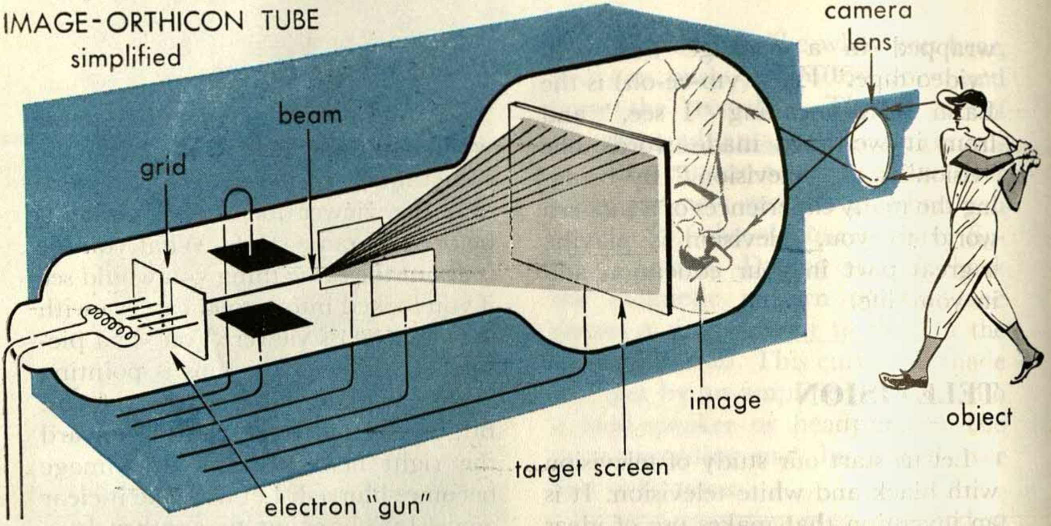
Broadcasting Images

Let us start by going to a ball game which will be televised. We know the cameraman, so he allows us to peep into the viewer for a few moments before the game starts. What you see is about the same thing you would see if you looked into a good camera with a ground-glass viewer. You see a picture of whatever the lens is pointing at. Home plate is in fine, sharp focus. But as you move the camera toward the right field foul line the image becomes blurred. Let us make it clear again by changing to another lens. This is done by turning a small handle. Now we again have a clear picture. For other distances, other lenses may be shifted into position (Fig. 315). So far television seems to be just like photography.

The next step is to change the image or picture into a current of electricity. Our camera has in it a special type of radio tube called an *image orthicon* (OR-thih-kon). At one

315 Action in a TV studio goes on with split-second timing. Notice how the floor manager gives directions with hand signals. Note, too, that he and the cameraman are wearing earphones. They receive their orders by telephone from the director's booth outside the studio.

CBS-TV



316 An image-orthicon tube is the heart of a television camera. It is able to send out clear image "signals" of poorly lighted scenes. Its main parts are a screen and a "gun" whose beam of electrons scans the screen 525 times per picture, 30 pictures per second.

end, this radio tube has a screen which is a kind of photoelectric cell. The image of the scene in the ball park (with its light and dark parts) is focused on this screen. The *lighter* parts release more electrons; the *darker* parts release *fewer* electrons. These released electrons are now removed. This leaves the back of the screen with a strong negative charge wherever the original picture image was dark (fewer electrons released). A weak negative charge is left wherever the picture image was light (more electrons released).

Next we turn on an "electron gun,"[1] which is to be found at the narrow end of the image-orthicon tube. This electron gun sends out a stream of electrons. It aims this stream at the back of the screen you have been reading about (Fig. 316). Remember, the screen is charged with different amounts of negative electricity over all parts of its surface. Since electrons repel electrons (both being negative), some of the electrons streaming from the electron gun are *bounced back* toward a plate that is waiting to collect them. When this happens we have our ever-changing (or modified) current of electricity. Then, as in radio, this current is put on the back of a carrier wave that the station is broadcasting.

It is interesting and surprising that the stream of electrons from the electron gun can move so rapidly. This stream of electrons is called a beam. In the United States an electron beam that moves 525 times from left to right across the screen of the tube is used. When the beam waves from left to right 525 times, we say it has scanned the screen. To avoid a flickering picture the beam must make 30 such scannings every second. The beam waves so fast that persistence of vision (p. 562) makes us

[1] The electron gun is given this name here because it shoots out a stream of electrons. Technically it is sometimes called a *cathode* (KATH-ohd)-ray tube because the electrons have their source at a hot piece of wire called a cathode.

think we are seeing one continuous picture. Actually 30 different pictures are on the screen every second. How can so many pictures be received on your television picture tube?

Reproducing the Image on the Picture Tube

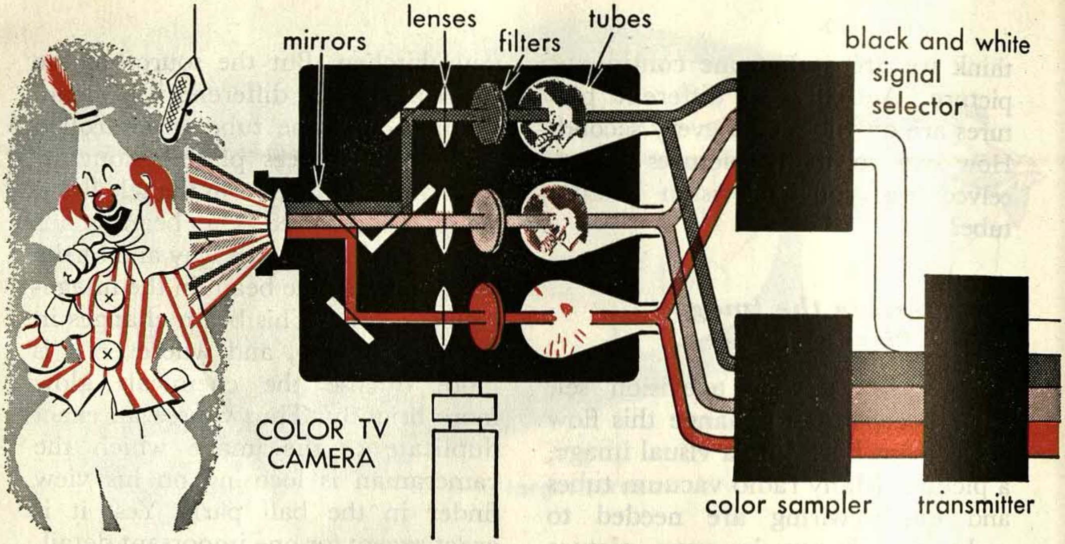
The job of your television set, your receiver, is to change this flow of electrons back into a visual image, a picture. Many radio vacuum tubes and much wiring are needed to make this image in your picture tube. High-pressure electric current must be used. Only the technical expert who builds or repairs television receivers needs to be concerned about these details. Two of them do concern everyone. Because high-pressure electric current is used, there is great danger of shock in handling a television receiver. "Keep your hands out" is a good rule to obey. The second thing to remember is that a television picture tube has a high vacuum. If mishandled it may break with the force of an explosion. If you do not want to risk injury from flying glass coated with poisonous chemicals, do not play with television picture tubes.

The picture tube in your television set is also called a Kinescope (KIN-eh-skohp). It is a type of radio tube, a cathode-ray tube (see footnote on p. 568), which shoots out a stream of electrons in the direction of a glass screen. This screen is coated on the inside with chemicals that glow when electrons hit them. There is little difference between the substance in the cathode-ray tube and the chemicals used to coat the inside of the ordinary fluorescent light tubes that may light your kitchen. But the source of the electrons is very different. The beam in the Kinescope tube is controlled by several devices placed along its path. As the signal from the television station is received, the beam scans the screen in the same way and at the same speed as the beam in the image-orthicon tube. This beam changes in its strength, too, and wherever it is more intense the chemicals glow more brightly. Thus we see an exact duplicate of the image which the cameraman is focusing on his view finder in the ball park. Yes, it is exact except for one important detail. It is black, gray, and white, but the original is in natural color. But even this is being changed. Soon color television will be as popular as color photography.

Color Television

The addition of color to television is a great scientific achievement. The problems that had to be overcome began with the need for sending much more information. All scenes in color must be broken up into three parts: a red picture, a blue picture, and a green picture. A simple solution would be to use three television cameras, but this is not a practical method for many reasons. So one camera has to do the work of three. Figure 317 shows you how the light entering the lens of a color camera is divided into three parts.

On the receiving end there will be two types of receivers: the old sets that can reproduce only black, gray, and white pictures; and the new color television receivers. Plans have now been worked out so that the old sets can receive color television, but the picture will still appear as black,



317 One color television camera has to do the work of three ordinary television cameras. It separates the incoming rays of light into three colors — red, green, and blue. An image in each color is translated into an electrical signal. Then the signals are added together to make

gray, and white. The new receivers will use a picture tube that is made with three electron guns instead of one, and its screen will be coated with three different kinds of glowing chemicals. One dot will glow red, another blue, and the third green. They will be grouped in little clusters — about 600,000 of them. The beam that carries the blue signals will hit only the blue dots; the other beams of electrons likewise will make only their own dots glow. The dots will be so close together that, if the color is white, all three dots at that point will glow. Color television, based on well-known scientific principles, will give us all added viewing pleasure.

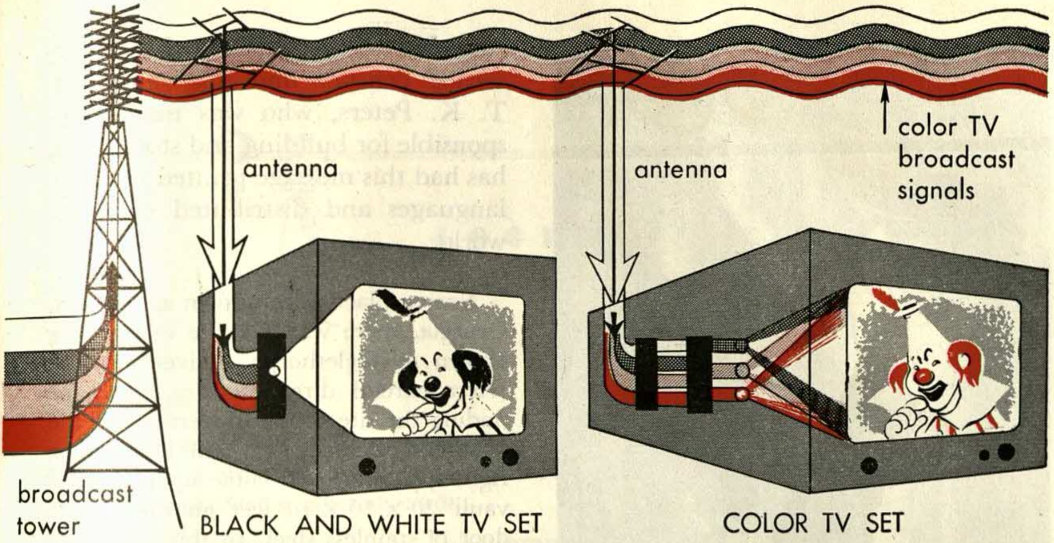
Television's Cousins — Radar and GCA

You have heard of radar's being used to detect enemy planes. You may have also heard that radar is being used in civil defense.

Radar is a cousin to television because its receiver uses a cathode-ray tube with a screen on which an image appears (Fig. 318). Radar is also a cousin to echoes and to reflected light. "Radar" is an abbreviation for *ra*dio *d*etection *a*nd *r*anging.

Have you ever detected something you could not see merely by the sound it makes — an airplane flying through a solid bank of clouds, for example? You knew it was there, but you did not know its speed, its direction of flight, or its distance from you. Radar finds out all these things about any fair-sized object in the path of a beam it sends out.

Radar beams are sent out in short bursts rather than in one long beam. If there is an echo, it is received on the radar screen between these bursts. If the radar beam strikes an object such as an airplane, a ship, or the shoreline, it bounces back toward the radar receiver. Here it shows up on the screen of the radarscope as a



a fourth signal, which will produce only a black and white picture in regular tubes. For pictures in color, a three-color tube is needed. This tube blends the three color signals into one true full-color picture.

spot of light. The radar wave is like an echo.

The idea is quite similar to the old trick of river captains, who went along tooting their foghorns. By listening for and timing the echo, they could guess their distance from the shore. But now the guesswork is out. All a pilot needs to do now when he is fogbound is to keep his eyes on the screen of the radarscope. It is marked off with circles to show the range or distance. The size and shape of the spots on the screen tell the trained observer what kind of object is in his path. Outlines of land areas are so clear that their pattern on the radar screen looks like a map (Fig. 318).

Ground Control of Approach

Radar can be useful for many jobs. It is used by the army, navy, and air forces to locate targets and to give warning of attacks. It may also be used to find certain kinds of storms and to guide airplanes coming in for a landing in bad weather. The system of ground control of approach, or GCA, has saved many planes that otherwise would have crashed because the pilot could not see the landing strip through the fog. GCA uses radar to track the plane and uses radio to inform the pilot of his position. The pilot is then "talked down" by radio until he has landed his ship.

The Last Word

As this book goes to press, color television and magnetic tape recording of television programs are the last word in exchanging ideas. Where do we go from here? Some say newspapers may be printed in our own homes by radio. Others are working on an undersea telephone cable to connect Europe and North America. Maybe we will soon be carrying personal radios no larger than a man's

DO NOT USE THIS DOOR TO CLOSE THE DOOR

USAF PHOTO

318 This GCA unit is shown in use in Korea by the Fifth U. S. Air Force. It helps pilots land their planes in bad weather. The radar screens show the operator the plane's exact position.

wallet. Two-way radio-telephone service to moving automobiles, ships, and trains is already in use. Research will doubtless bring new developments in communication and better ways to exchange and preserve ideas. The end is not yet, as you may see in "Unfinished Business," pp. 581–583.

Looking into the far-distant future, scientists have built a burglarproof vault in Georgia which may preserve many ideas about our civilization for more than 6,000 years. To make sure that the scientists of the eighty-second century find this vault, Dr. T. K. Peters, who was mainly responsible for building and stocking it, has had this message printed in many languages and distributed over the world:

> Near a place once known as Atlanta, Georgia, there was a house of learning known as Oglethorpe University . . . . [Here careful directions are given for finding the site of the university.] If the 82nd-century scientists will dig at the right spot, they will come upon a stone vault 20 × 10 × 10 feet guarded by a door of stainless steel. In this vault will be found writings and objects of great value, amongst them the best examples of civilization and knowledge known to the world from the time of the death of Christ to the mid-20th century.

Dr. Peters realizes that 6,000 years from now no present building of ordinary construction will remain standing. But the vault has a good chance of remaining intact. Inside the vault are small stainless steel models of our most useful inventions: typewriters, radios, engines, automobiles, airplanes, and so on. The scientists were able to include several thousand books, songs, maps, and other records on film. For instance, an entire encyclopedia was recorded on film and sealed in a small can. Also in the vault are motion pictures, filmstrips, and records of music and speeches which can be played on a phonograph. Will these records survive? Will they be the last word of all the ideas we have exchanged? No one knows. But we feel sure that progress in finding new ways to exchange ideas and better ideas to exchange will go on and on — even beyond the eighty-second century.

LOOKING BACK

Tool Words

Here are some of the key words to the big ideas in this chapter. In your notebook, match these words with their meanings below by writing the correct meaning after each word. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

electron gun
image
photographic positive
photographic negative
persistence of vision
photoelectric cell
radar
image orthicon
Kinescope

1. the part of a television tube which releases and aims the electron beam
2. the picture tube in a television receiver
3. a television camera tube
4. a picture in which black objects appear white and white objects appear black
5. a device for making an electric current by shining a light upon it
6. a likeness on a screen
7. an effect which lets us keep a mental image of things seen for $\frac{1}{16}$ of a second after they have gone from our sight
8. a print made from a photographic negative
9. radio detection and ranging apparatus

Test Yourself

In your notebook, complete the following sentences with the correct word or phrase. DO NOT MARK THIS BOOK.

1. Muybridge made the first pictures of . . . by allowing a horse to trip the shutters of a set of . . . .
2. When developed, a piece of photographic paper or film turns . . . or . . . wherever light has hit it.
3. The light colors of an object appear . . . on a photographic negative.
4. The effect of motion as you see it in the movies is an . . . .
5. Motion in a moving picture is due to the projection of the images of one picture after another in . . . of a second or less.
6. The light that passes through the sound track of a sound-on-film motion picture strikes a . . . cell.
7. The first mechanical talking machine was invented by . . . .
8. Modern tape recorders change . . . energy into . . . energy during the playback.
9. The tube that is the "seeing eye" in a television camera is called an . . . .
10. The image-reproducing tube in a television set is called the picture tube or . . . .
11. Radar means . . . .
12. The spots on a radar screen are really caused by the . . . of the radar beam.

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WO
Dept. of Extension
SERVICE.
CALCUTTA-27

GOING FURTHER

In the Laboratory and Field

1. *Using an electric eye.* If your teacher has a photoelectric cell and the necessary parts to go with it, set it up so that it will automatically count the pupils as they enter your classroom. You might even rig a burglar alarm to protect valuable property in the school or in your home. Think up other uses for this apparatus and test them.

2. *Persistence of vision.* Draw a picture of someone or something on one side of a card and a television receiver screen on the other side of the card. Attach strings, twirl the card, and see if the picture appears to be on the television screen.

3. *Making a flip booklet.* Make a movie booklet of something in motion, such as an airplane taking off or landing. First cut out 30 or 40 pieces of blank paper 1 inch × 2 inches. On each draw a picture of the same object or scene but in a slightly more advanced stage of motion. Fasten the entire set of drawings together at one edge, as shown in Fig. 310. Then, holding the booklet in one hand, run a finger of the other hand across the open edge of the booklet. You'll see a movie.

4. *Seeing television afterglow.* The chemicals that are coated on the inside of a television tube glow brightly for only an instant, but they glow faintly for quite a while after the set has been turned off if the set has been in use for a few minutes. Make sure the room in which you have your television receiver is completely dark after you turn off your receiver some night. Note how long the glow continues.

Put on Your Thinking Cap

1. What things would you regard as most important to put into a vault to be opened in the year 8,000?

2. Why is it important for color television programs to be received as black, gray, and white images on old receivers?

3. How may the use of magnetic tape recordings of television programs aid in the exchange of ideas?

Adding to Your Library

1. *Television Works Like This* by Jeanne and Robert Bendick, Whittlesey House, McGraw-Hill, 1954. The revised edition of this book is fun and really up to date.

2. *Radio and Television Bibliography* by Gertrude G. Broderick, Federal Security Agency, Washington, D.C., 1952 (25 cents). So much has been written on this subject that we cannot list all the books here and, therefore, recommend this bibliography, which includes all aspects of radio and television.

3. *Using the Tape Recorder*, Curriculum Bulletin 6, 1952–1953 Series, New York City Board of Education. This booklet of forty pages is beautifully illustrated with photographs showing how to thread, use, and rewind a tape recorder. Anyone who wants to use a tape recorder in school work will find a wealth of information in this booklet.

A Bit of Research

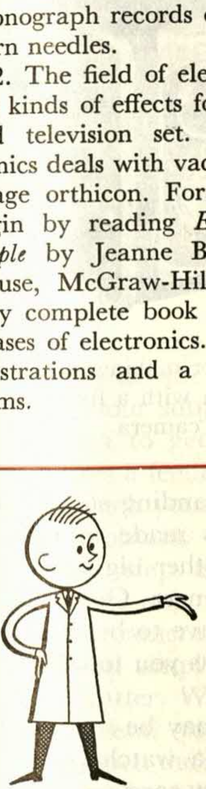
1. Examine a brand-new phonograph needle under a microscope and compare

it with other needles which you have used for various lengths of time. Find out if you can how much damage is done to phonograph records of various kinds by worn needles.

2. The field of electronics deals with the kinds of effects found in your radio and television set. Particularly, electronics deals with vacuum tubes like the image orthicon. For help in this field begin by reading *Electronics for Young People* by Jeanne Bendick, Whittlesey House, McGraw-Hill, 1947. This is a very complete book on the elementary phases of electronics. It has many good illustrations and a fine dictionary of terms.

Careers for You

Get a book, such as *Your Career in Motion Pictures, Radio, and Television* by Charles Reed Jones, Sheridan House, New York, 1949, and study the job possibilities in each of these three fields. Remember that there may be only a few jobs for performers before the cameras but there are fine jobs with steady employment in the fields of production, repair, and construction of these tools for communication. Anyone who likes electricity and electronics should look into the growing demand for experts in this field. There are opportunities for both men and women.



PHOTOGRAPHY AS A hobby

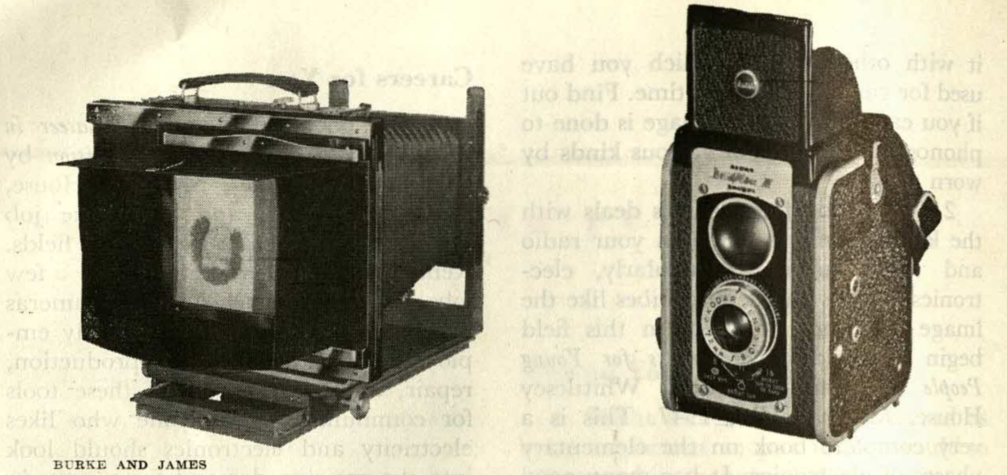
This section is written for the beginner in photography whose aim is to be more than a shutter snapper. But this section is just the beginning of your work as an amateur photographer. After you read it, you will need to go to the books listed at the end of the section.

There are two main steps in photography: first, taking the picture; then finishing it. Finishing includes developing the film, printing the picture, and mounting it on a suitable background. The final test of your work is the pleasure and pride it gives you and the praise you receive from others. It is a wonderful feeling to have one of your own photographs displayed in an exhibit or published.

Types of Cameras

Sometimes the beginner has no choice but has to use a camera he has been given. Sometimes he has an expensive camera and sometimes a cheap one. In either case, his first job is to inspect it inside and out. Commandment number one for the photographer is: Know thy camera.

A pinhole camera (Fig. 307) is the least expensive and the least useful type, but you should own one. A sample of a picture taken with a pinhole camera is shown in Fig. 307. A pinhole camera usually has no lens, but only a pinhole to let in the light. This hole is covered with a *shutter* which is moved away when you are



BURKE AND JAMES

319 *Left*, an expensive view camera is excellent for copying work or making portraits. The long bellows allows different kinds of focusing. *Right*, a box camera with a fixed focus and reflex-type viewfinder. It is not to be confused with a true twin-lens camera.

ready to take the picture. The camera must be loaded with film pre-cut to the right size. The loading is done by opening the box in a dark room or closet, putting in a piece of film, and closing the box again. This must be done each time a picture is taken.

Even with the fastest film, long time exposures of 30 seconds or more must be made, depending upon the brightness of the subject. Naturally more time — a longer exposure — will be needed to make a picture of a dark subject or one that is poorly lighted. Houses, parked cars, or an airplane on the ground are suitable subjects for a pinhole camera. Moving objects will not photograph at all, or they will appear blurred. For these you will need a lens camera.

Not all lens cameras can take good pictures of moving subjects. The lens and shutter must act fast enough to "stop" the action. Such pictures must be made in $\frac{1}{50}$ or $\frac{1}{100}$ of a second or less. The speed of the shutter of an ordinary box camera is about $\frac{1}{40}$ second. This is enough to let you take pictures of people or animals in very slow motion or standing still. A lens camera usually is made to use roll film, which is another big advantage over a pinhole camera. One loading, which does not have to be done in a dark room, permits you to take eight or more pictures.

Lens cameras may be so tiny that they will fit into a watch pocket or will fold up for easy carrying. Others, called view cameras (Fig. 319), have ground-glass screens upon which a picture may be carefully focused before the film is put in place. Some smaller view cameras can be used in different ways. They are very popular with news photographers.

Two other types of cameras are also very popular. One is the reflex, which has two lenses — one for making the picture and one for focusing. The other popular camera is the miniature or candid camera which is small, complex, and expensive. For an expert, a fine miniature camera is a wonderful tool, but we do not recommend it for the beginner. A reflex or reflex-type box camera is fine for anyone (Fig. 319).

Using Your Camera

It is hard to think of a better way to use scientific thinking than when taking pictures with a camera. First, you must be sure your subject is properly lighted. How to do this is beyond the scope of this section, but the references at the end of it on p. 580 will give you many helpful suggestions. Let us assume that your subject is properly lighted. What is the next step?

The second step is to compose your picture artistically. This means to arrange your subject and to place your camera to get the best effect. This requires a feeling for good composition, which your art teacher can help you to obtain.

The next step is to focus your camera upon the subject. With a simple box camera, no focusing is possible. You simply stand still and snap the shutter. With the more expensive camera, you have to focus before you open the shutter. Focusing means to make a sharp image fall upon the film. To focus is not difficult because there is a device on every good camera through which you can look while you are focusing. The important thing is not to forget this step in your hurry to take pictures rapidly one after another. Sometimes better pictures are made by focusing sharply upon the main object of interest and allowing the background to be slightly out of focus.

You must also remember to use the right lens opening and shutter speed, if several choices are allowed. Now you can really experiment. Take a series of pictures of the same subject with all the different openings and speeds there are on your camera. Keep careful notes on each picture. In this way you will find out what the best combinations are for the kind of film you are using. Again, we refer you to the books listed at the end of this section for the choice of film. There are films of many kinds, and each has a special use.

Processing the Film

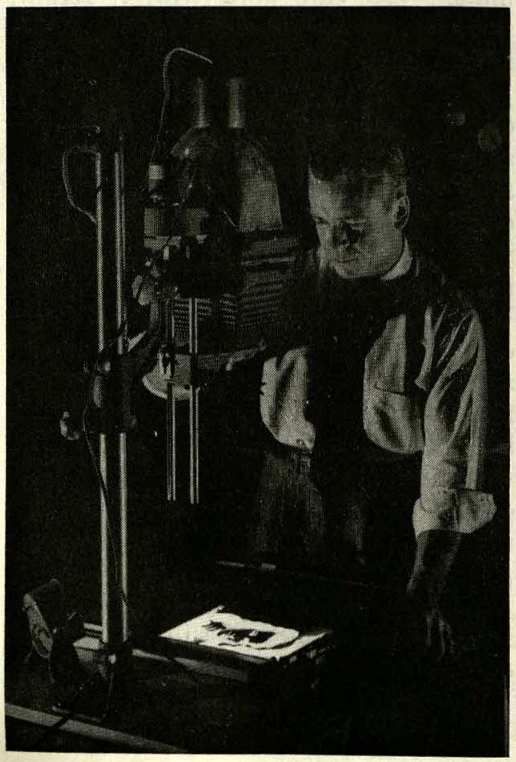
In the very beginning, your best idea is to let an expert process your films for you. But some day you will want to process them yourself. How do you go about it? First, you must select a suitable place — the kitchen, bathroom, or a real darkroom. If your room was not built as a darkroom, you must make it completely dark before you start to process your film. If your film is marked "panchromatic," you will have to work in complete darkness the whole time, using only your sense of touch. If your film is marked "orthochromatic" you can work with a red safelight turned on. This kind of film is not spoiled by red light.

Strictly speaking, the processing of your negative begins when you snap the shutter. The result of this simple act will be a negative that is correctly or incorrectly exposed. If you let too much light strike the negative, you will overexpose it. Your negative will come out of the chemical baths looking thick, dense, and heavy. The print you make from it will look washed out and very light. On the other hand, if you let too little light strike the negative during the exposure, the negative will be thin and transparent and the print made from it will be very dark.

But let us suppose you exposed the film correctly while it was in the camera. Will it look right when it has been put through the chemical baths? Yes, it will, if you are careful. But if you are not careful, you can damage the negative in the process. Unless you have a special reason for underdeveloping or overdeveloping a negative, you should try to develop the film just right. This means watching the time and temperature carefully. The time is given to you by the manufacturer. The temperature you must control. Developer acts faster when it is warm. If possible, keep it cool (68° F.) and clear. Now go ahead.

The general procedure is the same for most film. First, the film is given a bath in a developer. This is a chemical solution placed in either a tray or light-tight tank into which the film has been loaded. When a tray is used, hold the film by the ends and run it back and forth through the bath. This must be done carefully to avoid leaving one part of the film in the bath longer than another. Do not let the film touch another part of the film because it will stick and tear. For this reason, tank developing is the method many people prefer. Be sure of one thing if you use a tank: the spool on which the film is loaded must be *completely* dry before the film is allowed to touch it. If it is wet, the gelatin coating on the film will become sticky and tear.

320 The first step in making an enlarged print is to put the negative in an enlarger like this one. Then focus the image on a piece of paper held in a masking frame.



The developer bath finishes the job begun by the light rays during exposure. This bath deposits a coating of silver on the film wherever the light rays struck the chemicals of the film itself. When the developer has done its work, its action is stopped by a rinse in plain water. Next the film is washed in a hypo bath. *Hypo* is the common name for the chemical that is used. It removes from the film all the light-sensitive chemicals that were not struck by light rays at the time the exposure was made. This part of the process ends when the film has become clear enough to see through. However, to make sure the job has been done properly, twice this amount of time is usually allowed for the hypo bath. This is called fixing. If not fixed properly, the picture will soon darken and fade.

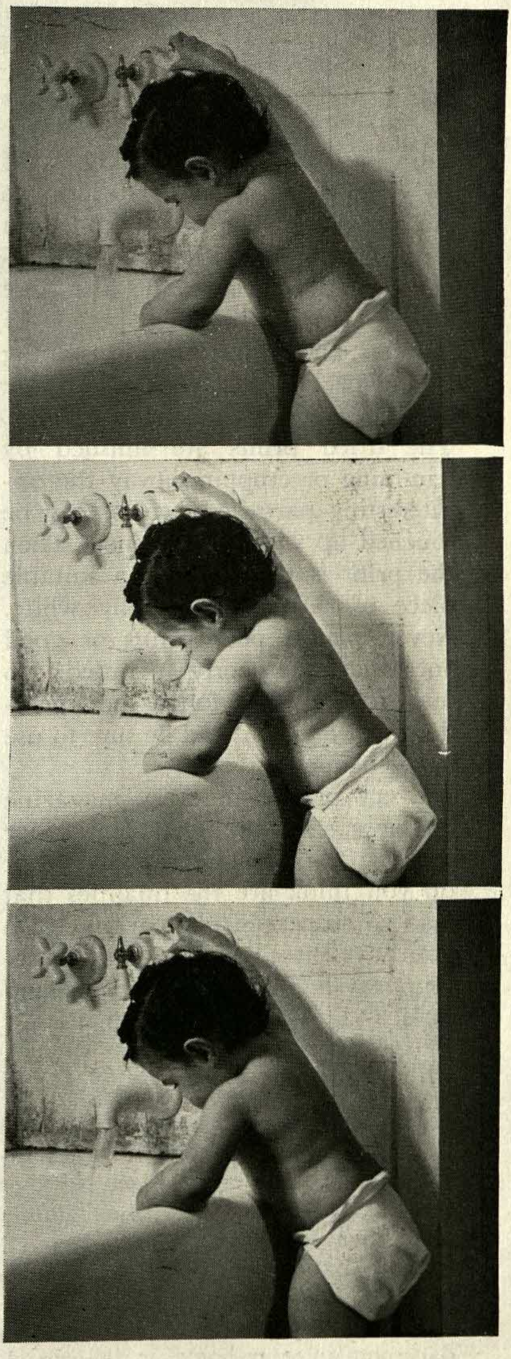
The acid in the hypo bath hardens the coating of gelatin. To finish the process, the film is washed for a long time in running water. An hour of this, and you are ready to hang the film up to dry. Put a weight on the end to prevent it from curling. After a few hours the film is ready to cut into separate negatives or into strips.

Printing by Contact or Projection

By the time you have processed your negatives, you feel your goal is in sight, but you still have to make the prints. The easiest way is to make a contact print as described on p. 559. If you own an enlarger, you can put the negative in the path of a beam of light which is then projected like a lantern slide on a piece of enlargement paper (Fig. 320). The light is turned off when the photographer thinks that the paper has been exposed long enough to the rays of light. No one can tell you exactly how long to expose a contact paper or enlargement paper to the light. You will have to learn by experience to time the exposure correctly. The time depends upon the kind of negative, the kind of paper, and the strength of the light. To save costly paper, it is best to make test strips.

Test strips are made by cutting print papers into strips 1 inch wide. First expose the entire strip for 1 second. Then cover up a portion and expose the rest of the strip for another second. Continue to cover up and expose small portions of the strip at intervals of 2, 4, 8, 16, and 32 seconds. This testing in the long run will save you time and money.

You can make the best prints by choosing the correct grade of printing paper. Printing papers are graded as hard, medium, or soft. For normal negatives, medium hard papers are used. For flat and thin negatives, use hard papers. Number 1 and 2 grades are soft, 3 is normal or medium, and 4 and 5 are hard. Figure 321 shows you the difference between prints made with the correct type of paper and those that were not.



321 Prints should be made on the correct grade of paper. *Top*, print is too soft and gray. *Center*, in this print, details are lost because the contrasts are too sharp. *Bottom*, correct print has full range of tones.

No matter how the exposure is made, the processing of prints is similar. Trays of developer, water (stop bath), and hypo (fixing bath) are arranged in a row. The print is held in the developer for the length of time recommended by the manufacturer. It is held in the first rinse for 15 seconds, in the hypo for 15 minutes, and then washed in running water for an hour. The prints are dried between blotters or in a dryer. The dried prints are finished by trimming or cropping away the uninteresting parts. Any spots may be touched up with a soft pencil. Then the print is mounted on a suitable piece of cardboard, usually white. Never exhibit poor prints or good ones that are poorly mounted. To make a good print, follow the suggestions made above, and be sure to use fresh chemicals.

Every picture in every magazine or newspaper brought pleasure or profit to some photographer. What do you think are the qualities that lead to success in photography? Do you have these qualities? If so, photography is for you. Try your hand at it and see how much fun it is.

Things to Do

1. *Building a darkroom.* Write to the School Service Bureau of either the Eastman Kodak Co. at Rochester, N.Y., or to the Agfa Ansco Corp. at Binghamton, N.Y. They will send you upon request the information you will need for building an efficient darkroom. With the information thus obtained, construct a darkroom in your home, in the school, or in a community center.

2. *Photographs for articles.* Write an article on some aspect of photography and try to sell it. You may not succeed at first, but you will learn a great deal by making the attempt. Start by studying the kind of pictures and ideas that are published by magazines such as the *Popular Science Monthly* or *Scientific American.* Then locate an interesting piece of craft work or a gadget that someone has invented. Interview the person and take pictures of his invention. In less than 500 words tell how others might make use of the idea. Submit the idea to a magazine with four or five excellent photographs of the project. Glossy prints 8 × 10 inches are preferred. You may be thrilled to discover that your work has market value, and you will be on your way to a paying pastime or possibly a career.

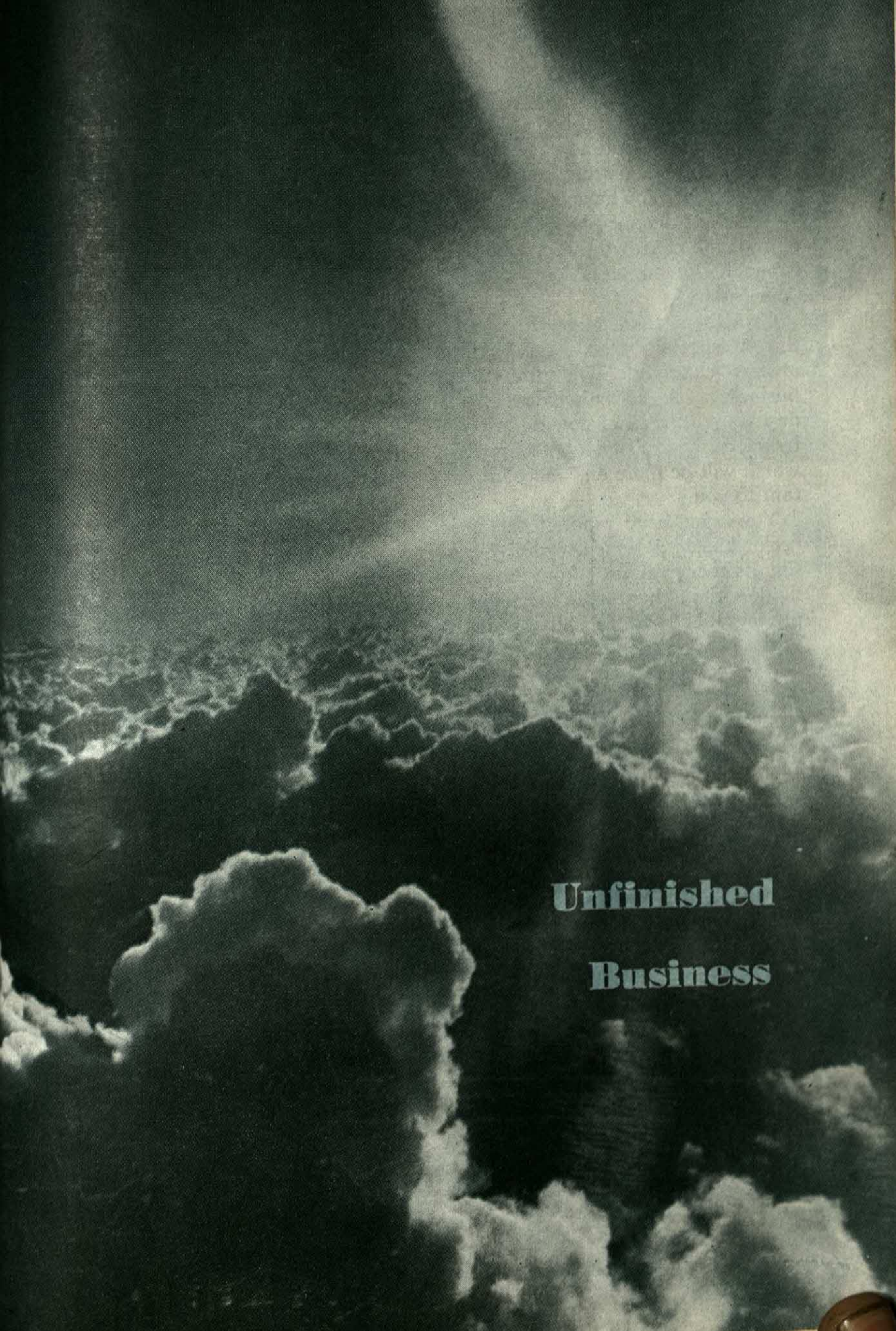
3. *School projects.* As soon as you can get your darkroom equipment and camera set up and you know how to take good pictures, look for a school or community event to photograph. For example, you may take class pictures for your school newspaper or yearbook. Various organizations in your community may welcome your help in the preparation of posters, favors, and exhibits.

Reading for the Amateur Photographer

1. Eastman Kodak Company Data Books on *Photographic Papers*, *Lens Accessories*, *Lenses and Shutters*, *Negative Materials*, *Color Photography*, and *Infrared Photography*. Also *Developing, Printing and Enlarging*, and *How to Make Good Pictures.*

2. *New Guide to Better Photography* by Berenice Abbott, Crown Publishers, 1953 edition. This contains up-to-date facts about exposure, developing, printing, lighting, and color photography.

3. *Photography* (2 volumes), U.S. Navy, 1947, Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. Volume 1 deals with fundamentals of photography, explaining light and lenses, view and hand cameras, negatives, developing, printing, chemicals and solutions, and many other phases useful to beginners in this hobby.



Unfinished Business

What's New Under the Sun?

You have just finished a year's work in science, and a year of life as well. But in a real sense you haven't *finished* a year. You have *begun* another — based on the one past. This is true of any kind of growth, where the past is but the base upon which you build your future.

Growth means change. In science this is especially true, for science is always changing. The unfinished business of science is discovery. Every day you will read of new discoveries by scientists. Let's take one discovery which will be more and more important to you.

You may have read of the new "solar battery," which works by getting its energy directly from the sun's light — the light you see so radiantly photographed on the other side of this page.

Electricity from Sunlight

How can sunlight make electricity? Scientists found the answer in the metal silicon. First, they made a strip of the pure metal as thin as a razor blade (bottom, p. 583). Then they placed the strip in sunlight. As soon as light struck the silicon strip, it set loose a small flow of electrons (electric current). This electric current stopped flowing as soon as the strip was taken out of the sunlight.

The Solar Battery

To get a greater current of electricity, the scientists of the Bell Telephone Company (G. L. Pearson, D. M. Chapin, and C. S. Fuller) then connected several of the silicon strips. In this way they made what is called a *solar battery.* When placed in sunlight, the solar battery made a current of electricity strong enough to send voices over telephone wires and to run small radio transmitters. It is estimated that one square yard of silicon strips in a solar battery would give enough electricity to light a 60-watt electric light bulb.

Then why not build solar batteries big enough to save our coal and oil and water power that we now use for making electricity? There are two good reasons why it will be a long time before such batteries can be built. First, the solar battery can make electricity only in the daytime, although it can be used to charge storage batteries that will yield electricity during the night. Second, it would take over 60 acres of land to make a solar battery big enough to make the same amount of electricity that our smallest electric plant yields, using coal for power. However, since sunlight gives each day to the earth more energy than we have in all our known coal and oil reserves, it is entirely possible that we shall some day find a cheap way of tapping this great source of power.

This story of the solar battery could not be put into the book you have just read because it is still being developed. It is part of the unfinished business of this book, and of science. It is part of the science you will read in your daily newspapers, hear over the radio, and see on television. It is part of the science you will take in your future courses in biology, chemistry, and physics in your high school — and possibly college — days.

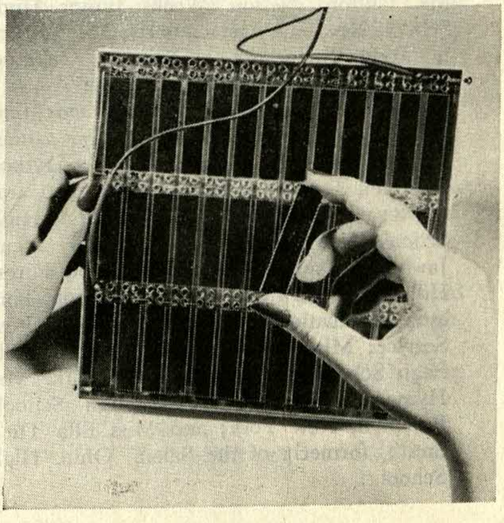
Dr. D. M. Chapin, one of the inventors of the solar battery, testing the battery by exposing it to the sun. *Below*, Dr. Chapin with his co-inventors, G. L. Pearson (*left*) and C. S. Fuller (*right*), watch the needle of the meter connected to the battery. The needle has moved.

BELL TELEPHONE LABORATORIES

You will read in your newspapers and magazines many other new discoveries in science. For instance, as this book goes to press, scientists at Arco, Idaho, are developing a small nuclear reactor. It is meant to be taken by plane to be used to make electricity on islands where electricity is not easy to get. Soon man may become the master of atomic energy in much the same way that he learned to use coal and oil.

"Very well," you say, "we are safe. Our scientists will solve our problems for us." *Nothing could be further from the truth.*

Scientists can and do solve *their* problems. Only you and the millions of people like you can solve *your problems and the problems of society.* Scientists can give you tools, but *you* must use them. Scientists, for example, can tell you what to do to stay healthy, but only *you* can do it. Scientific information is of little value unless it is put to use to serve ourselves, to fight disease, to overcome prejudice and superstition. Science has its limitations. Scientists cannot, and do not, solve all the problems of society. *Only you, working with your fellows, can do that.* This is what "You and Science" means.



The solar battery. In the hand is one of the silicon strips. This battery has 39 strips. Do you see the wires leading from the battery? They carry the electric current.

Acknowledgments

Contributors of suggestions based on study of the 1952 edition of SCIENCE FOR BETTER LIVING: Complete Course: Miss Dorothy Abel, High School, Brookline, Massachusetts; Miss Marjorie Abel, Devotion School, Brookline, Massachusetts; Mr. Paul E. Blackwood, U.S. Office of Education, Specialist for Elementary Science, Washington, D.C.; Miss Olga Blasser, Runkle School, Brookline, Massachusetts; Mrs. Inez L. B. Clough, St. Margaret's School, Waterbury, Connecticut; Mr. H. M. Demuth, Medina High School, Medina, Ohio; Miss Emma Elliott, Lawrence School, Brookline, Massachusetts; Mr. Morris Frank, Public School 142, Jamaica, New York; Mrs. Paul Johnson, St. Louis Park High School, St. Louis Park, Minnesota; Mr. Lorenzo Lisonbee, North Phoenix High School, Phoenix, Arizona; Miss Ida Lynch, Pierce School, Brookline, Massachusetts; Mr. Robert B. Todd, Supervisor of Science, Oakland Public Schools, Oakland, California.

Readers of manuscript of YOU AND SCIENCE: Mr. Paul E. Blackwood, U.S. Office of Education, Specialist for Elementary Science, Washington, D.C.; Mrs. Paul Johnson, St. Louis Park High School, St. Louis Park, Minnesota; Sister Mary Joan, Academy of Our Lady of Good Counsel, White Plains, New York; Miss Evelyn Morholt, Forest Hills High School, Forest Hills, New York; Mr. Norman Nathanson, Nathan Hale Junior High School, Norwalk, Connecticut; Mr. Clifford Nelson, Weeks Junior High School, Newton, Massachusetts; Mr. Robert B. Todd, Supervisor of Science, Oakland Public Schools, Oakland, California.

The authors also wish to acknowledge their gratitude to those whose inspiration in making possible the publication of SCIENCE FOR BETTER LIVING: Complete Course *has carried over to* YOU AND SCIENCE: Miss Edna Craig, Newburgh High School, Newburgh, New York; Dr. Irene Jaworski, Forest Hills High School, Forest Hills, New York; Dr. C. W. Mattison, Forestry Education Consultant, U.S. Forest Service; Miss Evelyn Morholt, Forest Hills High School, Forest Hills, New York; Mr. Hyman Ruchlis, Bushwick High School, Brooklyn, New York; and Miss Ella Thea Smith, formerly of the Salem, Ohio, High School.

PICTURE ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Illustrations not accompanied by a credit line came from the following sources:

Cover photograph: nuclear reactor, Atomic Energy Commission; *student*, William J. Carter

Unit openings: pp. 274–75: *left*, USAF; *right*, Brookhaven National Laboratory

Chapter openings

p. 17: Standard Oil Co. (N.J.)
p. 33: Athletic Institute, Chicago
p. 54: Wide World
p. 79: *figure*, Bloom from Monkmeyer
p: 100: *microphotos*, Federal Security Agency and General Biological Supply House; *electron microscope*, U.S. Steel
p. 118: U.S. Public Health Service
p. 159: Air Research Manufacturing Corp.
p. 185: General Electric Co.
p. 206: Philip Gendreau
p. 219: U.S. Navy
p. 243: Boy Scouts of America
p. 256: Socony-Vacuum Oil Co.
p. 276: INP
p. 290: Lookout Mountain Laboratory, USAF
p. 315: Helen Faye and Stanley Rice
p. 328: Jones & Laughlin Steel Co.
p. 352: Hugh Spencer
p. 371: *left*, Standard Oil Co. (N.J.); *right*, Philadelphia Electric Corp.
p. 385: Charles Aqua Viva
p. 407: U.S. Forest Service
p. 434: Robert Yarnall Richie
p. 455: Standard Oil Co. (N.J.)
p. 483: National Film Board of Canada
p. 514: Livermore Falls High School, Maine
p. 427: Bausch & Lomb Optical Co.
p. 541: *figure*, U.S. Navy; and *radarscope*, Paul Weller
p. 556: National Broadcasting Co.

Unfinished Business

p. 581: Monkmeyer

Fig. 48, p. 112: Frederick Lewis

Fig. 279, p. 501: *left*, Trans World Airlines, Lockheed Aircraft Corp., Consolidated Vultee Aircraft Corp.; *right*, U.S. Army, Consolidated Vultee Aircraft Corp., Smithsonian Institution, Consolidated Vultee Aircraft Corp. (2)

Glossary

absorption: the passing of digested food through the walls of the villi in the small intestine into the surrounding lymph or blood

acceleration (ak-sel-uh-RAY-shun): the change in speed when anything is made to go faster

accommodation: the change in shape of the lens of the eye so that a person can see things both near and far

acoustics (uh-KOO-stiks): the science dealing with the study of sound

acquired trait: a characteristic which is not inherited (or inborn) but is developed during the life of a plant or animal

adaptation: having the body structures and body activities necessary to live in a certain environment

aeration (AY-er-ay-shun): supplying with air

aerial: *See* antenna

aileron (AY-ler-on): a flap set in the edge of the wings of an airplane to control its course

air conditioning: a system of controlling the temperature, pressure, and humidity of air entering a room

air mass: a large body of air having the same temperature, pressure, and humidity

alloy (AL-oi): a substance composed of two or more metals; for example, bronze

alternating current: an electric current that changes its direction in regular cycles

altimeter (al-TIM-uh-ter): an instrument used to measure height above the earth's surface

ampere (AM-peer): the amount of electrons that pass a given point in an electric conductor (for example, a wire) in 1 second; the unit for measuring the strength of an electric current

amphibian (am-FIB-ee-un): one of a class of vertebrates, including frogs and toads, that pass through a stage in which they live in water and have gills; later, when these vertebrates move to land, the gills are replaced by lungs

amplifier (AM-plih-fy-er): a device in a radio set that makes weak electric currents stronger

amplitude (AM-plih-tood): refers to the height of a wave (for instance, a sound wave) produced by a vibrating object

anemia (uh-NEE-mee-uh): a disease caused by lack of iron or not enough red blood cells in the blood, or not enough hemoglobin

anemometer (an-uh-MOM-uh-ter): an instrument used for measuring the force or speed of the wind

aneroid (AN-er-oyd) **barometer:** a type of barometer which does not use mercury or any other liquid; the metal can in which there is a partial vacuum reacts to changes in pressure

angle of attack: the angle of an airplane's wing as it pushes against air

annular (an-YOO-ler) **eclipse:** an eclipse in which a ring of the sun appears around the black disk of the moon

anopheles (an-OFF-uh-leez) **mosquito:** a mosquito that carries the protozoon parasite which causes malaria

antenna: a wire or wires for transmitting or receiving electromagnetic waves

anther: the part of the flower in which the pollen is produced

antibiotic (an-tee-by-OT-ik): any substance which destroys germs and is made by living organisms, such as fungus Penicillium

antibody: a substance, usually in the blood of an organism, which serves to counteract the effects of disease-producing bacteria

antiseptic: a substance that opposes the activity of germs

antitoxin: any substance in the body that neutralizes toxins produced by bacteria

aorta (AY-or-tuh): the great artery which carries blood from the heart to all the body except the lungs

appendix: a wormlike, narrow tube, about 3 or 4 inches long, in the lower righthand part of the abdomen

Archimedes' (ahr-kih-MEE-deez) **principle:** a law which states that an object, when placed in a liquid, is buoyed upward by a force equal to the weight of the liquid displaced by the object

armature (AHR-muh-cher): a piece of metal or a coil of wire that moves back and forth, or rotates, in a magnetic field

artery: one of the blood vessels which carry blood from the heart through the body

artesian (ar-TEE-zhun) **well:** a well drilled through rock layers from which water flows upward under pressure

ascorbic (as-KOR-bik) **acid:** vitamin C found in citrus fruits, tomatoes, and green vegetables

asexual (ay-SEK-shoo-ul) **reproduction:** producing offspring as a result of the division of parent cells one at a time

asteroid (AS-ter-oyd): one of a group of small planets between Mars and Jupiter, of which about 1,500 have been listed; estimated number runs to 30,000 or more

atmosphere: the whole mass of air surrounding the earth

atom: the smallest particle of an element that has properties of that element

atomic fission: the breaking down of an atom, especially its nucleus, into two or more parts, with a great release of energy

atomic fusion: the joining of deuterium (heavy hydrogen) and tritium (another form of heavy hydrogen) to make helium

atomic pile: a mass of uranium rods, imbedded in pure carbon, that produces a chain reaction and releases atomic energy

atomic weight: the weight of an atom of any element compared with the weight of an atom of oxygen, which is set at 16

aureomycin (or-ih-oh-MY-sin): a chemical produced by certain soil bacteria, useful against infection in the human body

auricle: a chamber of the heart which receives blood from the veins

axis: an imaginary line through the earth's poles

bacillus (buh-SIL-us) (pl., bacilli): any of the straight, rod-shaped bacteria

bacteria: microscopic, one-celled organisms depending on living or dead food material; many cause disease; some are helpful

balance in nature: the interdependence of all plants and animals with their environment

barograph (BAIR-uh-graf): an instrument which measures changes in air pressure and records them on a graph

barometer (buh-ROM-uh-ter): an instrument for measuring air pressure

behavior: the way a living thing acts

beriberi (BEHR-ee-BEHR-ee): a disease caused by a diet lacking vitamin B_1 (thiamine)

bile: a greenish fluid which is secreted by the liver and passes into the small intestine, where it aids in the digestion of fats

bladder: a part of the body that is a sac, holding a liquid such as bile or urine

blast furnace: a furnace in which pig iron is made from iron ore

blood transfusion: the transferring of the blood from one person to another

brain: the main center of the human nervous system, made up of a cerebrum, cerebellum, and medulla

breeder reactor: a nuclear reactor in which more atomic fuel is made than is used up

bronchial (BRONK-ee-ul) **tube:** one of the two branches of the windpipe that divide again and again, finally ending in a group of thin-walled air sacs

cadmium: a white metal that is used to control the flow of neutrons in an atomic pile

calcium: a silvery-white, soft metal; in compounds it is useful in the growth of bones

calorie: the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water 1 degree centigrade (a large calorie is 1,000 small calories). Large calories are used in measuring food diets

cancer: an abnormal, harmful growth of cells

capillary (KAP-'l-air-ee): a thin-walled tube; one of the tiny blood vessels in the network connecting the arteries and the veins

carbohydrate: a compound, such as sugar or starch, made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen

carbon dioxide: a heavy, colorless gas which is a result of burning of food

carbon monoxide: a colorless, odorless, poisonous gas formed when gasoline does not burn completely in a gasoline engine; a part of illuminating gas (cooking gas)

carnivores (KAHR-nih-vohrs): the flesh-eating animals

carrier wave: a radio wave that carries a broadcast from the transmitting antenna to the aerial of a radio receiver

cartilage: an elastic, yet hard, tissue composing most of the skeleton of the very young of all vertebrates; found in the ear, nose, and breastbone of adults

cast iron: brittle iron that is usually cast in molds

cell: the smallest microscopic body of which a many-celled living thing is made; it has a nucleus, cytoplasm, and a cell membrane

cell membrane: the thin outer layer of cytoplasm acting as a cell boundary

cement: a mixture of clay and limestone used in making concrete for building

centigrade thermometer: a thermometer that has 100 degrees or divisions between the freezing and boiling points of water; 0° C. is the freezing point, and 100° C. is the boiling point

central heating: a method of heating an entire building from one central furnace, usually located in the basement

cerebellum (ser-uh-BEL-um): the part of the brain controlling balance and the movement of muscles

cerebrum (SEH-ruh-brum): the part of the brain concerned with thought and judgment

chain reaction: the reaction in which the splitting of one atom causes other atoms to undergo fission

chemical change: a reaction during which substances lose their identity and change their composition; energy changes always take place during a chemical reaction

chemistry: the science that deals with the make-up of substances and how they are changed into other substances

chlorination: the treatment of water with chlorine to kill germs

chlorophyll (KLOR-uh-fil): a substance which enables green plants to make glucose

chloroplast (KLOR-uh-plast): a small green body which contains chlorophyll, located in the cytoplasm of a plant cell

chromium: a grayish-white, metallic element used in making alloys and in plating metals

chromosome (KROH-muh-sohm): one of the small, generally rod-shaped, bodies found in a cell nucleus; it contains the genes which transmit hereditary traits

circulatory system: of or relating to circulation, as of the blood through the body

cirrus (SIH-rus) **cloud:** a white, filmy type of cloud, usually formed at altitudes of 20,000 to 40,000 feet, generally consisting of ice crystals

clay: finely ground quartz, feldspar, and mica; a result of the erosion of rocks

cloud chamber: an instrument used to trace the paths of atomic particles

clutch: a device that engages or disengages the transmission from the engine of an automobile

coccus (KOK-us) (pl., cocci): a spherical bacterium

cochlea (KOK-lee-uh): a coil-like structure in the inner ear which helps in distinguishing sounds

cold front: the boundary between a mass of advancing cool air and a mass of warm air

comet: a heavenly body with a head and tail, traveling in a long, oval orbit; for example, Halley's comet

communicable (kuh-MYOO-nih-kuh-b'l) **disease:** disease which may be transmitted from one person to another

compound: a substance composed of two or more elements chemically united

concave (kon-KAYV) **lens:** a lens which makes light rays spread apart

conclusion: a judgment reached after studying the results of an experiment

concrete: a mixture of sand or gravel with cement and water, which becomes hard as rock

condensation: the process of forming a liquid or solid from a vapor or gas

conditioned reflex: an acquired automatic act, a result of modifying a reflex

conduction: the transmission of heat through a substance by the rapid movement of its molecules

conductor: a material, such as a copper wire, which carries a flow of electrons (electricity)

conservation: the wise and careful use of our natural resources

constellation: any one of the 88 groups of stars and the area of the sky in its vicinity to which a definite name has been given; for example, Ursa Major, the Great Bear

contact poison: a chemical which kills insects as it comes in contact with their bodies; used especially to kill insects with sucking mouth parts

contour (KON-toor) **plowing:** plowing which follows the shape or outlines of hilly land, rather than going up the side of the hill

control column: the "stick" a pilot of an airplane uses to help control the direction of the flight of the plane

control experiment: an experiment to check the results of another experiment

convection current: the circulation of air as warm air moves upward and cool air moves in to replace it

convex (KON-veks) **lens:** a lens which makes light rays come together at a point called the focus

cornea (KOR-nee-uh): the transparent tissue in front of the iris and the pupil of the eye

corona: a bright white light which appears to surround the sun as the sun is totally eclipsed by the moon

corpuscles (KOR-pus-'lz): red cells, found in the blood, which have no nucleus, and which are made in bone marrow

cosmic ray: a ray that seems to come from beyond the earth's atmosphere and is made up in part of particles that move with the speed of light

cracking: a process by which the petroleum oils of different boiling points are separated from one another and from other petroleum compounds; used in making gasoline

critical mass: a mass of uranium 235 or other fissionable element of such size as to cause an atomic explosion

cross-pollination: the carrying of pollen from the stamen of one flower to the stigma of another, as by insects, wind, or birds. *See* stamen *and* stigma

cumulus (KYOOM-yoo-lus) **cloud:** a type of cloud between 5,000 and 15,000 feet above the earth, having a flat base and rounded masses piled up like mountains

current electricity: the flow of electricity through a conductor, measured in terms of amperes

cutting: any cut portion (leaf, stem, or root) of a plant used for asexual reproduction

cycle: one full wave, such as a radio wave

cyclone: winds blowing counterclockwise about a nearly circular region of low air pressure in the Northern Hemisphere over an area covering thousands of square miles

cyclotron (SYKE-luh-tron): an instrument used to study the properties of atoms by increasing the speed of atomic particles

cytoplasm (SY-toh-plazm): the fluid part of a cell surrounding and outside the nucleus

dacron: a man-made fiber that resists wrinkling when woven into cloth

Daphnia: a small water flea about the size of a pinhead

data (DAY-tuh): facts from which one or more conclusions may be drawn

DDT: an insecticide used to kill mosquitoes, fleas, and flies

deceleration: the change in speed when anything is made to go more slowly

deficiency (deh-FISH-un-see) **disease:** a disease caused by a lack of vitamins, minerals, or other needed nutrient substances

dehydration (dee-hy-DRAY-shun): the loss of water

delta: a deposit of soil at the mouth of a river

depleted (deh-PLEET-id) **soil:** soil that has lost minerals that plants need for growth

deuterium (DYOO-teer-ee-um): heavy hydrogen, with an atomic weight of 2

dew: moisture condensed on the surfaces of cool bodies, especially at night

diameter: the distance from one side of a round object to the other side, measured through the center

diaphragm (DY-uh-fram): a sheet of muscle which separates the chest cavity from the abdomen and by its movement helps in breathing; the name also used for the vibrating disk of metal in a telephone

Diesel engine: a form of internal-combustion engine, using heavy oil instead of gasoline as fuel

differential (dif-uh-REN-shul) **gears:** an arrangement of gears in the rear axle of an automobile which allows one of the wheels to go faster than the other, as in going around curves

diffused light: light reflected from a dull surface and scattered in many directions, thus reducing glare

diffusion (dif-YOO-zh'n): the process whereby the molecules of substances tend to intermingle, as when two gases or solutions are brought into contact

digestive system: the system for breaking down complex foods to simpler ones within the body so that they can pass through the walls of the intestine

direct current: an electric current flowing in one direction only (as contrasted with alternating current)

distillation (dis-tih-LAY-sh'n): the process of heating a substance until it turns into a gas, and of condensing this gas by cooling

doldrums (DOL-dr'mz): a belt of calms near the equator

dominant trait: an inherited characteristic which always appears when genes for it are present in the individual; for example, tallness of the pea plant, dark hair in man

dormant: inactive or not growing; said especially of buds and seeds during the winter

drag: the force exerted to reduce the forward motion of an airplane

dry cell: a sealed cell in which a carbon rod, manganese dioxide, ammonium chloride, water, and zinc react chemically to produce an electric current

dynamo: a mechanical device used to produce an electric current by rotating an armature coil in a magnetic field

eardrum: a thin tissue in the ear which vibrates as sounds strike it

earthworm: one kind of the many kinds of worms found in moist soil

eclipse, lunar: the passing of the moon into the shadow cast by the earth; **solar:** the passing of the earth into the shadow cast by the moon; **total:** the complete hiding of one heavenly body by another or by the umbra of the shadow cast by another

egg: a female sex cell which may be fertilized by a sperm

electric circuit: a complete path in which electricity travels from its source out into a wire and back to its source

electric current: a flow of electrons from one place to another

electric meter: a device which measures electric energy; for example, the electric meter which registers in kilowatt-hours the amount of electricity used

electric motor: a device that transforms electric energy into mechanical work; it is made up of a powerful field magnet, between the poles of which an armature made of many coils of wire carrying an electric current is caused to rotate

electromagnet: a core of soft iron surrounded by a coil of wire through which an electric current passes, thus magnetizing the core

electron (eh-LEK-tron): a negative particle revolving about the nucleus of an atom

electron gun: a device in the tube of a television camera or receiver which sends a stream of electrons against the screen of the tube

electron microscope: a microscope that uses a beam of electrons to enlarge a very small object to a great size

electroplating: the process by which electricity is used to transfer metal from a positive pole to the object to be plated (negative pole)

element: a substance that cannot be divided into units different from itself by ordinary means; for example, oxygen, iron

elevator: the movable part of an airplane, attached to the stabilizer; when it is moved upward, the plane climbs; when moved downward, the plane dives

embryo (EM-bree-oh): a living thing in the early stages of development

energy: the capacity to do work

energy of motion: energy that an object has because it is moving; called kinetic energy

environment: the surrounding conditions in which organisms live

enzyme (EN-zyme): the substance in the saliva, stomach, or intestine which breaks down nutrients into simple chemicals; it speeds up the reaction of chemicals without itself being changed

epidermis (ep-ih-DER-mis): the outer layer of an animal's skin

equinox (EEK-wih-noks): a moment, occurring twice each year on or about March 21 and September 23, when the sun appears to cross an imaginary line called the celestial equator

erosion: the act of wearing down and carrying away, as land by the action of wind or water

Eustachian tube (yoo-STAY-kee-un): an air tube leading from the back of the mouth to the cavity of the middle ear

evaporation (eh-vap-uh-RAY-shun): the process of changing a liquid into a gas

excrete: to separate wastes from the body cells or tissues

exhale: the act of breathing air out of the lungs

exhaust stroke: the stroke of an engine in which the piston pushes the burned gases out of the cylinder

external-combustion engine: an engine in which the fuel is burned outside the engine

Fahrenheit thermometer: a thermometer graduated so that the freezing point of water is at 32° above zero, the boiling point at 212° above zero

fall-out: radioactive particles that fall to earth as the result of an atomic or hydrogen bomb explosion

farsightedness: a defect of the eye which forms sharper images of things at a distance than of things nearby

fat: a substance deposited in special cells, called fat cells; it is also a nutrient found in foods, used by the body as a source of energy

fault: a dislocation in the earth caused by the slipping of rock masses along a crack

fertilization: the union of a male sex cell (or sperm) with a female sex cell (or egg)

fertilizer: material added to soil to restore its minerals and organic matter

fibrin: a substance formed from fibrinogen when a blood vessel is cut; it forms a covering or clot over the wound

fibrinogen (fy-BRIN-oh-jen): the part of blood plasma that helps to clot the blood
filament: the fine wire inside an electric light bulb that gives off light and heat when electricity is passed through it
filtration beds: layers of sand and gravel which catch soil and other particles as water passes through
focus: the point at which light rays are brought together (or seem to be brought together) by a lens or mirror
fog: a cloud of condensed water vapor formed on or near the ground
food chain: a number of kinds of living things depending upon one another for food; for instance, herons feed on fish, which feed on snails, etc.
foot-pound: a measurement of work done by multiplying the number of feet an object is moved by the weight (in pounds) of the object
force: a push or a pull on an object
frequency: the number of waves per second; for example, sound waves, radio waves
front: the boundary region where one mass of air meets another of a different type
frost: a deposit of ice crystals which forms on objects that are colder than the freezing point of water
fulcrum: the point of rest upon which a lever turns in moving an object
fungus (FUNG-gus): a plant of simple structure which lacks chlorophyll and therefore cannot make its own food; for example, bread mold, Penicillium
fuse: a device to break an electric circuit that is overloaded
fuselage (FYOO-z'l-ij): the body of an airplane which holds the engine, passengers, cargo, etc., and to which are attached the wings, tail, and landing gear

g: the pull of gravity. (17 *g*'s = 17 times the pull of gravity.)
galaxy (GAL-uks-ee): a star system or cluster of stars; for example, the Milky Way
galvanize (GAL-vuh-nyz): to coat iron with zinc to protect the surface of the iron
gamma globulin: a material in blood plasma that is thought to protect against polio
gamma rays: rays similar to X rays given off by exploding atoms
gas: an airlike substance having no independent shape or volume, but able to expand to the shape of its container
gasoline engine: an internal-combustion engine which uses the heat energy of gasoline for its operation
gastric (GASS-trik) **juice:** the acid digestive fluid given off by the glands in the walls of the stomach
Geiger counter: an instrument that detects the presence of radioactive material by giving off clicks when radioactive particles strike its tube
gene (JEEN): one of the particles of the chromosome which transmits hereditary traits
generator: a machine that changes mechanical energy into electrical energy by cutting magnetic lines of force with coils of wire
germ: any one of the harmful bacteria, viruses, or protozoa
gland: a part of the body which makes secretions such as enzymes or hormones
glucose (GLOO-kohss): a simple, soluble sugar oxidized in the body to give energy
goiter: an enlargement of the thyroid gland
grafting: joining the cut branch of one plant to that of a rooted plant which supplies water and minerals
gravity: the force that holds everything to the earth; the attraction between any two masses of matter
gullet: the tube by which food and drink swallowed pass to the stomach

habit: a learned, automatic act
hard coal: coal that gives off a great deal of heat, leaving little ash (anthracite coal)
hard water: water containing a large quantity of dissolved mineral salts
heavy water: water in which the hydrogen is twice as heavy as in ordinary water
hemoglobin (HEE-moh-gloh-bin): the iron-containing red substance found in the red blood cells; it carries oxygen
herbivores (HER-bih-vohrs): plant-eating animals
heredity: the transmission of characteristics through the parents to the offspring
hibernation (hy-ber-NAY-shun): the act of sleeping throughout some or all of the winter season
hormones (HOR-mohnz): substances (produced by glands) carried by the blood, having a great deal to do with height, weight, bone growth, and even behavior
horse latitudes: two areas of light winds in the region of 35 degrees north and 35 degrees south latitude

horsepower: a unit for measuring rate of work, equal to 550 foot-pounds per second

host: a plant or animal on which a fungus grows

humidifier: a device used to add moisture to indoor air

humidity: refers to the amount of water vapor in the air

humus (HYOO-mus): a brown or black material in the soil formed by decay of dead plants and animals or parts of them (leaves, etc.)

hurricane: a wind of 75 miles an hour or more, usually starting as a tropical cyclone

hybrid: the offspring of two animals or plants of different races, kinds, or species

hydrochloric acid: an acid produced in the stomach which with the help of pepsin breaks down proteins into simpler substances

hydrogen bomb: a bomb consisting of deuterium and tritium (forms of heavy hydrogen) that are fused into helium. This fusion is the cause of the tremendous energy given off by the H-bomb

hypothesis (hy-POTH-uh-siss): an idea (a working idea) not yet proved and depending upon further facts for its proof

image: a likeness of a person or object which can be seen in a picture or on a screen, as in photography or television

image-orthicon (OR-thih-kon) **tube:** a special type of radio tube used in a television camera to change an image or picture into a current of electricity

immunity: protection against a disease

impulse: that which travels along nerve cells or fibers

inbreeding: the mating of closely related organisms, such as self-fertilized plants

inclined plane: a sloping plane that makes an angle with a horizontal surface

inhale: the act of breathing air into the lungs

inherited trait: a trait that is received from an ancestor

inoculation (in-ok-yoo-LAY-shun): introduction (under the skin) of a vaccine or an antitoxin to produce immunity

insulation: any material used to reduce the transfer of heat or to shield a conductor of electricity

insulin (IN-suh-lin): a secretion from the pancreas which is used in the control of diabetes

internal-combustion engine: an engine in which the fuel is burned inside the cylinders

international date line: a map boundary (drawn to avoid all land areas) between west and east longitude, which lies on or near the 180th meridian

intestine: a section of the digestive system (below the stomach) in which digestion and absorption of substances take place

invertebrate: an animal having no backbone

iodine: a blackish-gray crystalline solid obtained from ashes of seaweed; used to prevent goiter and the enlargement of the thyroid gland

ionosphere (eye-ON-uh-sfeer): the highest region of the atmosphere, which is beginning to be explored by means of high-altitude rockets

iris (EYE-riss): the doughnut-shaped muscular screen of the eye, usually colored, which surrounds the pupil

irrigation (ih-ruh-GAY-sh'n): supplying land with water by means of canals and ditches

isobar (EYE-soh-bahr): a line on a weather map connecting observatories reporting the same barometric pressure

isotherm (EYE-soh-therm): a line on a weather map connecting observatories reporting the same temperature; usually only the 0° F. and 32° F. isotherms are shown

kidney: one of a pair of bean-shaped glands, in the back part of the abdomen near the spinal column, that collect the wastes which form the urine, which then passes to the bladder

kilocycle (KIL-uh-sy-k'l): one thousand waves, such as radio waves

kilowatt-hour: a unit of energy equivalent to 1,000 watts of electric power used in 1 hour

kindling temperature: the temperature to which a fuel must be raised before it will burst into flame

Kinescope (KIN-eh-skohp): a cathode-ray tube used in a television receiver to reproduce the image

kinetic (kin-NET-ik) **energy:** energy of motion

Kingston valve: a valve in a submarine that when open allows water to rush into the ballast tank

lacteal (lak-TEE-ul): one of the small vessels in the villi of the small intestine which absorb digested fats

larva (LAHR-vuh): the young of some animals, especially insects; for example, the grub of a beetle or the caterpillar of a moth

larynx (LAIR-inks): that section of the upper part of the windpipe in which the vocal cords are found

latitude: the distance due north or south from the equator, measured in degrees and marked by an imaginary line parallel to the equator

layering: a method of reproduction of plants (asexual reproduction) in which a stem is turned back into the soil and grows new roots, stems, and leaves

legume (LEG-yoom): a member of the pea family; for example, peas, beans, clover, alfalfa

lever: a bar used to move some object with the use of a fulcrum

lift: air pressure under the wing of a plane

lightning: an electric discharge between two clouds, between a cloud and the earth, or between two parts of the same cloud

lightning rod: a large metal conductor used to carry electrons safely to the ground and thus prevent damage to property by lightning

light-year: the distance which light, traveling at about 186,000 miles each second, travels in one year

lines of force: lines in a field of force of any magnet that show the amount and direction of the field

liquid: any substance that flows more or less freely, such as water

liquid air: air that has been made into a liquid by cooling it to −312° F.

liver: a large organ that secretes bile and causes important changes in the blood

loadstone: a natural rock magnet occurring in the earth

loam: ordinary garden soil, a loose soil made up mainly of clay and sand and a small amount of humus

longitude (LON-jih-tood): distance on the earth's surface measured in degrees east or west of the meridian of Greenwich

low: an area of low air pressure (in the center of a cyclone or hurricane)

lymph (LIMF): a nearly colorless fluid, chiefly blood plasma, found in lymphatic vessels

machine: any device which transmits force and energy to do work

magnetic field: an area in the vicinity of a magnet or an electric current in which magnetic lines of force can be noted

magnetism: the property of attracting, which loadstone, iron, and some other substances possess

malaria: a disease in which the symptoms are chills followed by high fever and sweating (caused by a protozoon carried by the anopheles mosquito)

mammal: one of the class of vertebrates that suckle their young

matter: any substance that occupies space

maximum-minimum thermometer: an instrument used by weathermen to denote the highest and the lowest temperature within a given time

medulla (meh-DUHL-uh): the part of the brain concerned with breathing and heartbeat

megacycle (MEG-uh-sy-k'l): one million waves, such as radio waves

membrane: a thin, soft sheet of animal or plant tissue; also the outer edge of the cytoplasm of every living cell

meridian: a line running north and south on a map, numbered according to its degree of longitude

meteor (MEE-tee-er): a heavenly body which glows for a moment as it passes through the atmosphere; a "shooting star"

meteorite (MEE-tee-er-eyt): a meteor that has struck the earth's surface

meteoroid (MEE-tee-er-oyd): a small, dark object passing through space but yet not within the earth's atmosphere

methane (METH-ayn): a colorless, odorless, flammable gas; "fire damp" of coal mines

microbe: a very tiny plant or animal; a bacterium, especially of a disease-producing kind

micro-organism: any organism of microscopic (or smaller) size

migration (my-GRAY-shun): a movement of organisms from one area to another, usually a mass movement

mineral: any chemical element or compound occurring free or in rocks

mixture: two or more substances mixed together in no definite proportions and not chemically united; air is a mixture, but pure water is a compound

mold: a fungus; for example, bread mold; fungi have no chlorophyll

molecule: the smallest part of any substance that has the properties of that substance

mucous membrane: a tissue of flat cells lining the cheek, gullet, stomach, and intestines

mutant (MYOO-tant): an animal or plant which differs from the parents in having one or more new traits which can be inherited

mutation: a sudden change or variation caused by a change in some of the contents of the nucleus of a sperm or egg

natural immunity: natural resistance to a disease

neap tide: the lowest high tide and the highest low tide between spring tides

nearsightedness: a defect of the eye which forms sharper images of things nearby than of things at a distance

negative (photographic): a photographic film having the lights and shades, and the relation of right and left, of the original reversed

neon: an inactive gaseous element occurring in air

neptunium (nep-TYOO-nee-um): one of the new, man-made elements

nerve cell: an animal cell which is sensitive to a stimulus and which carries an impulse

nerve fiber: a threadlike band of tissue connecting various parts of the body, carrying impulses

nervous system: the brain, spinal cord, and all the nerves of the body

neutron (NOO-tron): a neutral particle in the nucleus of the atom

niacin (NY-uh-sin): a vitamin which prevents pellagra

nitrate: a compound, rich in nitrogen, used as a fertilizer

nitrogen: an inactive, gaseous element making up about 80% of the air

nitrogenous (ny-TROJ-eh-nus) **waste:** body waste that has nitrogen in it

nodule (NOD-yool): a swelling on the root of a plant, generally on the roots of leguminous plants like peas and clover

nuclear reactor: a device for splitting the atom so that it can be made to produce useful energy or valuable radioactive materials

nucleus (NOO-klee-us): a rounded or oval mass of protoplasm, containing chromosomes, present in most plant or animal cells; also the central part of an atom

nutrient (NOO-tree-ent): one of six kinds of substances used in nourishing and repairing body tissue and thus promoting growth

nylon: a man-made chemical product which may be formed into fibers having great toughness, elasticity, and strength

nymph: an immature stage of certain insects resembling the adult, like the grasshopper

optic nerve: the nerve connecting the eye and the optic centers of the brain

orbit: the course followed by a body in space in its path around another body in space

orbital rocket: a rocket that would have its own path around the earth

ore: a rock from which one or more minerals (substances) can be extracted

organ: any group of tissues performing a special function in a plant or in an animal; for example, stomach, eye, leaf, root

organism: any individual, living animal or plant

oscillator (os-sil-lay-ter): anything that vibrates rapidly, particularly a radio transmitter which sends out radio waves

oscilloscope (os-SIL-oh-skohp): an instrument that makes sound waves appear as waves of light on a screen similar to a small television screen

ovary (OH-ver-ee): an egg-producing organ in a female plant or animal

ovule (OH-vyool): a small, oval-shaped body in an ovary in the flower of a plant; the beginning of a seed

oxidation (oks-ih-DAY-shun): the changing of an element into its oxide by making it combine with oxygen; the burning of fuel, or the slow burning of food which takes place in cells

oxygen: a gaseous element making up about 20% of air

pancreas (PAN-kree-us): a digestive gland, near the beginning of the small intestine, which makes the pancreatic juice and the hormone insulin

pancreatic (pan-kree-AT-ik) **juice:** a powerful mixture of enzymes (made by the pancreas), which can break down all the food nutrients

parallel connection: an arrangement in which all positive poles of a battery, for example, are joined to one conductor, and all negative poles to another conductor, each connection between the two being parallel to the other

partial eclipse: the incomplete hiding or darkening of one body in space by another

pasteurization (pass-ter-ih-ZAY-shun): killing dangerous germs in milk by heating the milk to a temperature of about 145° F. for 20 minutes and then cooling it rapidly

pellagra (peh-LAY-gruh): a deficiency disease caused by the lack of the vitamin niacin

penicillin (pen-ih-SIL-in): a chemical secreted by Penicillium, a mold; discovered by Sir Alexander Fleming, it prevents the growth of certain bacteria

Penicillium (pen-ih-SIL-ee-um): a green or blue mold; secretes penicillin

penumbra (peh-NUM-bruh): the lighter portion of a shadow

pepsin: an enzyme, found in the gastric juice, which helps break down proteins into simpler proteins

persistence of vision: the ability of the retina to keep an image at least 1/16 of a second

phases (of the moon): changing views of the moon as seen by an observer on the earth

photoelectric cell: a cell or vacuum tube used to produce an electric current varying in strength with the light shone on it, as in the sound-producing part of a motion-picture projector

photosynthesis (foh-toh-SIN-thuh-siss): the process by which a green plant makes sugar, in the presence of light, from water and carbon dioxide

physical change: a change in which the original properties of a substance are not destroyed

pig iron: iron that is made in a blast furnace

pistil: the female reproductive organ of a flower, which has in it an ovary with its ovules

pitch: a certain number of vibrations of sound waves per second. (All musical instruments vibrating 435 times per second produce the sound or pitch of the note A.)

pitchblende: a dark, earth ore of uranium

planet: one of the nine bodies circling around the sun; the earth is one

planetoid (PLAN-et-oyd): one of the many small bodies between the orbits of the planets Mars and Jupiter

plasma (PLAZ-muh): the fluid part of the blood which has dissolved food nutrients and such substances as antibodies and red and white blood corpuscles

plastic: a man-made substance capable of being molded, such as cellophane or lucite

plutonium (ploo-TOH-nee-um): a man-made element produced from uranium in an atomic pile

polio (short form for poliomyelitis): inflammation of the nerve matter in the spinal cord, sometimes causing paralysis

pollen (POLL-en): powdery grains found in the stamens of seed plants; contain sperm nuclei

pollinate (POLL-ih-nayt): to transfer pollen from the anther to the stigma of the same or a different flower

positive (photographic): a photographic film or print corresponding with the original object in position of lights and shades

potential (po-TEN-sh'l) **energy:** stored energy

power: the rate of doing work, that is, how long it takes to do a certain amount of work

power stroke: the stroke of an engine in which the energy of the burning fuel forces the piston to give power to the engine by turning the crankshaft

precipitation (preh-sip-ih-TAY-shun): a term covering all forms of water falling from the sky: hail, snow, rain, and sleet

prevailing wind: a wind which blows almost always from one direction

prominence: a cloud of glowing gas at the surface of the sun and reaching high above it

properties of matter: characteristics, both physical and chemical, that enable us to recognize a substance

protein: a food nutrient containing nitrogen; necessary for the growth of protoplasm

proton (PROH-ton): an atomic particle having a single positive charge and a weight of 1; in the hydrogen atom the proton is the nucleus; in other atoms the nucleus consists of protons and other particles

protoplasm: the semi-solid, jelly-like material of all living cells, including the nucleus, cytoplasm, and the membrane of cells

protozoa (proh-toh-ZOH-uh): single-celled animals, such as paramecium or ameba, which are usually found in ponds or stagnant water

psychrometer (sy-KROM-uh-ter): an instrument used to determine the percentage of relative humidity

ptomaine (toh-MAYN): poisonous substance formed by the action of certain bacteria

pulley: a wheel with a grooved rim, used with a rope or chain to change the direction of a pulling force; a simple machine

pupa (PYOO-puh): the inactive stage in the development of an insect passing through egg, larva, pupa, and then adult stages

pupil: the opening in the iris of the eye which changes in size with different amounts of light

pus: yellowish-white matter made of dead tissue, white blood cells, bacteria, and so on, produced as by an abscess or boil

quarantine (KWAHR-en-teen): isolation of any organism which carries a contagious disease

quinine (KWY-nyne): a drug used in preventing and treating malaria

radar: abbreviation for *ra*dio *d*etection *a*nd *r*anging, the device which is used for the detection of objects by radio waves

radiant heating: a heating system in which hot water or steam pipes set in floors or walls send out heat into rooms

radiation: the process by which energy is transferred in space; for instance, in the form of electromagnetic waves; also radiant energy

radioactivity: the property, possessed by certain elements, of naturally sending forth radiant energy through breaking up of atoms; also characteristic of substances made radioactive in an atomic pile

radiosonde (RAY-dee-oh-sond): a radio transmitter attached to a balloon and sent aloft by observers seeking information about weather conditions in the upper atmosphere

receiver (radio): an apparatus (like your radio) which receives signals sent out by a transmitter and which demodulates (changes) these signals so that they may be heard as speech, music, or code signals

recessive trait: an inherited characteristic which will not develop in a plant or an animal if the plant or animal contains any genes for the dominant trait (which hides the recessive)

rectum: the lowest part of the intestine, from which undigested food leaves the body

reflected light: light that is cast back or returned by an object

reflex: an inborn automatic act

refrigerant: a liquid, such as ammonia, which evaporates easily and therefore is useful in the cooling coils of a refrigerator

relative humidity: the ratio of the amount of water vapor present in the air to the greatest amount which would be possible at a given temperature

relay: an electric device used to open or close circuits by remote control

resistance: the weight to be lifted or moved by a simple machine (such as a lever or pulley) when enough force is applied

response: the reaction of a plant or animal to a stimulus

retina (RET-ih-nuh): the inner lining of the eye, containing light-sensitive cells

reverse-rocket approach: the use of rocket motors to allow a spaceship to come down tail first, to a more or less gentle landing

revolution: a single cycle of a body in space about another body in space; for example, the earth's yearly revolution about the sun

riboflavin (ry-boh-FLAY-vin): vitamin B_2 found in meats, dairy products, and green vegetables

rodent: an animal belonging to the order of gnawing mammals, such as rats and squirrels

root hair: a root cell from which a hairlike extension grows; it increases absorption of water and minerals

rotating crops: a farming method in which different plants are sown in the same soil in succeeding years; for example, during a three-year period corn, oats, and clover are rotated in the same field

rotation: the motion of any object about a central axis, such as the rotation of the earth in 24 hours

rudder: a flat piece of fabric-covered wood or a piece of metal hinged to the vertical fin of an airplane to control its direction to the right or left

rust: a fungus, related to the smuts, different forms of which cause plant diseases, such as wheat rust; also the result of oxidation, such as the rusting of iron

saliva: a fluid secreted by glands discharging into the mouth

salivate (SAL-iv-ate): to produce a large amount of saliva

sanctuary (wildlife): a haven for wild animals, where hunting is prohibited or regulated

satellite: a small body which revolves around a planet; a moon

saturated (SACH-er-ayt-id) **solution:** a solution containing all the dissolved material it can hold (under given conditions)

screw: one of the simple machines

scurvy: a disease due to a lack of vitamin C;

it causes bleeding under the skin and softening of the gums of the mouth

season: a period of the year marked by certain characteristic conditions of the weather and plant growth; for example, spring

seismograph (SYZE-muh-graf): a sensitive instrument used to record vibrations of the earth's crust and to detect earthquakes

sense organ: a part of the body which senses, or receives stimuli coming from the surroundings

series connection: an arrangement in which a positive pole of a battery, for example, is connected by wire to a negative pole, all connections being in one circuit. *See* parallel connection

serum albumin (SEER-'m · al-BYOO-min): a substance making up a large part of blood plasma, used to treat shock and severe burns

sexual reproduction: production of a new organism from the union of two cells, sperm and egg

shock wave: the mass of piled-up air that can rip the wings from an ordinary airplane attempting to fly faster than the speed of sound (760 miles an hour); also used to describe the wave after the blast of an atomic bomb

short circuit: a condition resulting when two bare wires carrying electricity touch each other

simple machine: a machine, such as a lever, inclined plane, screw, wedge, wheel and axle, or pulley, that aids in doing work

single-stage rocket: a rocket that makes a flight in one step; it is a single rocket

sinus (SY-nus): a cavity in the bones of the skull connected with the nostrils and containing air

slow oxidation: the slow burning of a substance, or the burning of food which takes place in cells; rusting of iron

soft coal: bituminous coal that yields illuminating gas, coal tar, and coke upon being heated without access to air

soft water: water that is relatively free from mineral salts

solar (SOH-ler) **system:** the sun, with the group of bodies in space which, held by its attraction, revolve around it

solid: a compact body having size, shape, and weight

solstice (SOL-stiss): the period when the sun appears to remain for a few days at noon at its highest point (about June 21) and at its lowest point (about December 21) as seen from the Northern Hemisphere

soluble: capable of being dissolved

solution: a liquid containing a dissolved substance (solute)

sonar (SOH-nahr): the submarine detection apparatus that can locate objects by using sound waves which bounce back from the object

sound barrier: the shock waves that air sends against a plane flying at the speed of sound

sounder: the portion of a telegraph receiver which is struck by the moving armature and thus makes the clicking sounds of dots and dashes

species: a distinct kind or sort of animal or plant

spectrum: an arrangement of rays of light or other forms of radiant energy (such as radio waves, infrared waves, ultraviolet rays) according to the wave length

sperm: a male sex cell which unites with an egg cell during fertilization

spinal cord: the thick cord of nerve tissue extending along, and protected by, the backbone

spiracles (SPY-ruh-c'ls): breathing openings in the bodies of insects

spirillum (spy-RIL-lum) (pl., spirilla): one type of bacterium, so named because of its spiral or comma shape

spleen: a small organ near the stomach in which some of the red blood cells are stored

spontaneous combustion: the bursting into flame of a substance due to the accumulated heat of slow oxidation

spore: a thick-walled plant cell (for instance, a bacterial spore) which can withstand such unfavorable conditions as lack of food, dryness, and extreme cold

spring tide: the highest of high tides and the lowest of low tides. *See* neap tides

stamen (STAY-men): the male reproductive organ of a flower, which produces pollen grains

standard time: in the United States: Eastern, Central, Mountain, and Pacific standard times, corresponding to the time of the 75th, 90th, 105th, and 120th meridians west of Greenwich

starch: a carbohydrate which is insoluble and when digested produces glucose

static (STAT-ik) **electricity:** charges of electricity produced by friction

steam engine: an engine driven by the energy of steam

steel: iron to which enough carbon, manganese, silicon, etc., have been added to give it hardness and strength

stigma: in plants, the sticky top portion of the pistil which receives the pollen

stimulus (STIM-yoo-lus) (pl., stimuli): anything that causes a temporary increase of activity in a living body or any of its parts

stomach poison: a poison that kills insects if taken into their stomach

stomate (STOH-mayt): tiny openings in leaves which allow gases to pass and water to leave. *See* guard cell

storage battery: a battery which stores electricity on plates of different chemical composition; it is charged by sending in electric current which causes a chemical change

stored energy: energy stored up in an object; called potential energy

stratosphere (STRAT-uh-sfeer): the middle region of the atmosphere between the troposphere and the ionosphere

stratus cloud (STRAY-tus): a cloud that extends horizontally over a large area and is at a low altitude

streptomycin (strep-toh-MY-sin): a chemical, produced by certain soil bacteria, which slows down or stops the growth of other bacteria; useful against tuberculosis

strip cropping: a farming method in which several types of plants are sown in alternate strips

strip mining: mining done by scraping away the surface earth that covers the bed of ore, etc., to be mined

suspension: an insoluble solid suspended in a liquid; for example, soil in water

sweat gland: a gland in the skin which excretes a fluid made of water, salts, and urea onto the skin surface by means of ducts

tagged atoms: radioactive atoms that may be detected by a Geiger counter, usually as they move through the tissues of plants and animals

tendon: tough tissue binding muscles to bones

theodolite (thee-OD-oh-lite): an optical instrument which can be used to measure the height and speed of clouds or balloons

theory: a scientifically acceptable principle offered in explanation of observed facts

thermograph (THER-moh-graf): a device used to make an automatic and continuous record of temperature changes

thermometer: an instrument for measuring the temperature at a particular moment

thermostat: a device on a heating system which automatically controls temperature (as by regulating a damper, flow of fuel, etc.)

thiamine (THY-uh-min): a vitamin of the B complex, also called vitamin B_1; it prevents beriberi

thrust: the forward motion given to an airplane by its propeller or jet engine

thunder: the sound following a flash of lightning due to the sudden expansion of air in the path of the discharge

tissue: a group of similar cells performing the same function; for example, muscle or nerve tissue

topsoil: the upper fertile layer of soil, containing humus, which is necessary to plant life

tornado: one of the most violent windstorms, noted for its funnel-shaped clouds, high-speed winds, and great destructiveness over a short path and a small area

total eclipse: the complete hiding of one heavenly body by another or by the umbra of the shadow cast by another

toxin: a poison formed by germs, as in diphtheria

trade winds: winds which could be depended upon to blow in a definite direction and so were used by cargo ships

trait: a distinguishing quality of a person or thing

transformer: a device for transforming high voltage to low voltage, or low voltage to high voltage

transmission (automobile): a device which transfers the motion of the automobile engine into several speeds of forward motion and one of reverse motion

transmitter: the part of a device used in communication which sends out the signals intended for a distant receiver

trichina: a parasitic roundworm found in the flesh of animals, causing trichinosis

trichinosis (trik-ih-NOH-siss): a disease caused by a parasitic roundworm in the muscles of animals, usually those of hogs

tritium (TRIT-ee-um): a form of hydrogen whose atoms are three times heavier than atoms of ordinary hydrogen

tropical hurricane: a violent storm originating in the tropics, often called a cyclone or typhoon

troposphere (TROP-uh-sfeer): the lowest portion of the atmosphere, the part in which we live

turbine (TER-bin): a rotary engine moved by steam or water

ultrasonic (ul-truh-SON-ik) **sound:** refers to high-pitched sound above the range of human hearing

ultraviolet ray: an invisible ray which lies beyond the violet end of the spectrum; such a ray is given off by very hot bodies, by certain kinds of lamps, and by the sun in sunlight

umbra (UM-bruh): the darker portion of a shadow

uranium: a heavy, white, radioactive element occurring in an ore called pitchblende. *See* pitchblende

urea (yoo-REE-uh): a solid crystalline compound containing nitrogen; the chief part of urine

vaccinate: to inoculate with dead or weakened germs, causing a light attack of a disease in order to prevent a serious attack of the same disease, as in smallpox

vaccine: any substance, usually containing dead or weakened bacteria, prepared for introduction into the body (usually by breaking the skin) to cause an immunity to the disease

vein: one of the tubular branching vessels that carry blood back to the heart; a duct in plant leaves

ventricle: one of the muscular chambers of the heart which pump blood to parts of the body

vertebrate: an animal having a backbone

vibration: movement due to the effect of waves on a membrane; caused by sound waves, among others

villus (VIL-lus) (pl., villi): one of the many tiny tubelike structures on the inside wall of the small intestine which serve to absorb food

virus (VY-rus): a tiny living particle (not made up of cells) which causes such diseases as smallpox; thought to be a large protein molecule

vitamin (VY-tuh-min): a chemical found in foods and needed in small quantities for special body functioning; lack of a particular vitamin causes a deficiency disease

vitamin A: a chemical found in milk, eggs, and green vegetables; helps to prevent the common cold and also helps to improve seeing, especially at night

vitamin B$_1$: a substance (thiamine) found in whole grains and vegetables; prevents beriberi

vitamin C (ascorbic acid): the vitamin which prevents scurvy and which keeps the skin and teeth healthy

vitamin D: a vitamin found in cod and halibut liver oils; called the "sunshine vitamin"; helps bone growth

vitamin K: a vitamin which helps the blood to clot easily

volcano: an opening in the earth's crust from which molten rock, steam, etc., are poured or thrown forth

volt: a unit for measuring electric pressure

voltaic cell: an arrangement for generating electricity by the action of a chemical upon two unlike metals

voltmeter: a meter for measuring pressure (voltage) of an electric current

warm front: the boundary between a mass of advancing warm air and a retreating mass of relatively cooler air

water cycle: the continuous changes of water — evaporating from the surface of the earth (oceans, lakes, streams, etc.) into water vapor, eventually forming clouds and condensing as rain, then flowing back into lakes, streams, and oceans

watershed: the region or area drained by a river or lake

water table: the level below which the soil is saturated with water

watt: the unit for measuring electric power

weathering: the gradual destruction of material exposed to the weather; wind, moisture, sunlight, heat, and cold are the chief causes of weathering

wedge: a piece of wood or metal, tapered to a thin edge and used to split or raise heavy objects; a simple machine

wheel and axle: a device consisting of a grooved wheel with an attached axle, used for lifting heavy objects; a simple machine

white blood cells: the kind of blood cell which helps destroy bacteria and other foreign particles that enter the body

work: the product of a force times the distance the force moves a body, usually measured in foot-pounds; work is done whenever a body is moved, or its motion stopped, by a force

Index

A

absorption: of food, 86, **86**; of sound, 519, **519**
AC, 469–70, **469**
acceleration, rocket, 190–93
accidents, 130–31, 485–86
accommodation of eye, 537
accuracy, need in science, 17–19
acetylene, 324
acids: test for, 347; strong and weak (table), 348; neutralizing, 348–49
acoustics, 519, **519**
action and reaction, 194, **194**; in rocket-plane model, **201**; in jet propulsion, 497–99
adaptation, 410–11, **411**
aeration, 125–26
African violet, 388
after-burner, 498, **499**
Ahnighito Meteorite, 141
aileron, 494, **495**
air: oxygen in, 22, **23**; enters through nose, 87; resistance, a rocket problem, 193; in motion, 207; effect of heating and cooling, 207, **207**; height, and temperature of, 210; water vapor in, 212–15; measuring temperature, pressure, and humidity in, 220–28, **221**, **222**, **223**, **225**, **228**; temperature of, in various seasons, 249–52; as a mixture of gases, 279; liquid, 315, 324; elements in (table), 316; a real substance, 322–23; compressed, 492; and airplane flight, 496–97, **497**; (table), 520; Kennelly-Heaviside layer, 548 *See also* atmosphere
air conditioning, 263–65
air masses, 234–38, **235**
air pressure: on lungs, 88; change in, 149, 211, 222, (table), 223; effect on eardrums, 517
airplane, 493–503; first flight of, 186, 194; fastest, 482; mechanics of flight, 494; parts of, 494–96, **495**; climbing and landing, 496; jet propulsion, 497–98; speed, 499–503; smashing sound barrier, 500–01; designs for, 501; types, **501**; future of, 502–03; models, **511**; landing by GCA, 571, **572**
air resistance, 193
air sacs, 88, 90
air spaces in clothing, 256–57, **257**
albinos, 399
alcohol, effects of, 128; as fuel, 195; (table), 520
Aldebaran, **143**
alfalfa, 377
alligators, 429
alloys, 331; common (table), 332
alternating current, 469–70, **469**; in motor, 477; in radio, 550
altimeter, barometer as, 222–23
aluminum (tables), 316, 317; production of, 328–29, **329**; cost, 329
AM, **550–51**
Amateur Weathermen of America, 219–20
amber, 456
Ameba, 428, **428**
americium, 282
ammeter, 471, **473**
ammonia, 320
ampere, 470, 471
Ampère, André, 465
amphibians, 395, 429
amplifier, 551
amplitude, 523
Anaxagoras, 322
Andromeda, **143**
anemia, 70
anemometer, 229, **229**
aneroid barometer, 222, **222**; as altimeter, 223
anesthetic, 39
angle of attack, 497
animals: one-celled, 103, 386–87, **386**, **387**; antibodies from, 111; carnivores and herbivores, 147, 412–13; cold-blooded, 252; adaptation to seasons, 252–53; reproduction, 395–403; classifying and naming of, 425–26; kingdom (chart), 428–30, **428–30**
anopheles mosquito, 107, **108**
Antares, **142**
antenna, 548–49, **551**
anthracite coal, 333
antibiotic, 105
antibodies, 81, 110; from animals, 111
antiseptic, 81
antitoxin, 111
anvil, **515**, 516
aorta, 87, 93
aphid, 417

A page reference in **boldface** type indicates a drawing or picture.

appendix, **84**
apples, 389–90, 394–95
aquarium, 353, 360, **360**
aqueduct, 124, **125**
arbutus, 414
Archimedes' principle, 488; checking, 505
Arctic Circle, 147
Arcturus, **142**
argon: (table), 316; in light bulb, 476
Aristarchus, 135
arm, circulation in, 87, **89**
armature, **433**, 469, **469**; at power station, 470; in electric motor, 478; in telegraph, **542**, 543
Artedi, Peter, 425
arteries, 87, 93, **93**; hardening of, 113
arthritis, 113
ascorbic acid: scurvy and, 65–66; in various foods (table), 77
asteroids, 135, **136**
atebrin (table), 104, 111
athlete's foot, 107–08, 111
atmosphere, 159; an ocean, 160, 206; in motion, 207; molecules in, 207; heating and cooling, 208; sun's heat in, 215; screening of sun's rays, 249 *See also* air
atom, 276, 278; difference from molecule, 280; kinds of, 282; and universe, 282; Dalton's theory, 283; a small solar system, 283–84; radium, **284**; structure of, 285; hydrogen, **286**; splitting the, 290–311; cyclotron, 292–93; fission of, 294–97, 303; chain reaction, 295, **300**; explosion of, 302; fusion, 303; "tagged," 308
atom smashers, 292–93
atomic bomb, 290, **291**, 300–02; effects of explosion, **291**, 301, **301**; fall-out from, 301–02
atomic energy, 304–07, 445; reserves of, 305; in submarines, 493
Atomic Energy Commission, 308, 367
atomic fuel, 305–07
atomic pile, 297–99, **298**, **299**; nuclear reactors, **13**, 305; chain reaction, 297
atomic power, 306; in submarine, 306, **306**, **307**
atomic theory, 283
atomic weight, 283; of common elements (table), 317
attack, angle of, 497
aureomycin, 105
auricles, 92, **92**, 93
automatic acts: inborn (unlearned), 40–42, **41**; learned, 42–44, **43**
automobile, 483–86; safety, **10–11**, 484–85; atomic-powered, 306; generator, 462; early, 483; transmission and differential, 483–84; driving an, 484
autumn, 250
avalanche, 435
axis, 152–53, **152**, 243–46, **244**
axle, 439, **439**

B

bacilli, 102, **103**; in some diseases (table), 104; tuberculosis, 106
bacteria, **99**, 102–04, **102**; in blood, 80–81; kinds of, 102, **103**; spores, 103; defenses against, 103–04; useful, 104; decay, 104; and safe milk, 119–20; killing, in water, 126; in soil, 374; nitrogen-fixing, **380**
Bailey's Beads, 178
balance in nature: plants and animals, 412–15, **413**, **415**; conservation and, 413–14; on farm, 414–15
ballast tanks, 492
balloon, skyhook, **211**
"banking," 494, **495**
Banting, Sir Frederick, 113
bar magnet, 465, **465**
barberry bush, in wheat-rust cycle, 420
barograph, 221, **223**
barometer: how to make a, 220–21; water and mercury types, 221–22; aneroid, 222, **222**; falling, 224
barometric pressure, 221, 238
bases, 347; test for, 347–48; (table), 348; neutralizing, 348–49
"Basic Seven" foods, 70–71
bat, ultrasonic sounds, 518
bathyscaphe descent, 132, **161**
battery, electric: dry cell, 461, **461**; storage, 461–62, **462**; dry cell connected in series, 473, **474**; connected in parallel, 474, **474**
beam: electron, 568; in image-orthicon tube, 568, **568**; in Kinescope tube, 569; radar, 570
Beaufort, Admiral Sir Francis, 229
Beaufort arrows, 228–29, **229**
beaver, 411
Beebe, William, 134
bees, 415
beetle: life cycle, **417**; Japanese, 419–20, **419**; trees destroyed by, 422
behavior, changing, 42–43
Bell, Alexander Graham, 544
Benedict's solution, 83
beriberi, 66–67
berkelium, 282
Bernoulli's principle, 497; checking, 506
betatron, **295**

Betelgeuse, **143**
bicycle, **451**, 483
bifocals, 537–38
Big Dipper, 140, **142**, **143**
bile, 85
biplane, 494
birds: migration of, 252, 253; adaptation of, 410, **411**; as farmer's allies, 418–19; classifying, 425; place in animal kingdom, 430
bituminous coal, 332–33; products of, **333**
black, absence of color, 532
Black Death, 126
black snake, 414
black stem rust, 420
blast furnace, 329, **331**
blind men and elephant, 28, **29**
blinking: a reflex, 40; function in eye, 534
blister, 81, 94
block and tackle, 439
blood, 79–99; healthy, 80; plasma, 80, 81–82; transfusion, 82; clotting, 82; stream, 86–87, **96**; oxygen in, 87; circulation of, 87–91, **89**; "blue," 94; nitrogen bubbles in, 148, 188; effect of outer space on, 189; measuring food in, 309
blood cells *See* cells, blood
blood count, 83
blood donor, **83**
blood pressure, high, 113
blower, 442
body, human, **7**
body cells *See* cells, body
Bohr, Niels, 283, **284**
boiler: in steam heating system, 262; heat energy from, 442
boll weevil (table), 416
bomb *See* atomic bomb *and* hydrogen bomb
bone, 56; marrow of, 80
Boötes, **142**
borax, 320
box camera, **576**, 577
brain, 38–40; of frog, **36**; human, 39–40, **39**; parts of, 39, **39**; effect of anesthetics on, 39; size, relation to intelligence, 46; listening with, 516
brain tumor, 308–09
brakes, 485
bread, growth of mold on, 21–22, **21**
breathing: a reflex act, 40, 42; control of, 40, 88; change of air in, 60, **61**
breeder reactor, 305
breeding of atomic fuel, 305
breeding: of plants, 390–95, 402; environment and, 403
breezes, 208, **208**
Bridgman, Professor P. W., 25
brine, 264
broadcasting, 548–50, **550–51**; tower, **549**
bromine: (tables), 316, 317; in sea water, 319
bromothymol blue, 354
bronchial tubes, 88, **90**
bronze, 331
bruises, caring for, 109
bubonic plague, 126
budworm, **427**
bulletproof glass, 338, **339**
Bunsen burner, 279
buoyancy, 488–89
burning: Lavoisier's theory, 22, 26; weight gain in, 22–23; oxygen in, **23**, 26; in body cells, 59–60, 87; of fuels, 440–43
Bush, Dr. Vannevar, 296
Byrd, Admiral, 410

C

cabbage butterfly, 415–16
cactus, 147; Christmas, 389
cadmium rods, 298
calcium: use in body, 70; in various foods (table), 77; (tables), 316, 317
calcium carbonate, 338
californium, 282
calories: number needed, 63–65; (tables), 76, 78
calorimeter, **63**
camel, 147
camera: television, **14**, **568**; pinhole, **558**, 575; types of, 575–76; using your, 577
cancer, **1**, 112–13, 294
candid camera, 576
canning, 120
capillaries, 86, 87, **89**, **90**
carbohydrates, 61, **62**, 81; as energy foods, 64–65, (table), 76 *See also* digestion
carbon: in nutrients, 62, **62**; radioactive, 308; (tables), 316, 317; in pig iron, 330; in electric lights, 476; in telephone transmitter, 545
carbon dioxide: from burning sugar, 59; in exhaled air, 60, 93; waste product of oxidation, 60, **61**, 92, 94; carried by veins, 90; gas, as fire extinguisher, 270; (table), 316; in underground water, 320; green plants and, 354–57; -oxygen cycle, 360–61, **360**, **361**; radioactive, 367
carbon monoxide, 442
carbon tetrachloride, 270
careers in science *See this heading at end of chapters*
carelessness, 129–31
Carlsbad Caverns, 320

carnivores, 147, 412–13
carrier bomber, **501**
carrier wave, 549, **550**
cartilage, 55, 56; cells, **57**
Cassiopeia, 140, **142**, **143**
castings, finding flaws in, 311
Castor, **143**
casualties, from war and from accidents, 129
caterpillar, 416–17, **417**
cathode-ray tube, 568, **568**
catkin, **393**
cattle breeding, 397–400
"cavorite," 186
ceiling, cloud, 234
cell membrane, 55
cells, blood, **79**, 80–83, **81** *See also* red blood cells *and* white blood cells
cells, body, 54–72; kinds of, **6**, 55–56, **57**; parts of, 55; nucleus of, 55, **57**; products, 56–58; energy in, 59; test of, for burning, 59–60; removing wastes from, 95–97, **96**
cells, nerve, 38, **38**, 55, **57**; effect of novocain on, 39–40; connection in reflex act, **41**
cement, 336
centigrade, changing to Fahrenheit, 241
centipedes, 429
central heating systems, 260–62
Central Standard Time, **154**, 155
cerebellum: location in nervous system, **37**; work of, 39; location in brain, **39**
cerebrum: location in nervous system, **37**; work of, 39; location in brain, **39**
Ceres, 135
Cetus, **143**
Chadwick, James, 286
chain, food, 414, **415**
chain reaction, 295, 297, 300, **300**
chamber: cold, 214; cloud, 284–85; combustion, 498, **499**
chance discovery, 24
Chapin, D. M., 582, **583**
characteristics *See* traits
charge, electrical: positive and negative, 456; like and unlike, 458
check-up, health, 79
chemical change, 281
chemical elements *See* elements
chewing insects, 417
chicken pox, 126
chickens: breeding of, 395–97, **397**; incubator, **396**
chimpanzee, and learning, 45–46; size of brain, 46
chlordan dust, 419
chlorine, 111, 126, (tables), 316, 317; from salt, 336
chlorophyll, 359
chloroplasts, **356**, 359, 366
chromium, 342
chromosomes, 402, **402**
chrysalis, 417
circuit, electrical, 460; overloaded, 475, **475**
circuit-breaking, 468
circulation of blood, 87, 89–95, **89**, **96**
circulatory system, 55, **89**
citrus fruit pests, 420
clam, 429
clay, 338
Clermont, 445
Cleveland, Ohio, water supply, 125
clothing, in different seasons, 257–58; weaves of, **257**
cloud ceiling, 234
cloud chamber, 284–85
clouds: formation of, 213–14; "seeding," 214–15; kinds, 232–34, **233**; altitude, 234; importance, 234; fronts, 234, **235**, 237; static electricity in, 459
clover, 377
clutch, 484
coal, 332–33; dye made from, 29; world reserves, **305**; conserving, 338–39; improved methods of burning, 339; fire, starting a, 440; and Industrial Revolution, 444
coal tar, 333, **333**
cobalt, radioactive, 308
cobalt chloride, 226
cocci, 102, **103**
cochlea, **515**, 516
cocoon, 417
cod liver oil, 68
Cohn, Dr. Edwin J., 82
coil, 467, **468**; induction, 546, **547**
coke, 332
cold, common: 102, 106–07; vitamin A and, 68; microbe of (table), 104
cold-blooded animals, 252
cold chamber, 214
cold front, **235**, 237–38
color: temperature and, 190, **190**; clothing, for warm and cool weather, 257–58; from reflected rays, 532
color television, 569–70, **570–71**; camera, 570
combustion: spontaneous, 267–68; internal and external, 446
combustion chamber, 498, **499**
comet, 141–44; Halley's, 141–44, **144**
common cold *See* cold, common
common sense, 23
communicable diseases, 126
communication: problems of, 541–42; future of, 571–72

commutator, split-ring, **469**, **477**
compass, 464
compound: defined, 278; difference from mixture, 279
compressed air, 492
compression stroke: gasoline engine, 447, **448**; Diesel engine, 448, **449**
compressor, 498, **498**
Compton, Dr. Arthur, 297
Conant, Dr. James B., 23, 25
concave lens, 537, **537**
concrete: how made, 336; reinforced, 336–37
condensation, 213, **216**
conditioned reflex, 42–43; in dogs, **43**
conduction, heating by, 259
cones, plants with, 431
cones, in retina, 534
connections, electric: series, 473–74, **474**; parallel, 474, **474**
conservation, 407–23; of minerals, 338–42; of coal, 338–39; of oil, 339–41; of metals, 341–42; of soil, 377–82; of fish and game, 407–10; balance and, 413–15; of forests, 421–22; of energy, 437
conservation laws, 408–09
constellations, 139–40, **142**, **143**
contact paper, 557
contact poison, 418
contact printing, 579
contour plowing, 378–79
control experiment, **20**, 21–23; in discovery of penicillin, 22; in study of scurvy, 65–66; in study of beriberi, 66–67; in study of pellagra, 67
control rods, 297, **298**
convection current, 259
convex lens, 537, **537**
Copernicus, Nicholas, 135
copper: (tables), 317, 520; mining of, 318; plating, 478–79, **478**
corn cob, 405
corn smut, 420
cornea, 534, **535**
corona, 178, **180**
corpuscles, 80 *See also* cells, blood
corrosion of metals, 478–79, **478**
cosmic rays, 196, 302
cosmotron, 293
cotton, weaves of, **257**
cottonwood, 391
cover crops, 379
cow, prize, 350, **351**
cowpeas, 379
cowpox, 110
crab, 429
"cracking" oil, 341, **341**
crane, 441
Crater Lake, **167**
craters on moon, 174
creosote, 418
crescent moon, 172
critical mass, 300
crocodile, 429
crops: rotation of, 377; strip cropping, 379, **379**; cover, 379; destruction by pests, 415
cross-pollination, 393
crude oil, 333
crystal detector, 551
cup animals, 428, **428**
Curie, Madame Marie, 283
curing of meat, 120
curium, 282
current, electric: alternating, 469–70, **469**; direct, 469–70, **469**; in radio, 550
cuts, caring for, 109
cuttings, 388, **389**
cycle: water, 215, **216**; life, of insects, 415–17, **416**, **417**; of radio wave, 548
cyclone, 236
Cyclops, **2**
cyclotron, 292; atom particles in, **293**, **294**
Cygnus, 140, **142**, **143**
cytoplasm, 55

D

dairies, inspection of, 119–20
Dalton, John, 282
dams, water pressure and, 490–91, **491**
Daphnia, **92**
darkroom, 577
day: and night, 152–53, **152**, 244; hours of, 153–56
daylight, hours of (table), 247
Daylight Saving Time, 156
DC, 469–70; in electric motor, 477–78, **477**
DDT, 107, 418
Dead Sea, 319
"deadroom," **512**
deafness, 516
death rates (table), 112
Death Valley, 147
decay bacteria, 104
deceleration, rocket, 193
dees, 292, **293**
deficiency diseases, 65–67
dehydration of foods, 120
delta, 165–66, **165**
Deneb, 140, **142**, **143**
desert, plant life in, 362, 410
desire, in habit formation, 44
detector, 550–51

deuterium, 303
developing, photographic, 577–78
dew, 216; where it forms, 224; how it forms, 226; weather that causes, 251
diabetes, 113
diameter, 135
diaphragm: of human body, 88, **88**; in telephone transmitter, 545, **545**; in telephone receiver, **545**, 546; in phonograph, 564
Dickson, W. K. L., 561
Diesel engine, **447**, 448–49; strokes of, 449–50, **449**; for locomotive, 487, **487**
diet: normal daily, 65; balanced, 70–72; (table), 75
differential, 483
diffused light, 531
diffusion through membrane, 364, **365**, 370
digestion, 82–85
digestive system, 56, 84–86, **84**; need for riboflavin, 67; action of parts, 84–86, **84**
dinosaur, 410, **411**
diphtheria, 106; bacillus (table), 104; Schick test for, 126
direct current, **469**, 470; in motor, 477, 478, **478**
dirigible, **501**
diseases: deficiency, 65–67; germ theory of, 101; body defenses against, 108–10, 115; drugs against, **110**; community measures, 118–27; communicable, 126; radioactive materials in treatment of, 308–10
distillation, 322, **323**
divers, special suits for, 148
Dog Star, 139
dogs: ability to learn, 42; Pavlov's experiment with, **43**; training your, 43
dogwood, 414
doldrums, 209–10
dominant traits, 401
dormancy stage, 252
Dowmetal, 331, (table), 332
drag, 497
drinking water, 124–26
drought, 225
dry-bulb temperature, 226, (table), 227
dry cells, 461, **461**; in series, 473–74, **474**; in parallel, 474, **474**; in electroplating, 479
dry ice, snow made from, **214**
ducts, in green plants, 365, **366**
ducts, in hot-air heating, 260
Duralumin, 331, (table), 332
Duryea brothers, 483
dust: storm, 164; radioactive, 301
dye made from coal, 29
dynamo, 469–70, **469**, **471**

E

ear: parts, 515, **515**; care of the, 516–17; ache, 517; discomfort in middle, 517–18
eardrum, **515**, 516; effect of air pressure on, 517
earth: position in solar system, **136**; distance to planets (table), 137; relative size (table), **137**; conditions for life on, 146–51; rotation on axis, **152**; tilt of axis, 153; diameter, 159; area covered by water, 160; highest and lowest points on, 160, **161**; explored and unexplored, **160–61**; erosion, 164–65; force of gravity, 166–67; motion relative to sun and moon, **172**; heat lost during night, 215–16; elements in crust of (table), 316
"earthquake belt," **163**
earthquakes, 160–63
earthshine, 172
earthworm, 374, **428**
east longitude, 154
Eastern Standard Time, **154**, 155
Eastman, George, 561
echo, 518–19; absorption of, 519, **519**
eclipses: of the sun, **134**, 177, **178**, **179**; by and of the moon, 177–80, **179**; annular, **179**, 180
Ecuador, earthquake in, 162
Edison, Thomas A.: electric light bulb, 475, **476**; motion picture, 561; "talking machine," 564
egg nucleus, 392, **392**
Eijkman, Dr. Christiaan, 66
eka-erbium, 282
eka-holmium, 282
elasticity, of lens of eye, 538
electric connections, 473–74, **474**
electric current, **460**, 469–70, **469**, 542–43, 569, 582, **583**
electric gong, 542, **542**
electric light, 475–77; argon in bulb, 476; fluorescent, 477
electric motor, 477–78, **477**, 492
electric power station, 469–70; generator, **471**
electricity: 249; used to break up molecules, 280–81; flow of electrons, 456; origin of word, 456; neutral state, 456; static, 456–62, **457**; like and unlike charges, 458; direction of flow, 460–61; magnetism and, 465–69; how a power plant makes, 470; measuring, 470–71; distributing, to user, 471–73; series and parallel connections, 473–74, **474**; safe handling of, 474–75; light from, 475–77; heat from, 477; power from,

477–78; uses of, 478–79; control by voice in telephone, 545; from sun, 582, **583**
electromagnet, 466–67, **467**; in cyclotron, 292; in motor, **477**, 478; in telegraph, 542–43, **542**; in telephone, **545**, 546
electromagnetism *See* magnetism
"electron gun," 568
electron microscope, 102
electrons, 283; movement around nucleus, 285; flow of, 456–62, **460**; release, in television, 568
electroplating, 478–79, **478**
elements, chemical: in nutrients, 62; in compounds, 278; number of, 282; most abundant (table), 316; basic facts about (table), 317; needed by plants, 362
elevator, airplane, **495**, 496
Ellsberg, Commander, 148
elm leaf beetle, 422
Elodea, 353–54
embryo, 390, **391**
Emden Deep, 160
emotions, direction of, 45
emperor penguin, 410
enameling, 342
energy: bodily, needs of, 58; calories for, 62; nutrient sources, 65; in fission of atom, 295; atomic, 304–07, 493; for photosynthesis, 358; and work, 435–37; changing the form of, 436–37; electrical, **436**, 477; conservation of, law of, 437; water and steam, 469; mechanical, 478; light (table), 530; direct from sun, 582, **583**
Engelmann spruce beetle, 422
engine: fuels and, 440–43; steam, 443–46; gasoline, 446–48, **448**; Diesel, 448–49, **449**; automobile, 483; atomic, in submarine, 493; airplane, 494; jet, in airplane, 498, **499**
Eniwetok Atoll, **274**, 304
enlargement, photographic, **578**
environment: aid to breeding, 403–04; adaptation to, 410, **411**
enzymes, 84–85; where produced (table), 85
epidemic, 100
epidermis, 356
equinoxes, **244**, 245
erosion, 164–65; pressure on earth's crust from, 166; checking, 378–82
Eustachian tube, 517
evaporation, 213, **216**, 336
exhaust stroke in engines, 447, **448**, **449**
expert, science, 28
explosion: of atomic bomb, 301, **301**; of hydrogen bomb, 304; gasoline, 442, 458–59
exposure, 577
external-combustion engine, 446
eye: parts, 534, **535**; common defects, 534–36; accommodation, 537; proper use of, 538
"eye" of potato, 388
eyeblink: a reflex, 40; function of, 534
eyeglasses, 536; bifocal, 537–38

F

Fahrenheit, changing to centigrade, 241
fall-out, 301–02
Faraday, Michael, 467–68, **468**
farm: sanitation on, 123; animals, 397; balance on, 414–15; protection against pests, 418–19
farmer, 385; his allies against insects, 418–19
farming methods, primitive, 432, **433**
farsightedness, **535**, 536, **536**
fats, 62, **62**; elements in, 62; source of energy, 65; in various foods (table), 76 *See also* digestion
faults in rock, 162, **162**
feeling, location of, 39, **39**
Fermi, Dr. Enrico, 294–95, **295**, 297–99
ferns, 431, **431**
fertilization, 392
fertilizers for soil, 380; experiment with, **362**
fibers: of nerve cells, **38**; of tendon, **57**; in cochlea, 516
fibers, synthetic, **8**; wool, 257, **257**
fibrin, 82
fibrinogen, 82
field, magnetic, 465
field trip, **426**
fighter planes, **501**
filament, 476
film, 558; processing, 577–78; panchromatic, 577
film slides, 559
filmstrip, 559
filtration, 125; in air conditioning, 264
finishing, photographic, 575
fire: built-in protection, 266–67; home hazards, 267–68, **267**, **268**; spontaneous combustion and, 267–68; putting out, 268–71, **269**; forest, 421–22, **422**; coal, starting a, 440
fire alarm, 271; how to send a, **269**
"fireball," 301
fire extinguisher: soda-acid, **269**, 270; carbon tetrachloride, 270
fireproofing, 266–67
fish, 410, 425; circulation in, 91; water pressure and, 148; place in animal kingdom, 429
"fish ladder," 408, **409**
fish liver oils, 68

fission, atomic, 294–97; man-made, 303
flames, danger of open, 259
flatworms, 428, **428**
Fleming, Dr. Alexander, 22, 105
flies: Redi's experiments with, 21–22, **21**; carriers of disease, 106; (table), 416
flip booklet, **561**
floating, Archimedes' principle of, 488, **488**
floods, 164; control of, 381, **381**
flowers, 391–92, **392**
fluke, liver, 428
fluorescent tube, 477
fluorine, 319
flying wing, 494
flywheel, **444**
FM, **550–51**
foam-type fire extinguisher, 270
focus: eye, 535–36; camera, 577
fog, 232, 251
food: burning in body cells, 59; ideal, for bodily needs, 61; nutrients in various kinds of, 61–62, **71**, (table), 76; vitamins in, 65–68; minerals in, 68–69; the "Basic Seven," 70–71; kinds of, **71**; preparing, for good diet, 71; transforming, into blood, 86; germs entering body through, 106; inspection of, 120; dehydration of, 120; refrigeration of, 120; need by living things, 147; how plants store, 365–66; radioactive substances and, 309, 367–68
food chain, 414, **415**
food factories, 352–68
food tube, enzymes in, 84, **84**
foot-pounds, 437, **438**
force, 437–38; with fulcrum, 438; lines of, in magnetism, 465, **465**
forest, **377**; losses through erosion, 375, **376**
forest fires, 421–22, **422**
forest ranger, 422
forest sanctuary, 414
4-H Club, 351
foxhole radio receiver, 551
fractions of plasma, 82
Francis wheel, 445–46, **446**
Franklin, Benjamin, 460
Frasch, Herman, 335; sulfur-drilling process, **335**; well, **337**
French horn, **522**
Freon, 264
frequency, 523
friction, electricity from, 456–57
Frisch, Dr. O. R., 294
frog: nervous system of, **36**; circulation in, 91; development of, 394–95, **394**; place in animal kingdom, 429; in electrical experiments, 455
fronts, 234–38, **235**; air masses and, 234; warm, 234–37; cold, 237–38
frost, 251
fruit pests, 420
fruit trees, grafting, 389, **390**
fry, **409**
fuel oil, 442
fuels: in rockets, 195; for space station, 197; for heating systems, 260; insulation to save, 265, **265**; atomic, breeding of, 305–07; coal and oil as, 332–34; heat value of, 442; solid, 442; completeness of burning, 442; for locomotive, 487; for airplane, 494; for jet engine, 498, **499**
fulcrum, **435**, 438–39
full moon, 173
Fuller, C. S., 582, **583**
fungus: in athlete's foot, 107–08; growth of, 359–60; in soil, 374; pests, 420–21, **420**; host for, 421; preventing growth of, 421
furnace, blast, 329, **331**
fuse, 475; "blown," **475**
fuselage, 494, **495**
fusion, atomic, 303

G

galaxy, 145, **146**
gale, 236
Galen, 18–19
galena detector, 551
Galileo, 138
Galvani, Luigi, 455–56
galvanizing, 342
game laws, 408–09
gamma globulin, 82
gamma rays, 301
garbage disposal, 123
gas: molecules in, 207; properties of, 277; dissolved in liquid, 322; in air, 323; natural, 335; speed of sound in, 520
gas turbine, 498, **499**
gasoline: antiknock, 319; made by "cracking" oil, 341, **341**; burning of, 442; danger of explosion, 442; sparks and, 458–59
gasoline engine, 446–48; parts of, 446–47; strokes of, 447–48, **448**
gastric juice, 84, 109
gauge, radioactive, 311
GCA, 571, **572**
gears, 483–84, **484**; automatic shift, 484
Geiger counter, 302, **302**; tracing "tagged" atoms with, 308, **309**; uses in medicine, 308–10; uses in industry, 310–11; testing ore with, **314**; testing green plants with, 367–68

Gemini, **143**
generator, 462, **533**; in automobile, 462, 470; at electric power station, 469, **469**, 470, **471**
genes, 401–02
geranium cutting, 388
germ theory of disease, 101
germanium, **354**
germs, **99**, 102; Penicillium as killer of, 22; work of Pasteur and Koch, 101; entry into body, 106–08; protection against, 107–08 *See also* bacteria
glands: sweat, **58**, 59; thyroid, 70; mammary, 430
glare, 531
glass, 338, **339**
glider, **511**
glucose: oxidation in body, 60, (table), 85; in green plants, 356; elements in, **357**
Goddard, Professor Robert H., 186, 194–95
goiter, 70, 319
Goldberger, Dr. Joseph, 67
gong, electric, 542, **542**
graft, 389, **390**
Grand Coulee Dam, 362, 471, **491**
graphite, 550–51
grasshopper, 416, (table), **416**
gravity, 166–67; Newton's law, 166–67; barrier to space travel, 186; pull of, **192**, 193
Gray, Stephen, 541
Great Lakes cities, water supply, 125
Great Salt Lake, 319
green plants: and radioactive materials, 310; animal need for, 353; Helmont's experiment, **353**; and carbon dioxide, 354; need for light, 355, **355**; glucose in, 356; photosynthesis, 358–60; as food factories, 366, **367**
Greenwich meridian, 154–55, **154**
Grimaldi, **175**
ground control of approach, 571, **572**
Groves, Maj. Gen. Leslie, 296
growth, diet for, 70–72
growth hormone, 82
grub, 419
guard cells, **356**
guided missiles, **197**
gullet, **84**

H

Haber, Dr. Heinz, 188
habit formation, 44–45
hail, 224, 237–38
hair, 58, **58**
halibut liver oil, 68
Hall, Charles, 328
Halley's Comet, 141, 144, **144**
hammer, **515**, 516
hard coal, 333
hard water, 319–20
hawk, 414
Hayden Planetarium, 185
health officer, 126
hearing, 514–24; location in brain, 39, **39** *See also* ear
heart, 79, 87, 91–95; beating of, 86–87; location in body, **89**; muscle of, 92; valves of, 92–93, **92**, **94**; auricles and ventricles of, 92–93, **92**
heart disease, 97, 113
heartbeat, 86–87; control of, 40
heat: from sun, 151; absorption of, 190; movement in a room, 259; value of various fuels, 441–42; from electricity, 477; from air friction, 502
heat exchangers, 306
heating systems: radiant, 259; fuels used, 260; central, 260–62; hot-air, 260, **261**; hot-water, 260–61; steam, 261–63, **262**, **263**
heavy water, 303
helicopter, 494; principle of operation, 502
helium: for spacemen, 188; particles, in cloud chamber, 284–85; bullets, path of, 284–85, **285**; fusion of hydrogen into, 303, **304**; (table), 317
Helmont, 352–53, **353**
hemoglobin, 70, 80–81; provides oxygen for body cells, 90
Henry, Joseph: electric gong, 542, **542**; relay, 544
herbivores, 140, 413
Hercules, 140, 142
heredity *vs.* environment, 402–03
Hero, 442; his steam engine, **443**
heron, 412, **413**
Hertz, Heinrich, 546; photoelectric cell, 563
Hertzian waves, 546–47
hibernation, 253
high blood pressure, 113
high-fidelity sound reproduction, 565
high-pressure area, 236, **236**
highway safety, 485–86
Hillary, Sir Edmund, 160, 325
hillsides, checking erosion on, 378
Holland, John, 492
home: safety from accidents, 130; air conditioning, 263–65; insulation, 265, **265**; simple weather protection, 265–66; safety from fire, 266–68, **267**; fire fighting at, 268; electrical appliances in, 471; proper lighting, 533–34

hookworm, 428
Hoover Dam, 392
Hopkins, Dr. G. Howland, 65
hormones, 82
horse latitudes, 209–10
"horsehead" nebula, of Orion, **181**
horsepower, 449–51, **450**; watts and, 470
host for fungus, 421
hot-air heating, 260, **261**
hot-water heating, 260–61
Houot, Commander, 132, 160, **161**
hours of day and night, 153–56
housefly, 106
housing, weather and, 204, **205**, 258–69
Hughes, David, 544
humidifier, 260; making your own, 266
humidity, 212, 218; relative, 212–13; measuring, 225–28, **228**; (chart), 227
humus, 372, 373
hunting, conservation measures for, 408–09
hurricane, 236; warning, **237**; season for, 251; damage from, **251**
hybrids, 401
hydrazine, 195
hydrochloric acid, 84–85, (table), 348
hydrogen: in nutrients, 62; liquid, 195; in water, **280**; weight of, 283; atom, 286, **286**; fusion into helium, 303, 304; (tables), 316, 317
hydrogen bomb, 302–04; making of, 303; explosion at Eniwetok, **274**, 304
hydrogen *2* and hydrogen *3*, 303
hypo bath, 578
hypothesis, 21, 25, 283

I

ice: erosion from, 164 *See also* dry ice
illusion, 561
image, 557
image-orthicon tube, 567–68, **568**
imagination, 33–34, **51**
immunity, 110–11
impulse, 38; interpretation by brain, 39
incubator, 396, **396**
Indian summer, 250
indoor weather, 259
indophenol, 74
induction coil, 546, **547**
Industrial Revolution, 444
infantile paralysis, 102, 108
infection, 81
influenza, 102; deaths from (table), 112
inheritance, 400–02
inner ear, **515**, 516
inoculation, 110
insect bites, 107
insects, 415–20; damage by, 415; control of (table), 416; life cycles, 416–17, **416**, **417**; chewing and sucking, 417; place in animal kingdom, 429
instruments: accuracy from, 18; musical, 522, **522**
insulation: of home against weather, 265–66, **265**, **266**; spun glass for, 338; of electrical wiring, 471, 474
insulin, 113
intake stroke in engines, 447, **448**, **449**
internal-combustion engine, 446
international date line, **154**, 155–56
International Unit, 77
intestine, **96**; enzymes in, 85; villi in, 86, **86**
inventions, role in science, 30
invertebrates, 428–29, **428–29**
iodine: bodily need for, 70; goiter and, 70; test for starch, 83, 356, **357**, 359; (table), 317; in drinking water, 319
ionosphere, 210
iris, 534, **535**
iron: anemia and, 70; in various foods (table), 77; (tables), 316, 317, 520; from iron ore, 329; mining, 330; impurities in pig iron, 330; conserving, 341–42; for plants, 362; magnetic properties of, 463
iron filings, action with magnet, **279**, 564–65, **565**
irrigation, 362, **363**
isobar, **236**, 238
isoniazids, 114
isotherms, 238

J

Japanese beetle, 419–20, 419, (table), 416
jaundice, 82
Jeans, Sir James, 144
Jenner, Edward, 118
jet aircraft, 494, 497–502, **499**; bomber, **501**; fighter, **501**
joint-legged animals, 429
jungle, 413
Jupiter, 135; position in solar system, **136**; moons of, 136; conditions for life on, 150; gravity on, 167, 187

K

Kennelly-Heaviside layer, 548
Kepler, **175**
kerosene, 418
keyboard, piano, **522**
kidneys, 95–97, **96**, **97**

killdeer, 419
kilocycle, 548
kilowatt, 473
kindling temperature, 270, 440
Kinescope tube, 569
Kingston valves, 492
Kitty Hawk, N. C., 186, 494
knee reflex, 41, **41**
Koch, Robert, 101
kudzu vine, 378

L

lac insect, 415
lacteals, 86, **86**
ladybird beetle, 415
Lake, Simon, 492
landing: a spaceship problem, 187; by GCA, 571–72, **572**
landing gear, **495**
landslides, 164
larva, 416, **417**
larynx, 521, **521**
Lassen Peak, 166
lava, 166
Lavoisier, Antoine, 22–26; theory of burning, 22; methods, 23
laws: of Universal Gravitation, 167; for conservation of resources, 408–09; of Conservation of Energy, 437
layering, 389
lead (tables), 317, 332
leaf, epidermis of, 356, **356**
learning, 33–48; importance of, 36; through sense organs, 36–37; through nervous system, 37–38; through the brain, 38–40; conditioned reflex in, 42–43; habit formation and, 44
legs, circulation in, **89**
legumes, 380, **380**
lemon juice, scurvy and, 66
lens: of eye, 534, **535**; light rays bent by, 536–37, **537**; concave and convex, 537, **537**
lens camera, 576
lever, **435**, 438–39
Ley, Willy, 195
lice, plant, 417
life, conditions for: on earth, 146–49; on other planets, 149–50
life cycles of insects, 415–17, **416**, **417**
life processes, measuring, 308–09
life span: in early days, 101; expectancy of (chart), **112**; increase in, 113–14
lift, **496**, 497
light: speed of, 138–39, 528; from stars, 139; from sun, 151, 303; for green plants, 355, **355**; from electricity, 476; waves of, 528–29; sources of, 529–30; how it travels, 530–31; reflection and diffusion of, 531; glare, 531; white, breaking up, 532; spectrum, 532
light bulb, 471, 476, **476**
light waves, 528–29, **528**; double vibrations of, 529; change of direction, **530**, 531
lighting, glare, 531; proper conditions for, **531**
lightning, 249–50; an electric spark, 249–50, 459
lights, automobile, 485
light-year, 138–39
limestone: caves, 320–21, **321**; in cement, 336
Lind, Dr. James, 65–66
lines of force, 465, **465**
Linnaeus, Carolus, 425
Lippershey, Hans, 202
liquid: properties of, 277; speed of sound in (table), 520
liquid air, 315, 324
liquid hydrogen, 195
Lister, Dr. Joseph, 98–99
lithium, 303
Little Dipper, 140, **142**, **143**
liver fluke, 428
lizards, 429
loadstone, 463
loam, 373
locomotive: first, 445; electricity and, 477; modern, 487, **487**
longhorn cattle, 397–98, 399–400
longitude, 154–55, **154**
long-playing records, 565
Loomis, Mahlon, 546
loudness, amplitude and, 523
low-pressure area, 224; winds around, 236, **236**
Lubbock, Sir John, 35
lungs, action of, 88–91, **88**, **89**, **90**
Luray Caverns, 320
lymph, 86, 94

M

machines, 434; kinds of, 437–40, **439**, **441**, **451**
maggots, origin of, 19–20
Magnes, 462
magnesium: burning of, 26; (tables), 316, 317; in sea water, 319; uses of, 319; for plants, 362
magnesium chloride, 319
magnet, bar, **433**, 463–65, **463**, **465** *See also* electromagnet

magnetic field, **465**; in motors, 478
magnetism, 462–70; in North and South Poles, 464; lines of force, 464–65, **465**; from electricity, 465–67, **466**; electricity from, 467–69; in tape recording, 565
malaria: drugs for, 68, 111–12; mosquito and, 107, **108**
mammals: characteristics, 397; place in animal kingdom, 430
mammary glands, 430
Mammoth Cave, 320
man: special traits, 34–36; adaptation to environment, 410–11; chief competitors of, 411
manganese-steel alloy, 331
Manhattan District, 294–96
manure, as fertilizer, 380
Marconi, Guglielmo, 547
"mare's tails," 232
Maritime air masses, 234, **235**
marrow, 58, 80
Mars: men on, 134; position in solar system, **136**; moons of, 136; "canals" on, 150; conditions for life on, 150, 186–87; gravity on, 187
mass, critical, 300
matter, 276; forms of, 277; properties of, 278; chemical changes in, 281
mauve dye, 29
maximum-minimum thermometer, 220–21
measles, 82, 102, 126
measurement, need in science, 18; by radioactivity, 310
meat: maggots in, 19–20; source of proteins, 62; in balanced diet, 70; curing of, 120
meat-eating animals, 147, 412–13
Mediterranean fruit fly, 415; measures against, 420
medulla, **39**; functions controlled by, 40
megacycle, 548
Meitner, Dr. Lise, 294
Melanesians, 243
membrane: of cell, 55; mucous, 109; diffusion through, 364–65, **365**
memory, location of, 39, **39**
Mendel, Gregor, 400–01, **402**
Menzel, Dr. Donald, 144–46
mercury: in thermometer, 221; barometer, **220**; (table), 317
Mercury: diameter, 135; position in solar system, **136**; conditions for life on, 149
meridians, 154
Mesabi Range, **330**, 341
metabolism test, 59
metal castings, finding flaws in, 311
metals, 28–31; alloys of, 331, (table), 332; conserving, 341–42; corrosion, protection against, 478–79, **478**
Meteor Crater, 141
meteorites, 141, 196
meteoroids, 196
meteors, 141, 196
meter, electric, 473, **473**
mice, 411
Michelson, Albert A., 528
microbes, 102–03, (table), 104; chemicals against, 111 *See also* germs
microgram, 77
micro-organisms, 102
microphone, 524
microscope, diagram of, 3
middle ear, 515, **515**; discomfort in, 517
migration, 252–53, 419
mildew, 421
milk: in balanced diet, 70; germs entering the body through, 106; pasteurization, 106, **119**, 121; inspection of, 119–20
milk snake, **429**
"milky disease," 419
Milky Way, 145, **146**
milligram, 77
millipede, 429; and ringed worm, 428
Mindanao Deep, 160, **161**
mine: deepest, **161**; salt, **337**
minerals: for health and growth, 68–70; in various foods (table), 77; in blood plasma, 81; made up of elements, 316–17; in drinking water, 319; important, 335–38; used by U.S. in World War II, 338; conservation of, 338–42; in plant growth, 363–64, 367; how carried from roots, 365; in soil, 374; loss from soil, 376–77
minimum-maximum thermometer, 220–21
missile, guided, **197**
Mississippi delta, **165**
mixture, 279–80, **279**; difference from compound, 279
mold, 359, 421; growth on bread, **21**; Penicillium, 22, **105**
molecules: movement in air, 207; difference from atoms, 280; breaking up, 280–81; diffusion of, 365; in sound waves, 518
monoplane, 494
monsoon, 243
moon, 168–81; relative size, **137**; distance from earth, 159; weight of man on, 167; tides and, 168–69, **168**; path of, 170–71; diameter, 170; orbit around earth, 171, **171**; measurement of month by, 171; phases of, 171–74; motions relative to sun and earth, **172**, 174; landscape, 174, **175**, **176**; craters on, 174, **176**; conditions for life on,

175–77; eclipses by and of, 177–80, **178**, **179**; radar waves to, 181
moonlets, 136
moons of other planets, 136, **137**
Morse, Samuel F. B., 542
mortar, 344
mosquitoes: protection against, 107; anopheles, **108**; (table), 416
mosses, 431
moth, life cycle of, **417**
motion pictures, 560–63; first, 560–61, **560**; Edison and, 561; sound, 562–63; sound track, **563**
motor: a simple, **477**; electric, 477–78; electromagnetism and, 478; armature of, 478
Mount Everest, 147, 157, **158**, 160, **161**, 325
Mount Lassen, 166
Mount Rainier, 166
mountain peaks, volcanoes and, 166, **167**
Mountain Standard Time, **154**, 155
"mountains" on moon, **175**
mucous membrane, 109
mumps, 126
muscles: control of, 40; nerve endings in, **41**; cells of, 55, **57**
mushroom, 359, 431, **431**
mushroom cloud, 301, **301**
musical instruments, range of vibrations, **522**
musical scale, 523
mutants, 399
Muybridge, Eadweard, 560–61

N

nails, formation of, 58
National Council on Food and Nutrition, 64
natural gas, 335
Nautilus, 306, **306**
navigation stars, 140, **142**, **143**
neap tide, 169
nearsightedness, 535–37, **535**, **536**
nebula: spiral, **145**; "horsehead," of Orion, **181**
needle, phonograph, 565
negative, photographic, 558–59, **559**; development of, 578–79
negative charge, 456–62
negative pole, 460, **465**
Neptune: position in solar system, **136**; moons of, 136; relative size, **137**; conditions for life on, 150
neptunium, 282; in formation of plutonium, 299, **299**
nerve, 36, **37**; of hearing, 516; optic, 534
nerve cells *See* cells, nerve
nerve tissue, 55
nervous system, 36; of frog, **36**; human, **37**; learning through the, 37–38; riboflavin for, 67
neutral, shifting into, 484
neutral balance of electricity, 456
neutralizing acids and bases, 348–49
neutrons, 286, **286**; "slow," 295; flow, in chain reaction, 298; in splitting of atom, **300**
New York City, water supply, 124–25
Newton, Sir Isaac: Law of Universal Gravitation, 166–67; action and reaction, 194, **194**, 497; experiment with light, 532
niacin: pellagra and, 67; in various foods (table), 77
Niagara Falls, 471
nichrome, 477
nickel-steel alloy, 331
night and day: reason for, 152–53, **152**, 224; hours of, 153–56
night blindness, 67–68
Nile delta, 165
nimbo-stratus clouds, **233**
nimbus clouds, 232
nitrates, 380
nitrogen: in nutrients, 62; in proteins, 65; in air, 146–47, 324; in blood, 148, 188; (tables), 316, 317; an inactive gas, 324; providing soil with, 377, 379–80
nitrogenous wastes, 95
nodules, 380, **380**
Norkay, Tenzing, 157, **158**, 160, 325
North Star, 140
Northern Hemisphere, summer in, 153
Northern Spy apples, 395
novocain, effect of, on nerve, 39–40
nuclear reactors in, **13**, 305
nucleus: of body cells, 55, 57, **57**; of white blood cells, 80; of atom, 283–86, **285**; of plant cell, 388; of sperm and egg, 392, **393**, 401–02
nutrients, 61–62, **62**; elements in, 62; cooking to preserve, 71; tests for, 73; in daily diet (table), 75; in plasma, 81; effect of enzymes on, 84
nymph, **416**, 417

O

Oak Ridge, Tenn., 293, **296**, 300, 308, 367
Oberth, Professor Hermann, 186
oboe, **522**
observations, dependence on, 19
ocean, salt in, 319
ocean liner, 488
Ocean of Storms, **175**

octane, 195
octopus, 429
Oersted, Hans, 465
oil: 333–35; tracing, in pipelines, 310, **310**; uses of, 333; crude, 333; dome, 334–35; searching for, 334–35; drilling for, 335; amount used by U.S. in World War II, 338; products of, 339; conservation of, 339–41; tideland, 340; reserves, 340; refinery, **340**; "cracking" of, 341, **341**
oil well, deepest, **161**
oils: fish liver, 68; vegetable, 365
O-Man, **12**
one-celled animals, 386–87, **386**, **387**
Oppenheimer, Dr. Robert, 296
optic nerve, 534
orbit, 135; of earth around sun, 153, **172**; of moon around earth, 170–72, **172**; relative, of earth, moon, and sun, **172**
orbital rocket, 195
orchid, wild, 414
ore, 316–18; testing, with Geiger counter, **314**; mining, **318**
organ systems, 56
organism, 56
organs, 56
Orion, **143**; "horsehead" nebula of, **181**
orthicon *See* image-orthicon tube
oscillator, **550**
oscilloscope, 522–23, **522**, **523**
Otto, Nikolaus, 446
outer ear, 515–16, **515**
ovary, 391–92, **392**
"overloaded" circuit, 475, **475**
overshoes, 258
ovules, 391–92, **392**
oxidation, 59–61, **59**, 87; slow, 59; in starting of fire, 468
oxygen: combination in burning, 22–23, **23**, 268; in blood, 58, 70, 80–81, 87, 90, 93–94; in nutrients, 62; necessary for life on earth, 146–47; and helium, for spacemen, 188–89; liquid, 195; in water, 280; (tables), 316, 317; in air, 323–24; pure, 324–25; how green plants give off, 357–58; and carbon dioxide, cycle of, 360–61, **361**
oxygen tank, 325
oyster, 429

P

Pacific Standard Time, 154, **155**
pain: sense organs for, 36; response, a reflex act, 41
panchromatic film, 577
pancreas, 85; insulin from, 113
pancreatic juice, **85**
paper: kindling temperature, 440; contact, 557
parallel connection, 474, **474**
Paramecium, **386**, 387, **387**, 428, **428**
Parícutin volcano, **162**
Parsons, Charles, 445
Pasteur, Louis, 101, 112
pasteurization of milk, 106, 121
Pavlov, Ivan, 42–43
pea plant, Mendel's study of, 400
pearl divers, 490
Pearson, G. L., 582, **583**
peat, 333
Pegasus, **140**, **143**
pellagra, 67
penguin, emperor, 410–11
penicillin, 105, 374
Penicillium, 22, 105, **105**
penumbra, **178**, 179
pepsin, 84–85, (table), 85
periscope, **530**, 531
Perkin, William Henry, 28–29
persistence of vision, 561–62
perspiration, 258
pests, 415–21; life cycles of, 415–17, **416**, **417**; destructive work and control (table), 416, 418, **418**; birds as enemies of, 418–19; citrus fruit, 420; fungus, 420–21
Peters, Dr. T. K., 572
Petri dishes, 101–02
phases of moon, 171–72, **173**
phlogiston, 22
phonograph, 564–65
phosphate fertilizers, 380
photography, 557–63, 575–80; shadow pictures, 557; pinhole cameras, 557, **558**; negatives and positives, 558–59; moving pictures, 560–63; taking the picture, 577–78; developing film, 577–78; enlarging, **578**; printing, 579–80
photosynthesis, 358–60; steps in, 366
physical change, 281
piano keyboard, 522
Piccard, Professor Auguste, 157
picture tube, 569
pig iron, 329, **331**
pile: atomic, 297–99, **298**, **299**; nuclear reactors in, 305; voltaic, 459–60
pilot balloon, 230, **231**
piloting, radar in, 571–72
pinch bar, 439
pinhole camera, 557–58, **557**, **558**, 575–76
pipelines, 341; following flow in, 310, **310**; finding leaks in, 311
pistil, 391–92, **392**

pistillate flower, 391–92
piston, **444**
pitch, frequency and, 523
pitchblende, 291
pith, 366
plagues, control of, **126**
plane, inclined, 439, **439**
planetarium, 135, 139–40
planetoids, 135
planets: revolution of, 135; relative position in solar system, **136**; distances from earth (table), 137; conditions for life on, 149–50
plant-eating animals, 147, 413
plant lice, 417
plants: adaptation to cold weather, 252; our dependence on, 353; carbon dioxide and, 354–57; oxygen and, 357–58; foodmaking by, 358; photosynthesis in, 358–60, 366; needs of, 361–63; storage of food by, 365–66; as sugar and starch factories, **367**; asexual reproduction, 387–90; sexual reproduction, 390–95; naming of, 425–26; kingdom (chart), 430–31, **430–31**
plasma, 80–83, 94; nutrients in, 81; antibodies in, 81–82, 110; fractions of, 82–83
plastics, 338
plate glass, 338, **339**
plating: zinc, 342; copper, 478, **478**
Pleiades, **143**
plowing, contour, 378–79
Pluto, 136, **136**
plutonium, 282; discovery of, 299; formation of, **299**; in breeding of atomic fuel, 305
pneumococcus (table), 104
pneumonia: microbe of (table), 104, 106; wonder drugs for, **110**; deaths from, 111
pointers (stars), 140, **142, 143**
poisons, insect, 417–18
Polar air masses, 234, **235**
Polaris, 140, **142, 143**
poles: negative and positive, 460, **465**; North and South, 464 *See also* magnets *and* magnetism
polio, 82, 108; injection against, 52, 98–99
pollen, 391–93, **392**
pollination, 393
Pollux, **143**
pond scum, 431, **431**
positive, photographic, 558–59, **559**
positive charge, 456–62
positive pole, 460, **465**
potassium (tables), 316, 317
potatoes, 388
poultry, breeding of, 395–97
"powder" rockets, 194
power, 440; cost of, 451
power plant: atomic, 306; electric, 469–70, **471**
power stroke in engines, 447–49, **448, 449**
practice, in habit formation, 44
prairie dog, 411
precipitation, 224
pressure: sense of, 36; effect on life, 148–49; within the earth, 161–64 *See also under* air *and* water
pressure cooking, 71
pressure points, 93–94, **93**
"pressurized" cabin, 149
Priestley, John, 323
printing, photographic: paper for, 557, 579; contact and projection, 579
prisms, **14**, 537, **537**
prize livestock, 350
problems: conclusions lead to new, 25; solving, 46
projection printing, 579
projector, motion picture, 560
prominences of sun, 178, **180**
propeller, 494, **495**, 497
properties of matter, 278
proteins, 62, 81; elements in, **62**; source of energy, 65; nitrogen in, 65; in various foods (table), 76; digestion of, 84–85, (table), 85; effect of high temperatures on, 148 *See* digestion
protons, 286; path of, in cyclotron, 292; charge of, 456
protoplasm, 55
protozoon, 103, 386–87, **386, 387**
Proxima Centauri, 139
psychrometer, 226; sling type, **228**
Ptolemy, 135
ptomaines, 120
pulley, 439, **439**
pulse beat, 86–87, 93
pupa, 416, **417**
pupil, 534, **535**
pus, 81, 109
putrefaction, 20, 21
pyrethrum, 417

Q

quail, 414
quarantine, 126–27
quinine, 28, 111–12

R

rabbit, 411
radar, 231, 570–71; waves to moon, 181; use, in piloting, 571–72

radiant heating, 259
radiation, 259
radiator, action of air over, 259
radio, 546–52; transmission, 549–50, **549**, **550**; reception, 550–51, **551**, **554**; crystal, 555; transcription, 565
radio waves, 547–50, **547**; length of, **548**
radioactive gauge, 311
radioactivity, 283–84; materials in everyday living, 307–11; uses in medicine, 308–10, **309**; uses in industry, 310–11, **311**; in food production, **275**, 366–68
radiosonde, 231, **231**
radium: discovery, 283; atoms, exploding of, 284; (table), 317
ragweed, various names for, 425
rail, T-shaped, 486–87, **487**
railroad, modern, 487, **487**
rain, 213–14, **216**; sky as sign of, 216
rain gauge, **225**
rainfall: measurement of, 224–25, **225**
ram-jet engine, 498, **499**
ranger, forest, 422
rats: as disease carriers, 126; gnawing animals, 411
rays: cosmic, 196, 302; from sun, 215; ultraviolet, 249, 532; infrared, 532; in spectrum, 532; light, how lenses bend, 536–37
rays on moon, 174
reaction and action: in rockets, 194, **194**; in jet propulsion, 497
reactor, nuclear, 305; in atomic-powered submarine, 306, **307**
reading: proper method, 47–48; zones of brightness for, 533, **533**; good, conditions for, 538
reception: telegraph, 543, **543**; telephone, **545**, 546; radio, 550–51, **550**; television, 569–70, **569**
record, long-playing, 566
recorder, tape, 566, **566**
recording, sound, 564–67
recording head, 566
rectum, **84**
red blood cells, 80–83, **81**, 91; replacement of, 58; anemia and, 70; hemoglobin and, 70
Redi, Francesco, 19–22, 386; investigation of source of maggots, 19–20, **20**; method of observation, 20; plan of work, 20–21; experiments, 21–22; publication of conclusions, 22
reflex, 40–42, **41**; conditioned, 42–43
reflex camera, 576
refrigerant, 264, **264**; pressure of, 264
refuge, wildlife, 414
register, heat, 260
Regulus, **142**
reinforced concrete, 336–37
relative humidity *See* humidity, relative
relay, 544
reproduction, 385–403; old beliefs about, 386–87; asexual, 387–90, 394; from embryo, 390–95; of birds and mammals, 395–403
reptiles, 429
research scientists, 28–30; work of, 30
reservoir, 124
resistance: air, a rocket problem, 193; in leverage, 438; electrical, 474
resonance, 524
response, 36
retina, 534, **535**
reverse rocket, 187
revolution: of planets, 135; of earth, 153
Rhine delta, 166
riboflavin: in digestive system, 67; in various foods (table), 77
rice, beriberi and, 66
rickets, 403
Rigel, **143**
rill, 174
ring eclipse, **179**, 180
ringed worms, 428, **428**
riser pipe, 262
robin, 397
rock: porous, 122; faults in, 162, **162**
rocket, **4**, **5**; to moon, 170, 174, 181; reverse, 187; acceleration, 190–93; deceleration, 193; single-stage, 195; three-stage, **191**, 193–95; "powder," 194; two-stage, 195, 197; orbital, 195; fuel for, 195; safe landing of, 196; satellite, 196
rocket engine, 482
rodents, 411, **412**
rods, cadmium, 298, **298**
rods in retina, 534
roof, insulation of, 265, 266, **266**
root hair, 363–64, **364**
roots, 363; loss from soil, 375–76
Rossi, Bruno, 196
rotation: of earth, 151–53, **152**, 209, 243; of moon, 173–74
rotenone, 417, 418
roundworms, 428, **428**
rudder, airplane, 495
running, calories used in (table), 64
rust, protection of metals against, 342
rust fungi, 420
rustproof steel, 331
Rutherford, Ernest, 283; work with cloud chamber, 284–85

S

safety, 130–31; fire prevention at home, 267, **268**; highway, **10–11**, 485
salamander, 429
saliva, enzymes in, 83–84
salivation, conditioned reflex, 42–43, **43**
Salk, Dr. Jonas E., 82, 108
salmon: life cycle of, 408; eggs and fry, **409**; fish ladder for, **409**
salt: bodily need for, 68; a compound, 278; in oceans and lakes, 319; uses of, 336; mining of, 336; diffusion of, 364
salt beds, 336
San Francisco, water supply of, 125
sanctuary, wildlife, 414
sand, 338
sand dollar, 429
sandworm, 428
satellite rocket, 196
satisfaction, in habit formation, 44
saturated solution, 321
Saturn: position in solar system, **136**; moons of, 136; rings around, 138, **138**; conditions for life on, 150
scarlet fever, 126
scale, cottony-cushion (table), 416
scale, musical, 523
Schaefer, Vincent J., 214, **214**
Schick test, 126
science, defined, 30; unfinished business of, 582–83
science experts, 28
scientific methods, 17, **24**; Redi's experiments, 22; Conant's idea of, 23, **24**, 25; common sense in, 23; "trial and error" in, 24; chance discovery in, 24; Bridgman's definition, 25; planning in, 25; common uses of, 27–28
scientists: dependence on observations, 19, 538; recognizing, 19–25
Scorpio, **142**
screw, as machine, 439, **439**
"scud," **233**
scurvy, 65–66
sea anemone, 428
sea breeze, 208, **208**
sea urchin, 429
seaplane, 501
"seas" on the moon, **175**
seasons, 243–52, **244**; solstices and, 245; sun's path and, 246–47; slant of sun's rays and, 247–49, **248**; adaptation of living things to, 252–53
seed coat, 390
seed plants, 431
seed potatoes, 388
seeding of clouds, 214–15
seismograph, 161
sense organs, 36
senses, chief, 36–37
series connection, 473–74, **474**
serum albumin, 82
sewage disposal, 123
shadow picture, 561
shadows at noon, 247, **247**
shark liver oil, 68
shatterproof glass, 338, **339**
shelled animals, 429
shift, automatic, 484
ships, steel, 489
shock wave: in earthquake, 162; in breaking of sound barrier, 500
"shooting" stars, 141
short circuit, 475
shorthorn cattle, 398, 400
shovel, Diesel-powered, **447**
shutter, 575; speed of, 577
sight *See* eye *and* vision
sign language, 527–28
silica gel, 218
silicon: (table), 316; in pig iron, 330; in steel, 331; in solar battery, 582, **583**
silk moth, 415
silkworm, 415
silverplating, 342
single-celled animals, 103, 428, **428**
sinuses, 524
Sirius, 139
skin: cells of, **57**; peeling, in sunburn, 57; cross-section of, **58**; removing wastes through, 95; bacteria entering body through, 107–08
sky, sign of rain, 216
skyhook balloon, 210, **211**
sleeping sickness (table), 104
sleet, 213
slide valve, **444**
slides, film, 559
sling psychrometer, **228**
slug, 429
small intestine, 84; membrane of, 86
smallpox, 102; vaccination for, 109; community action against, 118–19, 126; quarantine, 126–27
smog, 251
smoking, effects of, 128
smut fungi, 420
snail, 429
snakes, 429
snorkel, 493
snow, 213–14, 224; artificial, 214, **214**; insulating against, 265, **265**, 266

soap, action in water, 319, **320**
soda-acid fire extinguisher, **269**, 270
sodium: in salt, 68; (tables), 316, 317
sodium carbonate, 338
sodium chloride, 278, 319
soft coal, 332–33, **333**
soil: saturation of, 121; weathering and erosion of, 164–66; how plants get food from 363–65; good, materials in, 372–73, **373**; bacteria in, 374; loss of, causes, 375–76; depleted, 376; loss of minerals from, 376; conservation of, 377–82
Soil Conservation Act, 380
Soil Conservation Service, 380
solar battery, 582, **583**
solar system, 135, **136**
solid: properties of a, 277; speed of sound in (table), 520
solid fuels, 442
solstices, 244, **245**
solution, 318, 321
sonar, 518–19
sound: speed of, 501, (table), 520; ultrasonic, 518; absorption of, 519, **519**; how it travels, 519–20; storms and, 520; of human voice, 521; the nature of, 521; of musical instruments, **522**; of musical scale, 523; frequency, pitch, loudness, 523; quality of, 524; motion pictures, 562–63, **563**; recording of, 564–67; tape recording, 565–67; high-fidelity reproduction of, 566
sound barrier, smashing the, 500–01
sound waves, 515–18, **522**, **545–46**; molecules in, 518
sounder, telegraphic, 544
soundproofing, 519, **519**
Southern Hemisphere, summer in, 153
soybeans, 379
space station, **4**, 193, 196–97
space travel, 185–99; "facts and fancies," 186; early books about, 186; barriers to, 186–98; the human factor, 188–93; problem of space vision, 189–90; air resistance and, 193; dangers, 193; unknown factors, 195–97; fuel for, 197; cost of, 198–99
spacemen: physical needs, 188; goals, 198
spaceships, 193–95; time schedule, 186
spacesuit, **4**, **149**, 177, 189
Spallanzani, Lazaro, 386
spark, electric, 458; cause of explosion, 458–59; lightning as, 459
spawning time, 408
species, 425
spectrum, **14**, 532
speech, location of, **39**
sperm nucleus, 392, **392**, 395
spiders, 429
spinal cord, 37, 41; of frog, **36**; human, **37**; action in knee reflex, **41**
spiny-skinned animals, 429
spiracle, **416**, 417–18
spiral nebula, **145**
spirilla, 102, **103**
spleen, 80
split-ring commutator, **469**, **477**
sponges, 428, **428**
spontaneous combustion, 267–68
spores, 103; of fungi, 420
"sports," 399
spring tide, 169
spring water, 121
spring weather, 246–47
spruce: pest of, **427**; cones of, **431**
spun glass, 338
squid, 429
stabilizers, **495**
stainless steel, 331
stalactites, 321, **321**
stalagmites, 321, **321**
stamens, 391, 392, **392**
staminate flowers, 391–92, **391**, **392**
standard time, 155
staphylococcus, **99**
star charts, **142**, **143**
starch: in carbohydrates, 62; test for, 73; effect of iodine on, 356; how made by plants, 356, 357, **357**; action in water, 364
starfish, 429, **429**
stars: seen through telescope, **19**; distance from earth, 139; navigation by, 140; movements of, 140–41; "twinkling" of, 141; "shooting," 141; in summer sky, **142**; in winter sky, **143**; fusion of hydrogen atoms in, 303
static electricity, 456–59, **457**, **542**
steam engine: Hero's, **442**, 443; Watt's, 444, **444**; Industrial Revolution and, 444
steam heating, 261–62, (model), **262**, **263**
steam turbine, 445, **445**
steel: testing, with Geiger counter, 310; uses of, 329–30; making of, 330, **330**; stainless, 331; made to float, 489
steel rail, 486–87, **487**
steel ship, 489
Stephenson, George, 444–45
stethoscope, 79, **80**
stimulus, 36; in reflex act, 40; substitute, in conditioned reflex, 42
stirrup, **515**, 516
stoker, automatic, 339
stomach, **84**; enzymes in, 84–85

stomach ache, 36–37
stomach poisons, 417
stomates, 356, **356**
storm: dust, 164; wind force in, 236; sound, and distance of, 520
storm window, 265
Stradivarius, 524
stratosphere, 210
stratus clouds, 232–34, **233**
strawberry plant, 389, **431**
streamlined train, 487, **487**
streptomycin, 105, **106**, 114
strip cropping, 379, **379**
strokes of engines, 447–49, **448, 449**
study, 46–47; surroundings for, **47**
submarine, 492–93; atomic-powered, 306, **307**, 493; Kingston valves, 492; vent valves, 492, **493**; snorkel, 493
sucking insects, 417
sugar: burning, in body, 59; a basic substance, 60; in nutrients, 62; in saliva, 83; in diabetes, 113; a compound, 278; how green plants make, 357, **357**
sulfa drugs, 110; (table), **111**
sulfur: in proteins, 62; (tables), 316, 317; in pig iron, 330; mining, 335, **335**; industrial uses of, 336; Frasch well, **337**
summer: in Northern and Southern Hemispheres, 153, 244–45; weather in, 249; clothing for, 258
summer solstice, **244**, 245
sun: center of universe, 135; position in solar system, **136**; daytime star, 136–38; relative size, **137**; diameter, weight, and temperature, 138; heat and light from, 151–53; gravity pull, 167, **168**; tides caused by, 168–69, **168**; motion relative to earth and moon, 171, **172**; eclipses of, 177–79, **178**; rays, 189, 208; energy as a weathermaker, 215; effect on seasons, 245–49; apparent path of, 246; shadows of, **247**; slant of rays, **248**; effect of earth's atmosphere on rays, 249; heat at surface, 301; fusion of hydrogen atoms in, 303; matter lost by, 303; light, and green plants, 356, 366; source of energy, 436
sunburn, skin cells in, 57
"sunshine" vitamin, 68
supercooling, 214
suspension, 322
swallowing: control of, 40; effect on Eustachian tube, 517
sweat gland, **58**, 95, **96**
swimming, calories used in (table), 64
symptoms of illness, 108
synthesis, 358

T

T3 Ice Island, 204
table salt, 278, 319
tables: vitamin starvation, 69; daily vitamin needs, 75; daily diet for moderately active man, 75; calorie needs for different activities, 76; sources of calories, carbohydrates, fats, and proteins, 76; sources of vitamins and minerals, 77; daily calorie needs for different kinds of work, 78; enzymes which digest your food, 85; microbes which cause disease, 104; tide levels, 169; terms for measuring normal air pressure, 223; range of air pressures, 223; relative humidity chart, 227; Beaufort wind scale, 229; hours of daylight, 247; most abundant elements in land, water, and air, 316; some common elements, 317; common alloys, 332; acids and bases, 348; insect enemies, 416; heat value of fuels, 442; speed of sound, 520; producing light energy, 530
tadpoles, 91, 394, **394**
"tagged" atoms, 308
"talking machine," 564
tantrum habit, breaking, 45
tape recording, 565–66, **566**; of telegraph messages, 544; of television programs, 566–67
tapeworm, 428, **428**
target screen, 568
taste, sense of, 57
Taurus, **143**
Telefax, 544
telegraph, 542–44, **543**
telephone, 544–46; transmitter, 545, **545**; receiver, 545–46, **545**
telescope, 139, 338; accuracy through, **19**; on Mount Palomar, **145**; as a hobby, 181, 202–05, **203**
television, 567–70; tube, **14**; camera, **14**, **568**; color, **14–15**, 569–70, **570–71**; tape recording of programs, 566–67; broadcasting, 567–69; program direction, **567**; reception, 569–70
temperature: of human body, 147; differences over earth, 147, 207–08; too high and too low, for human life, 148; on other planets, 149–50; effect of color on, 190, **190**; of atmosphere, 210; and pressure, 212; of air, measuring, 220–24; effect on solutions, 321
Tennessee Valley Authority, 381; dam, **381**, 471, **471**
tentacles, 428
terramycin (chart), 110
test tube, 347

tetanus: bacillus (table), 104; antitoxin, 107
Thales, 456
theodolite, **230**, 231
theory, 26; related facts and, 26–27
thermograph, 221
thermometer, 220–21; maximum-minimum, 220
thermostat, 260
thiamine, 66; in various foods (table), 77
thinking, 33–34
three-stage rocket, **191**, 193–95
throttle, airplane, 495
thrust, 497
thumb, significance of, 35
thunder, 250; causes of, 459
"thunderhead," 232, **233**; along cold front, 237
thunderstorm, 237, 249; sound and, 520
thyroid gland: iodine and, 70, 319; cancer of, 309, **309**
tidal wave, 163
tideland oil, 340
tides, 168–70, **168**
time: standard, 155; Daylight Saving, 156
time zones, 154–56, **154**
timing device, 446
tissue, 55
TNT, atomic fission compound with, 294
toads, 395
tobacco, source of insecticide, 419
topsoil: disaster from loss of, 371–72; air in, 372, **372**; depth of, 374
tornado, 236–37, **238**
Torricelli, 221
touch, 36; brain and, **37**
toxin, 106, 111
tracers, 308
trade winds, 208, **209**
T-rail, 486–87, **486**
traits: man's special, 34–36; acquired and inherited, 398–401, **399**; Mendel's studies of, 400–01; dominant and recessive, 401; genes and, 401–02
transcription, radio, 565
transformer, 471, 472–73, **472**
transfusion, blood, 82, **83**
transistor, **512**, **554**
transmission, automobile, 483, **484**
transmitter: telegraph, 542–44, **543**; telephone, 545, **545**; radio, 548–50, **549**; television, 567–69, **569**
trash, **268**
trees: importance of, 375; destruction by fire, 421–22; destruction by pests, 422
trial-and-error method, 24
trichina, 428
trichinosis, 120
tritium, 303
tropical cyclone, 236
Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, 209, **209**
troposphere, 210
Trouvelot, Leopold, 413
tube, food, 84, **84**; bronchial, 88, **90**
tube: television picture, **14**, 569, **571**; image-orthicon (cathode-ray), 567–68, **568**
tuberculosis: bacillus of, 106; deaths from (chart), 112; X-ray diagnosis, 113–14; mobile diagnostic unit, 114, **114**; treatment, 114
tumor, brain, 308–09
tungsten, 476, 477
tuning fork, 515
turbine: steam, 445, **445**; water, 445–46, **446**; how electricity is made by, 469–70; in ships, 488; in jet airplanes, 498, **499**
turbo-jet engine, 498, **499**
turbo-prop engine, 498, **499**
turtles, 429
TVA, 381; dam, **381**, 471, **471**
"twister," 236–37, **237**
two-stage rocket, 195
Tycho, **175**
typhoid fever, 100, 123; bacillus of (table), 104
typhoon, 236
typhus, 107

U

ultrasonics, 518
ultraviolet rays, 249, 532
umbra, 178, **178**
underwater life, 148
universe: sun as center of, 135; a model of, 144–45; elements and, 281–82
unlearned acts, 40
updrafts, 237
upper air, measuring, 230–31, **231**
uranium, 291–302; radioactivity of, 292; compared with TNT, 293; in chain reaction, 297–99; neptunium from, 299, **299**; splitting atom of, 300; ore, detection of, 302; reserves of, **305**; breeding atomic fuel with, 305; (table), 317; for airplanes and submarines, 503
Uranus: position in solar system, **136**; moons of, 136; conditions for life on, 150
urea, 95
ureters, **97**
Urey, Dr. Harold, 294
Ursa Major and Ursa Minor, 140, **142**, **143**

U.S. Air Force Department of Space Medicine, 188
U.S. Department of Agriculture, 377
U.S. Forest Service, 422
U.S. Health Services, 67, 70
U.S. Soil Conservation Service, 377, 380
U.S. Weather Bureau, 219–20, 234, 238, 262

V

V-2 rocket, 195
vaccination, 109, 118
vacuum tubes, 551
valves: of heart, 92–93, **92**, 94; in submarine, 492, **493**
vegetable oils, 365
veins, 87, 94, **94**; red blood in, 95, **96**
vent valves, 492, **493**
ventricles, 92, **92**, 93
Venus, 135; position in solar system, **136**; conditions for life on, 149, 186–87; atmosphere on, 187
Verne, Jules, 170, 193
vertebrates, 429–30, **429–30**
Vesalius, 19
vibrations, 515–16, **516–17**; waves and, 517–18; from musical instruments, **522**; in the human voice, 523
video tape, 567
view camera, **576**
villi, 86, **86**
"vinegar eel," 428, **428**
violin, **522**
viruses, 102, 106
vision: location in brain, **39**; function of parts of eye in, 534; common defects of, 534–36, **536**; correction of defects, 537, **537**; persistence of, 561–62, **561**, **562**; in television, 568–69
vitamins: diseases caused by lack of, 65–68; results of lack of, **69**; in juices, 74; daily needs (table), 75; in various foods (table), 77; in blood plasma, 81; made by plants, 366
  vitamin A, 67–68, **69**
  vitamin B_1, 66–67
  vitamin B_2, 67
  vitamin C, 66, **69**; in juices, 74
  vitamin D, 68, **69**, 107
  vitamin K, 68
vocal cords, 521–22, **521**
voice, 521–24; organs of, 521; frequencies, 523; reproduction of, 546
voice box, 35
"volcano belt," 163–64
volcanoes, 162–64; Parícutin, 162; in building up of land, 166; lake and mountain formed by, **167**; on moon, 174
volt, 470, 471
Volta, Alessandro, 459
voltaic cell, 459–60, **460**
voltaic pile, 459–60
voltmeter, 471
von Guericke, Otto, 222
Vorticella, **386**

W

"WAC Corporal," 195
Waksman, Dr. Selman, 105
warm-blooded animals, 430
warm front, 234–37, **235**
washing soda, 320
Washington Meridian Conference, 154
wasp, as enemy of beetle, 419–20
wastes, body, 95–97
water: in exhaled air, 60; elements in, 62, 357; uses in body, 70; in balanced diet, 71; germs entering body through, 106; safeguarding, 120–26; spring, 121; from artesian well, 122, **122**, **123**; unsafe, **124**; purifying, 125–26; need of, for life on earth, 147; percentage of body, 147; erosion from, 165; absence on moon, 174, 177; changed to water vapor, 213; a mixture, 278–79; breaking up, 280; made up of hydrogen and oxygen, 281; heavy, 303; elements in large bodies of (table), 316; minerals in, 318; hard, 319–20; softeners, 320; distillation, 322, **323**; and plant growth, 362–63; displacement of, 488; (table), 520
water barometer, 221
water cycle, 215, **216**
water jackets, 442
water pressure: of boiling water, 188, **188**; at sea level, 489–90, **490**; below surface of water, 490
water softeners, 320
water supply of big cities, 124–25
water table, 121, **124**
water vapor, 212–15; change of water to, 213, 216; effect on barometer reading, 224; measuring, 225–26, **227**
watershed, 124
watt, 470–71
Watt, James, 443–44; his steam engine, **444**
wave, carrier, 549 *See also* light waves, radio waves, *and* sound waves
wave length, 548
weather, 206–55; protection against, 204, **205**, 256–71; height and, 210; sun's rays and, 215; predicting changes in, 219–42;

measurement of, 220–31, **242**; clouds as signs of, 232, **233**, **235**; changes along warm front, 234–37; changes along cold front, 237–38; in spring, 246–49; in summer, 249; in autumn, 250–52; in winter, 252; housing and, 258; indoor, 259
weather chart, **239**
weather map, **219**, **230**, 236; using a, 238
weather stripping, 265, 266
weather vane, 228
weathering, 164, 174
weathermakers: scientific, 214–15; sun's rays as, 215
Weathermen of America, Amateur, 219–20
weaves in cloth, 256–57, **257**
wedge, 439, **439**
weight: gain, in burning, 22–23; of sun, 138; influence of gravity on, 167, 176
weightlessness, 187–88
Weismann, August, 398; his experiment, 399
well: on farm, 121–22, artesian, 122–23, (model), **122**; oil, deepest, **161**
west longitude, 155
westerlies, 208, **209**
wet-bulb temperature, 226–27, (table), 227
wheat plant, hybrid, 402
wheat rust, **420**
wheel, 439, **439**
Wheeler, Granville, 541
white, reflection of colors, 532
White, Dr. G. F., 419
"white blood," 94
white blood cells, 80–81, **81**
white light, breaking up, 532
White Sands Proving Ground, 195
wildlife: conservation of, 407–10; refuge, 414
willow, 391
Wilson cloud chamber, 284–85
wind: erosion from, 164–65; temperature differences and, 207–08; prevailing westerlies and trade, 208, **209**; measuring direction and speed, 228–29, **229**; Beaufort scale, 229; direction and speed in cyclone, 236; around "low" and "high," **236**; energy in, 435
wind arrows, 228, **229**
wind tunnel, 503
windpipe, 88, **90**
wing, **495**, 496–97, **496**
wing, flying, 494
winter: in Northern and Southern Hemispheres, 153, 244–45; protection against, 204, **205**; weather in, 252; clothing for protection against, 257–58
winter solstice, **244**, 245
wiring, danger of faulty, 130, 474–75
"witch's broom" clouds, 232
WNYE, 548
Woodward, Dr. Robert, 29
wool fibers, 257, **257**
work, 434; measuring, 437, **438**
Wright brothers, 186, 494

X

X ray: for cancer treatment, 112, 479; for diagnosis of tuberculosis, 113–14, 126; of chest, **114**; mobile diagnostic unit, **114**

Y

yawning, control of, 40
Yeager, Maj. Charles, 500–02
yellow fever, 102, (table), 104

Z

zinc: plating, 142; in dry cell, 46

Index of Experiments and Activities

1 WAYS OF THE SCIENTIST

Growing Mold on Bread, 21–22
Showing How One Problem Leads to Another, 24
Collecting Examples of Conclusions from One Observation, 29 (Fig. 7)
Careers for You, 32*

2 WAYS OF LEARNING

Listing Advantages of Man's Intelligence, 33
Studying Man's Conquest of His Surroundings, 34 (Fig. 8)
Making a Model of a Nerve Cell, 38 (Fig. 12)
Testing a Reflex Act — Eyeblink, 40
Testing the Knee-Jerk Reflex, 41 (Fig. 14)
Demonstrating a Conditioned Reflex, 43 (Fig. 15)
Arranging Study Surroundings, 47 (Fig. 16)
Going Further, 49–51

3 YOUR CELLS AND THEIR NEEDS

Examining Body Cells, 55
Measuring Heat Energy Given Off by Soaked Bean Seeds, 58
Discovering the Products of Burning, 59
Testing Products of Oxidation in the Body, 60
Testing Air Breathed In and Out, 60
Studying Foods Eaten by Different Peoples, 71 (Fig. 25)
Going Further, 73–74

4 YOUR BLOOD WILL TELL

Testing Foods for Starch and Sugar, 83
Observing the Action of Saliva on Starch, 83–84
Counting Your Pulse, 86–87
Examining the Circulation of Blood in the Arm, 87
Making a Model to Show Breathing, 88
Making a Chart of the Circulatory System, 89 (Fig. 32)
Studying How a Fish Breathes, 91
Examining a Sheep's Heart, 91–92
Studying Heartbeat of Daphnia, 92 (Fig. 35)
Going Further, 98–99

5 YOUR BODY AGAINST UNSEEN KILLERS

Studying Where Germs Can Be Found, 101
Examining Growths of Bacteria, 102
Going Further, 116–17

6 YOUR COMMUNITY HELPS

Showing How Water Seeks Its Own Level, 122
Making a Model of a Filtering Bed, 126
Making a Model of a Settling Basin, 126
Going Further, 128–29

A Lifetime Hobby — Saving Your Own Life and Limb

Checking Your Home for Danger Spots, 130
Checking Causes of Accidents on the Street and Playground, 130

7 OUR SUN AND ITS PLANETS

Planning a Display of the Sun and Its Planets, 136 (Fig. 56)
Collecting Pictures of Planets, 138 (Fig. 58)
Locating Stars and Constellations, 140
Writing an Article about Life on Mars, 150 (Fig. 64)
Showing the Reason for Darkness and Daylight on Earth, 151
Demonstrating How the Sun Warms the Earth, 151
Demonstrating How the Earth Both Revolves and Rotates, 151–52
Going Further, 157–58

8 OUR PLANET HOME — AND ITS MOON

Keeping an Earthquake Map, 163 (Fig. 71)
Inspecting Damage at Home from Weathering and Erosion, 164
Showing Lowering and Uplifting of the Earth's Surface, 166
Observing When the Moon Rises and Sets, 170
Illustrating the Moon's Travel in Its Orbit, 170–71
Demonstrating the New Moon Phase, 171–72
Finding Out Why We See Only One Side of the Moon, 173–74

---

* At the end of each chapter, a section bearing this title offers suggestions for investigating careers. These follow the sections entitled "Going Further" in this index.

Showing How Shadows Cause Eclipses, 179
Going Further, 183–84

9 SPACE, OUR NEW FRONTIER

Proving That Color Affects Temperature, 189, 190 (Fig. 88)
Demonstrating Action and Reaction, 194 (Fig. 91)
Going Further, 198

Fun with Telescopes — A Hobby

Building a Telescope of Your Own, 203

10 OUR DAILY WEATHER

Showing How Warmed Air Expands, 207
Proving That Warm Air Rises, 207 (Fig. 96)
Demonstrating the Evaporation of Water, 213
Making Artificial Snow, 214 (Fig. 100)
Going Further, 218

11 PREDICTING WEATHER CHANGES

Making a Mercury Barometer, 220–21 (Fig. 103)
Making a Rain Gauge, 225 (Fig. 106)
Showing How Dew Forms, 226
Measuring Water Vapor in the Air, 226
Making a Psychrometer and Measuring Relative Humidity, 226–27
Organizing a Club of Co-operative Weather Observers, 229 (Fig. 108)
Predicting Weather from Daily Weather Maps, 230 (Fig. 109)
Observing Cloud Types, 233 (Fig. 112)
Keeping a Weather Chart, 239
Going Further, 241–42

12 WEATHER BY THE SEASON

Mapping the Seasonal Height of the Sun in the Sky, 246 (Fig. 119)
Charting Seasonal Lengths of the Sun's Shadow, 247 (Fig. 120)
Demonstrating the Area Covered by Rays from the Sun, 248
Going Further, 254–55

13 PROTECTING YOURSELF AGAINST THE WEATHER

Studying Weaves of Different Cloths, 257
Measuring the Heat Absorbed by Different Colors of Cloth, 257–58
Setting Up a Model of a Steam Heating System, 262 (Fig. 125)
Building a Model of a One-Pipe Steam Heating System, 263 (Fig. 126)
Demonstrating the Effect of Evaporating Ether, 264 (Fig. 127)
Testing the Effect of the Refrigerant Freon, 264
Going Further, 273

14 ATOMS — BUILDING BLOCKS OF THE UNIVERSE

Describing Objects, 277
Showing the Three Forms of Water. 277
Observing the Properties of Various Objects, 277–78
Making a Mixture, 279
Making a Compound, 279
Demonstrating the Composition of Water, 280–81
Going Further, 288–89

15 SPLITTING THE ATOM

Building a Model of an Atomic Pile, 298 (Fig. 148)
Going Further, 312–14

16 INVESTIGATING THE EARTH'S STOREHOUSE

Showing the Effect of Hard Water on Soap, 319–20
Making Saturated Solutions, 321
Distilling Water from Copper Sulfate, 322
Going Further, 326–27

17 THE WEALTH IN THE EARTH'S CRUST

Examining Products of Burning Soft Coal, 332–33
Making Reinforced Concrete, 337
Going Further, 343–45

Chemistry as a Hobby

Building Your Own Laboratory, 347
Testing Acids and Bases, 346–47
Neutralizing Acids and Bases, 348–49

18 FOOD FACTORIES OF THE WORLD

Proving That Green Plants Take in Carbon Dioxide, 354–55
Proving That Green Plants Take in Carbon Dioxide Only in Light, 355
Studying the Epidermis of a Leaf, 356
Testing for Starch in Leaves, 356–57 (Fig. 181)
Testing the Relationship Between Chlorophyll and Starch, 359
Studying the Care of House Plants, 363
Observing the Growth of Root Hairs, 363

Examining Root Hairs Under a Microscope, (Fig. 188)
Demonstrating Diffusion Throughout a Liquid, 364
Demonstrating Diffusion Through a Membrane, 364–65; 370 (Diagram)
Going Further, 369–70

19 BETTER FOOD FROM BETTER SOIL

Examining the Composition of Soil, 372
Testing the Amount of Water Different Soils Can Hold, 373
Testing for Mineral Salts in Soil, 374
Examining Nodules on Roots of Clover and Other Plants, 380
Going Further, 383–84

20 PRODUCTION THROUGH REPRODUCTION

Observing One-Celled Animals and Reproduction in Paramecium, 387
Growing Plants from Cuttings, 388
Making a Graft, 390 (Fig. 204)
Studying Bean Seed Embryos, 390
Examining the Parts of a Flower, 391
Studying Pollen Grains, 392 (Fig. 206)
Raising Tadpoles from Frogs' Eggs, 395 (Fig. 208)
Collecting Frogs' Eggs, 395
Watching Frogs' Eggs Develop, 395
Watching the Development of Chick Embryos, 396–97
Sketching the Stages of a Chick's Development, 397 (Fig. 210)
Going Further, 404–06

21 WISE USE OF OUR INHERITANCE

Collecting and Raising Grasshopper Nymphs, 416 (Fig. 223)
Discussing Control of Plant Pests, 419 (Fig. 226)
Exhibiting Samples of Damage from Fungi, 420 (Fig. 227)
Going Further, 424

Living Things As a Hobby

Collecting Specimens on Field Trips, 426 (Fig. 228)
Collecting and Exhibiting Harmful Insects, 427 (Fig. 229)

22 AIDING YOUR MUSCLES

Changing Electrical Energy into Heat Energy, 436
Showing How a Lever Works, 438
Demonstrating the Energy of Steam, 443
Measuring Your Own Horsepower, 450
Going Further, 452–53

23 HARNESSING THE ELECTRON

Producing Electrical Charges, 457
Showing Attraction and Repulsion of Electrical Charges, 458
Making a Simple Voltaic Cell, 460
Examining a Dry Cell, 461 (Fig. 247)
Finding the Properties of Magnets, 463
Making One Bar Magnet from Another, 464–65
Examining Magnetic Lines of Force, 464–65
Repeating the Experiments of Ampère and Oersted, 465–66
Making an Electromagnet, 466
Demonstrating Faraday's Discovery, 469
Reading an Electric Meter, 473 (Fig. 258)
Going Further, 480–81

24 MODERN PACK HORSES

Showing How Gears Work, 483–84
Demonstrating Water Pressure, 489
Demonstrating Direction of Water Pressure, 490
Showing How a Submarine Dives or Surfaces, 492–93
Demonstrating Bernoulli's Principle, 497 (Fig. 277)
Demonstrating the Principle of Jet Propulsion, 498
Going Further, 505–07

Model Airplanes as a Hobby

Making Nonflying Models, 509–10
Making Free-Flight Flying Models, 509–10
Making Control-Line Flying Models, 510

25 HOW WE HEAR

Producing Sound Waves with a Vibrating Rubber Band, 515
Showing Vibrations of a Tuning Fork, 515
Testing Effect of Obstructions on Hearing, 516
Showing How a Sound Wave Travels, 518
Testing Water as a Conductor of Sound, 520
Demonstrating Resonance, 524
Going Further, 526

26 HOW WE SEE

Showing How Light Waves Travel, 529
Discovering the Direction in Which Light Travels, 530
Testing the Effect of Light on the Pupil of the Eye, 534

Demonstrating How a Prism Bends Light Rays, 536
Observing the Effects of Concave and Convex Lenses, 537
Going Further, 539–40

27 WIRE AND WIRELESS

Making Homemade Telegraph Sets, 543 (Fig. 297)
Setting Up a Homemade Wireless Transmitter, 546–47
Going Further, 553–55

28 MOVING AND TALKING IMAGES

Making and Developing a Shadow Photograph, 557
Making a Flip Booklet, 561
Demonstrating Persistence of Vision, 562
Going Further, 574–75

Photography as a Hobby

Building a Darkroom, 580
Producing Photographs for Articles, 580
Using Photography for School and Community Projects, 580

[e · 7 · 56]

Face of atomic reactor, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, Long Island